National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code Handbook

National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code Handbook

SEVENTH EDITION

Edited by

Lee F. Richardson
Senior Electrical Engineer, NFPA

Richard J. Roux
Senior Electrical Specialist, NFPA

With the complete text of the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72®, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*

National Fire Protection Association®
Quincy, Massachusetts

Product Management: Michael S. Barresi, Jr.
Development and Production: Irene Herlihy
Permissions: Josiane Domenici
Copyediting: Cara Grady
Art Direction: Cheryl Langway
Illustrations: George Nichols
Cover Design: Twist Design
Manufacturing: Ellen Glisker
Printer: Courier/Kendallville

Important Notices and Disclaimers: Publication of this handbook is for the purpose of circulating information and opinion among those concerned for fire and electrical safety and related subjects. While every effort has been made to achieve a work of high quality, neither the NFPA® nor the contributors to this handbook guarantee the accuracy or completeness of or assume any liability in connection with the information and opinions contained in this handbook. The NFPA and the contributors shall in no event be liable for any personal injury, property, or other damages of any nature whatsoever, whether special, indirect, consequential, or compensatory, directly or indirectly resulting from the publication, use of, or reliance upon this handbook.

This handbook is published with the understanding that the NFPA and the contributors to this handbook are supplying information and opinion but are not attempting to render engineering or other professional services. If such services are required, the assistance of an appropriate professional should be sought.

NFPA codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides ("NFPA Documents"), including the NFPA Document that is the subject of this handbook, are made available for use subject to Important Notices and Legal Disclaimers, which appear at the end of this handbook and can also be viewed at *www.nfpa.org/disclaimers*.

Notice Concerning Code Interpretations: This seventh edition of the *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code Handbook* is based on the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72®*. All NFPA codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides ("NFPA Documents") are developed in accordance with the published procedures of the NFPA by technical committees comprised of volunteers drawn from a broad array of relevant interests. The handbook contains the complete text of *NFPA 72* and any applicable Formal Interpretations issued by the NFPA. This NFPA Document is accompanied by explanatory commentary and other supplementary materials.

The commentary and supplementary materials in this handbook are not a part of the NFPA Document and do not constitute Formal Interpretations of the NFPA (which can be obtained only through requests processed by the responsible technical committees in accordance with the published procedures of the NFPA). The commentary and supplementary materials, therefore, solely reflect the personal opinions of the editor or other contributors and do not necessarily represent the official position of the NFPA or its technical committees.

The following are registered trademarks of the National Fire Protection Association®:

National Fire Protection Association®
NFPA®
NFPA 72®
Building Construction and Safety Code® and NFPA 5000®
Fire Protection Handbook®
Life Safety Code® and 101®
National Electrical Code®, NEC®, and NFPA 70®

NFPA No.: 72HB13
ISBN (book): 978-1-45590-253-8
ISBN (electronic product): 978-1-45590-254-5
Library of Congress Card Control No.: 2012945839

Printed in the United States of America
12 13 14 15 16 5 4 3 2 1

Contents

Preface

The 2013 edition of *NFPA 72®*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, represents the culmination of over a century of signaling standards. The first signaling standard, NFPA 71-D, *General Rules for the Installation of Wiring and Apparatus for Automatic Fire Alarms, Hatch Closers, Sprinkler Alarms, and Other Automatic Alarm Systems and Their Auxiliaries,* was written in 1899. That document was only fifteen pages in length, including the committee report! We are certain the original framers of that document would be astonished to see what their work looks like today.

Fire alarm signaling has come a long way since NFPA published that first signaling standard over one hundred years ago. Many technologies related to fire alarm systems have evolved, while others have changed little since the middle part of the nineteenth century. For example, conventional fixed-temperature heat detectors and McCulloh loops have not changed significantly since they were invented in the late 1800s. Many technologies emerged in just the past thirty or forty years. More recent technologies, such as electronic addressable analog smoke detectors and analog heat detectors, continue to develop and improve. Additionally, the computer age has ushered in an era of major changes in fire alarm system control units. Software-driven system designs have resulted in fire alarm systems that are more flexible, richer in features, and easier to test and maintain.

As computer systems are becoming more sophisticated, fire alarm system designers are integrating these systems more with other building systems such as HVAC systems, security and access control systems, energy management systems, and mass notification systems. Requirements have been incorporated in the Code in an effort to keep pace with this ongoing evolution in integrated system designs and to preserve the integrity, reliability, and performance that are essential for fire alarm systems. Integration of these systems requires technicians from both the fire alarm and non–fire alarm system fields to possess a more detailed and functional knowledge of these Code requirements. Systems integration also requires a more complete understanding of the application and operation of the various building systems technologies and how they interact with fire alarm systems. Education will continue to play a critical role in the understanding and application of fire alarm systems and their integration with other building systems. This edition of the *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code* has continued to retain requirements for performance-based designs as they continue to play a more prominent part within the building process. The acceptance of performance-based designs on an equal footing with traditional prescriptive designs establishes an environment and incentive to perform much needed research. The fire alarm industry has and will continue to research and develop a better understanding of the metrics needed to model fire scenarios and predict detection system responses to those scenarios. More and more commonly, fire protection needs are served more effectively and precisely by performance-based approaches than by those based on the more traditional prescriptive rules. Performance-based approaches are not limited to fire detection and are becoming more widely used in the areas of audible and visible signaling and in the design of mass notification systems. This continued growth has been reflected within the Code both in terms of new requirements and in terms of information provided in the annexes and supplements in this handbook.

The 2010 edition of *NFPA 72* reflected an expanded scope and reorganization of the Code. Changes made for the 2007 edition introduced requirements and guidance for mass notification systems and included provisions allowing these systems to work with and take precedence over fire alarm systems. The 2010 edition built on these changes and added a new chapter on emergency communications systems, which included new requirements for the various forms of mass notification systems, relocated requirements for emergency voice/alarm communications systems, relocated requirements for two-way telephone communications service, new requirements for two-way radio communications enhancement systems, and new requirements for area of refuge emergency communications systems. The new chapter recognized that the design of mass notification systems needed to reflect the range of potentially complex applications for these systems and included requirements for the design of these systems (including the establishment of signal priorities) based on a risk analysis.

Along with the new chapter on emergency communications systems, the 2010 edition was updated as a whole so that, where applicable, requirements applied to emergency communications systems in addition to fire alarm systems. In fact, requirements relating to circuits and pathways were relocated to a new chapter, providing a common location for requirements that can be used by any type of system. Similarly, the requirements for fire safety functions were relocated to a new chapter on emergency control functions and interfaces. With the addition of three new chapters, the opportunity to reorganize the Code into a more logical order of chapters was realized and accomplished with the inclusion of reserved chapters to minimize the potential need for chapter renumbering in the future. In addition, the expanded scope of the Code was reflected in its new title: *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code.*

The 2013 edition of the Code builds on the scope and reorganization that began with the 2010 edition. The most prominent change for the 2013 edition is the addition of a new chapter on documentation. This chapter contains or identifies all the various documentation provisions in *NFPA 72*. It includes a list of items that constitute the minimum documentation required for all systems. Additional provisions and documentation are identified for more complex systems. This new chapter should make it easier for Code users to more readily determine the documentation requirements for any system.

Additional changes for the 2013 edition that will enhance usability include a complete update of the System Record of Completion and the System Record of Inspection and Testing forms; a complete update of the inspection and testing tables; and reorganization of the Fundamentals chapter. The updated forms have been broken into a main “system” form that is applicable to any system and supplementary forms to be used with the system form as appropriate for the installation involved. This should make it easier for users dealing with less complex systems to provide appropriate documentation without the need to fill out an all-encompassing single form. The visual inspection table in the Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance chapter has been updated to include new inspection methods in addition to inspection frequencies. The former “test methods” and “test frequencies” tables have been updated and consolidated into a single table. The component listings in the visual inspection and the testing tables have been reorganized so that item numbers in both tables are more closely correlated. These changes should greatly improve the usability of these tables. The Fundamentals chapter has also been reorganized to improve its usability, and material related to monitoring of interconnected circuits has been moved to the Circuits and Pathways chapter.

All of these changes have resulted from the work of over 200 technical committee members who have volunteered countless hours in the preparation and review of hundreds of proposals and comments — all evaluated through the NFPA consensus-based standards-making processes. The development of the proposals and comments processed by the technical committees represents even further countless hours contributed by members of the public and the fire protection community. The preparation of both the Code and the handbook has also been the beneficiary of very significant time and care from dedicated NFPA staff members. All of these collective efforts, along with NFPA’s rigorous public review process, have continued to make the *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code Handbook* one of the best documents available in the world to detail the installation requirements for fire alarm and emergency communications systems.

The editors wish to thank Douglas M. Aiken (commentary author for Chapter 27); Leonard Belliveau, Jr., P.E., CET, of Hughes Associates, Inc. (commentary author for Chapters 12, 21, and 23); David A. Blanken, of Keltron Corporation (commentary author for Chapter 26); John M. Cholin, P.E., of J.M. Cholin Consultants, Inc. (author of Supplement 1); Daniel T. Gottuk, Ph.D., P.E., of Hughes Associates, Inc. (commentary author for Chapter 29); Jeffrey Moore, P.E., FSFPE, of Hughes Associates, Inc. (commentary author for Chapter 14); Wayne D. Moore, P.E., FSFPE, CFPS, SET, F.NSPE, of Hughes Associates, Inc. (commentary author for Chapter 24); Daniel J. O'Connor, P.E., of Aon Fire Protection Engineering (commentary author for Chapter 17 and Annex B); Warren E. Olsen, CFPS, CBO, of FSCI-Fire Safety Consultants, Inc. (commentary author for Chapters 1 and 10); and Robert P. Schifiliti, P.E., FSFPE, of R.P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc. (commentary author for Chapter 18 and author of Supplement 2). Their contributions have made this handbook truly exceptional. The editors wish to thank the many manufacturers whose expertise, generosity, and patience helped us to provide many new photographs for this edition. We also thank Cara Grady, Code and Commentary Editor; Kim Cervantes, NFPA Associate Project Manager, Production; David March, NFPA Project Coordinator, Proofreader, Production; and Lynn Lupo, NFPA Associate Project Manager, Production, for their diligence and attention to detail in preparing and proofing the Code texts; Josiane Domenici, NFPA Project Coordinator, Permissions Editor, for her efforts in cataloging the handbook artwork and obtaining copyright permissions; and Michael Barresi, Jr., NFPA Project Manager; Irene Herlihy, NFPA Associate Project Manager, Production; Cheryl Langway, NFPA Associate Project Manager, Art Production; and Nancy Wirtes, NFPA Project Manager, Editorial Production, for their project management and editing contributions and for keeping the project on schedule.

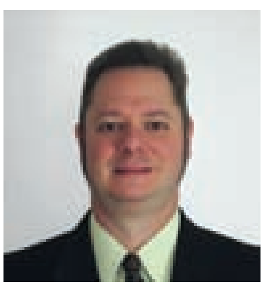
We also wish to thank our wives, Lynn and Robbie, for their patience, love, and understanding. Their encouragement and support made the development of this handbook much easier for both of us.

Richard J. Roux
Lee F. Richardson

About the Contributors

Douglas M. Aiken (Chapter 27)

Chief Douglas M. Aiken has 35 years of fire, EMS, and haz-mat experience. He began his public safety career as the superintendent of fire alarm for the Manchester, New Hampshire, Fire Department in 1976. He became chief of the Communications Division and deputy emergency management director in 1988. In 1997 he became the chief of Lakes Region Mutual Fire Aid (LRMFA), a 36-community fire, EMS, and haz-mat agency covering five counties in central New Hampshire, retiring in May 2011. He continues to serve as a deputy chief at LRMFA. He has been involved with the NFPA code development process for many years and currently is a member of three technical committees, a past chair of the Public Reporting Systems chapter of NFPA 72, and a current member of the NFPA 72 Technical Correlating Committee. He is the chairman of the New Hampshire Enhanced 9-1-1 Commission. Chief Aiken holds a bachelor's degree in management from Southern New Hampshire University and an associate degree in electronic engineering from Wentworth Institute of Technology, and is a graduate of the Air University Air Command and Staff College and the Air War College.

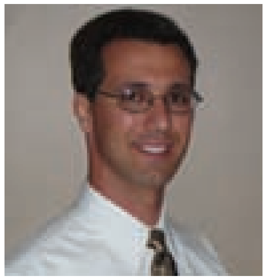


Leonard Belliveau (Chapters 12, 21, 23)

Leonard Belliveau, Jr., P.E., CET, is the office manager and senior fire protection engineer for the Warwick, Rhode Island, office of Hughes Associates, Inc. Mr. Belliveau currently serves on the NFPA Technical Committee on Protected Premises Fire Alarm Systems (SIG-PRO), the Testing and Maintenance of Fire Alarm Systems (SIG-TMS), and the NFPA Technical Committee on Telecommunications (TEL-AAA). He is a registered professional engineer (FPE) in seven states and is NICET Level III certified in the field of fire alarms and NICET Level I in the field of inspection and testing of water-based systems.

David A. Blanken (Chapter 26)

David A. Blanken is director of engineering at Keltron Corporation in Waltham, Massachusetts, with more than 30 years of experience developing and designing fire alarm signaling and receiving systems. He serves on the NFPA Technical Committee on Supervising Station Fire Alarm Systems. Mr. Blanken holds a B.A. in physics from the University of Pennsylvania. He is a member of the IEEE Communications and Computer societies.



Daniel T. Gottuck (Chapter 29)

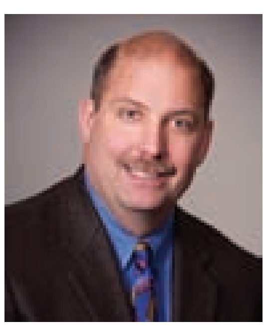
Daniel T. Gottuk, Ph.D., is a senior engineer at Hughes Associates, Inc., with extensive experience in managing small and large-scale fire research programs and conducting fire scene investigations and analyses. He is well published in the fire science literature, including papers on fire detection, liquid spill fires, and compartment fire dynamics. He is past chair of the NFPA 72 Technical Committee on Single- and Multiple-Station Alarms and Household Fire Warning Systems and is a member of the NFPA 921 Committee on Fire and Explosion Investigation.

J. Jeffrey Moore (Chapter 14)

J. Jeffrey Moore, P.E., FSFPE, is a senior fire protection engineer for Hughes Associates, Inc, in Cincinnati, Ohio, where he is responsible for the design of all types of fire protection systems including fire detection, fire alarm, and mass notification systems. Moore is past chair of the NFPA 72 Technical Committee on Protected Premises Fire Alarm Systems and current chair of the NFPA 72 Technical Committee on Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance. Prior to joining Hughes Associates, Mr. Moore was a field engineer, district supervising engineer, and senior loss prevention training consultant for Industrial Risk Insurers, and later served as the fire protection engineer for Wright-Patterson Air Force Base near Dayton, Ohio. He has authored material for a number of fire protection handbooks and references, developed and taught fire protection and life safety seminars, and currently serves as an instructor for NFPA training seminars that include Fire Alarm Systems, Fire Alarm System Inspection, Testing and Maintenance, and the SFPE seminar on Advanced Fire Alarm Systems Design.

Wayne D. Moore (Chapter 24)

Wayne D. Moore, P.E., CFPS, SET, FSFPE, F.NSPE, is a licensed professional fire protection engineer, is a principal with the fire protection engineering and code-consulting firm, Hughes Associates, Inc., and is located in the firm's Warwick, Rhode Island, office. He currently serves as a member of the National Fire Alarm Code Technical Correlating Committee, Chairman of the NFPA 72-2010 Emergency Communications Systems (ECS) Technical Committee, and is the editor of the 1993 edition and co-editor of the 1996 through 2007 editions of the *National Fire Alarm Code Handbook*. He is also a member of the RI Engineering Licensing Board. In 2009 Mr. Moore was awarded the NFPA Standards Medal.



Daniel J. O'Connor (Chapter 17, Annex B)

Daniel J. O'Connor, P.E., is chief technical officer for Aon Fire Protection Engineering, formerly Schirmer Engineering, and received his B.S. degree in fire protection engineering from the Illinois Institute of Technology in 1979 and his M.S. degree in fire protection engineering from the University of Maryland in 1992. Mr. O'Connor is the chair of the Society of Fire Protection Engineers' Task Group on Human Behavior and is currently the chair of the NFPA 72 Fire Alarm Code Committee on Initiating Devices. He is also a member of six other NFPA technical committees that include NFPA *101* and

5000. Mr. O'Connor has authored six Fire Protection Research Foundation projects in the areas of fire detection and fire suppression and is the recipient of the Research Foundation's Ronald K. Mengel Award for his work on smoke detection on deep beamed ceilings. He also is the co-chair of the Council on Tall Buildings and Urban Habitats (CTBUH) Fire Safety Working Group.

Warren E. Olsen (Chapters 1, 10)

Warren E. Olsen, CFPS, CBO, is a fire protection consultant and partner with FSCI-Fire Safety Consultants, Inc., at the firm's Elgin, Illinois, headquarters, where he manages the building and life safety division. Mr. Olsen spent 30 years in the fire service, retiring as a battalion chief, and has more than 37 years in fire protection. He is currently chair of the Technical Committee on Supervising Station Alarm Systems and previously served on the Technical Committee for Notification Appliances. Mr. Olsen teaches seminars on the *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code* for NFPA and FSCI, as well as fire fighter and fire officer training classes at the college level. Mr. Olsen holds a B.S. degree in fire service management from Southern Illinois University and is a certified fire protection specialist and certified building official.

Robert P. Schifiliti (Chapter 18, Annex D, Supplement 2)

Robert P. Schifiliti, P.E., FSFPE, is chair of the NFPA Signaling Systems for the Protection of Life and Property Technical Correlating Committee, which is responsible for the development of *NFPA 72, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code,* and *NFPA 720, Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment*. He is a member of the Notification Appliances chapter committee for NFPA 72 and chaired that committee from 1993 to 2003. Prior to that he was a member of the Initiating Devices chapter and chaired the Task Group on Automatic Detector Spacing. Mr. Schifiliti is also chair of the NFPA Fire Protection Research Foundation's Detection and Alarm Research Council and past chair of the Council's Research Planning Committee. In addition to this handbook, he is a contributing author to the NFPA *101®, Life Safety Code Handbook®,* and the *Fire Protection Handbook®*. He serves as one of several faculty for NFPA's Fire Alarm Workshop and was the prime developer of the 1993, 1996, 2007, and 2010 edition workshops. He is a licensed fire protection engineer and holds a master of science degree in fire protection engineering from Worcester Polytechnic Institute.

About the Editors

Lee F. Richardson

Lee F. Richardson is a Senior Electrical Engineer at NFPA, where he is responsible for *NFPA 72®*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, and *NFPA 720, Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment*. His responsibilities have also included NFPA 85, *Boiler and Combustion Systems Hazards Code*; NFPA 86, *Standard for Ovens and Furnaces*; NFPA 86C, *Standard for Industrial Furnaces Using a Special Processing Atmosphere*; and NFPA 86D, *Standard for Industrial Furnaces Using Vacuum as an Atmosphere*. Mr. Richardson has also played an active role in the staffing duties for the code-making panel processing of proposals and comments for recent editions of *NFPA 70®*, *National Electrical Code®*. He is also a member of the ASME A17.1, *Elevator and Escalator Safety Code,* Emergency Operations Committee.

Mr. Richardson holds a bachelor of science degree in Electrical Engineering from Lowell Technological Institute (now part of the University of Massachusetts). Prior to his work at NFPA, he worked for more than 20 years as an instrumentation and controls engineer in the engineering and design of commercial power plants, particularly nuclear power plants.

Mr. Richardson has written articles for the *NFPA Journal,* and he is the author of the Fire Alarm Systems chapter of the *Fire and Life Safety Inspection Manual* and the co-editor of the 2002 and 2007 editions of the *National Fire Alarm Code Handbook* and the 2010 edition of the *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code Handbook.*

Richard J. Roux

Richard J. Roux, SET, FAI, FAM, is Senior Electrical Specialist at NFPA. He serves as staff liaison to several NFPA technical committees, including NFPA 730, 731, 780, 790, and 791. He provides advisory service and field service, as well as other technical support for these documents as well as for *NFPA 72®*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code.* He joined NFPA after 25 years in the fire detection systems field.

Mr. Roux is licensed in Massachusetts and is NICET Level IV certified, IMSA Level II certified in both Municipal Fire Alarm and Interior Fire Alarm. He is a member of SFPE, IMSA, and AFAA. He serves as one of several faculty for the NFPA Fire Alarm Workshop, moderator for several IMSA Fire Alarm Certification Programs, and was the technical editor for NFPA's video entitled *Inspection and Testing of Fire Alarm Systems.* He is co-author of NFPA's reference book, *NFPA Pocket Guide to Fire Alarm System Installation,* and has been editor and reviewer for many book projects. He is editor of *Designing Mass Notification Systems—A Pathway to Effective Emergency Communications.* He has written numerous articles on fire alarm systems and authored several fire alarm feature columns.

National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code Handbook

PART ONE

NFPA 72®, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, 2013 Edition, with Commentary

Part One of this handbook includes the complete text and illustrations of the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72®*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*. The text and illustrations from the Code are printed in black, as are the official requirements of *NFPA 72.* Line drawings from the Code are labeled "Figures."

Paragraphs that begin with the letter A are extracted from Annex A of the Code. Although printed in black ink, this nonmandatory material is purely explanatory in nature. For ease of use, this handbook places Annex A material after the Code paragraph to which it refers.

In addition to Code text and annexes, Part One includes commentary, which provides the history and other background information for specific paragraphs in the Code. This insightful commentary takes the reader behind the scenes, into some of the thought processes underlying the requirements.

To readily identify commentary material, commentary text, illustration captions, and tables are overprinted with a color tint panel. So that the reader may easily distinguish between figures in the Code, the line drawings and photographs in the commentary are labeled "Exhibits."

This edition of the *Handbook* includes a Frequently Asked Questions feature. The FAQs are based on commonly asked questions of the *NFPA 72* staff. The handbook also features a tool designed to help users easily identify important new or revised elements in the Code from the previous edition. Changes other than editorial are indicated by a vertical rule beside the paragraph, table, or figure in which the change occurred. Where one or more complete paragraphs have been deleted, the deletion is indicated by a bullet (•) between the paragraphs that remain.

CHAPTER 1

Administration

Chapter 1 contains the administrative rules that apply to every chapter of *NFPA 72®*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*. In addition, the first section of each chapter of the Code contains an "Application" section that outlines the scope of the chapter and its relationship with other chapters.

1.1 Scope

FAQ

How can users of NFPA codes and standards know if they are researching the right code when attempting to answer a code-related question?

Each NFPA code or standard begins with a statement clearly explaining the scope (or extent of influence) that the document has on its title's subject. In the case of *NFPA 72*, the scope clearly spells out the many items (application, installation, location, testing, and maintenance, among others) related to a fire alarm system, supervising station alarm system, public emergency alarm reporting system, fire warning equipment and emergency communications system, and their components that that are covered within the Code. See 1.1.1.

1.1.1 *NFPA 72* covers the application, installation, location, performance, inspection, testing, and maintenance of fire alarm systems, supervising station alarm systems, public emergency alarm reporting systems, fire warning equipment and emergency communications systems (ECS), and their components.

NFPA 72 provides the minimum installation, inspection, testing, maintenance, and performance requirements for fire alarm systems used in any application. Included in the Code are requirements for the application, location, and limitations of fire alarm system components, such as manual fire alarm boxes, automatic fire detectors, and notification appliances. The Code also provides the minimum requirements for fire warning equipment, which includes single- and multiple-station alarms and household fire alarm systems addressed in Chapter 29.

The 2013 edition of the Code builds upon the major reorganization of the Code that occurred in the 2010 edition. The 2013 edition added a new Chapter 7, Documentation. Within this chapter users of the Code will be able to locate submittal, completion, testing, and maintenance documents that, in previous editions of the Code, were located in multiple locations. Users of the Code should remember that the 2010 edition of the Code relocated the requirements for communications systems to Chapter 24, Emergency Communications Systems (ECS), and that these systems can include any emergency purpose, including fires. The 2013 edition of the Code continues to refine the requirements for these types of systems. New users of the Code should understand that the organization of the Code as it currently stands facilitates the application of requirements common to both fire systems and emergency signaling systems. The technical committees have not lost focus on the need to clearly present requirements for fire alarm systems, yet also understand that many other emergency signaling conditions may need to be addressed. Often this occurs in conjunction with a fire alarm system, but other times it does not. Therefore, the Code attempts to deal with both types of scenarios.

The organization of the Code conceptually places Code content into four common groupings:

1. Administrative chapters, which include Administration; Referenced Publications; Definitions; and Documentation
2. Support chapters, which include Fundamentals; Circuits and Pathways; Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance; Initiating Devices; and Notification Appliances
3. System chapters, which include Emergency Control Function Interfaces; Protected Premises Fire Alarm Systems; Emergency Communications Systems (ECS); Supervising Station Alarm Systems; Public Emergency Alarm Reporting Systems; and Single- and Multiple-Station Alarms and Household Fire Alarm Systems
4. Usability annexes, which include Annex A, Explanatory Material; Annex B, Engineering Guide for Automatic Fire Detector Spacing; Annex C, System Performance and Design Guide; Annex D, Speech Intelligibility; Annex E, Sample Ordinance Adopting *NFPA 72*; Annex F, Wiring Diagrams and Guide for Testing Fire Alarm Circuits; and Annex G, Informational References

The "reserved" chapters were added to avoid continual renumbering of the existing chapters in the Code to ultimately improve its usability. A chapter has not so much been "reserved" as it has not been assigned a topic. In the 2010 edition of the Code Chapter 7 was "reserved," but this tag was removed for the 2013 edition by the addition of a chapter on documentation.

FAQ Does *NFPA 72* require the installation of a fire alarm system or other emergency system?

NFPA 72 does not mandate the installation of a fire alarm system, fire warning equipment, or emergency communications systems. The need for the installation of these systems or equipment is established through a framework of higher level mandates established through the requirements of NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®; *NFPA 5000*®, *Building Construction and Safety Code*®; and NFPA 1, *Fire Code*; as well as other building codes; federal, state, or local ordinances; insurance company requirements; military design criteria; corporate policies; other organizational policies (both private and public); and the individual needs of the property owner or occupant. *NFPA 72* provides the requirements for how to install this equipment regardless of the reason it is installed. See 1.2.4 and related annex material in A.1.2.4.

1.1.2 The provisions of this chapter apply throughout the Code unless otherwise noted.

Chapter 1 provides a foundation from which to apply the rules of the Code. These administrative rules apply throughout the Code but can be modified by the special requirements set forth in the subsequent chapters. As an example, Section 1.4 indicates that the requirements of the Code are not intended to be retroactively applied except for the requirements of inspection, testing, and maintenance of systems as noted in 14.1.4.

In order to provide a consistent framework for users, all NFPA documents follow a standardized format, which is specified in the *Manual of Style for NFPA Technical Committee Documents.* This format is particularly specific for the administrative rules in Chapter 1.

1.2* Purpose

A.1.2 Fire alarm systems intended for life safety should be designed, installed, and maintained to provide indication and warning of abnormal fire conditions. The system should alert building occupants and summon appropriate aid in adequate time to allow for occupants to travel to a safe place and for rescue operations to occur. The fire alarm system should be part of a life safety plan that also includes a combination of prevention, protection, egress, and other features particular to that occupancy.

1.2.1 The purpose of this Code is to define the means of signal initiation, transmission, notification, and annunciation; the levels of performance; and the reliability of the various types of fire alarm systems, supervising station alarm systems, public emergency alarm reporting systems, fire warning equipment, emergency communications systems, and their components.

The Code describes the various types of alarm and supervisory initiating devices as well as alarm, supervisory, and trouble audible and visible notification appliances for fire alarm and other emergency systems. Requirements for how these devices and appliances must be installed and used and how they must perform are provided in the Code. The Code also describes the types of systems, the methods of signal transmission, and the features that determine system reliability and performance. However, the Code is not an installation specification, an approval guide, or a training manual.

1.2.2 This Code defines the features associated with these systems and also provides information necessary to modify or upgrade an existing system to meet the requirements of a particular system classification.

Whenever a system is modified or updated, it is vital that the system designer have a thorough understanding of the existing equipment, including its capabilities and the system's wiring (i.e., circuit class, type, and configuration). Where applicable, the software and firmware of existing systems need to be examined to verify compatibility with the new equipment. Often, the existing equipment is too old to interface easily with the newer technology used in the planned additional equipment. The existing equipment may or may not be able to be modified to conform to current Code requirements.

1.2.3 This Code establishes minimum required levels of performance, extent of redundancy, and quality of installation but does not establish the only methods by which these requirements are to be achieved.

NFPA 72 provides a minimum set of requirements. A designer may choose to exceed the requirements of the Code, based upon a risk assessment of the premises in which the system is to be installed. The requirements of the Code apply to voluntary installations as well as mandated installations.

1.2.4* This Code shall not be interpreted to require a level of protection that is greater than that which would otherwise be required by the applicable building or fire code.

A.1.2.4 The intent of this paragraph is to make it clear that the protection requirements are derived from the applicable building or fire code, not from *NFPA 72*.

As noted in the commentary following 1.1.1, the need for a fire alarm system, fire warning equipment, or an emergency communications system is established outside the requirements of *NFPA 72* through a framework that includes other codes, standards, and jurisdictional documents. The level of protection required by this framework varies depending on factors such as the type of occupancy (Use Group), building height, and its occupancy load. Variations can include the type of detection (manual, automatic, or both), the extent of detection coverage (complete, partial, or selective), the need for occupant notification (audible, visible, or both), the need to monitor manual and automatic fire suppression systems and features, the need for a particular type of emergency communications system, the need for emergency forces notification (including automatic transmission of alarm signals to an off-site location), and other protection features. *NFPA 72* will normally be the referenced alarm system document included within the specified requirements and the need for compliance with the Code is often clearly stated.

Once the need for a fire alarm system, other fire warning equipment, or an emergency communications system has been established, the protection features have been specified, and *NFPA 72* has been referenced, the system and equipment must conform to all the applicable requirements of the Code. For instance, *NFPA 72* includes numerous minimum requirements common to all systems to ensure the reliability and performance of the system, such as requirements for monitoring the integrity of circuits and power supplies. In other cases, minimum requirements are included for specific features such as survivability of audible and visible notification appliance circuits when systems are used for partial evacuation or relocation of occupants or other emergency communications purposes. Although these items may not be discussed within the framework of other codes, standards, and jurisdictional documents, once *NFPA 72* is referenced, the minimum installation requirements of *NFPA 72* must be followed for a Code-compliant installation.

When conflicts exist between the various codes, standards, and other jurisdictional documents, one must understand the order in which codes are enforced. Typically, when *NFPA 72* is referenced by another document and that document, such as a building or fire code, provides a requirement that conflicts (either is more or less stringent) with *NFPA 72*, the user must first follow the requirements in the document referencing *NFPA 72*. Fortunately, many of the building and fire code alarm system equipment requirements, and those in *NFPA 72*, are now identical, but instances may occur when this is not the case.

FAQ Where the required system features are not specified through a framework of higher level mandates, who must determine the needs and features?

Many of the requirements of *NFPA 72* are stated in conditional terms such as "Where required. . . ." The needs and features of the system as determined by the framework noted in the commentary following 1.1.1 provide the basis for the application of these requirements. Where the needs and features of the system are not specified by other codes, standards, or jurisdictional documents, they still need to be determined. The system designer in conjunction with the authority having jurisdiction and the system owner must establish these needs and features as a part of the basis of the system design. This collaboration is especially true for systems that are installed voluntarily (nonrequired systems). The requirements of *NFPA 72* also apply to the installation of nonrequired systems. See 1.1.1.

1.3 Application

1.3.1 Alarm systems shall be classified as follows:

Subsection 1.3.1 was revised and reorganized in the 2010 edition of the Code to reflect the more general category of "alarm systems." As noted in the commentary following 1.1.1, some systems formerly identified as "fire alarm" systems are now identified as "alarm" systems since they can also serve other purposes.

(1) Fire alarm systems
  (a) Household fire alarm systems

Fire warning equipment in residential-type occupancies is installed to warn the occupants of a fire emergency so they can immediately evacuate the building. The term *fire warning equipment*, defined in 3.3.109, can comprise a *household fire alarm system*, defined in 3.3.105.2, or *single-station* or *multiple-station alarms*, defined in 3.3.262 and 3.3.161. The requirements for fire warning equipment are detailed in Chapter 29. These requirements typically apply to certain occupancies such as one- and two-family dwellings or portions of certain occupancies such as sleeping rooms or guest suites of hotels, and the dwelling units of apartment and condominium buildings.

(b) Protected premises (local) fire alarm systems

The primary purpose of most fire alarm systems within a protected premises is to warn building occupants to evacuate the premises. Other purposes of these fire alarm systems include actuating or monitoring the building fire protection features, providing property protection, ensuring mission continuity, providing heritage preservation, and providing environmental protection. The term *protected premises (local) fire alarm system* applies to any fire alarm system located at the protected premises, including *building fire alarm systems, dedicated function fire alarm systems*, and *releasing fire alarm systems.* See 3.3.105.4 for definitions of these systems. Chapter 23 describes the requirements for fire alarm systems within protected premises.

(2) Supervising station alarm systems

Supervising station alarm systems, described in Chapter 26, provide the means of communication between the protected premises and a particular supervising station location. Alarm systems that transmit their signals to a particular supervising station location are categorized into one of the types of supervising station alarm systems that are addressed in 1.3.1(2)(a) through 1.3.1(2)(c). While *NFPA 72* does not specify which type of supervising station system must be used, and most other model building and fire codes allow the flexibility to use any of the types described in *NFPA 72*, some jurisdictions include within their regulations a specific type of supervising station alarm system. System designers should verify local requirements during project planning.

(a) Central station (service) alarm systems

Central station (service) alarm systems typically involve fire alarm systems of those protected premises where signals are supervised by a listed central station providing central station service. [As noted in the commentary following 1.3.1(2)(b), a listed central station can also provide remote supervising station service.] The term *central station service alarm system,* defined in 3.3.284.1, includes installation, testing, and maintenance of the supervised system as well as monitoring, alarm retransmission to the fire department, runner service, and record keeping. The elements of central station service must be provided by a listed central station or a listed central station in combination with a listed alarm service local company, controlled and operated by a person, firm, or corporation whose business is the furnishing of such service. As the *prime contractor,* defined in 3.3.202, such companies will have obtained specific listing from a third-party listing agency acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction as a provider of central station service. Central station service may be used where a facility has either a high risk of loss or a high value. For example, a facility that has a large number of nonambulatory people may benefit from central station service. Similarly, a high-hazard or high-value manufacturing facility may benefit from central station service. Central station service may also be used for the supervision of sprinkler systems in which monitoring at a constantly attended location is required. See Section 26.3 for requirements pertaining to alarm systems for central station service.

(b) Remote supervising station alarm systems

Where permitted, if a building owner does not want to use a central station (service) alarm system, if a proprietary supervising station alarm system is not appropriate, or if a public emergency alarm reporting system is not available, then the owner can choose to use a remote supervising station alarm system. These systems provide a means for transmitting alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals from the protected premises to a remote location. The remote location will be the *communications center* (see 3.3.53), a fire station, or responsible governmental agency, or, if permitted by the authority having jurisdiction, an alternative location approved by the authority having jurisdiction such as a listed central station. Because the communications center does not always respond to supervisory and trouble signals, the use of a privately operated remote supervising station may be needed. Note that a listed central supervising station can also be used to provide remote supervising station service and in doing so needs to comply only with the requirements for remote supervising station alarm systems. See Section 26.5 for requirements pertaining to remote supervising station alarm systems.

(c) Proprietary supervising station alarm systems

Proprietary supervising station alarm systems typically involve the fire alarm systems of those protected premises where the signals are monitored by a supervising station under the same ownership as the protected premises. The supervising station can be located at the protected property or at one of multiple protected properties. The property may consist of a single building, such as a high-rise building, or several buildings, such as at a college campus, where the dormitories and other buildings report to a single proprietary supervising station at the campus police department or campus fire department. The property may be contiguous or noncontiguous. If noncontiguous, it may consist of protected properties at remote locations, such as across town or across the country. An example of a proprietary supervising station with contiguous property is a college campus. A proprietary supervising station with noncontiguous property could be a retail store chain with properties across the country that are monitored from a single location owned by the retail store chain. See Section 26.4 for requirements pertaining to proprietary supervising stations alarm systems.

(3) Public emergency alarm reporting systems

FAQ What is a public emergency alarm reporting system?

Public emergency alarm reporting systems, formerly called public fire alarm reporting systems or municipal fire alarm systems, involve systems of alarm initiating devices, receiving equipment, and connecting circuits used to transmit alarms from street locations to the communications center. Public emergency alarm reporting systems provide publicly accessible alarm boxes at strategic locations throughout a municipality. A *publicly accessible alarm box*, defined in 3.3.12.5, is an enclosure accessible to the public that houses a manually operated transmitter. Citizens initiate an emergency alarm signal by actuating one of these alarm boxes.

Auxiliary systems provide a direct means of communication between the protected premises and the communications center using public emergency alarm reporting systems. An auxiliary system provides a connection from the system at the protected premises to a public emergency alarm reporting system auxiliary box or master box. An *auxiliary alarm box,* defined in 3.3.12.1, is an alarm box that can only be operated remotely. A *master alarm box*, defined in 3.3.12.4, is a publicly accessible alarm box that is equipped for remote actuation. If a municipality does not have a public emergency alarm reporting system, then an auxiliary alarm system cannot be provided. See Chapter 27 for requirements pertaining to public emergency alarm reporting systems and auxiliary alarm systems.

(a) Auxiliary alarm systems — local energy type

Typically, when a fire alarm signal at the protected premises is actuated, contacts in the fire alarm system control unit at the protected premises actuate a circuit that, in turn, causes a public emergency alarm reporting system auxiliary or master box to transmit a fire alarm signal to the communications center.

Power to operate the local energy interface circuit comes from the fire alarm system control unit at the protected premises. In addition, the fire alarm system control unit at the protected premises monitors the interface circuit for integrity and monitors the set or unset condition of the public emergency alarm reporting system auxiliary or master box. A wired public emergency alarm reporting system, a series telephone public emergency alarm reporting system, and a wireless public emergency alarm reporting system all use a local energy interface circuit (provided in the fire alarm control unit at the protected premises) to allow a fire alarm system control unit at the protected premises to actuate the auxiliary or master box. See 27.6.3.2.2 for requirements pertaining to local energy–type auxiliary systems.

(b) Auxiliary alarm systems — shunt type

As an alternative to a local energy interface, some wired public emergency alarm reporting system boxes offer a shunt connection. A closed contact at the protected premises is electrically connected to a circuit that is derived from the public emergency alarm reporting telegraph circuit. When the closed contact opens the circuit and removes the shunt, the box trips and initiates a signal to the communications center.

A ground fault on the shunt circuit also becomes a ground fault on the public emergency alarm reporting circuit. If an open fault occurs on the public emergency alarm reporting circuit, a subsequent actuation of the shunt circuit will not cause the public emergency alarm reporting box to initiate an alarm signal. Unfortunately, unless the fire department somehow notifies all the building owners that the public emergency alarm reporting circuit has an impairment, the owners will not know that their connection to the public circuit is also impaired.

The Code limits the devices connected to a shunt circuit to manual fire alarm boxes and automatic sprinkler waterflow switches. Automatic fire detectors are not permitted to be connected to a shunt circuit. A shunt type system has very specific requirements and is not allowed to be interconnected to a protected premises system unless the city circuits entering the protected premises are installed in rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit. These wiring methods help to prevent faults in one premises from disabling the city circuit. Faults in the circuit can prevent transmission from other protected premises, leaving them unprotected. Because the wiring necessary to actuate shunt type master boxes must enter the protected premises, and damage or tampering to these circuits is out of the control of the fire department, many jurisdictions do not allow shunt type master boxes to be installed on their municipal loop. See 27.6.3.2.2 for requirements pertaining to shunt type auxiliary systems.

1.3.2 Emergency communications systems shall be classified as follows:

As noted in the commentary following 1.1.1, the scope of the Code has expanded to include a number of emergency communications systems. An *emergency communications system*, in accordance with 3.3.87, is "a system for the protection of life by indicating the existence of an emergency situation and communicating information necessary to facilitate an appropriate response and action." Referring to 24.2.3, "an emergency communications system is intended to communicate information about emergencies including, but not limited to, fire, human-caused events (accidental and intentional), other dangerous situations, accidents, and natural disasters." Some of these systems may be used as part of a stand-alone fire alarm system, while others may be used as part of a combination (fire alarm) system or as part of another emergency system.

(1) One-way emergency communications systems

One-way emergency communications systems are defined in 3.3.87.1. These systems are intended to broadcast emergency messages using audible, visible, or textual means. Refer to Section 24.4.

(a) Distributed recipient mass notification systems

Distributed recipient mass notification systems are intended to communicate directly with targeted individuals and groups that may or may not be in a contiguous area. Refer to 3.3.87.1.1 and 24.4.5. Distributed recipient mass notification systems include net-centric alerting systems (NCASs) that are based on internet protocol (IP) technologies. NCASs leverage the IP network infrastructure to instantly reach those personnel who have access to nearly any IP-connected devices [such as pop-up alerts on personal computers (PCs), text messages to personal data assistants (PDAs) and cellular telephones, electronic mail to IP-capable cellular telephones, and recorded voice messages to voice over-IP (VoIP) telephones and PCs]. Additionally, NCASs can be used to actuate, through a single interface, non-IP alerting systems, such as in-building mass notification systems, wide-area mass notification systems, and traditional dial-up telephone alerting systems.

(b) In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems

In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems (EVACS) are the traditional emergency voice/alarm communications systems used for fire alarm systems. As the name implies, these systems are intended for fire alarm system applications within buildings and have traditionally been used by emergency forces upon their arrival to a building to update occupants on the need to evacuate, relocate, or stay in place, and to provide other specific information. Prior to the 2010 edition of the Code, the requirements for these systems were located in the protected premises fire alarm system chapter. In the 2010 edition, these requirements were relocated to the emergency communications systems chapter because they fall under the scope of an emergency communications system. Refer to 3.3.87.1.2 and 24.4.2.

(c) In-building mass notification systems

In-building mass notification systems, defined in 3.3.87.1.3, are somewhat similar in concept to an in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system, but their potential application is much broader. The requirements for these systems are more extensive and reflect the level of sophistication needed for systems that may involve a variety of complex scenarios (including fire scenarios). Refer to 24.4.3.

(d) Wide area mass notification systems

Wide area mass notification systems are intended to serve outdoor areas, such as a campus or an entire community. These systems may also communicate with other notification systems provided for other campus areas, military bases, municipalities, or other similar areas. Refer to 3.3.87.1.4 and 24.4.4. Wide area mass notification systems can also be integrated with in-building mass notification systems.

(2) Two-way emergency communications systems

Two-way emergency communications systems, defined in 3.3.87.2, are used to facilitate the exchange of information and the communication of instructions in buildings. Some systems are intended primarily for emergency services personnel or building fire wardens, while others are intended for occupants such as those in an area of refuge.

(a) In-building emergency communications systems

In-building emergency communications systems include two-way, in-building wired emergency services communications systems (two-way telephone communications systems) often used by emergency forces, two-way radio communications enhancement systems (bi-directional antenna and signal booster systems) also often used by emergency forces, area of refuge emergency communications systems typically used by individuals needing assistance from a protected area during an emergency, and elevator emergency communications systems. Refer to Section 24.5.

1.3.3 Any reference or implied reference to a particular type of hardware shall be for the purpose of clarity and shall not be interpreted as an endorsement.

NFPA does not manufacture, test, distribute, endorse, approve, certify, or list services, products, or components. See Section 3.2 and the associated Annex A material for definitions of the terms *approved* and *listed.*

1.3.4 The intent and meaning of the terms used in this Code shall be, unless otherwise defined herein, the same as those of *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*®.

For the installation of the systems addressed by *NFPA 72, NFPA 70*®, *National Electrical Code*® (*NEC*®), must also be used. To avoid confusion, the definitions and use of terms that are found in *NFPA 72* are the same as those found in the *NEC*, unless a separate definition is provided in this Code.

1.4 Retroactivity

1.4.1 Unless otherwise noted, it is not intended that the provisions of this document be applied to facilities, equipment, structures, or installations that were existing or approved for construction or installation prior to the effective date of the document.

FAQ Are the requirements of *NFPA 72* retroactive?

With the exception of Chapter 14, the Code does not apply retroactively to existing installations. See the commentary following 14.1.4, which clearly indicates the retroactive application of Chapter 14 requirements.

It should be noted that the requirements of Chapter 29 were rewritten in the 2007 edition of the Code to exclude any reference to "new" or "existing" construction. The retroactive application of the requirements of Chapter 29 is not intended to automatically occur as a result of these changes. However, as changes are made to existing installations of fire warning equipment, it is expected that the full requirements of Chapter 29 would apply unless exempted by governing codes or statutes or that chapter.

1.4.2 In those cases where it is determined by the authority having jurisdiction that the existing situation involves a distinct hazard to life or property, retroactive application of the provisions of this document shall be permitted.

From time to time, the authority having jurisdiction may feel that while the system still meets the minimum requirements of the version of the Code that was in effect at the time of installation, the system may no longer meet the minimum requirements for the premises' current use, which may have changed since the fire alarm system was originally installed and approved. A change of occupancy use, tenant improvements to the building, or system upgrades may be the reason. Another reason may be that the system is not acting reliably, resulting in constant repairs that place in question the likely effectiveness of the system should it need to function as intended during its original design. Care should be exercised not to interpret 1.4.2 as requiring, as an example, the replacement of an entire notification appliance system simply because a single component, such as a non-temporal notification appliance, is inoperative and needs replacing.

1.5 Equivalency

1.5.1 Nothing in this Code shall prevent the use of systems, methods, devices, or appliances of equivalent or superior quality, strength, fire resistance, effectiveness, durability, and safety over those prescribed by this Code.

1.5.2 Technical documentation shall be submitted to the authority having jurisdiction to demonstrate equivalency.

1.5.3 The systems, methods, devices, or appliances that are found equivalent shall be approved.

Devices or systems that do not meet the specific requirements of the Code can be presented to the authority having jurisdiction as equivalent to the Code. Technical documentation to substantiate the request for equivalency must be submitted with the request. Examples of technical documentation include testing laboratory reports, engineering calculations, experiential data, and documented engineering judgments. The authority having jurisdiction determines whether a product, method, or device is suitable. Also refer to the definition of the term *approved*in 3.2.1, the related Annex A material, and related commentary.

Often, for various reasons, authorities having jurisdiction must use earlier referenced editions of the Code during their daily duties and, therefore, may be provided with little guidance when presented with new types of systems or technology for design or permit review and approval. This should not result in the avoidance of new technology by a designer or a rejection of a submittal by a plan reviewer. Users of the Code should understand that the use of specific portions of the more current editions of the Code is permitted and may be necessary when earlier editions of the Code do not provide specific prescriptive- or performance-based design options or alternatives to guide in the design or review of a system or systems.

1.6 Units and Formulas

1.6.1 The units of measure in this Code are presented in U.S. Customary Units (inch-pound units).

1.6.2 Where presented, the International System (SI) of Units follow the inch-pound units in parentheses.

1.6.3 Where both systems of units are presented, either system shall be acceptable for satisfying the requirements in this Code.

1.6.4 Where both systems of units are presented, users of this Code shall apply one set of units consistently and shall not alternate between units.

1.6.5* The values presented for measurements in this Code are expressed with a degree of precision appropriate for practical application and enforcement. It is not intended that the application or enforcement of these values be more precise than the precision expressed.

A.1.6.5 Where dimensions are expressed in inches, it is intended that the precision of the measurement be 1 in., thus plus or minus ½ in. The conversion and presentation of dimensions in millimeters would then have a precision of 25 mm, thus plus or minus 13 mm.

Section 1.6 includes requirements for the application and enforcement of the units of measure provided in the Code. Where measurements are presented in the Code in terms of inches (and millimeters), the precision assumed for enforcement is 1 inch (25 millimeters). Values presented in the Code are not intended to be enforced to a higher level of precision.

1.6.6 Where extracted text contains values expressed in only one system of units, the values in the extracted text have been retained without conversion to preserve the values established by the responsible technical committee in the source document.

1.7 Code Adoption Requirements

This Code shall be administered and enforced by the authority having jurisdiction designated by the governing authority. *(See Annex E for sample wording for enabling legislation.)*

References Cited in Commentary

Manual of Style for NFPA Technical Committee Documents, 2004 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 1, *Fire Code,* 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code®*, 2011 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA *101®*, *Life Safety Code®*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 551, *Guide for the Evaluation of Fire Risk Assessments*, 2010 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 5000®, *Building Construction and Safety Code®*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

CHAPTER

2

Referenced Publications

This chapter lists the publications that are referenced in the mandatory chapters of *NFPA 72*®. These mandatory referenced publications are needed for the effective use of and compliance with *NFPA 72*. The requirements contained in these references constitute part of the requirements of *NFPA 72*. Annex G lists nonmandatory publications that are referenced in the nonmandatory annexes of *NFPA 72*.

2.1 General

The documents or portions thereof listed in this chapter are referenced within this Code and shall be considered part of the requirements of this document.

2.2 NFPA Publications

National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471.

NFPA 10, *Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers,* 2010 edition.
NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems,* 2013 edition.
NFPA 25, *Standard for the Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems,* 2011 edition.
NFPA 37, *Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines,* 2010 edition.
NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code*®, 2011 edition.
NFPA 75, *Standard for the Fire Protection of Information Technology Equipment,* 2013 edition.
NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems,* 2012 edition.
NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®, 2012 edition.
NFPA 110, *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems,* 2013 edition.
NFPA 111, *Standard on Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems,* 2013 edition.
NFPA 170, *Standard for Fire Safety and Emergency Symbols,* 2012 edition.
NFPA 601, *Standard for Security Services in Fire Loss Prevention,* 2010 edition.
NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment,* 2012 edition.
NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems,* 2013 edition.
NFPA 1600®, *Standard on Disaster/Emergency Management and Business Continuity Programs,* 2010 edition.
NFPA 1620, *Standard for Pre-Incident Planning,* 2010 edition.

2.3 Other Publications

2.3.1 ANSI Publications. American National Standards Institute, Inc., 25 West 43rd Street, 4th Floor, New York, NY 10036.

ANSI A-58.1, *Building Code Requirements for Minimum Design Loads in Buildings and Other Structures*.

ANSI S1.4a, *Specifications for Sound Level Meters*, 1985, reaffirmed 2006.

ANSI S3.41, *American National Standard Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal*, 1990, reaffirmed 2008.

ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44–10, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, 2010.

ANSI/IEEE C2, *National Electrical Safety Code*, 2007.

ANSI/TIA-568-C.3, *Optical Fiber Cabling Components Standard*, June 2008.

ANSI/UL 217, *Standard for Single and Multiple Station Smoke Alarms*, 2006, revised 2012.

ANSI/UL 268, *Standard for Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems*, 2009.

ANSI/UL 827, *Standard for Central-Station Alarm Services*, 2008.

ANSI/UL 864, *Standard for Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems*, 2003, revised 2011.

ANSI/UL 985, *Standard for Household Fire Warning System Units*, 2000, revised 2008.

ANSI/UL 1638, *Visual Signaling Appliances — Private Mode Emergency and General Utility Signaling*, 2008.

ANSI/UL 1730, *Standard for Smoke Detector Monitors and Accessories for Individual Living Units of Multifamily Residences and Hotel/Motel Rooms*, 2006, revised 2007.

ANSI/UL 1971, *Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired*, 2002, revised 2008.

ANSI/UL 1981, *Central Station Automation Systems*, 2003.

UL 2017, *Standard for General-Purpose Signaling Devices and Systems*, 2008, revised 2011.

ANSI/UL 2572, *Mass Notification Systems*, 2011.

ANSI/UL 60950, *Information Technology Equipment — Safety — Part 1: General Requirements*, 2007.

2.3.2 EIA Publications. Electronic Industries Alliance, 2500 Wilson Boulevard, Arlington, VA 22201-3834.

EIA Tr 41.3, *Telephones*.

2.3.3 IMSA Publication. International Municipal Signal Association, 165 East Union Street, Newark, NY 14513-0539.

“IMSA Official Wire and Cable Specifications,” 1998.

2.3.4 ISO Publications. International Organization for Standardization, 1, ch. de la Voie-Creuse, Case postale 56, CH-1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland.

ISO 7731, *Danger signals for work places — Auditory danger signals*.

2.3.5 Telcordia Publications. Telcordia Technologies, One Telcordia Drive, Piscataway, NJ 08854.

GR-506-CORE, LATA Switching Systems Generic Requirements: Signaling for Analog Interface, 2006.

GR-909-CORE, Fiber in the Loop Systems Generic Requirements, 2004.

2.3.6 Other Publications.

Merriam-*Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*, 11th edition, Merriam-Webster, Inc., Springfield, MA, 2003.

2.4 References for Extracts in Mandatory Sections

NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code®,* 2011 edition.
NFPA 96, *Standard for Ventilation Control and Fire Protection of Commercial Cooking Operations,* 2011 edition.
NFPA *101®*, *Life Safety Code®,* 2012 edition.
NFPA 654, *Standard for the Prevention of Fire and Dust Explosions from the Manufacturing, Processing, and Handling of Combustible Particulate Solids,* 2013 edition.
NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment,* 2012 edition.
NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems,* 2013 edition.
NFPA 5000®, *Building Construction and Safety Code®,* 2012 edition.

CHAPTER 3

Definitions

All definitions that apply to subjects covered throughout the Code are located in Chapter 3. In addition, where a particular term is not defined in Chapter 3 but is defined in *NFPA 70®*, *National Electrical Code®* (*NEC®*), the definition contained in the *NEC* applies, in accordance with 1.3.4. Otherwise, where terms are not defined, the ordinary meanings as given in *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary,* 11th edition, apply (see 2.3.6).

3.1 General

The definitions contained in this chapter shall apply to the terms used in this Code. Where terms are not defined in this chapter or within another chapter, they shall be defined using their ordinarily accepted meanings within the context in which they are used. *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*, 11th edition, shall be the source for the ordinarily accepted meaning.

3.2 NFPA Official Definitions

The definitions in Section 3.2 come from the NFPA Regulations Governing Committee Projects. These terms are commonly found in NFPA technical committee documents, and the definitions cannot be altered without the approval of the NFPA Standards Council.

3.2.1* Approved. Acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

A.3.2.1 Approved. The National Fire Protection Association does not approve, inspect, or certify any installations, procedures, equipment, or materials; nor does it approve or evaluate testing laboratories. In determining the acceptability of installations, procedures, equipment, or materials, the authority having jurisdiction may base acceptance on compliance with NFPA or other appropriate standards. In the absence of such standards, said authority may require evidence of proper installation, procedure, or use. The authority having jurisdiction may also refer to the listings or labeling practices of an organization that is concerned with product evaluations and is thus in a position to determine compliance with appropriate standards for the current production of listed items.

FAQ

Who approves equipment and installations?

The term *approved* has a specific meaning in the Code, as defined in 3.2.1, which is "acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction." Only the authority having jurisdiction can approve equipment and installations. The authority having jurisdiction may choose to grant approval on the basis of whether or not a product has received a listing and has been labeled by a qualified testing laboratory. However, listing or labeling alone does not constitute approval. (See 3.2.4 and 3.2.5 for the defined terms *labeled* and *listed*.)

Whereas 10.3.1 requires that all installed fire alarm equipment be listed, Section 1.5 allows the use of equivalent methods and equipment where equivalency has been demonstrated to the authority having jurisdiction. The authority having jurisdiction may also grant approval on this basis. Refer to Section 10.20 for documentation and notification requirements.

The authority having jurisdiction should not disapprove equipment or installations simply because the technology proposed is not referenced in the edition of the Code being used. Often, developing technology outpaces its inclusion in the Code. Therefore, the authority having jurisdiction may need to reference newer editions of the Code for guidance when deciding to accept a system design, its equipment, or its installation.

3.2.2* Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ). An organization, office, or individual responsible for enforcing the requirements of a code or standard, or for approving equipment, materials, an installation, or a procedure.

A.3.2.2 Authority Having Jurisdiction (AHJ). The phrase “authority having jurisdiction,” or its acronym AHJ, is used in NFPA documents in a broad manner, since jurisdictions and approval agencies vary, as do their responsibilities. Where public safety is primary, the authority having jurisdiction may be a federal, state, local, or other regional department or individual such as a fire chief; fire marshal; chief of a fire prevention bureau, labor department, or health department; building official; electrical inspector; or others having statutory authority. For insurance purposes, an insurance inspection department, rating bureau, or other insurance company representative may be the authority having jurisdiction. In many circumstances, the property owner or his or her designated agent assumes the role of the authority having jurisdiction; at government installations, the commanding officer or departmental official may be the authority having jurisdiction.

Any given physical property may have multiple authorities having jurisdiction, who may be concerned with life safety, property protection, mission continuity, heritage preservation, and environmental protection. Some authorities having jurisdiction may impose additional requirements beyond those of the Code. If requirements for the installation of a specific fire alarm system conflict, the installer must follow the most stringent requirements.

3.2.3* Code. A standard that is an extensive compilation of provisions covering broad subject matter or that is suitable for adoption into law independently of other codes and standards.

A.3.2.3 Code. The decision to designate a standard as a “code” is based on such factors as the size and scope of the document, its intended use and form of adoption, and whether it contains substantial enforcement and administrative provisions.

3.2.4 Labeled. Equipment or materials to which has been attached a label, symbol, or other identifying mark of an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with product evaluation, that maintains periodic inspection of production of labeled equipment or materials, and by whose labeling the manufacturer indicates compliance with appropriate standards or performance in a specified manner.

3.2.5* Listed. Equipment, materials, or services included in a list published by an organization that is acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and concerned with evaluation of products or services, that maintains periodic inspection of production of listed equipment or materials or periodic evaluation of services, and whose listing states that either the equipment, material, or service meets appropriate designated standards or has been tested and found suitable for a specified purpose.

A.3.2.5 Listed. The means for identifying listed equipment may vary for each organization concerned with product evaluation; some organizations do not recognize equipment as listed unless it is also labeled. The authority having jurisdiction should utilize the system employed by the listing organization to identify a listed product.

3.2.6 Shall. Indicates a mandatory requirement.

3.2.7 Should. Indicates a recommendation or that which is advised but not required.

3.3 General Definitions

Each of the definitions in Section 3.3 has been assigned to a specific technical committee of *NFPA 72®*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code,* by the Technical Correlating Committee on Signaling Systems for the Protection of Life and Property. The committee assignment is indicated by a designation in parenthesis at the end of each definition. These designations correlate with the committee roster for each technical committee found at the beginning of the Code. These designations, shown in sequence as provided in the Code, correlate as follows:

SIG-FUN	Technical Committee on Fundamentals of Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems
SIG-TMS	Technical Committee on Testing and Maintenance of Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems
SIG-IDS	Technical Committee on Initiating Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems
SIG-NAS	Technical Committee on Notification Appliances for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems
SIG-PRO	Technical Committee on Protected Premises Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems
SIG-ECS	Technical Committee on Emergency Communications Systems
SIG-SSS	Technical Committee on Supervising Station Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems
SIG-PRS	Technical Committee on Public Emergency Reporting Systems
SIG-HOU	Technical Committee on Single- and Multiple-Station Alarms and Household Fire Alarm Systems

3.3.1 Accessible (as applied to equipment). Admitting close approach; not guarded by locked doors, elevation, or other effective means. [**70,** 2011] (SIG-FUN)

3.3.2 Accessible (as applied to wiring methods). Capable of being removed or exposed without damaging the building structure or finish or not permanently closed in by the structure or finish of the building. [**70,** 2011] (SIG-FUN)

3.3.3 Accessible, Readily (Readily Accessible). Capable of being reached quickly for operation, renewal, or inspections without requiring those to whom ready access is requisite to climb over or remove obstacles or to resort to portable ladders, and so forth. [**70,** 2011] (SIG-FUN)

Three new terms in 3.3.1, 3.3.2, and 3.3.3 are defined in the 2013 edition of the Code. These definitions have been extracted from *NFPA 70.*

3.3.4 Accessible Spaces (as applied to detection coverage in Chapter 17). Spaces or concealed areas of construction that can be entered via openable panels, doors hatches, or other readily movable elements (e.g., ceiling tiles). (SIG-IDS)

The term *accessible spaces* is used within the requirements for total coverage in 17.5.3.1. The definition of this term is specific to this context, and it should be used rather than the definitions in 3.3.1 through 3.3.3.

3.3.5 Acknowledge. To confirm that a message or signal has been received, such as by the pressing of a button or the selection of a software command. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.6* Acoustically Distinguishable Space (ADS). An emergency communications system notification zone, or subdivision thereof, that might be an enclosed or otherwise physically defined space, or that might be distinguished from other spaces because of different acoustical, environmental, or use characteristics, such as reverberation time and ambient sound pressure level. (SIG-NAS)

As a part of the requirements for voice intelligibility in 18.4.10, the term *acoustically distinguishable space (ADS)* has been established. During the research conducted by the Fire Protection Research Foundation on how to design and test intelligible voice systems, the need to identify spaces with common acoustical characteristics became evident. Identifying these spaces would help system designers better assess the needs for design and testing of each space. It also allowed for the identification of areas that may not require voice intelligibility, depending on how the system is to be used. Also refer to the definite term *intelligible* in 3.3.136, related annex explanation in A.3.3.136, Annex D, and Supplement 2.

A.3.3.6 Acoustically Distinguishable Space (ADS). All parts of a building or area intended to have occupant notification are subdivided into ADSs as defined. Some ADSs might be designated to have voice communication capability and require that those communications be intelligible. Other spaces might not require voice intelligibility or might not be capable of reliable voice intelligibility. An ADS might have acoustical design features that are conducive for voice intelligibility, or it might be a space where voice intelligibility could be difficult or impossible to achieve. Each is still referred to as an ADS.

In smaller areas, such as those under 400 ft^2 (40 m^2), walls alone will define the ADS. In larger areas, other factors might have to be considered. In spaces that might be subdivided by temporary or movable partitions, such as ballrooms and meeting rooms, each individual configuration should be considered a separate ADS. Physical characteristics, such as a change in ceiling height of more than 20 percent, or a change in acoustical finish, such as carpet in one area and tile in another, would require those areas to be treated as separate ADSs. In larger areas, there might be noise sources that require a section to be treated as a separate ADS. Any significant change in ambient noise level or frequency might necessitate an area be considered a separate ADS.

In areas of 85 dBA or greater ambient sound pressure level, meeting the pass/fail criteria for intelligibility might not be possible, and other means of communication might be necessary. So, for example, the space immediately surrounding a printing press or other high-noise machine might be designated as a separate ADS, and the design might call for some form of effective notification but not necessarily require the ability to have intelligible voice communication. The aisles or operator's control stations might be separate ADSs where intelligible voice communication might be desired.

Significant differences in furnishings, for example, an area with tables, desks, or low dividers, adjacent to an area with high shelving, would require separate consideration. The entire desk area could be a single acoustic zone, whereas each area between shelving could be a unique zone. Essentially, any noteworthy change in the acoustical environment within an area will mandate consideration of that portion of the area to be treated as an acoustic zone. Hallways and stairwells will typically be considered as individual acoustic zones.

Spaces confined by walls with carpeting and acoustical ceilings can be deemed to be one ADS. An ADS should be an area of consistent size and material. A change of materials from carpet to hard tile, the existence of sound sources, such as decorative waterfalls, large expanses of glass, and changes in ceiling height, are all factors that might separate one ADS from another.

Each ADS might require different components and design features to achieve intelligible voice communication. For example, two ADSs with similar acoustical treatments and noise levels might have different ceiling heights. The ADS with the lower ceiling height might require more ceiling-mounted speakers to ensure that all listeners are in a direct sound field

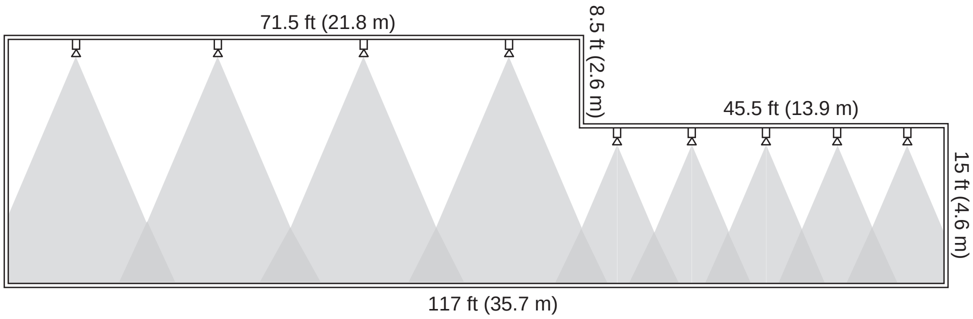


FIGURE A.3.3.6 *Illustration Demonstrating the Effect of Ceiling Height. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc.)*

(see Figure A.3.3.6). Other ADSs might benefit from the use of alternate speaker technologies, such as line arrays, to achieve intelligibility.

An ADS that differs from another because of the frequency and level of ambient noise might require the use of speakers and system components that have a wider frequency bandwidth than conventional emergency communications equipment. However, designers should not use higher bandwidth speakers in all locations, unless needed to overcome certain acoustic and ambient conditions. This is because the higher bandwidth appliance will require more energy to perform properly. This increases amplifier and wire size and power supply requirements.

In some spaces, it might be impractical to achieve intelligibility, and, in such a case, alternatives to voice evacuation might be required within such areas.

There might be some areas of a facility where there are several spaces of the same approximate size and the same acoustic properties. For example, there might be an office space with multiple individual offices, each with one speaker. If one or two are satisfactorily tested, there is no need to test all of them for speech intelligibility.

The intent is that all parts of a building or space be divided into definable ADSs. See 18.4.10.

3.3.7 Active Multiplex System. A multiplexing system in which signaling devices such as transponders are employed to transmit status signals of each initiating device or initiating device circuit within a prescribed time interval so that the lack of receipt of such a signal can be interpreted as a trouble signal. (SIG-SSS)

Circuits of active multiplex systems, defined in 3.3.7, use an interrogation and response routine to determine the status of a device or connected system control unit. Failure to receive a response signal from a device initiates a trouble signal. This interrogation routine serves to monitor the interconnecting path for integrity. See 12.6.1 for requirements pertaining to monitoring for integrity.

3.3.8 Addressable Device. A fire alarm system component with discrete identification that can have its status individually identified or that is used to individually control other functions. (SIG-IDS)

Addressable devices, defined in 3.3.8, can be either initiating devices or control/notification appliances. The circuit between the addressable devices or appliances and the fire alarm control unit is essentially a time-domain multiplex circuit and is called a signaling line circuit in the Code. Each device or appliance has an address that consists of a binary string of 1s and 0s. The fire alarm control unit communicates with devices and appliances on the circuit with a series of

EXHIBIT 3.1

Device Programming Unit and Smoke Detector. (Source: Seimens Building Technologies, Fire Safety Division, Florham Park, NJ)

EXHIBIT 3.2

Addressable Smoke Detector Showing Programming Switches. (Source: System Sensor Corp., St. Charles, IL)

voltage pulses corresponding to logical 1s and 0s and superimposed on the dc power supply. When the fire alarm control unit polls or addresses an initiating device, the initiating device responds with its status. Similarly, the fire alarm control unit can also address a control module(s) or appliance(s) and issue a command such as a transfer of a relay contact to appliances connected to the circuit. Digital addresses for each device or appliance can be assigned by the system hardware or software. Examples of addressable devices are shown in Exhibits 3.1 and 3.2.

3.3.9 Adverse Condition. Any condition occurring in a communications or transmission channel that interferes with the proper transmission or interpretation, or both, of status change signals at the supervising station. *(See also 3.3.257.10, Trouble Signal.)* (SIG-SSS)

Adverse conditions, defined in 3.3.9, include circuits or communications paths with open circuit faults or ground faults, electrical or radio frequency interference with communications paths, and circuit wiring with short-circuit faults.

3.3.10 Air Sampling–Type Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.11 Alarm. A warning of danger. (SIG-FUN)

FAQ Is the term *alarm* intended to indicate only a warning of fire danger?

The term *alarm*, defined in 3.3.11, indicates a danger condition. This fundamental change was introduced in the 2007 edition. Prior editions defined alarm as a warning of fire danger. With the inclusion of emergency communications systems and the recognition of many different alarm system purposes, the technical committee made the definition of the term *alarm* generic. Where a particular code requirement is intended to apply to a specific type of alarm, such as fire, the text will clearly state so. Otherwise, where the text says only "alarm," the requirement is intended to apply to all types of danger warnings. The phrases *supervisory alarm* and *trouble alarm* are not appropriate terms to indicate supervisory or trouble conditions. These conditions are more appropriately termed supervisory and trouble "signals" (see 3.3.257.9 and 3.3.257.10). The actions required for alarm conditions are very specific and are different from those of a trouble or supervisory condition.

3.3.12 Alarm Box.

3.3.12.1 Auxiliary Alarm Box. An alarm box that can only be operated from one or more remote initiating devices or an auxiliary alarm system used to send an alarm to the communications center. (SIG-PRS)

FAQ What is the difference between an auxiliary alarm box and a master alarm box?

An auxiliary alarm box is used to transmit alarm signals from remote initiating devices or from auxiliary alarm systems to the communications center utilizing the emergency alarm reporting system when manual initiation of an alarm signal is not required. By contrast, a master box includes the features of an auxiliary box as well as a feature allowing manual operation. Refer to the definition of *publicly accessible fire alarm box* in 3.3.221 with reference to 3.3.12. A protected premises fire alarm system connected to either an auxiliary alarm box or a master alarm box will automatically actuate the box when an alarm occurs. Upon actuation, the box transmits a coded signal to the communications center. Also see the commentary following 1.3.1(3).

3.3.12.2 Combination Fire Alarm and Guard's Tour Box. A manually operated box for separately transmitting a fire alarm signal and a distinctive guard patrol tour supervisory signal. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.12.3 Manual Fire Alarm Box. A manually operated device used to initiate a fire alarm signal. (SIG-IDS)

Operation of a manual fire alarm box, shown in Exhibit 3.3, may require one action, such as pulling a lever, or two actions, such as lifting a cover and then pulling a lever. In some institutional occupancies, building codes, NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®, and local ordinances permit the use of key-operated manual fire alarm boxes.

EXHIBIT 3.3

Typical Single-Action Manual Fire Alarm Box. (Source: The Protectowire Co., Pembroke, MA)

3.3.12.4 Master Alarm Box. A publicly accessible alarm box that can also be operated by one or more remote initiating devices or an auxiliary alarm system used to send an alarm to the communications center. (SIG-PRS)

Public emergency alarm reporting system master boxes, as shown in Exhibit 3.4, have an interface circuit that allows a protected premises fire alarm system control unit to actuate the master box whenever the system initiates a fire alarm signal.

3.3.12.5 Publicly Accessible Alarm Box. An enclosure, accessible to the public, housing a manually operated transmitter used to send an alarm to the communications center. (SIG-PRS)

Exhibit 3.5 shows a publicly accessible alarm box, also known as a municipal fire alarm box (street box). See 3.3.165.

3.3.13 Alarm Service. The service required following the receipt of an alarm signal. (SIG-SSS)

EXHIBIT 3.4

Master Box. (Source: R. B. Allen Co., North Hampton, NH)

EXHIBIT 3.5

Publicly Accessible Alarm Box. (Source: Gamewell-FCI, Northford, CT; photo courtesy of Mammoth Fire Alarms, Inc., Lowell, MA)

The action taken when an alarm signal is received is called the alarm service. The alarm service can include any or all of the following:

1. Response by a private fire brigade or public fire department
2. Dispatch of an alarm service provider's runner
3. Notification to the building owner and occupants
4. Notification to the authorities having jurisdiction

3.3.14 Alarm Signal. See 3.3.257, Signal.

3.3.15 Alarm System. See 3.3.105, Fire Alarm System; 3.3.284, Supervising Station Alarm System; 3.3.215, Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System; 3.3.87.1.2, In-Building Fire Emergency Voice/Alarm Communication System; and 3.3.87.1.3, In-Building Mass Notification System.

3.3.16 Alarm Verification Feature. A feature of automatic fire detection and alarm systems to reduce unwanted alarms wherein smoke detectors report alarm conditions for a minimum period of time, or confirm alarm conditions within a given time period after being reset, in order to be accepted as a valid alarm initiation signal. (SIG-PRO)

Alarm verification is applicable to smoke detectors only. The alarm verification feature can reduce unwanted alarm signals from transient conditions that actuate smoke detectors. The feature may reside within individual smoke detectors, or it may be a feature of the fire alarm control unit to which the smoke detectors are connected. Manufacturers of addressable/analog fire alarm systems typically do not recommend the activation of alarm verification during the initial installation. It is not intended as a means of reducing unwanted alarms due to the improper application of smoke detectors, such as installation in a location where they are exposed to unsuitable environmental conditions. Refer to 23.8.5.4.1 for the requirements related to use of alarm verification.

The alarm verification feature should not be confused with "alarm signal verification" addressed in 26.2.2 and 26.2.3. Alarm signal verification involves a process by which an alarm signal received at the supervising station can be verified by contacting authorized personnel at the protected premises prior to dispatching emergency response personnel.

3.3.17 Alert Tone. An attention-getting signal to alert occupants of the pending transmission of a voice message. (SIG-PRO)

Where voice announcements are used for other than complete evacuation, in-building fire voice/alarm communications systems precede the voice announcement with an alert tone to gain occupant attention before broadcast of the voice message. The alert tone is not considered an alarm signal, and the Code does not specify the form of the alert tone. See 24.4.2.8.3 for applicable requirements for the alert tone. Where voice announcements are used for complete evacuation, the announcement must be preceded by the emergency evacuation signal in accordance with 24.4.2.2.1.

3.3.18 Analog Initiating Device (Sensor). See 3.3.132, Initiating Device.

3.3.19 Ancillary Functions. Ancillary functions are those non-emergency activations of the fire alarm or mass notification audible, visual, and textual output circuits allowed. Ancillary functions can include general paging, background music, or other non-emergency signals. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.20 Annunciator. A unit containing one or more indicator lamps, alphanumeric displays, or other equivalent means in which each indication provides status information about a circuit, condition, or location. (SIG-FUN)

An annunciator is used to provide an on-site point of information as to where the alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal is reported within the protected premises, typically at a location determined by the authority having jurisdiction when the main fire alarm control unit is not located at the fire department's point of entry. The annunciator may be a simple lamp display with a labeled description of the zone, an alphanumeric display providing either a static or running information stream of the event, or a graphic representation of the protected premises and the location of the event. With the everyday use of computer-aided drafting (CAD), some annunciators use CAD images to display the events in real time. Requirements that relate to annunciation and annunciation zoning can be found in Section 10.18. In addition, requirements for a standard emergency service interface can be found in Section 18.11 along with guidance in A.18.11.

Exhibit 3.6 depicts a graphic annunciator in a building vestibule. Early responders have a pictorial floor plan of the building with rooms properly labeled and LEDs representing initiating devices throughout the facility. Through the glass, one can see the auxiliary master box and its location-designating light.

EXHIBIT 3.6
Graphic Annunciator in Vestibule.

3.3.21 Apartment Building. A building or portion thereof containing three or more dwelling units with independent cooking and bathroom facilities. (SIG-HOU) [**5000**, 2012]

3.3.22 Audible Notification Appliance. See 3.3.173, Notification Appliance.

3.3.23 Automatic Extinguishing System Supervisory Device. See 3.3.132, Initiating Device.

3.3.24 Automatic Fire Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.25 Automatic Fire Extinguishing or Suppression System Operation Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.26 Autonomous Control Unit (ACU). See 3.3.59, Control Unit.

3.3.27 Auxiliary Alarm System. See 3.3.215, Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System.

3.3.28 Auxiliary Box. See 3.3.12, Alarm Box.

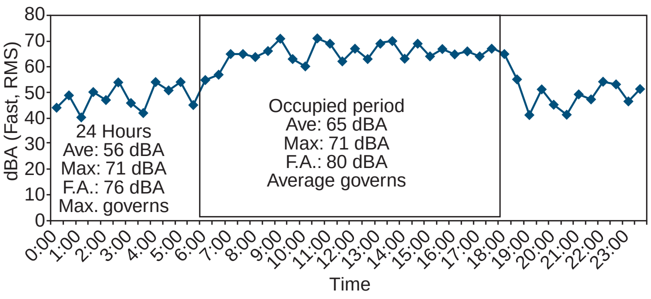
3.3.29* Average Ambient Sound Level. The root mean square, A-weighted, sound pressure level measured over the period of time that any person is present, or a 24-hour period, whichever time period is the lesser. (SIG-NAS)

A.3.3.29 Average Ambient Sound Level. The term *average ambient sound level* is also called the equivalent A-weighted sound level measured over *t* hours, where *t* is the time period over which the measurement is made. The standard industry symbol is $L_{A.eq.t}$. Where a measurement is taken over a 24-hour time period, the designation would be $L_{A.eq.24}$.

The definition of average ambient sound level was modified in the 2002 edition. The previous definition was strictly a 24-hour average. The average ambient sound level is the greater of a 24-hour average or an average taken over the period of time that any person is present. Exhibit 3.7 shows a sample 24-hour noise survey. The 24-hour average is 56 dBA versus 65 dBA for the occupied period (6:00 a.m. until 6:00 p.m.).

EXHIBIT 3.7

Sample Noise Survey. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA)



3.3.30 Beam Construction. See 3.3.37, Ceiling Surfaces.

3.3.31 Building Fire Alarm System. See 3.3.105, Fire Alarm System.

3.3.32 Building Fire Safety Plan. Documentation that provides information on the use of alarms, transmission of alarms, response to alarms, evacuation of immediate area, evacuation of smoke compartment, preparation of floors and building for evacuation and extinguishment of fire. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.33 Carrier. High-frequency energy that can be modulated by voice or signaling impulses. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.34 Carrier System. A means of conveying a number of channels over a single path by modulating each channel on a different carrier frequency and demodulating at the receiving point to restore the signals to their original form. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.35 Ceiling. The upper surface of a space, regardless of height. Areas with a suspended ceiling have two ceilings, one visible from the floor and one above the suspended ceiling. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.35.1 Level Ceilings. Ceilings that are level or have a slope of less than or equal to 1 in 8. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.35.2 Sloping Ceiling. A ceiling that has a slope of more than 1 in 8. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.35.3* Sloping Peaked-Type Ceiling. A ceiling in which the ceiling slopes in two directions from the highest point. Curved or domed ceilings can be considered peaked with the slope figured as the slope of the chord from highest to lowest point. (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.35.3 Sloping Peaked-Type Ceiling. Refer to Figure A.17.6.3.4(a) for an illustration of smoke or heat detector spacing on peaked-type sloped ceilings.

3.3.35.4* Sloping Shed-Type Ceiling. A ceiling in which the high point is at one side with the slope extending toward the opposite side. (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.35.4 Sloping Shed-Type Ceiling. Refer to Figure A.17.6.3.4(b) for an illustration of smoke or heat detector spacing on shed-type sloped ceilings.

3.3.36 Ceiling Height. The height from the continuous floor of a room to the continuous ceiling of a room or space. (SIG-IDS)

FAQ How is ceiling height measured?

Where a ceiling is supported by beams, joists, or open web beams (bar joists), the ceiling height is measured from the floor deck to the bottom surface of the ceiling supported by the beams or joists.

3.3.37 Ceiling Surfaces.

The ceiling design can have a profound effect on the flow of smoke and hot combustion product gases from the fire to the location of a heat or smoke detector. The ceiling design affects the speed of response of spot-type smoke and heat detectors. Anything that retards the response of a smoke or heat detector allows the fire to become larger before the occupants are notified. Consequently, categorizing ceiling surfaces is necessary because different detector location and spacing criteria apply, depending upon the size and spacing of downward-projection beams or joists.

3.3.37.1 Beam Construction. Ceilings that have solid structural or solid nonstructural members projecting down from the ceiling surface more than 4 in. (100 mm) and spaced more than 36 in. (910 mm), center to center. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.37.2 Girder. A support for beams or joists that runs at right angles to the beams or joists. If the top of the girder is within 4 in. (100 mm) of the ceiling, the girder is a factor in determining the number of detectors and is to be considered a beam. If the top of the girder is more than 4 in. (100 mm) from the ceiling, the girder is not a factor in detector location. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.37.3* Smooth Ceiling. A ceiling surface uninterrupted by continuous projections, such as solid joists, beams, or ducts, extending more than 4 in. (100 mm) below the ceiling surface. (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.37.3 Smooth Ceiling. Open truss constructions are not considered to impede the flow of fire products unless the upper member, in continuous contact with the ceiling, projects below the ceiling more than 4 in. (100 mm).

3.3.37.4 Solid Joist Construction. Ceilings that have solid structural or solid nonstructural members projecting down from the ceiling surface for a distance of more than 4 in. (100 mm) and spaced at intervals of 36 in. (910 mm) or less, center to center. (SIG-IDS)

Solid joists, whether structural or nonstructural, impede the flow of products of combustion. Web or bar joists are not considered to be solid joists unless the top chord is over 4 in. (100 mm) deep, in which case, only the top chord is considered a ceiling obstruction.

3.3.38 Central Station. See 3.3.283.1, Central Supervising Station.

3.3.39 Central Station Alarm System. See 3.3.284.1, Central Station Service Alarm System.

3.3.40 Central Station Service. See 3.3.285, Supervising Station Service.

3.3.41 Central Station Service Alarm System. See 3.3.284, Supervising Station Alarm System.

3.3.42 Central Supervising Station. See 3.3.283, Supervising Station.

3.3.43 Channel. A path for voice or signal transmission that uses modulation of light or alternating current within a frequency band. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.43.1 Communications Channel. A circuit or path connecting a subsidiary station(s) to a supervising station(s) over which signals are carried. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.43.2 Derived Channel. A signaling line circuit that uses the local leg of the public-switched network as an active multiplex channel while simultaneously allowing that leg's use for normal telephone communications. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.43.3* Radio Channel. A band of frequencies of a width sufficient to allow its use for radio communications. (SIG-SSS)

A.3.3.43.3 Radio Channel. The width of the channel depends on the type of transmissions and the tolerance for the frequency of emission. Channels normally are allocated for radio transmission in a specified type for service by a specified transmitter.

3.3.43.4 Transmission Channel. A circuit or path connecting transmitters to supervising stations or subsidiary stations on which signals are carried. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.44 Circuit. Either a means of providing power or a connection path between locations *(see 3.3.190)*. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.45 Circuit Interface. See 3.3.137, Interface.

3.3.46 Cloud Chamber Smoke Detection. See 3.3.269, Smoke Detection.

3.3.47* Coded. An audible or visible signal that conveys several discrete bits or units of information. (SIG-NAS)

Table A.10.12.2 provides recommended assignments for simple zone-coded signals. In addition to the designations in Table A.10.12.2, textual signals may use words that are familiar only to those concerned with response to the signal. This practice avoids general alarm notification and disruption of the occupants. Hospitals often use this type of signal. To hospital occupants who do not know the code words, a typical message might sound like a normal paging announcement: "Paging Dr. Firestone, Dr. Firestone, Building 4 West Wing." In other words, a fire is reported in the west wing of Building 4.

A.3.3.47 Coded. Notification signal examples are numbered strokes of an impact-type appliance and numbered flashes of a visible appliance.

3.3.48 Combination Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.49 Combination Emergency Communications Systems. See 3.3.88, Emergency Communications Systems — Combination.

3.3.50 Combination Fire Alarm and Guard's Tour Box. See 3.3.12, Alarm Box.

3.3.51 Combination System. See 3.3.105, Fire Alarm System.

3.3.52 Common Talk Mode. See 3.3.294, Talk Mode.

3.3.53* Communications Center. A building or portion of a building that is specifically configured for the primary purpose of providing emergency communications services or public safety answering point (PSAP) services to one or more public safety agencies under the authority or authorities having jurisdiction. [**1221,** 2013] (SIG-PRS)

In a large municipality, the municipal government may choose to locate the communications center at the main fire department station, at the public safety complex, at a specially designed communications building, or at some other suitably designed location. The communications center may or may not include the public safety answering point (PSAP) for the community's 9-1-1 emergency telephone system. NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems,* provides requirements for the installation, performance, operation, and maintenance of communications systems and facilities. In previous editions, *NFPA 72* used the term *public fire service communications center*, while NFPA 1221 referred to this facility as just *communications center*. In the 2013 edition, *NFPA 72* also refers to the facility simply as *communications center*.

FAQ Where do public emergency alarm reporting systems terminate?

Public emergency alarm reporting systems (see Chapter 27) terminate at the communications center.

A.3.3.53 Communications Center. Examples of functions of a communications center are as follows:

(1) Communications between the public and the communications center
(2) Communications between the communications centers, the emergency response agency (ERA), and emergency response facilities (ERFs)
(3) Communications within the ERA and between different ERAs [**1221:** A.3.3.17]
(4) Communications with the public emergency alarm reporting system

The central operating part of the public emergency alarm reporting system is usually located at the communications center.

3.3.54 Communications Channel. See 3.3.43, Channel.

3.3.55 Communications Circuit. Any signaling path of an emergency communications system that carries voice, audio, data, or other signals. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.56 Communications Cloud. The area in the communications path that is supported by providers of communication services not governed under the scope of *NFPA 72* in which signals travel between a protected property and a monitoring station. Depending on the type of transmission that is used, signals can travel on a single defined route or through various routes depending on what is available when the signal is initiated. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.57* Condition. A situation, environmental state, or equipment state of a fire alarm or signaling system. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.57 Condition. See Figure A.3.3.57 that describes the Condition — Signal — Response model used in this Code. There are varying degrees of conditions that require varying degrees of response that are initiated by various types of signals. A condition could be present without being detected (either because detection of the condition was not required or was not feasible), in which case, there is no signal or response. A condition could be detected, resulting in a signal, but there could be no required response. A signal could be generated erroneously in the absence of a condition (due to malfunction or other causes) resulting in an unwarranted response. The condition is normal when no abnormal conditions are present.

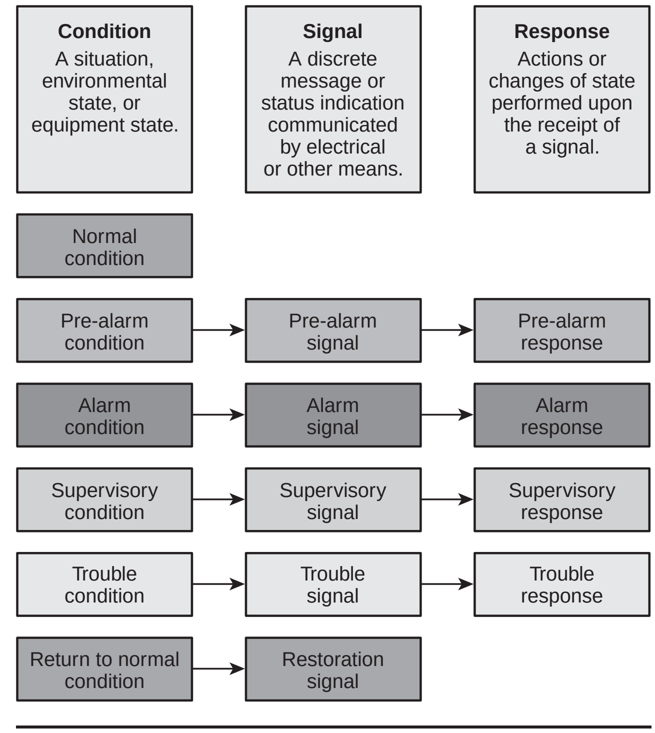


FIGURE A.3.3.57 *Condition-Signal-Response Model.*

3.3.57.1 Abnormal (Off-Normal) Condition. A situation, environmental state, or equipment state that warrants some type of signal, notification, communication, response, action, or service. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.57.1.1* Alarm Condition. An abnormal condition that poses an immediate threat to life, property, or mission. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.57.1.1 Alarm Condition. When an alarm condition is present, damage to life or property has begun or will begin. Detection, signaling, and response, effected quickly, can limit or prevent damage. The extent of damage is often reduced with inverse proportion to the time required for detection, signaling, and response. The amount of time available for detection, signaling, and response is generally not a known quantity and damage might not be preventable. Alarm conditions can result due to the presence of fire, chemicals, freezing temperatures, or other circumstances.

3.3.57.1.2* Pre-Alarm Condition. An abnormal condition that poses a potential threat to life, property, or mission, and time is available for investigation. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.57.1.2 Pre-Alarm Condition. Some examples of pre-alarm conditions include the following: the presence of a very small amount of visible smoke (at levels below listed initiating device alarm thresholds), the presence of a smoke-like odor, a somewhat elevated temperature, and a gradually increasing temperature. Any abnormal condition that typically precedes an alarm condition can be termed a *pre-alarm condition*.

The amount of time available for investigating the cause of a pre-alarm condition is not a known quantity. If conditions deteriorate to the point of alarm, time is no longer available for investigation. Pre-alarm conditions might or might not progress to alarm conditions.

The detection of pre-alarm conditions may be desirable in some occupancies, particularly if environmental conditions are ordinarily well controlled (e.g., integrated circuit fabrication facility) and personnel are trained to respond appropriately. In other occupancies, the detection of pre-alarm conditions may not be desirable or necessary.

The term *pre-alarm condition* is different from the terms *positive alarm sequence*, *alarm verification*, and *pre-signal*.

3.3.57.1.3* Supervisory Condition. An abnormal condition in connection with the supervision of other systems, processes, or equipment. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.57.1.3 Supervisory Condition. A supervisory condition occurs when one system supervises another system, process, or equipment for failure or impairment, and a functional failure or impairment to operation of the supervised system, process or equipment has occurred. A supervisory condition might be a regularly occurring and expected event such as a valve closed on a sprinkler system. A closed valve is an abnormal condition for the sprinkler system, but it does not constitute a trouble condition in the fire alarm or signaling system.

In some cases, a fault in one system, causing a trouble condition in that system, results in a supervisory condition in another system because the other system is supervising some function of the faulted system, and the supervised function has been impaired. In those cases, both supervisory and trouble conditions exist at the same time.

Some examples of supervisory conditions can include the following:

(1) An event causing the activation of a supervisory initiating device used to monitor an environmental parameter, system element, component, or function, whose failure poses a risk to life, property, or mission (e.g., sprinkler valve closed, water tank low water level, low building temperature, ECS impairment, and so forth).
(2) The failure of a guard to remain within established constraints while on tour, usually indicated by the absence of a guard's tour supervisory signal within prescribed timing requirements, or the presence of a guard's tour supervisory signal outside of prescribed sequencing requirements, or the presence of a delinquency signal.
(3) Public safety radio communications enhancement system antenna malfunction, signal booster failure, or battery depletion.
(4) In some cases, the presence of smoke in an HVAC duct or in other places as defined by the authority having jurisdiction.

3.3.57.1.4* Trouble Condition. An abnormal condition in a system due to a fault. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.57.1.4 Trouble Condition. A trouble condition is a fault in the fire alarm or signaling system. The system or some aspect of it is somehow broken. This is different from a supervisory condition that is an abnormal condition in a system that is supervised by the fire alarm or signaling system. Abnormal conditions, such as a closed valve in a sprinkler system, not caused by a fault are not considered trouble conditions.

In some cases, a fault in one system, causing a trouble condition in that system, results in a supervisory condition because another system is supervising some function of the faulted system, and the supervised function has been impaired by the fault *(see A.3.3.57.1.3, Supervisory Condition)*. In those cases, both supervisory and trouble conditions exist at the same time.

3.3.57.2 Normal Condition. Circuits, systems, and components are functioning as designed and no abnormal condition exists. (SIG-FUN)

New in the 2013 edition of the Code are explanations of various "off-normal" conditions that may be a result of occurrences — be it ambient (presence of fire or smoke, freezing temperatures, etc.) or equipment related (faults in circuits, loss of power, closed valves, etc.) — that may result in a signal being produced (usually at the control unit equipment). This may further result in the execution of a desired response dependent on the emergency plan for the specific location (summoning the emergency forces, specific responders, or technicians, etc.). Note that certain changes in conditions might not result in a system immediately going "off-normal" if the installed system was not designed or installed to detect the change (smoldering fire in a building not provided with smoke detection and insufficient heat present to activate other detection technologies or automatic sprinklers). For definitions of the terms *response* and *signal*, also see 3.3.244 and 3.3.257.

3.3.58 Contiguous Property. See 3.3.207, Property.

3.3.59 Control Unit. A system component that monitors inputs and controls outputs through various types of circuits. (SIG-PRO)

The definition of the term *control unit* in 3.3.59 is not limited to fire alarm systems applications. Applications can include systems such as those used for mass notification or emergency communication. A control unit used in a fire alarm system falls under the definition of the term *fire alarm control unit (FACU)*, defined in 3.3.102. Note that the term *control unit* is used throughout the Code instead of the term *control panel*.

3.3.59.1* Autonomous Control Unit (ACU). The primary control unit for an in-building mass notification system. (SIG-ECS)

A.3.3.59.1 Autonomous Control Unit (ACU). Although an ACU might incorporate provisions for messages or signals from external sources, the ACU is fully capable of building controls without the need for sources outside the building. An ACU is allowed to be located within a primary building and supply circuits to immediately adjacent support buildings such as detached storage buildings. Larger buildings will generally have their own ACUs to allow individual control within each building.

An autonomous control unit (ACU) for an in-building mass notification system is analogous to a fire alarm control unit (FACU) for a protected premises fire alarm system. Requirements for ACUs can be found in 24.4.3.12.

3.3.59.2 Emergency Communications Control Unit (ECCU). A system capable of sending mass notification messages to individual buildings, zones of buildings, individual outdoor speaker arrays, or zones of outdoor speaker arrays; or a building, multiple buildings, outside areas, or a combination of these. (SIG-ECS)

An emergency communications control unit (ECCU) is a control unit that serves the central control station and assigns priorities to all transmitted signals between the central control station and selectable locations, including individual buildings, portions of buildings, multiple buildings, outdoor areas, portions of outdoor areas, other ECCUs, or any combination of these. Emergency communications control units (ECCUs) are addressed in 24.6.2.

3.3.59.3 Fire Alarm Control Unit. See 3.3.102, Fire Alarm Control Unit.

3.3.59.4 Wireless Control Unit. A component that transmits/receives and processes wireless signals. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.60 Day-Care Home. A building or portion of a building in which more than 3 but not more than 12 clients receive care, maintenance, and supervision, by other than their relative(s) or legal guardian(s), for less than 24 hours per day. [***101,*** 2012] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.61 Dedicated Function Fire Alarm Control Unit. See 3.3.102, Fire Alarm Control Unit.

3.3.62 Dedicated Function Fire Alarm System. See 3.3.105, Fire Alarm System.

3.3.63 Deficiency. A condition that interferes with the service or reliability for which the part, system, or equipment was intended. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.64 Delinquency Signal. See 3.3.257, Signal.

3.3.65 Derived Channel. See 3.3.43, Channel.

3.3.66 Detector. A device suitable for connection to a circuit that has a sensor that responds to a physical stimulus such as gas, heat, or smoke. (SIG-IDS)

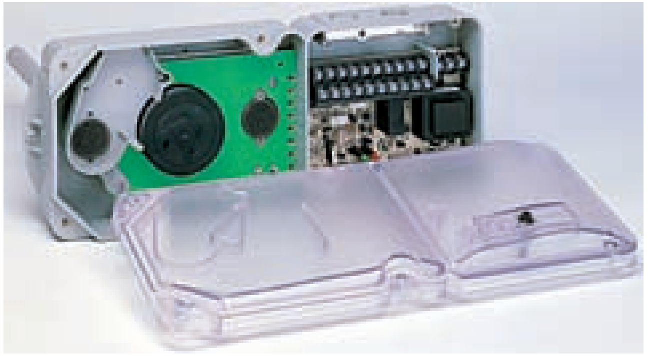
3.3.66.1 Air Sampling–Type Detector. A detector that consists of a piping or tubing distribution network that runs from the detector to the area(s) to be protected. An aspiration fan in the detector housing draws air from the protected area back to the detector through air-sampling ports, piping, or tubing. At the detector, the air is analyzed for fire products. (SIG-IDS)

FAQ What is the difference between passive and active air sampling?

Air sampling–type detectors are either passive or active. Duct smoke detectors, as shown in Exhibit 3.8, are typically considered passive detection devices. Active sampling requires the creation of a negative pressure within a sampling tube to draw products of combustion from the protected area or protected space into the sampling network. Vacuum pumps or blower assemblies normally create this negative pressure. An active air-sampling smoke detector is illustrated in Exhibit 3.9.

3.3.66.2 Automatic Fire Detector. A device designed to detect the presence of a fire signature and to initiate action. For the purpose of this Code, automatic fire detectors are classified as follows: Automatic Fire Extinguishing or Suppression System Operation Detector, Fire–Gas Detector, Heat Detector, Other Fire Detectors, Radiant Energy–Sensing Fire Detector, and Smoke Detector. (SIG-IDS)

EXHIBIT 3.8



Duct Smoke Detector (Passive). (Source: System Sensor Corp., St. Charles, IL)

EXHIBIT 3.9

Air-Sampling Smoke Detectors (Active). (Source: Xtralis, Inc., Norwell, MA)

EXHIBIT 3.10

Combination Rate-of-Rise and Fixed-Temperature Heat Detector (Mechanical). (Source: Kidde-Fenwal, Ashland, MA; photo courtesy of Mammoth Fire Alarms, Inc., Lowell, MA)

EXHIBIT 3.11

Combination Rate-of-Rise and Fixed-Temperature Heat Detector (Electronic). (Source: System Sensor Corp., St. Charles, IL)

3.3.66.3 Automatic Fire Extinguishing or Suppression System Operation Detector. A device that automatically detects the operation of a fire extinguishing or suppression system by means appropriate to the system employed. (SIG-IDS)

Examples of automatic fire extinguishing or suppression system operation alarm initiating devices are agent discharge flow switches and agent discharge pressure switches.

3.3.66.4* Combination Detector. A device that either responds to more than one of the fire phenomena or employs more than one operating principle to sense one of these phenomena. Typical examples are a combination of a heat detector with a smoke detector or a combination rate-of-rise and fixed-temperature heat detector. This device has listings for each sensing method employed. (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.66.4 Combination Detector. These detectors do not utilize a mathematical evaluation principle of signal processing more than a simple "or" function. Normally, these detectors provide a single response resulting from either sensing method, each of which operates independent of the other. These detectors can provide a separate and distinct response resulting from either sensing method, each of which is processed independent of the other.

Exhibits 3.10 and 3.11 illustrate two common types of combination detectors.

3.3.66.5 Electrical Conductivity Heat Detector. A line-type or spot-type sensing element in which resistance varies as a function of temperature. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.66.6 Fire–Gas Detector. A device that detects gases produced by a fire. (SIG-IDS)

Examples of fire gases include hydrogen chloride (HCl) and carbon monoxide (CO). Users should not confuse fire–gas detectors designed for CO detection with CO warning equipment designed to prevent CO poisoning by alerting occupants to the presence of CO gas in the home.

3.3.66.7* Fixed-Temperature Detector. A device that responds when its operating element becomes heated to a predetermined level. (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.66.7 Fixed-Temperature Detector. The difference between the operating temperature of a fixed-temperature device and the surrounding air temperature is proportional to the rate at which the temperature is rising. The rate is commonly referred to as *thermal lag*. The air temperature is always higher than the operating temperature of the device. Typical examples of fixed-temperature sensing elements are as follows:

(1) *Bimetallic.* A sensing element comprised of two metals that have different coefficients of thermal expansion arranged so that the effect is deflection in one direction when heated and in the opposite direction when cooled.
(2) *Electrical Conductivity.* A line-type or spot-type sensing element in which resistance varies as a function of temperature.
(3) *Fusible Alloy.* A sensing element of a special composition metal (eutectic) that melts rapidly at the rated temperature.
(4) *Heat-Sensitive Cable.* A line-type device in which the sensing element comprises, in one type, two current-carrying wires separated by heat-sensitive insulation that softens at the rated temperature, thus allowing the wires to make electrical contact. In another type, a single wire is centered in a metallic tube, and the intervening space is filled with a substance that becomes conductive at a critical temperature, thus establishing electrical contact between the tube and the wire.
(5) *Liquid Expansion.* A sensing element comprising a liquid that is capable of marked expansion in volume in response to an increase in temperature.

Exhibit 3.12 illustrates a typical fixed-temperature heat detector.

EXHIBIT 3.12

Typical Fixed-Temperature (Nonrestorable) Heat Detector. (Source: Kidde-Fenwal, Ashland, MA)

3.3.66.8* Flame Detector. A radiant energy–sensing fire detector that detects the radiant energy emitted by a flame. *(Refer to A.17.8.2.)* (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.66.8 Flame Detector. Flame detectors are categorized as ultraviolet, single wavelength infrared, ultraviolet infrared, or multiple wavelength infrared.

Exhibit 3.13 illustrates a typical flame detector.

EXHIBIT 3.13

Typical Flame Detector. (Source: Det-Tronics Corp., Minneapolis, MN)

3.3.66.9 Gas Detector. A device that detects the presence of a specified gas concentration. Gas detectors can be either spot-type or line-type detectors. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.66.10 Heat Detector. A fire detector that detects either abnormally high temperature or rate-of-temperature rise, or both. (SIG-IDS)

Many types of heat detectors are available. A typical spot-type heat detector is shown in Exhibit 3.14. For descriptions of other types of heat detectors, see the defined terms *electrical conductivity heat detector, fixed-temperature detector* (see Exhibit 3.12), *line-type detector, rate compensation detector,* and *rate-of-rise detector* in 3.3.66. Also refer to the definition of nonrestorable initiating device in 3.3.132.3.

EXHIBIT 3.14

Typical Heat Detector. (Source: System Sensor Corp., St. Charles, IL)

3.3.66.11 Line-Type Detector. A device in which detection is continuous along a path. Typical examples are rate-of-rise pneumatic tubing detectors, projected beam smoke detectors, and heat-sensitive cable. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.66.12* Multi-Criteria Detector. A device that contains multiple sensors that separately respond to physical stimulus such as heat, smoke, or fire gases, or employs more than one sensor to sense the same stimulus. This sensor is capable of generating only one alarm signal from the sensors employed in the design either independently or in combination. The sensor output signal is mathematically evaluated to determine when an alarm signal is warranted. The evaluation can be performed either at the detector or at the control unit. This detector has a single listing that establishes the primary function of the detector. (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.66.12 Multi-Criteria Detector. A multi-criteria detector is a detector that contains multiple sensing methods that respond to fire signature phenomena and utilizes mathematical evaluation principles to determine the collective status of the device and generates a single output. Typical examples of multi-criteria detectors are a combination of a heat detector with a smoke detector, or a combination rate-of-rise and fixed-temperature heat detector that evaluates both signals using an algorithm to generate an output such as pre-alarm or alarm. The evaluation can be performed either at the detector or at the control unit. Other examples are detectors that include sensor combinations that respond in a predictable manner to any combination of heat, smoke, carbon monoxide, or carbon dioxide.

According to one manufacturer, "Multi-criteria detectors process inputs from two sensors using software algorithms that equate signals into pre-determined responses, which are based on a 'decision tree' programmed to react to defined scenarios."

Typically, the signals from a photoelectric smoke detector are combined with a temperature sensor using microprocessor-based logic to process signals from both detectors. Through the use of a combination of inputs, the device is more likely to reject false or nuisance alarms while increasing the likelihood of a quick response to a real fire condition. According to some manufacturers' literature, new software has been developed to allow the detector to

EXHIBIT 3.15

Multi-Criteria Detector. (Source: Bosch Security Systems, Fairport, NY)

continuously monitor its environment and "learn" the ambient conditions, further reducing the chances for a nuisance alarm.

Exhibit 3.15 illustrates a multi-criteria detector. This device contains multiple sensing technologies that independently collect fire signatures and environmental conditions and are not limited to heat, rate of heat rise, smoke, carbon monoxide, or carbon dioxide. The detector collects these signatures and environmental conditions and evaluates the signals using an algorithm to provide a single output. The signals are examined by an algorithm and are not available as individual outputs.

3.3.66.13* Multi-Sensor Detector. A device that contains multiple sensors that separately respond to physical stimulus such as heat, smoke, or fire gases, or employs more than one sensor to sense the same stimulus. A device capable of generating multiple alarm signals from any one of the sensors employed in the design, independently or in combination. The sensor output signals are mathematically evaluated to determine when an alarm signal is warranted. The evaluation can be performed either at the detector or at the control unit. This device has listings for each sensing method employed. (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.66.13 Multi-Sensor Detector. Typical examples of multi-sensor detectors are a combination of a heat detector with a smoke detector, or a combination rate-of-rise and fixed-temperature heat detector that evaluates both signals using an algorithm to generate an output such as pre-alarm or alarm. The evaluation can be performed either at the detector or at the control unit. Other examples are detectors that include sensor combinations that respond in a predictable manner to any combination of heat, smoke, carbon monoxide, or carbon dioxide.

See Commentary Table 3.1 for a comparison of combination, multi-criteria, and multi-sensor detectors.

COMMENTARY TABLE 3.1 *Comparison of Combination, Multi-Criteria, and Multi-Sensor Detectors*

Detector Type	Features
Combination	• Multiple sensors • Does not utilize a mathematical evaluation principle, just a simple "or" function • Multiple listings
Multi-criteria	• Multiple sensors • Mathematically evaluated • Only one alarm signal • Single listing
Multi-sensor	• Multiple sensors • Mathematically evaluated • Capable of generating multiple alarm signals • Multiple listings

FAQ What is the difference between a multi-criteria detector and a multi-sensor detector?

The major difference between the two types of detectors is that a multi-sensor detector is "a device capable of generating multiple alarm signals from any one of the sensors employed in the design, independently or in combination" and a multi-criteria detector can only generate one signal. A multi-sensor detector can be a photoelectric smoke detector with an additional carbon monoxide (CO) sensor; it can also be a combination of ionization and photoelectric smoke detectors and a heat detector all within one multi-sensor unit. Multi-sensor devices collect data on several different environmental parameters at the same time and then, based on the results of an on-board microprocessor, determine whether an alarm should be sent to the control panel. This process allows the detector to effectively distinguish between a legitimate change of state and adverse ambient conditions that may cause a nuisance alarm. Analog information from each sensor can also be digitally communicated to the control panel, where it is analyzed.

3.3.66.14 Other Fire Detectors. Devices that detect a phenomenon other than heat, smoke, flame, or gases produced by a fire. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.66.15 Pneumatic Rate-of-Rise Tubing Heat Detector. A line-type detector comprising small-diameter tubing, usually copper, that is installed on the ceiling or high on the walls throughout the protected area. The tubing is terminated in a detector unit containing diaphragms and associated contacts set to actuate at a predetermined pressure. The system is sealed except for calibrated vents that compensate for normal changes in temperature. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.66.16 Projected Beam–Type Detector. A type of photoelectric light obscuration smoke detector wherein the beam spans the protected area. (SIG-IDS)

Projected beam–type detection is often used in large open areas such as atria, convention halls, auditoriums, and gymnasiums and where a building or portion of a building has a high ceiling. Exhibit 3.16 illustrates a typical projected beam–type smoke detector, and Exhibit 3.17 shows a projected beam–type smoke detector with a reflector. Beam detectors used in an environment such as a gymnasium where the devices can be harmed by normal activities must be protected to prevent mechanical damage. See 17.4.2.

3.3.66.17 Radiant Energy–Sensing Fire Detector. A device that detects radiant energy, such as ultraviolet, visible, or infrared, that is emitted as a product of combustion reaction and obeys the laws of optics. (SIG-IDS)

EXHIBIT 3.16

Typical Projected Beam–Type Smoke Detector. (Source: Hochiki America Corp., Buena Park, CA)

EXHIBIT 3.17

Projected Beam–Type Smoke Detector with Reflector. (Source: Hochiki America Corp., Buena Park, CA)

3.3.66.18* Rate Compensation Detector. A device that responds when the temperature of the air surrounding the device reaches a predetermined level, regardless of the rate-of-temperature rise. (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.66.18 Rate Compensation Detector. A typical example of a rate compensation detector is a spot-type detector with a tubular casing of a metal that tends to expand lengthwise as it is heated and an associated contact mechanism that closes at a certain point in the elongation. A second metallic element inside the tube exerts an opposing force on the contacts, tending to hold them open. The forces are balanced in such a way that, on a slow rate-of-temperature rise, there is more time for heat to penetrate to the inner element, which inhibits contact closure until the total device has been heated to its rated temperature level. However, on a fast rate-of-temperature rise, there is not as much time for heat to penetrate to the inner element, which exerts less of an inhibiting effect so that contact closure is achieved when the total device has been heated to a lower temperature. This, in effect, compensates for thermal lag.

Exhibit 3.18 illustrates typical rate compensation heat detectors.

EXHIBIT 3.18

Typical Rate Compensation Heat Detectors. (Source: Thermotech Inc., Ogden, UT; photo courtesy of Mammoth Fire Alarms, Inc., Lowell, MA)

3.3.66.19* Rate-of-Rise Detector. A device that responds when the temperature rises at a rate exceeding a predetermined value. (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.66.19 Rate-of-Rise Detector. Typical examples of rate-of-rise detectors are as follows:

(1) *Pneumatic Rate-of-Rise Tubing.* A line-type detector comprising small-diameter tubing, usually copper, that is installed on the ceiling or high on the walls throughout the protected area. The tubing is terminated in a detector unit that contains diaphragms and associated contacts set to actuate at a predetermined pressure. The system is sealed except for calibrated vents that compensate for normal changes in temperature.
(2) *Spot-Type Pneumatic Rate-of-Rise Detector.* A device consisting of an air chamber, a diaphragm, contacts, and a compensating vent in a single enclosure. The principle of operation is the same as that described for pneumatic rate-of-rise tubing.

(3) *Electrical Conductivity–Type Rate-of-Rise Detector.* A line-type or spot-type sensing element in which resistance changes due to a change in temperature. The rate of change of resistance is monitored by associated control equipment, and an alarm is initiated when the rate of temperature increase exceeds a preset value.

3.3.66.20 Smoke Detector. A device that detects visible or invisible particles of combustion. (SIG-IDS)

The definition of the term *smoke detector* uses the phrase "particles of combustion" to distinguish the effluent matter consisting of soot particles, gas molecules, vapor molecules, and ash particles from the heat and radiant energy liberated by the combustion reaction that is deemed energy. All matter flowing from the fire in the effluent plume is encompassed within the term *smoke*. The many types of smoke detectors are distinguished by the technology used to detect the matter in the smoke plume. For examples, see the defined terms *ionization smoke detection* and *photoelectric light obscuration and light-scattering smoke detection* in 3.3.269 and *air sampling–type detector* and *spot-type detector* (shown in Exhibit 3.19) in 3.3.66.

EXHIBIT 3.19

Typical Spot-Type Smoke Detector. (Source: System Sensor Corp., St. Charles, IL)

3.3.66.21 Spark/Ember Detector. A radiant energy–sensing fire detector that is designed to detect sparks or embers, or both. These devices are normally intended to operate in dark environments and in the infrared part of the spectrum. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.66.22 Spot-Type Detector. A device in which the detecting element is concentrated at a particular location. Typical examples are bimetallic detectors, fusible alloy detectors, certain pneumatic rate-of-rise detectors, certain smoke detectors, and thermoelectric detectors. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.67 Digital Alarm Communicator Receiver (DACR). A system component that accepts and displays signals from digital alarm communicator transmitters (DACTs) sent over the public switched telephone network. (SIG-SSS)

Exhibit 3.20 illustrates a typical DACR.

3.3.68 Digital Alarm Communicator System (DACS). A system in which signals are transmitted from a digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT) located at the protected premises through the public-switched telephone network to a digital alarm communicator receiver (DACR). (SIG-SSS)

EXHIBIT 3.20

Digital Alarm Communicator Receiver (DACR). (Source: Keltron Corp., Waltham, MA)

3.3.69 Digital Alarm Communicator Transmitter (DACT). A system component at the protected premises to which initiating devices or groups of devices are connected. The DACT seizes the connected telephone line, dials a preselected number to connect to a DACR, and transmits signals indicating a status change of the initiating device. (SIG-SSS)

FAQ

What are the basic functional steps performed by a DACT?

The communications portion of a DACT functions very much like a modem that allows a personal computer to connect to an internet service provider. As commonly used, when a fire alarm system initiates a fire alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal, the DACT dials one of two preprogrammed telephone numbers. Once a digital alarm communicator receiver (DACR) answers the incoming call, it provides a handshake signal to the DACT. The DACT then transmits digital information. Upon receipt of the information, the DACR transmits a "kiss off" signal to the DACT, which causes the DACT to disconnect and end the transmission. The DACR then interprets and displays the digital information as a fire alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal. The DACT, as shown in Exhibit 3.21, provides the most commonly used means for transmitting fire alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a supervising station.

EXHIBIT 3.21

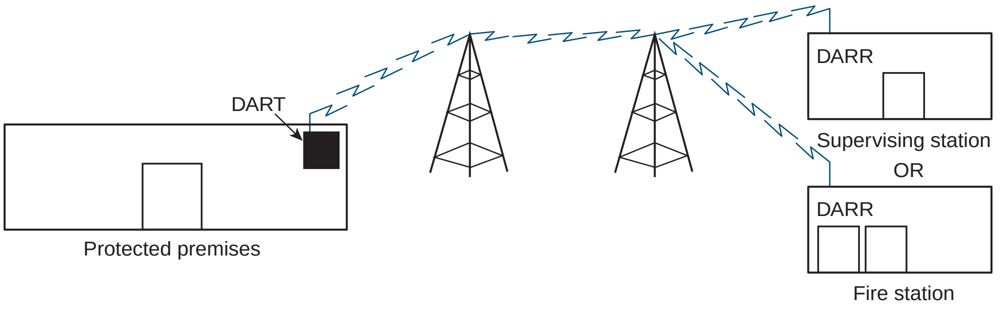
Digital Alarm Communicator Transmitter (DACT). (Source: Silent Knight by Honeywell, Maple Grove, MN)

3.3.70 Digital Alarm Radio Receiver (DARR). A system component composed of two subcomponents: one that receives and decodes radio signals, the other that annunciates the decoded data. These two subcomponents can be coresident at the central station or separated by means of a data transmission channel. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.71 Digital Alarm Radio System (DARS). A system in which signals are transmitted from a digital alarm radio transmitter (DART) located at a protected premises through a radio channel to a digital alarm radio receiver (DARR). (SIG-SSS)

Exhibit 3.22 illustrates a typical digital alarm radio system (DARS) arrangement.

EXHIBIT 3.22



Digital Alarm Radio System (DARS). (Source: Honeywell Security and Custom Electronics, Syosset, NY; courtesy of AFA Protective Systems, Inc.)

3.3.72 Digital Alarm Radio Transmitter (DART). A system component that is connected to or an integral part of a digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT) that is used to provide an alternate radio transmission channel. (SIG-SSS)

Exhibit 3.23 illustrates a typical digital alarm radio transmitter (DART).

3.3.73 Display. The visual representation of output data, other than printed copy. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.74 Distributed Recipient Mass Notification System (DRMNS). See 3.3.87, Emergency Communications System.

3.3.75 Donor Antenna. The outside antenna on the building where a public safety radio enhancement system operates. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.76 Donor Site. The repeater or base station site with which the public safety radio enhancement system communicates. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.77 Dormitory. A building or a space in a building in which group sleeping accommodations are provided for more than 16 persons who are not members of the same

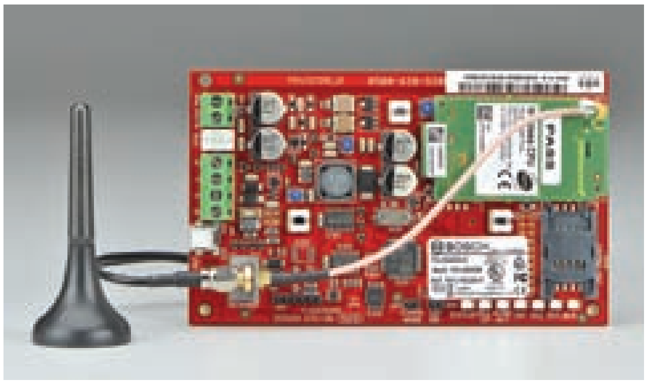


EXHIBIT 3.23

Digital Alarm Radio Transmitter (DART). (Source: Bosch Security Systems, Fairport, NY) family in one room, or a series of closely associated rooms, under joint occupancy and single management, with or without meals, but without individual cooking facilities. [***101,*** 2012] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.78* Double Doorway. A single opening that has no intervening wall space or door trim separating the two doors. (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.78 Double Doorway. Refer to Figure 17.7.5.6.5.3(A) for an illustration of detector location requirements for double doors.

3.3.79 Downlink. The radio signal from the base station transmitter to the portable public safety subscriber receiver. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.80 Dual Control. The use of two primary trunk facilities over separate routes or different methods to control one communications channel. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.81 Dwelling Unit. One or more rooms arranged for complete, independent housekeeping purposes with space for eating, living, and sleeping; facilities for cooking; and provisions for sanitation. [***5000,*** 2012] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.81.1 Multiple Dwelling Unit. A building containing three or more dwelling units. (SIG-HOU)

3.3.81.2 Single Dwelling Unit. A building consisting solely of one dwelling unit. (SIG-HOU)

3.3.82 Effective Masked Threshold. The minimum sound level at which the tone signal is audible in ambient noise. (SIG-NAS)

Requirements in 18.4.6 permit designers to use an alternative method to the A-weighted signaling requirements in the Code for audible signaling. This method involves an evaluation of the background noise levels at each octave (or one-third octave) of the frequency spectrum to provide an audible alarm signal tailored for the specific signaling application. Refer to 18.4.6 and related annex material and commentary, as well as the definitions for the terms *octave band* and *one-third octave band* in 3.3.179 and 3.3.179.1.

3.3.83 Electrical Conductivity Heat Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.84* Ember. A particle of solid material that emits radiant energy due either to its temperature or the process of combustion on its surface. *(See also 3.3.275, Spark.)* (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.84 Ember. Class A and Class D combustibles burn as embers under conditions where the flame typically associated with fire does not necessarily exist. This glowing combustion yields radiant emissions in parts of the radiant energy spectrum that are radically different from those parts affected by flaming combustion. Specialized detectors that are specifically designed to detect those emissions should be used in applications where this type of combustion is expected. In general, flame detectors are not intended for the detection of embers.

3.3.85 Emergency Command Center. See 3.3.89, Emergency Communications System — Emergency Command Center.

3.3.86 Emergency Communications Control Unit (ECCU). See 3.3.59, Control Unit.

3.3.87 Emergency Communications System. A system for the protection of life by indicating the existence of an emergency situation and communicating information necessary to facilitate an appropriate response and action. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.87.1 One-Way Emergency Communications System. One-way emergency communications systems are intended to broadcast information, in an emergency, to people in one or more specified indoor or outdoor areas. It is intended that emergency messages be conveyed either by audible, visible, or textual means, or any combination thereof. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.87.1.1 Distributed Recipient Mass Notification System (DRMNS). A distributed recipient mass notification system is a system meant to communicate directly to targeted individuals and groups that might not be in a contiguous area. (SIG-ECS)

Distributed recipient mass notification systems (DRMNSs) are (normally) one-way emergency communications systems that are intended to communicate with a wide range of targeted individuals and groups. (Some DRMNSs may have features that allow for confirmation that the message has been received by the recipient.) Methods of communication include a variety of means such as reverse 9-1-1 and email. Requirements for these systems are contained in 24.4.5. See A.24.4.5 for a detailed overview of these systems.

3.3.87.1.2 In-Building Fire Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications System. Dedicated manual or automatic equipment for originating and distributing voice instructions, as well as alert and evacuation signals pertaining to a fire emergency, to the occupants of a building. (SIG-ECS)

A building code or an authority having jurisdiction may require an in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system (also called simply "emergency voice/alarm communications system") in which the fire safety plan for a building calls for partial evacuation of the building or relocation of the occupants to areas of refuge instead of total evacuation. High-rise buildings and large area industrial, commercial, or institutional facilities are typical applications for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems. *NFPA 72* does not require the use of such systems but provides the requirements for the systems if they are required by other codes, standards, owners, or authorities having jurisdiction.

3.3.87.1.3 In-Building Mass Notification System. A system used to provide information and instructions to people in a building(s) or other space using intelligible voice communications and including visible signals, text, graphics, tactile, or other communication methods. (SIG-ECS)

An in-building mass notification system is somewhat similar in concept to a fire alarm system that includes an in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system. In an in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system, the only purpose of the system is for fire emergencies, while the in-building mass notification system has a much broader set of potential applications and is likely to be subject to a much more complex set of potential design conditions and operation scenarios, which could also include fire emergencies.

3.3.87.1.4 Wide-Area Mass Notification System. Wide-area mass notification systems are generally installed to provide real-time information to outdoor areas and could have the capability to communicate with other notification systems provided for a campus, military base, municipality, or similar single or multiple contiguous areas. (SIG-ECS)

Wide-area mass notification systems are one-way emergency communications systems that are intended to communicate to outdoor areas such as those in college or military campuses. The primary means of communications is via high power speaker arrays. Requirements for these systems are contained in 24.4.4. See A.24.4.4 for additional explanation.

3.3.87.2 Two-Way Emergency Communications System. Two-way emergency communications systems are divided into two categories, those systems that are anticipated to be used by building occupants and those systems that are to be used by fire fighters, police, and other emergency services personnel. Two-way emergency communications systems are used to both exchange information and to communicate information such as, but not limited to, instructions, acknowledgement of receipt of messages, condition of local environment, and condition of persons, and to give assurance that help is on the way. (SIG-ECS)

• **3.3.88 Emergency Communications Systems — Combination.** Various emergency communication systems such as fire alarm, mass notification, fire fighter communications, area of refuge communications, elevator communications, or others and that can be served through a single control system or through an interconnection of several control systems. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.89* Emergency Communications System — Emergency Command Center. The room(s) or area(s) staffed during any emergency event by assigned emergency management staff. The room or area contains system communications and control equipment serving one or more buildings where responsible authorities receive information from premises sources or systems or from (higher level) regional or national sources or systems and then disseminate appropriate information to individuals, a building, multiple buildings, outside campus areas, or a combination of these in accordance with the emergency response plan established for the premises. The room or area contains the controls and indicators from which the ECS systems located in the room or area can be manually controlled as required by the emergency response plan and the emergency management coordinator. (SIG-ECS)

An emergency communications control unit (ECCU) for the emergency communications system is located in a centralized facility(ies) to enable the receipt and control of emergency information. The ECCU(s) facilitates the automatic or manual distribution of signals and messages to selectable locations based on information from responsible authorities. Requirements for these systems are contained in 24.6.1. Also refer to the defined term *emergency communications control unit* in 3.3.59.2 and associated commentary.

A.3.3.89 Emergency Communications System — Emergency Command Center. An emergency command center can also include the mass notification system control.

3.3.90* Emergency Control Function Interface Device. A listed fire alarm or signaling system component that directly interfaces with the system that operates the emergency control function. (SIG-PRO)

An emergency control function interface device, formerly called a fire safety function control device, is used to control safety functions that enhance life safety and property protection during a fire or other emergency. The control unit may operate emergency (fire safety) control functions manually or automatically. Those functions might include unlocking doors, starting fans, recalling elevators, or actuating a fire suppression system.

A.3.3.90 Emergency Control Function Interface Device. The emergency control function interface device is a listed relay or other listed appliance that is part of the fire alarm system. An example of an emergency control function interface device is the fire alarm control relay that removes power to a fan control unit.

3.3.91* Emergency Control Functions. Building, fire, and emergency control elements or systems that are initiated by the fire alarm or emergency communications system and either increase the level of life safety for occupants or control the spread of the harmful effects of fire or other dangerous products. (SIG-PRO)

Emergency control functions were previously referred to as "fire safety functions" in Chapter 23 in the context of a protected premises fire alarm system. Due to the broader scope of *NFPA 72* in the 2010 edition, the more general term *emergency control function* is now used in other locations of the Code to reflect the broader range of potential life safety control applications. The provisions for these functions have been relocated from the chapter on protected premises fire alarm systems to Chapter 21.

Emergency control functions include shutdown of air-handling systems, elevator recall, closure of HVAC dampers, actuation of fire suppression systems, and release of doors to enhance life safety and property protection during a fire. Specific functions are described in more detail in Section 23.15 and Chapter 21.

A.3.3.91 Emergency Control Functions. Emergency control functions are meant to be observed functions, not equipment or devices. Examples of emergency control functions are fan control (operation or shutdown), smoke damper operation, elevator recall, elevator power shutdown, door holder release, shutter release, door unlocking, activation of exit marking devices, and so forth. Fans, elevators, smoke dampers, door holders, shutters, locked doors, or exit marking devices themselves are not emergency control functions.

3.3.92* Emergency Response Facility (ERF). A structure or a portion of a structure that houses emergency response agency equipment or personnel for response to alarms. [**1221,** 2013] (SIG-PRS)

A.3.3.92 Emergency Response Facility (ERF). Examples of ERFs include a fire station, a police station, an ambulance station, a rescue station, a ranger station, and similar facilities. [**1221:** A.3.3.36]

3.3.93 Emergency Response Plan. A documented set of actions to address response to natural, technological, and man-made disasters and other emergencies prepared by the stakeholders from information obtained during the risk analysis. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.94* Evacuation. The withdrawal of occupants from a building. (SIG-PRO)

A.3.3.94 Evacuation. Evacuation does not include the relocation of occupants within a building.

3.3.95 Evacuation Signal. See 3.3.257, Signal.

3.3.96 Evacuation Signaling Zone. See 3.3.320, Zone.

3.3.97 Executive Software. See 3.3.272, Software.

3.3.98 Exit Marking Audible Notification Appliance. See 3.3.173, Notification Appliance.

3.3.99 False Alarm. See 3.3.307, Unwanted Alarm.

3.3.100 Field of View. The solid cone that extends out from the detector within which the effective sensitivity of the detector is at least 50 percent of its on-axis, listed, or approved sensitivity. (SIG-IDS)

The term *field of view* applies to radiant energy–sensing fire detectors. Designers who use these detectors need to understand that the field of view defines the line-of-sight area of coverage in which the detector can view a spark, ember, or flaming fire. Unintended sources within a field of view, such as welding arcs or sunlight, can cause nuisance alarms.

3.3.101 Fire Alarm Control Interface (FACI). See 3.3.137, Interface.

3.3.102* Fire Alarm Control Unit (FACU). A component of the fire alarm system, provided with primary and secondary power sources, which receives signals from initiating devices or other fire alarm control units, and processes these signals to determine part or all of the required fire alarm system output function(s). (SIG-PRO)

EXHIBIT 3.24

Fire Alarm Control Unit. (Source: Gamewell-FCI, Northford, CT)

EXHIBIT 3.25

Fire Alarm Control Unit with Integral Communications System. (Source: Gamewell-FCI, Northford, CT)

A.3.3.102 Fire Alarm Control Unit (FACU). In addition to the functions identified in the definition, a fire alarm control unit might have an integral operator interface, supply power to detection devices, notification appliances, transponder(s), or off-premises transmitter(s) or any combination of these. The control unit might also provide transfer of condition to relay or devices connected to the control unit. There can be multiple fire alarm control units in a fire alarm system.

A fire alarm control unit is a control unit (see 3.3.59) that is used within a fire alarm system. A fire alarm control unit can be more than just the main (master) fire alarm control unit for a building. Depending on the design of the system, an application may use multiple fire alarm control units with different functions. Such system components are also called subpanels or satellite control units. These control units may receive signals from initiating devices or other fire alarm control units and process the signals to determine all or part of the required output for the fire alarm system. Exhibit 3.24 illustrates a typical fire alarm control unit, and Exhibit 3.25 shows a fire alarm control unit with an integral communications system.

3.3.102.1 Master Fire Alarm Control Unit. A fire alarm control unit that serves the protected premises or portion of the protected premises as a local fire alarm control unit and accepts inputs from other fire alarm control units. (SIG-PRO)

Where more than one fire alarm control unit is installed in a facility, one of the control units may be designated as the master control unit to monitor alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals from other control units installed as part of the overall fire alarm system.

3.3.102.2 Protected Premises (Local) Control Unit. A fire alarm control unit that serves the protected premises or a portion of the protected premises. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.102.2.1* Dedicated Function Fire Alarm Control Unit. A protected premises fire alarm control unit which is intended to provide operation of a specifically identified emergency control function. (SIG-PRO)

The term *dedicated function fire alarm control unit* was introduced in the 2007 edition of the Code. Many functions within a building that are required by other codes, standards, or authorities having jurisdiction need to be controlled or monitored by a fire alarm system. For example, controlling and monitoring the operation of a fire suppression system usually requires the use of a fire alarm control unit to accomplish those functions. When this is the case, and a building fire alarm system (see 3.3.105.4.1) is not otherwise required or installed, the installation of a fire alarm control unit will be needed. However, the Code does not require and does not intend to require the installation of fire alarm system components, devices, and functions beyond those required to accomplish the intended tasks. Fire alarm control units installed for a specific purpose, such as elevator recall and control, supervision of sprinkler systems, control of special extinguishing systems, or other similar functions, are designated as dedicated function fire alarm control units. The installation of a dedicated function fire alarm control unit does not trigger a requirement to provide any features beyond those necessary to accomplish the tasks assigned to the control unit. See 1.2.4.

A.3.3.102.2.1 Dedicated Function Fire Alarm Control Unit. Examples of a dedicated function fire alarm control unit include an automatic sprinkler alarm and supervisory control unit or an elevator recall control and supervisory control unit.

3.3.102.2.2 Releasing Service Fire Alarm Control Unit. A protected premises fire alarm control unit specifically listed for releasing service that is part of a fire suppression system and which provides control outputs to release a fire suppression agent based on either automatic or manual input. (SIG-PRO)

FAQ What is a releasing service fire alarm control unit?

A releasing service fire alarm control unit is specifically listed to be used for control of a fire suppression system or other fire protection system and is an example of a type of dedicated function fire alarm control unit. Requirements specific to control units and releasing systems can be found in 23.8.2, 23.8.5.10, Section 23.11, and Chapter 21.

3.3.103 Fire Alarm/Evacuation Signal Tone Generator. A device that produces a fire alarm/evacuation tone upon command. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.104 Fire Alarm Signal. See 3.3.257, Signal.

3.3.105 Fire Alarm System. A system or portion of a combination system that consists of components and circuits arranged to monitor and annunciate the status of fire alarm or supervisory signal-initiating devices and to initiate the appropriate response to those signals. (SIG-FUN)

The definition of *fire alarm system* includes fire alarm systems whose sole purpose is to provide a specific function or functions, such as sprinkler supervisory service. These systems fall under the defined term *dedicated function fire alarm system*.

3.3.105.1* Combination System. A fire alarm system in which components are used, in whole or in part, in common with a non-fire signaling system. (SIG-PRO)

A.3.3.105.1 Combination System. Examples of non-fire systems are security, card access control, closed circuit television, sound reinforcement, background music, paging, sound masking, building automation, time, and attendance.

Subsection 23.8.4 addresses combination systems. Exhibit 3.26 illustrates a typical combination system.

EXHIBIT 3.26

Combination Burglary and Fire Alarm System Control Unit and Associated System Components. (Source: Honeywell Security and Custom Electronics, Syosset, NY)

3.3.105.2 Household Fire Alarm System. A system of devices that uses a fire alarm control unit to produce an alarm signal in the household for the purpose of notifying the occupants of the presence of a fire so that they will evacuate the premises. (SIG-HOU)

3.3.105.3 Municipal Fire Alarm System. A public emergency alarm reporting system. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.105.4* Protected Premises (Local) Fire Alarm System. A fire alarm system located at the protected premises. (SIG-PRO)

A.3.3.105.4 Protected Premises (Local) Fire Alarm System. A protected premises fire alarm system is any fire alarm system located at the protected premises. It can include any of the functions identified in Section 23.3. Where signals are transmitted to a communication center or supervising station, the protected premises fire alarm system also falls under the definition of one of the following systems: central station service alarm system, remote supervising station alarm system, proprietary supervising station alarm system, or auxiliary alarm system. The requirements that pertain to these systems apply in addition to the requirements for the protected premises fire alarm systems.

3.3.105.4.1 Building Fire Alarm System. A protected premises fire alarm system that includes any of the features identified in 23.3.3.1 and that serves the general fire alarm needs of a building or buildings and that provides fire department or occupant notification or both. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.105.4.2 Dedicated Function Fire Alarm System. A protected premises fire alarm system installed specifically to perform emergency control function(s) where a building fire alarm system is not required. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.105.4.3 Releasing Fire Alarm System. A protected premises fire alarm system that is part of a fire suppression system and/or that provides control inputs to a fire suppression system related to the fire suppression system's sequence of operations and outputs for other signaling and notification. (SIG-PRO)

The definition of *protected premises (local) fire alarm system* was modified for the 2007 edition of the Code to simplify the main term and create three new subdefinitions to better relate to the requirements intended for these systems. Similar changes were made to the defined term *protected premises (local) control unit*. Under the revised definition, a protected premises (local) fire alarm system includes any fire alarm system located at the protected premises, whether or not it sounds a local alarm. A more precise version of the previous definition of protected premises (local) fire alarm system is now used to define a building fire alarm system that serves the general fire alarm needs of a building. Two additional terms, *dedicated function fire alarm system* and *releasing fire alarm system*, have also been added. A premises can have any or all of these systems. Requirements that relate to these systems can be found in 23.3.3, 23.8.5, Section 23.11, and Section 21.3.

3.3.106* Fire Command Center. The principal attended or unattended room or area where the status of the detection, alarm communications, control systems, and other emergency systems is displayed and from which the system(s) can be manually controlled. (SIG-ECS)

Where an in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system is provided, the applicable building code generally requires a fire command center. The fire command center houses the fire alarm system controls and may include controls for other building systems such as security, HVAC, and elevator and lighting systems. During an emergency, the fire command center serves as the central point for the command of emergency operations and communications. The fire command center is generally located in a separate room or other area approved by the authority having jurisdiction. The location must allow for the incident commander to assess the changing conditions during an emergency and communicate with the building occupants and emergency responders. The applicable building code usually provides details on construction of the fire command center.

In the application of an in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system, the requirements in 24.4.2.5 apply even though the term *fire command center* is not used. [In the application of two-way in-building wired emergency communications systems (two-way telephone communications service) the requirements in 24.5.1 use the terms *control equipment, control location*, and *control center* in place of *fire command center*.]

A.3.3.106 Fire Command Center. The fire command center should contain the following features as applicable to the specific facility:

(1) Emergency voice/alarm communication system unit
(2) Fire department communications unit
(3) Fire detection and alarm system annunciator unit
(4) Annunciator unit visually indicating the location of the elevators and whether they are operational
(5) Status indicators and controls for air-handling systems
(6) The required fire-fighter's control panel for smoke control systems installed in the building
(7) Controls for unlocking stairway doors simultaneously
(8) Sprinkler valve and waterflow detector display panels
(9) Emergency and standby power status indicators
(10) Telephone for fire department use with controlled access to the public telephone system
(11) Fire pump status indicators
(12) Schematic building plans indicating the typical floor plan and detailing the building core, means of egress, fire protection systems, fire-fighting equipment, and fire department access
(13) Worktable
(14) Generator supervision devices, manual start, and transfer features
(15) Public address system
(16) Other emergency systems identified in emergency response plan

3.3.107 Fire Extinguisher Electronic Monitoring Device. A device connected to a control unit that monitors the fire extinguisher in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 10, *Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers*. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.108 Fire Warden. A building staff member or a tenant trained to perform assigned duties in the event of a fire emergency. (SIG-PRO)

Depending on the design of the fire alarm system and the site-specific fire safety plan for a facility, fire wardens may be used to initiate or facilitate evacuation or relocation during a fire. Fire wardens are typically used in large-area buildings with high occupant loads where direction may be required to prompt building occupants to follow the established emergency procedures. Fire wardens may also be used to sweep through their assigned areas to ensure that all occupants heard and responded properly to an alarm.

3.3.109 Fire Warning Equipment. Any detector, alarm, device, or material related to single- and multiple-station alarms or household fire alarm systems. (SIG-HOU)

The Technical Committee on Single- and Multiple-Station Alarms and Household Fire Alarm Systems added the definition of *fire warning equipment* in the 2007 edition to correlate with the use of this and other equipment terms used in Chapter 29. Fire warning equipment includes all the equipment addressed in Chapter 29, whereas single- and multiple-station alarms and household fire alarm systems are three subcategories of fire warning equipment. The requirements in Chapter 29 are specific to these different terms. Refer to the related definitions in 3.3.105, 3.3.262, and 3.3.161.

3.3.110 Fire–Gas Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.111 Fixed-Temperature Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.112 Flame. A body or stream of gaseous material involved in the combustion process and emitting radiant energy at specific wavelength bands determined by the combustion chemistry of the fuel. In most cases, some portion of the emitted radiant energy is visible to the human eye. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.113 Flame Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.114 Flame Detector Sensitivity. The distance along the optical axis of the detector at which the detector can detect a fire of specified size and fuel within a given time frame. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.115 Frequency. Minimum and maximum time between events. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.115.1 Weekly Frequency. Fifty-two times per year, once per calendar week.

3.3.115.2 Monthly Frequency. Twelve times per year, once per calendar month.

3.3.115.3 Quarterly Frequency. Four times per year with a minimum of 2 months, maximum of 4 months.

3.3.115.4 Semiannual Frequency. Twice per year with a minimum of 4 months, maximum of 8 months.

3.3.115.5 Annual Frequency. Once per year with a minimum of 9 months, maximum 15 months.

3.3.116 Gateway. A device that is used in the transmission of serial data (digital or analog) from the fire alarm control unit to other building system control units, equipment, or networks and/or from other building system control units to the fire alarm control unit. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.117 Girder. See 3.3.37, Ceiling Surfaces.

3.3.118 Guard's Tour Reporting Station. A device that is manually or automatically initiated to indicate the route being followed and the timing of a guard's tour. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.119 Guard's Tour Supervisory Signal. See 3.3.257, Signal.

3.3.120 Guest Room. An accommodation combining living, sleeping, sanitary, and storage facilities within a compartment. [***101*****,** 2012] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.121 Guest Suite. An accommodation with two or more contiguous rooms comprising a compartment, with or without doors between such rooms, that provides living, sleeping, sanitary, and storage facilities. [***101*****,** 2012] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.122* Hearing Loss. A full or partial decrease in the ability to detect or comprehend sounds. (SIG-NAS)

A.3.3.122 Hearing Loss. The severity of hearing loss is measured by the degree of loudness, as measured in decibels, a sound must attain before being detected by an individual. Hearing loss can be ranked as mild, moderate, severe, or profound. It is quite common for someone to have more than one degree of hearing loss (e.g., mild sloping to severe). The following list shows the rankings and their corresponding decibel ranges:

(1) Mild:
 (a) For adults: between 25 and 40 dB
 (b) For children: between 15 and 40 dB
(2) Moderate: between 41 and 55 dB
(3) Moderately severe: between 56 and 70 dB
(4) Severe: between 71 and 90 dB
(5) Profound: 90 dB or greater

NIOSH defines material hearing impairment as an average of the hearing threshold levels for both ears that exceeds 25 dB at 1000, 2000, 3000, and 4000 Hz.

The American Medical Association indicates that a person has suffered material impairment when testing reveals a 25 dB average hearing loss from audiometric zero at 500, 1000, 2000, and 3000 Hz. OSHA has recognized that this is the lowest level of hearing loss that constitutes any material hearing impairment.

The term *hearing loss* is used in 29.3.8, and the provisions of 29.3.8.1 and 29.3.8.2 are specified in terms of "mild to severe" hearing loss and "moderately severe to profound" hearing loss. Those terms are explained in A.3.3.122.

3.3.122.1 Profound Hearing Loss. A hearing threshold of greater than 90 dB.

3.3.123 Heat Alarm. A single- or multiple-station alarm responsive to heat. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.124 Heat Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.125 High Power Speaker Array (HPSA). High power speaker arrays provide capability for voice and tone communications to large outdoor areas. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.126 Hotel. A building or groups of buildings under the same management in which there are sleeping accommodations for more than 16 persons and primarily used by transients for lodging with or without meals. [***101*****,** 2012] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.127 Household Fire Alarm System. See 3.3.105, Fire Alarm System.

3.3.128 Hunt Group. A group of associated telephone lines within which an incoming call is automatically routed to an idle (not busy) telephone line for completion. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.129* Identified (as Applied to Equipment). Recognizable as suitable for the specific purpose, function, use, environment, application, and so forth, where described in a particular *Code* requirement. [***70,*** 2011] (SIG-PRS)

A.3.3.129 Identified (as Applied to Equipment). Some examples of ways to determine suitability of equipment for a specific purpose, environment, or application include investigations by a qualified testing laboratory (listing and labeling), an inspection agency, or other organizations concerned with product evaluation. [***70*****:**100, Informational Note]

3.3.130* Impairment. An abnormal condition where a system, component, or function is out of order, and the condition can result in the system or unit not functioning when required. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.130 Impairment. An impairment is a system component or function that is not working properly. This might be due to an intentional act, such as closing a valve or disabling an initiating device. Or, the impairment might be caused by a deficiency in a piece of equipment or subsystem.

Temporarily shutting down a system as part of performing the routine inspection, testing, and maintenance on that system while under constant attendance by qualified personnel, and where the system can be restored to service quickly, should not be considered an impairment. Good judgment should be considered for the hazards presented.

3.3.130.1* Emergency Impairment. An abnormal condition where a system, component, or function is out of order due to an unexpected deficiency. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.130.1 Emergency Impairment. Examples of emergency impairment include things such as physical damage to a control unit or wiring.

3.3.130.2* Planned Impairment. An abnormal condition where a system, component, or function is out of service due to work that has been planned in advance. (SIG-FUN)

The 2013 edition of the Code introduces definitions for the term *impairment* and those impairments that are either of the emergency or planned type. Previous editions identified required actions related to impairments, which are found in Sections 10.21 and 14.2.2.2, but never defined the actual condition. Section 10.21 expands on the needed actions when a system is impaired beyond a certain time period and when required monitoring has been terminated.

A.3.3.130.2 Planned Impairment. Examples of a planned impairment include things such as the addition of new devices or appliances or reprogramming of system software.

3.3.131 In-Building Mass Notification System. See 3.3.87, Emergency Communications System.

3.3.132 Initiating Device. A system component that originates transmission of a change-of-state condition, such as in a smoke detector, manual fire alarm box, or supervisory switch. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.132.1 Analog Initiating Device (Sensor). An initiating device that transmits a signal indicating varying degrees of condition as contrasted with a conventional initiating device, which can only indicate an on–off condition. (SIG-IDS)

FAQ

What do analog initiating devices measure and transmit?

Analog initiating devices measure and transmit a range of values of smoke density, temperature variation, water level, water pressure changes, and other variables to the fire alarm control unit. Typically, the control unit software determines the set points for initiation of an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal. By storing reported values over time, some smoke detector technology uses the analog feature to provide a warning signal to the owner when a detector is dirty or when it drifts outside its listed sensitivity range. Some analog technology can be used for smoke detector sensitivity testing per 14.4.4.3.

3.3.132.2 Automatic Extinguishing System Supervisory Device. A device that responds to abnormal conditions that could affect the proper operation of an automatic sprinkler system or other fire extinguishing system(s) or suppression system(s), including, but not limited to, control valves, pressure levels, liquid agent levels and temperatures, pump power and running, engine temperature and overspeed, and room temperature. (SIG-IDS)

When an abnormal condition is detected, a supervisory signal is activated to warn the owner or attendant that the extinguishing system requires attention. Supervisory signals are distinct from alarm signals or trouble signals.

3.3.132.3 Nonrestorable Initiating Device. A device in which the sensing element is designed to be destroyed in the process of operation. (SIG-IDS)

One example of a nonrestorable initiating device is the fixed-temperature heat detector (see Exhibit 3.12), which uses a fusible element that melts when subjected to heat. When the element melts, the electrical contacts are shorted together and the alarm signal is activated.

3.3.132.4 Restorable Initiating Device. A device in which the sensing element is not ordinarily destroyed in the process of operation, whose restoration can be manual or automatic. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.132.5 Supervisory Signal Initiating Device. An initiating device such as a valve supervisory switch, water level indicator, or low air pressure switch on a dry pipe sprinkler system in which the change of state signals an off-normal condition and its restoration to normal of a fire protection or life safety system; or a need for action in connection with guard tours, fire suppression systems or equipment, or maintenance features of related systems. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.133 Initiating Device Circuit. A circuit to which automatic or manual initiating devices are connected where the signal received does not identify the individual device operated. (SIG-PRO)

Conventional (nonaddressable/nonanalog) initiating devices are typically detectors that use a switch contact or a solid-state switch to short the positive and negative sides of the circuit together. By doing so, the initiating device causes a step-function increase in current flowing through the circuit. The fire alarm control unit interprets the increase in current as an "alarm" signal from one of the initiating devices. Since any one of the initiating devices can cause the incremental current flow, and no other initiating devices can subsequently be recognized because the power supply has been shorted by the first responding device, only one signal can be obtained. Sometimes initiating device circuits are called *zones*, and the device puts the entire zone into the alarm state.

3.3.134 Inspection Personnel. See 3.3.193, Personnel.

3.3.135 Intelligibility. The quality or condition of being intelligible. (SIG-NAS)

The term *intelligibility* relates to voice communications used in emergency communications systems. If voice messages to occupants in buildings and other locations cannot be understood, the message system will have little, if any, benefit. Requirements for voice messages to be intelligible are not new to the Code; however, with the expansion of requirements for emergency communications systems, intelligible voice communications have become even more important. Requirements for voice intelligibility, contained in 18.4.10, have been updated in this edition of the Code and are referenced from Chapter 24. Annex D, Speech Intelligibility, provides guidance on system design with emphasis on testing.

3.3.136* Intelligible. Capable of being understood; comprehensible; clear. (SIG-NAS)

A.3.3.136 Intelligible. The term *intelligible* is intended to address only the communications channel and the acoustic environment as shown in Figure A.3.3.136. Intelligibility assumes that the talker or recorded voice message is in a language and using words known to the listener. It also assumes that the listener has normal hearing.

3.3.137 Interface.

3.3.137.1 Circuit Interface. A circuit component that interfaces initiating devices or control circuits, or both; notification appliances or circuits, or both; system control outputs; and other signaling line circuits to a signaling line circuit. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.137.1.1 Signaling Line Circuit Interface. A system component that connects a signaling line circuit to any combination of initiating devices, initiating device circuits,

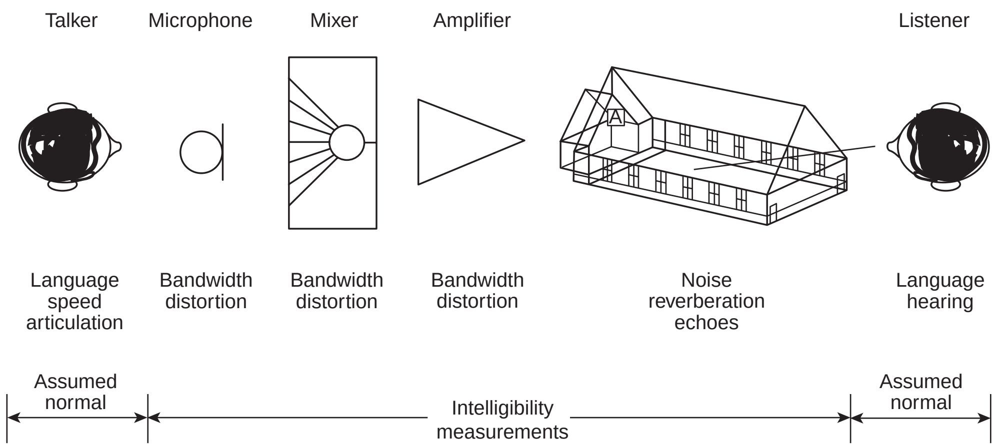


FIGURE A.3.3.136 Voice Signal Path. (Source: K. Jacob, Bose® Professional Systems)

notification appliances, notification appliance circuits, system control outputs, and other signaling line circuits. (SIG-PRO)

A signaling line circuit interface (SLCI) (see Exhibit 3.27) is a means of interconnecting signaling line circuits (addressable circuits) with nonaddressable or conventional initiating device circuits or control devices. Other terms used to describe an SLCI are *monitor module, zone addressable module, transponder*, and other terms used by various product manufacturers. An SLCI provides a means of translating the signal from a conventional circuit to one that can be understood by an addressable system. In essence, the SLCI provides an "address" for a nonaddressable circuit, device, or appliance.

3.3.137.1.2* Emergency Control Function Interface. The interface between the fire alarm system emergency control function interface device and the component controlling the emergency control function. (SIG-PRO)

A.3.3.137.1.2 Emergency Control Function Interface. See Figure A.3.3.137.1.2.

3.3.137.2* Fire Alarm Control Interface. The fire alarm control interface coordinates signals to and from the fire alarm system and other systems. (SIG-ECS)

EXHIBIT 3.27

Typical Signaling Line Circuit Interface (SLCI) and Enclosure Cover. (Source: Gamewell-FCI, Northford, CT)

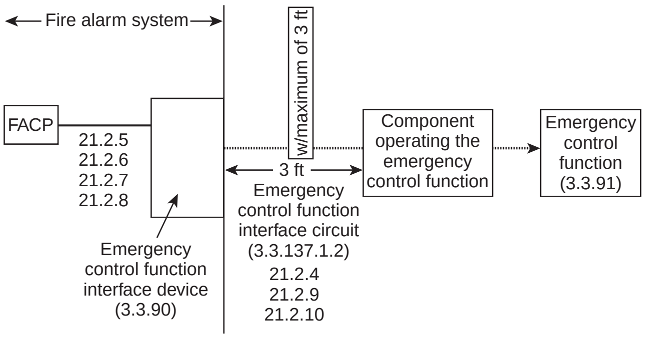


FIGURE A.3.3.137.1.2 *Emergency Control Function Interface.*

A.3.3.137.2 Fire Alarm Control Interface. Some mass notification systems' autonomous control units (ACUs) might not be listed to UL 864 for fire alarm service. Any component that is connected to the fire alarm system must be connected through a listed interface that will protect the functions of other systems should one system experience a failure. This can be through isolation modules, control relays, or other approved means that are listed for the intended use. As an example, failure of a stand-alone ACU should not affect any function of the FACU.

3.3.138 Ionization Smoke Detection. See 3.3.269, Smoke Detection.

3.3.139 Leg Facility. The portion of a communications channel that connects not more than one protected premises to a primary or secondary trunk facility. The leg facility includes the portion of the signal transmission circuit from its point of connection with a trunk facility to the point where it is terminated within the protected premises at one or more transponders. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.140 Level Ceilings. See 3.3.35, Ceiling.

3.3.141 Life Safety Network. A type of combination system that transmits fire safety control data through gateways to other building system control units. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.142 Line-Type Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.143 Living Area. Any normally occupiable space in a residential occupancy, other than sleeping rooms or rooms that are intended for combination sleeping/living, bathrooms, toilet compartments, kitchens, closets, halls, storage or utility spaces, and similar areas. [***101*****,** 2012] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.144 Loading Capacity. The maximum number of discrete elements of fire alarm systems permitted to be used in a particular configuration. (SIG-SSS)

Loading capacity applies to various transmission technologies used by supervising station alarm systems. The loading capacity of a system depends on the performance characteristics of the particular transmission technology employed. Chapter 26 provides the loading capacities for various types of supervising station transmission technologies.

3.3.145 Local Energy Type Auxiliary Alarm System. See 3.3.215, Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System.

3.3.146* Local Operating Console (LOC). Equipment used by authorized personnel and emergency responders to activate and operate an in-building mass notification system. (SIG-ECS)

A.3.3.146 Local Operating Console (LOC). An LOC allows users within a building to activate prerecorded messages, deliver live voice messages, observe current status of the main autonomous control unit (ACU), or have similar such ACU operator functions at various locations within the building. An LOC serves a similar function as a remote fire alarm annunciator. However, there can be multiple LOC locations within a building, such as on each floor, at each main entry point, at the switchboard or receptionist's console, or as determined by a risk analysis.

3.3.147 Lodging or Rooming House. A building or portion thereof that does not qualify as a one- or two-family dwelling, that provides sleeping accommodations for a total of 16 or fewer people on a transient or permanent basis, without personal care services, with or without meals, but without separate cooking facilities for individual occupants. [***101*****,** 2012] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.148 Loss of Power. The reduction of available voltage at the load below the point at which equipment can function as designed. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.149 Low-Power Radio Transmitter. Any device that communicates with associated control/receiving equipment by low-power radio signals. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.150 Maintenance. Work, including, but not limited to, repair, replacement, and service, performed to ensure that equipment operates properly. (SIG-TMS)

| **3.3.151 Malicious Alarm.** See 3.3.307.1, Unwanted Alarm.

3.3.152* Managed Facilities-Based Voice Network (MFVN). A physical facilities-based network capable of transmitting real time signals with formats unchanged that is managed, operated, and maintained by the service provider to ensure service quality and reliability from the subscriber location to public-switched telephone network (PSTN) interconnection points or other MFVN peer networks. (SIG-SSS)

A.3.3.152 Managed Facilities-Based Voice Network (MFVN). Managed facilities-based voice network service is functionally equivalent to traditional PSTN-based services provided by authorized common carriers (public utility telephone companies) with respect to dialing, dial plan, call completion, carriage of signals and protocols, and loop voltage treatment and provides all of the following features:

(1) A loop start telephone circuit service interface.
(2) Pathway reliability that is assured by proactive management, operation, and maintenance by the MFVN provider.
(3) 8 hours of standby power supply capacity for MFVN communications equipment either located at the protected premises or field deployed. Industry standards followed by the authorized common carriers (public utility telephone companies), and the other communications service providers that operate MFVNs, specifically engineer the selection of the size of the batteries, or other permanently located standby power source, in order to provide 8 hours of standby power with a reasonable degree of accuracy. Of course, over time, abnormal ambient conditions and battery aging can always have a potentially adverse effect on battery capacity. The MFVN field-deployed equipment typically monitors the condition of the standby battery and signals potential battery failure to permit the communications service provider to take appropriate action.
(4) 24 hours of standby power supply capacity for MFVN communications equipment located at the communication service provider's central office.
(5) Installation of network equipment at the protected premises with safeguards to prevent unauthorized access to the equipment and its connections.

When providing telephone service to a new customer, MFVN providers give notice to the telephone service subscriber of the need to have any connected alarm system tested by authorized fire alarm service personnel in accordance with Chapter 14 to make certain that all signal transmission features have remained operational. These features include the proper functioning of line seizure and the successful transmission of signals to the supervising station. In this way, the MFVN providers assist their new customers in complying with a testing procedure similar to that outlined in 26.2.7 for changes to providers of supervising station service.

The evolution of the deployment of telephone service has moved beyond the sole use of metallic conductors connecting a telephone subscriber's premises with the nearest telephone service provider's control and routing point (wire center). In the last 25 years, telephone service providers have introduced a variety of technologies to transport multiple, simultaneous telephone calls over shared communication's pathways. In order to facilitate the further development of the modernization of the telephone network, the authorized common carriers (public utility telephone companies) have transitioned their equipment into a managed facilities-based voice network (MFVN) capable of providing a variety of communications services in addition to the provision of traditional telephone service.

Similarly, the evolution of digital communications technology has permitted entities other than the authorized common carriers (public utility telephone companies) to deploy robust communications networks and offer a variety of communications services, including telephone service.

These alternate service providers fall into two broad categories. The first category includes those entities that have emulated the MFVN provided by the authorized common carriers. The second category includes those entities that offer telephone service using means that do not offer the rigorous quality assurance, operational stability, and consistent features provided by an MFVN.

The Code intends to only recognize the use of the telephone network transmission of alarm, supervisory, trouble, and other emergency signals by means of MFVNs.

For example, the Code intends to permit an MFVN to provide facilities-based telephone (voice) service that interfaces with the premises fire alarm or emergency signal control unit through a digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT) using a loop start telephone circuit and signaling protocols fully compatible with and equivalent to those used in public switched telephone networks. The loop start telephone circuit and associated signaling can be provided through traditional copper wire telephone service (POTS — "plain old telephone service") or by means of equipment that emulates the loop start telephone circuit and associated signaling and then transmits the signals over a pathway using packet switched (IP) networks or other communications methods that are part of an MFVN.

Providers of MFVNs have disaster recovery plans to address both individual customer outages and widespread events such as tornados, ice storms, or other natural disasters, which include specific network power restoration procedures equivalent to those of traditional landline telephone services.

The term *managed facilities-based voice network (MFVN)* was introduced in the 2010 edition to correlate with the revised definition of the term *public switched telephone network (PSTN)* in 3.3.290.2, which is used within the requirements for digital alarm communicator transmitters (DACTs) in 26.6.3.2.1. A DACT is part of a digital alarm communicator system, one of the types of transmission methods that the Code recognizes for transmission of signals from a protected premises to a supervising station. The provisions of 26.6.3.2.1.1 require a DACT to be connected to a PSTN upstream of any private telephone system at the protected premises. The provisions of 26.6.3.2.1.1 also require the connection to be made to a loop start telephone circuit, which has also been defined beginning in the 2010 edition of the Code in 3.3.290.1.

A PSTN has traditionally been viewed as being comprised of the copper telephone lines and connected system of the local telephone company (sometimes referred to as the "plain old telephone system (POTS)." In recent years, telephone (voice) service has been provided not only by the traditional telephone company but also by other service providers, including those offering other services such as television and/or internet access. As a consequence, questions have arisen as to whether the Code permits the connection of a DACT to equipment and systems of these more recent providers. The revised and new definitions and related explanatory annex material clarify and answer that question. In accordance with the revised definition of PSTN, if the telephone service is provided through the use an MFVN, the answer is yes. The annex material in A.3.3.152 provides insight into what constitutes an MFVN. Telephone service that is not provided using an MFVN would not be permitted for connection to a DACT.

3.3.153 Manual Fire Alarm Box. See 3.3.12, Alarm Box.

3.3.154* Manufacturer's Published Instructions. Published installation and operating documentation provided for each product or component. The documentation includes directions and necessary information for the intended installation, maintenance, and operation of the product or component. (SIG-TMS)

A.3.3.154 Manufacturer's Published Instructions. Manufacturer's applicable documentation can be subject to revision.

3.3.155* Mass Notification Priority Mode. The mode of operation whereby all fire alarm occupant notification is superseded by emergency mass notification action. (SIG-ECS)

A.3.3.155 Mass Notification Priority Mode. Nonemergency mass notification activations are not intended to initiate this mode of operation.

3.3.156* Mass Notification System. See 3.3.87.1.3, In-Building Mass Notification System. (SIG-PRO)

A.3.3.156 Mass Notification System. A mass notification system can use intelligible voice communications, visible signals, text, graphics, tactile, or other communications methods. The system can be used to initiate evacuation or relocation or to provide information to occupants. The system can be intended for fire emergencies, weather emergencies, terrorist events, biological, chemical or nuclear emergencies, or any combination of these. The system can be automatic, manual, or both. Access to and control of the system can be from a single, on-site location or can include multiple command locations, including some remote from the area served. Systems can be wired, wireless, or some combination of the two.

3.3.157 Master Box. See 3.3.12, Alarm Box.

3.3.158 Master Fire Alarm Control Unit. See 3.3.102, Fire Alarm Control Unit.

3.3.159 Multi-Criteria Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.160 Multiple Dwelling Unit. See 3.3.81, Dwelling Unit.

3.3.161 Multiple-Station Alarm. A single-station alarm capable of being interconnected to one or more additional alarms so that the actuation of one causes the appropriate alarm signal to operate in all interconnected alarms. (SIG-HOU)

The defined term *multiple-station alarm* helps differentiate between automatic fire detectors connected to and powered by a fire alarm control unit and single- and multiple-station smoke alarms that may be powered by a battery, an alternating current (ac) power source, or both (ac with battery backup). This definition corresponds with the terminology used internationally.

3.3.162 Multiple-Station Alarm Device. Two or more single-station alarm devices that can be interconnected so that actuation of one causes all integral or separate audible alarms to operate; or one single-station alarm device having connections to other detectors or to a manual fire alarm box. (SIG-HOU)

3.3.163 Multiplexing. A signaling method characterized by simultaneous or sequential transmission, or both, and reception of multiple signals on a signaling line circuit, a transmission channel, or a communications channel, including means for positively identifying each signal. (SIG-SSS)

FAQ How is multiplexing used within a protected premises?

Within a protected premises, a fire alarm system may use multiplexing between the fire alarm control unit and the fire alarm initiating devices and notification appliances or between the fire alarm control unit and multiplex interfaces to which the initiating devices or notification appliances connect. A fire alarm system may also use multiplexing between the protected premises and a supervising station as a means of signal transmission.

Multiplexing for fire alarm system signal transmission includes two technologies: active and passive. An active multiplex system establishes two-way communication on a signaling line circuit.

In the case of a protected premises application, the multiplex fire alarm system control unit transmits an interrogation signal to the devices, appliances, or their multiplex interfaces connected to the protected premises signaling line circuit. The devices, appliances, or multiplex interfaces then transmit a response signal to the fire alarm control unit. This response signal gives the status of the interrogated unit.

In the case of a supervising station application, the supervising station multiplex receiver transmits an interrogation signal to the protected premises fire alarm control unit or transmitter connected to the supervising station signaling line circuit. The control unit or transmitter then transmits a response signal to the supervising station receiver that gives the status of the interrogated unit.

In addition to conveying status information, this interrogation and response signaling provides a means to monitor the integrity of the signaling line circuit.

Devices connected to a passive multiplex system transmit multiple signals over the same signaling line circuit. However, the circuit must have some other means to monitor its integrity, which may include a voltage, current, or subcarrier continuously present on the circuit, or other similar means.

3.3.164 Multi-Sensor Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.165 Municipal Fire Alarm Box (Street Box). A publicly accessible alarm box. (See 3.3.12, Alarm Box.)

3.3.166 Municipal Fire Alarm System. See 3.3.105, Fire Alarm System.

3.3.167 Net-Centric Alerting System (NCAS). A net-centric alerting system incorporates web-based management and alert activation application through which all operators and administrators could gain access to the system's capabilities based on the users' permissions and the defined access policy. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.168 Network.

3.3.168.1 Wireless Network. The method of communications used in a public emergency alarm reporting system when it consists of a wireless type of communications infrastructure. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.168.2 Wired Network. The method of communications used in a public emergency alarm reporting system when it consists of a wired type of communications infrastructure. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.169 Network Architecture. The physical and logical design of a network, and the inherent ability of the design to carry data from one point to another. (SIG-ECS)

EXHIBIT 3.28

Typical Audible Notification Appliance. (Source: Gentex Corp., Zeeland, MI)

EXHIBIT 3.29

Typical Visible Notification Appliance. (Source: Cooper Wheelock Inc. dba Cooper Notification, Long Branch, NJ)

EXHIBIT 3.30

Amber and Blue Strobes. (Source: Gentex Corp., Zeeland, MI)

3.3.170 Noncontiguous Property. See 3.3.207, Property.

3.3.171* Nonrequired. A system component or group of components that is installed at the option of the owner, and is not installed due to a building or fire code requirement. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.171 Nonrequired. There are situations where the applicable building or fire code does not require the installation of a fire alarm system or specific fire alarm system components, but the building owner wants to install a fire alarm system or component to meet site-specific needs or objectives. A building owner always has the option of installing protection that is above the minimum requirements of the Code. It is the intent of the Code that any fire alarm system, or fire alarm system components installed voluntarily by a building owner, meet the requirements of the applicable portions of the Code. However, it is not the intent of the Code that the installation of a nonrequired fire alarm system, or fire alarm system components, trigger requirements for the installation of additional fire alarm system components or features. For example, the installation of a fire alarm control unit and fire detectors to service a specific area, such as a computer room or flammable liquid storage room, does not trigger a requirement for audible or visible notification appliances, manual fire alarm boxes, or other fire alarm system features in other parts of the building.

The term *nonrequired* should not be confused with the term *supplementary*, defined in 3.3.289. While A.3.3.171 references "fire alarm system," the text of the Code has removed the words "fire alarm" preceding "system." The scope of the Code is intended to cover not just fire alarm systems, but also other types of signaling systems as identified throughout the document. A nonrequired system is one that is not required by a building code or by any statutory authority but is installed voluntarily at the request of the owner. Nonrequired systems must fully comply with all the applicable requirements of the Code and be designed and installed to satisfy the goals intended for the system. The goals and the design intent also must be documented.

3.3.172 Nonrestorable Initiating Device. See 3.3.132, Initiating Device.

3.3.173 Notification Appliance. A fire alarm system component such as a bell, horn, speaker, light, or text display that provides audible, tactile, or visible outputs, or any combination thereof. (SIG-NAS)

Many types of notification appliances are available. The most common are audible and visible appliances. Exhibits 3.28 and 3.29 illustrate these two types of notification appliances. Exhibit 3.30 shows amber and blue strobes that might be used in non-fire applications such as for mass notification systems. In addition, other types of notification appliances are sometimes used, including tactile notification appliances in the form of bed shakers or vibrating pagers. Olfactory notification appliances are often used in mines and other hazardous locations.

3.3.173.1 Audible Notification Appliance. A notification appliance that alerts by the sense of hearing. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.173.1.1 Exit Marking Audible Notification Appliance. An audible notification appliance that marks building exits and areas of refuge by the sense of hearing for the purpose of evacuation or relocation. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.173.1.2* Textual Audible Notification Appliance. A notification appliance that conveys a stream of audible information. (SIG-NAS)

A.3.3.173.1.2 Textual Audible Notification Appliance. An example of a textual audible notification appliance is a speaker that reproduces a voice message.

3.3.173.2 Tactile Notification Appliance. A notification appliance that alerts by the sense of touch or vibration. (SIG-NAS)

Tactile notification appliances include vibrating pagers and bed shakers typically used to notify persons with disabilities who are not able to respond to an audible or visual fire alarm notification appliance. These appliances must be listed for their intended purpose.

3.3.173.3 Visible Notification Appliance. A notification appliance that alerts by the sense of sight. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.173.3.1 Textual Visible Notification Appliance. A notification appliance that conveys a stream of visible information that displays an alphanumeric or pictorial message. Textual visible notification appliances provide temporary text, permanent text, or symbols. Textual visible notification appliances include, but are not limited to, annunciators, monitors, CRTs, displays, and printers. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.174 Notification Appliance Circuit. A circuit or path directly connected to a notification appliance(s). (SIG-PRO)

3.3.175 Notification Zone. See 3.3.320, Zone.

3.3.176 Nuisance Alarm. See 3.3.307.2, Unwanted Alarm.

3.3.177* Occupiable. A room or enclosed space designed for human occupancy. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.177 Occupiable. The term *occupiable* is used in this Code and in other governing laws, codes, or standards to determine areas that require certain features of a system. It is important for designers to understand that unless otherwise required, spaces that are not occupiable might not require or need coverage by initiating devices or occupant notification appliances. For example, most closets would not be considered to be occupiable. However, a space of the same size used as a file room would be considered occupiable.

3.3.178 Occupiable Area. An area of a facility occupied by people on a regular basis. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.179* Octave Band. The bandwidth of a filter that comprises a frequency range of a factor of 2. (SIG-NAS)

A.3.3.179 Octave Band. Frequencies are generally reported based on a standard, preferred center frequency, f_c. The bandwidth of a particular octave band has a lower frequency, f_n, and an upper frequency, f_{n+1}. The relationships are as follows:

$$\frac{f_{n+1}}{f_n} = 2^k$$

where:

$k = 1$ for octave bands

$k = 1/3$ for one-third octave bands

and

$f_c = f_n\, 2^{1/2}$

For example, the 500 Hz octave band (center frequency) has a lower limit of 354 and an upper limit of 707 Hz. The octave band with a center frequency of 1000 Hz has a lower frequency of 707 Hz and an upper frequency of 1414 Hz.

3.3.179.1 One-Third Octave Band. The bandwidth of a filter that comprises a frequency range of a factor of $2^{1/3}$. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.180 Off-Hook. To make connection with the public-switched telephone network in preparation for dialing a telephone number. (SIG-SSS)

When someone lifts a telephone handset from its normal resting position, the telephone instrument is said to be "off-hook." Digital alarm communicator transmitters use equipment to access the public-switched network and automatically provide an off-hook condition prior to beginning a transmission sequence.

3.3.181 One-Third Octave Band. See 3.3.179, Octave Band.

3.3.182 One-Way Emergency Communications System. See 3.3.87, Emergency Communications System.

3.3.183 On-Hook. To disconnect from the public-switched telephone network. (SIG-SSS)

When someone returns a telephone handset to its normal resting position, the telephone instrument is said to be "on-hook." When a digital alarm communicator transmitter completes its transmission, the associated digital alarm communicator receiver transmits a "kiss off" signal that completes the transmission sequence and initiates the equipment within the transmitter and receiver to go on-hook and end the communications connection.

3.3.184 Open Area Detection (Protection). Protection of an area such as a room or space with detectors to provide early warning of fire. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.185 Operating Mode.

3.3.185.1 Private Operating Mode. Audible or visible signaling only to those persons directly concerned with the implementation and direction of emergency action initiation and procedure in the area protected by the fire alarm system. (SIG-NAS)

FAQ

Which individuals are private operating mode signals intended to alert?

At some locations, the fire alarm system uses the private operating mode to alert individuals who have responsibility to take prescribed action during a fire emergency. Such individuals may include operators in a supervising station, telephone switchboard operators, building receptionists, nurses at a nursing station, building engineers, plant managers, boiler room operators, emergency response team members, or other specially trained personnel. Some building codes, the *Life Safety Code*, and local ordinances may permit private operating mode notification to precede public operating mode notification of the general occupants. The term *private operating mode* does not refer to applications in private versus public buildings.

3.3.185.2 Public Operating Mode. Audible or visible signaling to occupants or inhabitants of the area protected by the fire alarm system. (SIG-NAS)

The fire alarm system uses the public operating mode to notify general building occupants to take specified action during a fire. This action may include complete evacuation of the building or selective, partial evacuation or relocation to areas of refuge within the building. The term *public operating mode* does not refer to applications in public versus private buildings.

3.3.186 Other Fire Detectors. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.187* Ownership. Any property or building or its contents under legal control by the occupant, by contract, or by holding of a title or deed. (SIG-SSS)

A.3.3.187 Ownership. Inspection, testing, and maintenance is the responsibility of the property or building owner, or it can be transferred by contract. Systems installed, owned, or leased by a tenant are the responsibility of the tenant. The installing company should provide written notice of these responsibilities to the system user.

Paragraph 14.2.3.1 requires the property, building, or system owner or the owner's designated representative to be responsible for inspection, testing, and maintenance of the system.

3.3.188 Paging System. A system intended to page one or more persons by such means as voice over loudspeaker, coded audible signals or visible signals, or lamp annunciators. (SIG-PRO)

Exhibits 3.31 and 3.32 illustrate examples and usage of paging systems. Also refer to the defined term *public address system* in 3.3.214 and associated commentary.

EXHIBIT 3.31

Fire Official Using Paging System. (Source: SimplexGrinnell, Westminster, MA)

EXHIBIT 3.32

Typical Single-Channel Paging System. (Source: Signal Communications Corp., Woburn, MA)

3.3.189 Parallel Telephone System. A telephone system in which an individually wired circuit is used for each fire alarm box. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.190 Path (Pathways). Any circuit, conductor, optic fiber, radio carrier, or other means connecting two or more locations. (SIG-PRO)

In the 2010 edition of the Code, the definition of the term *path (pathways)* was expanded to include circuits. Requirements for pathways are addressed primarily in Chapter 12.

3.3.191 Pathway Survivability. The ability of any conductor, optic fiber, radio carrier, or other means for transmitting system information to remain operational during fire conditions. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.192 Permanent Visual Record (Recording). An immediately readable, not easily alterable, print, slash, or punch record of all occurrences of status change. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.193 Personnel.

3.3.193.1 Inspection Personnel. Individuals who conduct a visual examination of a system or portion thereof to verify that it appears to be in operating condition, in proper location, and is free of physical damage or conditions that impair operation. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.193.2 Service Personnel. Individuals who perform those procedures, adjustments, replacement of components, system programming, and maintenance as described in the manufacturer's service instructions that can affect any aspect of the performance of the system. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.193.3 System Designer. Individual responsible for the development of fire alarm and signaling system plans and specifications in accordance with this Code. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.193.4 System Installer. Individual responsible for the proper installation of fire alarm and signaling systems in accordance with plans, specifications, and manufacturer's requirements. (SIG-FUN)

New definitions for the terms *system designer* and *system installer* were added to the 2013 edition of the Code to correlate with previously provided definitions for *inspection personnel, service personnel*, and *testing personnel*. The definitions describe the roles of the personnel while the specific requirements for each are found in Section 10.5.

3.3.193.5 Testing Personnel. Individuals who perform procedures used to determine the status of a system as intended by conducting acceptance, reacceptance, or periodic physical checks on systems. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.194 Photoelectric Light Obscuration Smoke Detection. See 3.3.269, Smoke Detection.

3.3.195 Photoelectric Light-Scattering Smoke Detection. See 3.3.269, Smoke Detection.

3.3.196 Plant. One or more buildings under the same ownership or control on a single property. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.197 Pneumatic Rate-of-Rise Tubing Heat Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.198 Positive Alarm Sequence. An automatic sequence that results in an alarm signal, even when manually delayed for investigation, unless the system is reset. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.199 Power Supply. A source of electrical operating power, including the circuits and terminations connecting it to the dependent system components. (SIG-FUN)

The power supply can be either internal or external to the control unit. Power supplies also include notification appliance circuit (NAC) power extenders and remote power supplies.

3.3.200 Primary Battery (Dry Cell). A nonrechargeable battery requiring periodic replacement. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.201 Primary Trunk Facility. That part of a transmission channel connecting all leg facilities to a supervising or subsidiary station. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.202 Prime Contractor. The one company contractually responsible for providing central station services to a subscriber as required by this Code. The prime contractor can be either a listed central station or a listed alarm service–local company. (SIG-SSS)

The term *prime contractor* may refer to a person, firm, or corporation listed by an organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction to install, maintain, test, and monitor a central station service alarm system. See the defined term *listed* in 3.2.5 as well as Chapter 26 for further requirements on central station service alarm systems.

3.3.203 Private Operating Mode. See 3.3.185, Operating Mode.

3.3.204 Private Radio Signaling. A radio system under control of the proprietary supervising station. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.205 Profound Hearing Loss. See 3.3.122, Hearing Loss.

3.3.206 Projected Beam–Type Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.207 Property.

> ***3.3.207.1 Contiguous Property.*** A single-owner or single-user protected premises on a continuous plot of ground, including any buildings thereon, that is not separated by a public thoroughfare, transportation right-of-way, property owned or used by others, or body of water not under the same ownership. (SIG-SSS)
>
> ***3.3.207.2 Noncontiguous Property.*** An owner- or user-protected premises where two or more protected premises, controlled by the same owner or user, are separated by a public thoroughfare, body of water, transportation right-of-way, or property owned or used by others. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.208 Proprietary Supervising Station. See 3.3.283, Supervising Station.

3.3.209 Proprietary Supervising Station Alarm System. See 3.3.284, Supervising Station Alarm System.

3.3.210 Proprietary Supervising Station Service. See 3.3.285, Supervising Station Service.

3.3.211 Protected Premises. The physical location protected by a fire alarm system. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.212 Protected Premises (Local) Control Unit. See 3.3.102, Fire Alarm Control Unit.

3.3.213 Protected Premises (Local) Fire Alarm System. See 3.3.105, Fire Alarm System.

3.3.214 Public Address System. An electronic amplification system with a mixer, amplifier, and loudspeakers, used to reinforce a given sound and distributing the "sound" to the general public around a building. (SIG-ECS)

The means for emergency voice communications to building occupants is normally through the use of an in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems or in-building mass notification system. (These systems may also serve as public address systems.) In situations where a public address system is used for emergency voice communications, the requirements of 24.4.3.24 or 24.4.3.25 apply.

3.3.215 Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System. A system of alarm-initiating devices, transmitting and receiving equipment, and communication infrastructure (other than a public telephone network) used to communicate with the communications center to provide any combination of manual or auxiliary alarm service. (SIG-PRS)

In the 2010 edition of the Code, the word *fire* was removed from the term *public fire alarm reporting system* as well as from other terms associated with these systems. The word *fire* was replaced with the word *emergency*. This change has been made to reflect the broader application now permitted for *public emergency alarm reporting systems*. See Section 27.8.

3.3.215.1* Auxiliary Alarm System. A protected premises fire alarm system or other emergency system at the protected premises and the system used to connect the protected premises system to a public emergency alarm reporting system for transmitting an alarm to the communications center. (SIG-PRS)

A.3.3.215.1 Auxiliary Alarm System. Alarms from an auxiliary alarm system are received at the communications center on the same equipment and by the same methods as alarms transmitted from public alarm boxes.

3.3.215.1.1 Local Energy Type Auxiliary Alarm System. An auxiliary system that employs a locally complete arrangement of parts, initiating devices, relays, power supply, and associated components to automatically activate a master box or auxiliary box over circuits that are electrically isolated from the public emergency alarm reporting system circuits. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.215.1.2 Shunt-Type Auxiliary Alarm System. An auxiliary system electrically connected to the public emergency alarm reporting system extending a public emergency alarm reporting circuit to interconnect initiating devices within a protected premises, which, when operated, opens the public emergency alarm reporting circuit shunted around the trip coil of the master box or auxiliary box. The master box or auxiliary box is thereupon energized to start transmission without any assistance from a local source of power. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.215.2 Type A Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System. A system in which an alarm from an alarm box is received and is retransmitted to fire stations either manually or automatically. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.215.3 Type B Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System. A system in which an alarm from an alarm box is automatically transmitted to fire stations and, if used, is transmitted to supplementary alerting devices. (SIG-PRS)

3.3.216 Public Operating Mode. See 3.3.185, Operating Mode.

3.3.217 Public Safety Agency. A fire, emergency medical services, or law enforcement agency. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.218 Public Safety Radio Enhancement System. A system installed to assure the effective operation of radio communication systems used by fire, emergency medical services, or law enforcement agencies. (SIG-ECS)

Public safety radio enhancement systems, addressed as two-way radio communications enhancement systems in 24.5.2, are systems used to ensure the performance of public safety radio systems within buildings. Often, problems occur in buildings due to radio signal attenuation caused by the building structure itself. These enhancement systems are intended to ensure that radio coverage is adequately provided throughout the building for the first responders. Extensive commissioning and testing requirements are provided in 14.4.10.

3.3.219 Public Safety Radio System. A radio communication system used by fire, emergency medical services, or law enforcement agencies. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.220 Public Switched Telephone Network. See 3.3.290, Switched Telephone Network.

3.3.221 Publicly Accessible Fire Alarm Box. See 3.3.12, Fire Alarm Box.

3.3.222* Qualified. A competent and capable person or company that has met the requirements and training for a given field acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. [**96,** 2011] (SIG-TMS)

A.3.3.222 Qualified. *Qualified* might also mean that the person has knowledge of the installation, construction, or operation of apparatus and the hazards involved.

3.3.223 Radiant Energy–Sensing Fire Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

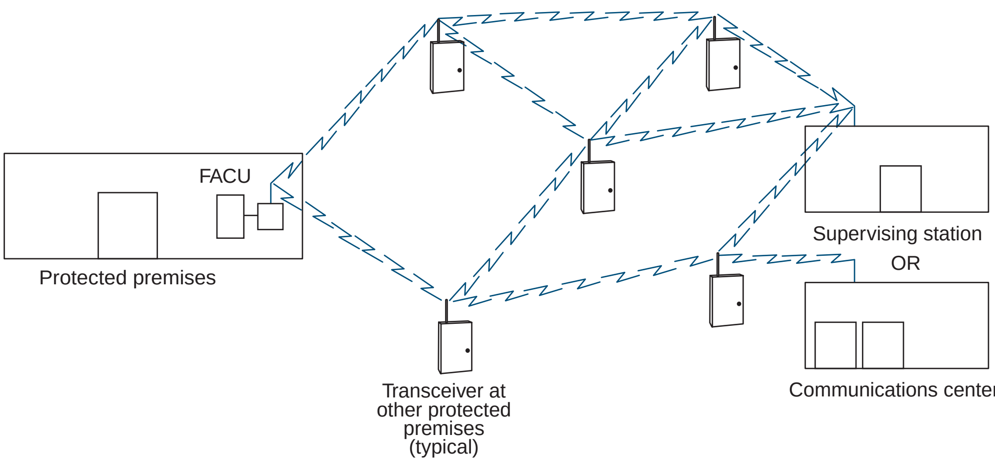
3.3.224 Radio Alarm Repeater Station Receiver (RARSR). A system component that receives radio signals and resides at a repeater station that is located at a remote receiving location. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.225 Radio Alarm Supervising Station Receiver (RASSR). A system component that receives data and annunciates that data at the supervising station. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.226 Radio Alarm System (RAS). A system in which signals are transmitted from a radio alarm transmitter (RAT) located at a protected premises through a radio channel to two or more radio alarm repeater station receivers (RARSR) and that are annunciated by a radio alarm supervising station receiver (RASSR) located at the central station. (SIG-SSS)

Exhibit 3.33 illustrates a typical radio alarm system.

EXHIBIT 3.33



Radio Alarm System. (Source: Keltron Corp., Waltham, MA)

3.3.227 Radio Alarm Transmitter (RAT). A system component at the protected premises to which initiating devices or groups of devices are connected that transmits signals indicating a status change of the initiating devices. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.228 Radio Channel. See 3.3.43, Channel.

3.3.229* Radio Frequency. The number of electromagnetic wave frequency cycles transmitted by a radio in 1 second. [**1221,** 2013] (SIG-PRS)

A.3.3.229 Radio Frequency. The present practicable limits of radio frequency (RF) are roughly 10 kHz to 100,000 MHz. Within this frequency range, electromagnetic waves can be detected and amplified as an electric current at the wave frequency. *Radio frequency* usually refers to the *RF* of the assigned channel. [**1221:** A.3.3.65]

3.3.230 Rate Compensation Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.231 Rate-of-Rise Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.232 Record Drawings. Drawings (as-built) that document the location of all devices, appliances, wiring sequences, wiring methods, and connections of the components of the system as installed. (SIG-FUN)

Record drawings (also called *as-built drawings* or *record set drawings*) provide information that is essential to those who test and maintain the fire alarm system and other signaling systems covered by this Code. These drawings must be developed during the installation by the installer and consist of original system shop drawings that have been annotated during system installation to show exactly where the system components (including remote power supplies or extenders and control units or modules) have been installed, how the cable and conduit have been routed, and the locations of all terminal and junction boxes.

Record drawings show details of how each conductor of each system circuit was installed, the color codes used, the actual location of each device and appliance, terminal cabinets, terminal identifications, and dates of software and system revisions. They also document all field changes that were made during the installation. Any changes made throughout the life of the system must be noted on the record drawings.

The system owner is responsible for retention of all record drawings. Record drawings, based on the shop drawings, must reflect the actual system installation. The record drawings, once completed by the contractor, should be transmitted to the designer for review and acceptance before being delivered to the owner or authority having jurisdiction. For requirements and information related to the original fire alarm system shop drawings, refer to 3.3.255, Section 7.4, 7.4.1, and A.7.4.1.

3.3.233 Record of Completion. A document that acknowledges the features of installation, operation (performance), service, and equipment with representation by the property owner, system installer, system supplier, service organization, and the authority having jurisdiction. (SIG-FUN)

Requirements for the record of completion are contained in 7.5.6. Refer to the commentary following 7.5.6. The record of completion is used to verify that the system has been installed as per the specifications and drawings and that the system has been fully tested before the authority having jurisdiction is called for the final inspection.

• **3.3.234 Releasing Fire Alarm System.** See 3.3.105, Fire Alarm System.

3.3.235 Releasing Service Fire Alarm Control Unit. See 3.3.102, Fire Alarm Control Unit.

3.3.236 Relocation. The movement of occupants from a fire zone to a safe area within the same building. (SIG-PRO)

In hospitals, high-rise buildings, and large-area facilities, where evacuation of all occupants on every alarm signal is impractical and often undesirable, occupants in the fire zone may be directed to move to a specific area where they will be more safe. Also refer to the defined term *evacuation signaling zone* in 3.3.320.1.

3.3.237 Remote Supervising Station. See 3.3.283, Supervising Station.

3.3.238 Remote Supervising Station Alarm System. See 3.3.284, Supervising Station Alarm System.

3.3.239 Remote Supervising Station Service. See 3.3.285, Supervising Station Service.

3.3.240 Repeater Station. The location of the equipment needed to relay signals between supervising stations, subsidiary stations, and protected premises. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.241 Reset. A control function that attempts to return a system or device to its normal, nonalarm state. (SIG-FUN)

Reset should not be confused with alarm signal deactivation, which only deactivates the alarm signal and does not return the fire alarm system to its normal standby quiescent condition.

3.3.242 Residential Board and Care Occupancy. An occupancy used for lodging and boarding of four or more residents, not related by blood or marriage to the owners or operators, for the purpose of providing personal care services. [***101*****,** 2012] (SIG-HOU)

The definitions for several occupancy terms are included in Chapter 3 to correlate with their use in Chapter 29. *NFPA 72*, including Chapter 29, is not an occupancy-based code. However, some of the installation and performance rules that are provided in Chapter 29 are specified differently for the different types of occupancies. These terms have been extracted from NFPA *101* as indicated by the reference in brackets at the end of the definition.

3.3.243 Residential Occupancy. An occupancy that provides sleeping accommodations for purposes other than health care or detention and correctional. [***101*****,** 2012] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.244* Response. Actions performed upon the receipt of a signal. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.244 Response. Responses can be effected manually or automatically. One response to a signal might be to actuate notification appliances or transmitters, which in turn generate additional signals. See A.3.3.57.

3.3.244.1* Alarm Response. The response to the receipt of an alarm signal. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.244.1 Alarm Response. Examples include the actuation of alarm notification appliances, elevator recall, smoke control measures, emergency responder dispatch, deployment of resources in accordance with a risk analysis and emergency action plan, and so forth.

3.3.244.2* Pre-Alarm Response. The response to the receipt of a pre-alarm signal. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.244.2 Pre-Alarm Response. Examples include the actuation of appropriate notification appliances, dispatch of personnel, investigation of circumstances and problem resolution in accordance with a risk analysis and action plan, preparation for a potential alarm response, and so forth.

3.3.244.3* Supervisory Response. The response to the receipt of a supervisory signal. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.244.3 Supervisory Response. Examples include the actuation of supervisory notification appliances, the shutdown of machines, fan shutdown or activation, dispatch of personnel, investigation of circumstances and problem resolution in accordance with a risk analysis and action plan, and so forth.

3.3.244.4* Trouble Response. The response to the receipt of a trouble signal. (SIG-FUN)

A response ordinarily occurs upon the receipt of a signal, which follows the detection of an off-normal condition. Dependent on several factors, which may include the type of off-normal condition detected and the subsequent predetermined type of signal produced, the response to a trouble signal may vary from the immediate notification of personnel, to the notification of select responders, or to the notification of the supervising station, which in turn may notify emergency personnel and perhaps initiate runner service. Oftentimes a received signal may have multiple responses. How quickly a signal is received, and when the resulting response is initiated, is addressed in several chapters of the Code.

A.3.3.244.4 Trouble Response. Examples include the activation of trouble notification appliances, dispatch of service personnel, deployment of resources in accordance with an action plan, and so forth.

3.3.245 Restorable Initiating Device. See 3.3.132, Initiating Device.

3.3.246 Risk Analysis. A process to characterize the likelihood, vulnerability, and magnitude of incidents associated with natural, technological, and manmade disasters and other emergencies that address scenarios of concern, their probability, and their potential consequences. (SIG-ECS)

Requirements for performing a risk analysis are contained in 24.3.11 and 24.7.6.4. Many of the requirements in Chapter 24 are predicated on the performance of a risk analysis to form a basis for the system design and signal priorities.

3.3.247 Runner. A person other than the required number of operators on duty at central, supervising, or runner stations (or otherwise in contact with these stations) available for prompt dispatching, when necessary, to the protected premises. (SIG-SSS)

FAQ What are some of the duties that a runner may be called to perform?

The Code intends that the runner have the qualifications to perform the required duties at the protected premises. These duties may include resetting equipment; investigating alarm, supervisory, or trouble signals; and taking corrective action when necessary. Runners must receive training so that they have an in-depth knowledge of the fire alarm systems and equipment within the protected premises; however, they may or may not have the knowledge or training to actually service or repair equipment. In some cases, upon receipt of a trouble signal from equipment at the protected premises, a supervising station may first dispatch a runner to attempt to determine whether the fire alarm system needs the attention of a qualified service technician. See 10.5.3 for requirements pertaining to qualifications of service personnel.

3.3.248 Runner Service. The service provided by a runner at the protected premises, including restoration, resetting, and silencing of all equipment transmitting fire alarm or supervisory or trouble signals to an off-premises location. (SIG-SSS)

Runner service is generally provided as part of either central station service or a proprietary supervising station alarm system. A runner is sent to the protected premises from which the signal was received and takes appropriate action, as outlined in the commentary following the definition of the term *runner* in 3.3.247.

3.3.249 Scanner. Equipment located at the telephone company wire center that monitors each local leg and relays status changes to the alarm center. Processors and associated equipment might also be included. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.250 Secondary Trunk Facility. That part of a transmission channel connecting two or more, but fewer than all, leg facilities to a primary trunk facility. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.251 Selective Talk Mode. See 3.3.294, Talk Mode.

3.3.252 Separate Sleeping Area. The area of a dwelling unit where the bedrooms or sleeping rooms are located. [**720,** 2012] (SIG-HOU)

3.3.253 Service Personnel. See 3.3.193, Personnel.

3.3.254 Shapes of Ceilings. The shapes of ceilings can be classified as sloping or smooth. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.255 Shop Drawings. Documents that provide information pertaining to the system, such as property location, scaled floor plans, equipment wiring details, typical equipment installation details, riser details, conduit/conductor size and routing information, and other information necessary for the installer to complete the fire alarm installation. (SIG-FUN)

Shop drawings are a method of conveying information to the authority having jurisdiction and others relating to the system that is to be installed at a location. See Section 7.4 for the requirements pertaining to shop drawings and the information that should be included on shop drawings. The term *record drawings* is used in other locations in the Code. Record drawings, defined in 3.3.232, are the as-built version of the shop drawings. Refer to the commentary following 3.3.232.

3.3.256 Shunt-Type Auxiliary Alarm System. See 3.3.215, Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System.

3.3.257* Signal. A message indicating a condition, communicated by electrical, visible, audible, wireless, or other means. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.257 Signal. See A.3.3.57.

3.3.257.1* Alarm Signal. A signal that results from the manual or automatic detection of an alarm condition. (SIG-FUN)

The term *alarm signal*, defined in 3.3.257.1, is a form of notification that is produced to warn of a danger. This danger may be related, as examples, to a fire or carbon monoxide condition through the automatic activation of an initiating device or it may be manually activated to warn of a fire, weather, environmental, or hostile situation.

A.3.3.257.1 Alarm Signal. Examples of alarm signals include outputs of activated alarm initiating devices, the light and sound from actuated alarm notification appliances, alarm data transmission to a supervising station, and so forth.

3.3.257.2 Carbon Monoxide Alarm Signal. A signal indicating a concentration of carbon monoxide at or above the alarm threshold that could pose a risk to the life safety of the occupants and that requires immediate action. [**720,** 2012] (SIG-FUN)

NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment*, requires that signals from carbon monoxide appliances produce signals that are distinctive from other similar appliances. A four-pulse pattern is described in 5.8.6.5.1 of NFPA 720.

3.3.257.3 Delinquency Signal. A signal indicating a supervisory condition and the need for action in connection with the supervision of guards or system attendants. (SIG-PRO)

A delinquency signal applies only to guard's tour systems. Some fire alarm systems are arranged as combination systems that contain specific guard patrol stations at which a touring guard inserts a key that registers a signal to show the date and time a location was visited. If the guard fails to initiate a signal within a prescribed amount of time, the fire alarm system initiates a supervisory signal. This feature was once common in fire alarm systems in large industrial facilities but is not commonly used today.

3.3.257.4 Evacuation Signal. A distinctive alarm signal intended to be recognized by the occupants as requiring evacuation of the building. (SIG-PRO)

The Code requires fire alarm systems to use a distinctive three-pulse temporal pattern evacuation signal. This signal is described in 18.4.2.1. The only exception is where the authority having jurisdiction approves the continued use of a previously established evacuation signal.

3.3.257.5* Fire Alarm Signal. A signal that results from the manual or automatic detection of a fire alarm condition. (SIG-FUN)

Fire alarm signals are not permitted to indicate supervisory or trouble conditions. See Section 10.10 for requirements pertaining to distinctive signals. However, it should be noted that in some cases a device alarm condition is permitted to be indicated by a supervisory signal. For example, 21.7.4 requires smoke detectors installed in an air duct to initiate a supervisory signal.

A.3.3.257.5 Fire Alarm Signal. Examples include outputs from activated fire alarm initiating devices (manual fire alarm box, automatic fire detector, waterflow switch, etc.), the light and sound from actuated fire alarm notification appliances, fire alarm data transmission to a supervising station, and so forth.

3.3.257.6* Guard's Tour Supervisory Signal. A signal generated when a guard on patrol has activated a guard's tour reporting station. (SIG-PRO)

A.3.3.257.6 Guard's Tour Supervisory Signal. The term *guard's tour supervisory signal*, associated with systems supporting guard's tour supervisory service, is a message indicating that a guard has activated a guard's tour reporting station (not in itself an indication of a supervisory condition). Guard's tour supervisory signals are not a subset of the general category of supervisory signals as used in this Code.

3.3.257.7* Pre-Alarm Signal. A signal that results from the detection of a pre-alarm condition. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.257.7 Pre-Alarm Signal. Examples include outputs of analog initiating devices prior to reaching alarm levels, the light and sound from actuated pre-alarm notification appliances, aspiration system outputs indicating smoke at levels below the listed alarm threshold, and so forth.

3.3.257.8 Restoration Signal. A signal that results from the return to normal condition of an initiating device, system element, or system. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.257.9* Supervisory Signal. A signal that results from the detection of a supervisory condition. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.257.9 Supervisory Signal. Examples include activated supervisory signal-initiating device outputs, supervisory data transmissions to supervising stations, the light and sound from actuated supervisory notification appliances, a delinquency signal indicating a guard's tour supervisory condition, and so forth.

The term *guard's tour supervisory signal*, associated with systems supporting guard's tour supervisory service, is a message indicating that a guard has activated a guard's tour reporting station (not in itself an indication of a supervisory condition). Guard's tour supervisory signals are not a subset of the general category of supervisory signals as used in this Code.

3.3.257.10* Trouble Signal. A signal that results from the detection of a trouble condition. (SIG-FUN)

A.3.3.257.10 Trouble Signal. Examples include off-normal outputs from integrity monitoring circuits, the light and sound from actuated trouble notification appliances, trouble data transmission to a supervising station, and so forth.

3.3.258 Signal Transmission Sequence. A DACT that obtains dial tone, dials the number(s) of the DACR, obtains verification that the DACR is ready to receive signals, transmits the signals, and receives acknowledgment that the DACR has accepted that signal before disconnecting (going on-hook). (SIG-SSS)

3.3.259 Signaling Line Circuit. A circuit path between any combination of addressable appliances or devices, circuit interfaces, control units, or transmitters over which multiple system input signals or output signals or both are carried. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.260 Signaling Line Circuit Interface. See 3.3.137, Interface.

3.3.261 Single Dwelling Unit. See 3.3.81, Dwelling Unit.

3.3.262 Single-Station Alarm. A detector comprising an assembly that incorporates a sensor, control components, and an alarm notification appliance in one unit operated from a power source either located in the unit or obtained at the point of installation. (SIG-HOU)

See the commentary following the definition of the term *multiple-station alarm* in 3.3.161.

3.3.263 Single-Station Alarm Device. An assembly that incorporates the detector, the control equipment, and the alarm-sounding device in one unit operated from a power supply either in the unit or obtained at the point of installation. (SIG-HOU)

3.3.264 Site-Specific Software. See 3.3.272, Software.

3.3.265 Sloping Ceiling. See 3.3.35, Ceiling.

3.3.266 Sloping Peaked-Type Ceiling. See 3.3.35, Ceiling.

3.3.267 Sloping Shed-Type Ceiling. See 3.3.35, Ceiling.

3.3.268 Smoke Alarm. A single or multiple-station alarm responsive to smoke. (SIG-HOU)

Exhibit 3.34 illustrates a typical single-station smoke alarm.

EXHIBIT 3.34

Typical Single-Station Smoke Alarm. (Source: Gentex Corp., Zeeland, MI)

3.3.269 Smoke Detection.

3.3.269.1 Cloud Chamber Smoke Detection. The principle of using an air sample drawn from the protected area into a high-humidity chamber combined with a lowering of chamber pressure to create an environment in which the resultant moisture in the air condenses on any smoke particles present, forming a cloud. The cloud density is measured by a photoelectric principle. The density signal is processed and used to convey an alarm condition when it meets preset criteria. (SIG-IDS)

FAQ What is cloud chamber smoke detection?

Cloud chamber smoke detection is a form of active air sampling–type smoke detection. Cloud chamber smoke detectors are extremely sensitive to low levels of combustion products and are frequently used to detect very small fires in vital equipment. Also see the definition of the term *air sampling–type detector* in 3.3.66.1.

3.3.269.2* Ionization Smoke Detection. The principle of using a small amount of radioactive material to ionize the air between two differentially charged electrodes to sense the presence of smoke particles. Smoke particles entering the ionization volume decrease the conductance of the air by reducing ion mobility. The reduced conductance signal is processed and used to convey an alarm condition when it meets preset criteria. (SIG-IDS)

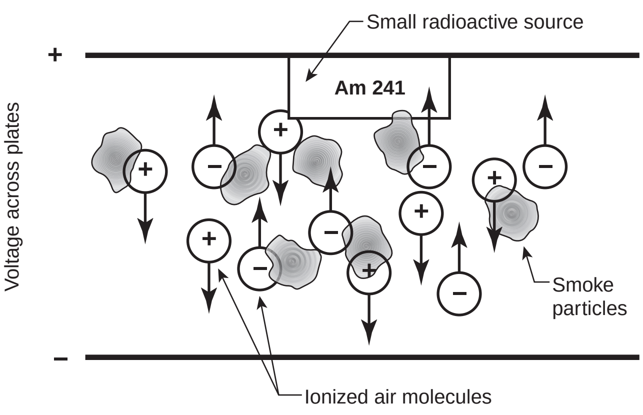
A.3.3.269.2 Ionization Smoke Detection. Ionization smoke detection is more responsive to invisible particles (smaller than 1 micron in size) produced by most flaming fires. It is somewhat less responsive to the larger particles typical of most smoldering fires. Smoke detectors that use the ionization principle are usually of the spot type.

Although all listed smoke detectors must pass the same series of tests at listing agencies, system designers typically use ionization-type smoke detectors in locations in which they expect a greater risk of a flaming rather than a smoldering fire scenario. Generally, fire scientists consider ionization detectors to be slightly more sensitive to the smaller particles of smoke produced by a flaming fire. In locations where smoldering fires are more likely to occur, photoelectric-type smoke detectors, rather than ionization-type smoke detectors, may offer better protection. Additionally, light-scattering, photoelectric-type smoke detectors respond better to light-colored smoke than to black particles because black particles absorb light.

Exhibit 3.35 provides details of operation for ionization-type smoke detectors. Measured current flow decreases as smoke particles enter the sensing chamber and attach themselves to ionized air molecules.

EXHIBIT 3.35

Operation of Ionization Smoke Detector.



3.3.269.3* Photoelectric Light Obscuration Smoke Detection. The principle of using a light source and a photosensitive sensor onto which the principal portion of the source emissions is focused. When smoke particles enter the light path, some of the light is scattered and some is absorbed, thereby reducing the light reaching the receiving sensor. The light reduction signal is processed and used to convey an alarm condition when it meets preset criteria. (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.269.3 Photoelectric Light Obscuration Smoke Detection. The response of photoelectric light obscuration smoke detectors is usually not affected by the color of smoke.

Smoke detectors that use the light obscuration principle are usually of the line type. These detectors are commonly referred to as projected beam smoke detectors.

Exhibit 3.36 illustrates the principle of operation of a photoelectric-type light obscuration smoke detector.

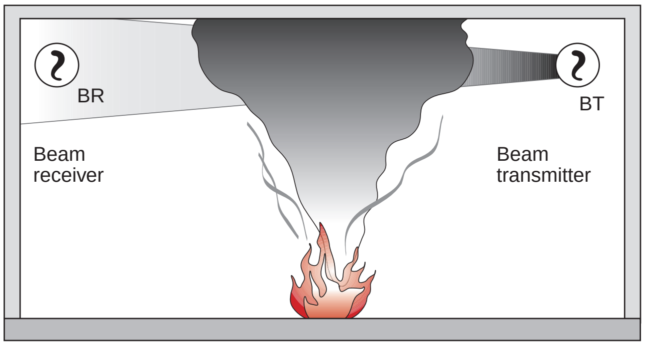


EXHIBIT 3.36

Operation of Photoelectric Light Obscuration Smoke Detector.

3.3.269.4* Photoelectric Light-Scattering Smoke Detection. The principle of using a light source and a photosensitive sensor arranged so that the rays from the light source do not normally fall onto the photosensitive sensor. When smoke particles enter the light path, some of the light is scattered by reflection and refraction onto the sensor. The light signal is processed and used to convey an alarm condition when it meets preset criteria. (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.269.4 Photoelectric Light-Scattering Smoke Detection. Photoelectric light-scattering smoke detection is more responsive to the visible particles (larger than 1 micron in size) produced by most smoldering fires. It is somewhat less responsive to the smaller particles typical of most flaming fires. It is also less responsive to black smoke than to lighter colored smoke. Smoke detectors that use the light-scattering principle are usually of the spot type.

Although all listed smoke detectors must pass the same series of tests at listing agencies, system designers typically use photoelectric-type smoke detectors where they expect a fire to produce larger smoke particles, such as with a smoldering fire or an aged smoke scenario. A photoelectric-type smoke detector is better at detecting the larger or lighter-colored particles produced by smoldering fires or smoke particles that have agglomerated or "aged" as the particles move away from the thermal energy source at the fire. In locations where flaming fires are more likely to occur, ionization-type smoke detectors, rather than photoelectric-type smoke detectors, may offer better protection.

Exhibit 3.37 illustrates the principle of operation for a photoelectric light-scattering smoke detector.

3.3.269.5* Video Image Smoke Detection (VISD). The principle of using automatic analysis of real-time video images to detect the presence of smoke. (SIG-IDS)

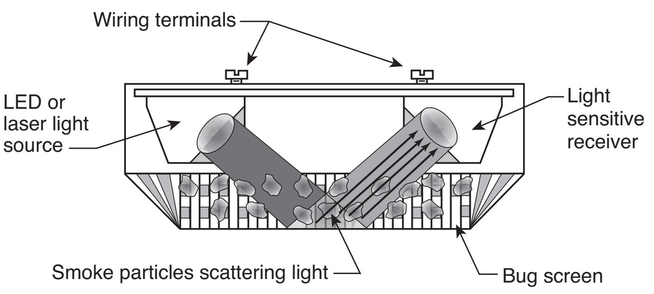
A.3.3.269.5 Video Image Smoke Detection (VISD). Video image smoke detection (VISD) is a software-based method of smoke detection that has become practical with the advent of digital video systems. Listing agencies have begun testing VISD components for several manufacturers. VISD systems can analyze images for changes in features such as brightness, contrast, edge content, loss of detail, and motion. The detection equipment can consist of cameras producing digital or analog (converted to digital) video signals and processing unit(s) that maintain the software and interfaces to the fire alarm control unit.

3.3.270 Smoke Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.271 Smooth Ceiling. See 3.3.37, Ceiling Surfaces.

EXHIBIT 3.37

Operation of Photoelectric Light-Scattering Smoke Detector.



3.3.272 Software. Programs, instruments, procedures, data, and the like that are executed by a central processing unit of a product and that influences the functional performance of that product. For the purpose of this Code, software is one of two types: executive software and site-specific software. (SIG-TMS)

3.3.272.1 Executive Software. Control and supervisory program that manages the execution of all other programs and directly or indirectly causes the required functions of the product to be performed. Executive software is sometimes referred to as firmware, BIOS, or executive program. (SIG-TMS)

Fire alarm control unit executive software is similar to the main operating system software used in computers. This software is listed for use with the specific fire alarm control unit and is generally not accessible to the end user.

3.3.272.2 Site-Specific Software. Program that is separate from, but controlled by, the executive software that allows inputs, outputs, and system configuration to be selectively defined to meet the needs of a specific installation. Typically it defines the type and quantity of hardware, customized labels, and the specific operating features of a system. (SIG-TMS)

Site-specific software is a program that runs at a level under the executive software and is specific to the particular fire alarm system installation. Testing in accordance with 14.4.2 must be performed after any changes to the site-specific software.

3.3.273 Solid Joist Construction. See 3.3.37, Ceiling Surfaces.

3.3.274 Spacing. A horizontally measured dimension related to the allowable coverage of fire detectors. (SIG-IDS)

Spacing refers to the maximum linear horizontal distance permitted by the Code between automatic fire detection initiating devices. Spacing is based on the listing of the device for heat detectors and on the requirements in Chapter 17 for smoke detectors.

3.3.275* Spark. A moving particle of solid material that emits radiant energy due either to its temperature or the process of combustion on its surface. [**654,** 2013] (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.275 Spark. The overwhelming majority of applications involving the detection of Class A and Class D combustibles with radiant energy–sensing detectors involve the transport of particulate solid materials through pneumatic conveyor ducts or mechanical conveyors.

It is common in the industries that include such hazards to refer to a moving piece of burning material as a *spark* and to systems for the detection of such fires as *spark detection systems*.

3.3.276 Spark/Ember Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.277 Spark/Ember Detector Sensitivity. The number of watts (or the fraction of a watt) of radiant power from a point source radiator, applied as a unit step signal at the wavelength of maximum detector sensitivity, necessary to produce an alarm signal from the detector within the specified response time. (SIG-IDS)

3.3.278 Spot-Type Detector. See 3.3.66, Detector.

3.3.279 Stakeholder. Any individual, group, or organization that might affect, be affected by, or perceive itself to be affected by the risk. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.280 Stratification. The phenomenon where the upward movement of smoke and gases ceases due to the loss of buoyancy. (SIG-IDS)

FAQ What causes stratification?

The combustion of the fuel in a fire liberates heat. That heat causes the gaseous component of the smoke to expand, making it less dense than the surrounding air. Thus, the smoke is buoyant and flows upward in a plume. As the smoke gases flow upward, they lose heat through two processes. The first process is expansion, which is, as gases expand, they lose heat and cool. The second process is cool air entrainment, which is, as the smoke plume rises, cool ambient air is entrained (drawn) into the flow, cooling the plume. Eventually, these processes cool the smoke to the point where it is at the same temperature and density as the surrounding air. At that point buoyancy is gone, and the smoke stops rising. The plume then spreads out horizontally, regardless of whether or not it has reached the ceiling of the space. If the fire detection devices such as smoke detectors are installed on the ceiling, the fire will not be detected. As the fire continues to grow, the height of the smoke layer slowly rises. However, in rooms or compartments with high ceilings, it is conceivable that the smoke would not arrive at ceiling-mounted detectors before the fire has exceeded the design objective. Care must be exercised in the installation of detection devices in areas subject to this phenomenon, such as an atrium, any other high ceiling space, or an area with unusually high upper level airflow. Also see 17.7.1.10, A.17.7.1.10, and related commentary for more details on this phenomenon and detector placement.

Exhibit 3.38 illustrates stratification. The various levels of stratification shown depend on the fire scenario(s) determined for the space under consideration.

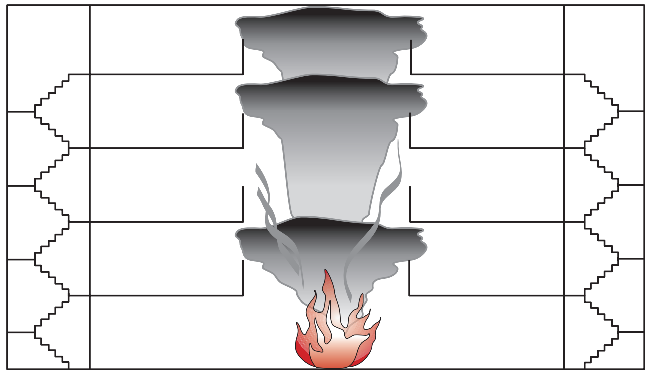
3.3.281 Subscriber. The recipient of a contractual supervising station signal service(s). In case of multiple, noncontiguous properties having single ownership, the term refers to each protected premises or its local management. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.282 Subsidiary Station. A subsidiary station is a normally unattended location that is remote from the supervising station and is linked by a communications channel(s) to the supervising station. Interconnection of signals on one or more transmission channels from protected premises with a communications channel(s) to the supervising station is performed at this location. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.283 Supervising Station. A facility that receives signals from protected premises fire alarm systems and at which personnel are in attendance at all times to respond to these signals. (SIG-SSS)

EXHIBIT 3.38

Stratification.



3.3.283.1 Central Supervising Station. A supervising station that is listed for central station service and that also commonly provides less stringent supervising station services such as remote supervising services. (SIG-SSS)

The listed central station serves as the constantly attended location that receives signals from the central station service alarm system located at the protected premises. Central station operators take action on signals, including initiating a retransmission of the signals, and provide runner service. See Chapter 26 for requirements pertaining to central station systems and central station service. A central supervising station is illustrated in Exhibit 3.39.

3.3.283.2 Proprietary Supervising Station. A supervising station under the same ownership as the protected premises fire alarm system(s) that it supervises (monitors) and to which alarm, supervisory, or trouble signals are received and where personnel are in attendance at all times to supervise operation and investigate signals. (SIG-SSS)

EXHIBIT 3.39

Central Supervising Station (Source: Simplex-Grinnell, Westminster, MA)

3.3.283.3 Remote Supervising Station. A supervising station to which alarm, supervisory, or trouble signals or any combination of those signals emanating from protected premises fire alarm systems are received and where personnel are in attendance at all times to respond. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.284 Supervising Station Alarm Systems.

3.3.284.1 Central Station Service Alarm System. A system or group of systems in which the operations of circuits and devices are transmitted automatically to, recorded in, maintained by, and supervised from a listed central station that has competent and experienced servers and operators who, upon receipt of a signal, take such action as required by this Code. Such service is to be controlled and operated by a person, firm, or corporation whose business is the furnishing, maintaining, or monitoring of supervised alarm systems. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.284.2 Proprietary Supervising Station Alarm System. An installation of an alarm system that serves contiguous and noncontiguous properties, under one ownership, from a proprietary supervising station located at the protected premises, or at one of multiple noncontiguous protected premises, at which trained, competent personnel are in constant attendance. This includes the protected premises fire alarm system(s); proprietary supervising station; power supplies; signal-initiating devices; initiating device circuits; signal notification appliances; equipment for the automatic, permanent visual recording of signals; and equipment for initiating the operation of emergency building control services. (SIG-SSS)

Many large airports, industrial plants, college campuses, large hospital complexes, department store chains, and detention and correctional facilities use a proprietary supervising station, as shown in Exhibit 3.40, to monitor all portions of the contiguous or noncontiguous protected premises.

3.3.284.3 Remote Supervising Station Alarm System. A protected premises fire alarm system (exclusive of any connected to a public emergency reporting system) in which alarm, supervisory, or trouble signals are transmitted automatically to, recorded in, and

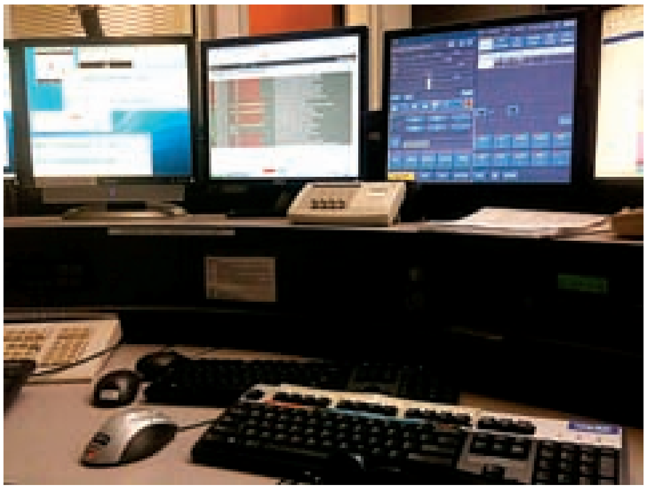


EXHIBIT 3.40

Proprietary Supervising Station. (Source: DFW International Airport) supervised from a remote supervising station that has competent and experienced servers and operators who, upon receipt of a signal, take such action as required by this Code. (SIG-SSS)

FAQ When is a remote supervising station alarm system used?

A remote supervising station alarm system provides a supervising station connection for an alarm system at the protected premises when the building owner does not want or is not required to provide a central station service alarm system or a proprietary supervising station alarm system. Section 26.5 permits alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to be transmitted to three possible locations: the communications center, the fire station or other governmental agency, or an alternative location. The permitted alternative locations can include a telephone answering service, an alarm monitoring center, a listed central station, or any other constantly attended location acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. See 26.5.3 for specific allowances and conditions.

3.3.285 Supervising Station Service.

3.3.285.1 Central Station Service. The use of a system or a group of systems including the protected premises fire alarm system(s) in which the operations of circuits and devices are signaled to, recorded in, and supervised from a listed central station that has competent and experienced operators who, upon receipt of a signal, take such action as required by this Code. Related activities at the protected premises, such as equipment installation, inspection, testing, maintenance, and runner service, are the responsibility of the central station or a listed alarm service local company. Central station service is controlled and operated by a person, firm, or corporation whose business is the furnishing of such contracted services or whose properties are the protected premises. (SIG-SSS)

Central station service, defined in 3.3.285.1, involves six elements identified by the Code: installation, testing and maintenance, and runner service at the protected premises; and monitoring, retransmission, and record keeping at the central station. Under contract, the prime contractor must provide all six elements of this service to the subscriber. If any of these six elements are missing, 26.3.4.5 provides that the alarm system service is not to be designated as central station service. The prime contractor must provide this service either alone or in conjunction with subcontractors working with the prime contractor. See Chapter 26 for requirements pertaining to central station service.

3.3.285.2 Proprietary Supervising Station Service. The use of a system or a group of systems including the protected premises fire alarm system(s) in which the operations of circuits and devices are signaled to, recorded in, and supervised from a supervising station under the same ownership as the protected premises that has competent and experienced operators who, upon receipt of a signal, take such action as required by this Code. Related activities at the protected premises, such as equipment installation, inspection, testing, maintenance, and runner service, are the responsibility of the owner. Proprietary supervising station service is controlled and operated by the entity whose properties are the protected premises. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.285.3 Remote Supervising Station Service. The use of a system including the protected premises fire alarm system(s) in which the operations of circuits and devices are signaled to, recorded in, and supervised from a supervising station that has competent and experienced operators who, upon receipt of a signal, take such action as required by this Code. Related activities at the protected premises, such as equipment installation, inspection, testing, and maintenance, are the responsibility of the owner. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.286 Supervisory Service. The service required to monitor performance of guard tours and the operative condition of fixed suppression systems or other systems for the protection of life and property. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.287 Supervisory Signal. See 3.3.257, Signal.

3.3.288 Supervisory Signal Initiating Device. See 3.3.132, Initiating Device.

3.3.289 Supplementary. As used in this Code, *supplementary* refers to equipment or operations not required by this Code and designated as such by the authority having jurisdiction. (SIG-FUN)

For equipment to be designated as supplementary, it must meet two specific conditions. First, the equipment must not be required by the Code. Second, the authority having jurisdiction must specifically declare in writing that the equipment is supplementary. This two-fold test helps limit the use of supplementary equipment. Use of supplementary equipment is limited because such equipment enjoys somewhat relaxed requirements regarding the monitoring of the integrity of system interconnections and power supplies. An example of such equipment may be desktop computers and monitors, which may not be listed for fire alarm use, but are connected to the system to provide additional detailed fire alarm information. The malfunction or failure of supplementary equipment connected to a fire alarm system cannot impair the fire alarm system's operation.

FAQ How is supplementary equipment distinguished from nonrequired equipment?

Supplementary equipment must not be confused with nonrequired components or systems, defined in 3.3.171. While supplementary equipment may be installed at the owner's option, it is not generally considered essential in the intended mission or goals of the fire alarm system. The same cannot be said for nonrequired components and systems. In the latter instance, the components or systems are not required by a building or fire code, but they are needed to fulfill the fire protection goals intended for the system.

3.3.290 Switched Telephone Network.

3.3.290.1 Loop Start Telephone Circuit. A loop start telephone circuit is an analog telephone circuit that supports loop start signaling as specified in either Telcordia *GR-506-CORE, LATA Switching Systems Generic Requirements: Signaling for Analog Interface*, or Telcordia *GR-909-CORE, Fiber in the Loop Systems Generic Requirements*. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.290.2 Public Switched Telephone Network. An assembly of communications equipment and telephone service providers that utilize managed facilities-based voice networks (MFVN) to provide the general public with the ability to establish communications channels via discrete dialing codes. (SIG-SSS)

The definition of the term *public switched telephone network (PSTN)* was revised in the 2010 edition of the Code to include the communications equipment and systems of telephone service providers that use a managed facilities-based voice network (MFVN), defined in 3.3.152. These definitions are integral to the requirements for digital alarm communicator systems used to transmit signals from a protected premises to a supervising station as provided in 26.6.3.2. These requirements also include use of the term *loop start telephone circuit,* which is defined in 3.3.290.1, to provide a specific reference to the industry standards used to establish the performance for these circuits. Refer to the definition of MFVN in 3.3.152 and the related annex material and commentary.

3.3.291 System Operator. An individual trained to operate and/or initiate a mass notification system. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.292 System Unit. The active subassemblies at the supervising station used for signal receiving, processing, display, or recording of status change signals; a failure of one of these subassemblies causes the loss of a number of alarm signals by that unit. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.293 Tactile Notification Appliance. See 3.3.173, Notification Appliance.

3.3.294 Talk Mode. A means of communications within a building normally dedicated to emergency functions. Commonly referred to as fire fighters' phones, but can also be used for communications with fire fighters and/or fire wardens, including occupants, during an emergency, such as between a fire command center and a designated location, such as a stair, stairwell, or location of emergency equipment. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.294.1 Common Talk Mode. The ability to conference multiple telephones in a single conversation. This is similar to what was referred to as a party line. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.294.2 Selective Talk Mode. The ability for personnel at the fire command center to receive indication of incoming calls and choose which call to answer. This includes the ability to transfer between incoming calls and conference multiple phone locations. Selective calling can include the ability to initiate calls to emergency phone locations. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.295 Testing Personnel. See 3.3.193, Personnel.

3.3.296 Textual Audible Notification Appliance. See 3.3.173, Notification Appliance.

3.3.297 Textual Visible Notification Appliance. See 3.3.173, Notification Appliance.

3.3.298 Transmission Channel. See 3.3.43, Channel.

3.3.299 Transmitter. A system component that provides an interface between signaling line circuits, initiating device circuits, or control units and the transmission channel. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.300 Transponder. A multiplex alarm transmission system functional assembly located at the protected premises. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.301 Trouble Signal. See 3.3.257, Signal.

3.3.302 Two-Way Emergency Communications System. See 3.3.87, Emergency Communications System.

3.3.303 Type A Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System. See 3.3.215, Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System.

3.3.304 Type B Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System. See 3.3.215, Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System.

3.3.305 Unintentional Alarm. See 3.3.307.3.

3.3.306 Unknown Alarm. See 3.3.307.4.

3.3.307* Unwanted Alarm. Any alarm that occurs that is not the result of a potentially hazardous condition. (SIG-FUN)

New in the 2013 edition of the Code are definitions for received alarm signals that were not a result of a potentially hazardous condition such as an actual fire. The International Association of Fire Chiefs (IAFC) submitted several code proposals during the development of the 2013 edition of the Code. The intent of many, if not all, of these proposals was to reduce the number of false alarms reported that were associated with fire alarm systems. Discussions during the code development cycle, and long before in firehouses and between authorities having jurisdiction and system owners or technicians, usually revolved around whether a response to a nonhazardous alarm activation was a nuisance alarm, a false alarm, a system malfunction, or some other local description. Often, this lack of standardization has led to the incorrect coding of national and state fire incident data reporting following a response to an activated fire alarm system, resulting in questionable unwanted alarm data.

The inclusion of definitions for four types of unwanted alarm classifications is a major step in the direction of accurately categorizing nonhazardous alarms occurring from fire alarm systems and ultimately the reduction in unwanted alarms.

A.3.3.307 Unwanted Alarm. Unwanted alarms are any alarms that occur when there is no hazard condition present. These are sometimes also called false alarms. Because the term *false* has been used by many people to mean many different things, this Code is instead using the terms *unwanted, fault, nuisance, unintentional, unknown,* and *malicious* to categorize the different types of alarms. Unwanted alarms might be intentional, unintentional, or unknown. If they were caused intentionally, they might have been done by someone with the intent to cause disruption and should be classified as malicious. However, an unintentional alarm might occur when, for example, a child activated a manual fire alarm box not knowing the consequences. Similarly, someone accidentally causing mechanical damage to an initiating device that results in an alarm is causing an unintentional alarm.

3.3.307.1 Malicious Alarm. An unwanted activation of an alarm initiating device caused by a person acting with malice. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.307.2* Nuisance Alarm. An unwanted activation of a signaling system or an alarm initiating device in response to a stimulus or condition that is not the result of a potentially hazardous condition. (SIG-FUN)

When nuisance alarms are received, their cause should be evaluated to determine whether the alarm activation is likely a one-time occurrence or whether the situation may be expected to be repeated. An example of this would be an alarm from a smoke detector installed in close proximity to a sterilization machine in a hospital where, each time the door is opened following a sterilization process, the smoke detector responds and reports an alarm. Relocating the detector farther from the source of the steam, or using a detector appropriate for the ambient conditions, would eliminate further nuisance alarm reports.

A.3.3.307.2 Nuisance Alarm. Nuisance alarms are unwanted alarms. Sometimes nuisance alarms might be called false alarms. In this Code, any unwanted alarm is considered false because they are not indicative of real hazards. Because the term *false* has been used by many people to mean many different things, this Code is instead using the terms *unwanted, nuisance,* and *malicious* to categorize the different types of alarms. They occur when some condition simulates a fire or other hazardous condition. For example, cigarette smoke can activate smoke detectors and smoke alarms. In that case, there might not be anything wrong with the smoke detector or smoke alarm — it is doing its job responding to the condition or stimulus that it was designed to detect. Another example would be a heat detector or heat alarm that activates when someone inadvertently points a hair dryer towards it. A malicious alarm occurs when someone intentionally activates the detector or alarm when there is no fire hazard. See the definitions of malicious, unintentional, unknown, and unwanted alarms.

3.3.307.3 Unintentional Alarm. An unwanted activation of an alarm initiating device caused by a person acting without malice. (SIG-FUN)

An example of an unintentional alarm might be when a technician is testing a fire pump and the surge from the fire pump test results in the activation of one or more waterflow devices.

3.3.307.4 Unknown Alarm. An unwanted activation of an alarm initiating device or system output function where the cause has not been identified. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.308 Uplink. The radio signal from the portable public safety subscriber transmitter to the base station receiver. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.309* Video Image Flame Detection (VIFD). The principle of using automatic analysis of real-time video images to detect the presence of flame. (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.309 Video Image Flame Detection (VIFD). Video image flame detection (VIFD) is a software-based method of flame detection that can be implemented by a range of video image analysis techniques. VIFD systems can analyze images for changes in features such as brightness, contrast, edge content, loss of detail, and motion. The detection equipment can consist of cameras producing digital or analog (converted to digital) video signals and processing unit(s) that maintain the software and interfaces to the fire alarm control unit.

3.3.310 Video Image Smoke Detection (VISD). See 3.3.269, Smoke Detection.

3.3.311 Visible Notification Appliance. See 3.3.173, Notification Appliance.

3.3.312 Voice Message Priority. A scheme for prioritizing mass notification messages. (SIG-ECS)

3.3.313 WATS (Wide Area Telephone Service). Telephone company service allowing reduced costs for certain telephone call arrangements. In-WATS or 800-number service calls can be placed from anywhere in the continental United States to the called party at no cost to the calling party. Out-WATS is a service whereby, for a flat-rate charge, dependent on the total duration of all such calls, a subscriber can make an unlimited number of calls within a prescribed area from a particular telephone terminal without the registration of individual call charges. (SIG-SSS)

3.3.314* Wavelength. The distance between the peaks of a sinusoidal wave. All radiant energy can be described as a wave having a wavelength. Wavelength serves as the unit of measure for distinguishing between different parts of the spectrum. Wavelengths are measured in microns (μm), nanometers (nm), or angstroms (Å). (SIG-IDS)

A.3.3.314 Wavelength. The concept of wavelength is extremely important in selecting the proper detector for a particular application. There is a precise interrelation between the wavelength of light being emitted from a flame and the combustion chemistry producing the flame. Specific subatomic, atomic, and molecular events yield radiant energy of specific wavelengths. For example, ultraviolet photons are emitted as the result of the complete loss of electrons or very large changes in electron energy levels. During combustion, molecules are violently torn apart by the chemical reactivity of oxygen, and electrons are released in the process, recombining at drastically lower energy levels, thus giving rise to ultraviolet radiation. Visible radiation is generally the result of smaller changes in electron energy levels within the molecules of fuel, flame intermediates, and products of combustion. Infrared radiation comes from the vibration of molecules or parts of molecules when they are in the superheated state associated with combustion. Each chemical compound exhibits a group of wavelengths at which it is resonant. These wavelengths constitute the chemical's infrared spectrum, which is usually unique to that chemical.

This interrelationship between wavelength and combustion chemistry affects the relative performance of various types of detectors with respect to various fires.

3.3.315 Wide-Area Mass Notification System. See 3.3.87, Emergency Communications System.

3.3.316 Wide-Area Signaling. Signaling intended to provide alerting or information to exterior open spaces, such as campuses, neighborhood streets, a city, a town, or a community. (SIG-NAS)

3.3.317 Wireless Control Unit. See 3.3.59, Control Unit.

3.3.318 Wireless Protection System. A system or a part of a system that can transmit and receive signals without the aid of interconnection wiring. It can consist of either a wireless control unit or a wireless repeater. (SIG-PRO)

3.3.319 Wireless Repeater. A component used to relay signals among wireless devices, appliances, and control units. (SIG-PRO)

The terms *wireless control unit* (see 3.3.59.4), *wireless protection system* (see 3.3.318), and *wireless repeater* apply to systems covered by Section 23.16.

3.3.320 Zone. A defined area within the protected premises. A zone can define an area from which a signal can be received, an area to which a signal can be sent, or an area in which a form of control can be executed. (SIG-FUN)

3.3.320.1* Evacuation Signaling Zone. An area consisting of one or more notification zones where signals are actuated simultaneously. (SIG-ECS)

A.3.3.320.1 Evacuation Signaling Zone. A notification zone is the smallest discrete area used for any announcements or signaling. Depending on the emergency response plan, an evacuation signaling zone can encompass several notification zones. For example, in most high-rise buildings, each single floor (fire area) is a notification zone. Most emergency response plans call for the evacuation signaling zone to be the fire floor, floor above, and a floor below.

The term *evacuation signaling zone* is used in the requirements for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems in 23.10.2 and 24.4.2. See the commentary for the term *notification zone* following 3.3.320.2.

3.3.320.2 Notification Zone. A discrete area of a building, bounded by building outer walls, fire or smoke compartment boundaries, floor separations, or other fire safety subdivisions, in which occupants are intended to receive common notification. (SIG-PRO)

FAQ

What is a notification zone?

A notification zone is the smallest discrete area that is signaled by a system. For a general evacuation system, the notification zone is the entire building. In that case, the evacuation signaling zone and the notification zone are the same. Note that this definition is not defining a zone based on the area served by a notification appliance circuit; rather, it is based on the area that receives the signal simultaneously. In a high-rise building, as well as other occupancies, the system may be designed for partial or selective evacuation or relocation. In that case, most building codes, including *NFPA 5000*®, *Building Construction and Safety Code*®; NFPA 1, *Fire Code*; and NFPA *101*, would require each fire or smoke zone to be a notification zone — typically each floor is a notification zone. If the automatic response to a fire is to signal the fire floor as well as one floor above and one floor below of the need to evacuate or relocate, the evacuation signaling zone comprises three notification zones. Note that each notification zone is determined by the design of the system. Evacuation signaling zones may be dynamic. An evacuation signaling zone can have more than one notification zone but can never be smaller than a single notification zone.

References Cited in Commentary

Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary, 11th edition, Merriam-Webster, Inc., Springfield, MA, 2003.

NFPA 1, *Fire Code*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code*®, 2011 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems*, 2013 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 5000®, *Building Construction and Safety Code*®, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

Reserved Chapters

In the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72*®, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, the following chapters are reserved for future use:

- Chapter 4
- Chapter 5
- Chapter 6

CHAPTER 7

Documentation

Chapter 7 is new in the 2013 edition of the Code and provides a central location for Code users to find all documentation requirements. This chapter contains new requirements, as well as updated information and requirements that were previously found in other portions of the Code. Where documentation requirements have not been located directly in Chapter 7, specific reference has been provided to information and requirements still contained in other chapters.

For interactive versions of the forms contained within this chapter, visit www.nfpa.org/72forms.

7.1 Application (SIG-FUN)

7.1.1 The documentation of the design, acceptance, and completion of new systems required under this Code shall comply with the minimum requirements of this chapter.

7.1.2 The documentation of the alteration, maintenance, and testing of existing systems previously installed under this Code shall comply with the minimum requirements of this chapter.

Chapter 7 provides minimal documentation requirements for new and existing systems. Subsection 7.1.1 deals with the design, acceptance, and completion of new systems, while 7.1.2 addresses alterations, maintenance, and testing of systems that were previously installed in accordance with the Code in effect at the time. As such, Chapter 7 is similar to Chapter 14, Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance, in its application to new and existing systems. Additional detailed documentation may be required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, or by the enforcing authority.

7.1.3* Where required by governing laws, codes, or standards, or other parts of this Code, the requirements of this chapter, or portions thereof, shall apply.

As with other chapters and sections of the Code, the requirements for documentation only apply when the need for them is specified in other jurisdictionally adopted requirements. Examples of this may be local building or fire codes, or NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®.

A.7.1.3 Unless otherwise identified, only the minimum documentation requirements of 7.2.1 apply. More stringent documentation requirements found in other chapters and other laws, codes, and standards, as well as project specifications, should identify any other documentation sections in this chapter that would be applicable.

7.1.4 Unless required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, the documentation requirements of this chapter shall not apply to Chapter 29.

7.1.5 This chapter outlines documentation requirements but does not prohibit additional documentation from being provided.

7.1.6 The requirements of other chapters shall also apply unless they are in conflict with this chapter.

7.2* Minimum Required Documentation (SIG-FUN)

The documentation requirements in Chapter 7 cover a wide range of fire alarm and signaling systems. For some smaller systems, the requirements outlined in 7.2.1 will provide sufficient information for a review to be completed, acceptance testing to be performed, and documentation to be produced for the enforcing authority and the system owner. For other proposed installations, portions, if not all, of Sections 7.3 through 7.5 may be necessary to complete an adequate review and approval for the project, or to provide additional documentation for the owner's records.

A.7.2 It is not intended that all of the details outlined in Sections 7.3 through 7.5 be required for every project. In general, the more complex the system, the more stringent the requirements become for documentation. It is recognized that some projects would require only the minimum documentation listed in Section 7.2. Other projects might require more detailed documentation. Sections 7.3 through 7.5 provide menus of additional means of documenting a system. The intent is for other governing laws, codes, or standards; other parts of this Code; or project specifications or drawings to select the additional specific pieces of documentation from Sections 7.3 through 7.5.

7.2.1 Where documentation is required by the enforcing authority, the following list shall represent the minimum documentation required for all fire alarm and emergency communications systems, including new systems and additions or alterations to existing systems:

(1)* Written narrative providing intent and system description
(2) Riser diagram
(3) Floor plan layout showing location of all devices and control equipment
(4) Sequence of operation in either an input/output matrix or narrative form
(5) Equipment technical data sheets
(6) Manufacturers published instructions, including operation and maintenance instructions
(7) Battery calculations (where batteries are provided)
(8) Voltage drop calculations for notification appliance circuits
(9)* Completed record of inspection and testing in accordance with 7.6.6 and 7.8.2
(10) Completed record of completion in accordance with 7.5.6 and 7.8.2
(11) Copy of site-specific software, where applicable
(12) Record (as-built) drawings
(13) Periodic inspection, testing, and maintenance documentation in accordance with Section 7.6
(14) Records, record retention, and record maintenance in accordance with Section 7.7

Some of the documentation required by 7.2.1 (items 1–8) will typically need to be provided as part of the permit submittal process for a new system or the alteration of an existing system. Other documentation (items 9–12) will be provided at the system's commission. Still other documentation (items 13–14) will need to be made available as the system is used and maintained during its life.

Many authorities having jurisdiction require a permit for the installation or modification of a system prior to that work occurring. It is always wise to contact the local authority having jurisdiction to determine if a permit is needed and what the submittal requirements may include. Additionally, more than one authority having jurisdiction could be regulating the work that will be occurring, and while non-governmental authorities having jurisdiction may not issue a permit for the proposed work, they may be in a position to approve or deny the proposed installation on behalf of the owner or insurance carrier.

Due diligence is always vital. Meeting with the authority having jurisdiction before the system design occurs can often save time and money, especially when it comes to the permit review process.

A.7.2.1(1) The purpose for a written narrative is to provide a description of the work to be performed and could be as simple as "Install additional three smoke detectors to provide coverage for newly installed meeting room." However, it could be desirable to include why or by whose direction the work is being done, such as "at owner's request," "per specifications dated . . . ," or "at the direction of . . ." See also Section 23.3 for additional system feature documentation requirements.

A.7.2.1(9) It should be noted that the inspection and testing form can be modified as appropriate to reflect the scope of the project.

7.2.2* The person responsible for system design (layout) shall be identified on the system design documents.

The requirement to identify the system designer on the system design documents encourages the designer to feel a sense of ownership toward the design. This identification, in turn, provides an additional incentive for the designer to meet the requirements of the Code and provides the authority having jurisdiction with the name of the person responsible for the design who can respond to questions or comments from the authority having jurisdiction.

A.7.2.2 It is the intent that the system designer be identified on the drawings. For emergency public reporting systems, see 27.3.7.1.2 for additional requirements.

7.2.3 All fire alarm drawings shall use symbols described in NFPA 170, *Standard for Fire Safety and Emergency Symbols*, or other symbols acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

New to the 2013 edition of the Code is a requirement that symbols used on fire alarm drawings be standardized as described in NFPA 170, *Standard for Fire Safety and Emergency Symbols*, or as permitted by the authority having jurisdiction. The use of NFPA 170 allows for a consistent utilization of fire alarm equipment symbols within jurisdictions and should make things simpler for the alarm industry when designing plans for submittal and approval.

7.3 Design (Layout) Documentation

7.3.1* The requirements of Section 7.3 shall apply only where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards; by other parts of this Code; or by project specifications or drawings. (SIG-FUN)

A.7.3.1 See Section 7.2 for the minimum documentation requirements.

7.3.2* Where required by governing laws, codes, or standards, or other parts of this Code, design (layout) documents shall be prepared prior to installing new systems. (SIG-ECS)

A.7.3.2 Design (layout) documents should contain information related to the system that could include specifications, shop drawings, input/output matrix, battery calculations, notification appliance voltage drop calculations for strobes and speakers, and product technical data sheets.

Design (layout) documents could include such items as preliminary plans issued as guidance and direction, risk analysis, emergency response plan, or a combination of these.

Deviations from requirements of governing laws, codes, standards, or preliminary plan requirements specified by an engineer should be clearly identified and documented as such.

Documentation of equivalency, where applicable, should be provided in accordance with Section 1.5 and be included with the record drawings.

It is the intent that existing systems that are altered should have design (layout) documents prepared that are applicable only to the portion(s) of the system being altered.

7.3.3* Where required by governing laws, codes, or standards, or other parts of this Code, preliminary plans shall be created. (SIG-ECS)

A.7.3.3 Preliminary plans such as those used for bidding, solicitation, or for obtaining permits could contain information as follows:

Performance criteria required in support of alternative means and methods for other codes, standards, or construction features should be clearly identified on the design (layout) documentation.

Such information should reference applicable waivers, appeals, variances, or similarly approved deviations from prescriptive criteria.

Preliminary documents could include the following:

(1) Specifications and narrative applicable to the project
(2) When devices are located (spaced) on preliminary drawings, the devices should be located (spaced) in accordance with standards, listings, and limitations of the equipment specified. When devices are not located (spaced) on the preliminary documents, a note should be included directing that the spacing should be per listing(s) and this Code.
(3) Interface requirements between systems such as fire alarm, mass notification, security, HVAC, smoke control, paging, background music, audio visual equipment, elevators, access control, other fire protection systems, and so forth.
(4) Sequence of operation
(5) Survivability of system circuits and equipment, when applicable
(6) Notification zones, when applicable
(7) Message content for voice systems
(8) Means of system monitoring that is to be provided, when applicable
(9) Codes and editions applicable to the system(s)
(10) Special requirements of the owner, governing authority, or insurance carrier when applicable
(11) Voice delivery components beyond standard industry products required to achieve intelligibility

When known, acoustic properties of spaces should be indicated on the preliminary design (layout) documents.

7.3.4 Notification. (SIG-NAS)

Where occupant notification is required, the minimum documentation indicated in 7.2.1 will need to be expanded in order to ensure that the system design meets the requirements of Chapter 18, Notification Appliances, and other applicable sections of this Code and other building and fire codes. When audible signals are part of the design, 7.3.4.3 requires that information be provided that verifies the expected average and maximum ambient sound levels in all areas where audible signals are required to be produced using public or private mode. The design documentation should clearly state how the system design will meet or exceed the required decibel (dB) level over ambient noise present in all areas without exceeding the maximum sound pressure level permitted by the Code. Refer to 18.4.1 for the general requirements for audible notification appliances.

Where narrow band tone signaling is used in place of public or private mode signals, 7.3.4.4 requires the submittal of additional analysis and design documentation to the authority having jurisdiction in accordance with 18.4.6.4. Where voice intelligibility is required, or is not possible, documentation may be required by the authority having jurisdiction in the form of the identification of acoustically distinguishable spaces (ADSs) throughout a building, as required in 18.4.10.3.

Where visible signals are required, the design documents must clearly identify the use for each room or space. Other codes and standards clearly identify rooms and spaces where visible signaling must be provided or where it is not needed. Without the use of a room or space identified in the design documentation, it would not be possible to verify compliance. The design documents must provide location of the visible notification appliance(s) in the space, whether it is wall-mounted or ceiling-mounted, and the candela rating marking.

7.3.4.1* The requirements of 7.3.4 shall apply only where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, or by other parts of this Code.

A.7.3.4.1 See Section 7.2 for the minimum documentation requirements.

7.3.4.2 The documentation specified in 7.3.4 shall be required in whole or in part by other governing laws, codes, or standards, or by other parts of this Code.

7.3.4.3 Design documents shall include ambient sound pressure levels and audible design sound pressure levels in accordance with 18.4.1.4.3.

7.3.4.4 Analysis and design documentation for narrow band tone signaling shall be in accordance with 18.4.6.4.

7.3.4.5 The documentation of acoustically distinguishable spaces (ADS) shall be in accordance with 18.4.10.

7.3.4.6 Design documents shall specify the rooms and spaces that will have visible notification and those where visible notification will not be provided in accordance with 18.5.2.1.

7.3.4.7 Performance-based design alternatives for strobe design shall be in accordance with 18.5.5.6.2.

7.3.5 Detection. (SIG-IDS)

The requirements found in 7.3.5 indicate that, for the detection types listed, the performance objectives based on the type of automatic detection chosen be identified in the system documentation. As an example, the performance objective may be to detect the production of fire or smoke expected from a specific material located at the protected premises using a specific detector type appropriate to recognize the likely products of combustion or flames generated. By documenting this information, the designer provides a better understanding to those who will review the design, and others who will install and later maintain the system, as to the purpose and importance of using the chosen detection.

7.3.5.1 Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors. Heat detection design documentation shall be provided in accordance with Section 17.6.

7.3.5.2 Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors. Smoke detection design documentation shall be provided in accordance with Section 17.7.

7.3.5.3 Radiant Energy-Sensing Fire Detectors. Radiant energy detection design documentation shall be provided in accordance with Section 17.8.

7.3.6 Risk Analysis Documentation. (SIG-ECS)

The risk analysis is an important part in the effective design of every mass notification system. The consideration taken into account during the planning stage, and the findings used when developing a mass notification plan or procedure, should be well documented, especially when using performance-based design. Goals and objectives (see 24.7.1) of a system — which would include the risk analysis, system performance and testing criteria, survivability, timeliness of messages to the target audiences, and its methods for message initiation — should all be documented so they can be reviewed and evaluated by interested and affected parties.

7.3.6.1 When a risk analysis is required to be prepared, findings and considerations of the risk analysis shall be documented.

7.3.6.2 When determined by the stakeholders, security and protection of the risk analysis documentation shall be in accordance with 7.3.7 and Section 7.7.

7.3.6.3 The risk analysis documentation shall list the various scenarios evaluated and the anticipated outcomes.

7.3.6.4 Risk analyses for mass notification systems shall be documented in accordance with 7.3.6 and 24.3.11.

7.3.7* Performance-Based Design Documentation.

Performance-based designs must be submitted to the authority having jurisdiction for review and approval. Sufficient information needs to be included in the design submittal for the authority having jurisdiction or its representative to adequately assess what is being proposed. Without sufficient information for review, it is difficult to determine if the proposed design will adequately meet the stated intended performance objective(s). During the completion documentation phase of accepting a new system, 7.5.2 requires a written statement indicating that the system has been installed in accordance with approved plans and tested in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions. The written statement should include any performance-based design approvals that were a part of the system's overall approval prior to installation.

A.7.3.7 When a system or component is installed in accordance with performance-based design criteria, such systems should be reviewed and acceptance tested by a design professional to verify that performance objectives are attained.

Due to unique design and construction challenges, fire protection concepts are often established on performance-based engineering practices. When such practices have been approved by the authority having jurisdiction, the engineer of record should sign off on the final installation documents to ensure that all conditions have been satisfied. Such engineering analysis could be beyond the qualifications of the code authority. As such, it is imperative that the engineer of record review and accept final concepts as accepted by the authority having jurisdiction.

7.3.7.1 Performance-based design documentation for fire detection shall be in accordance with Section 17.3. (SIG-IDS)

7.3.7.2 Performance-based design documentation for strobes shall be in accordance with 18.5.5.6.2. (SIG-NAS)

7.3.7.3 A copy of approval documentation resulting from performance-based designs shall be included with the record drawings in accordance with 7.5.6. (SIG-FUN)

7.3.8 Emergency Response Plan Documentation. (SIG-ECS)

7.3.8.1 When an emergency response plan is required to be prepared, such as for a mass notification system, findings of the plan shall be documented.

7.3.8.2 When identified by the stakeholders, security and protection of the emergency response plan documentation shall be in accordance with 7.7.3.

7.3.8.3 The emergency response plan shall document the various scenarios evaluated and the anticipated outcomes.

7.3.9 Evaluation Documentation. (SIG-FUN)

7.3.9.1* Evaluation documentation, such as identified in 23.4.3.1 and 24.4.3.24.2, shall include a signed statement(s) by the person responsible for the design attesting to the evaluation and the resultant technical decision and deeming it reliable and acceptable for the particular application.

Paragraph 23.4.3.1 provides pathway classification requirements for initiating device circuits, signaling line circuits, notification appliance circuits, and so on. Paragraph 7.3.9.1 requires evaluation of the design and a signed statement attesting to the evaluation and selection of Class A vs. Class B vs. Class X for the particular protected premises system.

A.7.3.9.1 Evaluation documentation can also include documentation such as that associated with performance-based alternatives and documentation related to equivalencies as well as any other special documentation that is specific to a particular system.

7.3.9.2 A copy of the evaluation documentation shall be retained for the life of the system and be maintained with the documents required by 7.7.1.6.

Where a system design includes interfaces between features such as mass notification functions and public address systems, documentation must be submitted by the system designer that attests to the functionality of the systems working as intended once they have been installed. This documentation must be retained as a life-long record for the system.

7.4 Shop Drawings (Installation Documentation) (SIG-FUN)

7.4.1* The requirements of Section 7.4 shall apply only where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards; by other parts of this Code; or by project specifications or drawings.

Most jurisdictions require the submittal of shop drawings and related calculations when a permit is requested for the installation of a new system. Many of those same jurisdictions will require some degree of shop drawings and calculations when a system is altered. The extent of the shop drawings and calculations is typically directly related to the thoroughness of the designer, the scope of the project, and how much information the reviewer of the plans needs to conduct a permit review and approval. As stated earlier in this chapter's commentary, due diligence practiced by the individual who will be requesting approval from the authority having jurisdiction goes a long way toward understanding what the necessary submittal package will need to include. See Exhibit 7.1 for a partial view of a shop drawing.

A.7.4.1 See Section 7.2 for the minimum documentation requirements.

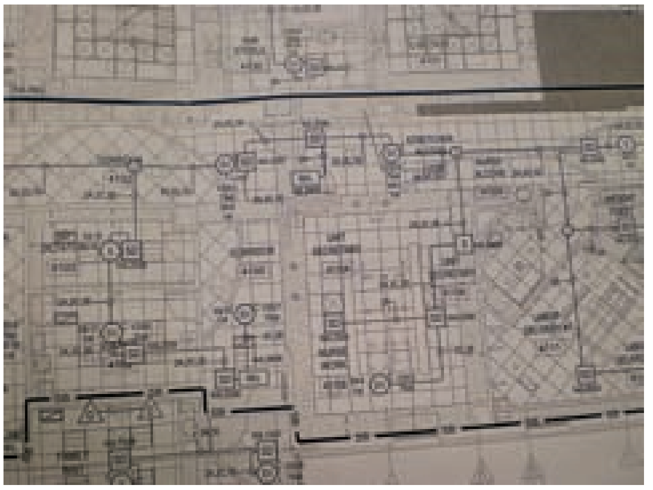
7.4.2* Shop drawings shall be drawn to an indicated scale, on sheets of uniform size, with a plan of each floor.

A.7.4.2 It is important to note that shop drawings and particularly the word "sheets" do not necessarily mean physical paper sheets, but could be on electronic media.

7.4.3 Shop drawings for fire alarm and emergency communications systems shall provide basic information and shall provide the basis for the record (as-built) drawings required in accordance with 7.5.2.

EXHIBIT 7.1

Typical Shop Drawing. (Source: Warren Olsen, FSCI-Elgin, IL)



7.4.4 Shop drawings shall include the following information:

(1) Name of protected premises, owner, and occupant (where applicable)
(2) Name of installer or contractor
(3) Location of protected premises
(4) Device legend and symbols in accordance with NFPA 170, or other symbols acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction
(5) Date of issue and any revision dates

7.4.5 Floor plan drawings shall be drawn to an indicated scale and shall include the following information, where applicable for the particular system:

(1) Floor or level identification
(2) Point of compass (indication of North)
(3) Graphic scale
(4) All walls and doors
(5) All partitions extending to within 15 percent of the ceiling height (where applicable and when known)
(6) Room and area descriptions
(7) System devices/component locations
(8) Locations of fire alarm primary power disconnecting means
(9) Locations of monitor/control interfaces to other systems
(10) System riser locations
(11) Type and number of system components/devices on each circuit, on each floor or level
(12) Type and quantity of conductors and conduit (if used) for each circuit
(13) Identification of any ceiling over 10 ft (3.0 m) in height where automatic fire detection is being proposed
(14) Details of ceiling geometries, including beams and solid joists, where automatic fire detection is being proposed
(15) Where known, acoustic properties of spaces

7.4.6 System riser diagrams shall be coordinated with the floor plans and shall include the following information:

(1) General arrangement of the system in building cross-section
(2) Number of risers
(3) Type and number of circuits in each riser
(4) Type and number of system components/devices on each circuit, on each floor or level
(5) Number of conductors for each circuit

7.4.7 Control unit diagrams shall be provided for all control equipment (i.e., equipment listed as either a control unit or control unit accessory), power supplies, battery chargers, and annunciators and shall include the following information:

(1) Identification of the control equipment depicted
(2) Location(s) of control equipment
(3) All field wiring terminals and terminal identifications
(4) All circuits connected to field wiring terminals and circuit identifications
(5) All indicators and manual controls
(6) Field connections to supervising station signaling equipment, releasing equipment, or emergency safety control interfaces, where provided

7.4.8 Typical wiring diagrams shall be provided for all initiating devices, notification appliances, remote indicators, annunciators, remote test stations, and end-of-line and power supervisory devices.

7.4.9* A narrative description or input/output matrix of operation shall be provided to describe the sequence of operation.

A.7.4.9 For an example of an input/output matrix of operation, see A.14.6.2.4.

7.4.10 System calculations shall be included as follows:

(1) Battery calculations
(2) Notification appliance circuit voltage drop calculations
(3) Other required calculations, such as line resistance calculations, where required

7.5 Completion Documentation

7.5.1* The requirements of Section 7.5 shall apply only where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards; by other parts of this Code; or by project specifications or drawings. (SIG-FUN)

A.7.5.1 See Section 7.2 for the minimum documentation requirements.

7.5.2 Before requesting final approval of the installation, if required by the authority having jurisdiction, the installing contractor shall furnish a written statement stating that the system has been installed in accordance with approved plans and tested in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and the appropriate NFPA requirements. (SIG-FUN)

7.5.3 All systems including new systems and additions or alterations to existing systems shall include the following documentation, which shall be delivered to the owner or the owner's representative upon final acceptance of the system:

(1)* An owner's manual and manufacturer's published instructions covering all system equipment

In addition to the owner's manual and manufacturer's published instructions required to be delivered to the owner or owner's representative by 7.5.3(1), it is advisable to include a copy of the edition of *NFPA 72®*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code,* that was used to design the system. By having this document on file, the owner will be able to ascertain the inspection, testing, and servicing frequencies and requirements for the system and, for historical purposes, the prescriptive- and performance-based design requirements that were in effect when the system was installed.

(2) Record (as-built) drawings in accordance with 7.5.5
(3) A completed record of completion form in accordance with 7.5.6
(4) For software-based systems, record copy of the site-specific software in accordance with 7.5.7 (SIG-FUN)

The Code requires in 7.5.3(4) that a record copy of the site-specific software be delivered to the owner or the owner's representative upon final acceptance of the system. Having a backup copy of the software will help facilitate reconfiguring the system in situations where a catastrophic failure has occurred due to lightning or other causes. Refer to the definition of site-specific software in 3.3.272.2. The site-specific software is the system programming for its specific application and not the executive software or the source code used to develop the site-specific software.

A.7.5.3(1) Owner's Manual. An owner's manual should contain the following documentation:

(1) A detailed narrative description of the system inputs, evacuation signaling, ancillary functions, annunciation, intended sequence of operations, expansion capability, application considerations, and limitations.
(2) A written sequence of operation in matrix or narrative form.
(3) Operator instructions for basic system operations, including alarm acknowledgment, system reset, interpretation of system output (LEDs, CRT display, and printout), operation of manual evacuation signaling and ancillary function controls, and change of printer paper.
(4) A detailed description of routine maintenance and testing as required and recommended and as would be provided under a maintenance contract, including testing and maintenance instructions for each type of device installed. This information shall include the following:
   (a) Listing of the individual system components that require periodic testing and maintenance
   (b) Step-by-step instructions detailing the requisite testing and maintenance procedures, and the intervals at which these procedures shall be performed, for each type of device installed
   (c) A schedule that correlates the testing and maintenance procedures
(5) A service directory, including a list of names and telephone numbers of those who provide service for the system.

7.5.4 Owner's manuals for emergency communications systems shall be in accordance with Section 24.8. (SIG-ECS)

7.5.5 Record Drawings (As-Builts). (SIG-FUN)

7.5.5.1 Record drawings shall consist of current updated and shop drawings reflecting the actual installation of all system equipment, components, and wiring.

Drawings turned over to the system owner should accurately reflect the installation that occurred. "As-built" drawings provide the owner, his or her representative, or the servicing technician with invaluable assistance when future repairs or changes need to be made. Coupled with the written sequence of operation, the "as-builts" also allow for the orderly and thorough testing of all system components when routine inspection and testing are scheduled to occur.

7.5.5.2* A sequence of operations in input/output matrix or narrative form shall be provided with the record drawings to reflect actual programming at the time of completion.

The requirement for a written copy of the sequence of operations (or narrative form) of the system was added to the 2010 edition of the Code. By having a copy of the sequence of operation on-site, anyone who works on or provides further designs to the existing system will be able to have a full understanding of how the system is intended to work. As these systems become more complex and have greater interactions with other building systems, this information is critical.

A.7.5.5.2 For an example of an input/output matrix of operation, see A.14.6.2.4.

7.5.5.3 Where necessary, revised calculations in accordance with 7.4.10 shall be provided depicting any changes due to installation conditions.

Deviations from the approved plans frequently occur during the installation of any system. In addition to the changes being noted of the "as-built" drawings and documented on the record of completion, changes affecting calculations need to be documented and verified to be correct. Changes may impact standby power and notification appliance circuits, the loop resistance of a circuit, or the permitted number of devices on a signaling line circuit (SLC). At times, these changes may result in batteries being incapable of providing the necessary standby power or circuits being overloaded or over extended beyond acceptable limits or the manufacturer's published instructions.

7.5.5.4 Record drawings shall be turned over to the owner with a copy placed inside the documentation cabinet in accordance with Section 7.7.

7.5.5.5* Record drawings shall include approval documentation resulting from variances, performance-based designs, risk analyses, and other system evaluations or variations.

A.7.5.5.5 It is important that the documentation required by this section is available for technicians so they will be able to recognize variations of system configuration during acceptance, reacceptance, and periodic testing. It is also necessary for enforcement personnel in order to prevent confusion when they could otherwise misidentify an approved variation for being non-code compliant. This documentation is also necessary for those who might design additions or modifications.

7.5.6 Record of Completion. (SIG-FUN)

7.5.6.1* The record of completion shall be documented in accordance with 7.5.6 using either the record of completion forms, Figure 7.8.2(a) through Figure 7.8.2(f), or an alternative document that contains only the elements of Figure 7.8.2(a) through Figure 7.8.2(f) applicable to the installed system.

The record of completion form was completely revised for the 2013 edition of the Code to make it easier to fill out and to more clearly document the system installation. An example of a completed form has been provided as a part of the related annex material.

A.7.5.6.1 It is the intent of this section to permit using forms other than Figure 7.8.2(a) through Figure 7.8.2(f) as long as they convey the same information.

7.5.6.2* The record of completion documentation shall be completed by the installing contractor and submitted to the enforcing authority and the owner at the conclusion of the job. The record of completion documentation shall be permitted to be part of the written statement required in 7.5.2 and part of the documents that support the requirements of 7.5.8. When more than one contractor has been responsible for the installation, each contractor shall complete the portions of the documentation for which that contractor has responsibility.

A.7.5.6.2 Protected premises fire alarm systems are often installed under construction or remodeling contracts and subsequently connected to a supervising station alarm system under a separate contract. All contractors should complete the portions of the record of completion documentation for the portions of the connected systems for which they are responsible. Several partially completed documents might be accepted by the authority having jurisdiction provided that all portions of the connected systems are covered in the set of documents.

7.5.6.3* The preparation of the record of completion documentation shall be the responsibility of the qualified and experienced person in accordance with 10.5.2.

FAQ

Who is responsible for completing the record of completion form?

The system installer is responsible for the preparation of the record of completion form. It documents the name of the installer and the location of record drawings, owners' manuals, and test reports. The form also provides a confirming record of the acceptance test and gives details of the components and wiring of the system. A record of completion is required for all installed fire alarm and emergency communications systems.

A.7.5.6.3 The requirements of Chapter 14 should be used to perform the installation wiring and operational acceptance tests required when completing the record of completion.

The record of completion form shall be permitted to be used to record decisions reached prior to installation regarding intended system type(s), circuit designations, device types, notification appliance type, power sources, and the means of transmission to the supervising station.

7.5.6.4 The record of completion documentation shall be updated to reflect all system additions or modifications and maintained in a current condition at all times.

7.5.6.5 The updated copy of the record of completion documents shall be maintained in a documentation cabinet in accordance with 7.7.2.

7.5.6.6 Revisions.

7.5.6.6.1 All fire alarm and/or signaling system modifications made after the initial installation shall be recorded on a revised version of the original completion documents.

7.5.6.6.2 The revised record of completion document shall include a revision date.

7.5.6.6.3* Where the original or the latest overall system record of completion cannot be obtained, a new system record of completion shall be provided that documents the system configuration as discovered during the current project's scope of work.

Documentation of revisions made to a system after the original installation has been completed is just as important as documentation of the original installation. Every change to the system must be documented so that designers, service personnel, and others will know exactly what is on the system and how the system is to function.

In cases where a record of completion does not exist, 7.5.6.6.3 does not require that one be completed retroactively for the entire system when revisions are made to portions of the system.

A.7.5.6.6.3 It is the intent that if an original or current record of completion is not available for the overall system, the installer would provide a new record of completion that addresses items discovered about the system. The installer will complete the respective sections related to the overall system that have been discovered under the current scope of work. It is not the intent of this section to require an in-depth evaluation of an existing system solely for the purpose of completing a system-wide record of completion.

7.5.6.7 Electronic Record of Completion.

7.5.6.7.1 Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction, the record of completion shall be permitted to be filed electronically instead of on paper.

7.5.6.7.2 If filed electronically, the record of completion document shall be accessible with standard software and shall be backed up.

7.5.7 Site-specific software documentation shall be in accordance with 14.6.1.2. (SIG-TMS)

A historical record of the system installation that includes the information required by 14.6.1.2 gives the technician valuable assistance in promptly diagnosing and repairing system faults. Paragraph 14.6.1.2.1 requires that a copy of the site-specific software, such as programmed detector locations, be provided to the system owner or owner's designated representative. This helps verify proper identification of installed addressable devices.

7.5.8* Verification of Compliant Installation. (SIG-FUN)

A.7.5.8 This section is intended to provide a basis for the authority having jurisdiction to require third-party verification and certification that the authority having jurisdiction and the system owner can rely on to reasonably assure that the fire alarm system installation complies with the applicable requirements. Where the installation is an extension, modification, or reconfiguration of an existing system, the intent is that the verification be applicable only to the new work and that reacceptance testing be acceptable.

7.5.8.1 Where required by the authority having jurisdiction, compliance of the completed installation with the requirements of this Code, as implemented via the referring code(s), specifications, and/or other criteria applicable to the specific installation, shall be certified by a qualified and impartial third-party organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

The requirement in 7.5.8.1 allows the authority having jurisdiction to mandate a third-party to review and certify an installation for compliance with *NFPA 72*. This requirement applies to all systems and is not the same as the documentation required for central station alarm systems in 26.3.4.

7.5.8.2 Verification of compliant installation shall be performed according to testing requirements and procedures specified in 14.4.1 and 14.4.2.

7.5.8.3 Verification shall ensure that:

(1) All components and functions are installed and operate per the approved plans and sequence of operation.
(2) All required system documentation is complete and is archived on site.
(3) For new supervising station systems, the verification shall also ascertain proper arrangement, transmission, and receipt of all signals required to be transmitted off-premises and shall meet the requirements of 14.4.1 and 14.4.2.
(4) For existing supervising station systems that are extended, modified, or reconfigured, the verification shall be required for the new work only, and reacceptance testing in accordance with Chapter 14 shall be acceptable.
(5) Written confirmation has been provided that any required corrective actions have been completed

7.5.9 Documentation of central station service shall be in accordance with 26.3.4. (SIG-SSS)

7.5.10 Documentation of remote station service shall be in accordance with 26.5.2. (SIG-SSS)

7.6 Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance Documentation (SIG-TMS)

7.6.1 Test plan documentation shall be provided in accordance with 14.2.10.

In the 2013 edition of the Code, 14.2.10 contains a new requirement to create a written test plan. This is particularly important when the fire alarm system interfaces with other functions, including those functions covered by Chapter 21 of the Code. The test plan and the results of the testing that occurs are to be documented and kept with the system records.

7.6.2 Acceptance testing documentation shall be provided in accordance with 14.6.1.

7.6.3 Reacceptance test documentation shall be provided in accordance with 14.6.1.

7.6.4 Periodic inspection and testing documentation shall be provided in accordance with 14.6.2 through 14.6.4.

7.6.5 Impairment documentation shall be provided in accordance with Section 10.21.

7.6.6 Record of Inspection and Testing. The record of all inspections, testing, and maintenance as required by 14.6.2.4 shall be documented using either the record of inspection and testing forms, Figure 7.8.2(g) through Figure 7.8.2(l), or an alternative record that includes all the applicable information shown in Figure 7.8.2(g) through Figure 7.8.2(l).

7.7 Records, Record Retention, and Record Maintenance

7.7.1 Records. (SIG-FUN)

7.7.1.1 A complete record of the tests and operations of each system shall be kept until the next test and for 1 year thereafter unless more stringent requirements are required elsewhere in this Code.

7.7.1.2* The records shall be available for examination and, if required, reported to the authority having jurisdiction. Archiving of records by any means shall be permitted if hard copies of the records can be provided promptly when requested.

A.7.7.1.2 It is intended that archived records be allowed to be stored in electronic format as long as hard copies can be made from them when required.

7.7.1.3 If off-premises monitoring is provided, records of all signals, tests, and operations recorded at the supervising station including public emergency alarm reporting system shall be maintained for not less than 1 year unless more stringent requirements are required elsewhere in this Code.

Keeping good records on the system is very important. The records must include not only the installation, programming, and sequence of operation, but the testing of the system as well. The Code requires that records of any test be maintained for each system until the time of the next test and then for one year after that test. In addition, if the system transmits signals to an off-site monitoring facility as described in Chapter 26 of the Code, the records of all signals, tests, and operations must be maintained for not less than one year.

7.7.1.4 Required documents regarding system design and function shall be maintained for the life of the system.

Paragraph 7.7.1.4 is intended to make it clear that the limited amount of time testing documents need to be retained does not extend to the system design and function documents. The "as-built" drawings, system calculations, system operational matrix, and record of completion are among the original system documents that must be retained for the life of the system.

EXHIBIT 7.2

Documentation Cabinet. (Source: Space Age Electronics, Inc., Sterling, MA)

7.7.1.5 Revisions and alterations to systems shall be recorded and records maintained with the original system design documents.

7.7.1.6* System documents shall be housed in the documentation cabinet as required by 7.7.2.

A.7.7.1.6 Examples of system documents include the following:

(1) Record drawings (as-builts)
(2) Equipment technical data sheets
(3) Alternative means and methods, variances, appeals, and approvals, and so forth
(4) Performance-based design documentation in accordance with 7.3.7
(5) Risk analysis documentation in accordance with 7.3.6
(6) Emergency response plan in accordance with 7.3.8
(7) Evaluation documentation in accordance with 7.3.9
(8) Software and firmware control documentation in accordance with 23.2.2

7.7.2 Document Accessibility. (SIG-FUN)

Paragraphs 7.7.2.1 through 7.7.2.5 address the storage requirements for the record of completion and other documentation required by the Code to be maintained for specific periods or for the life of the system. Storage of the record of completion for some emergency communications systems may need to be at a more secure location.

An up-to-date copy of the record of completion form must be stored at, but not within, the control unit or other approved location to make sure persons servicing the system have the latest information about the system. Also refer to the requirements for record keeping in Section 14.6. Exhibit 7.2 shows an example of an as-built drawing cabinet.

Paragraphs 7.7.2.3 and 7.7.2.4 require that if the record of completion and other required documentation are not located next to the system control unit, its location must be identified at the control unit to allow retrieval of the documents. If the record of completion is located away from the system control unit, it must be in a separate enclosure or cabinet that is prominently labeled "SYSTEM RECORD DOCUMENTS." See Exhibit 7.3. The Code does not specify a color for this enclosure or cabinet.

EXHIBIT 7.3

System Record Cabinet. (Source: Space Age Electronics, Inc., Sterling, MA)

7.7.2.1 With every new system, a documentation cabinet shall be installed at the system control unit or at another approved location at the protected premises.

7.7.2.2* All record documentation shall be stored in the documentation cabinet.

A.7.7.2.2 The intent is that paper documents should not be stored inside the control unit because control units are not typically approved for the storage of combustible material.

7.7.2.3 Where the documentation cabinet is not in the same location as the system control unit, its location shall be identified at the system control unit.

7.7.2.4 The documentation cabinet shall be prominently labeled SYSTEM RECORD DOCUMENTS.

7.7.2.5 The contents of the cabinet shall be accessible by authorized personnel only.

7.7.3 Document Security. (SIG-ECS)

7.7.3.1 Security for system's documentation shall be determined by the stakeholders.

7.7.3.2* Where such documents cannot be protected from public access, it shall be permitted to remove sensitive information from record documents provided the owner retains complete documentation that will be made accessible to the authority having jurisdiction at an owner designated location.

A.7.7.3.2 It is recognized that there are circumstances in which the security and protection of some system documents will require measures other than that prescribed in this Code. Since a common expectation of a mass notification system is to function during security and/or terrorist events, it could be crucial that system design be protected.

Where such conditions have been identified, the stakeholders should clearly identify what and how system documents should be maintained to satisfy the integrity of this section regarding reviews, future service, modifications, and system support.

Due to freedom of information laws allowing for public access to documents submitted to and retained by code officials, it could be necessary for secure documents to be reviewed by code officials at alternate locations. Such conditions should be identified by the stakeholders and discussed with the authorities having jurisdiction(s) in advance.

7.8 Forms

7.8.1 General.

7.8.1.1* The requirements of Section 7.8 shall apply only where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards; by other parts of this Code; or by project specifications or drawings. (SIG-FUN)

A.7.8.1.1 See Section 7.2 for the minimum documentation requirements.

7.8.1.2 Where specific forms are required by other governing laws, codes, or standards; by other parts of this Code; or by project specifications or drawings, form layouts and content that differ from those in Section 7.8 shall be permitted provided that the minimum required content is included. (SIG-FUN)

7.8.2* Forms for Record of Completion, Record of Inspection and Testing, and Risk Analysis. Unless otherwise permitted or required in 7.5.6, 7.6.6, or 7.8.1.2, Figure 7.8.2(a) through Figure 7.8.2(l) shall be used to document the record of completion and record of inspection and testing. (SIG-FUN)

SYSTEM RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.
Attach additional sheets, data, or calculations as necessary to provide a complete record.

Form Completion Date: __________ Supplemental Pages Attached: __________

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: __________
Address: __________
Description of property: __________
Name of property representative: __________
Address: __________
Phone: __________ Fax: __________ E-mail: __________

2. INSTALLATION, SERVICE, TESTING, AND MONITORING INFORMATION

Installation contractor: __________
Address: __________
Phone: __________ Fax: __________ E-mail: __________
Service organization: __________
Address: __________
Phone: __________ Fax: __________ E-mail: __________
Testing organization: __________
Address: __________
Phone: __________ Fax: __________ E-mail: __________
Effective date for test and inspection contract: __________
Monitoring organization: __________
Address: __________
Phone: __________ Fax: __________ E-mail: __________
Account number: __________ Phone line 1: __________ Phone line 2: __________
Means of transmission: __________
Entity to which alarms are retransmitted: __________ Phone: __________

3. DOCUMENTATION

On-site location of the required record documents and site-specific software: __________

4. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE

This is a: ❏ New system ❏ Modification to existing system Permit number: __________
NFPA 72 edition: __________

4.1 Control Unit

Manufacturer: __________ Model number: __________

4.2 Software and Firmware

Firmware revision number: __________

4.3 Alarm Verification

❏ This system does not incorporate alarm verification.
Number of devices subject to alarm verification: __________ Alarm verification set for __________ seconds

 NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 3)

FIGURE 7.8.2(a) System Record of Completion. (SIG-FUN)

(continues)

SYSTEM RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

5. SYSTEM POWER

5.1 Control Unit

5.1.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of control panel: ____________ Control panel amps: ____________

Overcurrent protection: Type: ____________ Amps: ____________

Branch circuit disconnecting means location: ____________ Number: ____________

5.1.2 Secondary Power

Type of secondary power: ____________

Location, if remote from the plant: ____________

Calculated capacity of secondary power to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): ____________ In alarm mode (minutes): ____________

5.2 Control Unit

❏ This system does not have power extender panels

❏ Power extender panels are listed on supplementary sheet A

6. CIRCUITS AND PATHWAYS

Pathway Type	Dual Media Pathway	Separate Pathway	Class	Survivability Level
Signaling Line				
Device Power				
Initiating Device				
Notification Appliance				
Other (specify):				

7. REMOTE ANNUNCIATORS

Type	Location

8. INITIATING DEVICES

Type	Quantity	Addressable or Conventional	Alarm or Supervisory	Sensing Technology
Manual Pull Stations				
Smoke Detectors				
Duct Smoke Detectors				
Heat Detectors				
Gas Detectors				
Waterflow Switches				
Tamper Switches				

 NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 3)

FIGURE 7.8.2(a) Continued

SYSTEM RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

9. NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

Type	Quantity	Description
Audible		
Visible		
Combination Audible and Visible		

10. SYSTEM CONTROL FUNCTIONS

Type	Quantity
Hold-Open Door Releasing Devices	
HVAC Shutdown	
Fire/Smoke Dampers	
Door Unlocking	
Elevator Recall	
Elevator Shunt Trip	

11. INTERCONNECTED SYSTEMS

❑ This system does not have interconnected systems.

❑ Interconnected systems are listed on supplementary sheet __________ .

12. CERTIFICATION AND APPROVALS

12.1 System Installation Contractor

This system as specified herein has been installed according to all NFPA standards cited herein.

Signed: ______________________ Printed name: ______________ Date: ____________

Organization: ______________________ Title: ______________ Phone: ____________

12.2 System Operational Test

This system as specified herein has tested according to all NFPA standards cited herein.

Signed: ______________________ Printed name: ______________ Date: ____________

Organization: ______________________ Title: ______________ Phone: ____________

12.3 Acceptance Test

Date and time of acceptance test: ______________________________

Installing contractor representative: ______________________________

Testing contractor representative: ______________________________

Property representative: ______________________________

AHJ representative: ______________________________

 NFPA 72 (p. 3 of 3)

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It includes systems and components specific to emergency communications systems.
This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: ______________ Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: ________

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: ______________________________

Address: ______________________________

2. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE

❏ Fire alarm with in-building fire emergency voice alarm communication system (EVAC)

❏ Mass notification system

❏ Combination system, with the following components:

❏ Fire alarm ❏ EVACS ❏ MNS ❏ Two-way, in-building, emergency communications system

❏ Other (specify): ______________________________

NFPA 72 edition: ________ Additional description of system(s): ______________________________

____

2.1 In-Building Fire Emergency Voice Alarm Communications System

Manufacturer: ______________________ Model number: ______________

Number of single voice alarm channels: ____________ Number of multiple voice alarm channels: ____________

Number of speakers: ____________ Number of speaker circuits: ____________

Location of amplification and sound processing equipment: ______________________________

____

____

Location of paging microphone stations:

Location 1: ______________________________

Location 2: ______________________________

Location 3: ______________________________

2.2 Mass Notification System

2.2.1 System Type:

❏ In-building MNS–combination

❏ In-building MNS ❏ Wide-area MNS ❏ Distributed recipient MNS

❏ Other (specify): ______________________________

 NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 3)

FIGURE 7.8.2(b) Emergency Communications System Supplementary Record of Completion. (SIG-FUN)

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

2. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE *(continued)*

2.2.2 System Features:

❑ Combination fire alarm/MNS ❑ MNS autonomous control unit ❑ Wide-area MNS to regional national alerting interface
❑ Local operating console (LOC) ❑ Distributed-recipient MNS (DRMNS) ❑ Wide-area MNS to DRMNS interface
❑ Wide-area MNS to high power speaker array (HPSA) interface ❑ In-building MNS to wide-area MNS interface
❑ Other (specify): ____________________

2.2.3 MNS Local Operating Consoles

Location 1: ____________________
Location 2: ____________________
Location 3: ____________________

2.2.4 High Power Speaker Arrays

Number of HPSA speaker initiation zones: ____________________
Location 1: ____________________
Location 2: ____________________
Location 3: ____________________

2.2.5 Mass Notification Devices

Combination fire alarm/MNS visual devices: ____________ MNS-only visual devices: ____________
Textual signs: ____________ Other (describe): ____________________
Supervision class: ____________________

2.2.6 Special Hazard Notification

❑ This system does not have special suppression predischarge notification.
❑ MNS systems DO NOT override notification appliances required to provide special suppression predischarge notification.

3. TWO-WAY EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

3.1 Telephone System

Number of telephone jacks installed: ____________ Number of warden stations installed: ____________
Number of telephone handsets stored on site: ____________________
Type of telephone system installed: ❑ Electrically powered ❑ Sound powered

3.2 Two-Way Radio Communications Enhancement System

Percentage of area covered by two-way radio service: Critical areas ______ % General building areas ______ %
Amplification component locations: ____________________

____

Inbound signal strength ________ dBm Outbound signal strength ________ dBm
Donor antenna isolation is ________ dB above the signal booster gain.
Radio frequencies covered: ____________________
Radio system monitor panel location: ____________________

 NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 3)

(continues)

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

3. TWO-WAY EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS *(continued)*

3.3 Area of Refuge (Area of Rescue Assistance) Emergency Communications Systems

Number of stations: ___________ Location of central control point: ___________

Days and hours when central control point is attended: ___________

Location of alternate control point: ___________

Days and hours when alternate control point is attended: ___________

3.4 Elevator Emergency Communications Systems

Number of elevators with stations: ___________ Location of central control point: ___________

Days and hours when central control point is attended: ___________

Location of alternate control point: ___________

Days and hours when alternate control point is attended: ___________

3.5 Other Two-Way Communications System

Describe: ___________

4. CONTROL FUNCTIONS

This system activates the following control functions specific to emergency communications systems:

Type	Quantity
Mass Notification Override of Alarm Signaling Systems or Appliances	

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

 NFPA 72 (p. 3 of 3)

FIGURE 7.8.2(b) *Continued*

POWER SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It includes systems and components specific to power systems that incorporate generators, UPS systems, remote battery systems, or other complex power systems. This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval. It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record. Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: ________________ Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: __________

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: ____

Address: ____

2. SYSTEM POWER

2.1 Control Unit

2.1.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of control panel: ____________________ Control panel amps: ____________________

Overcurrent protection: Type: ____________________ Amps: ____________________

Location (of primary supply panelboard): ____

Disconnecting means location: ____

2.1.2 Engine-Driven Generator

Location of generator: ____

Location of fuel storage: ____________________ Type of fuel: ____________________

2.1.3 Uninterruptible Power System

Equipment powered by UPS system: ____

Location of UPS system: ____

Calculated capacity of UPS batteries to drive the system components connected to it:

In standby mode (hours): ____________________ In alarm mode (minutes): ____________________

2.1.4 Batteries

Location: ____________________ Type: ________ Nominal voltage: ________ Amp/hour rating: ________

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): ____________________ In alarm mode (minutes): ____________________

2.2 In-Building Fire Emergency Voice Alarm Communications System or Mass Notification System

2.2.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of EVACS or MNS panel: ______________ EVACS or MNS panel amps: ____________________

Overcurrent protection: Type: ____________________ Amps: ____________________

Location (of primary supply panelboard): ____

Disconnecting means location: ____

 NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 2)

FIGURE 7.8.2(c) *Power Systems Supplementary Record of Completion. (SIG-FUN)* *(continues)*

POWER SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

2. SYSTEM POWER *(continued)*

2.2.2 Engine-Driven Generator

Location of generator: ____________________

Location of fuel storage: ____________________ Type of fuel: ____________________

2.2.3 Uninterruptible Power System

Equipment powered by UPS system: ____________________

Location of UPS system: ____________________

Calculated capacity of UPS batteries to drive the system components connected to it:

In standby mode (hours): ____________________ In alarm mode (minutes): ____________________

2.2.4 Batteries

Location: ____________ Type: ________ Nominal voltage: ________ Amp/hour rating: ________

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): ____________________ In alarm mode (minutes): ____________________

2.3 Notification Appliance Power Extender Panels

❏ This system does not have power extender panels.

2.3.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of power extender panel(s): ____________ Power extender panel amps: ____________

Overcurrent protection: Type: ____________ Amps: ____________

Location (of primary supply panelboard): ____________________

Disconnecting means location: ____________________

2.3.2 Engine Driven Generator

Location of generator: ____________________

Location of fuel storage: ____________________ Type of fuel: ____________________

2.3.3 Uninterruptible Power System

Equipment powered by UPS system: ____________________

Location of UPS system: ____________________

Calculated capacity of UPS batteries to drive the system components connected to it:

In standby mode (hours): ____________________ In alarm mode (minutes): ____________________

2.3.4 Batteries

Location: ____________ Type: ________ Nominal voltage: ________ Amp/hour rating: ________

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): ____________________ In alarm mode (minutes): ____________________

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

 NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 2)

FIGURE 7.8.2(c) *Continued*

NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE POWER PANEL
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It includes a list of types and locations of notification appliance power extender panels.
This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: __________________ Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: ___________

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: ____

Address: ____

2. NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE POWER EXTENDER PANELS

Make and Model	Location	Area Served	Power Source

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

 NFPA 72

FIGURE 7.8.2(d) *Notification Appliance Power Panel Supplementary Record of Completion. (SIG-FUN)*

INTERCONNECTED SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It includes a list of types and locations of systems that are interconnected to the main system.
This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: ________________ Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: __________

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: ____

Address: ____

2. INTERCONNECTED SYSTEMS

Description	Location	Purpose

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

 NFPA 72

FIGURE 7.8.2(e) *Interconnected Systems Supplementary Record of Completion. (SIG-FUN)*

DEVIATIONS FROM ADOPTED CODES AND STANDARDS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It enables the designer and/or installer to document and justify deviations from accepted codes or standards.
This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: __________________ Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: ___________

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: ____

Address: ____

2. DEVIATIONS FROM ADOPTED CODES OR STANDARDS

Description	Purpose

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

 NFPA 72

FIGURE 7.8.2(f) Deviations from Adopted Codes and Standards Supplementary Record of Completion. (SIG-FUN)

SYSTEM RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING

This form is to be completed by the system inspection and testing contractor at the time of a system test.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.
Attach additional sheets, data, or calculations as necessary to provide a complete record.

Inspection/Test Start Date/Time: __________________ Inspection/Test Completion Date/Time: __________________

Supplemental Form(s) Attached: ________ (yes/no)

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: ____________________

Address: ____________________

Description of property: ____________________

Name of property representative: ____________________

Address: ____________________

Phone: ____________ Fax: ____________ E-mail: ____________

2. TESTING AND MONITORING INFORMATION

Testing organization: ____________________

Address: ____________________

Phone: ____________ Fax: ____________ E-mail: ____________

Monitoring organization: ____________________

Address: ____________________

Phone: ____________ Fax: ____________ E-mail: ____________

Account number: ____________ Phone line 1: ____________ Phone line 2: ____________

Means of transmission: ____________________

Entity to which alarms are retransmitted: ____________ Phone: ____________

3. DOCUMENTATION

Onsite location of the required record documents and site-specific software: ____________

4. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE

4.1 Control Unit

Manufacturer: ____________ Model number: ____________

4.2 Software Firmware

Firmware revision number: ____________________

4.3 System Power

4.3.1 Primary (Main) Power

Nominal voltage: ____________ Amps: ______ Location: ____________

Overcurrent protection type: ____________ Amps: ______ Disconnecting means location: ____________

 NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 4)

FIGURE 7.8.2(g) *System Record of Inspection and Testing. (SIG-TMS)*

SYSTEM RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

4. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE *(continued)*

4.3.2 Secondary Power

Type: ______________________ Location: ______________________

Battery type (if applicable): ______________________

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): ______________ In alarm mode (minutes): ______________

5. NOTIFICATIONS MADE PRIOR TO TESTING

Monitoring organization Contact: ______________ Time: ________

Building management Contact: ______________ Time: ________

Building occupants Contact: ______________ Time: ________

Authority having jurisdiction Contact: ______________ Time: ________

Other, if required Contact: ______________ Time: ________

6. TESTING RESULTS

6.1 Control Unit and Related Equipment

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Control unit	❏	❏	
Lamps/LEDs/LCDs	❏	❏	
Fuses	❏	❏	
Trouble signals	❏	❏	
Disconnect switches	❏	❏	
Ground-fault monitoring	❏	❏	
Supervision	❏	❏	
Local annunciator	❏	❏	
Remote annunciators	❏	❏	
Remote power panels	❏	❏	
	❏	❏	

6.2 Secondary Power

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Battery condition	❏	❏	
Load voltage	❏	❏	
Discharge test	❏	❏	
Charger test	❏	❏	
Remote panel batteries	❏	❏	

 NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 4)

(continues)

SYSTEM RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

6. TESTING RESULTS *(continued)*

6.3 Alarm and Supervisory Alarm Initiating Device

Attach supplementary device test sheets for all initiating devices.

6.4 Notification Appliances

Attach supplementary appliance test sheets for all notification appliances.

6.5 Interface Equipment

Attach supplementary interface component test sheets for all interface components.

Circuit Interface / Signaling Line Circuit Interface / Fire Alarm Control Interface

6.6 Supervising Station Monitoring

Description	Yes	No	Time	Comments
Alarm signal	❏	❏		
Alarm restoration	❏	❏		
Trouble signal	❏	❏		
Trouble restoration	❏	❏		
Supervisory signal	❏	❏		
Supervisory restoration	❏	❏		

6.7 Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System

Description	Yes	No	Time	Comments
Alarm signal	❏	❏		
Alarm restoration	❏	❏		
Trouble signal	❏	❏		
Trouble restoration	❏	❏		
Supervisory signal	❏	❏		
Supervisory restoration	❏	❏		

 NFPA 72 (p. 3 of 4)

FIGURE 7.8.2(g) *Continued*

SYSTEM RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

7. NOTIFICATIONS THAT TESTING IS COMPLETE

Monitoring organization Contact: ______________________ Time: ____________
Building management Contact: ______________________ Time: ____________
Building occupants Contact: ______________________ Time: ____________
Authority having jurisdiction Contact: ______________________ Time: ____________
Other, if required Contact: ______________________ Time: ____________

8. SYSTEM RESTORED TO NORMAL OPERATION

Date: ____________________________ Time: ______________________________

9. CERTIFICATION

This system as specified herein has been inspected and tested according to NFPA 72, 2013 edition, Chapter 14.

Signed: ____________________ Printed name: ________________ Date: ____________
Organization: ________________ Title: ____________________ Phone: ____________
Qualifications (refer to 10.5.3): ____

10. DEFECTS OR MALFUNCTIONS NOT CORRECTED AT CONCLUSION OF SYSTEM INSPECTION, TESTING, OR MAINTENANCE

____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____
____

10.1 Acceptance by Owner or Owner's Representative:

The undersigned accepted the test report for the system as specified herein:

Signed: ____________________ Printed name: ________________ Date: ____________
Organization: ________________ Title: ____________________ Phone: ____________

 NFPA 72 (p. 4 of 4)

NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Inspection and Testing.
It includes a notification appliance test record.
This form is to be completed by the system inspection and testing contractor at the time of the inspection and/or test.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Inspection/Test Start Date/Time: __________________ Inspection/Test Completion Date/Time: __________________

Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: ________

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: ____

Address: ____

2. NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE TEST RESULTS

Appliance Type	Location/Identifier	Test Results

 NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 2)

FIGURE 7.8.2(h) *Notification Appliance Supplementary Record of Inspection and Testing. (SIG-TMS)*

NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

2. NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE TEST RESULTS *(continued)*

Appliance Type	Location/Identifier	Test Results

See main System Record of Inspection and Testing for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 2)

INITIATING DEVICE
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Inspection and Testing.
It includes an initiating device test record.
This form is to be completed by the system inspection and testing contractor at the time of the inspection and/or test.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Inspection/Test Start Date/Time: ___________________ Inspection/Test Completion Date/Time: __________________

Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: ________

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: ____

Address: ____

2. INITIATING DEVICE TEST RESULTS

Device Type	Address	Location	Test Results

 NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 2)

FIGURE 7.8.2(i) *Initiating Device Supplementary Record of Inspection and Testing. (SIG-TMS)*

INITIATING DEVICE
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

2. INITIATING DEVICE TEST RESULTS *(continued)*

Device Type	Address	Location	Test Results

See main System Record of Inspection and Testing for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

 NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 2)

MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEM
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Inspection and Testing.
It includes a mass notification system test record.
This form is to be completed by the system inspection and testing contractor at the time of the inspection and/or test.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Inspection/Test Start Date/Time: ________________ Inspection/Test Completion Date/Time: ________________

Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: _______

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: ____________________

Address: ____________________

2. MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEM

2.1 System Type

❑ In-building MNS—combination

❑ In-building MNS—stand alone ❑ Wide-area MNS ❑ Distributed recipient MNS

❑ Other (specify): ____________________

2.2 System Features

❑ Combination fire alarm/MNS ❑ MNS ACU only ❑ Wide-area MNS to regional national alerting interface

❑ Local operating console (LOC) ❑ Direct recipient MNS (DRMNS) ❑ Wide-area MNS to DRMNS interface

❑ Wide-area MNS to high-power speaker array (HPSA) interface ❑ In-building MNS to wide-area MNS interface

❑ Other (specify): ____________________

3. IN-BUILDING MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEM

3.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of MNS panel: ________________ MNS panel amps: ________________

3.2 Engine-Driven Generator

❑ This system does not have a generator.

Location of generator: ____________________

Location of fuel storage: ________________ Type of fuel: ________________

3.3 Uninterruptible Power System

❑ This system does not have a UPS.

Equipment powered by a UPS system: ____________________

Location of UPS system: ____________________

Calculated capacity of UPS batteries to drive the system components connected to it:

In standby mode (hours): ________________ In alarm mode (minutes): ________________

3.4 Batteries

Location: Type: ____________ Nominal voltage: ____________ Amp/hour rating: ____________

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): ________________ In alarm mode (minutes): ________________

❑ Batteries are marked with date of manufacture.

 NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 2)

FIGURE 7.8.2(j) *Mass Notification System Supplementary Record of Inspection and Testing. (SIG-TMS)*

MASS NOTIFICATION SYSTEM
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

4. MASS NOTIFICATION EQUIPMENT TEST RESULTS

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Functional test			
Reset/power down test			
Fuses			
Primary power supply			
UPS power test			
Trouble signals			
Disconnect switches			
Ground-fault monitoring			
CCU security mechanism			
Prerecorded message content			
Prerecorded message activation			
Software backup performed			
Test backup software			
Fire alarm to MNS interface			
MNS to fire alarm interface			
In-building MNS to wide-area MNS			
MNS to direct recipient MNS			
Sound pressure levels Occupied ❑ Yes ❑ No Ambient dBA: __________ Alarm dBA: __________ (attach supplementary notification appliance form(s) with locations, values, and weather conditions)			
System intelligibility Test method: _____ Score: _____ CIS value: __________ (attach supplementary notification appliance form(s) with locations, values, and weather conditions)			
Other (specify):			

See main System Record of Inspection and Testing for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

 NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 2)

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Inspection and Testing.
It includes systems and components specific to emergency communication systems.
This form is to be completed by the system inspection and testing contractor at the time of the inspection and/or test.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Inspection/Test Start Date/Time: ________________ Inspection/Test Completion Date/Time: ________________

Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: ________

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: ____________________

Address: ____________________

2. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE

❏ Fire alarm with in-building fire emergency voice alarm communication system (EVAC)

❏ Mass notification system

❏ Combination system, with the following components:

❏ Fire alarm ❏ EVACS ❏ MNS ❏ Two-way, in-building, emergency communication system

❏ Other (specify): ____________________

Additional description of system(s): ____________________

____

2.1 In-Building Fire Emergency Voice Alarm Communication System

Manufacturer: ____________________ Model number: ____________________

Number of single voice alarm channels: ____________ Number of multiple voice alarm channels: ____________

Number of speakers: ____________ Number of speaker circuits: ____________

Location of amplification and sound processing equipment: ____________________

____

____

Location of paging microphone stations:

Location 1: ____________________

Location 2: ____________________

Location 3: ____________________

2.2 Mass Notification System

2.2.1 System Type:

❏ In-building MNS—combination

❏ In-building MNS ❏ Wide-area MNS ❏ Distributed recipient MNS

❏ Other (specify): ____________________

 NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 5)

FIGURE 7.8.2(k) Emergency Communications Systems Supplementary Record of Inspection and Testing. (SIG-TMS)

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

2. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE *(continued)*

2.2.2 System Features:

❑ Combination fire alarm/MNS ❑ MNS autonomous control unit ❑ Wide-area MNS to regional national alerting interface
❑ Local operating console (LOC) ❑ Distributed-recipient MNS (DRMNS) ❑ Wide-area MNS to DRMNS interface
❑ Wide-area MNS to high-power speaker array (HPSA) interface ❑ In-building MNS to wide-area MNS interface
❑ Other (specify): ______

2.2.3 MNS Local Operating Consoles

Location 1: ______
Location 2: ______
Location 3: ______

2.2.4 High-Power Speaker Arrays

Number of HPSA speaker initiation zones: ______
Location 1: ______
Location 2: ______
Location 3: ______

2.2.5 Mass Notification Devices

Combination fire alarm/MNS visual devices: ______ MNS-only visual devices: ______
Textual signs: ______ Other (describe): ______
Supervision class: ______

2.2.6 Special Hazard Notification

❑ This system does not have special suppression pre-discharge notification
❑ MNS systems DO NOT override notification appliances required to provide special suppression pre-discharge notification

3. TWO-WAY EMERGENCY COMMUNICATION SYSTEMS

3.1 Telephone System

Number of telephone jacks installed: ______ Number of warden stations installed: ______
Number of telephone handsets stored on site: ______
Type of telephone system installed: ❑ Electrically powered ❑ Sound powered

3.2 Two-Way Radio Communications Enhancement System

Percentage of area covered by two-way radio service: Critical areas ______ % General building areas ______ %
Amplification component locations: ______

______

Inbound signal strength ______ dBm Outbound signal strength ______ dBm
Donor antenna isolation is ______ dB above the signal booster gain
Radio frequencies covered: ______
Radio system monitor panel location: ______

 NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 5)

(continues)

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

3. TWO-WAY EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS *(continued)*

3.3 Area of Refuge (Area of Rescue Assistance) Emergency Communications Systems

Number of stations: ____________ Location of central control point: ____________

Days and hours when central control point is attended: ____________

Location of alternate control point: ____________

Days and hours when alternate control point is attended: ____________

3.4 Elevator Emergency Communications Systems

Number of elevators with stations: ____________ Location of central control point: ____________

Days and hours when central control point is attended: ____________

Location of alternate control point: ____________

Days and hours when alternate control point is attended: ____________

3.5 Other Two-Way Communication System

Describe: ____________

4. TESTING RESULTS

4.1 Control Unit and Related Equipment

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Control unit	❑	❑	
Lamps/LEDs/LCDs	❑	❑	
Fuses	❑	❑	
Trouble signals	❑	❑	
Disconnect switches	❑	❑	
Ground fault monitoring	❑	❑	
Supervision	❑	❑	
Local annunciator	❑	❑	
Remote annunciators	❑	❑	
Remote power panels	❑	❑	
Other:	❑	❑	

4.2 Secondary Power

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Battery condition	❑	❑	
Load voltage	❑	❑	
Discharge test	❑	❑	
Charger test	❑	❑	
Remote panel batteries	❑	❑	

 NFPA 72 (p. 3 of 5)

FIGURE 7.8.2(k) *Continued*

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

4. TESTING RESULTS *(continued)*

4.3 Emergency Communications Equipment

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Control unit	❑	❑	
Lamps/LEDs/LCDs	❑	❑	
Fuses	❑	❑	
Secondary power supply	❑	❑	
Trouble signals	❑	❑	
Disconnect switches	❑	❑	
Ground fault monitoring	❑	❑	
Panel supervision	❑	❑	
System performance	❑	❑	
System audibility	❑	❑	
System intelligibility	❑	❑	
Other:	❑	❑	

4.4 Mass Notification Equipment

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Functional test	❑	❑	
Reset/Power down test	❑	❑	
Fuses	❑	❑	
Primary power supply	❑	❑	
UPS power test	❑	❑	
Trouble signals	❑	❑	
Disconnect switches	❑	❑	
Ground fault monitoring	❑	❑	
CCU security mechanism	❑	❑	
Prerecorded message content	❑	❑	
Prerecorded message activation	❑	❑	
Software backup performed	❑	❑	
Test backup software	❑	❑	
Fire alarm to MNS Interface	❑	❑	
MNS to fire alarm interface	❑	❑	
In-building MNS to wide-area MNS	❑	❑	
MNS to direct recipient MNS	❑	❑	

 NFPA 72 (p. 4 of 5)

(continues)

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

4. TESTING RESULTS *(continued)*

4.4 Mass Notification Equipment *(continued)*

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Sound pressure levels (attach report with locations, values, and weather conditions)	❑	❑	
System intelligibility ❑ CSI ❑ STI (attach report with locations, values, and weather conditions)	❑	❑	
Other:	❑	❑	

4.5 Two-Way Communication Equipment

Description	Visual Inspection	Functional Test	Comments
Phone handsets	❑	❑	
Phone jacks	❑	❑	
Off-hook indicator	❑	❑	
Call-in signal	❑	❑	
System performance	❑	❑	
System audibility	❑	❑	
System intelligibility	❑	❑	
Other:	❑	❑	

See main System Record of Inspection and Testing for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

 NFPA 72 (p. 5 of 5)

FIGURE 7.8.2(k) Continued

INTERFACE COMPONENT
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Inspection and Testing.
It includes an interface component test record for circuit interfaces, signaling line circuit interfaces, and fire alarm control interfaces.
This form is to be completed by the system inspection and testing contractor at the time of the inspection and/or test.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Inspection/Test Start Date/Time: __________________ Inspection/Test Completion Date/Time: _________________

Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: ________

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: ____

Address: ____

2. INTERFACE COMPONENT TEST RESULTS

Interface Component Type	Address	Location	Test Results

 NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 2)

FIGURE 7.8.2(l) *Interface Component Supplementary Record of Inspection and Testing. (SIG-TMS)* *(continues)*

INTERFACE COMPONENT
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF INSPECTION AND TESTING *(continued)*

2. INTERFACE COMPONENT TEST RESULTS *(continued)*

Interface Component Type	Address	Location	Test Results

See main System Record of Inspection and Testing for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

 NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 2)

FIGURE 7.8.2(l) *Continued*

SYSTEM RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.
Attach additional sheets, data, or calculations as necessary to provide a complete record.

Form Completion Date: 25 January 2011 Supplemental Pages Attached: 0

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: World Storage and Transfer Headquarters
Address: 27132 Santa Anita Boulevard, Hilo, HI
Description of property: Business and Office Building
Name of property representative: Joe Bago Donits
Address: As above
Phone: (743) 225-9768 Fax: (743) 225-9768 E-mail: jbago@WLST.net

2. INSTALLATION, SERVICE, TESTING, AND MONITORING INFORMATION

Installation contractor: Sparkee's Electric
Address: 1954 Nimitz Highway, Honolulu, HI 76542
Phone: (978) 456-9876 Fax: (978) 456-9876 E-mail: shortcircuitguy@sparkee.net
Service organization: None
Address:
Phone: Fax: E-mail:
Testing organization: Jim's Protection, Inc.
Address: 2300 Daly Boulevard, Austin, TX
Phone: (407) 738-4587 Fax: (407) 738-4598 E-mail: testerjim@JPI.com
Effective date for test and inspection contract: 25 January 2011
Monitoring organization: Look the Other Way, Inc.
Address: 995 Highway 35W, Minneapolis, MN
Phone: (412) 456-9078 Fax: (412) 456-7272 E-mail: Look@otherway.com
Account number: 56734598 Phone line 1: (212) 978-6576 Phone line 2: (212) 978-9978
Means of transmission: POTS
Entity to which alarms are retransmitted: Honolulu FD Phone: (808) 455-5555

3. DOCUMENTATION

On-site location of the required record documents and site-specific software: Building Mgrs. Office Room 203

4. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE

This is a: ☑ New system ❑ Modification to existing system Permit number: 11-907645
NFPA 72 edition: 2013

4.1 Control Unit

Manufacturer: Halter Cabinet Model number: 1019-7647

4.2 Software and Firmware

Firmware revision number: 7.0 B Executive Rev 9.11

4.3 Alarm Verification

☑ This system does not incorporate alarm verification.
Number of devices subject to alarm verification: ______ Alarm verification set for ______ seconds

 NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 3)

FIGURE A.7.8.2(a) Example of Completed System Record of Completion. *(continues)*

SYSTEM RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

5. SYSTEM POWER

5.1 Control Unit

5.1.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of control panel: 120 VAC Control panel amps: ______

Overcurrent protection: Type: ______ Amps: 1.8 A

Branch circuit disconnecting means location: Breaker Panel — Room B-23 Number: 23

5.1.2 Secondary Power

Type of secondary power: Engine Generator

Location, if remote from the plant: Rear Yard — Adjacent to Trash Storage

Calculated capacity of secondary power to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): 48 In alarm mode (minutes): 90

5.2 Control Unit

❑ This system does not have power extender panels

❑ Power extender panels are listed on supplementary sheet A

6. CIRCUITS AND PATHWAYS

Pathway Type	Dual Media Pathway	Separate Pathway	Class	Survivability Level
Signaling Line				
Device Power				
Initiating Device	A			
Notification Appliance	Z			
Other (specify):				

7. REMOTE ANNUNCIATORS

Type	Location

8. INITIATING DEVICES

Type	Quantity	Addressable or Conventional	Alarm or Supervisory	Sensing Technology
Manual Pull Stations	12	Addressable		
Smoke Detectors	8	Addressable		
Duct Smoke Detectors				
Heat Detectors				
Gas Detectors	1	Conventional		
Waterflow Switches	2	Conventional		
Tamper Switches	4	Conventional		

 NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 3)

FIGURE A.7.8.2(a) Continued

SYSTEM RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

9. NOTIFICATION APPLIANCES

Type	Quantity	Description
Audible	18	
Visible	24	
Combination Audible and Visible	6	

10. SYSTEM CONTROL FUNCTIONS

Type	Quantity
Hold-Open Door Releasing Devices	4
HVAC Shutdown	2
Fire/Smoke Dampers	
Door Unlocking	1
Elevator Recall	2
Elevator Shunt Trip	

11. INTERCONNECTED SYSTEMS

☑ This system does not have interconnected systems.

❑ Interconnected systems are listed on supplementary sheet __________ .

12. CERTIFICATION AND APPROVALS

12.1 System Installation Contractor

This system as specified herein has been installed according to all NFPA standards cited herein.

Signed: *Harry Johnson* Printed name: Harry Johnson Date: 11 January 2011

Organization: Sparkee's Electric Title: Principal Phone: (978) 456-9876

12.2 System Operational Test

This system as specified herein has tested according to all NFPA standards cited herein.

Signed: *Jim Riverbottom* Printed name: Jim Riverbottom Date: 14 January 2011

Organization: ________ Title: ________ Phone: ________

12.3 Acceptance Test

Date and time of acceptance test: 0830 hrs. — 26 January 2011

Installing contractor representative: Jim Johnson

Testing contractor representative: Reginald O'Haraquest

Property representative: Danny MacIntosh

AHJ representative: Inspector DiDonato

 NFPA 72 (p. 3 of 3)

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It includes systems and components specific to emergency communications systems.
This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: 25 January 2011 Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: ________

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: World Storage and Transfer Headquarters

Address: 27132 Santa Anita Boulevard, Hilo, HI

2. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE

❏ Fire alarm with in-building fire emergency voice alarm communication system (EVAC)

❏ Mass notification system

☑ Combination system, with the following components:

❏ Fire alarm ❏ EVACS ❏ MNS ❏ Two-way, in-building, emergency communications system

❏ Other (specify): ________

NFPA 72 edition: 2013 Additional description of system(s): ________

____

2.1 In-Building Fire Emergency Voice Alarm Communications System

Manufacturer: Halter Cabinet Model number: 1018-7648

Number of single voice alarm channels: 2 Number of multiple voice alarm channels: 0

Number of speakers: 99 Number of speaker circuits: 12

Location of amplification and sound processing equipment: Fire Control Room

____

____

Location of paging microphone stations:

Location 1: Fire Control Room

Location 2: Security Office

Location 3: ________

2.2 Mass Notification System

2.2.1 System Type:

☑ In-building MNS–combination

❏ In-building MNS ❏ Wide-area MNS ❏ Distributed recipient MNS

❏ Other (specify): ________

 NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 3)

FIGURE A.7.8.2(b) Example of Completed Emergency Communications System Supplementary Record of Completion.

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

2. DESCRIPTION OF SYSTEM OR SERVICE *(continued)*

2.2.2 System Features:

☑ Combination fire alarm/MNS ❑ MNS autonomous control unit ❑ Wide-area MNS to regional national alerting interface
❑ Local operating console (LOC) ❑ Distributed-recipient MNS (DRMNS) ❑ Wide-area MNS to DRMNS interface
❑ Wide-area MNS to high power speaker array (HPSA) interface ❑ In-building MNS to wide-area MNS interface
❑ Other (specify): ______

2.2.3 MNS Local Operating Consoles

Location 1: Fire Control Room
Location 2: Security Office
Location 3: ______

2.2.4 High-Power Speaker Arrays

Number of HPSA speaker initiation zones: 0
Location 1: ______
Location 2: ______
Location 3: ______

2.2.5 Mass Notification Devices

Combination fire alarm/MNS visual devices: 62 MNS-only visual devices: ______
Textual signs: ______ Other (describe): ______
Supervision class: ______

2.2.6 Special Hazard Notification

☑ This system does not have special suppression predischarge notification.
❑ MNS systems DO NOT override notification appliances required to provide special suppression predischarge notification.

3. TWO-WAY EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS

3.1 Telephone System

Number of telephone jacks installed: 15 Number of warden stations installed: 3
Number of telephone handsets stored on site: 6
Type of telephone system installed: ❑ Electrically powered ☑ Sound powered

3.2 Two-Way Radio Communications Enhancement System

Percentage of area covered by two-way radio service: Critical areas 5 % General building areas 95 %
Amplification component locations: Fire Control Room

______

Inbound signal strength ______ dBm Outbound signal strength ______ dBm
Donor antenna isolation is ______ dB above the signal booster gain.
Radio frequencies covered: ______
Radio system monitor panel location: ______

 NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 3)

(continues)

EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

3. TWO-WAY EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS SYSTEMS *(continued)*

3.3 Area of Refuge (Area of Rescue Assistance) Emergency Communications Systems

Number of stations: 0 Location of central control point: ______

Days and hours when central control point is attended: ______

Location of alternate control point: ______

Days and hours when alternate control point is attended: ______

3.4 Elevator Emergency Communications Systems

Number of elevators with stations: 2 Location of central control point: Fire Control Room

Days and hours when central control point is attended: 24

Location of alternate control point: None

Days and hours when alternate control point is attended: None

3.5 Other Two-Way Communications System

Describe: ______

4. CONTROL FUNCTIONS

This system activates the following control functions specific to emergency communications systems:

Type	Quantity
Mass Notification Override of Alarm Signaling Systems or Appliances	1

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

 NFPA 72 (p. 3 of 3)

FIGURE A.7.8.2(b) *Continued*

POWER SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It includes systems and components specific to power systems that incorporate generators, UPS systems, remote battery systems, or other complex power systems. This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval. It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record. Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: 25 January 2011 Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: 0

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: World Storage and Transfer Headquarters

Address: 27132 Santa Anita Boulevard, Hilo, HI

2. SYSTEM POWER

2.1 Control Unit

2.1.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of control panel: 120 volt Control panel amps: 3.5

Overcurrent protection: Type: Circuit Breaker Amps: 20

Location (of primary supply panelboard): Main Electrical Room in Basement

Disconnecting means location: Panel E2 — Electric Room

2.1.2 Engine-Driven Generator

Location of generator: Basement

Location of fuel storage: Basement Type of fuel: Diesel

2.1.3 Uninterruptible Power System

Equipment powered by UPS system: None

Location of UPS system: ______

Calculated capacity of UPS batteries to drive the system components connected to it:

In standby mode (hours): ______ In alarm mode (minutes): ______

2.1.4 Batteries

Location: FACP Type: Gel Cell Nominal voltage: 24 Amp/hour rating: 16

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): 86 In alarm mode (minutes): 12

2.2 In-Building Fire Emergency Voice Alarm Communications System or Mass Notification System

2.2.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of EVACS or MNS panel: 120 volt EVACS or MNS panel amps: 8.8

Overcurrent protection: Type: Circuit Breaker Amps: 20

Location (of primary supply panelboard): Main Electrical Room in Basement

Disconnecting means location: Panel E2 — Electric Room

 NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 2)

FIGURE A.7.8.2(c) Example of Completed Power Systems Supplementary Record of Completion. *(continues)*

POWER SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION *(continued)*

2. SYSTEM POWER *(continued)*

2.2.2 Engine-Driven Generator

Location of generator: Basement

Location of fuel storage: Basement Type of fuel: Diesel

2.2.3 Uninterruptible Power System

Equipment powered by UPS system: None

Location of UPS system: N/A

Calculated capacity of UPS batteries to drive the system components connected to it:

In standby mode (hours): N/A In alarm mode (minutes): N/A

2.2.4 Batteries

Location: ECS Panel Type: Gel Cell Nominal voltage: 24 Amp/hour rating: 20

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): 32 In alarm mode (minutes): 8

2.3 Notification Appliance Power Extender Panels

❑ This system does not have power extender panels.

2.3.1 Primary Power

Input voltage of power extender panel(s): 120 volt Power extender panel amps: 8

Overcurrent protection: Type: Circuit Breaker Amps: 20

Location (of primary supply panelboard): See Table

Disconnecting means location: ________

2.3.2 Engine-Driven Generator

Location of generator: Basement

Location of fuel storage: Basement Type of fuel: Diesel

2.3.3 Uninterruptible Power System

Equipment powered by UPS system: None

Location of UPS system: ________

Calculated capacity of UPS batteries to drive the system components connected to it:

In standby mode (hours): ________ In alarm mode (minutes): ________

2.3.4 Batteries

Location: Power Panel Type: Gel Cell Nominal voltage: 24 Amp/hour rating: 12

Calculated capacity of batteries to drive the system:

In standby mode (hours): 42 In alarm mode (minutes): 11

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

 NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 2)

FIGURE A.7.8.2(c) *Continued*

NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE POWER PANEL SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It includes a list of types and locations of notification appliance power extender panels.
This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: 25 January 2011 Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: 0

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: World Storage and Transfer Headquarters

Address: 27132 Santa Anita Boulevard, Hilo, HI

2. NOTIFICATION APPLIANCE POWER EXTENDER PANELS

Make and Model	Location	Area Served	Power Source
Firelite W123	3rd Floor	3rd Floor	Panel 3E
SK + ABC	6th Floor	6th Floor	Panel 3G

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

 NFPA 72

FIGURE A.7.8.2(d) Example of Completed Notification Appliance Power Panel Supplementary Record of Completion.

INTERCONNECTED SYSTEMS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It includes a list of types and locations of systems that are interconnected to the main system.
This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: 25 January 2011 Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: ____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: World Storage and Transfer Headquarters

Address: 27132 Santa Anita Boulevard, Hilo, HI

2. INTERCONNECTED SYSTEMS

Description	Location	Purpose
Fan Shutdown	Roof	Shut down fans on fire alarm activation
Elevator Recall	Elevator Room	Recall elevators in case of alarm on lobby smoke detectors

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

 NFPA 72

FIGURE A.7.8.2(e) *Example of Completed Interconnected Systems Suplementary Record of Completion.*

DEVIATIONS FROM ADOPTED CODES AND STANDARDS
SUPPLEMENTARY RECORD OF COMPLETION

This form is a supplement to the System Record of Completion. It enables the designer and/or installer to document and justify deviations from accepted codes or standards.
This form is to be completed by the system installation contractor at the time of system acceptance and approval.
It shall be permitted to modify this form as needed to provide a more complete and/or clear record.
Insert N/A in all unused lines.

Form Completion Date: 25 January 2011 Number of Supplemental Pages Attached: ____

1. PROPERTY INFORMATION

Name of property: World Storage and Transfer Headquarters

Address: 27132 Santa Anita Boulevard, Hilo, HI

2. DEVIATIONS FROM ADOPTED CODES OR STANDARDS

Description	Purpose

See Main System Record of Completion for additional information, certifications, and approvals.

 NFPA 72

FIGURE A.7.8.2(f) *Example of Completed Deviations from Adopted Codes and Standards Supplementary Record of Completion.*

RISK ANALYSIS CHECKLIST

Facility name: ______________________ Facility location: ______________________

Prepared by: ______________________ Date prepared: ______________________

Title and contact information: ______________________

ECS system type: ______________________

PART ONE: Identification of Assets or Operations at Risk

Use Part One of this checklist to identify the following assets or operations at risk at your facility

- ❏ **People**
  - ❏ Employees
  - ❏ Visitors and guests
  - ❏ Contractors working on site
  - ❏ Emergency responders
  - ❏ Community surrounding the facility

- ❏ **Property**
  - ❏ Physical property
    - ❏ Corporate offices
    - ❏ Manufacturing facilities
    - ❏ Call center
    - ❏ Distribution centers
    - ❏ Data-processing center
    - ❏ Research and development labs
    - ❏ Property on the premises of others
    - ❏ Vital papers, records, and drawings
  - ❏ Intellectual property
    - ❏ Copyright and patent infringement
    - ❏ Trademark infringement
    - ❏ Theft of intellectual property
    - ❏ Theft of information
  - ❏ Utilities
    - ❏ Telecommunications
    - ❏ Electricity
    - ❏ Water
    - ❏ Gas
    - ❏ Steam
    - ❏ Heating/ventilation/air conditioning
    - ❏ Pollution control
    - ❏ Sewerage system
    - ❏ Other critical infrastructure
  - ❏ Computers and computer networks
    - ❏ Software applications
    - ❏ Electronic data
  - ❏ Inventory
    - ❏ Raw materials
    - ❏ Finished product

- ❏ **Operations**
  - ❏ Manufacturing processes
  - ❏ Delivery of services
  - ❏ Administrative support services
  - ❏ Research and development
  - ❏ Supply chain

- ❏ **Environment**
  - ❏ Air
  - ❏ Water
  - ❏ Ground

- ❏ **Organization**
  - ❏ Economic and financial condition
  - ❏ Licenses, patents, or trademarks
  - ❏ Reputation and image as well-managed company
  - ❏ Contractual obligations
  - ❏ Community relationships
  - ❏ Regional and national impact
  - ❏ Regulatory compliance and relationships with vendors

 NFPA 72 (p. 1 of 2)

FIGURE A.7.8.2(g) *Risk Analysis Checklist.*

RISK ANALYSIS CHECKLIST *(continued)*

PART TWO: Determination of Facility Hazards

Use Part Two of this checklist to determine the potential hazards that may impact your facility.

❑ **Natural Hazards—Geological**

- ❑ Earthquake
- ❑ Tsunami
- ❑ Volcano
- ❑ Landslide, mudslide, subsidence
- ❑ Glacier, iceberg

❑ **Natural Hazards—Meteorological**

- ❑ Flood, flash flood, tidal surge
- ❑ Drought
- ❑ Windstorm, tropical cyclone, hurricane, tornado, water spout, dust/sand storm
- ❑ Extreme temperatures (heat, cold)
- ❑ Lightning strikes
- ❑ Famine
- ❑ Geomagnetic storm
- ❑ Snow, ice, hail, sleet, avalanche

❑ **Natural Hazards—Biological**

- ❑ Diseases (pandemic)
- ❑ Animal or insect infestation or damage

❑ **Human-Caused Accidental Events**

- ❑ Hazardous material (explosive, flammable liquid, flammable gas, flammable solid, oxidizer, poison, radiological, corrosive) spill or release
- ❑ Natural gas leak
- ❑ Nuclear power plant incident
- ❑ Hazmat incident off site
- ❑ Explosion/fire
- ❑ Wildfire (forest, range, urban, wildland, urban interface)
- ❑ Transportation accident (motor vehicle, railroad, watercraft, aircraft pipeline)
- ❑ Building/structure failure or collapse
- ❑ Entrapment
- ❑ Mechanical breakdown
- ❑ Energy/power/utility failure
- ❑ Fuel/resource shortage
- ❑ Air/water pollution, contamination
- ❑ Water control structure/dam/levee failure
- ❑ Communications systems interruptions
- ❑ Financial issues, economic depression, inflation, financial system collapse
- ❑ Misinformation

❑ **Human-Caused Intentional Events**

- ❑ Terrorism (explosive, chemical, biological, radiological, nuclear, cyber)
- ❑ Sabotage or vandalism
- ❑ Civil disturbance, public unrest, mass hysteria, riot
- ❑ Enemy attack, war
- ❑ Insurrection
- ❑ Strike or labor dispute
- ❑ Demonstration
- ❑ Disinformation
- ❑ Criminal activity (vandalism, arson, theft, fraud, embezzlement, data theft)
- ❑ Electromagnetic pulse
- ❑ Physical or information security breach
- ❑ Sniper incident
- ❑ Crime, theft, or robbery
- ❑ Product defect or contamination
- ❑ Harassment
- ❑ Arson
- ❑ Bomb threat
- ❑ Lost person
- ❑ Child abduction
- ❑ Kidnap
- ❑ Extortion
- ❑ Hostage incident
- ❑ Workplace violence

❑ **Technological-Caused Events**

- ❑ Telecommunications
- ❑ Central computer, mainframe, software, or application (internal/external)
- ❑ Energy/power/utility
- ❑ Ancillary support equipment

 NFPA 72 (p. 2 of 2)

Forms to satisfy the record keeping requirements of the Code have been developed for use. As permitted by 7.8.2, the Code allows the use of forms other than those found in the Code so long as the required documented information is included in the alternate form.

A.7.8.2 Examples of completed record of completion forms are shown in Figure A.7.8.2(a) through Figure A.7.8.2(f), and a risk analysis checklist form can be found in Figure A.7.8.2(g).

References Cited in Commentary

NFPA *101®*, *Life Safety Code®*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 170, *Standard for Fire Safety and Emergency Symbols*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

Reserved Chapters

In the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72®, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, the following chapters are reserved for future use:

- Chapter 8
- Chapter 9

CHAPTER

10

Fundamentals

Chapter 10 includes requirements that are common to all fire alarm systems except household fire alarm systems. Many of the requirements of this chapter apply not only to fire alarm systems but also to the broader scope of alarm and signaling systems. The requirements of Chapter 10 apply to protected premises (local) fire alarm systems, supervising station alarm systems, public emergency alarm reporting systems, and emergency communications systems. The scope of this chapter includes requirements for equipment suitability and compatibility, personnel qualifications, power supplies, signal distinction and priority, signal indication, fundamental equipment performance, protection of fire alarm systems, annunciation and annunciation zoning, monitoring integrity of power supplies, and impairments.

Personnel qualification requirements are provided for the system designer; system installer; inspection, testing, and service personnel; and supervising station operators. Chapter 10 has been reorganized for the 2013 edition to improve the flow of requirements and provide better usability. In addition, the following significant changes have been made in the 2013 edition:

- Continued revisions throughout to reflect the broader application of alarm, signaling, and communications systems
- Relocated documentation requirements to new Chapter 7, Documentation
- New provisions in 10.5.3 separately addressing qualification requirements for inspection personnel, testing personnel, and service personnel
- New 10.5.3.4 addressing the qualifications of personnel who program systems
- Revised 10.6.5.1 clarifying the permitted loads for branch circuits providing power for fire alarm and emergency communications equipment
- New 10.7.5 and 10.7.6 permitting carbon monoxide and pre-alarm signals to take precedence over supervisory and trouble signals
- New Section 10.8 along with related definitions addressing specific types of conditions for which a means of detection and signaling might be required

10.1 Application

10.1.1 The basic functions of a complete fire alarm and/or signaling system shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

The 2013 Code, including Chapter 10, addresses the broader scope of fire/alarm/emergency signaling systems, including emergency communications systems, which are covered in Chapter 24.

10.1.2 The requirements of this chapter shall apply to systems, equipment, and components addressed in Chapters 12, 14, 17, 18, 21, 23, 24, 26, and 27.

The basic requirements for all fire alarm systems, except household fire alarm systems, and for emergency communications systems are contained in Chapter 10. The requirements for household fire alarm systems are addressed in Chapter 29, and, unless noted otherwise, the requirements of Chapter 10 do not apply.

The requirements of Chapter 1, the references in Chapter 2, and the definitions in Chapter 3 apply throughout the Code, including Chapter 10.

With the exception of provisions addressing signal priority, *NFPA 72®, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, does not address carbon monoxide detection systems, which are covered by NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment. NFPA 72* also does not address electronic intrusion detection systems, which are covered by NFPA 731, *Standard for the Installation of Electronic Premises Security Systems.*

10.1.3 The requirements of Chapter 7 shall apply where referenced in Chapter 10.

Chapter 7 includes documentation requirements formerly found in Chapter 10 and provides a central location to find all documentation requirements throughout the Code. The fire alarm and emergency communications system record of completion document previously found in Chapter 10 has been relocated to Chapter 7 in a new format.

10.2 Purpose

The purpose of fire alarm and signaling systems shall be primarily to provide notification of alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions; to alert the occupants; to summon aid; and to control emergency control functions.

The primary purpose of fire alarm and signaling systems is to control outputs involving the notification of occupants or staff; to create alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals; and to manage other predetermined fire and life safety operations and functions. The outputs occur as a result of the monitoring of inputs from various initiating devices and other sources that may occur automatically or that may be manually operated.

10.3 Equipment

10.3.1 Equipment constructed and installed in conformity with this Code shall be listed for the purpose for which it is used.

Just noting that a piece of equipment is listed is not sufficient. In accordance with the requirements of 10.3.1, equipment must be listed for the purpose for which it is used. The listing of equipment involves evaluation of the equipment to determine its suitability for a specific purpose. The evaluation is usually accomplished through the use of product testing standards developed to demonstrate that specific performance requirements have been met. Many of these performance requirements are based on specific requirements in the Code and go far beyond requirements used only to demonstrate electrical safety.

While most equipment would be listed for fire alarm system use, some equipment may possess a different listing. As an example, equipment (such as routers and modems) that may be used with some transmission methods in the signal transmission path between a protected premises and a supervising station may be listed as general communications equipment (see 26.6.3.1.14).

FAQ

What type of information does the equipment listing contain?

Equipment listings generally contain information pertaining to the permitted use, required ambient conditions in the installed location, mounting orientation, voltage tolerances, compatibility, and so on. Equipment must be installed, tested, and maintained in conformance with the listing and the manufacturer's published instructions to meet the requirements of the Code. Conformance with the listing and the manufacturer's instructions has been a long-standing requirement, originating in the requirements of *NFPA 70*®, *National Electrical Code*® *(NEC*®), and reinforced in 10.3.2.

10.3.2 System components shall be installed, tested, inspected, and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and this Code.

10.3.3* All devices and appliances that receive their power from the initiating device circuit or signaling line circuit of a control unit shall be listed for use with the control unit.

A.10.3.3 This requirement does not apply to notification appliance circuits.

The intent of the Code is that devices and appliances that receive their power directly from either an initiating device circuit (IDC) or a signaling line circuit (SLC) be listed for that particular control unit. This listing is not required for notification appliance circuits (NACs).

This requirement applies generically to all detection devices and notification appliances that receive their power from initiating device or signaling line circuits. The most common applications where this is a concern are two-wire and addressable (addressable/analog) smoke detectors. A two-wire smoke detector obtains its power from the control unit initiating device circuit. Addressable devices and appliances on signaling line circuits communicate with the control unit using manufacturer-specific protocols. Therefore, 10.3.3 requires that these devices and appliances be listed for use with the control unit and its associated initiating device or signaling line circuit. The listing organizations have developed specific requirements for this listing process and should be consulted if necessary to confirm the detector's or appliance's compatibility with a specific control unit.

10.3.4 All apparatus requiring rewinding or resetting to maintain normal operation shall be restored to normal as promptly as possible after each abnormal condition and maintained in normal condition for operation.

10.3.5 Equipment shall be designed so that it is capable of performing its intended functions under the following conditions:

(1)* At 85 percent and at 110 percent of the nameplate primary (main) and secondary (standby) input voltage(s)
(2) At ambient temperatures of 0°C (32°F) and 49°C (120°F)
(3) At a relative humidity of 85 percent and an ambient temperature of 30°C (86°F)

A.10.3.5(1) The requirement of 10.3.5(1) does not preclude transfer to secondary supply at less than 85 percent of nominal primary voltage, provided the requirements of 10.6.7 are met.

Equipment not listed for use outside the limits specified in 10.3.5(1) through 10.3.5(3) must be relocated, or the space must be conditioned to meet these parameters. If the space must be artificially conditioned, standby power to operate that artificial conditioning should be considered to ensure that the artificial conditioning continues during a power outage for at least as long as the standby power required for the alarm system.

10.4 Installation and Design

10.4.1* All systems shall be installed in accordance with the specifications and standards approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

A.10.4.1 Fire alarm specifications can include some or all of the following:

(1) Address of the protected premises
(2) Owner of the protected premises
(3) Authority having jurisdiction
(4) Applicable codes, standards, and other design criteria to which the system is required to comply
(5) Type of building construction and occupancy
(6) Fire department response point(s) and annunciator location(s)
(7) Type of fire alarm system to be provided
(8) Calculations (e.g., secondary supply and voltage drop calculations)
(9) Type(s) of fire alarm initiating devices, supervisory alarm initiating devices, and evacuation notification appliances to be provided
(10) Intended area(s) of coverage
(11) Complete list of detection, evacuation signaling, and annunciator zones
(12) Complete list of emergency control functions
(13) Complete sequence of operations detailing all inputs and outputs

FAQ

What information should be considered for the specification package?

The authority having jurisdiction must be notified prior to the installation or alteration of any equipment or wiring in accordance with 10.20.2. In addition, prior to the installation of the system, the designer's plans and specifications must first receive the approval of the authority having jurisdiction. Annex paragraph A.10.4.1 identifies some of the information that should be considered for inclusion in the specification package. Moreover, when required by the authority having jurisdiction, the minimum documentation to be provided is listed in 7.2.1. Additional documentation may also be needed where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, or other parts of *NFPA 72*. The additional documentation that may be required is further outlined in Chapter 7. A prudent designer will contact the authority having jurisdiction prior to beginning the system design to make sure the submittal requirements are clearly understood.

10.4.2 Devices and appliances shall be located and mounted so that accidental operation or failure is not caused by vibration or jarring.

For the 2013 edition of the Code, several technical committees reviewed proposals intended to reduce unwanted alarm signals. For years, the Code has required system designers to avoid placing system equipment in locations that will result in the accidental activation of the equipment. This can occur when equipment such as initiating devices is installed in locations subject to physical damage or outside of its listed temperature or humidity ranges. This fact should not be lost on installation technicians, who may encounter conditions in the field that differ from those anticipated when plans were developed and approved for installation. Likewise, authorities having jurisdiction should also keep this requirement in mind when conducting plan reviews and commissioning inspections.

10.4.3 Equipment shall be installed in locations where conditions do not exceed the voltage, temperature, and humidity limits specified in the manufacturer's published instructions.

10.4.4* In areas that are not continuously occupied, automatic smoke detection shall be provided at the location of each fire alarm control unit(s), notification appliance circuit power extenders, and supervising station transmitting equipment to provide notification of fire at that location.

Exception: Where ambient conditions prohibit installation of automatic smoke detection, automatic heat detection shall be permitted.

The requirements of 10.4.4 indicate a clear need for protection of fire alarm system equipment beyond what was normally thought of as a fire alarm control unit as specified in the Code prior to the 2007 edition. The Code specifically includes notification appliance circuit power extenders and supervising station transmitting equipment in the requirement for protection. Also refer to A.10.4.4, the defined term *fire alarm control unit* in 33.102, the related explanatory material in A.3.3.102, and associated commentary for further explanation of what constitutes a fire alarm control unit.

Smoke detection is required in the areas where this equipment is located any time these areas are not continuously occupied. The term *continuously occupied* means that a person is *always* at the location (24 hours per day, 7 days per week, 365 days per year).

The exception permits the use of heat detectors where conditions are not suitable for smoke detectors. However, environments that are not suitable for smoke detectors most often are not suitable for control equipment. The listing of the control equipment should always be checked to determine suitable locations. Additional cautionary material is provided in A.10.4.4.

The protection of equipment covered by 10.4.4 applies even in those buildings that are provided with an automatic sprinkler system. In the 2007 Code edition, an exception was provided that eliminated the need for automatic detection in fully sprinklered buildings. However, that exception was removed in subsequent editions due in part to concerns over the operation of the system after exposure to water.

A.10.4.4 The fire alarm control units that are to be protected are those that provide notification of a fire to the occupants and responders. The term *fire alarm control unit* does not include equipment such as annunciators and addressable devices. Requiring smoke detection at the transmitting equipment is intended to increase the probability that an alarm signal will be transmitted to a supervising station prior to that transmitting equipment being disabled due to the fire condition.

CAUTION: Exception No. 1 to 10.4.4 permits the use of a heat detector if ambient conditions are not suitable for smoke detection. It is important to also evaluate whether the area is suitable for the control unit.

Where the area or room containing the control unit is provided with total smoke detection coverage, additional smoke detection is not required to protect the control unit. Where total smoke detection coverage is not provided, the Code intends that only one smoke detector is required at the control unit even when the area of the room would require more than one detector if installed according to the spacing rules in Chapter 17. The intent of selective coverage is to address the specific location of the equipment.

The location of the required detection should be in accordance with 17.7.3.2.1.

Where the protection of equipment is required by 10.4.4, finding a suitable location for a smoke detector(s), or other appropriate detection, can prove to be a difficult challenge in some situations. While the reference to 17.7.3.2.1 in A.10.4.4 directs users to the general requirement to locate smoke detectors on the ceiling or on the wall within 12 in. of the ceiling, users may want to consider the provisions in 17.4.10. The related annex material in A.17.4.10 provides specific guidance for locating detectors in applications of fire alarm control units in high ceiling areas.

10.4.5 Initiating Devices.

10.4.5.1 Initiating devices of the manual or automatic type shall be selected and installed so as to minimize nuisance and unintentional alarms.

As stated in the commentary following 10.4.2, care must be exercised by designers, installers, and authorities having jurisdiction when selecting, installing, and approving initiating devices so to avoid possible unwanted alarms.

10.4.5.2 Initiating devices shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 17 and Chapter 23.

10.4.5.3 All manual alarms shall be initiated by means of a listed manual fire alarm box or by means that is key operated or located within a locked cabinet or arranged to provide equivalent protection against unauthorized use.

The text of this paragraph was expanded for the 2013 edition of the Code to emphasize the need to use a means or arrangement for initiating manual alarms that is less likely to be accidentally operated, resulting in an unwanted alarm.

10.5 Personnel Qualifications

10.5.1 System Designer.

10.5.1.1 Fire alarm system and emergency communications system plans and specifications shall be developed in accordance with this Code by persons who are experienced in the proper design, application, installation, and testing of the systems.

The Code requires that fire alarm and emergency communications system designers be qualified to perform this type of work through training, education, and experience. Typically a state-licensed professional engineer regularly engaged in the design of these systems meets this requirement. Most state engineering license laws require that only licensed engineers be allowed to perform design work and only in their field of expertise. Some states and local jurisdictions may accept a certain level of certification achieved through a nationally recognized organization.

10.5.1.2 State or local licensure regulations shall be followed to determine qualified personnel. Depending on state or local licensure regulations, qualified personnel shall include, but not be limited to, one or more of the following:

State or local licensure requirements must be followed. Depending on the state or local jurisdiction, the designer may be required to be a registered professional engineer, or the designer may be allowed to be a contractor who is installing the system. In either case, the designer needs to be competent with either fire alarm systems or emergency communications systems, depending on which system is being designed.

(1) Personnel who are registered, licensed, or certified by a state or local authority

This category involves state or local programs that provide assurance of designer qualification.

(2) Personnel who are certified by a nationally recognized certification organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction

For this category, a number of independent organizations provide third-party certification for designers of these systems. The authority having jurisdiction is responsible for independently assessing these programs and certifications to determine if the designer's certification provides the competency required for the system being submitted.

(3) Personnel who are factory trained and certified for fire alarm system design and/or emergency communication system design of the specific type and brand of system and who are acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction

This category demonstrates that the designer has a basic understanding of the system to be installed in addition to the broader knowledge needed for a system designer. The authority having jurisdiction is responsible for assessing the acceptability of the designer's qualifications.

10.5.1.3 The system designer shall be identified on the system design documents.

10.5.1.4 The system designer shall provide evidence of their qualifications and/or certifications when required by the authority having jurisdiction.

Requiring that the system designer be identified on the system design documents encourages the designer to feel a sense of ownership toward the design. This identification, in turn, provides an additional incentive for the designer to meet the requirements of the Code and provides the authority having jurisdiction with the name of the person responsible for the design who can respond to questions or comments from the authority having jurisdiction.

10.5.2 System Installer.

10.5.2.1 Fire alarm systems and emergency communications systems installation personnel shall be qualified or shall be supervised by persons who are qualified in the installation, inspection, and testing of the systems.

The qualifications required under 10.5.2 for installation personnel or the personnel supervising the installation of these systems correlate with similar requirements in 10.5.1, except the requirements under 10.5.2 focus on installation, inspection, and testing qualifications.

10.5.2.2 State or local licensure regulations shall be followed to determine qualified personnel. Depending on state or local licensure regulations, qualified personnel shall include, but not be limited to, one or more of the following:

(1) Personnel who are registered, licensed, or certified by a state or local authority
(2) Personnel who are certified by a nationally recognized certification organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction
(3) Personnel who are factory trained and certified for fire alarm system installation and/or emergency communications system installation of the specific type and brand of system and who are acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction

10.5.2.3 The system installer shall provide evidence of their qualifications and/or certifications when requested by the authority having jurisdiction.

10.5.3* Inspection, Testing, and Service Personnel. (SIG-TMS) Personnel, either individually or through their affiliation with an organization that is registered, licensed, or certified by a state or local authority, shall be recognized as qualified and experienced in the inspection, testing, and maintenance of systems addressed within the scope of this Code.

The term *maintenance personnel* has been changed in the 2013 edition to *service personnel* to clarify that in addition to providing what some may refer to as "maintenance" on a system, such as changing out batteries, a broader meaning of the scope of work is intended. Subsection

10.5.3 also allows for personnel working on a system to be qualified and experienced individually, or by affiliation with an organization (typically their employer) that is appropriately registered, licensed, or certified according to jurisdictional requirements.

The specific qualification requirements for the inspection, testing, service, and programming personnel are now addressed separately in 10.5.3.1 through 10.5.3.4. Inspection and testing personnel can be considered qualified if the authority having jurisdiction accepts that they have the training, knowledge, and experience needed for the duties they will perform. As an alternative, qualification can be demonstrated by one of the four means detailed in 10.5.3.3. In contrast, personnel performing system programming must always be certified by the system manufacturer. Also refer to the separate definitions for inspection, testing, and service personnel in 3.3.193.

A.10.5.3 It is not the intent to require personnel performing simple inspections or operational tests of initiating devices to require factory training or special certification, provided such personnel can demonstrate knowledge in these areas.

10.5.3.1* Inspection Personnel. Inspections shall be performed by personnel who have developed competence through training and experience acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction or meet the requirement of 10.5.3.3.

A.10.5.3.1 Inspection personnel knowledge should include equipment selection, placement, and installation requirements of this Code and the manufacturer's published documentation.

10.5.3.2* Testing Personnel. Testing personnel shall have knowledge and experience of the testing requirements for fire alarm and signaling equipment of this Code acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction or meet the requirement of 10.5.3.3.

A.10.5.3.2 Testing personnel knowledge should include equipment selection, placement, and installation requirements of this Code and the manufacturer's published documentation.

10.5.3.3 Service Personnel. Service personnel shall be qualified in the maintenance and servicing of systems addressed within the scope of this Code. Qualified personnel shall include, but not be limited to, one or more of the following:

(1)* Personnel who are factory trained and certified for the specific type and brand of system being serviced
(2)* Personnel who are certified by a nationally recognized certification organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction
(3)* Personnel, either individually or through their affiliation with an organization that is registered, licensed, or certified by a state or local authority to perform service on systems addressed within the scope of this Code
(4) Personnel who are employed and qualified by an organization listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory for the servicing of systems within the scope of this Code

The Code recognizes four methods, in 10.5.3.3(1) through 10.5.3.3(4), to demonstrate that service personnel are qualified. Refer to A.14.2.3.6 for a list of the basic skills that service personnel should be able to perform.

A.10.5.3.3(1) Factory training and certification is intended to allow an individual to service equipment only for which he or she has specific brand and model training.

One of the methods permitted to demonstrate a technician's qualifications is factory training. Often, service personnel are factory trained to perform or assist in the performance of system testing. This is especially true when system servicing is needed. Because each manufacturer's control equipment is different, the servicing of control equipment, including things such as the replacement of circuit boards or system programming, should be done only by technicians trained to service the specific equipment (manufacturer and model) that they will be working on. Without proper training from a system manufacturer on critical system components, properly maintaining a system will prove to be difficult.

A.10.5.3.3(2) Nationally recognized fire alarm certification programs might include those programs offered by the International Municipal Signal Association (IMSA), National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET), and the Electronic Security Association (ESA). NOTE: These organizations and the products or services offered by them have not been independently verified by the NFPA, nor have the products or services been endorsed or certified by the NFPA or any of its technical committees.

The International Municipal Signal Association (IMSA) is the professional association of those individuals who oversee public fire communications systems and traffic signaling systems. This organization offers educational programs for technicians and authorities having jurisdiction. IMSA also offers interior fire alarm certification programs for fire alarm technicians and publishes cable requirements for public (fire) reporting systems. Interior Fire Alarm Level II certification is the minimum level that should be considered to meet this requirement. IMSA can be reached at P.O. Box 539, 165 East Union Street, Newark, NY 14513-0539 or at *www.imsasafety.org*.

The National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) offers a program of certification for fire alarm technicians. NICET Level II certification is the minimum level that should be considered to meet this qualification. NICET can be reached at 1420 King Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-2794 or at *www.nicet.org*.

A.10.5.3.3(3) Licenses and certifications offered at a state or local level are intended to recognize those individuals who have demonstrated a minimum level of technical competency in the area of fire alarm servicing.

The category identified in 10.5.3.3(3) recognizes that the state or local authority having jurisdiction may have specific certification or licensing tests or other requirements that must be met.

The category identified in 10.5.3.3(4) recognizes that service personnel employed by a listed central station or listed alarm service–local company may be used for servicing of fire alarm systems in accordance with 26.3.3.

10.5.3.4 Programming. Personnel programming a system shall be certified by the system manufacturer.

10.5.3.5 Evidence of Qualification. Evidence of qualifications shall be provided to the authority having jurisdiction upon request.

10.5.4 Supervising Station Operators. (SIG-SSS)

Requirements for supervising station operators were added to the 2010 edition of the Code. While the methods of demonstrating qualification are somewhat similar to those of persons who design, install, and service fire alarm and emergency communications systems, the subject matter is quite different. Supervising station operators play a vital role in the response to emergencies and must be well versed in the procedures and equipment they use in performing their duties.

10.5.4.1 All operators in the supervising station shall demonstrate competence in all tasks required of them in Chapter 26 by one or more of the following:

(1) Certified by the manufacturer of the receiving system or equipment or the alarm-monitoring automation system
(2)* Certified by an organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction
(3) Licensed or certified by a state or local authority
(4) Other training or certification approved by the authority having jurisdiction

A.10.5.4.1(2) An example of an organization providing alarm monitoring operator training is the Central Station Alarm Association (CSAA). Note that this reference is for information purposes only, information concerning the product or service has been provided by the manufacturer or other outside sources, and the information concerning the product or service has not been independently verified nor has the product or service been endorsed or certified by the NFPA or any of its technical committees.

Another source of training and certification for supervising station operators that are located at government operated facilities is available through the Association of Public-Safety Communications Officials (APCO).

10.5.4.2 Evidence of qualifications and/or certification shall be provided when requested by the authority having jurisdiction. A license or qualification listing shall be current in accordance with the requirements of the issuing authority or organization.

10.5.4.3 Operator trainees shall be under the direct supervision of a qualified operator until qualified as required by 10.5.4.1.

10.6 Power Supplies

10.6.1 Scope. The provisions of this section shall apply to power supplies used for protected premises fire alarm systems, supervising station alarm systems, public emergency alarm reporting systems, and emergency communications systems and equipment.

The requirements of Section 10.6 generally apply to all systems addressed by the Code, except household fire alarm systems addressed in Chapter 29. The requirements of Section 10.6 apply unless they conflict with the requirements specified in other chapters. For example, Chapter 23, Protected Premises Fire Alarm Systems, includes special provisions for low-power wireless systems in 23.16.2.

10.6.2 Code Conformance. All power supplies shall be installed in conformity with the requirements of *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, for such equipment and with the requirements indicated in this subsection.

10.6.3 Power Supply Sources.

10.6.3.1 Power shall be supplied in compliance with either 10.6.3.2 or 10.6.4.

10.6.3.2 Unless configured in compliance with 10.6.4, at least two independent and reliable power supplies shall be provided, one primary and one secondary.

Prior to the 1993 edition, *NFPA 72* required three sources of power: primary, secondary (standby), and trouble. The requirement for a trouble signal power supply had an exception that permitted the secondary power supply to provide power to the trouble signal. Because the majority of fire alarm system control unit designs applied this exception, subsequent editions of the Code deleted the requirement for a separate trouble power source.

Editions of the Code prior to 2002 included exceptions that permitted fire alarm systems to be supplied by only a primary power source, eliminating the secondary source if the primary source was from a dedicated branch circuit of an emergency, legally required standby, or optional standby power system. In the 2002 edition, these exceptions were eliminated, and a primary power source and a secondary power source were always required.

Paragraph 10.6.3.1 was added in the 2010 edition to provide an option to use an uninterruptible power supply in accordance with 10.6.4, instead of having both a primary and a secondary power supply.

10.6.3.3 Each power supply shall be of adequate capacity for the application.

10.6.3.4 Monitoring the integrity of power supplies shall be in accordance with 10.6.9.

10.6.4 Uninterruptible Power Supplies (UPS).

The requirements for an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) were added to the 2010 edition of the Code to provide details as to the type of system required if the UPS option is used.

The Type, Class, and Level designations specified in 10.6.4.1 refer to the classifications specified in Chapter 4 of NFPA 111, *Standard on Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems.* The Type O designation requires that the UPS have no interruptions — it must be able to carry the load in 0 seconds. The Class 24 designation requires the UPS to be able to operate at its rated load without being refueled or recharged for 24 hours. The Level 1 designation requires the system to be permanently installed and have equipment performance requirements for the most stringent applications where failure of the equipment to perform could result in loss of human life or serious injuries. The equipment, design, inspection, and testing requirements for Level 1 systems go beyond those for Level 2 systems. Careful consideration must be given in determining the proper capacity for the UPS to ensure that its rated load is adequate for the fire/alarm/emergency system that it serves. The UPS must be supplied by a branch circuit that supplies no other loads except for fire alarm equipment or emergency communications system equipment. The power must be from a source, as described in 10.6.5.1. The branch circuit and its disconnecting means must comply with the requirements in 10.6.5.2 through 10.6.5.5.

10.6.4.1 The UPS device shall be configured in compliance with NFPA 111, *Standard on Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems*, for a Type O, Class 24, Level 1 system.

10.6.4.2 The UPS device shall comply with the requirements of 10.6.5.

10.6.4.3 Failure of the UPS shall result in the initiation of a trouble signal in accordance with Section 10.15.

10.6.5 Primary Power Supply.

10.6.5.1 Branch Circuit. The branch circuit supplying the fire alarm equipment(s) or emergency communication system(s) shall supply no other loads and shall be supplied by one of the following:

(1) Commercial light and power
(2) An engine-driven generator or equivalent in accordance with 10.6.11.2, where a person specifically trained in its operation is on duty at all times
(3) An engine-driven generator or equivalent arranged for cogeneration with commercial light and power in accordance with 10.6.11.2, where a person specifically trained in its operation is on duty at all times

In the 2013 edition of the Code, the qualifier "dedicated" has been removed from "branch circuit." In its place this paragraph clearly states that no other loads can be on a branch circuit providing power for fire alarm or emergency communications equipment. The circuit may be used to power other control units and power supplies that are part of the system, but this power circuit cannot be used to power other equipment, such as phone switches, music-on-hold, fax machines, computer stations, and so forth. Also refer to the commentary following 10.6.5.5.

An engine-driven generator is permitted as a primary power supply because commercial light and power service may not be available at all locations. Paragraph 10.6.5.1(3) also recognizes the use of engine-driven generators arranged for cogeneration with commercial light and power. Where an engine-driven generator is used as the primary power supply, it must comply with 10.6.11.2 but is not required to be part of an emergency power system.

10.6.5.2 Circuit Identification and Accessibility.

10.6.5.2.1 The location of the branch circuit disconnecting means shall be permanently identified at the control unit.

10.6.5.2.2 System circuit disconnecting means shall be permanently identified as to its purpose in accordance with the following:

(1) "FIRE ALARM" for fire alarm systems
(2) "EMERGENCY COMMUNICATIONS" for emergency communications systems
(3) "FIRE ALARM/ECS" for combination fire alarm and emergency communications systems

10.6.5.2.3 For fire alarm and/or signaling systems, the circuit disconnecting means shall have a red marking.

10.6.5.2.4 The red marking shall not damage the overcurrent protective devices or obscure the manufacturer's markings.

10.6.5.2.5 The circuit disconnecting means shall be accessible only to authorized personnel.

It should be noted that the requirements in 10.6.5.2.1 through 10.6.5.2.5 apply to any fire alarm system or emergency communications system. Paragraph 10.6.5.2.4 has been added to the Code to call out the need to use caution when marking overcurrent protective devices so as not to damage the device, inhibit its operation, or obscure the manufacturer's markings.

10.6.5.3 Mechanical Protection. The branch circuit(s) and connections shall be protected against physical damage.

10.6.5.4 Circuit Breaker Lock. Where a circuit breaker is the disconnecting means, a listed breaker locking device shall be installed.

FAQ

What is the purpose of mechanical protection and identification of the power supply circuit?

The requirements of 10.6.5.2, 10.6.5.3, and 10.6.5.4 are intended to protect the power supply from tampering, to aid in troubleshooting, and to help ensure the safety of those who service the equipment. They are also intended to help ensure reliability. By limiting access, the chance that the power to the fire alarm system is turned off decreases. The requirement of 10.6.5.3

for mechanical protection is to ensure that the circuit supplying primary power to the system is protected against physical damage. This protection can usually be provided through the use of an appropriate wiring method installed in accordance with the requirements of the *NEC*. A similar requirement is provided in 10.6.7.3.2 for circuits that supply secondary power.

10.6.5.5 Overcurrent Protection. An overcurrent protective device of suitable current-carrying capacity that is capable of interrupting the maximum short-circuit current to which it can be subject shall be provided in each ungrounded conductor.

All wiring and equipment, including the circuits that supply power to the fire/alarm/emergency system, must be installed in accordance with *NFPA 70*. The *NEC* also includes requirements for overcurrent protection. Primary power must be supplied through a branch circuit in accordance with 10.6.5.1 of *NFPA 72*. The term *branch circuit* is specifically defined in the *NEC*, and requirements are included in Article 210. A branch circuit includes "the circuit conductors between the final overcurrent device protecting the circuit and the outlet(s)." (In this case, the outlet would be the point where the connections are made to the fire/alarm/emergency system equipment.) The branch circuit overcurrent protective device should not be confused with service equipment that is used to connect the (power) service conductors at their entrance to the building. A branch circuit overcurrent protective device is always located after a service-disconnect and service overcurrent device.

In some cases, the branch circuit supplying the fire/alarm/emergency system is served by a remote electrical subpanel. When this arrangement occurs, the information as to which feeder circuit or main electrical panel circuit is connected to the electrical subpanel should be marked in the subpanel. Access to the main panel or circuit supplying the subpanel should be restricted and marked in a similar manner as the subpanel.

10.6.6* Continuity of Power Supplies.

A.10.6.6 Where a computer system of any kind is used to receive and process alarm or supervisory signals, an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) with sufficient capacity to operate the system until the secondary supply is capable of operating the fire alarm system might be required in order to prevent signal loss or a greater than 10-second signal delay.

UPS equipment often contains an internal bypass arrangement to supply the load directly from the line. These internal bypass arrangements are a potential source of failure. UPS equipment also requires periodic maintenance. It is, therefore, necessary to provide a means of promptly and safely bypassing and isolating the UPS equipment from all power sources while maintaining continuity of power supply to the equipment normally supplied by the UPS.

10.6.6.1 The secondary power supply shall automatically provide power to the protected premises system within 10 seconds whenever the primary power supply fails to provide the minimum voltage required for proper operation.

This requirement correlates with the Type 10 requirement in 10.6.11.3.1.1. Editions of *NFPA 72* prior to 2002 allowed 30 seconds.

10.6.6.2 The secondary power supply shall automatically provide power to the supervising station facility and equipment within 60 seconds whenever the primary power supply fails to provide the minimum voltage required for proper operation.

This requirement correlates with the Type 60 requirement in 10.6.11.3.2.1. The Code recognizes the potential increased complexity of transferring to secondary power at a supervising station facility.

10.6.6.3 Required signals shall not be lost, interrupted, or delayed by more than 10 seconds as a result of the primary power failure.

10.6.6.3.1 Storage batteries dedicated to the system or UPS arranged in accordance with the provisions of NFPA 111, *Standard on Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems*, shall be permitted to supplement the secondary power supply to ensure required operation during the transfer period.

10.6.6.3.2 Where a UPS is employed in 10.6.6.3.1, a positive means for disconnecting the input and output of the UPS system while maintaining continuity of power supply to the load shall be provided.

The requirements of 10.6.6 were rewritten in the 2002 edition of the Code to provide more performance-oriented requirements. Reference to computer systems was removed. However, the Code recognizes the potential need for an uninterruptible power supply (UPS), and, when one is used, the requirements in these paragraphs that are applicable to UPS systems must be met.

The requirement in 10.6.6.3.2 for disconnection of the UPS is to ensure that power is provided to the system during maintenance and testing of the UPS.

10.6.7 Secondary Power Supply.

The requirements for secondary power supplies are organized into separate sections for fire alarm systems located at the protected premises and emergency communications systems (see 10.6.7.3) and for the facilities of the supervising station (see 10.6.7.4).

10.6.7.1 Secondary Power Operation.

10.6.7.1.1 Operation on secondary power shall not affect the required performance of a system or supervising station facility, including alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals and indications.

Exception: While operating on secondary power, audio amplifier monitoring shall be required only when an alarm is present.

Manufacturers have supplied systems in the past that, in order to save battery power, eliminated annunciation of additional trouble conditions and eliminated some supplementary functions when in the standby power mode. The Code prevents this practice in 10.6.7.1.1 by requiring the system to operate with all the same features as when it is powered by the primary power source. An allowance for audio amplifiers is provided in the exception, which recognizes that systems are typically arranged to disconnect power to amplifiers that are operating under secondary power in order to conserve power. Subsection 10.19.1 provides more specific requirements for monitoring the integrity of audio amplifiers and when trouble signals are required to be transmitted.

10.6.7.2* Capacity.

Although the requirement for 60 hours of secondary supply for auxiliary (fire) alarm systems and remote supervising station (fire) alarm systems was changed in the 2002 edition of the Code to 24 hours to be consistent with the other systems, in some applications it might be prudent to include a capacity sufficient for periods longer than 24 hours. Additional consideration of this point is provided in A.10.6.7.2.

A.10.6.7.2 When a fire alarm system is used to alert occupants, the associated premises are generally evacuated during prolonged power outages. When this is not the case, as in emergency shelters or certain government facilities, additional secondary power should be required to address a more prolonged outage. These outages might be expected to result from weather or earthquake in locations subject to these events. Reasonable judgment should be employed when requiring additional secondary capacity.

When a fire alarm system is used to protect property, the associated premises might be vacant for prolonged periods (weekend, long holiday) or in very remote locations. When this is the case, and when the risk of loss is significant, additional secondary power should be required to address a more prolonged outage. These outages might be expected to result from weather or earthquake in locations subject to these events. Reasonable judgment should be employed when requiring additional secondary capacity.

10.6.7.2.1 The secondary power supply shall have sufficient capacity to operate the system under quiescent load (system operating in a nonalarm condition) for a minimum of 24 hours and, at the end of that period, shall be capable of operating all alarm notification appliances used for evacuation or to direct aid to the location of an emergency for 5 minutes, unless otherwise permitted or required by the following:

(1) Battery calculations shall include a 20 percent safety margin to the calculated amp-hour rating.
(2) The secondary power supply for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications service shall be capable of operating the system under quiescent load for a minimum of 24 hours and then shall be capable of operating the system during a fire or other emergency condition for a period of 15 minutes at maximum connected load.
(3) The secondary power supply capacity for supervising station facilities and equipment shall be capable of supporting operations for a minimum of 24 hours.
(4) The secondary power supply for high-power speaker arrays used for wide-area mass notification systems shall be in accordance with 24.4.4.4.2.2.
(5) The secondary power supply for textual visible appliances shall be in accordance with 24.4.4.4.7.1.
(6) The secondary power supply capacity for emergency command centers of a wide-area mass notification systems shall be capable of supporting operations for a minimum of 24 hours.
(7) The secondary power supply for in-building mass notification systems shall be capable of operating the system under quiescent load for a minimum of 24 hours and then shall be capable of operating the system during emergency condition for a period of 15 minutes at maximum connected load.
(8) The secondary power supply for two-way radio communications enhancement systems shall be in accordance with 24.5.2.5.5.

10.6.7.2.2 The secondary power supply capacity required shall include all power supply loads that are not automatically disconnected upon the transfer to secondary power supply.

FAQ What should the battery calculation include?

The proper amount of battery standby capacity can be calculated. The calculation should include the normal standby supervisory quiescent load for a specified period of time (24 hours) as well as the load during the specified period of alarm. Specific provisions are included in 10.6.7.2.1(2) through 10.6.7.2.1(8) depending on the application and equipment involved.

The Code includes a requirement in 10.6.7.2.1(1) for a 20 percent safety factor to be added to all battery calculations. This provision recognizes that battery output will decrease over the life of the battery.

Paragraph 10.6.7.2.1(2) requires that an in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system be capable of operating under fire or other emergency conditions for 15 minutes at maximum connected load. Although the Code specifies a minimum capacity of 15 minutes at maximum connected load, the system is still intended to remain available to operate during a fire for a period of 2 hours in accordance with the survivability rules in Section 12.4 and 24.3.6. The expected load during actual operation of the system would be distributed over the 2-hour period.

Provisions were added in the 2010 edition of the Code for emergency communications systems. Paragraphs 10.6.7.2.1(4) through 10.6.7.2.1(6) involve requirements for mass notification systems. The secondary power supply for high-power speaker arrays must have a minimum of 7-day standby capacity followed by 60 minutes of full load capacity. The secondary power supply capacity for textual visible appliances must have the capacity to support a minimum of 2 hours of continuous display time. The secondary power supply for emergency command centers must have a capacity to support operation for at least 24 hours. Paragraph 10.6.7.2.1(8) was added for two-way radio communications enhancement systems and requires a capacity of 12 hours with the system operating at 100 percent of its capacity.

If combination systems are used, the secondary supply must be able to power the entire system for the required 24-hour period. Other loads, such as security or building management systems, must be figured into the secondary power calculations unless those loads are automatically disconnected upon transfer to secondary power in accordance with 10.6.7.2.2.

A sample battery calculation is shown in Exhibit 10.1 for a modestly sized local fire alarm system. Many of the fire alarm and emergency equipment manufacturers include spreadsheets on their websites that allow for the calculation of standby and alarm time using their equipment.

EXHIBIT 10.1

ITEM	DESCRIPTION	STANDBY CURRENT PER UNIT (AMPS)		QTY		STANDBY CURRENT PER UNIT (AMPS)	ALARM CURRENT PER UNIT (AMPS)		QTY		SYSTEM ALARM CURRENT (AMPS)
A	FACU	0.1200	X	1	=	0.1200	1.5000	X	1	=	1.5000
B	Smoke Det	0.0005	X	42	=	0.0210	0.0010	X	42	=	0.0420
C	Duct Det	0.0005	X	16	=	0.0080	0.0010	X	16	=	0.0160
D	Horn/Strobe	none	X	14	=	none	0.0950	X	14	=	1.33
E	Strobe	none	X	6	=	none	0.0720	X	6	=	0.4320
F	Relay	0.0070	X	4	=	0.0280	none	X	4	=	none
			X		=			X		=	
			X		=			X		=	
			X		=			X		=	
			X		=			X		=	
		TOTAL SYSTEM STANDBY CURRENT (AMPS)				0.1770	TOTAL SYSTEM ALARM CURRENT (AMPS)				3.32

REQUIRED OPERATING TIME OF SECONDARY POWER SOURCE FROM NFPA 72 10.6.7.2.1

STANDBY: 24 HOURS ALARM: 5 MINUTES × 1/60 0.0833 HOURS

REQUIRED STANDBY TIME (HOURS)		TOTAL SYSTEM STANDBY CURRENT (AMPS)		REQUIRED STANDBY CAPACITY (AMP-HOURS)	REQUIRED ALARM TIME (HOURS)		TOTAL SYSTEM ALARM CURRENT (AMPS)		REQUIRED ALARM CURRENT (AMP-HOURS)
24	X	0.1770	=	4.2480	0.0833	X	3.32	=	.2766

REQUIRED STANDBY CAPACITY (AMP-HOURS)		REQUIRED ALARM CAPACITY (AMP-HOURS)		TOTAL REQUIRED CAPACITY (AMP-HOURS)		FACTOR OF SAFETY		REQUIRED BATTERY CAPACITY (AMP-HOURS)
4.2480	+	.2766	=	4.5246	X	1.2		5.43

Sample Battery Calculation.

10.6.7.3* Secondary Power Supply for Protected Premises Fire Alarm Systems and Emergency Communications Systems.

A.10.6.7.3 The secondary power supply is not required to supply power to the fire alarm system through parallel distribution paths. Automatic transfer switches are commonly used to allow secondary power to be supplied over the same distribution system as the primary power.

The generator does not need to be dedicated to the fire alarm system.

10.6.7.3.1 The secondary power supply shall consist of one of the following:

(1) A storage battery dedicated to the system arranged in accordance with 10.6.10
(2) An automatic-starting, engine-driven generator serving the branch circuit specified in 10.6.5.1 and arranged in accordance with 10.6.11.3.1, and storage batteries dedicated to the system with 4 hours of capacity arranged in accordance with 10.6.10

Paragraph 10.6.7.3.1(2) recognizes that power from the automatic-starting, engine-driven generator is typically supplied upstream of the branch circuit supplying primary power and that a separate branch circuit is not required.

Where an automatic-starting, engine-driven generator is used as the secondary power supply, it must comply with 10.6.11.3.1 and be part of an emergency power system in accordance with Article 700 of the *NEC*. Four hours of battery capacity is required by 10.6.7.3.1(2) to power the fire/emergency system in case the engine-driven generator fails to start, allowing time for the generator to be serviced or repaired.

10.6.7.3.2 Secondary circuits that provide power to the control unit and are not integral to the unit shall be protected against physical damage.

Paragraph 10.6.7.3.2 was added to the 2010 edition of the Code. The requirement for mechanical protection found in 10.6.5.3 for the branch circuit of the primary power supply also applies to external circuits that supply secondary power. All supply circuits that are not part of the control unit must be protected against physical damage. Also refer to the commentary following 10.6.5.4.

10.6.7.4 Secondary Power Supply for Supervising Station Facilities.

10.6.7.4.1 The secondary power supply shall consist of one of the following:

(1) Storage batteries dedicated to the supervising station equipment arranged in accordance with 10.6.10
(2) A branch circuit of an automatic-starting, engine-driven generator arranged in accordance with 10.6.11.3.2.1 and 10.6.11.3.2.2, and storage batteries dedicated to the supervising station equipment with 4 hours of capacity arranged in accordance with 10.6.10
(3) A branch circuit of multiple engine-driven generators, at least one of which is arranged for automatic starting in accordance with 10.6.11.3.2.1 and 10.6.11.3.2.2

The requirements for supervising station facilities in 10.6.7.4.1(1) and 10.6.7.4.1(2) are similar to those for protected premises. By reference to 10.6.11.3.2 as compared to 10.6.11.3.1, an automatic-starting, engine-driven generator used as the secondary power supply does not need to be part of an emergency power system, but it must be part of a legally required standby power system in accordance with Article 701 of the *NEC*. In addition, the reference to NFPA 110, *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*, and specification of Type 60 versus Type 10 require a 60-second start instead of a 10-second start.

The use of multiple engine-driven generators, where one generator is automatic starting and the other(s) can be arranged for a manual start, has been maintained as an option for secondary power at supervising station facilities. This provision recognizes the continual nature of these operations, 24 hours a day, 7 days a week. Additional requirements are imposed in 10.6.7.4.2, and compliance with NFPA 110 is required.

The requirement for a "dedicated" branch circuit has been removed from 10.6.7.4.1(2) and 10.6.7.4.1(3).

10.6.7.4.2 Where a secondary power supply for supervising station facilities in accordance with 10.6.7.4.1(3) is used, the following shall apply:

(1) Each generator shall be capable of supplying the energy required.
(2) Generators that are started manually shall be arranged in accordance with 10.6.11.3.2.3 and 10.6.11.3.2.4.
(3) When manual-start generators are employed, a person trained in the procedure of starting the generator shall be on duty at all times.

10.6.8 Power Supply for Remotely Located Control Equipment.

10.6.8.1* Additional power supplies, where provided for control units, circuit interfaces, or other equipment essential to system operation, and located remotely from the main control unit, shall be comprised of a primary and secondary power supply that shall meet the same requirements as those of 10.6.1 through 10.6.6 and 10.6.9.

A.10.6.8.1 Examples include the following:

(1) A building lighting power supply required for illumination in a required video image smoke detection means
(2) A notification appliance circuit power supply located remotely
(3) A power supply for transmitter required to transmit signals off premises
(4) Power over ethernet (PoE), where provided for control units, circuit interfaces, or other equipment essential to system operation, and located remotely from the main control unit

10.6.8.2 The location of any remotely located power supply shall be identified at the master control unit.

10.6.8.3 The master control unit display shall be permitted to satisfy the requirement of 10.6.8.2.

10.6.8.4 The location of any remotely located power supply shall be identified on the record drawings.

Paragraph 10.6.8.1 requires that the power supply for remotely located control units and other essential equipment meet the same requirements as that of the main (master) control unit. Paragraphs 10.6.8.2 and 10.6.8.4 require that the location of all remotely located power supplies be identified at the master control unit and on the record drawings. In accordance with 10.6.8.3, identification at the master control unit can be accomplished on the master control unit display itself.

10.6.9 Monitoring Integrity of Power Supplies.

10.6.9.1 Unless otherwise permitted or required by 10.6.9.1.3 and 10.6.9.1.6, all primary and secondary power supplies shall be monitored for the presence of voltage at the point of connection to the system.

10.6.9.1.1 Failure of either supply shall result in a trouble signal in accordance with Section 10.15.

The requirement in 10.6.9.1.1 means that the failure of either the primary or the secondary power supply initiates a trouble signal.

10.6.9.1.2 Where the digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT) is powered from a protected premises fire alarm system control unit, power failure indication shall be in accordance with 10.6.9.1.

10.6.9.1.3 Monitoring shall not be required for a power supply for supplementary equipment.

10.6.9.1.4 Monitoring shall not be required for the neutral of a three-, four-, or five-wire alternating current (ac) or direct current (dc) supply source.

10.6.9.1.5 Monitoring shall not be required for the main power supply in a central station, provided that the fault condition is otherwise indicated so as to be obvious to the operator on duty.

10.6.9.1.6 Monitoring shall not be required for the output of an engine-driven generator that is part of the secondary power supply, provided that the generator is tested weekly in accordance with Chapter 14.

When an engine-driven generator is not running, voltage will not be present on the output terminals. Therefore, monitoring for integrity is impossible.

10.6.9.2* Power supply sources and electrical supervision for digital alarm communications systems shall be in accordance with Sections 10.6, 10.6.9, 10.19, and 12.6.

A.10.6.9.2 Because digital alarm communicator systems establish communications channels between the protected premises and the central station via the public switched telephone network, the requirement to supervise circuits between the protected premises and the central station *(see 12.6.1 and 12.6.2)* is considered to be met if the communications channel is periodically tested in accordance with 26.6.3.2.1.5.

10.6.9.3* Unless prohibited by the authority having jurisdiction, supervising station alarm systems shall be arranged to delay transmission of primary power failure signals for a period ranging from 60 minutes to 180 minutes.

A.10.6.9.3 This requirement is intended to prevent all of the supervising station alarm systems in a given geographic area from transmitting simultaneous trouble signals (and overwhelming the associated supervising stations) in the event of a widespread power failure. A trouble signal is not intended to be transmitted if primary power is restored within the time delay.

All supervising station alarm systems are required to transmit primary power failure signals no sooner than 60 minutes from initial power failure and no longer than 180 minutes from initial power failure unless prohibited by the authority having jurisdiction. This rule applies to any communications method. This requirement prevents jamming of telephone lines or other transmission channels at the supervising station during the first hour of a widespread power outage. This requirement is usually just a simple programming change in the system control equipment and allows for a reduction in unnecessary signals being sent to the supervising station.

10.6.9.4 Power supervisory devices shall be arranged so as not to impair the receipt of fire alarm or supervisory signals.

10.6.10* Storage Batteries.

A.10.6.10 The following newer types of rechargeable batteries are normally used in protected premises applications:

(1) *Vented Lead-Acid, Gelled, or Starved Electrolyte Battery.* This rechargeable-type battery is generally used in place of primary batteries in applications that have a relatively high current drain or that require the extended standby capability of much lower currents. The nominal voltage of a single cell is 2 volts, and the battery is available in multiples of 2 volts (e.g., 2, 4, 6, 12). Batteries should be stored according to the manufacturer's published instructions.
(2) *Nickel-Cadmium Battery.* The sealed-type nickel-cadmium battery generally used in applications where the battery current drain during a power outage is low to moderate (typically up to a few hundred milliamperes) and is fairly constant. Nickel-cadmium batteries are also available in much larger capacities for other applications. The nominal voltage per cell is 1.42 volts, with batteries available in multiples of 1.42 (e.g., 12.78, 25.56). Batteries in storage can be stored in any state of charge for indefinite periods. However, a battery in storage will lose capacity (will self-discharge), depending on storage time and temperature. Typically, batteries stored for more than 1 month require an 8-hour to 14-hour charge period to restore capacity. In service, the battery should receive a continuous, constant-charging current that is sufficient to keep it fully charged. (Typically, the charge rate equals 1⁄10 to 1⁄20 of the ampere-hour rating of the battery.) Because batteries are made up of individual cells connected in series, the possibility exists that, during deep discharge, one or more cells that are low in capacity will reach complete discharge prior to other cells. The cells with remaining life tend to charge the depleted cells, causing a polarity reversal resulting in permanent battery damage. This condition can be determined by measuring the open cell voltage of a fully charged battery (voltage should be a minimum of 1.28 volts per cell multiplied by the number of cells). Voltage depression effect is a minor change in discharge voltage level caused by constant current charging below the system discharge rate. In some applications of nickel-cadmium batteries (e.g., battery-powered shavers), a memory characteristic also exists. Specifically, if the battery is discharged daily for 1 minute, followed by a recharge, operation for 5 minutes will not result in the rated ampere-hour output because the battery has developed a 1-minute discharge memory.
(3) *Sealed Lead-Acid Battery.* In a sealed lead-acid battery, the electrolyte is totally absorbed by the separators, and no venting normally occurs. Gas evolved during recharge is internally recombined, resulting in minimal loss of capacity life. A high-pressure vent, however, is provided to avoid damage under abnormal conditions.

10.6.10.1 Marking.

10.6.10.1.1 Batteries shall be marked with the month and year of manufacture using the month/year format.

10.6.10.1.2 Where the battery is not marked with the month/year by the manufacturer, the installer shall obtain the date-code and mark the battery with the month/year of battery manufacture.

FAQ What format must be used to mark the date of manufacture on the battery?

Paragraph 10.6.10.1.1 requires that batteries be marked with the month and year of manufacture, using the month/year format. Thus, a battery that is manufactured in February of 2010 must be marked 02/2010. This paragraph does not require that the manufacturer of the battery mark the battery in this format. The manufacturer may choose to use a date code. If this is the case, 10.6.10.1.2 requires that the installer then translate the date code into the format required by 10.6.10.1.1 and mark the battery accordingly. Manufacturers can easily provide documentation to the installers of batteries and enforcing authorities so the manufacture date of the battery can be verified.

10.6.10.2 Location. Storage batteries shall be located so that the equipment, including overcurrent devices, are not adversely affected by battery gases and shall conform to the requirements of *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Article 480.

Battery gases can cause severe corrosion of terminals and contacts in equipment enclosures. Sealed lead-acid batteries are generally permitted inside control units; however, vented lead-acid batteries are not permitted inside control units. See Exhibit 10.2 for an example of a sealed lead-acid battery. If large batteries are necessary, a separate battery cabinet, as shown in Exhibit 10.3, may be required to adequately house the batteries. If batteries are located remotely from the control unit, 10.6.10.2.5 requires that the location be identified at the control unit.

EXHIBIT 10.2

Typical Sealed Lead-Acid Battery. (Source: Power-Sonic Corp., San Diego, CA)

EXHIBIT 10.3

Separate Battery Cabinet. (Source: Space Age Electronics, Inc., Sterling, MA)

10.6.10.2.1 Cells shall be suitably insulated against ground faults.

10.6.10.2.2 Cells shall be suitably insulated against crosses.

10.6.10.2.3 Cells shall be mounted in such a manner so as to be protected from physical damage.

10.6.10.2.4 Racks shall be suitably protected against deterioration.

10.6.10.2.5 If not located in or adjacent to the control unit, the batteries and their charger location shall be permanently identified at the control unit.

The requirement in 10.6.10.2.5 for identification of the location of remotely located batteries or chargers, or both, is intended to simplify system inspections and tests. Long runs of conductors to remote batteries can create unacceptable voltage drops that can affect system performance.

Voltage drop calculations must be conducted to ensure that the system has adequate voltage under full load.

10.6.10.3 Battery Charging.

10.6.10.3.1 Adequate facilities shall be provided to automatically maintain the battery fully charged under all conditions of normal operation.

10.6.10.3.2 Adequate facilities shall be provided to recharge batteries within 48 hours after fully charged batteries have been subject to a single discharge cycle as specified in 10.6.7.2.

Unless the capacity of the battery charger has been carefully selected, systems with large batteries may have difficulty meeting the requirement in 10.6.10.3.2. The manufacturer's data sheets should provide maximum charging capabilities.

10.6.10.3.3 Upon attaining a fully charged condition, the charge rate shall not be so excessive as to result in battery damage.

10.6.10.3.4* Batteries shall be either trickle- or float-charged.

A.10.6.10.3.4 Batteries are trickle-charged if they are off-line and waiting to be put under load in the event of a loss of power.

Float-charged batteries are fully charged and connected across the output of the rectifiers to smooth the output and to serve as a standby source of power in the event of a loss of line power.

10.6.10.3.5 Supervising stations shall maintain spare parts or units available, which shall be used to restore failed charging capacity prior to the consumption of one-half of the capacity of the batteries for the supervising station equipment.

This paragraph is intended for the batteries that are located at the supervising station.

10.6.10.4 Overcurrent Protection.

10.6.10.4.1 The batteries shall be protected against excessive load current by overcurrent devices.

10.6.10.4.2 The batteries shall be protected from excessive charging current by overcurrent devices or by automatic current-limiting design of the charging source.

Overcurrent protection is typically built into the alarm control equipment by the manufacturer.

10.6.10.5 Metering. The charging equipment shall provide either integral meters or readily accessible terminal facilities for the connection of portable meters by which the battery voltage and charging current can be determined.

10.6.10.6 Monitoring Integrity of Battery Charger.

10.6.10.6.1 Means for monitoring integrity appropriate for the batteries and charger employed shall be provided to detect a battery charger failure.

10.6.10.6.2 Failure of the battery charger shall result in the initiation of a trouble signal in accordance with Section 10.15.

The requirements in 10.6.10.6.1 and 10.6.10.6.2 were part of the metering requirement of the 1989 edition of NFPA 71, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Signaling Systems* *for Central Station Service*. The battery charging circuits of all systems are now required to be monitored and to produce a trouble signal upon failure. Requirements for monitoring the integrity of power supplies are contained in 10.6.9.

10.6.11 Engine-Driven Generators.

Subsection 10.6.11 applies when the power for the system is supplied from an engine-driven generator. The requirements for secondary power supplies in 10.6.11.3 relate back to the requirements for secondary power supplies in 10.6.7 and are also organized into separate sections to reflect different provisions for the fire alarm systems at the protected premises and emergency communications systems (see 10.6.7.3) and for supervising station facilities (see 10.6.7.4). NFPA 110 applies when engine-driven generators are used for the secondary power supply. The requirements within NFPA 110 are specified using the following specific terms:

(1) System types — start-up time (in seconds) of the secondary source to be available or the ability to transfer from primary to secondary automatically versus manually [see 10.6.7.4.1(3)]
(2) Classes — the amount of time in hours that the system can be operated at rated load without being refueled
(3) Levels — Level 1 is more stringent and is used where equipment failure could result in the loss of life or serious injuries; Level 2 is used where equipment failure is less critical

NFPA 72 specifies the appropriate classifications in 10.6.11.3 to correlate with the designations in NFPA 110. These classifications are defined in Chapter 4 of NFPA 110. The requirements in NFPA 110 address the performance, installation, maintenance, operation, and testing requirements for the emergency power supply system. The requirements in *NFPA 70* address the complete electrical installation, including these (and other) sources of power, as well as the equipment used to distribute and control power from these systems when the normal supply is interrupted.

10.6.11.1 Application and Installation. The application and installation of engine-driven generators shall be as **specified** in 10.6.11.2 through 10.6.11.7.

10.6.11.2 Primary Power Supply.

10.6.11.2.1 Engine-driven generators arranged as the primary supply shall be designed in an approved manner.

10.6.11.2.2 Engine-driven generators arranged as the primary supply shall be installed in an approved manner.

10.6.11.3 Secondary Power Supplies.

10.6.11.3.1 Protected Premises.

10.6.11.3.1.1 Engine-driven generators used to provide secondary power for a protected premises fire alarm system or an emergency communications system shall comply with NFPA 110, *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*, Chapter 4, requirements for a Type 10, Class 24, Level 1 system.

10.6.11.3.1.2 Installation of engine-driven generators used to provide secondary power for a protected premises fire alarm system or an emergency communications system shall be in accordance with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Article 700.

10.6.11.3.1.3 Where survivability of circuits is required by another section of the Code, equal protection shall be provided for power supply circuits.

10.6.11.3.2 Supervising Station.

10.6.11.3.2.1 Automatic-starting, engine-driven generators used to provide secondary power for a supervising station shall comply with NFPA 110, *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*, Chapter 4, requirements for a Type 60, Class 24, Level 2 system.

10.6.11.3.2.2 Installation of automatic-starting, engine-driven generators used to provide secondary power for a supervising station shall be in accordance with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Article 701.

10.6.11.3.2.3 Manual-starting, engine-driven generators used to provide secondary power for a supervising station shall comply with NFPA 110, *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*, Chapter 10, requirements for a Type M, Class 24, Level 2 system.

10.6.11.3.2.4 Installation of manual-starting, engine-driven generators used to provide secondary power for a supervising station shall be in accordance with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Article 702.

10.6.11.4 Performance, Operation, Testing, and Maintenance. The requirements for performance, operation, testing, and maintenance of engine-driven generators shall conform to the applicable provisions of NFPA 110, *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*.

FAQ What document provides testing requirements for engine-driven generators?

NFPA 110 provides requirements for testing of engine-driven generators. The manufacturer's equipment data sheets should provide fuel consumption rates for the engine-driven generator.

10.6.11.5 Capacity. The unit shall be of a capacity that is sufficient to operate the system under the maximum normal load conditions in addition to all other demands placed upon the unit.

10.6.11.6 Fuel. Unless otherwise required or permitted in 10.6.11.6.1 through 10.6.11.6.3, fuel shall be available in storage sufficient for 6 months of testing plus the capacity specified in 10.6.7.

10.6.11.6.1 For public emergency alarm reporting systems, the requirements of Chapter 27 shall apply.

10.6.11.6.2 If a reliable source of supply is available at any time on a 2-hour notice, it shall be permitted to have fuel in storage sufficient for 12 hours of operation at full load.

10.6.11.6.3 Fuel systems using natural or manufactured gas supplied through reliable utility mains shall not be required to have fuel storage tanks unless located in seismic risk zone 3 or greater as defined in ANSI A-58.1, *Building Code Requirements for Minimum Design Loads in Buildings and Other Structures*.

10.6.11.7 Battery and Charger. A separate storage battery and separate automatic charger shall be provided for starting the engine-driven generator and shall not be used for any other purpose.

10.7 Signal Priority

The priority of signals shall be in accordance with this section.

Section 10.7 on signal priority was added in the 2010 edition of the Code. Signal distinction is addressed separately in Section 10.10.

The term *signal* is defined in 3.3.257 as "a message indicating a condition communicated by electrical, visible, audible, wireless, or other means." Definitions of the terms *alarm signal, fire alarm signal, supervisory signal*, and *trouble signal*, among others, are included as sub-definitions. Each signal has a specific purpose, each elicits a different response, and with few exceptions each type of signal must be treated separately. This includes the maintenance of separate circuits for each type of signal or the ability to process information transmitted over circuits so that signal priority and distinction can be maintained in accordance with Sections 10.7 and 10.10 and signals can be responded to in accordance with Section 10.9.

Emergency communications systems signaling terms are also used in the Code. These terms include *ECS priority signals*, *emergency mass notification signals*, and *priority alarms*. These terms are not specifically defined in the Code. The meaning of these terms must be taken from the context of their usage.

In the 2013 edition, the Code now recognizes the importance of carbon monoxide signals and allows this type of signal to take precedence over supervisory and trouble signals. The term *carbon monoxide alarm signal* is defined in 3.3.257.2. In addition, pre-alarm signals are now recognized in the signal priority hierarchy and take precedence over supervisory and trouble signals. The term *pre-alarm signal* is defined in 3.3.257.7 and the term *pre-alarm condition* is defined in 3.3.57.1.2.

10.7.1 ECS priority signals when evaluated by stakeholders through a risk analysis in accordance with 24.3.11 shall be permitted to take precedence over all other signals.

10.7.2 Fire alarm signals shall take precedence over all other signals, except as permitted by 10.7.1 or 10.7.3.

10.7.3* Emergency mass notification signals and messages shall be permitted to have priority over fire alarm notification signals in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 24.

A.10.7.3 Mass notification signals might, at times, be more important to the building or area occupants than the fire alarm signal. Stakeholders should perform a risk analysis in accordance with 24.3.11 to determine which, if any, messages should receive priority.

10.7.4 Emergency mass notification signals and messages shall have priority over supervisory and trouble signals in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 24.

10.7.5 Carbon monoxide signals shall be permitted to take precedence over supervisory and trouble signals.

10.7.6 Pre-alarm signals shall take precedence over supervisory and trouble signals.

10.7.7 Supervisory signals shall take precedence over trouble signals.

10.7.8 Hold-up alarms or other life-threatening signals shall be permitted to take precedence over supervisory and trouble signals where acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

10.7.9* Where separate systems are installed, they shall be permitted to achieve the priority of signals in accordance with Section 10.7.

Revisions were made in the Protected Premises Fire Alarm Systems chapter of the 2007 edition of the Code to permit mass notification input to take priority over fire alarm signals. With the addition of emergency communications systems to the Code in the 2010 edition, signal priority requirements needed to be further refined and added to Chapter 10. Subsection 10.7.1 permits an ECS priority signal to take priority over a fire alarm signal if the stakeholders, including the authority having jurisdiction, of the system have determined after a risk analysis, detailed in

24.3.11, that the ECS priority signal for the protected premises must have priority over the fire alarm signal. The ECS priority signal may be for an emergency event that is determined to be more critical than a fire alarm signal, such as an attack on the building and its occupants by terrorist shooters. It should be noted that not all ECS signals are necessarily ECS priority signals. This distinction should be addressed as a part of the risk assessment required in Chapter 24. Subsections 10.7.2 through 10.7.7 further establish the relative priority of fire alarm signals, emergency mass notification signals, carbon monoxide signals, pre-alarm signals, supervisory signals, and trouble signals.

Subsection 10.7.8 permits a hold-up alarm or other life-threatening signals, with the approval of the authority having jurisdiction, to have priority over supervisory and trouble signals.

Subsection 10.7.9 permits separate systems installed at the same premises to achieve the same priority scheme as permitted by Section 10.7 for a single system.

Signal priority requirements are also addressed for combination fire alarm systems in 23.8.4.6 and for various types of emergency communications systems throughout Chapter 24.

A.10.7.9 In addition, the override of circuits should be indicated at the control panel of each system to ensure signals are restored to normal.

10.8 Detection and Signaling of Conditions

Two new sections, Sections 10.8 and 10.9, have been added to the Code for the 2013 edition. These sections clarify the difference between various types of signals, the conditions that they represent, and the actions that are intended in response to these signals. For example, an alarm signal is often (correctly) thought of as the audible occupant notification signal that occurs throughout the occupancy in response to the detection of a fire or other emergency. However, it can also be just the electrical signal that represents or conveys the alarm message in the system. A *signal* is defined in 3.3.257 as "a message indicating a condition, communicated by electrical, visible, audible, wireless, or other means." Some occupancies are not required to have occupant notification. Thus, it is possible to have an alarm signal without occupant notification. The defined terms *signal*, *condition,* and *response* in 3.3.257, 3.3.57, and 3.3.244 along with the provisions in Sections 10.8 and 10.9 provide a foundation to allow requirements throughout the Code to be more precise in specifying the intended response to a particular condition.

10.8.1 Abnormal Condition Detection. Where required by this Code, the system shall be provided with means to detect and signal abnormal conditions.

10.8.2 Alarm Condition Detection. Where required by this Code, the system shall be provided with means to detect and signal alarm conditions.

10.8.2.1 Pre-Alarm Condition Detection. Where required by this Code, the system shall be provided with means to detect and signal pre-alarm conditions.

10.8.2.2 Supervisory Condition Detection. Where required by this Code, the system shall be provided with means to detect and signal supervisory conditions.

10.8.2.3 Trouble Condition Detection. Where required by this Code, the system shall be provided with means to detect and signal trouble conditions.

10.8.2.4 Normal Condition Detection. Where required by this Code, the system shall generate a restoration signal when the device or signaling system returns to normal.

10.9 Responses

10.9.1 Alarm. The response to an alarm signal shall be in accordance with this Code.

10.9.2 Pre-Alarm. The response to a pre-alarm signal shall be in accordance with this Code.

10.9.3 Supervisory. The response to a supervisory signal shall be in accordance with this Code.

10.9.4 Trouble. The response to trouble signal shall be in accordance with this Code.

10.10 Distinctive Signals

With the addition of emergency communications systems to the Code, the requirements for distinctive signals needed to be revised. Priority alarms or ECS priority signals from mass notification systems were added to the list of different signals that can be present at a protected premises in addition to the traditional signals from a fire alarm system.

10.10.1 Priority alarms, fire alarms, supervisory signals, pre-alarm signals, and trouble signals shall be distinctively and descriptively annunciated.

All alarm, pre-alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals must be distinctively annunciated. The typical means of accomplishing this is through the display at the control unit. It could also be accomplished through the use of a separate annunciator panel. Signal descriptions are critical to be sufficiently detailed providing a clear indication of the condition being annunciated. Where possible, abbreviations should be kept to a minimum or standardized. This feature is especially important when both mass notification system signals and fire alarm system signals are included in the system design. Refer to 10.10.4 and A.10.10.4 for additional requirements for, and an explanation of, control unit signals.

10.10.2 Audible alarm notification appliances for a fire alarm system shall produce signals that are distinctive from other similar appliances used for other purposes in the same area that are not part of the fire alarm or emergency communications system.

Notification appliances used for the fire alarm system or emergency communications system must produce signals that are distinctive from the signals produced by notification appliances of other systems that might be in the same area.

10.10.3 Audible alarm notification appliances for a carbon monoxide alarm system shall produce signals that are distinctive from other similar appliances used for other purposes in the same area that are not part of the carbon monoxide, fire alarm, or emergency communications system.

While the requirements for carbon monoxide (CO) detection systems reside in NFPA 720, combination fire alarm systems can include CO detection and notification. Subsection 10.10.3 was added in the 2013 edition of the Code to recognize that audible appliances used to provide notification for a carbon monoxide alarm need to produce a signal that is distinct from other signals. The specific audible notification signal pattern that must be used differs from that required for an alarm evacuation signal (10.10.7) and is addressed in NFPA 720. See Exhibit 10.4 for an excerpt from NFPA 720 that describes the required signal pattern. Also see 23.8.4.8 and the defined term *carbon monoxide alarm signal* in 3.3.257.2.

EXHIBIT 10.4

Distinctive Signal. [Excerpt from NFPA 720, 2012 edition]

5.8.6.5 Distinctive Signal.

5.8.6.5.1 The audible carbon monoxide alarm signal shall comply with the following:

(1) Signals shall be a single tone pattern consisting of four cycles of 100 milliseconds ± 10 percent "off," followed by 5 seconds ± 10 percent "off."
(2) After the initial 4 minutes of alarm, the 5-second "off" time shall be permitted to be changed to 60 seconds ± 10 percent.
(3) The alarm signal shall be repeated in compliance with 5.8.6.5.1(1) and 5.8.6.5.1(2) until the alarm resets or the alarm signal is manually silenced

5.8.6.5.2* The audible alarm signal shall be synchronized within a notification zone.

A.5.8.6.5.2 Coordination or synchronization of the audible signal within a notification zone is needed to preserve the temporal pattern. It is unlikely that the audible signal in one evacuation/notification zone will be heard in another at a level that will destroy the temporal pattern. Thus, it would not normally be necessary to provide coordination /synchronization for an entire system. Caution should be used in spaces such as atriums where the sounds produced in one notification zone can be sufficient to cause confusion regarding the temporal pattern.

10.10.4* An audible notification appliance on a control unit, or on multiple control units that are interconnected to form a system, or at a remote location, shall be permitted to have the same audible characteristics for all alerting functions including, but not limited to, alarm, trouble, and supervisory, provided that the distinction between signals shall be by other appropriate means, such as visible annunciation.

A.10.10.4 Control unit signals can be audible, visible, or both for any particular function. Some older systems used only audible indicators that had to be coded in order for users to know what the signal meant. Where a control unit uses both audible and visible indicators, the purpose of the audible signal is to get someone's attention. In large system configurations, there might be multiple control units with audible signals. Also, there might be several different functions requiring an audible alert as a part of the whole signal. Thus, there could be several different audible signals. It is not the intent of the Code to have separate and distinct audible signals where there is clear visual distinction that provides the user with the needed information. Visible signals, whether a lamp with a text label, an LCD screen, or a computer monitor, are a better form of human interface.

The requirements in 10.10.4 state that alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals on a control unit or on multiple control units of the same system are permitted to have the same audible characteristics as long as the different signals are distinctively indicated by other appropriate means, such as an LED or LCD message.

10.10.5* Supervisory signals shall be distinctive in sound from other signals, and their sound shall not be used for any other purpose except as permitted in 10.10.4.

A.10.10.5 A valve supervisory, a low-pressure switch, or another device intended to cause a supervisory signal when actuated should not be connected in series with the end-of-line supervisory device of initiating device circuits, unless a distinctive signal, different from a trouble signal, is indicated.

10.10.6 Trouble signals required to indicate at the protected premises shall be indicated by distinctive audible signals, which shall be distinctive from alarm signals except as permitted in 10.10.4.

Distinctive audible signals are required for supervisory and trouble signals in accordance with 10.10.5 and 10.10.6, respectively. However, both subsections refer back to 10.10.4, which permits a common audible signal as long as signal distinction is indicated by other appropriate means, such as an LED or LCD message.

10.10.7 Alarm evacuation signals shall be distinctive in sound from other signals, shall comply with the requirements of 18.4.2, and their sound shall not be used for any other purpose.

Alarm signals used to notify occupants of the need to evacuate must produce the distinctive emergency evacuation signal required by 18.4.2.

10.10.8 Pre-alarm signals shall be distinctive in sound from other signals, and their sound shall not be used for any other purpose except as permitted in 10.10.4.

Signals for pre-alarm conditions are now expressly permitted on systems. The response to a pre-alarm signal should result in an investigation of the cause of the pre-alarm condition. The need for an alarm signal or response may not be justified at the initial receipt of the pre-alarm signal. Refer to the defined terms *pre-alarm condition*, *pre-alarm signal*, and *pre-alarm response* in 3.3.57.1.2, 3.3.257.7, and 3.3.244.2.

10.11* ECS Priority Signals

Visible indication of priority signals shall be automatically indicated within 10 seconds at the fire alarm control unit or other designated location. (SIG-ECS)

A.10.11 Other locations could include the following:

(1) Building fire command center for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems
(2) Fire alarm control unit for network fire alarm systems
(3) Supervising station locations for systems installed in compliance with Chapter 26

Section 10.11 was added to the 2010 edition of the Code. This section requires that priority signals from an emergency communications system be automatically indicated within 10 seconds. This time period is required in various places in the Code to limit the signal processing time.

10.12 Alarm Signals

10.12.1 Actuation of alarm notification appliances or emergency voice communications, emergency control functions, and annunciation at the protected premises shall occur within 10 seconds after the activation of an initiating device.

10.12.2* A coded alarm signal shall consist of not less than three complete rounds of the number transmitted.

A.10.12.2 The recommended coded signal designations for buildings that have four floors and multiple basements are provided in Table A.10.12.2.

TABLE A.10.12.2
Recommended Coded Signal Designations

Location	***Coded Signal***
Fourth floor	2–4
Third floor	2–3
Second floor	2–2
First floor	2–1
Basement	3–1
Sub-basement	3–2

10.12.3 Each round of a coded alarm signal shall consist of not less than three impulses.

Subsections 10.12.2 and 10.12.3 refer to a coded signal. The term *coded* is defined in 3.3.47 as "an audible or visible signal that conveys discrete bits or units of information." A coded signal is meant to notify personnel of the nature or origin of the signal. Table A.10.12.2 provides recommended assignments for simple zone-coded signals. In addition to the examples described in Table A.10.12.2, textual audible signals may use words that are familiar only to those concerned with response to the signal. This practice avoids general alarm notification and disruption of the occupants. Hospitals often use this type of signal. For example, to hospital occupants who do not know the code words, the message "Paging Dr. Firestone, Dr. Firestone, Building 4 West Wing" might sound like a normal paging announcement, but the coded message is that there is a fire in the West Wing of Building 4. In effect, this is private mode signaling (see 18.4.4).

Subsection 10.12.2 requires that upon activation, the code will sound at least three times, alerting the users of the alarm location. A coded system should not be confused with the requirements of 18.4.2.1 and the requirements of ANSI S3.41, *American National Standard Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal.*

10.12.4* Resetting of alarm signals shall comply with the requirements of 23.8.2.2.

A.10.12.4 Resetting of alarm signals should not require the simultaneous operation of multiple reset switches or the disconnection of any wiring or equipment to reset the alarm condition.

10.12.5 Unacknowledged alarm signals shall not be interrupted if a fault on an initiating device circuit or a signaling line circuit occurs while there is an alarm condition on that circuit unless the faulted circuit is used to interconnect control units.

10.12.6 An alarm signal that has been deactivated at the protected premises shall comply with 10.12.6.1 and 10.12.6.2.

10.12.6.1 The audible and visible alarm signal at the control unit only shall automatically reactivate every 24 hours or less until alarm signal conditions are restored to normal.

10.12.6.2 The audible and visible alarm signal shall operate until it is manually silenced or acknowledged.

The requirement in 10.12.6.1 is intended to serve as an important reminder, every 24 hours at the protected premises control unit, that an alarm condition still exists and needs to be restored to normal. The ongoing detection of this alarm condition could, depending on its cause, be a symptom of an impairment to the system (see 10.21.1) that needs to be corrected (see 14.2.2.2.2). Reactivation of the audible and visible alarm signal is not intended to include reactivation of notification appliances used for occupant notification, operation of interfaced fire and life safety equipment, or retransmission of the alarm signal to the supervising station if applicable. In accordance with 10.12.6.2, the reactivated signals can only be manually silenced or acknowledged.

10.13* Fire Alarm Notification Appliance Deactivation

The requirements of Section 10.13 address the means to manually deactivate fire alarm system alarm notification appliances. Deactivation of the notification appliances can assist emergency forces personnel with communications when responding to alarm conditions and making assessments in the management of the emergency scene. In using the deactivation feature, the responding personnel must assess the conditions at the scene and work in concert with the evacuation plan for the building. Prior to deactivation of notification appliances, access to the facility needs to be secured so that unauthorized persons do not inadvertently enter the building.

In some situations, mass notification systems are permitted to override fire alarm signals and prevent alarm notification appliances from producing fire alarm signals or messages until released manually by the mass notification system. Provisions addressing mass notification system priority can be found in 24.4.2.7 for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems and in 24.4.3.1.7 through 24.4.3.1.10, 24.4.3.14, and 24.4.3.22.1 for in-building mass notification systems.

A.10.13 It is the intent that both visual and audible appliances are shut off when the notification appliance silence feature is activated on the fire alarm control unit.

Per the ADA, it is important not to provide conflicting signals for the hearing or visually impaired.

10.13.1 A means for turning off activated alarm notification appliance(s) shall be permitted.

The term *means* in 10.13.1 recognizes that this function can be performed with alphanumeric keypads, switches, or touch screens.

10.13.2 When an occupant notification alarm signal deactivation means is actuated, both audible and visible notification appliances shall be simultaneously deactivated.

Both audible and visible notification appliances must be simultaneously deactivated. Simultaneous deactivation of both audible and visible appliances was introduced in the 2007 edition as a new condition required for alarm signal deactivation. The reason for this change was concern over the mixed message that would be sent to the hearing impaired if the visible appliances are left activated while the audible appliances are silenced.

10.13.2.1* When voice instructions are in progress, visible appliances in same area where speakers are activated shall also be activated where required by the emergency response plan. (SIG-ECS)

Both audible and visible notification appliances may have been deactivated as required in 10.13.2 by the emergency forces, or other authorized individuals, upon evaluating conditions at the emergency scene. Subsequent to this deactivation, additional information or instructions to building occupants using the system's voice communications capabilities may have been necessary. When this occurs, 10.13.2.1 requires the reactivation of visible notification appliances in the area(s) that is receiving the voice message.

A.10.13.2.1 The intent to activate the strobes while voice instructions are being provided is to alert the hearing impaired of the fact that information is being provided and they should use the visual indication as an indication to seek out information.

10.13.3 The fire alarm notification deactivation means shall be key-operated or located within a locked cabinet, or arranged to provide equivalent protection against unauthorized use.

10.13.4 The means shall comply with the requirements of 10.18.1.

10.13.5 Subsequent Actuation of Initiating Devices.

10.13.5.1 Subsequent actuation of nonaddressable initiating devices on other initiating device circuits shall cause the notification appliances to reactivate.

10.13.5.2 Subsequent actuation of addressable initiating devices of a different type in the same room or addressable initiating devices in a different room on signaling line circuits shall cause the notification appliances to reactivate.

Paragraph 10.13.5.1 requires the reactivation of the alarm notification appliances when a subsequent alarm signal from another initiating device circuit occurs. Additionally, 10.13.5.2 requires a reactivation to occur when a subsequent alarm signal from a different type of addressable initiating device occurs from the same room as the original activation, or when any addressable initiating device activation occurs in any other room.

Use of the deactivation feature during testing of the fire alarm system is not addressed by the Code. However, the requirements of Section 10.21 for system impairment must be considered whenever the system is taken out of service.

10.13.6 A fire alarm notification deactivation means that remains in the deactivated position when there is no alarm condition shall operate an audible trouble notification appliance until the means is restored to normal.

An audible trouble indication must operate if the means to deactivate is left in the "off" position when no alarm signal is present.

10.14 Supervisory Signals

10.14.1 Self-Restoring Supervisory Signal Indication. Visible and audible indication of self-restoring supervisory signals and visible indication of their restoration to normal shall be automatically indicated within 90 seconds at the following locations:

(1) Fire alarm control unit for local fire alarm systems
(2) Building fire command center for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems
(3) Supervising station location for systems installed in compliance with Chapter 26

10.14.2 Latching Supervisory Signal Indication.

The requirements in 10.14.1 and 10.14.2 provide reporting requirements for self-restoring and latching supervisory signals. The 90-second requirement is considered adequate because supervisory signals do not represent immediate life-threatening conditions. Separate requirements for self-restoring and latching supervisory signals were developed in *NFPA 72* to recognize the use of both types in the Code. Refer to 23.8.5.8.2 and the associated commentary for additional information on latching supervisory signals.

10.14.2.1 Visible and audible indication of latching supervisory signals shall be indicated within 90 seconds at the locations specified in 10.14.1.

10.14.2.2 Restoration of latching supervisory signals shall be indicated within 90 seconds at the locations specified in 10.14.1.

10.14.3 Coded Supervisory Signal.

10.14.3.1 A coded supervisory signal shall be permitted to consist of two rounds of the number transmitted to indicate a supervisory off-normal condition.

10.14.3.2 A coded supervisory signal shall be permitted to consist of one round of the number transmitted to indicate the restoration of the supervisory condition to normal.

10.14.4 Combined Coded Alarm and Supervisory Signal Circuits. Where both coded sprinkler supervisory signals and coded fire or waterflow alarm signals are transmitted over the same signaling line circuit, provision shall be made to obtain either alarm signal precedence or sufficient repetition of the alarm signal to prevent the loss of an alarm signal.

10.14.5 Supervisory Notification Appliance Location. The audible supervisory notification appliances shall be located in an area where they are likely to be heard.

Activated or reactivated audible supervisory signals indicating an abnormal condition are only effective if someone can hear them. In most instances, the signal will emanate from the control unit equipment or an annunciator located at the building's entrance, or other fire department–approved location, which should permit the signal to be heard.

10.14.6 Supervisory Signal Reactivation. A supervisory signal that has been deactivated at the protected premises shall comply with 10.14.6.1 and 10.14.6.2.

10.14.6.1 The audible and visible supervisory signal at the control unit only shall automatically reactivate every 24 hours or less until supervisory signal conditions are restored to normal.

10.14.6.2 The audible and visible supervisory signal shall operate until it is manually silenced or acknowledged.

The requirement in 10.14.6.1, as in 10.12.6.1, is intended to serve as an important reminder, every 24 hours at the protected premises control unit, that a supervisory condition still exists and needs to be restored to normal. The ongoing detection of a supervisory condition means that a monitored system or process has an abnormal condition or impairment that needs to be corrected. In accordance with 10.14.6.2, the reactivated signals can only be manually silenced or acknowledged.

10.14.7 Supervisory Notification Appliance Deactivation.

10.14.7.1 A means for deactivating supervisory notification appliances shall be permitted.

10.14.7.2 The means shall be key-operated or located within a locked cabinet, or arranged to provide equivalent protection against unauthorized use.

10.14.7.3 The means for deactivating supervisory notification appliances shall comply with the requirements of 10.18.2.

10.14.7.4 Subsequent actuation of supervisory initiating devices in other building zones shall cause supervisory notification appliances to actuate as required by the system input/output matrix.

10.14.7.5 A means for deactivating supervisory notification appliances that remains in the deactivated position when there is no supervisory condition shall operate an audible trouble notification appliance until the means is restored to normal.

The requirements in 10.14.7 for deactivating supervisory notification appliances are somewhat similar to the provisions for alarm notification appliance deactivation. Paragraph 10.14.7.4 requires that subsequent actuation of supervisory initiating devices cause the reactivation of the supervisory notification appliances when programmed to do so in accordance with the system input/output matrix. Exhibit 10.5 illustrates the display and controls for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals on a fire alarm control unit.

EXHIBIT 10.5

Fire Alarm Control Unit Showing Display Area and Controls for Alarm, Supervisory, and Trouble Signals. (Source: SimplexGrinnell, Westminster, MA)

10.15 Trouble Signals

10.15.1 Trouble signals and their restoration to normal shall be indicated within 200 seconds at the locations identified in 10.15.7 and 10.15.8.

10.15.2 Indication of primary power failure trouble signals transmitted to a supervising station shall be in accordance with 10.6.9.3.

While 10.15.1 requires the transmission of trouble signals, and their restoration to normal, to a supervising station, 10.15.2 correlates with 10.6.9.3 to reflect that the Code requires delaying the transmission of primary power supply failure trouble signals to supervising stations unless the delay is prohibited by the authority having jurisdiction. The requirement in 10.6.9.3 applies to all methods used to transmit signals to the supervising station.

10.15.3 An audible trouble signal shall be permitted to be intermittent provided it sounds at least once every 10 seconds, with a minimum duration of ½ second.

10.15.4 A single audible trouble signal shall be permitted to annunciate multiple fault conditions.

10.15.5 The audible trouble notification appliances shall be located in an area where they are likely to be heard.

FAQ Where must audible trouble signal notification appliances be located?

Subsection 10.15.5 requires that the audible trouble signal be located in an area within the protected premises that ensures that it will be heard. A sounding appliance installed separate from the control unit may be required (also see the commentary following 10.14.5).

10.15.6 Actuated notification appliances at the protected premises shall continue to operate unless they are manually silenced as permitted by 10.15.10.1.

10.15.7 Visible and audible trouble signals and visible indication of their restoration to normal shall be indicated at the following locations:

(1) Fire alarm control unit for protected premises alarm systems
(2) Building fire command center for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems
(3) Central station or remote station location for systems installed in compliance with Chapter 26

10.15.8 Trouble signals and their restoration to normal shall be visibly and audibly indicated at the proprietary supervising station for systems installed in compliance with Chapter 26.

10.15.9* A trouble signal that has been deactivated at the protected premises shall comply with 10.15.9.1 and 10.15.9.2.

A.10.15.9 The purpose of automatic trouble re-sound is to remind owners, or those responsible for the system, that the system remains in a fault condition. A secondary benefit is to possibly alert occupants of the building that the fire alarm system is in a fault condition.

10.15.9.1 The audible and visible trouble signal shall automatically reactuate at the control unit every 24 hours or less until trouble signal conditions are restored to normal.

As in 10.12.6.1 and 10.14.6.1, the requirement in 10.15.9.1 is intended to serve as an important reminder, every 24 hours at the protected premises control unit, that a trouble condition still exists and needs to be restored to normal. The ongoing detection of a trouble condition means that the system has a fault condition or impairment that needs to be corrected (see 10.21.1 and 14.2.2.2.2). In accordance with 10.15.6, actuated trouble signals must be manually silenced.

10.15.9.2 The audible and visible trouble signal associated with signaling the depletion or failure of the primary battery of a wireless system as required by 23.16.2(3) and (4) shall automatically resound every 4 hours or less until the depletion signal is restored to normal.

10.15.10 Trouble Notification Appliance Deactivation.

The requirements in 10.15.10 for deactivating trouble notification appliances are somewhat similar to the provisions for deactivating supervisory notification appliances.

10.15.10.1 A means for deactivating trouble notification appliances shall be permitted.

10.15.10.2 The means shall be key-operated or located within a locked cabinet, or arranged to provide equivalent protection against unauthorized use.

10.15.10.3 The means for deactivating trouble notification appliances shall comply with the requirements of 10.18.2.

10.15.10.4 If an audible trouble notification appliance is also used to indicate a supervisory condition, as permitted by 10.10.4, a trouble notification appliance deactivation means shall not prevent subsequent actuation of supervisory notification appliances.

10.15.10.5 Subsequent trouble signals shall cause trouble notification appliances to activate as required by the system input/output matrix.

10.15.10.6 A means for deactivating trouble notification appliances that remains in the deactivated position when there is no trouble condition shall operate an audible trouble notification appliance until the means is restored to normal.

10.15.10.7* Unless otherwise permitted by the authority having jurisdiction, trouble notification appliances at the protected premises of a supervising station fire alarm system arranged in accordance with Chapter 26, that have been silenced at the protected premises shall automatically re-actuate every 24 hours or less until fault conditions are restored to normal.

A.10.15.10.7 In large, campus-style arrangements with proprietary supervising stations monitoring protected premises systems, and in other situations where off-premises monitoring achieves the desired result, the authority having jurisdiction is permitted to allow the re-actuation to occur only at the supervising station. Approval by the authority having jurisdiction is required so it can consider all fire safety issues and make a determination that there are procedures in place to ensure that the intent is met; in other words, someone is available to take action to correct the problem.

10.16 Emergency Control Function Status Indicators

Section 10.16, formerly titled Fire Safety Function Status Indicators, was retitled Emergency Control Function Status Indicators in the 2010 edition of the Code to reflect that the Code now addresses more than just fire alarm systems.

10.16.1 All controls provided specifically for the purpose of manually overriding any automatic emergency control function shall provide visible indication of the status of the associated control circuits.

The visible status indication required by 10.16.1 can be achieved by a labeled annunciator (or equivalent means) or by the labeled position of a toggle or rotary switch.

10.16.2* Where status indicators are provided for emergency equipment or control functions, they shall be arranged to reflect the actual status of the associated equipment or function.

A.10.16.2 The operability of controlled mechanical equipment (e.g., smoke and fire dampers, elevator recall arrangements, and door holders) should be verified by periodic testing. Failure to test and properly maintain controlled mechanical equipment can result in operational failure during an emergency, with potential consequences up to and including loss of life.

10.17 Notification Appliance Circuits and Control Circuits

10.17.1 An open, ground-fault, or short-circuit fault on the installation conductors of one alarm notification appliance circuit shall not affect the operation of any other alarm notification appliance circuit for more than 200 seconds regardless of whether the short-circuit fault is present during the normal or activated circuit state.

Subsection 10.17.1 addresses the condition where a notification appliance circuit is supplying its own notification appliances as well as additional equipment, such as a power extender or remote power supply, which is supporting additional notification appliance circuits. In such a circuit, an open, ground-fault, or short-circuit fault on the installation conductors cannot affect the circuits served by the power extender or remote power supply for more than 200 seconds. If such a circuit only supplies a power extender or remote power supply, the circuit is considered to be a control circuit and is not required to comply with 10.17.1, provided the conditions in 12.6.1 are met. Note that circuits from a power extender or remote power supply to notification appliances are still notification appliance circuits and must comply with 12.6.1.

10.17.2* Notification appliance circuits that do not have notification appliances connected directly to the circuit shall be considered control circuits.

A.10.17.2 Initially this requirement was meant to apply to notification appliance circuits (NACs) emanating from a single fire alarm control unit and did not contemplate the use of NAC extender panels. Acknowledging the control circuit concept allows NAC extender panels and relays to be connected to a control circuit.

10.17.3 Control circuits shall not be required to comply with 10.17.1, provided that the circuit is monitored for integrity in accordance with Section 12.6 and a fault in installation conductors shall result in a trouble signal in accordance with Section 10.15.

10.18 Annunciation and Annunciation Zoning

10.18.1 Alarm Annunciation.

10.18.1.1 Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, the location of an operated initiating device shall be annunciated by visible means.

10.18.1.1.1 Visible annunciation of the location of an operated initiating device shall be by an indicator lamp, alphanumeric display, printout, or other approved means.

10.18.1.1.2 The visible annunciation of the location of operated initiating devices shall not be canceled by the means used to deactivate alarm notification appliances.

FAQ What is the purpose of alarm annunciation?

Annunciation, not to be confused with building occupant notification, provides a display for arriving emergency personnel to use so they can assess alarm and other conditions upon arrival. The need for annunciation is established outside the requirements of *NFPA 72* through the framework of higher level mandates discussed in the commentary following 1.1.1. Annunciation can be accomplished through the use of a separately located annunciator (remote display panel) or through the display associated with the master fire alarm control unit. Exhibits 10.6 through 10.8 illustrate typical annunciators used to provide the zone information required by 10.18.5.

Paragraph 10.18.1.1.2 makes it clear that the means used to deactivate alarm notification appliances, addressed in Section 10.13, must not cancel the visible annunciation of the alarm locations.

10.18.2 Supervisory and Trouble Annunciation.

10.18.2.1 Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, supervisory and/or trouble conditions shall be annunciated by visible means.

10.18.2.1.1 Visible annunciation shall be by an indicator lamp, an alphanumeric display, a printout, or other means.

10.18.2.1.2 The visible annunciation of supervisory and/or trouble conditions shall not be canceled by the means used to deactivate supervisory or trouble notification appliances.

Requirements for annunciation of supervisory and trouble conditions were added in the 2007 edition of the Code. The requirements in 10.18.2 parallel those in 10.18.1 for alarm annunciation.

EXHIBIT 10.6

Typical Graphic Fire Alarm Annunciator. (Source: Space Age Electronics, Inc., Sterling, MA)

EXHIBIT 10.7

Typical Back-Lit Labeled Annunciator. (Source: Space Age Electronics, Inc., Sterling, MA)

EXHIBIT 10.8

Fire Alarm Control Unit with Liquid Crystal Display Screen. (Source: Mircom Technologies Ltd., Cheektowaga, NY)

10.18.3* Annunciator Access and Location.

A.10.18.3 The primary purpose of annunciation is to enable responding personnel to quickly and accurately determine the status of equipment or emergency control functions that might affect the safety of occupants.

The authority having jurisdiction determines the type and location of any required annunciation. Common locations for annunciation are lobbies, guard's desks, and fire command centers. *NFPA 72* does not prescribe requirements for the location of the fire alarm control unit. However, if annunciation is required and the fire alarm control unit is being used as the means for annunciation, it must be located in accordance with 10.18.3.1 and 10.18.3.2. Further, if NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®, 2012 edition, is being used, NFPA *101* requires controls to be located in accordance with the following excerpt:

> **9.6.6 Location of Controls.** Operator controls, alarm indicators, and manual communications capability shall be installed at a convenient location acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. [***101:***9.6.6]

For applications involving an emergency communications system, the requirements of Chapter 24 should be reviewed when locations for control equipment are being considered. For example, Section 24.6, Information, Command, and Control, includes requirements for the emergency command center of emergency communications systems and for emergency communications control units (ECCUs). Other locations in Chapter 24 that may impact decisions on the location of controls include 24.4.2.5 for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems; 24.4.3.2, 24.4.3.12, and 24.4.3.13 for in-building mass notification systems; 24.5.1 and 24.5.2.6.2 for two-way in-building communications systems; and 24.5.3 for area of refuge emergency communications systems.

10.18.3.1 All required annunciation means shall be readily accessible to responding personnel.

10.18.3.2 All required annunciation means shall be located as required by the authority having jurisdiction to facilitate an efficient response to the situation.

10.18.4 Alarm Annunciation Display. Visible annunciators shall be capable of displaying all zones in alarm.

10.18.4.1 If all zones in alarm are not displayed simultaneously, the zone of origin shall be displayed.

10.18.4.2 If all zones in alarm are not displayed simultaneously, there shall be an indication that other zones are in alarm.

The requirement in 10.18.4 ensures that where systems require scrolling to view all the zones in alarm, the system will display the zone of origin and provide an indication that more alarms can be viewed than are currently displayed. The intent is to aid emergency responders in quickly obtaining complete information from the system. The zone of origin must always be displayed.

Although the arrangement of the display is not prescribed in 10.18.4, users of the Code should be aware of the standard emergency service interface requirements of Section 18.11 and the guidance in related A.18.11.

10.18.5* Annunciation Zoning.

A.10.18.5 Fire alarm system annunciation should, as a minimum, be sufficiently specific to identify a fire alarm signal in accordance with the following:

(1) If a floor exceeds 22,500 ft^2 (2090 m^2) in area, the floor should be subdivided into detection zones of 22,500 ft^2 (2090 m^2) or less, consistent with the existing smoke and fire barriers on the floor.

(2) If a floor exceeds 22,500 ft^2 (2090 m^2) in area and is undivided by smoke or fire barriers, detection zoning should be determined on a case-by-case basis in consultation with the authority having jurisdiction.
(3) Waterflow switches on sprinkler systems that serve multiple floors, areas exceeding 22,500 ft^2 (2090 m^2), or areas inconsistent with the established detection system zoning should be annunciated individually.
(4) In-duct smoke detectors on air-handling systems that serve multiple floors, areas exceeding 22,500 ft^2 (2090 m^2), or areas inconsistent with the established detection system zoning should be annunciated individually.
(5) If a floor area exceeds 22,500 ft^2 (2090 m^2), additional zoning should be provided. The length of any zone should not exceed 300 ft (91 m) in any direction. If the building is provided with automatic sprinklers throughout, the area of the alarm zone should be permitted to coincide with the allowable area of the sprinkler zone.

The provisions of 10.18.5 specify the minimum zoning required by *NFPA 72*. Fire alarm system notification zones, which are addressed by these provisions, should correlate with building smoke and fire zones. This correlation is especially important if an in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system is used to selectively or partially evacuate occupants or to relocate occupants to areas of refuge during a fire. Definitions for the terms *zone*, *evacuation signaling zone*, and *notification zone* can be found in 3.3.320. In addition, refer to the requirements in 23.8.6.3 for notification zones and the requirements in 24.4.2.9 for evacuation signaling zones.

Additional zoning requirements may exist in the governing building codes; NFPA *101*; *NFPA 5000®*, *Building Construction and Safety Code®*; and local ordinances. These higher level documents often require each floor of a building to be zoned separately for smoke detectors, waterflow switches, manual fire alarm boxes, and other initiating devices. The zoning recommendations found in A.10.18.5 parallel the annunciation zoning requirements found in NFPA *101* and the model building codes. The Code, as a minimum installation standard, does not require that an addressable system control unit be used. Conventional (zone) alarm control units are often adequate enough to meet the annunciation zoning requirements.

10.18.5.1 For the purpose of alarm annunciation, each floor of the building shall be considered as a separate zone.

10.18.5.2 For the purposes of alarm annunciation, if a floor of the building is subdivided into multiple zones by fire or smoke barriers and the fire plan for the protected premises allows relocation of occupants from the zone of origin to another zone on the same floor, each zone on the floor shall be annunciated separately.

10.18.5.3 Where the system serves more than one building, each building shall be annunciated separately.

•
10.19 Monitoring Integrity of In-Building Fire Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications Systems

10.19.1* Speaker Amplifier and Tone-Generating Equipment. If speakers are used to produce audible fire alarm signals, the required trouble signal for 10.19.1.1 through 10.19.1.3 shall be in accordance with Section 10.15.

• **A.10.19.1** Amplifiers generally require significant power regardless of load. To reduce the secondary power demand, there is no requirement to monitor the integrity of amplifiers during non-alarm operation on secondary power. This allows the amplifiers to be shut down while the system is operating on secondary power until an alarm occurs. When an alarm occurs, monitoring of integrity must resume so that an operator is aware of current conditions and so that any backup amplifiers can be engaged.

Backup amplifying and evacuation signal–generating equipment is recommended with automatic transfer upon primary equipment failure to ensure prompt restoration of service in the event of equipment failure.

10.19.1.1 When primary power is available, failure of any audio amplifier shall result in a trouble signal.

10.19.1.2 When an alarm is present and primary power is not available (i.e., system is operating from the secondary power source), failure of any audio amplifier shall result in a trouble signal.

10.19.1.3 Failure of any tone-generating equipment shall result in a trouble signal, unless the tone-generating and amplifying equipment are enclosed as integral parts and serve only a single, listed loudspeaker.

10.19.2 Two-Way Telephone Communications Circuits.

10.19.2.1 Two-way telephone communications circuit installation conductors shall be monitored for open circuit fault conditions that would cause the telephone communications circuit to become fully or partially inoperative.

10.19.2.2 Two-way telephone communications circuit installation conductors shall be monitored for short circuit fault conditions that would cause the telephone communications circuit to become fully or partially inoperative.

10.19.2.3 Two-way telephone communications circuit fault conditions shall result in a trouble signal in accordance with Section 10.15.

The paragraphs under 10.19.2 require that the installation conductors of a two-way telephone circuit be monitored for both open and short-circuit fault conditions. These fault conditions will result in a trouble signal in accordance with Section 10.15.

10.20 Documentation and Notification

10.20.1 Documentation shall be in accordance with Chapter 7.

10.20.2 The authority having jurisdiction shall be notified prior to installation or alteration of equipment or wiring.

Documentation submittal requirements for alarm and signaling systems have been relocated to Chapter 7 in the 2013 edition of the Code. Many authorities having jurisdiction require a permit for the installation or modification of a system prior to that work occurring. A wise practice is to contact the local authority having jurisdiction to determine if a permit is needed and what the submittal requirements may entail. Additionally, there are many times when more than one authority having jurisdiction may be interested in the work that will be occurring, and while nongovernmental authorities having jurisdiction may not issue a permit for proposed work, they may be in a position to approve or deny the proposed installation on behalf of the owner or insurance carrier. Due diligence is always a vital key.

10.21* Impairments

A.10.21 The term *impairments* encompasses a broad range of circumstances wherein a fire alarm system or portion thereof is taken out of service for a variety of reasons. Fire alarm systems are routinely impaired in order to perform hot work (e.g., open flame operations) in areas with automatic detection, construction, painting, etc., as well as to conduct normal fire alarm system maintenance and testing. Impairments can be limited to specific initiating devices and/or functions (e.g., disconnecting the supervising station connection during system testing), or they can involve taking entire systems or portions of systems out of service. This section is intended to help building owners control impairments of the fire alarm system(s) in their building(s) and to ensure that systems are restored to full operation and/or returned to service afterward.

Additional requirements for impairments and out-of-service conditions exist in 14.2.2.2.

Requirements addressing impairments to fire alarm systems are located in this chapter to provide a program to manage these occurrences. Impairments can be caused by system defects or by out-of-service events. System defects and malfunctions continue to be addressed in the testing and maintenance chapter. Refer to 14.2.2.2 and related commentary.

10.21.1 The system owner or their designated representative shall be notified when a system or part thereof is impaired. Impairments to systems shall include out-of-service events.

10.21.2 A record shall be maintained by the system owner or designated representative for a period of 1 year from the date the impairment is corrected.

10.21.3 The supervising station shall report to the authority having jurisdiction any fire alarm system for which required monitoring has been terminated.

10.21.4* The service provider shall report to the authority having jurisdiction any fire alarm system that is out of service more than 8 hours.

A.10.21.4 It is important for the authority having jurisdiction, typically the local fire official, to be informed when fire alarm systems have been out of service for more than 8 hours so appropriate measures can be taken. Out of service is meant to be the entire system or a substantial portion thereof.

Subsections 10.21.3 and 10.21.4 are intended to provide the authorities having jurisdiction with additional information relative to signaling system status and the status of system monitoring within their jurisdiction. Subsection 10.21.3 requires the supervising station to notify the authority having jurisdiction when monitoring of an alarm system, often a requirement of local building and fire codes and NFPA *101*, is terminated. With this information, the authority having jurisdiction can follow up on the cause of monitoring termination and attempt to reestablish the monitoring service.

Subsection 10.21.4 requires that the service provider report to the authority having jurisdiction any system that is totally, or substantially, out of service for more than 8 hours. A service technician should be dispatched, based on the monitoring or maintenance/servicing contracts in place, by the supervising station, the owner, or the owner's representative to make necessary repairs to a system that is not in full service.

While the Code does not specifically indicate how the reporting is to occur, ultimately it should be in the form approved by the authority having jurisdiction. The use of faxes, email, or other electronic media that provides prompt notification is desirable.

10.21.5* Where required, mitigating measures acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction shall be implemented for the period that the system is impaired.

A.10.21.5 The need for mitigating measures is typically determined on a case-by-case basis. This considers the building, occupancy type, nature and duration of impairment, building occupancy level during impairment period, active work being conducted on the fire alarm system during the impairment, condition of other fire protection systems and features (i.e., sprinklers, structural compartmentation, etc.), and hazards and assets at risk.

Appropriate mitigating measures range from simple occupant notification to full-time fire watch. Determining factors vary from testing-related impairments and maintenance activities during normal business through extensive impairments to high-value, high-hazard situations.

10.21.6 The system owner or owner's designated representative shall be notified when an impairment period is completed or discontinued.

10.22* Unwanted Alarms

For the purpose of reporting, alarm signals that are not the result of hazardous conditions shall be classified as Unwanted and subclassified as one of the following:

(1) Malicious alarm
(2) Nuisance alarm
(3) Unintentional alarm
(4) Unknown alarm

Definitions for various types of unwanted alarms are new in the 2013 edition of the Code and provide guidance regarding the classification of alarm signals received that are not the result of a potentially hazardous situation. See 3.3.307 for specific definitions.

A.10.22 See 3.3.307 for the definitions of unwanted alarms.

References Cited in Commentary

ANSI S3.41, *American National Standard Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal*, 1990 edition, American National Standards Institute, Inc., New York, NY.

NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code®*, 2011 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 71, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Signaling Systems for Central Station Service*, 1989 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA *101®*, *Life Safety Code®*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 110, *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*, 2013 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 111, *Standard on Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems*, 2013 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 731, *Standard for the Installation of Electronic Premises Security Systems*, 2011 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 5000®, *Building Construction and Safety Code®*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

Reserved Chapter

In the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72®, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, Chapter 11 is reserved for future use.

CHAPTER

12

Circuits and Pathways

Chapter 12 was a new chapter in the 2010 edition of the Code. The information that formed the basis for this chapter was originally found in the chapter on the fundamentals of fire alarm systems and in the chapter on protected premises fire alarm systems. In previous editions of the Code, the requirements for circuit performance were essentially limited to initiating device circuits, signaling line circuits, and notification appliance circuits. Specific performance requirements for other types of fire alarm circuits were not available, such as those that control fire suppression systems or various emergency control functions. Additionally, with the advent of mass notification systems, which are now addressed under emergency communications systems in Chapter 24, a more precise means of identifying circuit performance was needed. It would be confusing to have two sets of differing performance criteria for fire alarm systems and for emergency communications systems. Also confusing would be to have the requirements of emergency communications systems referencing fire alarm–specific requirements.

The solution was to create a new chapter to generally cover wiring requirements and circuit and pathway performance designations. Note that the terms *circuits* and *pathways* are somewhat redundant. However, in the transition to the new chapter, the term *circuit* was retained even though the term *pathway* includes any type of circuit. By placing the wiring requirements and the performance designations into a single chapter that is not designated for any specific type of application, the requirements and designations can be referenced by any other chapter. In some cases, additional requirements are included in chapters that cover specific applications.

In the 2010 edition, the means of designating the performance requirements of circuits was changed significantly. Pathways were still designated by class, although the classes expanded to include Classes A, B, C, D, E, and X, depending on their performance. Pathways were also designated by a level of survivability ranging from Level 0 to Level 3. The methods of designating pathway performance and survivability were chosen with the idea that the designations can be used for any type of fire alarm circuit and still retain flexibility in the Code to accommodate pathway designations and levels of survivability for other applications.

The following list is a summary of significant changes to the chapter on circuits and pathways in the 2013 edition:

- Revised requirements for Classes A, B, and X in 12.3.1, 12.3.2, and 12.3.6
- Relocated Class A and Class X circuit separation requirements from 23.4.2.2 to 12.3.7
- New Section 12.5 containing requirements for shared pathways and Annex A material pertaining to the use of signaling line circuits that may share paths for both life safety and non–life safety data
- Relocated monitoring integrity and circuit performance requirements from 10.17.1 to Section 12.6

12.1 Application

12.1.1 Pathways (interconnections) shall be designated based on the performance characteristics defined in this chapter.

The Code requires that pathways be designated by performance class and survivability level, but Chapter 12 does not require any specific class or level for a particular application. Unless another chapter designates specific performance requirements, the enabling code, standard, or authority having jurisdiction designates the required performance class and survivability level. Otherwise, the system designer is responsible for conducting an evaluation (see 23.4.3.1) to determine the class and level to be provided. See 23.4.3.2 for the items to be considered as part of this evaluation for fire alarm systems.

12.1.2 The requirements of Chapter 14 shall apply.

Chapter 14 details the requirements for inspection, testing, and maintenance of all parts of a system, including circuits and pathways.

12.2 General

12.2.1* Performance and survivability characteristics of signaling pathways (interconnections) shall comply with the defined designations of this chapter.

The designation of circuit class is dependent on the performance of the circuit under various conditions. These conditions, as described in 12.3.1 through 12.3.6, include requirements for operation under fault conditions, as well as whether the circuit contains a redundant pathway. In addition to the pathway performance designations detailed in Chapter 12, other chapters may specify additional requirements for pathways in specific types of systems. See 12.3.7 (23.4.2.2 in the 2010 edition) for specific requirements on the separation of conductors in a fire alarm system.

A.12.2.1 In the 2007 edition of *NFPA 72*, initiating device circuit, signaling line circuit, and notification appliance circuit performance class/style tables were rooted in "copper" wiring methods. Fire alarm control units use new communication technologies, such as Ethernet, fiber optics, and wireless, which do not fit in the "copper" wiring methods.

The initiating device circuit, signaling line circuit, and notification appliance circuit performance class/style tables from previous editions of the Code have been included as Table A.12.3(a), Table A.12.3(b), and Table A.12.3(c). Abnormal conditions referred to in the text include a single open; a single ground; a wire-to-wire short; a wire-to-wire short and single open; a wire-to-wire short and single ground; an open and a ground; and a loss of carrier/channel interface.

12.2.2 A pathway (interconnection) class designation shall be dependent on the pathway (interconnection) capability to continue to operate during abnormal conditions.

12.2.3 The designation of the pathways shall be permitted to also include the performance of the pathway (interconnection) to survivability from attack by fire.

In addition to having a class designation, the pathway may also be assigned a survivability level. While the means of providing survivability for a pathway can offer some level of mechanical protection that may be useful for situations other than a fire, currently the levels of survivability described in the Code are for protection against fire damage to the pathway. See the commentary following Section 12.4.

12.2.4 The installation of all pathway wiring, cable, and equipment shall be in accordance with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, and the applicable requirements of 12.2.4.1 through 12.2.4.4. (SIG-FUN)

The installation of wiring, circuits, and pathways is required to comply with the minimum requirements of *NFPA 70®*, *National Electrical Code®* (*NEC®*). It is important to understand that the primary concern of *NFPA 70* is to ensure that the installation does not pose an electrocution or fire hazard. In addition to the safety requirements of *NFPA 70*, the installation must also comply with the installation requirements provided by the fire alarm equipment manufacturer.

12.2.4.1 Optical fiber cables installed as part of the fire alarm system shall meet the requirements of *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Article 770, and be protected against physical damage in accordance with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Article 760. (SIG-FUN)

12.2.4.2 All non-power-limited and power-limited signaling system circuits entering a building shall be provided with transient protection. (SIG-FUN)

Paragraph 12.2.4.2 was revised in the 2013 edition to require transient protection for all signaling circuits entering a building. In the previous edition transient protection was specified based on reference to Article 760 of the *NEC*, which includes provisions in 760.32 for when transient protection is required. Conformance with Article 760 of the *NEC* is still required in 12.2.4.3 for fire alarm system wiring and equipment. Thus, while the requirements of 760.32 still apply, the mandate in 12.2.4.2 essentially renders them moot. Section 760.32 of the *NEC*, shown for reference, reads as follows:

> **760.32 FIRE ALARM CIRCUITS EXTENDING BEYOND ONE BUILDING.**
> Power-limited fire alarm circuits that extend beyond one building and run outdoors either shall meet the installation requirements of Parts II, III, and IV of Article 800 or shall meet the installation requirements of Part I of Article 300. Non–power-limited fire alarm circuits that extend beyond one building and run outdoors shall meet the installation requirements of Part I of Article 300 and the applicable sections of Part I of Article 225. [**70**:760.32]

Paragraph 12.2.4.2 is specific to power-limited and non–power-limited signaling circuits. Power limiting is accomplished by the equipment manufacturer by significantly limiting the amount of energy available to the circuit, thereby increasing electrical safety. A testing laboratory "lists" a power source as power-limited when it tests and verifies that the power available from the source is limited in accordance with *NEC* Chapter 9, Tables 12(A) and 12(B).

A power-limited circuit is one that is supplied by a current-limiting power source complying with *NEC* 760.121, such as a listed PLFA or Class 3 transformer, a listed PLFA or Class 3 power supply, or listed equipment marked to identify the PLFA power source.

A non–power-limited circuit power source is one that complies with *NEC* 760.41 and 760.43, and the output voltage is not more than 600 volts, nominal.

Most fire alarm systems installed today are systems that utilize power-limited circuits. In the most general terms, power-limited circuits operate in the 12- or 24-volt direct current (DC) range, although they may employ higher voltages.

Power-limited and non–power-limited circuits have cable marking (labeling) requirements outlined in the *NEC* and must remain so unless a circuit is changed in the field and the equipment is appropriately reclassified.

As a point of information, Part III of *NEC* Article 800 addresses requirements for the use of listed primary protective devices under certain conditions of exposure to light or power conductors or lightning. (Listed primary protective devices include both fuse and fuseless types. They are intended to protect equipment, wiring, and personnel against the effects of excessive potentials and currents caused by lightning. Refer to UL 497B, *Standard for Protectors for Data Communication and Fire-Alarm Circuits*.)

Designers and installers should consult with the fire alarm or signaling system manufacturer and manufacturers of transient voltage surge suppressors for proper selection and installation of primary protective devices. The selection of protection for circuits should consider how the whole fire alarm or signaling system is being used. For example, protective devices are available that can be installed in series or in parallel.

A series protective device might dissipate small transients to ground and allow the protected circuit to continue to operate. But when subjected to a large transient, a series protective device will fail open. The circuit will no longer be operational, but the equipment will have been protected and will not be subjected to any secondary transients. Most fire alarm circuits that open will result in a trouble condition. Some emergency control functions that are wired as Class D per 12.3.4 will cause the control function to operate (in a fail-safe mode) when the circuit is opened. In the case of a primary power supply circuit, the open circuit will result in a trouble condition and the system will transfer to secondary power.

A parallel protective device dissipates the energy of transients to ground but leaves the protected circuit operational. In the event of a large transient, the protective device might protect the circuit and be destroyed in the process. The circuit remains operational, but it no longer has any protection against subsequent transients.

Most protective devices have a visual means to indicate failure. Others also have a set of contacts that can be monitored to signal failure. The choice of a series or a parallel protective device should consider the mission of the system, the use of the particular circuit, the impact of circuit failure, the likelihood and the impact of secondary transients, and the response and repair capabilities of the owner or service company.

12.2.4.3* Fire alarm system wiring and equipment, including all circuits controlled and powered by the fire alarm system, shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this Code and of *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Article 760. (SIG-FUN)

All fire alarm system wiring installations must conform to the requirements of *NFPA 70*. The *NEC* provides general wiring methods and requirements in Chapter 1 through Chapter 4. Article 760, Fire Alarm Systems, contained in *NEC* Chapter 7, supplements and modifies the requirements of Chapter 1 through Chapter 4 specifically for fire alarm systems. The wiring methods permitted in Article 760 include the use of Chapter 3 wiring methods as well as the use of specific types of non–power-limited and power-limited cables. The wiring method used must be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, any listing limitations, and the requirements of Article 760.

One of the general requirements of *NEC* Article 760 that applies to all fire alarm system wiring is the requirement in 760.30, which reads as follows:

> **760.30 FIRE ALARM CIRCUIT IDENTIFICATION.**
> Fire alarm circuits shall be identified at terminal and junction locations in a manner that helps to prevent unintentional signals on fire alarm system circuit(s) during testing and servicing of other systems. [**70**:760.30]

One possible way to facilitate circuit identification is to use a terminal cabinet with permanently mounted and labeled terminals, such as the one shown in Exhibit 12.1.

Other common methods might include the painting of fire alarm system circuit junction box covers red and/or labeling them by some method, using the words "FIRE ALARM." Some jurisdictions have gone to the extreme, requiring that all conduits carrying fire alarm system circuits be red. Other jurisdictions have required a red stripe every 10 ft (3.0 m) or red fittings where specific lengths of conduit are joined for fire alarm system circuit conduits.

EXHIBIT 12.1

Fire Alarm Terminal Cabinet. (Source: Hughes Associates, Inc., Warwick, RI)

A.12.2.4.3 Fire alarm systems include fire detection and alarm notification, guard's tour, sprinkler waterflow, and sprinkler supervisory systems. Circuits controlled and powered by the fire alarm system include circuits for the control of building systems safety functions, elevator capture, elevator shutdown, door release, smoke doors and damper control, fire doors and damper control, and fan shutdown, but only where these circuits are powered by and controlled by the fire alarm system. [**70:**760.1 Informational Note No.1] (SIG-FUN)

Class 1, 2, and 3 circuits are defined in Article 725 (of *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*). [**70:**760.1 Informational Note No. 2]

12.2.4.4* Wiring methods permitted by other sections of this Code to resist attack by fire shall be installed in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions and the requirements of *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Article 760. (SIG-FUN)

A.12.2.4.4 It is important for the intended functionality of circuit integrity cable or electrical circuit protective systems to follow manufacturer's installation instructions. An electrical circuit protective system has detailed installation requirements, and additional requirements can be found in the manufacturer's installation instructions, *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, or the listing organizations' guide information.

12.2.5 Ground Connections.

12.2.5.1 All fire alarm systems shall test free of grounds.

Exception: Parts of circuits or equipment that are intentionally and permanently grounded to provide ground-fault detection, noise suppression, emergency ground signaling, and circuit protection grounding shall be permitted. (SIG-FUN)

12.2.5.2* On conductive pathways, operational capability shall be maintained during the application of a single ground connection. (SIG-FUN)

A.12.2.5.2 Technologies that do not use metallic conductors (e.g., wireless or optical fiber) are not affected by ground connections.

12.3* Pathway Class Designations

Pathways shall be designated as Class A, Class B, Class C, Class D, Class E, or Class X, depending on their performance.

Although the pathway class designations are in alphabetical order, the Code simply describes the performance requirements of each class. The Code does not imply a preference of one class of circuit over another for a particular application. The enabling codes, standards, authority having jurisdiction, or system designer determine the pathway class that best meets the site-specific conditions and design objectives for a particular application. The circuit designations were also set up with the intention of accommodating additional types of circuits in the future.

The Class X reference is intended to describe signaling line circuit pathways described as Class A, Style 7, in previous editions of *NFPA 72®, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code.*

A.12.3 The intent of the circuit designations is not to create a hierarchal ranking; rather it is to provide guidance on the levels of performance.

The initiating device circuit, signaling line circuit, and notification appliance circuit performance class/style tables from previous editions of the Code have been included as Table A.12.3(a), Table A.12.3(b), and Table A.12.3(c) but have been modified to include the enhanced class references. These tables reflect the classifications as applied to fire alarm systems. Some of the operations are a combination of the requirements of Chapter 12 in conjunction with the requirements of Chapters 10 and 23. Singular ground-fault conditions that do not affect operation of the pathway are not specifically covered in Chapter 12, but are covered by the requirements of other chapters. Users of the Chapter 12 designations should review whether there are other abnormal conditions not specified in Chapter 12 that the pathways need to annunciate and operate through for their application.

***TABLE A.12.3(a)** Performance of Initiating Device Circuits (IDCs)*

NFPA 72-2007 Class	*B*			*A*		
NFPA 72-2010 Class	*B*			*A*		
	Alm	*Trbl*	*ARC*	*Alm*	*Trbl*	*ARC*
Abnormal Condition	*1*	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*	*6*
Single open	—	X	—	—	X	R
Single ground	—	X	R	—	X	R

Alm: Alarm. Trbl: Trouble. ARC: Alarm receipt capability during abnormal condition. R: Required capability. X: Indication required at protected premises and as required by Chapter 26.

***TABLE A.12.3(b)** Performance of Signaling Line Circuits (SLCs)*

NFPA 72-2007 Class	*B*			*A*			*A*		
Style	*4*			*6*			*7*		
NFPA 72-2010 Class	*B*			*A*			*X*		
	Alarm	*Trouble*	*ARC*	*Alarm*	*Trouble*	*ARC*	*Alarm*	*Trouble*	*ARC*
Abnormal Condition	*1*	*2*	*3*	*4*	*5*	*6*	*7*	*8*	*9*
Single open	—	X	—	—	X	R	—	X	R
Single ground	—	X	R	—	X	R	—	X	R
Wire-to-wire short	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	R
Wire-to-wire short and open	—	X	—	—	X		—	X	—
Wire-to-wire short and ground	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	—
Open and ground	—	X	—	—	X	R	—	X	R
Loss of carrier (if used)/ channel interface	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	—

ARC: Alarm receipt capability during abnormal condition. R: Required capability. X: Indication required at protected premises and as required by Chapter 26.

***TABLE A.12.3(c)** Notification Appliance Circuits (NACs)*

NFPA 72-2007 Class	*B*		*A*	
NFPA 72-2010 Class	*B*		*A*	
	Trouble Indications at Protective Premise	*Alarm Capability During Abnormal Condition*	*Trouble Indications at Protective Premise*	*Alarm Capability During Abnormal Condition*
Abnormal Condition	*1*	*2*	*3*	*4*
Single open	X	-	X	R
Single ground	X	R	X	R
Wire-to-wire short	X	-	X	-

X: Indication required at protected premises and as required by Chapter 26. R: Required capability.

12.3.1* Class A. A pathway shall be designated as Class A when it performs as follows:

(1) It includes a redundant path.
(2) Operational capability continues past a single open, and the single open fault shall result in the annunciation of a trouble signal.
(3) Conditions that affect the intended operation of the path are annunciated as a trouble signal.
(4) Operational capability is maintained during the application of a single ground fault.
(5) A single ground condition shall result in the annunciation of a trouble signal.

A Class A pathway most closely resembles the performance requirements of a Class A circuit.

Exception: Requirements in 12.3.1(4) and (5) shall not apply to nonconductive pathways (e.g., wireless or fiber).

A.12.3.1 The Class A references for initiating device circuit and notification appliance circuit performance have been changed to eliminate the need for alarm receipt capability during a single ground or annunciation of a single ground fault. The signaling line circuit performance has changed to provide a clear separation between the Class A Style 6 and Class A Style 7 performance. The Class A Style 7 performance is now defined as Class X.

Fiber optic or wireless pathways are examples of Class A circuitry not impaired by earth ground connection, and short-circuits, and therefore do not annunciate those conditions as a fault. Users of the code are advised that fire alarm circuits still require alarm receipt capability during a single ground. See Chapter 23.

12.3.2* Class B. A pathway shall be designated as Class B when it performs as follows:

(1) It does not include a redundant path.
(2) Operational capability stops at a single open.
(3) Conditions that affect the intended operation of the path are annunciated as a trouble signal.
(4) Operational capability is maintained during the application of a single ground fault.
(5) A single ground condition shall result in the annunciation of a trouble signal.

Exception: Requirements in 12.3.2(4) and (5) shall not apply to nonconductive pathways (e.g., wireless or fiber).

A Class B pathway most closely resembles the performance requirements of a Class B circuit.

A.12.3.2 The Class B references for initiating device circuit, signaling line circuit, and notification appliance circuit performance have been changed to eliminate the need for alarm receipt capability during a single ground or annunciation of a single ground fault. Users of the code are advised that fire alarm circuits still require alarm receipt capability during a single ground. *(See Chapter 23.)*

12.3.3* Class C. A pathway shall be designated as Class C when it performs as follows:

(1) It includes one or more pathways where operational capability is verified via end-to-end communication, but the integrity of individual paths is not monitored.
(2) A loss of end-to-end communication is annunciated.

A.12.3.3 The Class C reference is new and is intended to describe technologies that supervise the communication pathway by polling or continuous communication "handshaking" such as the following:

(1) Fire alarm control unit or supervising station connections to a wired LAN, WAN, or Internet
(2) Fire alarm control unit or supervising station connections to a wireless LAN, WAN, and Internet

(3) Fire alarm control unit or supervising station connections to a wireless (proprietary communications)
(4) Fire alarm control unit digital alarm communicator transmitter or supervising station digital alarm communicator receiver connections to the public switched telephone network

Individual pathway segments are not required to be monitored. Supervision is accomplished by end to end communications.

12.3.4* Class D. A pathway shall be designated as Class D when it has fail-safe operation, where no fault is annunciated, but the intended operation is performed in the event of a pathway failure.

A.12.3.4 The Class D reference is intended to describe pathways that are not supervised but have a fail-safe operation that performs the intended function when the connection is lost. Examples of such pathways include the following:

(1) Power to door holders where interruption of the power results in the door closing
(2) Power to locking hardware that release upon an open circuit or fire alarm operation

12.3.5* Class E. A pathway shall be designated as Class E when it is not monitored for integrity.

A.12.3.5 The Class E reference is new and is intended to describe pathways that do not require supervision as described in Section 12.6.

12.3.6* Class X. A pathway shall be designated as Class X when it performs as follows:

(1) It includes a redundant path.
(2) Operational capability continues past a single open, and the single open fault shall result in the annunciation of a trouble signal.
(3) Operational capability continues past a single short-circuit, and the single short-circuit fault shall result in the annunciation of a trouble signal.
(4) Operational capability continues past a combination open fault and ground fault.
(5) Conditions that affect the intended operation of the path are annunciated as a trouble signal.
(6) Operational capability is maintained during the application of a single ground fault.
(7) A single ground condition shall result in the annunciation of a trouble signal.

Exception: Requirements in 12.3.6(3), (4), (6), and (7) shall not apply to nonconductive pathways (e.g., wireless or fiber).

A.12.3.6 The Class X reference is new and is intended to describe pathways as described as Class A Style 7 of the signaling line circuit performance of Table A.12.3(b). *(Also see A.12.3.)*

12.3.7* Class A and Class X circuits using physical conductors (e.g., metallic, optical fiber) shall be installed such that the outgoing and return conductors, exiting from and returning to the control unit, respectively, are routed separately. The outgoing and return (redundant) circuit conductors shall be permitted in the same cable assembly (i.e., multi-conductor cable), enclosure, or raceway only under the following conditions:

(1) For a distance not to exceed 10 ft (3.0 m) where the outgoing and return conductors enter or exit the initiating device, notification appliance, or control unit enclosures
(2) For single raceway drops to individual devices or appliances
(3) For single raceway drops to multiple devices or appliances installed within a single room not exceeding 1000 ft^2 (93 m^2) in area

In general, the intent of the Code is that the redundant pathways provided by a Class A and Class X circuit be physically separated to provide some degree of protection against a single point of failure from disabling the entire circuit or pathway. For example, providing separation between cables, conduits, and raceways minimizes the potential loss of all circuit functionality due to severing of a single cable, conduit, or raceway. The exceptions to this section address situations in which a single event might disrupt operation of a single device or appliance or all devices and appliances in a limited area but would not generally result in loss of function for the entire circuit.

Paragraph 12.3.7(1) applies to cable assemblies, enclosures, and raceways. Exhibit 12.2 illustrates 12.3.7(1).

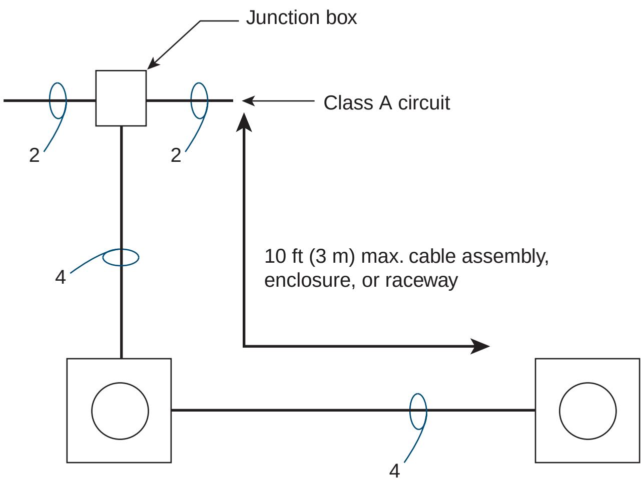


EXHIBIT 12.2
Use of the 10 ft (3.0 m) Allowance.

Paragraph 12.3.7(2) applies only to conduit/raceway systems and not to cables. A drop to a single device or appliance limits exposure of the conductors. Even if all four conductors to the device or appliance were cut or damaged by fire, only the single device or appliance would be lost. Exhibit 12.3 illustrates 12.3.7(2).

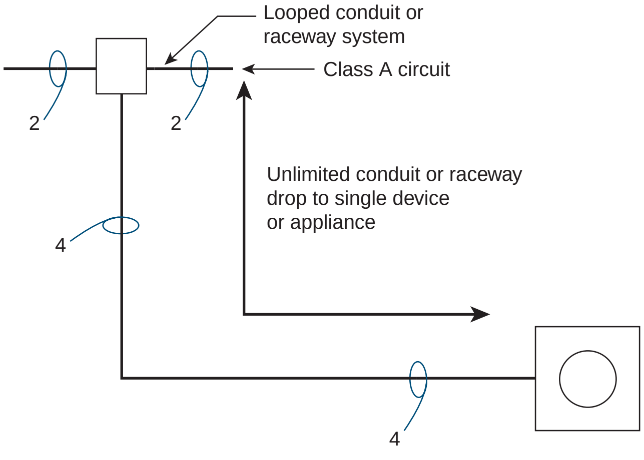
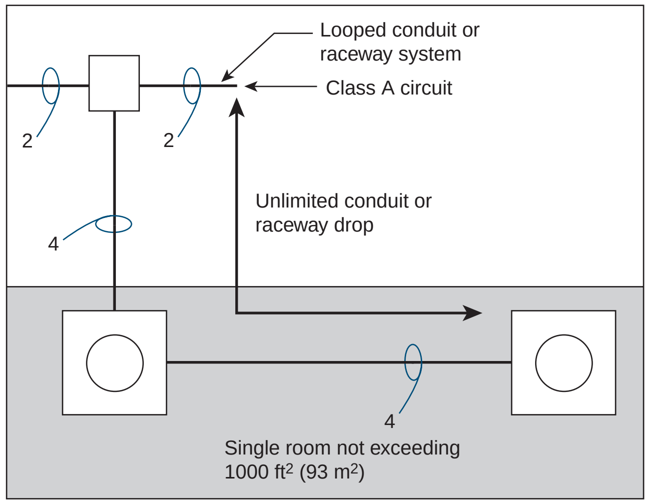


EXHIBIT 12.3
Single Drop to Individual Device or Appliance.

Paragraph 12.3.7(3) applies only to conduit/raceway systems and not to cables. A drop to a room of 1000 ft² (93 m²) or less in size limits exposure of the circuit. Even if all four conductors to the room are cut or damaged, only a small number of devices or appliances are likely to be lost. Exhibit 12.4 illustrates 12.3.7(3).

EXHIBIT 12.4

Single Drop to Single Room Not Exceeding 1000 ft² (93 m²).



A.12.3.7 A goal of 12.3.7 is to provide adequate separation between the outgoing and return cables. This separation is required to help ensure protection of the cables from physical damage. The recommended minimum separation to prevent physical damage is 12 in. (300 mm) where the cable is installed vertically and 48 in. (1.22 m) where the cable is installed horizontally.

Separation of the outgoing and return conductors of a Class A or Class X circuit minimizes the potential for complete loss of the circuit due to mechanical damage at a single location. Installing all the conductors in one cable or conduit subjects the circuit to complete loss if the cable or conduit is cut or otherwise damaged.

The separation distances in A.12.3.7 are recommended minimums. The 12 in. (300 mm) separation distance in vertical installations was selected because this spacing would be the minimum size of most vertical pipe or wiring chases in existing buildings. The minimum 48 in. (1.22 m) separation recommended for horizontal installations is the minimum width of most corridors in existing buildings. In both cases, the idea is that in the worst case the outgoing conductors would follow one side of the chase or corridor, and the return conductors would follow the opposite side. Ideally, the conductors would be separated as far as possible to ensure protection from mechanical damage.

12.4 Pathway Survivability

All pathways shall comply with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*.

Chapter 12 does not require any specific level of survivability, but it provides various options when other chapters, codes, standards, or authorities having jurisdiction require survivability. Prescriptive requirements for pathway survivability appear in the Code for pathways included as a part of emergency communications systems (see 24.3.6 and 24.4.2.8.5.6) and a part of public emergency alarm reporting systems (see 27.6.3.1.3). Additionally and important to note, where survivability of circuits (or pathways) is required by another section of the Code, equal protection is required to be provided for power supply circuits (see 10.6.11.3.1.3).

The designer is permitted and in some cases required to conduct an analysis, document the approach, and provide technical justification for the pathway survivability selected (see 23.10.2, A.24.3.6.3, 24.3.6.12, and 24.4.3.4.2). This approach is similar to provisions elsewhere in the Code, where the system designer is responsible for conducting an analysis to determine the level of class of pathways (see 7.3.9.1 and 23.4.3.1).

While the Code lists the levels of survivability in ascending numerical order, the order is not intended to imply that one level of survivability is preferred over another for a specific application.

It is important to note that pathway survivability is intended to be limited to protection from fire events (see the defined term *pathway survivability* in 3.3.191), except for mass notification systems, for which the Code specifically cites that the designer is required to consider both fire and non-fire emergencies when determining risk tolerances for survivability (see 24.3.11.2).

12.4.1 Pathway Survivability Level 0. Level 0 pathways shall not be required to have any provisions for pathway survivability.

12.4.2 Pathway Survivability Level 1. Pathway survivability Level 1 shall consist of pathways in buildings that are fully protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*, with any interconnecting conductors, cables, or other physical pathways installed in metal raceways.

It should be noted that the intent of installed sprinklers in a sprinklered building is not necessarily to protect the fire alarm circuits. Even in a space protected by sprinklers, the fire alarm system circuits may burn through prior to sprinkler activation. The sprinklers improve the overall survivability of the building and, therefore, reduce the requirement for survivability of the circuits.

12.4.3 Pathway Survivability Level 2. Pathway survivability Level 2 shall consist of one or more of the following:

(1) 2-hour fire-rated circuit integrity (CI) cable
(2) 2-hour fire-rated cable system [electrical circuit protective system(s)]
(3) 2-hour fire-rated enclosure or protected area
(4) 2-hour performance alternatives approved by the authority having jurisdiction

12.4.4 Pathway Survivability Level 3. Pathway survivability Level 3 shall consist of pathways in buildings that are fully protected by an automatic sprinkler system in accordance with NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*, and one or more of the following:

(1) 2-hour fire-rated circuit integrity (CI) cable
(2) 2-hour fire-rated cable system [electrical circuit protective system(s)]
(3) 2-hour fire-rated enclosure or protected area
(4) 2-hour performance alternatives approved by the authority having jurisdiction

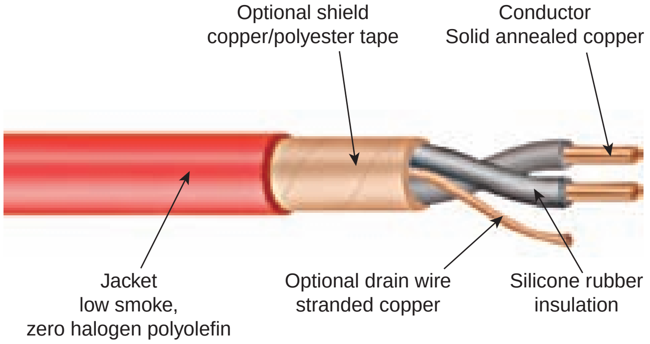
Subsections 12.4.3 and 12.4.4 each includes a list of four methods used for ensuring pathway survivability.

Fire alarm circuit integrity (CI) cables are addressed among the specific types of non–power-limited and power-limited cables that are permitted in Article 760. A "CI" suffix is added to the specific cable types to identify cables that meet the circuit integrity requirements. For example, Type NPLF-CI is a general-purpose (excluding riser, ducts, plenums, and other space used for environmental air) non–power-limited fire alarm circuit integrity cable and Type FPL-CI is a general-purpose power-limited fire alarm circuit integrity cable. Also refer to the test methods used to evaluate the fire-resistive performance of cables in UL 2196, *Standard for Tests of Fire Resistive Cables.*

An electrical circuit protective system is a system of cables and other materials designed and evaluated to ensure electrical circuit integrity upon exposure to a fire. The installation of these systems requires compliance with specific procedures using specific materials evaluated as a part of the listing of these systems. Some of these systems include the use of mineral-insulated cable as a part of the system. The requirements in *NEC* Article 332, Mineral-Insulated, Metal-Sheathed Cable: Type MI, also apply to the installation of mineral-insulated cable. Also refer to UL 1724, *Fire Tests for Electrical Circuit Protective Systems.*

Exhibits 12.5 and 12.6 show examples of circuit integrity cable and mineral-insulated cable.

EXHIBIT 12.5



Circuit Integrity (CI) Cable. (Source: Tyco Thermal Controls, Menlo Park, CA)

EXHIBIT 12.6

Mineral-Insulated (MI) Cable – Part of Electrical Circuit Protective System. [Source: Tyco Thermal Controls (Canada) Ltd./Pyrotenax]

The UL *Fire Resistance Directory,* Volume 2, identifies many types of construction that provide a 2-hour fire resistance rating. The enclosure can be constructed of masonry, concrete, or an assembly of classified products, such as metal studs and gypsum wallboard. To attain the desired fire rating, the enclosure must be constructed exactly as required by the listing. Any penetrations in the enclosure must be sealed in a manner that provides a fire resistance rating equivalent to the enclosure. Two-hour rated enclosures include 2-hour-rated exit stairwells, where building codes permit their use.

The authority having jurisdiction may approve other methods of providing protection. This might be a combination of installation methods and protection by the building structure. Technical justification must be provided by the designer to support the survivability design.

12.5* Shared Pathway Designations

Shared pathways shall be designated as Level 0, Level 1, Level 2, or Level 3, depending on their performance.

Section 12.5 is new to the 2013 edition of the Code. Subsections 12.5.1 through 12.5.4 provide pathway designations for signaling line circuits when they are being considered for both life safety and non-life safety applications. For example, 23.8.2.6 permits signaling line circuits to be shared; all signal control and transport equipment (such as routers, servers) located in a critical fire alarm or emergency control function interface device signaling path are required to be listed for fire alarm service unless they satisfy all of the conditions of 23.8.2.6.1 or utilize a listed barrier gateway in accordance with 23.8.2.6.2.

Section 12.5 establishes designations for shared pathways in terms of how life safety data and non-life safety data are prioritized or segregated. The use or assignment of these designations for a particular application is determined on the basis of evaluations performed by the system designer to meet system design criteria. These designations are intended to be used as labels to provide a common means of communicating the requirements at a particular installation. The labels are also intended to allow for transitions between different areas, buildings, or functions. For example, one area of the building might be specified to comply with Shared Pathway Level 2, and paths between buildings might be specified to comply with Shared Pathway Level 1. Unique application requirements and feasibility play a role in deciding which shared pathway to specify. It is important to note that the term *life safety data* in this section is referring to all signals generated by the life safety system; the section is not intended to create a division between fire alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals generated within a life safety system.

Pathway survivability levels are separate from and should not be confused with shared pathway levels. Pathway survivability (Level 0, Level 1, Level 2, and Level 3) is defined in Section 12.4; pathway survivability requirements are established and set forth in 24.3.6.

Although similarly designated, shared pathway level designations are separate and very different from pathway survivability levels. The shared pathway designations in Section 12.5 specify how data must be handled on signaling line circuits and equipment when the pathways are shared between life safety data and non–life safety data. Relative to shared pathway designations, three new terms are introduced: *prioritize*, *segregate*, and *dedicated*. Prioritize pertains to the priority of signaling; life safety data is given a higher priority and is to be processed before non–life safety data. Segregate is the separation of data such that life safety data are not intermingled with non–life safety data; such would be the case where life safety data are processed on the same network but are handled (or contained) separately, as within a VPN tunnel or VLAN, thus establishing data segregation.

Subsection 12.5.1 specifies that prioritization and segregation are not required for Shared Pathway Level 0; that is, both life safety data and non–life safety data can have equal priority and conveyed together. Shared Pathway Level 1, Shared Pathway Level 2, and Shared Pathway Level 3 pathways and their equipment are required to be more robust. Shared Pathway Level 1 does not require segregation of life safety data from non–life safety data, but prioritization is required. Shared Pathway Level 2 permits common equipment but requires segregation of data. Shared Pathway Level 3 requires dedicated equipment for life safety data; equipment cannot be shared.

The three established criteria for shared pathways levels pertain to (1) prioritization of life safety system data over non–life safety system data, (2) segregation on common pathways or not, and (3) all equipment and cables dedicated to the life safety system.

A.12.5 Shared pathway designations propose a list of shared pathways, some of which are only allowable for nonrequired functions. Other sections of this Code determine which of the shared pathways are allowed to be used as paths for required fire alarm signaling. Refer to 23.8.2.6 for shared communication requirements.

12.5.1* Shared Pathway Level 0. Level 0 pathways shall not be required to segregate or prioritize life safety data from non–life safety data.

A.12.5.1 In a Shared Pathway Level 0, common equipment can be used to establish life safety and non–life safety pathways.

12.5.2* Shared Pathway Level 1. Level 1 pathways shall not be required to segregate life safety data from non–life safety data, but shall prioritize all life safety data over non–life safety data.

A.12.5.2 In a Shared Pathway Level 1, common equipment can be used to establish life safety and non–life safety pathways.

12.5.3* Shared Pathway Level 2. Level 2 pathways shall segregate all life safety data from non–life safety data.

A.12.5.3 In a Shared Pathway Level 2, common equipment can be used to establish life safety and non–life safety pathways.

12.5.4* Shared Pathway Level 3. Level 3 pathways shall use equipment that is dedicated to the life safety system.

A.12.5.4 In a Shared Pathway Level 3, life safety equipment is not shared with equipment of non–life safety systems.

12.6* Monitoring Integrity and Circuit Performance of Installation Conductors and Other Signaling Channels (SIG-FUN)

A.12.6 The provision of a double loop or other multiple path conductor or circuit to avoid electrical monitoring is not acceptable.

Subsection 12.6.1 requires connections to devices and appliances to be made so that the opening of any installer's connection to the device or appliance causes a trouble signal. Many installers loop the conductor around the terminal without cutting the conductor and making the necessary two connections. If the wire is disconnected from the terminal, trouble may not be indicated. This practice is in violation of the Code. If a listed device installed on an initiating device circuit is furnished with pigtail connections, the installer must use separate in/out wires for each circuit passing into or through the device in order to prevent T-tapping of the device connections.

However, addressable devices on signaling line circuits typically use an interrogation/response routine to monitor for integrity. Some types of signaling line circuits can be wired without duplicate terminals; they are often T-tapped. The control unit interrogates each device on a regular basis and "knows" when a device has become disconnected.

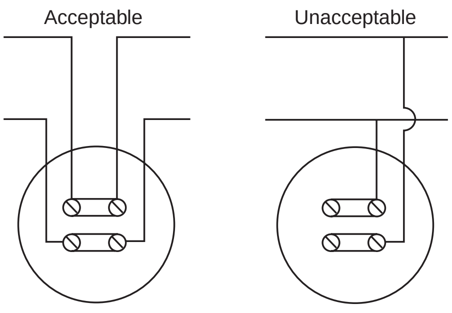
FAQ Where is T-tapping allowed and not allowed?

T-tapping is an acceptable practice for Class B signaling line circuits, when allowed by the designer. T-tapping is never allowed on an initiating device circuit, a notification appliance circuit, or a Class A or X signaling line circuit. Note that pathway class designations are addressed in Section 12.3.

Exhibit 12.7 shows a schematic example of how a device on an initiating device circuit should and should not be connected. Exhibits 12.8 and 12.9 illustrate typical field-wired equipment with duplicate terminal/leads. Exhibit 12.10 shows an example of where T-tapping is permitted.

12.6.1 Unless otherwise permitted or required by 12.6.3 through 12.6.14, all means of interconnecting equipment, devices, and appliances and wiring connections shall be monitored for the integrity of the interconnecting conductors or equivalent path so that the occurrence of a single open or a single ground-fault condition in the installation conductors or other signaling channels is automatically indicated within 200 seconds.

EXHIBIT 12.7



Acceptable and Unacceptable Connection of Device on Initiating Device Circuit.

EXHIBIT 12.8

Initiating Device Base Showing Duplicate Terminals. (Source: Hochiki America Corp., Buena Park, CA)

EXHIBIT 12.9

Initiating Device Showing Duplicate Leads. (Source: Edwards, Bradenton, FL)

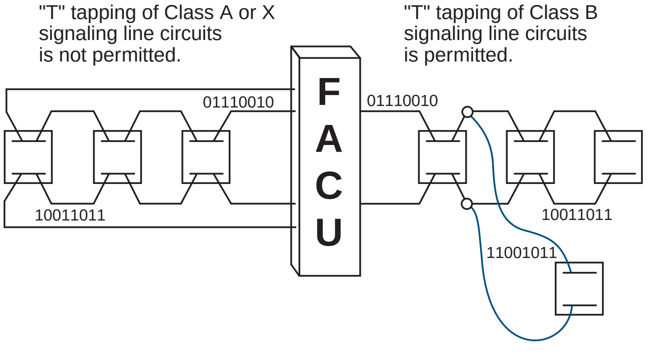


EXHIBIT 12.10

T-Tapping in Class B Signaling Line Circuits.

12.6.2 Unless otherwise permitted or required by 12.6.3 through 12.6.14, all means of interconnecting equipment, devices, and appliances and wiring connections shall be monitored for the integrity of the interconnecting conductors or equivalent path so that the restoration to normal of a single open or a single ground-fault condition in the installation conductors or other signaling channels is automatically indicated within 200 seconds. (SIG-FUN)

12.6.3 Shorts between conductors shall not be required to be monitored for integrity, unless required by 12.6.16, 12.6.17, and 10.19.2.

12.6.4 Monitoring for integrity shall not be required for a noninterfering shunt circuit, provided that a fault circuit condition on the shunt circuit wiring results only in the loss of the noninterfering feature of operation.

12.6.5 Monitoring for integrity shall not be required for connections to and between supplementary system components, provided that a single open, ground-fault, or short-circuit conditions of the supplementary equipment or interconnecting means, or both, do not affect the required operation of the fire alarm and/or signaling system.

See the commentary following the definition of the term *supplementary* (see 3.3.289) for further explanation.

12.6.6 Monitoring for integrity shall not be required for the circuit of an alarm notification appliance installed in the same room with the central control equipment, provided that the notification appliance circuit conductors are installed in conduit or are equivalently protected against mechanical injury.

12.6.7 Monitoring for integrity shall not be required for a trouble notification appliance circuit.

12.6.8* Monitoring for integrity shall not be required for the interconnection between listed equipment within a common enclosure.

A.12.6.8 This Code does not have jurisdiction over the monitoring integrity of conductors within equipment, devices, or appliances.

The requirement for monitoring applies only to installation conductors. The wiring within equipment, devices, or appliances is not required to be monitored for integrity.

12.6.9 Monitoring for integrity shall not be required for the interconnection between enclosures containing control equipment located within 20 ft (6 m) of each other where the conductors are installed in conduit or equivalently protected against mechanical injury.

12.6.10 Monitoring for integrity shall not be required for the conductors for ground-fault detection where a single ground-fault does not prevent the required normal operation of the system.

12.6.11 Monitoring for integrity shall not be required for central station circuits serving notification appliances within a central station.

12.6.12 Monitoring for integrity shall not be required for pneumatic rate-of-rise systems of the continuous line type in which the wiring terminals of such devices are connected in multiple across electrically supervised circuits.

12.6.13 Monitoring for integrity shall not be required for the interconnecting wiring of a stationary computer and the computer's keyboard, video monitor, mouse-type device, or touch screen, as long as the interconnecting wiring does not exceed 8 ft (2.4 m) in length; is a listed computer/data processing cable as permitted by *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*; and failure of cable does not cause the failure of the required system functions not initiated from the keyboard, mouse, or touch screen.

Paragraph 12.6.13 recognizes that the interconnecting wiring of certain listed equipment does not have to be monitored for integrity if a stated length of a particular type of cable is used and if a cable failure does not prevent the fire alarm system from performing a required system function.

12.6.14 Monitoring for integrity of the installation conductors for a ground-fault condition shall not be required for the communications and transmission channels extending from a supervising station to a subsidiary station(s) or protected premises, or both, that comply with the requirements of Chapter 26 and are electrically isolated from the fire alarm system (or circuits) by a transmitter(s), provided that a single ground-fault condition does not affect the required operation of the fire alarm system and/or signaling system.

12.6.15 Interconnection means shall be arranged so that a single break or single ground-fault does not cause an alarm signal.

12.6.16 A wire-to-wire short-circuit fault on any alarm notification appliance circuit shall result in a trouble signal in accordance with Section 10.15, except as permitted by 12.6.5, 12.6.6, or 12.6.11.

12.6.17 Where two or more systems are interconnected, the systems shall be connected using Class A, B, or X circuits as described in Section 12.3.

This paragraph requires that when two or more systems are interconnected, the interconnecting circuit conductors must be monitored for integrity. The systems may be interconnected fire alarm systems or a fire alarm system and an emergency communications system that are being interconnected and integrated.

12.7 Nomenclature

To identify the properties of the system(s) interconnections and survivability requirements, the following identification nomenclature shall be used:

(1) System(s) interconnections
(2) Survivability levels (not required if Level 0)
(3) Shared pathway levels (not required if Level 0)

This section explains the nomenclature for describing the pathway class and survivability level. The nomenclature "system(s) interconnections" in 12.7(1) is intended to refer to the pathway class designation. A Class B pathway installed to provide survivability Level 3 by using 2-hour fire-rated circuit integrity (CI) cable in a building fully protected by automatic sprinklers designed and installed in accordance with NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*, would be designated as B3. If no level of survivability is designated, it is considered to be Level 0.

Further examples (not all inclusive) are as follows:

- Designation A0 — a Class A pathway installed to provide survivability Level 0 (see 12.4.1)
- Designation A1 — a Class A pathway installed to provide survivability Level 1 installed in a building fully protected by an NFPA 13–compliant automatic sprinkler system (see 12.4.2)
- Designation A2 — a Class A pathway installed to provide survivability Level 2 by using a 2-hour fire-rated cable system (see 12.4.3)
- Designation A3 — a Class A pathway installed to provide survivability Level 3 installed in a building fully protected by an NFPA 13–compliant automatic sprinkler system and 2-hour fire-rated enclosures (see 12.4.4)

References Cited in Commentary

NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*, 2013 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.
NFPA 70®, National Electrical Code®, 2011 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.
UL 497B, *Standard for Protectors for Data Communications and Fire-Alarm Circuits*, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL, 2008.
UL 1724, *Fire Tests for Electrical Circuit Protective Systems,* Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL, 2006.
UL 2196, *Standard for Tests of Fire Resistive Cables*, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL, 2006.
UL *Fire Resistance Directory,* Volume 2, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL, 2012.

Reserved Chapter

In the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72®, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, Chapter 13 is reserved for future use.

CHAPTER

14

Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance

Chapter 14 covers the minimum requirements for inspection, testing, and maintenance of fire alarm systems, supervising station alarm systems, public emergency alarm reporting systems, emergency communications systems (ECSs), single- and multiple-station smoke and heat alarms, and household fire alarm systems. Chapter 14 includes requirements for visual inspection and inspection frequencies, testing and test methods, testing frequencies, maintenance requirements, and record keeping.

An important note is that the provisions of Chapter 1 apply in addition to those of Chapter 14. The use of equivalent test methods or test devices is permitted by the Code, provided their use complies with the equivalency rules in Section 1.5. Equivalent methods or devices must meet the intent of the requirements of Chapter 14, and evidence demonstrating equivalence must be provided to the authority having jurisdiction.

The following list is a summary of significant changes to Chapter 14 in the 2013 edition:

- Revised throughout to clarify that the inspection, testing, and maintenance requirements apply only to the systems, devices, and components covered by the Code
- Revised Table 14.3.1, addressing not only the inspection frequencies, but also inspection methods
- Revised Table 14.4.3.2, consolidating test frequency provisions and test method provisions from two separate tables into a single table
- Realignment of information in Table 14.3.1 and Table 14.4.3.2 so that the numbers in each table address the same system component (for example, item 22 in Table 14.3.1 details the inspection frequencies and methods for notification appliances, while item 22 in Table 14.4.3.2 addresses the testing frequency and test method for notification appliances)
- New 14.2.10, requiring a written test plan prior to conducting system testing

Questions were raised during the processing of the 2010 edition of *NFPA 72*®, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code,* concerning the scope of the inspection, testing, and maintenance requirements as they might apply to other systems interfaced with the fire alarm or signaling system in a building. This resulted in direction from the NFPA Standards Council to the Technical Correlating Committee (TCC) of *NFPA 72* to review the related issues and provide a recommendation for resolution. An Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance Summit was convened in May 2010 at NFPA headquarters and facilitated discussion among members of the *NFPA 72* technical committees and representatives of other NFPA technical committees impacted by *NFPA 72*, such as NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*; NFPA 20, *Standard for the Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection*; and NFPA 80, *Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives*. The main point of discussion centered on where the inspection, testing, and maintenance requirements of *NFPA 72* end and where the inspection, testing, and maintenance requirements of other codes and standards begin. For example, if a smoke detector connected to the building fire alarm system is arranged to release a fire/smoke damper upon activation of the smoke detector, must the operation of the fire/smoke damper be tested on the same frequency as the smoke detector? Or, if a sprinkler waterflow switch is arranged to start a smoke exhaust system in an atrium, must the operation of the smoke exhaust system be tested on the same frequency as the sprinkler waterflow switch? The results of the summit meeting discussions, along with several recommendations, were provided to the Standards Council for their consideration. Based on the report, the direction from the Standards Council was that, while recognizing that fire alarm systems interface with, monitor, and sometimes control a myriad of other building fire protection systems and features, the requirements of *NFPA 72* cover only the fire alarm and protective signaling systems. The inspection, testing, and maintenance of other building fire safety systems and features are to be addressed by the relevant codes and standards.

In practice, the inspection, testing, and maintenance of interfaced systems, such as sprinkler systems, smoke exhaust systems, and other similar systems, are conducted at the same time as the inspection, testing, and maintenance of the fire system. Recognizing that many building owners and authorities having jurisdiction might assume that tests of these interfaced systems are completed as part of the fire alarm system test, the Technical Committee on Testing and Maintenance of Fire Alarm Systems added a new requirement in 14.2.10 to require the development of a formal test plan prior to system testing. The intent of the test plan is to make clear to both the system owner and the authority having jurisdiction exactly what is to be tested and what is not included as part of the fire alarm or signaling system tests.

14.1 Application

14.1.1 The inspection, testing, and maintenance of systems, their initiating devices, and notification appliances shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

In 14.1.1 and other specific locations within Chapter 14, the term *system(s)* is used in lieu of the term *fire alarm system(s)* because the Code addresses the inspection, testing, and maintenance requirements of systems in addition to fire alarm systems. These systems include, but are not limited to, supervising station alarm systems, public emergency alarm reporting systems, emergency communications systems (ECSs), and other systems discussed herein (see 1.3.1 and 1.3.2).

Chapter 14 addresses inspection, testing, and maintenance requirements for systems and the initiating devices and notification appliances connected to them. The installation of these systems is covered by the requirements in other chapters of the Code. Listed smoke detection devices not connected to a fire alarm system (often called stand-alone detectors) are sometimes found in HVAC systems, door-releasing applications, and special hazard releasing devices. The requirements in Chapter 14, including sensitivity testing, apply to these types of detectors. (Note that smoke alarms are not tested or listed to operate door-releasing devices, HVAC controls, or special hazard systems and are not considered in this context to be stand-alone devices.)

Interfaced systems, such as the fire pump installation shown in Exhibit 14.1, may be monitored by the fire alarm system, but are not tested as part of the fire alarm system. Fire pump systems are inspected and tested in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 25, *Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems*.

14.1.2 The inspection, testing, and maintenance of single- and multiple-station smoke and heat alarms and household fire alarm systems shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

14.1.3 Procedures that are required by other parties and that exceed the requirements of this chapter shall be permitted.

As with other requirements in the Code, the inspection, testing, and maintenance requirements in Chapter 14 are considered minimum. In some cases the authority having jurisdiction may

EXHIBIT 14.1

Fire Pump Installation. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

impose more stringent requirements. For example, owners of large, high-value industrial facilities may establish corporate policies requiring more frequent system testing as part of their overall risk management strategy to minimize the potential for disruption of their operations.

14.1.4 The requirements of this chapter shall apply to both new and existing systems.

FAQ Are the requirements of Chapter 14 retroactive?

The requirements of Chapter 14 are retroactive as applied to an existing system because compliance does not require changes to the system equipment, devices, circuits, or functions. The committee intends that the most current edition of the Code be used for inspection, testing, and maintenance of both new and existing fire alarm and protective signaling systems. The requirements of the other chapters are generally not retroactive and apply only to new installations. The committee's intent is not to require changes in the function or arrangement of an existing system to comply with current inspection, testing, and maintenance requirements. Refer to Section 1.4 regarding retroactivity as applied in general to the Code.

14.1.5 The requirements of Chapter 7 shall apply where referenced in Chapter 14.

14.2 General

14.2.1 Purpose.

14.2.1.1* The purpose for initial and reacceptance inspections is to ensure compliance with approved design documents and to ensure installation in accordance with this Code and other required installation standards.

A.14.2.1.1 Initial and re-acceptance inspections are performed to ensure compliance with approved design documents whatever the quality or origin. This involves inspection to ensure that the correct equipment has been used and properly located and installed. Ensuring compliance helps to assure both operational reliability and mission reliability. This concept applies to any type of system, not just fire alarm and signaling systems. At this stage of a system's life, the responsibilities for such inspections rest with the designers of the systems and with the various applicable authorities having jurisdiction.

14.2.1.2* The purpose for initial and reacceptance tests of fire alarm and signaling systems is to ensure system operation in accordance with the design documents.

A.14.2.1.2 If a system is designed to meet a specific mission or set of goals, then operational testing will assure that the system has mission reliability. For example, during acceptance testing, the design ambient noise level might not be present. Authorities having jurisdiction and technicians should not be trying to achieve the +5/15 dB or +5/10 dB requirements at acceptance, as they might not know what the maximum average or peak noise levels are. They need only measure the system and determine if it meets the required design level. Therefore, the design level needs to be documented and communicated to them.

Acceptance and re-acceptance testing includes proper operation, and non-operation, of the fire alarm or signaling system's ability to properly interface to other systems. The best way to ensure a proper interface operation is to observe the actual operation of the interfaced system. However, exercising an emergency control function every time a related initiating device is activated might not be desirable or practical, or in some cases may not even be permitted. *NFPA 72* permits testing of the fire alarm or signaling system up to the end point connection to the interfaced system or emergency control function. Refer to A.14.4.3.2 Table 14.4.3.2 Item 24.

14.2.1.3* The purpose for periodic inspections is to assure that obvious damages or changes that might affect the system operability are visually identified.

Periodic inspections are intended to discover conditions affecting operation of the fire alarm system. This might include physical damage to system components, changes in environmental conditions, or changes in the physical layout of the building or space. For example, reconfiguration of the ceiling shown in Exhibit 14.2 resulted in the audible notification appliances being located above the drop ceiling, potentially affecting the sound pressure levels achieved in the space during an alarm condition.

EXHIBIT 14.2

Audible Notification Appliance Above Reconfigured Ceiling. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

A.14.2.1.3 Visual inspections contribute to the assurance of operational and mission reliability but do not ensure either.

14.2.1.4* The purpose for periodic testing is to statistically assure operational reliability.

Periodic inspection and testing do not necessarily ensure proper system operation or availability other than at the specific point in time of the inspection or test. The purpose of periodic inspections and tests is to minimize the potential time a system, function, or device might be out of service before discovery of the problem. For example, assume that during renovation work a smoke detector in the project area is covered with a plastic bag to prevent the entry of dust and dirt but is not removed at the conclusion of the project. If the facility has an inspection program that inspects smoke detectors only once each year, the detector could potentially be impaired for a year if the plastic bag was placed over the detector the day after the annual inspection. If the inspection period is semiannually as required by *NFPA 72*, the potential out-of-service time is reduced to six months. If the facility has a superior inspection program requiring all smoke detectors to be inspected each month, the maximum out-of-service time before discovery of the plastic bag would be one month.

A.14.2.1.4 Periodic testing of fire alarm and signaling systems is not necessarily done as a complete system test. *NFPA 72* requires parts of the systems to be tested at different frequencies. At any one particular test, only a fraction of the system can be tested. Periodic testing contributes to the assurance of operational and mission reliability but does not ensure either.

Periodic testing of the interface between a fire alarm or signaling system in some other system or emergency control function is permitted by *NFPA 72* to be performed without actually operating the interfaced system or function. Refer to A.14.4.3.2 Table 14.4.3.2 Item 24.

14.2.2 Performance.

14.2.2.1 Performance Verification. To ensure operational integrity, the system shall have an inspection, testing, and maintenance program.

14.2.2.1.1 Inspection, testing, and maintenance programs shall satisfy the requirements of this Code and conform to the equipment manufacturer's published instructions.

Subsection 14.2.2 reinforces the requirements in most fire codes for system testing. Paragraph 14.2.2.1.1 incorporates the "manufacturer's published instructions" into the Code requirements. Manufacturers are required to submit manufacturer's published instructions to the organization conducting product evaluations for the listing of their system or component. The listing organization reviews these instructions, including the manufacturer's inspection, testing, and maintenance instructions, as part of the evaluation during the listing process. These instructions are part of the listing for the product and should be enforced as code in accordance with 10.3.2 and 14.2.2.1.1. Verifying the correct operation of the system includes conformance with the Code, with the operational goals of the owner, and with the specifications of the designer. These goals and specifications should be included with the system design documentation. Refer to Section 7.3, 14.2.5, and Section 23.3. The Code is currently revised on a three-year cycle, whereas new product development or a refinement of an existing product may occur much faster. In some cases the speed of technological development exceeds the speed of Code development and revision. In the event of a conflict between the Code requirements and the manufacturer's published instructions, the manufacturer's requirements should prevail. This, however, is ultimately a decision for the authority having jurisdiction.

14.2.2.1.2 Inspection, testing, and maintenance programs shall verify correct operation of the system.

EXHIBIT 14.3

Installation with Missing Detector. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

14.2.2.2 Impairments/Deficiencies.

14.2.2.2.1 The requirements of Section 10.21 shall be applicable when a system is impaired.

14.2.2.2.2 System deficiencies shall be corrected.

It is the intent of the inspection and testing procedures in Chapter 14 to discover potential problems and deficiencies, and more importantly to ensure that they are corrected. Exhibit 14.3 shows an installation with a missing detector and the conductors twisted together to prevent a constant trouble signal. This condition was noted on multiple inspection and test reports, but there was no follow-up by the owner or authority having jurisdiction to confirm the rectification of the problem.

14.2.2.2.3 If a deficiency is not corrected at the conclusion of system inspection, testing, or maintenance, the system owner or the owner's designated representative shall be informed of the impairment in writing within 24 hours.

The owner or owner's designated representative needs to know of defects or problems discovered as part of the inspection and testing process so action can be initiated to correct or repair the problem or defect. Some problems or defects may be corrected during the course of an inspection or test. For example, a technician discovering a detector covered by tape or a manual fire alarm box obstructed by furniture could easily correct the problem by removing the tape or moving the furniture. Even though corrected, the problems should still be reported to the building owner or owner's designated representative to prevent a recurrence. If during the testing of a waterflow switch the technician discovers that it is not operational, the owner or owner's designated representative should be immediately notified so appropriate action can be initiated to repair the switch. In many cases the initial notification to the owner will likely be verbal, but the Code requires that all such notifications also be made in writing. Section 10.21 also covers administrative requirements for proper handling of all system impairments, including out-of-service events.

14.2.3 Responsibilities.

14.2.3.1* The property or building or system owner or the owner's designated representative shall be responsible for inspection, testing, and maintenance of the system and for alterations or additions to this system.

A.14.2.3.1 See definition of *Ownership* in 3.3.187.

The Code clearly establishes that the property owner, building owner, or system owner is responsible for ensuring that the system's inspection, testing, and maintenance requirements are met. The owner may designate a representative to assume this responsibility, but it must be in writing.

This requirement does not necessarily mean that the owner or the designated representative can legally perform any of the testing or maintenance of the system, which depends on the licensing laws of the applicable state or local jurisdiction. This requirement simply means that the owner or the owner's designated representative is responsible for ensuring that the system is properly tested and maintained in accordance with the requirements of this chapter.

The owner relationships are further explained in the context of system inspection, testing, and maintenance in A.3.3.187.

14.2.3.2 Where the property owner is not the occupant, the property owner shall be permitted to delegate the authority and responsibility for inspecting, testing, and maintaining the fire protection systems to the occupant, management firm, or managing individual through specific provisions in the lease, written use agreement, or management contract.

In accordance with 14.2.3.1, the property, building, or system owner is responsible for inspecting, testing, and maintaining the system. Most building owners do not have the trained personnel required to complete these tasks. Delegation of this responsibility may be to a management firm, tenant, or other individual or organization. This delegation must be in writing, such as a formal agreement between the parties involved. For a leased or rented building, the delegation may be included as part of the lease or rental agreement.

14.2.3.3 Inspection, testing, or maintenance shall be permitted to be done by the building or system owner or a person or organization other than the building or system owner if conducted under a written contract.

If the owner or designated representative chooses to not perform the required system inspection, testing, and maintenance or is not permitted to perform these tasks due to licensing laws, 14.2.3.3 permits the owner to contract with a qualified contractor or service organization to perform these services. This written delegation may take the form of a testing and maintenance contract, formal statement of work, purchase agreement, or other means to make it clear that the tasks are being delegated.

The inspection, testing, and maintenance program for a fire alarm or signaling system is not an all or none situation. It is possible that the building or system owner has personnel who are qualified to conduct the required system inspections but are not qualified to perform the required testing and maintenance. The owner may elect to conduct the inspections in-house and contract the system testing and maintenance to a qualified service organization. The Code now establishes separate and specific qualification provisions for personnel conducting inspections, personnel conducting testing, and personnel performing maintenance. These qualification provisions are found in 10.5.3.

14.2.3.4 Where the building or system owner has delegated any responsibilities for inspection, testing, or maintenance, a copy of the written delegation required by 14.2.3.3 shall be provided to the authority having jurisdiction upon request.

It is not sufficient for a building or system owner to verbally express that the responsibility for system inspection, testing, and maintenance has been delegated to some other party. The delegation of this responsibility must be in writing, and a copy must be furnished to the authority having jurisdiction if requested.

14.2.3.5 Testing and maintenance of central station service systems shall be performed under the contractual arrangements specified in 26.3.3.

Paragraph 14.2.3.5 clarifies that a contractual agreement per 26.3.3 is required to provide the services for testing of central station alarm systems. Only a listed central station or listed alarm service–local company can be contracted to perform the testing and maintenance requirements for central station alarm systems. Not all alarm systems that transmit signals to a central station are central station fire alarm systems. Central station fire alarm systems and central station fire alarm service have very specific requirements and in practice only a very small percentage of systems monitored by a central station are central station fire alarm systems.

14.2.3.6* Service Personnel Qualifications and Experience. Service personnel shall be qualified and experienced in accordance with the requirements of 10.5.3.

A.14.2.3.6 Service personnel should be able to do the following:

(1) Understand the requirements contained in *NFPA 72*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, and the fire alarm requirements contained in *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*
(2) Understand basic job site safety laws and requirements

(3) Apply troubleshooting techniques, and determine the cause of fire alarm system trouble conditions
(4) Understand equipment specific requirements, such as programming, application, and compatibility
(5) Read and interpret fire alarm system design documentation and manufacturer's inspection, testing, and maintenance guidelines
(6) Properly use tools and test equipment required for testing and maintenance of fire alarm systems and their components
(7) Properly apply the test methods required by *NFPA 72*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*

FAQ What is the purpose of the requirements in 14.2.3.6?

The 2013 edition of the Code recognizes that the training, experience, and capabilities of service personnel may vary widely. It also recognizes that an individual conducting an inspection of a small fire alarm system does not necessarily require the same level of training and experience as a technician testing a large, complex fire detection and alarm system. As a result, service personnel have been divided into categories based on the type and level of service provided. The specific categories are inspection, testing, service (maintenance), and programming personnel. Each category has specific qualification requirements. These requirements are found in 10.5.3. Personnel may meet the required qualifications individually or through their affiliation with a service organization registered, licensed, certified, or recognized by the authority having jurisdiction.

14.2.4* Notification.

A.14.2.4 Prior to any scheduled inspection or testing, the service company should consult with the building or system owner or the owner's designated representative. Issues of advance notification in certain occupancies, including advance notification time, building posting, systems interruption and restoration, evacuation procedures, accommodation for evacuees, and other related issues, should be agreed upon by all parties prior to any inspection or testing.

14.2.4.1 Before proceeding with any testing, all persons and facilities receiving alarm, supervisory, or trouble signals and all building occupants shall be notified of the testing to prevent unnecessary response.

Prior to commencing fire alarm system testing, building occupants, the fire department, supervising station receiving signals, or any other individual or organizations affected by the testing must be notified. In many cases, the building owner or the owner's designated representative (e.g., a property management company) best knows the location of all the building occupants, the building employees, or the tenant occupants and the best means of informing them of the testing. Typically, the building owner or the owner's designated representative has the resources and authority to use broadcast email, use the building's public address system, distribute flyers, and display signage to inform occupants of the testing. Notification of building occupants and other organizations affected by the testing should be coordinated with the building or system owner and explained in the test plan required by 14.2.10.

FAQ Who should be notified prior to testing a fire alarm system?

Before commencing fire alarm or signaling system tests, the Code requires that everyone potentially affected by the testing be notified. This includes the building occupants, the building owner or building manager, switchboard operators, building engineer, building or floor fire wardens, building maintenance personnel, fire department, supervising station receiving signals, or any other individual or organizations affected by the testing. In many cases, the building owner or the owner's designated representative (e.g., a property management company) best knows the location of all the building occupants, the building employees, or the tenant occupants and the best means of informing them of the testing. Typically, the building owner or the owner's designated representative has the resources and authority to use broadcast email, use the building's public address system, distribute flyers, and display signage to inform occupants of the testing. Notification of building occupants and other organizations affected by the testing should be coordinated with the building or system owner and explained in the test plan required by 14.2.10. The notification should include information on what testing is being conducted, the locations, and the expected duration.

Notification of personnel at the supervising station or fire alarm communications center is required for systems that transmit signals to a supervising station or directly to the fire department. For central station fire alarm systems, 26.3.8.5.5 and 26.3.8.5.6 require service personnel or the alarm system owner to provide a unique identification code to the central station before they place a central station alarm system into test status. The requirements of 26.3.8.5.6 are intended to prevent unauthorized personnel from placing the system in test mode, where the signals will not initiate automatic response from the fire department. Note that some local fire codes require notification of the fire department prior to testing regardless of whether the fire alarm system automatically transmits signals to the fire department.

Working with the building or system owner, the service personnel can use the test plan required by 14.2.10 to explain the means of notification prior to testing. The test plan can also detail the procedures to be used to sound the alarm if an actual emergency occurs during testing. The means of notifying building occupants of an actual emergency during testing might be by voice announcement, bull horns, floor fire wardens and runners, telephone, or other suitable means.

Note that fire drills are not part of fire alarm system testing and are not addressed by the Code. Requirements for fire drills are usually specified as a part of the applicable fire code.

14.2.4.2 At the conclusion of testing, those previously notified (and others, as necessary) shall be notified that testing has been concluded.

14.2.4.3 The owner or the owner's designated representative and service personnel shall coordinate system testing to prevent interruption of critical building systems or equipment.

If the system is interconnected with other systems providing building services, such as elevators, HVAC systems, or smoke control, the signaling system testing must be conducted in a manner that does not disrupt building systems or equipment that may be critical to the continuity of building operations. Testing interfaced equipment and emergency control functions is addressed in 14.2.7 and Table 14.4.3.2. In general, the requirements of Chapter 14 cover testing the fire alarm or signaling system up to the point of interface with other systems, but do not cover testing the system monitored or controlled by the fire alarm or signaling system. For example, if a fire or smoke damper is controlled by a smoke detector connected to the fire alarm system, the requirements of Chapter 14 cover inspection, testing, and maintenance of the smoke detector but do not require an operational test of the damper. Each system or piece of equipment interfaced with the fire alarm system is tested in accordance with the applicable code or standard for that system or equipment. In this example, the damper would be inspected and tested in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 80.

14.2.5 System Documentation. Prior to system maintenance or testing, the record of completion and any information required by Chapter 7 regarding the system and system alterations, including specifications, wiring diagrams, and floor plans, shall be provided by the owner or a designated representative to the service personnel upon request.

At the time of an acceptance test, the authority having jurisdiction and the system contractor must ensure that all documentation for the system installation has been completed and is presented to the owner or the owner's designated representative. The documentation that includes record or "as-built" drawings, acceptance test reports, record of completion, and system operations and maintenance manuals must be in a format that is usable. See Chapter 7 for a complete description of required documentation. The system documents describing the arrangement of the system, the location of each device or appliance, and the sequence of operations must be available to the person or organization responsible for ongoing system inspection, testing, and maintenance. This information is needed to develop the test plan required by 14.2.10.

An effective records management system is necessary for the owner to maintain system records for the life of the system. The owner is required to provide up-to-date information pertaining to the system, including system alterations, specifications, wiring diagrams, and revisions to system software to service personnel when requested. Requirements for record retention and maintenance can be found in Section 7.7, including a requirement for storage in a documentation cabinet.

14.2.5.1 The provided documentation shall include the current revisions of all fire alarm software and the revisions of software of any systems with which the fire alarm software interfaces.

14.2.5.2 The revisions of fire alarm software, and the revisions of the software in the systems with which the fire alarm software interfaces, shall be verified for compatibility in accordance with the requirements of 23.2.2.1.1.

The compatibility of software used in control units must be verified. The system documentation required by 14.2.5 includes information on the current software version or revision for all control units used in a system. Paragraph A.23.2.2.1.1 includes a detailed discussion of potential compatibility issues. See 3.3.272 for the definition of the term *software* and 23.2.2 for additional requirements on software and firmware documentation.

14.2.6 Releasing Systems. Requirements pertinent to testing the fire alarm systems initiating fire suppression system releasing functions shall be covered by 14.2.6.1 through 14.2.6.6.

Subsection 14.2.6 addresses the special requirements and precautions that apply to fire alarm systems arranged to actuate a suppression system. Requirements for testing the fire suppression system are covered by separate standards that address the specific suppression system. Testing of special hazard fire protection systems controlled by a control unit dedicated to the suppression system should be conducted separately from the building fire alarm system. In most cases, the fire suppression system is simply treated as a single device or point monitored by the building fire alarm system. Only the interface functions between the dedicated control unit and the building fire alarm system need to be tested as part of the building fire alarm system testing. Fire detectors installed to actuate the fire suppression system and connected to the fire suppression system control unit should be tested as part of the tests conducted on the fire suppression system. Most suppression system standards refer to *NFPA 72* for the testing requirements of the fire detection, alarm, and control portions of the suppression system, but the testing can be conducted separately from the building fire alarm system. In some cases the frequency of testing for the fire suppression system may be greater than specified by *NFPA 72* for fire detection systems. In such cases the requirements of the fire suppression system standard should be followed. Conversely, if the testing frequency for the fire detection system components is greater than that for the fire suppression system, a test plan will need to be developed to accommodate and comply with both sets of requirements.

If the building fire alarm control unit is listed for releasing service and also directly controls the fire suppression system, operation of the fire suppression system must be tested as part of the building fire alarm system testing. Obviously, operation of the suppression system must be simulated unless the intent is to actually discharge the system. Care must be taken to ensure that the special hazard system is not inadvertently actuated. Also refer to the requirements of 23.3.3, 23.8.2, 23.8.5.10, and Section 23.11.

14.2.6.1 Testing personnel shall be qualified and experienced in the specific arrangement and operation of a suppression system(s) and a releasing function(s) and shall be cognizant of the hazards associated with inadvertent system discharge.

Only technicians and service personnel qualified to test and service the fire suppression system should be permitted to conduct testing of fire alarm systems controlling fire suppression systems. Service personnel unfamiliar with the arrangement and operation of the fire suppression system could result in accidental discharge of the system or, in some cases, impairing operation of the system. An unintentional actuation of the fire suppression system could cause extensive property damage, disruption of critical operations, and, in extreme cases, injury or death of occupants in the area protected by the fire suppression system. Exhibit 14.4 illustrates a high-expansion foam suppression system in operation. These systems should be tested in accordance with NFPA 11, *Standard for Low-, Medium-, and High-Expansion Foam*.

EXHIBIT 14.4

High-Expansion Foam Suppression System. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

14.2.6.2 Occupant notification shall be required whenever a fire alarm system configured for releasing service is being serviced or tested.

The notification required by 14.2.6.2 allows the occupants to take appropriate precautions to protect themselves or prepare for possible interruption of their work resulting from the testing. For example, personnel working in an area where actuation of a suppression system could pose a safety hazard should be evacuated from the area prior to the start of testing. Testing may also result in shutdown of critical systems, such as ventilation or operating power, if the suppression system actuates. Incidents of accidental operation of fire suppression systems have resulted in the death of occupants or service personnel. The means of dealing with systems interfaced with suppression systems should be clearly detailed in the test plan required by 14.2.10. Also see 14.2.4.

14.2.6.3 Discharge testing of suppression systems shall not be required by this Code.

Any requirements for actual discharge testing of fire suppression systems are found in the code or standard specific to the fire suppression system. This paragraph is intended to reinforce the fact that Chapter 14 does not require actuation of any fire suppression system as part of fire alarm system testing.

14.2.6.4 Suppression systems shall be secured from inadvertent actuation, including disconnection of releasing solenoids or electric actuators, closing of valves, other actions, or combinations thereof, for the specific system, for the duration of the fire alarm system testing.

Fire alarm systems used for releasing service are recommended to be identified as such. A typical suppression release panel identification label could include information such as the following:

> "SUPPRESSION SYSTEM CONTROL UNIT.
>
> CAUTION: This Control Unit initiates discharge of a fire suppression system. Improper service or test procedures may result in system discharge. Disable all discharge circuits prior to servicing."

One way to "secure" or "disable" a suppression system from inadvertent actuation during fire alarm system testing is operation of a key-operated service disconnect switch that physically disconnects the suppression releasing mechanism (i.e., solenoid or electronic actuator) from the suppression releasing circuit. The Code does not permit the use of a software interlock. See 23.11.5.2.

Disconnection of releasing solenoids or electronic actuators, closing of valves, or other actions taken to secure or disable a suppression system from inadvertent actuation during fire alarm system testing must initiate an "off-normal" or supervisory signal on the associated fire alarm system control unit. The supervisory signal is required to remain active on the fire alarm system control unit until the device that has been secured or disabled is placed back in service — that is, returned to its normal operating condition. See 23.11.5.1.

Disabling or impairing any fire protection system features or functions requires the implementation of proper impairment handling procedures. This might include notification of critical personnel prior to system shutdown, elimination of hazardous operations in the area(s) where the fire suppression system is impaired, and the provision of temporary protection measures.

14.2.6.5 Testing shall include verification that the releasing circuits and components energized or actuated by the fire alarm system are electrically monitored for integrity and operate as intended on alarm.

14.2.6.6 Suppression systems and releasing components shall be returned to their functional operating condition upon completion of system testing.

14.2.7 Interface Equipment and Emergency Control Functions.

FAQ Does 14.2.7 require that HVAC systems and fire dampers controlled by the fire alarm system be tested as part of the fire alarm system test?

The scope of the testing requirements in Chapter 14 ends at the interface with the equipment or device providing the emergency control function. For example, Chapter 14 dictates the requirements of testing the smoke detector that controls closure of the fire damper, but testing of the damper is not a requirement of Chapter 14. Chapter 14 requires testing of the smoke detector and confirmation that the appropriate output signal is initiated to close the damper. Testing of the damper to ensure closure is not required. Closure of the damper would be tested in accordance with the requirements of NFPA 80.

While the scope of Chapter 14 does not extend beyond the fire alarm or signaling system, the technical committee recognizes that in practice the building fire alarm system is often a critical fire protection and life safety system that is used to monitor and control the operation of many other fire protection and life safety systems that must be carefully integrated to ensure the expected level of protection and performance. It is difficult to ensure that systems are properly interfaced with the fire alarm system without an "end-to-end" test. For example, Chapter 14 requires the smoke detector initiating elevator recall to be tested for this function. Actuating the detector and determining that the appropriate output signal to the elevator system is initiated are actions that meet the requirements of Chapter 14. No requirement actually recalls the elevator as part of the fire alarm system testing, but such testing is not prohibited. This subsection, along with the requirements in Table 14.4.3.2, items 20 and 24, are intended to emphasize that testing of interfaced equipment and emergency control functions should not be overlooked.

Proper testing of interfaced systems and emergency control functions may require the involvement of additional personnel not typically associated with testing of fire alarm systems. One of the reasons for new subsection 14.2.10 requiring the development of a test plan is to clarify what will be tested and what will not be tested. For example, a building owner or authority having jurisdiction reviewing a test report that indicates that the elevator lobby smoke detectors were tested may be left with the impression that the elevator recall functions were fully tested as well. The test plan should make it clear whether only the smoke detectors are to be tested or whether a representative will be present to fully test the required elevator functions as well.

14.2.7.1* Testing personnel shall be qualified and experienced in the arrangement and operation of interface equipment and emergency control functions.

A.14.2.7.1 As an example, testing of the elevator fire service and shutdown functions will usually require a coordinated multi-discipline effort with presence of qualified service personnel for the fire alarm system, the elevator system, and other building systems. The presence of inspection authorities might also be needed in some jurisdictions. The development of a test plan should be considered to ensure that the testing of these features is accomplished in a coordinated and timely manner. This plan should also ensure that all appropriate parties and personnel are present when needed, and that the testing requirements for both the fire alarm system and the elevator system are fulfilled. See Section 21.3 and Section 21.4 for specific elevator emergency control functions.

14.2.7.2 Testing shall be accomplished in accordance with Table 14.4.3.2.

14.2.8 Automated Testing.

The Code permits automated testing of fire alarm system components provided the arrangement provides a means that is "equivalent" to the methods specified in Table 14.4.3.2. For example, many fire alarm systems are capable of automatically testing smoke detector sensitivity from the control unit. Listed assemblies that incorporate a waterflow switch and a solenoid operated bypass line arranged to flow water past the waterflow switch to test it as required by Chapter 14 are also available as illustrated in Exhibit 14.5. The testing operation could be arranged to actuate automatically or remotely from the fire alarm control unit. Failure of the device equipped with an automatic test must result in an audible and visible trouble signal as required by 14.2.8.2.

14.2.8.1 Automated testing arrangements that provide equivalent means of testing devices to those specified in Table 14.4.3.2 at a frequency at least equivalent to those specified in Table 14.4.3.2 shall be permitted to be used to comply with the requirements of this chapter.

14.2.8.2 Failure of a device on an automated test shall result in an audible and visual trouble signal.

EXHIBIT 14.5

Waterflow Test Arrangement. (Courtesy of Global Vision, Inc., Osseo, MN)

14.2.9* Performance-Based Inspection and Testing. As an alternate means of compliance, subject to the authority having jurisdiction, components and systems shall be permitted to be inspected and tested under a performance-based program.

A.14.2.9 This section provides the option to adopt a performance-based inspection and testing method as an alternate means of compliance for Sections 14.3 and 14.4. The prescriptive test and requirements contained in this Code are essentially qualitative. Equivalent or superior levels of performance can be demonstrated through quantitative performance-based analyses. This section provides a basis for implementing and monitoring a performance-based program acceptable under this option (provided that approval is obtained by the authority having jurisdiction). The concept of a performance-based inspection and testing program is to establish the requirements and frequencies at which inspection and testing must be performed to demonstrate an acceptable level of operational reliability. The goal is to balance the inspection and testing frequency with proven reliability of the system or component. The goal of a performance-based inspection program is also to adjust inspection and testing frequencies commensurate with historical documented equipment performance and desired reliability. Frequencies of inspection and testing under a performance-based program may be extended or reduced from the prescriptive inspection and testing requirements contained in this Code when continued inspection and testing has been documented indicating a higher or lower degree of reliability as compared to the authority having jurisdiction's expectations of performance. Additional program attributes should be considered when adjusting inspection and testing.

A fundamental requirement of a performance-based program is the continual monitoring of fire system/component failure rates and determining if they exceed the maximum allowable failure rates as agreed upon with the authority having jurisdiction. The process used to complete this review should be documented and be repeatable. Coupled with this ongoing review is a requirement for a formalized method of increasing or decreasing the frequency of inspection and testing when systems exhibit either a higher than expected failure rate or an increase in reliability as a result of a decrease in failures. A formal process for reviewing the failure rates and increasing or decreasing the frequency of inspection and testing must be well documented. Concurrence from the authority having jurisdiction on the process used to determine test frequencies should be obtained in advance of any alterations to the inspection and testing program. The frequency required for future inspections and tests may be reduced to the next inspection frequency and maintained there for a period equaling the initial data review or until the ongoing review indicates that the failure rate is no longer being exceeded — for example, going from an annual to a semiannual testing when the failure rate exceeds the authority having jurisdiction's expectations, or from annual to every 18 months when the failure trend indicates an increase in reliability.

See also NFPA 551, *Guide for the Evaluation of Fire Risk Assessments*, for additional guidance.

The Code permits alternatives to the prescriptive methods and frequencies for testing system components contingent upon approval by the authority having jurisdiction. Under such a program, adjustment of the inspection and testing frequencies may be possible using a qualitative performance-based analysis that demonstrates provision of an acceptable level of reliability. Such a program would typically be based on data that describe the failure rate of the system components. Knowing the failure rate and mean time between failures (MTBF) permits an analysis of the testing frequencies that may permit a reduction based on the failure data. It might also indicate that the prevailing conditions warrant an increase in the testing frequency. To review a performance-based testing program, the authority having jurisdiction must have an understanding of the statistical basis of the program. For example, at first look, an authority having jurisdiction may say that there is no acceptable rate of failure. While this goal is admirable, it is not realistic. All systems and system components have some measurable rate of failure. Even strict compliance with the prescriptive testing requirements of Chapter 14 does not ensure a zero failure rate. The routine testing simply provides a means of identifying failure of a system or component. Adoption of a performance-based inspection and testing program would require the continual monitoring of system/component failure rates. The collected data may indicate that certain frequencies may be extended further, while frequencies of other components may need to be reduced. The *SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering* provides additional information on the statistical methods used to evaluate reliability. The guidance in NFPA 551, *Guide for the Evaluation of Fire Risk Assessments*, may also be helpful in assessing the adequacy of a performance-based program.

14.2.10* Test Plan.

As noted previously in the commentary following 14.2.5, without complete system documentation from the system owner, it will be difficult for the service provider to identify the location of all system components, features, and functions for inclusion in the test plan. Components that are not readily visible or clearly identified in some manner could easily be overlooked when service personnel develop the test plan. The under-floor smoke detector shown in Exhibit 14.6 could be easily overlooked without drawings showing the location of each system device and appliance.

EXHIBIT 14.6

Under-Floor Smoke Detector. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

A.14.2.10 The test plan is intended to clarify exactly what is to be tested and how it is to be tested. Testing of fire alarm and signaling systems is often done in a segmented fashion to accommodate the availability of testing or other personnel, or to minimize the interruption of building operations. Building operations can be affected by testing of the fire alarm or signaling system itself and by the operation of emergency control functions activated by the fire alarm or signaling system. The boundary of the fire alarm or signaling system extends up to and includes the emergency control function interface device. The testing requirements prescribed in *NFPA 72* for fire alarm and signaling systems end at the emergency control function interface device. The purpose of the test plan is to document what devices were and were not actually tested.

The testing of emergency control functions, releasing systems, or interfaced equipment is outside the scope of *NFPA 72*. Requirements for testing other systems are found in other governing laws, codes, or standards. Requirements for integrated testing of combined systems also fall under the authority of other governing laws, codes, standards, or authority having jurisdiction. NFPA 3, *Recommended Practice for Commissioning and Integrated Testing of Fire Protection and Life Safety Systems*, provides guidance for such testing. NFPA 3 recognizes the importance of the development of an integrated testing plan.

Further information on testing associated with emergency control functions can be found in Table 14.4.3.2, Item 24 and its related annex material in A.14.4.3.2.

14.2.10.1 A test plan shall be written to clearly establish the scope of the testing for the fire alarm or signaling system.

14.2.10.2 The test plan and results shall be documented with the testing records.

14.3 Inspection

14.3.1* Unless otherwise permitted by 14.3.2, visual inspections shall be performed in accordance with the schedules in Table 14.3.1 or more often if required by the authority having jurisdiction.

• Table 14.3.1 column 2 heading was revised by a tentative interim amendment (TIA).

Table 14.3.1 specifies the minimum frequencies for visual inspection of various system components. Where building conditions are changing more rapidly than normal and these changes are likely to affect the performance of the system, the authority having jurisdiction may require more frequent visual inspections. A significant change in the 2013 edition of the Code is the inclusion of inspection methods in Table 14.3.1. Previous editions of the Code did not specifically detail procedures for the visual inspections. In general, the Code now specifies that visual inspections ensure that the component is not damaged or obstructed, that environmental conditions are suitable for continued operation of the component, and that other specific items are confirmed by visual examination.

A visual inspection should be conducted prior to any testing. Copies of the record drawings ("as-builts") and system documentation such as the record of completion provide the quantities and locations of system components. Improperly installed, damaged, or nonfunctional components should be identified during the visual examination and should be repaired or corrected before tests begin.

TABLE 14.3.1 Visual Inspection

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
1. All equipment	X	Annual	Ensure there are no changes that affect equipment performance. Inspect for building modifications, occupancy changes, changes in environmental conditions, device location, physical obstructions, device orientation, physical damage, and degree of cleanliness.	14.3.4
2. Control equipment:				
(a) Fire alarm systems monitored for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals			Verify a system normal condition.	
(1) Fuses	X	Annual		
(2) Interfaced equipment	X	Annual		
(3) Lamps and LEDs	X	Annual		
(4) Primary (main) power supply	X	Annual		
(5) Trouble signals	X	Semiannual		
(b) Fire alarm systems unmonitored for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals			Verify a system normal condition.	
(1) Fuses	X	Weekly		
(2) Interfaced equipment	X	Weekly		
(3) Lamps and LEDs	X	Weekly		
(4) Primary (main) power supply	X	Weekly		
(5) Trouble signals	X	Weekly		

The term *monitored* in the component description for item 2(b) refers to systems connected to a supervising station that receives all three signals — alarm, trouble, and supervisory. Unmonitored systems do not transmit signals to a supervising station, and immediate response to the signals to address a problem is not ensured. Therefore, weekly inspection of fuses, lamps, LEDs, interfaced equipment, and power supplies is needed to minimize the time interval between occurrence of a fault or problem and discovery. The commentary provided below applies to items 2(a) and 2(b).

Inspect fuses for appearance and condition and to verify proper installation. In some instances it will be apparent from visual inspection whether a fuse is blown — that is, whether the internal element is still intact or the fuse has actual signs of damage or scorch marks. Fuses showing any signs of damage should be replaced with a fuse of the appropriate type and size as specified by the control equipment manufacturer. Other fuses should be checked to ensure compliance with the published instructions from the manufacturer for size and type.

Interfaces with other equipment or systems, such as sprinklers, HVAC, or elevator systems, for control or monitoring should be visually inspected for status (i.e., if the equipment is in its "normal" operating status or if it has been disabled due to maintenance reasons). The actual connection between the equipment and the fire alarm system should be examined to determine the following — are junction box covers open, are wiring connections not completed (removed from terminal blocks, disconnected/removed from wire nuts, etc.), and is wiring or raceway leading to such connections damaged or broken?

Primary (main) power supplies must be visually inspected for physical condition. Any abnormal conditions should be noted, such as is a power supply producing an unusually loud noise, operating at an abnormally high temperature, or appears to have visual evidence of physical damage, such as corrosion, scorch marks, or dents? Wiring terminals should be checked for corrosion and other damage. Whether circuits are properly installed at terminals

(*continues*)

TABLE 14.3.1 *Continued*

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference

should be determined. LEDs or other visual indicators on the control unit should be checked for proper operation and whether the correct conditions are indicated. For example, is the green power LED illuminated, indicating proper operation of the primary power source?

A visual inspection of control equipment should confirm that there are no alarms, supervisory, or trouble signals registered on the control unit, as well as proper operation of all lamps and LEDs. An examination of the control unit shown in Exhibit 14.7 following Table 14.3.1 reveals that it is in alarm, the alarm has been silenced, and that there are at least one supervisory signal and one trouble signal active.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
3. Reserved				
4. Supervising station alarm systems — transmitters			Verify location, physical condition, and a system normal condition.	
(a) Digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT)	X	Annual		
(b) Digital alarm radio transmitter (DART)	X	Annual		
(c) McCulloh	X	Annual		
(d) Radio alarm transmitter (RAT)	X	Annual		
(e) All other types of communicators	X	Annual		
5. In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications equipment	X	Semiannual	Verify location and condition.	
6. Reserved				
7. Reserved				
8. Reserved				
9. Batteries			Inspect for corrosion or leakage. Verify tightness of connections. Verify marking of the month/year of manufacture (all types).	10.6.10
(a) Lead-acid	X	Monthly	Visually inspect electrolyte level.	
(b) Nickel-cadmium	X	Semiannual		
(c) Primary (dry cell)	X	Monthly		
(d) Sealed lead-acid	X	Semiannual		

Batteries should be examined for any corrosion, leakage, or other physical damage and for the security of connections. Other conditions that might be obvious include evidence of "off-gassing" or "boil over," which might be indicative of overcharging or a malfunction of the battery charger. All batteries installed under the 2007 and later editions of the Code must be marked with the month and year of manufacture, using the month/year format. Under the 2010 and later editions of the Code, if the batteries were not marked by the manufacturer, the installer must obtain the date and mark the battery. The date should be checked to determine whether the batteries are due for replacement in accordance with Table 14.4.3.2, items 9(a)(1), 9(b)(1), and 9(c)(1), and the published instructions from the manufacturer. With most batteries having a suggested life span of about three years, it would be unusual to find an installed battery not marked with the date of manufacture, as they would most likely have been replaced since publication of the 2010 edition of the Code. Exhibit 14.8 following Table 14.3.1 shows an enclosure open for inspection of the batteries.

TABLE 14.3.1 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
10. Reserved				
11. Remote annunciators	X	Semiannual	Verify location and condition.	

A visual inspection of a remote annunciator should ensure that obstructions such as plants, file cabinets, or other large objects are not placed in front of the annunciators, preventing access by responding fire fighters or other emergency personnel. Other conditions that might be apparent from a visual inspection include physical damage, tampering, or incorrect or unclear labels or other means of identification. Obviously, any problems detected by the visual inspection must be reported and corrected.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
12. Notification appliance circuit power extenders	X	Annual	Verify proper fuse ratings, if any. Verify that lamps and LEDs indicate normal operating status of the equipment.	10.6
13. Remote power supplies	X	Annual	Verify proper fuse ratings, if any. Verify that lamps and LEDs indicate normal operating status of the equipment.	10.6
14. Transient suppressors	X	Semiannual	Verify location and condition.	
15. Reserved				
16. Fiber-optic cable connections	X	Annual	Verify location and condition.	
17. Initiating devices			Verify location and condition (all devices).	
(a) Air sampling				
(1) General	X	Semiannual	Verify that in-line filters, if any, are clean.	17.7.3.6
(2) Sampling system piping and sampling ports	X		Verify that sampling system piping and fittings are installed properly, appear airtight, and are permanently fixed. Confirm that sampling pipe is conspicuously identified. Verify that sample ports or points are not obstructed.	17.7.3.6
(b) Duct detectors				
(1) General	X	Semiannual	Verify that detector is rigidly mounted. Confirm that no penetrations in a return air duct exist in the vicinity of the detector. Confirm the detector is installed so as to sample the airstream at the proper location in the duct.	17.7.5.5
(2) Sampling tube	X		Verify proper orientation. Confirm the sampling tube protrudes into the duct in accordance with system design.	17.7.5.5

(*continues*)

TABLE 14.3.1 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference

Duct smoke detectors, including sampling tubes, should be inspected to ensure that there are no obstructions to smoke entry into the sensing chamber. The detector and the sampling tubes should be clear, and the ports unobstructed by dust, dirt, or debris. The orientation of the sampling tubes should also be examined and compared with the instructions provided by the manufacturer.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
(c) Electromechanical releasing devices	X	Semiannual		
(d) Fire extinguishing system(s) or suppression system(s) switches	X	Semiannual		

Switches actuating fire suppression systems from the fire alarm control unit must be inspected semiannually, but inspection of the suppression system is conducted in accordance with the requirements of the code or standard that addresses the fire suppression system. NFPA 2001, *Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems*, addresses the routine inspection, testing, and maintenance of the large clean agent system shown in Exhibit 14.9 following Table 14.3.1.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
(e) Manual fire alarm boxes	X	Semiannual		

A visual inspection of a manual fire alarm box should note any obvious physical damage and confirm unobstructed access to the device. It is not unusual for building occupants to move furniture, storage, or other materials in front of a manual fire alarm box, thereby obstructing free access in an emergency.

A visual inspection should discover and initiate action to correct any problems discovered by the inspection. Exhibit 14.10 following Table 14.3.1 shows how the placement of furnishings and other material can obstruct access to a manual fire alarm box. Such conditions should be noted on the inspection report for follow-up corrective action.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
(f) Heat detectors	X	Semiannual		

Heat detectors should be inspected to ensure that they are free of mechanical or water damage, have not been painted, and are properly secured, and to verify that altered building conditions (such as the installation of a new wall or removal of a drop ceiling) have not reduced the effectiveness of the devices. All inspection personnel are not expected to be trained or knowledgeable of the design requirements for the installation of heat detectors, but they should be capable of identifying differing conditions that potentially affect the operation of heat detectors. For example, an inspector may not be familiar with the requirement for a heat detector to be mounted on the ceiling, but he or she could note that a drop ceiling has been removed from a space and that the heat detector is now located 3 ft below the roof deck. A supervisor reviewing the inspection report could then schedule a followup inspection to determine the potential effect on the operation of the heat detector or to schedule corrective action.

A visual inspection will discover that the heat detector shown in Exhibit 14.11 following Table 14.3.1 was covered with tape that was not removed after painting operations were complete.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
(g) Radiant energy fire detectors	X	Quarterly	Verify no point requiring detection is obstructed or outside the detector's field of view.	17.8

Because radiant energy fire detectors (flame detectors or spark/ember detectors as defined by the Code) are "line of sight" devices, it is important to confirm that there are no physical obstructions between the detector and the protected area. Toolboxes, movable partitions, and other objects block the vision of the detector in the same manner that they block human sight. If an inspector standing at the location of the detector cannot see the entire protected area, then the detector likely cannot either. Contaminants on the lens may also obscure vision of the detector. The

TABLE 14.3.1 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
orientation of the detector should be checked against the original record drawings to confirm that it is oriented to "see" the intended area of protection. The published instructions of the manufacturer should be consulted for other items to be inspected for the particular type of detector.				
(h) Video image smoke and fire detectors	X	Quarterly	Verify no point requiring detection is obstructed or outside the detector's field of view.	17.7.7; 17.11.5
Video imaging smoke detection systems are not dependent on smoke traveling from the fire source to the detector. These systems utilize a video image of the protected space and computer algorithms to determine the presence of a fire. Visual inspections should detect obvious problems, such as physical damage. The published instructions from the manufacturer are important to be consulted for specific inspection requirements for these unique systems.				
(i) Smoke detectors (excluding one- and two-family dwellings)	X	Semiannual		
Some smoke detectors may be monitored for contamination by the fire alarm control unit and provide a signal when the detector is "dirty." This arrangement will not detect obstructions (e.g., covered detectors) that might affect the operation of the detector. Renovation, construction, or some types of cleaning may require the detectors to be covered to avoid contamination or nuisance alarms. After project completion, the covers may be forgotten and inadvertently left in place. A visual inspection ensures that covers, bags, tape, or other coverings have been removed. Refer to 17.7.1.11 for requirements related to the protection of smoke detectors during construction. Visual inspection of smoke detectors should confirm that they are present, not damaged, and not blocked or obstructed. The visual inspection will discover conditions such as the detector not properly supported or secured from the building structure, and the protective cover still in place after construction, shown respectively in Exhibit 14.12 and Exhibit 14.13 following Table 14.3.1.				
(j) Projected beam smoke detectors	X	Semiannual	Verify beam path is unobstructed.	
(k) Supervisory signal devices	X	Quarterly		
A visual inspection of a supervisory initiating device installed outdoors should confirm that there is no physical damage, and that covers and watertight seals are in place. A visual inspection will detect conditions such as the damaged junction box and gasket on the post indicator valve (PIV) shown in Exhibit 14.14 following Table 14.3.1.				
(l) Waterflow devices	X	Quarterly		
18. Reserved				
19. Combination systems			Verify location and condition (all types).	
(a) Fire extinguisher electronic monitoring device/systems	X	Semiannual		
(b) Carbon monoxide detectors/systems	X	Semiannual		
Combination systems are systems that include a fire alarm system. The fire alarm system must still be inspected in accordance with Chapter 14. Chapter 14 does not require inspection of the non-fire alarm system components. Refer to the definition of the term *combination system* in 3.3.105.1 and to the requirements in 23.8.4.				

(*continues*)

TABLE 14.3.1 *Continued*

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference

Specific requirements for the inspection, testing, and maintenance of carbon monoxide detection systems and equipment are provided in NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment*.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
20. Fire alarm control interface and emergency control function interface	X	Semiannual	Verify location and condition.	

Visual inspection of equipment interfaced with the fire alarm system, such as an elevator system, will reveal problems such as a smoke detector installed in an unsuitable environment. Unless specially listed for other environmental conditions, smoke detectors are permitted only where the temperature is at least 32°F (0°C), not more than 100°F (38°C), and the humidity does not exceed 93 percent.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
21. Guard's tour equipment	X	Semiannual	Verify location and condition.	
22. Notification appliances			Verify location and condition (all appliances).	

Inspect audible and visible notification appliances to confirm that no obstructions are impairing their effectiveness, that they do not have physical damage, and that changing building conditions have not rendered the appliance ineffective. For example, where walls have been added to a space, or floor or wall coverings have changed, additional notification appliances may be required to ensure compliance with the requirements of Chapter 18. Sound pressure level measurements may be needed to assess the performance of audible appliances, and the candela setting of visual appliances should be assessed.

Visual inspection of notification appliances will find conditions that could adversely affect their operation, such as the obvious physical damage and evidence of tampering shown respectively in Exhibit 14.15 and Exhibit 14.16 following Table 14.3.1.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
(a) Audible appliances	X	Semiannual		
(b) Audible textual notification appliances	X	Semiannual		
(c) Visible appliances				
(1) General	X	Semiannual		18.5.5
(2) Candela rating	X		Verify that the candela rating marking agrees with the approved drawings.	18.5.5
23. Exit marking audible notification appliances	X	Semiannual	Verify location and condition.	
24. Reserved				
25. Area of refuge two-way communication system	X	Annual	Verify location and condition.	
26. Reserved				
27. Supervising station alarm systems — receivers				
(a) Signal receipt	X	Daily	Verify receipt of signal.	
(b) Receivers	X	Annual	Verify location and normal condition.	
28. Public emergency alarm reporting system transmission equipment			Verify location and condition.	
(a) Publicly accessible alarm box	X	Semiannual		

TABLE 14.3.1 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
(b) Auxiliary box	X	Annual		
(c) Master box				
(1) Manual operation	X	Semiannual		
(2) Auxiliary operation	X	Annual		
29. Reserved				
30. Mass notification system				
(a) Monitored for integrity			Verify a system normal condition.	

The visual inspection frequencies identified in Table 14.3.1, item 30(a), for mass notification systems (MNSs) apply to stand-alone systems monitored by a supervising station. For an integrated or combination fire alarm/mass notification system, the intent of the Code is to comply with the visual inspection frequencies identified for fire alarm systems in lieu of those frequencies identified for MNSs.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
(1) Control equipment				
(i) Fuses	X	Annual		
(ii) Interfaces	X	Annual		
(iii) Lamps/LED	X	Annual		
(iv) Primary (main) power supply	X	Annual		
(2) Secondary power batteries	X	Annual		
(3) Initiating devices	X	Annual		
(4) Notification appliances	X	Annual		
(b) Not monitored for integrity; installed prior to adoption of the 2010 edition			Verify a system normal condition.	

The visual inspection frequencies identified in Table 14.3.1, item 30(b), for mass notification systems (MNSs) apply to stand-alone systems not monitored by a supervising station. For an integrated or combination fire alarm/mass notification system, the intent of the Code is to comply with the visual inspection frequencies identified for fire alarm systems in lieu of those frequencies identified for MNSs.

A local operating console (LOC) installed as part of a mass notification or emergency communication system such as the one shown in Exhibit 14.17 following Table 14.3.1 should be inspected as part of the control equipment.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method	Reference
(1) Control equipment				
(i) Fuses	X	Semiannual		
(ii) Interfaces	X	Semiannual		
(iii) Lamps/LED	X	Semiannual		
(iv) Primary (main) power supply	X	Semiannual		
(2) Secondary power batteries	X	Semiannual		
(3) Initiating devices	X	Semiannual		
(4) Notification appliances	X	Semiannual		
(c) Antenna	X	Annual	Verify location and condition.	
(d) Transceivers	X	Annual	Verify location and condition.	

EXHIBIT 14.7

Visual Inspection of Control Unit. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

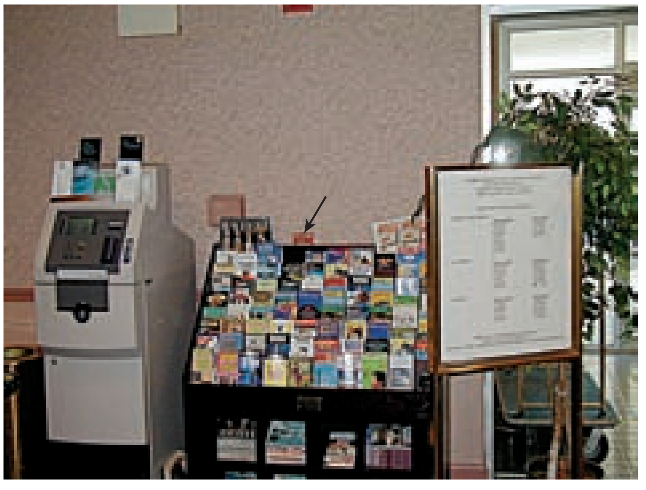
EXHIBIT 14.8

Visual Inspection of Batteries. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

EXHIBIT 14.9

Large Clean Agent Suppression System. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

EXHIBIT 14.10



Obstructed Manual Fire Alarm Box. (Source: Automatic Fire Alarm Association, Inc., Jasper, GA)

EXHIBIT 14.11

Heat Detector Covered with Tape. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

EXHIBIT 14.12

Smoke Detector Improperly Secured. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

EXHIBIT 14.13

Smoke Detector with Cover Not Removed after Construction. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

EXHIBIT 14.14

Damaged Junction Box on a Post Indicator Valve. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

EXHIBIT 14.15

Damaged Appliance. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

EXHIBIT 14.16

Evidence of Appliance Tampering. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

EXHIBIT 14.17

Local Operating Console. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

A.14.3.1 Equipment performance can be affected by building modifications, occupancy changes, changes in environmental conditions, device location, physical obstructions, device orientation, physical damage, improper installation, degree of cleanliness, or other obvious problems that might not be indicated through electrical supervision.

The intent of 14.3.1 is to prevent an inspection being made at intervals exceeding those allowed by Table 14.3.1. Annual inspections should be made every 12 months; monthly inspections should be made every 30 days, and so forth. For example, it is not acceptable to conduct an annual inspection in January of year one, and December of year two (23 month frequency) just because Table 14.3.1 requires an inspection once each year.

14.3.2 Devices or equipment that is inaccessible for safety considerations (e.g., continuous process operations, energized electrical equipment, radiation, and excessive height) shall be permitted to be inspected during scheduled shutdowns if approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

The intent of this subsection is to provide some relief from the visual inspection frequencies for situations that prevent visual inspection of devices in locations or areas that pose a significant safety hazard to personnel conducting the inspection. Such situations might include inside compartments or areas containing radiation hazards, inside electrical equipment, or on the top of a continuous process structure. This subsection is not intended to exempt a system component from visual inspection simply because it may be inconvenient or difficult to access. In all cases, a reduced inspection frequency under this provision of the Code requires the approval of the authority having jurisdiction.

14.3.3 Extended intervals shall not exceed 18 months.

14.3.4 The visual inspection shall be made to ensure that there are no changes that affect equipment performance.

14.4 Testing

14.4.1 Initial Acceptance Testing.

14.4.1.1 All new systems shall be inspected and tested in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 14.

Although 14.4.1.1 is only a single paragraph, it contains all the requirements for acceptance testing because it requires the acceptance test to comply with Chapter 14. Since the inspection frequencies and methods in Table 14.3.1 and the testing frequencies and methods in Table 14.4.3.2 require that all system devices, appliances, components, and functions be tested at the initial acceptance test, this paragraph has the effect of requiring a 100 percent test of the system.

14.4.1.2 The authority having jurisdiction shall be notified prior to the initial acceptance test.

Authorities having jurisdiction must have the opportunity to witness the acceptance testing. In many cases this is the only opportunity they have to see the system operate as required by the approved design documents and the Code requirements. Many authorities having jurisdiction require that specific procedures be followed when requesting them to attend an acceptance test. This might include a minimum number of days of advance notice, submittal of system documentation, submission of an acceptance testing plan, or certification that the installer has already conducted a complete test of the system and has corrected any deficiencies found during the pre-test.

14.4.2* Reacceptance Testing.

A.14.4.2 Reacceptance testing is performed to verify the proper operation of added or replaced devices, appliances, emergency control function devices, control equipment, and so forth. It is not the intent of the committee to unduly burden the system owner with increased costs for repeated testing of devices not directly affected by the replacement of devices with like devices.

For example, if a 2 amp fuse is replaced with another 2 amp fuse in the fire alarm control unit, verification of the circuit(s) served by the fused supply is required, but it would not be necessary to test 10 percent of initiating devices not directly affected by replacing the fuse. Likewise, it is not necessary to test all these initiating devices whenever a smoke detector is replaced with a like smoke detector.

When wiring changes are made to correct improperly supervised circuits, a test of the affected device or appliance is required, but not a test of 10 percent of initiating devices not directly affected.

• **14.4.2.1** When an initiating device, notification appliance, or control relay is added, it shall be functionally tested.

For the simple addition or replacement of an initiating device, notification appliance, or control relay, the Code requires testing only of the new component. For example, if a new manual fire alarm box is installed on an initiating device circuit, only the new manual fire alarm box needs to be tested to ensure proper operation.

14.4.2.2 When an initiating device, notification appliance, or control relay is deleted, another device, appliance, or control relay on the circuit shall be operated.

14.4.2.3 When modifications or repairs to control equipment hardware are made, the control equipment shall be tested in accordance with Table 14.4.3.2, items 1(a) and 1(d).

14.4.2.4 When changes are made to site-specific software, the following shall apply:

(1) All functions known to be affected by the change, or identified by a means that indicates changes, shall be 100 percent tested.
(2) In addition, 10 percent of initiating devices that are not directly affected by the change, up to a maximum of 50 devices, also shall be tested and correct system operation shall be verified.
(3) A revised record of completion in accordance with 7.5.6 shall be prepared to reflect these changes.

Modern software-driven fire alarm systems are easily modified to accept new devices or to change the address or response of existing devices. These changes are often handled by changes to the site-specific software in the fire alarm control unit. The software controlling a fire alarm or signaling system is like any other computer program. Sometimes what seems like a relatively minor change may have unintended consequences. For example, if a new line of computer code is entered in a program to recognize a new initiating device, but the new code is placed in the incorrect location in the program, it might result in an unintended response, such as discharge of a fire suppression system when the manual fire alarm box is actuated. In some cases large portions of a system have been found inoperable due to faulty reprogramming during a repair or test.

The requirements of 14.4.2.4 ensure that the affected portion of the system is completely tested. The paragraph requires further testing to ensure that other portions of the system have not been adversely affected by the modification. The 10 percent sample should be randomly selected and should include at least one device per initiating device circuit or signaling line circuit. If all the devices are installed on one signaling line circuit, multiple devices (a 10 percent sample) should be tested at different sections of the circuit. Use of software comparison algorithms, or programs that compare two sets of data to determine the differences between them, can also help determine where program changes may have occurred. See 3.3.272.2 for the definition of site-specific software.

If a system change adds a single smoke detector to an existing initiating device circuit, the Code requires that only the new smoke detector be tested for proper operation. If the system is changed by adding a smoke detector to a signaling line circuit and the site-specific software in the system is changed to accommodate the new smoke detector, 14.4.2.4 requires testing of the new smoke detector as well as a test of 10 percent of the remaining initiating devices, up to a maximum of 50, to verify proper system operation.

14.4.2.5 Changes to the system executive software shall require a 10 percent functional test of the system, including a test of at least one device on each input and output circuit to verify critical system functions such as notification appliances, control functions, and off-premises reporting.

Changes to the system executive or "system software" can be likened to updating the operating system of a desktop computer. The updated software affects the entire system. It is possible that the updated software will work without any problems, but it is also possible that the updated software may demonstrate some incompatibility or instability when interacting with existing software. The same conditions are possible in a software-driven fire alarm or signaling system. The 10 percent functional test of the system with at least one device on each input and output circuit is intended as a means to ensure that the updated executive software does not result in unintended actions or adversely affect the site-specific software in the system.

14.4.3* Test Methods.

A.14.4.3 Fire alarm system testing can be conducted using silent testing and the bypassing of emergency control functions. All input signals should be verified according to the system matrix of operation to ensure they create the appropriate outputs. Tests of audible notification appliances and emergency control functions should be conducted at the conclusion of satisfactory tests of all inputs.

The intent is to reduce the amount of time spent causing audible and visible occupant notification during tests in an occupied building. This reduction will help reduce the negative (cry wolf) impact on occupants caused by excessive operation of notification appliances. System printouts or history logs are an effective way of verifying the correct receipt of signals. However, many outputs such as occupant notification and emergency control functions are tested for correct operation, because logs do not necessarily verify operation of the system output. Operation of audible and visible notification appliances could be accomplished in a lump sum fashion after all inputs are proven correct by silent testing. All inputs tested in this manner must be proved to cause the appropriate signal by verifying alarm receipt at the controls as each device is actuated. Manufacturer-specific protocols such as "walk test" or "alarm bypass" are an acceptable means of testing under this section. Other methods of mitigating the negative impact include off-hours tests when the building is not occupied.

The Code permits silent tests. The continuous operation of notification appliances can desensitize building occupants to the signals and may result in the signals being ignored during an actual emergency. The type of testing described in A.14.4.3 is intended to minimize the "cry wolf" syndrome by reducing the duration of notification appliance operation. Also see the article "Cry Wolf," *NEMA Magazine*, Fall 2003.

14.4.3.1* At the request of the authority having jurisdiction, the central station facility installation shall be inspected for complete information regarding the central station system, including specifications, wiring diagrams, and floor plans that have been submitted for approval prior to installation of equipment and wiring.

A.14.4.3.1 If the authority having jurisdiction strongly suspects significant deterioration or otherwise improper operation by a central station, a surprise inspection to test the operation of the central station should be made, but extreme caution should be exercised. This test is to be conducted without advising the central station. However, the communications center must be contacted when manual alarms, waterflow alarms, or automatic fire detection systems are tested so that the fire department will not respond. In addition, persons normally receiving calls for supervisory alarms should be notified when items such as gate valves and functions such as pump power are tested. Confirmation of the authenticity of the test procedure should be obtained and should be a matter for resolution between plant management and the central station.

14.4.3.2* Systems and associated equipment shall be tested according to Table 14.4.3.2. Table 14.4.3.2 was revised by tentative interim amendments (TIAs).

For the 2013 edition, the tables detailing the testing frequencies and test methods have been combined into a single table, Table 14.4.3.2. This table lists each system component and whether it must be tested as part of initial acceptance testing, and provides the frequency of periodic testing and method of testing.

TABLE 14.4.3.2 *Testing*

Component	*Initial Acceptance*	*Periodic Frequency*	*Method*
1. All equipment	X		See Table 14.3.1.
2. Control equipment and transponder			
(a) Functions	X	Annually	Verify correct receipt of alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals (inputs); operation of evacuation signals and auxiliary functions (outputs); circuit supervision, including detection of open circuits and ground faults; and power supply supervision for detection of loss of ac power and disconnection of secondary batteries.

The purpose of testing of the input/output functions, or sequence of operations, for control equipment is to ensure that the system functions as intended. For example, if the sequence of operations intends that actuation of a manual fire alarm box start a stairwell pressurization fan, this function should be confirmed through testing. The Code does not require testing functions internal to the equipment, such as software algorithms and communications protocols (sometimes called firmware). A functional test verifying that a Class A circuit is capable of initiating an alarm signal from either side of an open circuit fault is another example of a function test.

Component	*Initial Acceptance*	*Periodic Frequency*	*Method*
(b) Fuses	X	Annually	Verify rating and supervision.

Verifying the rating and supervision of fuses is important because an incorrect fuse rating can lead to equipment damage or unnecessary loss of power. It is not always possible to tell by visual inspection whether a fuse is open. The most reliable means to determine the integrity of a fuse is to remove it from its receptacle and connect both sides of the fuse to a continuity tester (e.g., an electrical multi-meter). This test should not be performed while the fuse is plugged in, because it is possible to detect continuity through a path other than the fuse.

Component	*Initial Acceptance*	*Periodic Frequency*	*Method*
(c) Interfaced equipment	X	Annually	Verify integrity of single or multiple circuits providing interface between two or more control units. Test interfaced equipment connections by operating or simulating operation of the equipment being supervised. Verify signals required to be transmitted at the control unit.

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method

The wiring connections must be tested by simulating a single open and a single ground to verify initiation of a trouble signal and proper indication on the control unit(s) where the circuit or pathway to interfaced equipment wiring is monitored for integrity. Simulation of a trouble condition in the interfaced equipment should initiate a supervisory signal on the fire alarm or signaling system.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(d) Lamps and LEDs	X	Annually	Illuminate lamps and LEDs.
(e) Primary (main) power supply	X	Annually	Disconnect and test all secondary (standby) power under maximum load, including all alarm appliances requiring simultaneous operation. Reconnect all secondary (standby) power at end of test. Test redundant power supplies separately.
3. Fire alarm control unit trouble signals			
(a) Audible and visual	X	Annually	Verify operation of control unit trouble signals. Verify ring-back feature for systems using a trouble-silencing switch that requires resetting.
(b) Disconnect switches	X	Annually	If control unit has disconnect or isolating switches, verify performance of intended function of each switch. Verify receipt of trouble signal when a supervised function is disconnected.
(c) Ground-fault monitoring circuit	X	Annually	If the system has a ground detection feature, verify the occurrence of ground-fault indication whenever any installation conductor is grounded.

It is important to test for a ground fault by using a jumper from a wired terminal (not a power terminal) on the control unit to ground and to verify that the ground-fault light illuminates on the control unit. The results of these tests should be recorded on the acceptance test report for future troubleshooting information. Note that the control equipment may take up to 200 seconds to indicate a trouble/ground condition. See 12.6.1. Testing for ground-fault trouble signals at each installed device is not necessary. Not all existing control units are equipped with a separate ground-fault indicator. Introduction of a ground fault may simply initiate a common trouble signal.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(d) Transmission of signals to off-premises location	X	Annually	Actuate an initiating device and verify receipt of alarm signal at the off-premises location. Create a trouble condition and verify receipt of a trouble signal at the off-premises location. Actuate a supervisory device and verify receipt of a supervisory signal at the off-premises location. If a transmission carrier is capable of operation under a single- or multiple-fault condition, activate an initiating device during such fault condition and verify receipt of an alarm signal and a trouble signal at the off-premises location.
4. Supervising station alarm systems — transmission Equipment			

(*continues*)

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method

The tests required for supervising station transmission equipment provide comprehensive methods for testing this equipment. The transmission and receipt of fire alarm signals at the supervising station are no less important than detection of the fire.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(a) All equipment	X	Annually	[a]Test all system functions and features in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's published instructions for correct operation in conformance with the applicable sections of Chapter 26. Except for DACT, actuate initiating device and verify receipt of the correct initiating device signal at the supervising station within 90 seconds. Upon completion of the test, restore the system to its functional operating condition. If test jacks are used, conduct the first and last tests without the use of the test jack.
(b) Digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT)	X	Annually	Except for DACTs installed prior to adoption of the 2013 edition of NFPA 72 that are connected to a telephone line (number) that is also supervised for adverse conditions by a derived local channel, ensure connection of the DACT to two separate means of transmission. Test DACT for line seizure capability by initiating a signal while using the telephone line (primary line for DACTs using two telephone lines) for a telephone call. Ensure that the call is interrupted and that the communicator connects to the digital alarm receiver. Verify receipt of the correct signal at the supervising station. Verify each transmission attempt is completed within 90 seconds from going off-hook to on-hook. Disconnect the telephone line (primary line for DACTs using two telephone lines) from the DACT. Verify indication of the DACT trouble signal occurs at the premises fire alarm control unit within 4 minutes of detection of the fault. Verify receipt of the telephone line trouble signal at the supervising station. Restore the telephone line (primary line for DACTs using two telephone lines), reset the fire alarm control unit, and verify that the telephone line fault trouble signal returns to normal. Verify that the supervising station receives the restoral signal from the DACT. Disconnect the secondary means of transmission from the DACT. Verify indication of the DACT trouble signal occurs at the premises fire alarm control unit within 4 minutes of detection of the fault. Verify receipt of the secondarey means trouble signal at the supervising station. Restore the secondary means of transmission, reset the fire alarm control unit, and verify that the trouble signal returns to normal. Verify that the supervising station receives the restoral signal from the secondary transmitter.

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	*Initial Acceptance*	*Periodic Frequency*	*Method*
			Cause the DACT to transmit a signal to the DACR while a fault in the telephone line (number) (primary line for DACTs using two telephone lines) is simulated. Verify utilization of the secondary communication path by the DACT to complete the transmission to the DACR.

The requirements for digital alarm communicator transmitters (DACTs) have been changed for the 2013 edition of the Code. Except in special circumstances, only a single telephone line is permitted to be used. In addition, periods for transmitting test signals have changed from every 24 hours to every 6 hours. See 26.6.3.2.1.4 and 26.6.3.2.1.5 for more information on these changes. The test methods for this equipment have been extensively revised to reflect these changes.

Component	*Initial Acceptance*	*Periodic Frequency*	*Method*
(c) Digital alarm radio transmitter (DART)	X	Annually	Disconnect the primary telephone line. Verify transmission of a trouble signal to the supervising station by the DART occurs within 4 minutes.
(d) McCulloh transmitter	X	Annually	Actuate initiating device. Verify production of not less than three complete rounds of not less than three signal impulses each by the McCulloh transmitter. If end-to-end metallic continuity is present and with a balanced circuit, cause each of the following four transmission channel fault conditions in turn, and verify receipt of correct signals at the supervising station: (1) Open (2) Ground (3) Wire-to-wire short (4) Open and ground If end-to-end metallic continuity is not present and with a properly balanced circuit, cause each of the following three transmission channel fault conditions in turn, and verify receipt of correct signals at the supervising station: (1) Open (2) Ground (3) Wire-to-wire short
(e) Radio alarm transmitter (RAT)	X	Annually	Cause a fault between elements of the transmitting equipment. Verify indication of the fault at the protected premises, or transmission of trouble signal to the supervising station.
(f) Performance-based technologies	X	Annually	Perform tests to ensure the monitoring of integrity of the transmission technology and technology path. Where a single communications path is used, disconnect the communication path. Manually initiate an alarm signal transmission or allow the check-in (handshake) signal to be transmitted automatically.[b] Verify the premises unit annunciates the failure within 200 seconds of the transmission failure. Restore the communication path. Where multiple communication paths are used, disconnect both communication paths. Manually initiate an alarm signal transmission. Verify the premises control unit annunciates the failure within 200 seconds of the transmission failure. Restore both communication paths.

(continues)

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
5. Emergency communications equipment			
(a) Amplifier/tone generators	X	Annually	Verify correct switching and operation of backup equipment.
(b) Call-in signal silence	X	Annually	Operate/function and verify receipt of correct visual and audible signals at control unit.
(c) Off-hook indicator (ring down)	X	Annually	Install phone set or remove phone from hook and verify receipt of signal at control unit.
(d) Phone jacks	X	Annually	Visually inspect phone jack and initiate communications path through jack.

Phone jacks on each floor or zone must be checked for proper operation as part of the initial acceptance and annually as part of periodic testing of the system.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(e) Phone set	X	Annually	Activate each phone set and verify correct operation.
(f) System performance	X	Annually	Operate the system with a minimum of any five handsets simultaneously. Verify voice quality and clarity.
6. Engine-driven generator	X	Monthly	If an engine-driven generator dedicated to the system is used as a required power source, verify operation of the generator in accordance with NFPA 110, *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems,* by the building owner.
7. Secondary (standby) power supply[c]	X	Annually	Disconnect all primary (main) power supplies and verify the occurrence of required trouble indication for loss of primary power. Measure or verify the system's standby and alarm current demand and verify the ability of batteries to meet standby and alarm requirements using manufacturer's data. Operate general alarm systems a minimum of 5 minutes and emergency voice communications systems for a minimum of 15 minutes. Reconnect primary (main) power supply at end of test.

The required battery capacity for a secondary power supply is calculated by determining quiescent (standby) and alarm loads for the system. The manufacturer provides the current draw for a fire alarm system component in both the quiescent and alarm states. System documentation should include battery calculations showing the required capacity of any batteries providing the secondary power supply. Beginning with the 2010 edition, application of a minimum 20 percent safety factor is required for all battery calculations.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
8. Uninterruptible power supply (UPS)	X	Annually	If a UPS system dedicated to the system is used as a required power source, verify by the building owner operation of the UPS system in accordance with NFPA 111, *Standard on Stored Electrical Energy Emergency and Standby Power Systems*.
9. Battery tests			Prior to conducting any battery testing, verify by the person conducting the test, that all system software stored in volatile memory is protected from loss.

Batteries are required to be marked with the month and year of manufacture. The batteries should be checked to verify that they are still within the expected life span as established by the manufacturer. See 10.6.10.1.

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(a) Lead-acid type			
(1) Battery replacement	X	Annually	Replace batteries in accordance with the recommendations of the alarm equipment manufacturer or when the recharged battery voltage or current falls below the manufacturer's recommendations.

Previously, the Code required the replacement of sealed lead-acid batteries at maximum 5-year intervals. The 2013 edition changed this requirement to replacement as recommended by the manufacturer, which may be less than 5 years. Marking the date of manufacture on the batteries as required by 10.6.10.1 is intended to make it easier to determine the required replacement of the batteries.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(2) Charger test	X	Annually	With the batteries fully charged and connected to the charger, measure the voltage across the batteries with a voltmeter. Verify the voltage is 2.30 volts per cell ±0.02 volts at 77°F (25°C) or as specified by the equipment manufacturer.
(3) Discharge test	X	Annually	With the battery charger disconnected, load test the batteries following the manufacturer's recommendations. Verify the voltage level does not fall below the levels specified. Load testing can be by means of an artificial load equal to the full fire alarm load connected to the battery.

Battery load simulation testers that meet the intent of this requirement are commonly available.

Deep discharge testing is not desirable or recommended. In the event of a power failure shortly after the test, the system could be left without a power supply. Additionally, deep discharge testing can damage or weaken some batteries. A typical test places the battery under load for a shorter period (1 to 2 hours). However, the battery should be tested to ensure that it can deliver the required current at rated voltage under maximum expected load. Battery calculations must be relied on to ensure capacity. See Table 14.4.3.2, item 7, 10.6.7.2 and related commentary on battery capacity.

Batteries can be discharged over a longer period of time at lower current than at higher current. As the load applied to a battery increases, the amount of discharge time decreases due to internal battery energy losses. Battery manufacturers have developed battery discharge curves expressing this concept of discharge time as a function of cell voltage and applied current value leading toward an "end-of-discharge cut-off" value (volts per cell).

Battery discharge curves demonstrate that the power available from a battery is dependent on time as well as the amount of current drawn from it and that most of those relationships are not linear.

In all cases, the battery manufacturer's testing documentation should be used when the battery discharge test is performed.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(4) Load voltage test	X	Semiannually	With the battery charger disconnected, load test the batteries following the manufacturer's recommendations. Verify the voltage level does not fall below the levels specified. Load testing can be by means of an artificial load equal to the full fire alarm load connected to the battery. Verify the battery does not fall below 2.05 volts per cell under load.

(*continues*)

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method

Load testing verifies that the battery is capable of delivering the power required by the fire alarm or signaling system — that is, if loss of ac power at the control unit occurs while an alarm signal is active in the system. The load on the battery is the load representative of the conditions present when switchover from ac power to battery occurs.

In all cases, the battery manufacturer's testing documentation should be used for the battery load test procedures.

In general, the battery charger is disconnected from the batteries, a voltmeter is connected across the battery terminals, and ac (primary) power is isolated from the control unit. Once the control unit has switched to secondary power, the system is actuated by introduction of an alarm condition (e.g., actuating a manual fire alarm box). Notification appliances and control functions must not be bypassed at the time of this test, because the intent of the test is verification that the batteries are capable of supporting the load during an alarm condition.

If the voltage level measured on the voltmeter drops below the level specified by the battery manufacturer under full load, the batteries must be supplemented or replaced. Following the addition of more battery capacity or replacement of the batteries, the test should be repeated.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(5) Specific gravity	X	Semiannually	Measure as required the specific gravity of the liquid in the pilot cell or all of the cells. Verify the specific gravity is within the range specified by the manufacturer. Although the specified specific gravity varies from manufacturer to manufacturer, a range of 1.205–1.220 is typical for regular lead-acid batteries, while 1.240–1.260 is typical for high-performance batteries. Do not use a hydrometer that shows only a pass or fail condition of the battery and does not indicate the specific gravity, because such a reading does not give a true indication of the battery condition.

CAUTION: Adding acid to a lead-acid type battery cell may damage or destroy the plates, affecting battery capacity and reliability. Always follow the published instructions from the manufacturer for battery maintenance.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(b) Nickel-cadmium type			
(1) Battery replacement	X	Annually	Replace batteries in accordance with the recommendations of the alarm equipment manufacturer or when the recharged battery voltage or current falls below the manufacturer's recommendations.
(2) Charger test[d]	X	Annually	With the batteries fully charged and connected to the charger, place an ampere meter in series with the battery under charge. Verify the charging current is in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations for the type of battery used. In the absence of specific information, use 1/30 to 1/25 of the battery rating.
(3) Discharge test	X	Annually	With the battery charger disconnected, load test the batteries following the manufacturer's recommendations. Verify the voltage level does not fall below the levels specified. Load testing can be by means of an artificial load equal to the full fire alarm load connected to the battery.

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	*Initial Acceptance*	*Periodic Frequency*	*Method*
(4) Load voltage test	X	Semiannually	With the battery charger disconnected, load test the batteries following the manufacturer's recommendations. Verify the voltage level does not fall below the levels specified. Load testing can be by means of an artificial load equal to the full fire alarm load connected to the battery. Verify the float voltage for the entire battery is 1.42 volts per cell, nominal, under load. If possible, measure cells individually.
(c) Sealed lead-acid type			
(1) Battery replacement	X	Annually	Replace batteries in accordance with the recommendations of the alarm equipment manufacturer or when the recharged battery voltage or current falls below the manufacturer's recommendations.
(2) Charger test	X	Annually	With the batteries fully charged and connected to the charger, measure the voltage across the batteries with a voltmeter. Verify the voltage is 2.30 volts per cell ±0.02 volts at 77°F (25°C) or as specified by the equipment manufacturer.
(3) Discharge test	X	Annually	With the battery charger disconnected, load test the batteries following the manufacturer's recommendations. Verify the voltage level does not fall below the levels specified. Load testing can be by means of an artificial load equal to the full fire alarm load connected to the battery.
(4) Load voltage test	X	Semiannually	Verify the battery performs under load, in accordance with the battery manufacturer's specifications.
10. Public emergency alarm reporting system — wired system	X	Daily	Manual tests of the power supply for public reporting circuits shall be made and recorded at least once during each 24-hour period. Such tests shall include the following: (1) Current strength of each circuit. Changes in current of any circuit exceeding 10 percent shall be investigated immediately. (2) Voltage across terminals of each circuit inside of terminals of protective devices. Changes in voltage of any circuit exceeding 10 percent shall be investigated immediately. (3) [e]Voltage between ground and circuits. If this test shows a reading in excess of 50 percent of that shown in the test specified in (2), the trouble shall be immediately located and cleared. Readings in excess of 25 percent shall be given early attention. These readings shall be taken with a calibrated voltmeter of not more than 100 ohms resistance per volt. Systems in which each circuit is supplied by an independent current source (Forms 3 and 4) require tests between ground and each side of each circuit. Common current source systems (Form 2) require voltage tests between ground and each terminal of each battery and other current source.

Public emergency alarm reporting systems are municipal fire alarm systems operated by the local jurisdiction. The most common component is the red fire alarm box often found on a street corner. The requirements for these systems are found in Chapter 27, Public Emergency Alarm Reporting Systems.

(continues)

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
			(4) Ground current reading shall be permitted in lieu of (3). If this method of testing is used, all grounds showing a current reading in excess of 5 percent of the supplied line current shall be given immediate attention. (5) Voltage across terminals of common battery on switchboard side of fuses. (6) Voltage between common battery terminals and ground. Abnormal ground readings shall be investigated immediately. Tests specified in (5) and (6) shall apply only to those systems using a common battery. If more than one common battery is used, each common battery shall be tested.
11. Remote annunciators	X	Annually	Verify the correct operation and identification of annunciators. If provided, verify the correct operation of annunciator under a fault condition.

Remote annunciation is provided for use by fire department personnel responding to the alarm. The intent of remote annunciation is to reduce the time spent finding the source of the alarm by providing clear and accurate information to the responding fire service. For that reason, remote annunciation information should be given to the fire department that is assigned to respond to the protected premises for review and input. Too much detail on the annunciator is as problematic as too little information. The responding fire department should be asked to review the information provided by the remote annunciator.

Legends and/or room labels (room description and room number) identified on graphic maps mounted adjacent to the control equipment or as-built (record) drawings must be accurate and represent the current use of the space. It is imperative that the descriptors identified on the maps or record drawings match the description of the device location identified on the annunciator(s). Upon arrival on scene, fire department personnel should be able see the information displayed on the annunciator screen and be able to cross-reference that location with the map or record drawings in order to know where to assign fire fighters to specific tasks depending on the location of the alarm.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
12. Reserved			
13. Reserved			
14. Reserved			
15. Conductors — metallic			
(a) Stray voltage	X	N/A	Test all installation conductors with a volt/ohmmeter to verify that there are no stray (unwanted) voltages between installation conductors or between installation conductors and ground. Verify the maximum allowable stray voltage does not exceed 1 volt ac/dc, unless a different threshold is specified in the published manufacturer's instructions for the installed equipment.
(b) Ground faults	X	N/A	Test all installation conductors, other than those intentionally and permanently grounded, for isolation from ground per the installed equipment manufacturer's published instructions.

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	*Initial Acceptance*	*Periodic Frequency*	*Method*
(c) Short-circuit faults	X	N/A	Test all installation conductors, other than those intentionally connected together, for conductor-to-conductor isolation per the published manufacturer's instructions for the installed equipment. Also test these same circuits conductor-to-ground.
(d) Loop resistance	X	N/A	With each initiating and indicating circuit installation conductor pair short-circuited at the far end, measure and record the resistance of each circuit. Verify that the loop resistance does not exceed the limits specified in the published manufacturer's instructions for the installed equipment.

The fire alarm control unit manufacturer specifies the maximum loop resistance for a circuit. If the measured loop resistance exceeds the manufacturer's specified limit, the circuit must be revised. Loop resistance can also affect the performance of notification appliance circuits due to voltage drop concerns. Refer to the commentary following 18.3.2.3.

Component	*Initial Acceptance*	*Periodic Frequency*	*Method*
(e) Circuit integrity	X	N/A	For initial and reacceptance testing, confirm the introduction of a fault in any circuit monitored for integrity results in a trouble indication at the fire alarm control unit. Open one connection at not less than 10 percent of the initiating devices, notification appliances and controlled devices on every initiating device circuit, notification appliance circuit, and signaling line circuit. Confirm all circuits perform as indicated in Sections 23.5, 23.6, and 23.7.

The term *circuit integrity,* as used here, means monitoring the integrity of the circuit or pathway as required by 12.6.1. In addition to the open-circuit test at the connection of 10 percent of the components on each circuit, required at initial acceptance, testing of each circuit is also required on an annual basis to verify that circuits and pathways have not been changed from the original installation.

Component	*Initial Acceptance*	*Periodic Frequency*	*Method*
	N/A	Annually	For periodic testing, test each initiating device circuit, notification appliance circuit, and signaling line circuit for correct indication at the control unit. Confirm all circuits perform as indicated in Sections 23.5, 23.6, and 23.7.
16. Conductors — nonmetallic			
(a) Fiber optics	X	N/A	Test the fiber-optic transmission line by the use of an optical power meter or by an optical time domain reflectometer used to measure the relative power loss of the line. Test result data must meet or exceed ANSI/TIA 568-C.3, *Optical Fiber Cabling Components Standard*, related to fiber-optic lines and connection/splice losses and the control unit manufacturer's published specifications.
(b) Circuit integrity	X	N/A	For initial and reacceptance testing, confirm the introduction of a fault in any circuit monitored for integrity results in a trouble indication at the fire alarm control unit. Open one connection at not less than 10 percent of the initiating devices, notification appliances, and controlled devices on every initiating device circuit, notification appliance circuit, and signaling line circuit. Confirm all circuits perform as indicated in Sections 23.5, 23.6, and 23.7.

(continues)

TABLE 14.4.3.2 *Continued*

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method

The term *circuit integrity,* as used here, means monitoring the integrity of the circuit or pathway as required by 12.6.1. In addition to the open-circuit test at the connection of 10 percent of the components on each circuit, required at initial acceptance, testing of each circuit is also required on an annual basis to verify that circuits and pathways have not been changed from the original installation.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
	N/A	Annually	For periodic testing, test each initiating device circuit, notification appliance circuit, and signaling line circuit for correct indication at the control unit. Confirm all circuits perform as indicated in Sections 23.5, 23.6, and 23.7.
17. Initiating devices[f]			
(a) Electromechanical releasing device			
(1) Nonrestorable-type link	X	Annually	Verify correct operation by removal of the fusible link and operation of the associated device. Lubricate any moving parts as necessary.
(2) Restorable-type link[g]	X	Annually	Verify correct operation by removal of the fusible link and operation of the associated device. Lubricate any moving parts as necessary.
(b) Fire extinguishing system(s) or suppression system(s) alarm switch	X	Annually	Operate the switch mechanically or electrically and verify receipt of signal by the fire alarm control unit.

Testing the operation of a suppression system switch that initiates an alarm signal to the building fire alarm system is required by the Code, but operation of other fire suppression system components and functions is not required. The fire suppression system and its components are tested in accordance with the standard applicable to the system. For example, the foam system actuation switch shown in Exhibit 14.18 following Table 14.4.3.2 is inspected and tested in accordance with NFPA 25, *Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems*.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(c) Fire–gas and other detectors	X	Annually	Test fire–gas detectors and other fire detectors as prescribed by the manufacturer and as necessary for the application.
(d) Heat detectors			
(1) Fixed-temperature, rate-of-rise, rate of compensation, restorable line, spot type (excluding pneumatic tube type)	X	Annually (see 14.4.4.5)	Perform heat test with a listed and labeled heat source or in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions. Assure that the test method for the installed equipment does not damage the nonrestorable fixed-temperature element of a combination rate-of-rise/fixed-temperature element detector.

In previous editions of the Code, the heat source was required to be applied for "response within 1 minute." The assumption is that the 1-minute time requirement was introduced as an added level of protection to ensure that the test did not damage the thermal element or the detector housing. The requirement for response within 1 minute was removed from the 2010 edition, because in some instances the 1-minute time frame was found to be incorrectly interpreted as a heat detector sensitivity test.

There is no standardized, repeatable test method or test apparatus for all brands and all types of heat detectors. Neither the Code nor the test standards used by the listing organizations specify a specific response time in the field. The heat source and the test method specified

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method

in the manufacturer's published instructions are important to be used and caution exercised to avoid damaging the detector or its components.

Extreme caution must be used in locations requiring hazardous (classified) electrical equipment (those containing flammable or explosive vapors or dusts) when testing heat detectors. In no case should open flames be used to test any type of heat detector. In most cases the use of hot water, a hair dryer, or similar safe means can be used to test a heat detector. For some types of rate-of-rise heat detectors, a technician may be able to actuate the detector by rubbing his or her hands together and then cupping both hands around the detector. This action is often all it takes to create the rate-of-temperature rise required to actuate the detector.

Exhibit 14.19 following Table 14.4.3.2 shows a commercially available cordless device for testing heat detectors.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(2) Fixed-temperature, nonrestorable line type	X	Annually	Do not perform heat test. Test functionality mechanically and electrically. Measure and record loop resistance. Investigate changes from acceptance test.

The test should be performed by shorting across the conductors at the end of the line to simulate actuation of the circuit or by using some other approved method identified in the manufacturer's published instructions for the device. Heat testing of a nonrestorable heat detector will actuate the detector, resulting in the need for replacement.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(3) Fixed-temperature, nonrestorable spot type	X	See Method	After 15 years from initial installation, replace all devices or have 2 detectors per 100 laboratory tested. Replace the 2 detectors with new devices. If a failure occurs on any of the detectors removed, remove and test additional detectors to determine either a general problem involving faulty detectors or a localized problem involving 1 or 2 defective detectors. If detectors are tested instead of replaced, repeat tests at intervals of 5 years.

The laboratory test must be conducted by an independent testing laboratory engaged in the listing or approval of heat detectors. The detectors selected for testing must be from the originally installed detectors. Detectors installed to replace those selected for testing purposes should not be sampled until such time as all original detectors have been tested. Detailed records, such as notations on the record drawings, must be maintained to show which detectors have been removed for testing and replaced with new detectors.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(4) Nonrestorable (general)	X	Annually	Do not perform heat tests. Test functionality mechanically and electrically.

Testing can be conducted by operating contacts by hand, electrically shorted using a jumper, or other manufacturer-approved method. The purpose of the test is to ensure alarm response. Heat testing of a nonrestorable heat detector will actuate the detector, resulting in the need for replacement.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(5) Restorable line type, pneumatic tube only	X	Annually	Perform heat tests (where test chambers are in circuit), with a listed and labeled heat source or in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions of the detector or conduct a test with pressure pump.

(*continues*)

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method

Pneumatic tube–type heat detectors are often found actuating older deluge sprinkler systems or other special fire suppression systems.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(6) Single- and multiple-station heat alarms	X	Annually	Conduct functional tests according to manufacturer's published instructions. Do not test nonrestorable heat detectors with heat.
(e) Manual fire alarm boxes	X	Annually	Operate manual fire alarm boxes per the manufacturer's published instructions. Test both key-operated presignal and general alarm manual fire alarm boxes.

Functional testing of a manual fire alarm box includes physically actuating the station as it is intended to be operated in an actual emergency. If the fire alarm box is a double-action type with a push-in and pull-down feature, the intent of the Code is that test personnel physically push in on the device and pull down on the lever to actuate the device. Use of a key to open the fire alarm box to cause actuation does not meet the testing requirement of the Code. A key should be used only to reset the fire alarm box after it has been physically operated.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(f) Radiant energy fire detectors	X	Semiannually	Test flame detectors and spark/ember detectors in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions to determine that each detector is operative.

Exhibit 14.20 following Table 14.4.3.2 shows a technician using a manufacturer-provided test instrument to test the response of a flame detector. Consult the published instructions from the manufacturer for proper testing procedures for any type of flame or spark/ember fire detector.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
			Determine flame detector and spark/ember detector sensitivity using any of the following: (1) Calibrated test method (2) Manufacturer's calibrated sensitivity test instrument (3) Listed control unit arranged for the purpose (4) Other approved calibrated sensitivity test method that is directly proportional to the input signal from a fire, consistent with the detector listing or approval If designed to be field adjustable, replace detectors found to be outside of the approved range of sensitivity or adjust to bring them into the approved range. Do not determine flame detector and spark/ember detector sensitivity using a light source that administers an unmeasured quantity of radiation at an undefined distance from the detector.
(g) Smoke detectors — functional test			
(1) In other than one- and two-family dwellings, system detectors	X	Annually	[h]Test smoke detectors in place to ensure smoke entry into the sensing chamber and an alarm response. Use smoke or a listed and labeled product acceptable to the manufacturer or in accordance with their published instructions. Other methods listed in the manufacturer's published instructions that ensure smoke entry from the protected area, through the vents, into the sensing chamber can be used.

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method

The test method described here is considered a "go, no-go" functional test to ensure smoke entry into the chamber and alarm response. The test does not test the detector's sensitivity. Because verification of smoke entry must be part of the test, use of a test button or a magnet does not meet the functional test requirement of the Code. Any smoke source must be acceptable to the detector manufacturer. The use of a listed aerosol is acceptable provided it is used in accordance with the instructions of both the manufacturer of the aerosol and smoke detector as identified in the published instructions.

The sensitivity test methods outlined in item 17(h) apply to all smoke detectors other than those in one- and two-family dwellings.

Other listed smoke detection devices not connected to a fire alarm system (often called stand-alone detectors) are sometimes found in HVAC systems, door-releasing applications, and special hazards releasing devices. The requirements in Chapter 14, including sensitivity testing, apply to these types of detectors. Note that in the context of item 17(g), the term *system detector* generally applies to smoke detection devices other than smoke alarms.

Exhibit 14.21 following Table 14.4.3.2 shows a technician using listed test equipment that generates an aerosol to actuate a smoke detector. This test confirms the ability of smoke to enter the sensing chamber and initiation of the appropriate alarm or supervisory signal. Most smoke detectors initiate an alarm signal, but detectors for elevator recall and HVAC shutdown are permitted to initiate a supervisory signal under some conditions.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(2) Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms connected to protected premises systems	X	Annually	Perform a functional test on all single- and multiple-station smoke alarms connected to a protected premises fire alarm system by putting the smoke alarm into an alarm condition and verifying that the protected premises system receives a supervisory signal and does not cause a fire alarm signal.

Paragraph 23.8.3.2 permits the connection of dwelling unit smoke alarms to a protected premises fire alarm system as long as the smoke alarm signal is treated as a supervisory signal. Paragraph 23.8.3.5 prohibits the operation of any test switch or an automatic alarm condition from causing an alarm condition on the protected premises fire alarm system. Where these smoke alarms are connected to the protected premises system, a functional test must be performed to demonstrate that the correct signal is received.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(3) System smoke detectors used in one- and two-family dwellings	X	Annually	Conduct functional tests according to manufacturer's published instructions.

Smoke detectors used in one- and two-family dwellings are required to be functionally tested per the manufacturer's instructions but are not required by the Code to include a smoke entry test or to be sensitivity tested, unless required by the manufacturer.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(4) Air sampling	X	Annually	Test with smoke or a listed and labeled product acceptable to the manufacturer or in accordance with their published instructions. Test from the end sampling port or point on each pipe run. Verify airflow through all other ports or points.

(*continues*)

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(5) Duct type	X	Annually	In addition to the testing required in Table 14.4.3.2(g)(1) and Table 14.4.3.2(h), test duct smoke detectors that use sampling tubes to ensure that they will properly sample the airstream in the duct using a method acceptable to the manufacturer or in accordance with their published instructions.

Duct smoke detectors must be tested to confirm proper operation of the detector. The Code also requires tests to ensure that the duct smoke detector samples the airstream. This is typically accomplished using a manometer or other instrument to measure the air pressure differential across the pickup and return tubes with the HVAC system operating. The measured values are then compared to the minimum air pressure differential information provided by the duct detector manufacturer. Exhibit 14.22 following Table 14.4.3.2 shows a duct detector being tested with a manometer.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(6) Projected beam type	X	Annually	Test the detector by introducing smoke, other aerosol, or an optical filter into the beam path.
(7) Smoke detector with built-in thermal element	X	Annually	Operate both portions of the detector independently as described for the respective devices.

The Code requires a test of both portions of a combination unit if possible. The issue of the failure of one feature or the other is not explicitly addressed, but replacement of the unit if either the smoke detection or heat detection portion of the device fails the test would be prudent. Refer to Table 14.4.3.2, item 17(l), for additional testing methods required for multi-sensor, multi-criteria, and combination detectors.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(8) Smoke detectors with control output functions	X	Annually	Verify that the control capability remains operable even if all of the initiating devices connected to the same initiating device circuit or signaling line circuit are in an alarm state.

The required test method is to verify the output to an emergency control function actuated by a smoke detector on an initiating device circuit even if all other devices on the circuit actuate. For example, a smoke detector on an initiating device circuit might be used to initiate elevator recall. The detector initiating the recall signal must be capable of operation even if all other devices on the circuit actuate simultaneously. If a circuit-powered smoke detector tries to actuate after a manual fire alarm box on the same circuit has actuated, the smoke detector may not actuate. When used for control functions, smoke detectors installed on initiating device circuits should be powered separately to permit simultaneous operation of all devices on the circuit without loss of control capability. See 21.3.4 and related commentary for more detailed information.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(h) Smoke detectors — sensitivity testing			
In other than one- and two-family dwellings, system detectors	N/A	See 14.4.4.3	[i]Perform any of the following tests to ensure that each smoke detector is within its listed and marked sensitivity range: (1) Calibrated test method (2) Manufacturer's calibrated sensitivity test instrument (3) Listed control equipment arranged for the purpose (4) Smoke detector/control unit arrangement whereby the detector causes a signal at the control unit when its sensitivity is outside its listed sensitivity range

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	*Initial Acceptance*	*Periodic Frequency*	*Method*
			(5) Other calibrated sensitivity test method approved by the authority having jurisdiction
(i) Carbon monoxide detectors/carbon monoxide alarms for the purposes of fire detection	X	Annually	Test the devices in place to ensure CO entry to the sensing chamber by introduction through the vents, to the sensing chamber of listed and labeled product acceptable to the manufacturer or in accordance with their published instructions.

These carbon monoxide detectors/alarms are detectors/alarms that provide fire detection using the principle of detecting carbon monoxide emissions. Such detectors must be functionally tested for carbon monoxide entry into the device. These are not the same devices used to detect carbon monoxide for toxicity/life safety; those alarms are required to be tested in accordance with NFPA 720. For system-type detectors installed after January 1, 2012, NFPA 720 requires a test that introduces carbon monoxide into the sensing chamber to ensure a proper response, similar to the functional test required of a smoke detector.

Component	*Initial Acceptance*	*Periodic Frequency*	*Method*
(j) Initiating devices, supervisory			
(1) Control valve switch	X	Annually	Operate valve and verify signal receipt to be within the first two revolutions of the handwheel or within one-fifth of the travel distance, or per the manufacturer's published instructions.
(2) High- or low-air pressure switch	X	Annually	Operate switch and verify receipt of signal is obtained where the required pressure is increased or decreased a maximum 10 psi (70 kPa) from the required pressure level.

High- or low-air pressure switches are typically installed to supervise the air pressure in dry pipe sprinkler systems, in some types of preaction sprinkler systems, and in pressure tanks installed as part of a fire protection water supply.

Component	*Initial Acceptance*	*Periodic Frequency*	*Method*
(3) Room temperature switch	X	Annually	Operate switch and verify receipt of signal to indicate the decrease in room temperature to 40°F (4.4°C) and its restoration to above 40°F (4.4°C).
(4) Water level switch	X	Annually	Operate switch and verify receipt of signal indicating the water level raised or lowered a maximum 3 in. (70 mm) from the required level within a pressure tank, or a maximum 12 in. (300 mm) from the required level of a nonpressure tank. Also verify its restoral to required level.
(5) Water temperature switch	X	Annually	Operate switch and verify receipt of signal to indicate the decrease in water temperature to 40°F (4.4°C) and its restoration to above 40°F (4.4°C).
(k) Mechanical, electrosonic, or pressure-type waterflow device	X	Semiannually	Water shall be flowed through an inspector's test connection indicating the flow of water equal to that from a single sprinkler of the smallest orifice size installed in the system for wet-pipe systems, or an alarm test bypass connection for dry-pipe, pre-action, or deluge systems in accordance with NFPA 25, *Standard for the Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems*.

(*continues*)

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method

The preferred means of testing a waterflow switch is to flow water past the flow switch by opening a test connection that simulates the flow of a single sprinkler head of the smallest orifice size installed in the sprinkler system. However, due to restrictions on the use of water, environmental concerns, or jurisdictional licensing requirements, personnel conducting fire alarm system testing may not be permitted to use the sprinkler system test valves to flow water. Thus, testing of the waterflow switch by flowing water may best be handled through coordination with the testing performed for compliance with NFPA 25.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(l) Multi-sensor fire detector or multi-criteria fire detector or combination fire detector	X	Annually	Test each of the detection principles present within the detector (e.g., smoke/heat/CO, etc.) independently for the specific detection principle, regardless of the configuration status at the time of testing. Also test each detector in accordance with the published manufacturer's instructions.

The methods in Table 14.4.3.2, item 17(l), expand on those contained in item 17(g)(7). Refer to the definitions of the terms *combination*, *multi-criteria,* and *multi-sensor detectors* in 3.3.66.4, 3.3.66.12, 3.3.66.13. These test methods apply to all three types of detectors. The intent of these requirements is to independently verify the performance of each sensor employed in the detector by actuating each sensor incorporated into the detector. For example, a detector that requires sensing both smoke and carbon monoxide to actuate would be tested such that both smoke and carbon monoxide are present to ensure that the detector actuates as expected.

Testing of combination detectors, such as the combination smoke and heat detector shown in Exhibit 14.23 following Table 14.4.3.2, requires that each sensing mechanism be tested. The heat detection portion is tested in accordance with the requirements for heat detectors. The smoke detection is tested in accordance with the requirements for smoke detectors. The evidence of paint on the side of the detector should also trigger a careful examination of the detector to ensure operation is not impaired in any way.

Exhibit 14.24 following Table 14.4.3.2 shows a commercially available multicriteria (smoke, heat, and CO) detector tester.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
			Test individual sensors together if the technology allows individual sensor responses to be verified. Perform tests as described for the respective devices by introduction of the physical phenomena to the sensing chamber of element, and an electronic check (magnets, analogue values, etc.) is not sufficient to comply with this requirement. Confirm the result of each sensor test through indication at the detector or control unit. Where individual sensors cannot be tested individually, test the primary sensor.[j] Record all tests and results.
18. Special hazard equipment			
(a) Abort switch (dead-man type)	X	Annually	Operate abort switch and verify correct sequence and operation.
(b) Abort switch (recycle type)	X	Annually	Operate abort switch and verify development of correct matrix with each sensor operated.
(c) Abort switch (special type)	X	Annually	Operate abort switch and verify correct sequence and operation in accordance with authority having jurisdiction. Observe sequencing as specified on as-built drawings or in system owner's manual.

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(d) Cross-zone detection circuit	X	Annually	Operate one sensor or detector on each zone. Verify occurrence of correct sequence with operation of first zone and then with operation of second zone.
(e) Matrix-type circuit	X	Annually	Operate all sensors in system. Verify development of correct matrix with each sensor operated.
(f) Release solenoid circuit[k]	X	Annually	Verify operation of solenoid.
(g) Squibb release circuit	X	Annually	Use AGI flashbulb or other test light approved by the manufacturer. Verify operation of flashbulb or light.
(h) Verified, sequential, or counting zone circuit	X	Annually	Operate required sensors at a minimum of four locations in circuit. Verify correct sequence with both the first and second detector in alarm.
(i) All above devices or circuits or combinations thereof	X	Annually	Verify supervision of circuits by creating an open circuit.

These tests are intended for fire alarm or signaling systems that actuate a special hazard fire suppression system such as a clean agent or carbon dioxide system. Testing these functions is not the intent of the Code, unless the fire alarm or signaling system being tested actuates the suppression system. In many cases these tests will apply to a releasing system fire alarm system that reports to the building fire alarm system. When testing a fire alarm system that actuates a special hazard fire suppression system, the test plan required by 14.2.10 should detail the procedures to be used to prevent accidental operation of the suppression system. The manufacturer's test procedures should always be reviewed prior to conducting any tests. These procedures often involve isolating or impairing the suppression system during the tests. Proper impairment handling procedures must be observed, and care must be taken to confirm full restoration of the system at the conclusion of testing. After all equipment has been tested independently, all connections or test switches must be returned to their normal positions. Also refer to the requirements in 14.2.6 and to the related commentary.

The requirements of Chapter 14 do not apply directly to special hazard fire suppression systems. The inspection, testing, and maintenance of these systems are covered by the specific code or standard applicable to the system. For example, the inspection, testing, and maintenance of a clean agent fire suppression system are covered by NFPA 2001, *Standard on Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems*. However, 4.3.1.1 of NFPA 2001, 2012 edition, states, "Detection, actuation, alarm, and control systems shall be installed, tested, and maintained in accordance with appropriate NFPA protective signaling systems standards." *NFPA 72* is the applicable signaling systems standard, so these requirements are applicable by reference from the suppression system standard.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
19. Combination systems			
(a) Fire extinguisher electronic monitoring device/system	X	Annually	Test communication between the device connecting the fire extinguisher electronic monitoring device/system and the fire alarm control unit to ensure proper signals are received at the fire alarm control unit and remote annunciator(s) if applicable.
(b) Carbon monoxide[l] device/system	X	Annually	Test communication between the device connecting the carbon monoxide device/system and the fire alarm control unit to ensure proper signals are received at the fire alarm control unit and remote annunciator(s) if applicable.

(continues)

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
20. Interface equipment[m]	X	See 14.4.4.4	Test interface equipment connections by operating or simulating the equipment being supervised. Verify signals required to be transmitted are received at the control unit. Test frequency for interface equipment is the same as the frequency required by the applicable NFPA standard(s) for the equipment being supervised.

The signals being verified include the status (i.e., alarm, trouble, and supervisory conditions) of the interfaced equipment. Examples of interfaced equipment include special hazards fire suppression control units, power availability to an elevator shunt trip relay, a preaction sprinkler system control unit, or a smoke control system.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
21. Guard's tour equipment	X	Annually	Test the device in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.
22. Alarm notification appliances			
(a) Audible[n]	X	N/A	For initial and reacceptance testing, measure sound pressure levels for signals with a sound level meter meeting ANSI S1.4a, *Specifications for Sound Level Meters,* Type 2 requirements. Measure sound pressure levels throughout the protected area to confirm that they are in compliance with Chapter 18. Set the sound level meter in accordance with ANSI S3.41, *American National Standard Audible Evacuation Signal,* using the time-weighted characteristic F (FAST).

During initial and reacceptance testing, sound pressure level measurements are required throughout the protected area. However, with careful planning, the number of test locations can be minimized by selection of "worst-case" locations. With the approval of the authority having jurisdiction, areas that are physically remote from the audible notification appliances are selected as worst-case locations to measure and record sound pressure levels. If these areas comply with Code requirements, then the authority having jurisdiction may deem further measurements unnecessary. Areas failing to meet the requirements of Section 18.4 will generally require changes in the output tap settings or the provision of additional appliances to meet the required sound pressure levels. Only the audible evacuation signal or alert signal is used to evaluate audibility (sound pressure level). In systems that use multiple alert tones, it might be necessary to conduct at least one test using each tone to ensure that all tones produce the same relative sound pressure level. Different signals (tones) from a system using horns to produce different tones or signals will not likely vary in sound pressure level. Systems using speakers to reproduce tones could vary in sound pressure level output due to differences in the volume of the tones as programmed in the control unit software. A check of the sound pressure level from each tone as measured in a single location should show whether there are any significant differences in the sound pressure level produced by different tones. The Code does not intend and does not require the measurement of the audibility of voice messages.

Sound pressure level meters used to test audible notification appliances should be set to the "FAST" response time on the "A" weighted scale (i.e., dbA). Testing with the meter set to slow would damp out noise but would also affect measurements of time varying sounds such as the temporal patterns used for fire alarm and carbon monoxide alarms. The maximum sound level read on the meter at the measurement location should be documented. Note that the maximum is the highest root-mean-square (RMS) reading of the meter, not the peak. This is similar to measuring alternating current voltage. The meter might have a "max hold" or "peak hold" to save the highest reading. Check with the meter documentation to determine if it is saving the highest RMS value or the highest true waveform peak value.

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	*Initial Acceptance*	*Periodic Frequency*	*Method*

FAQ

Are measurements of sound pressure levels required throughout the building for periodic testing?

After initial acceptance testing, only verification of notification appliance operation is required. However, where areas are affected by building, system, or occupancy changes, consideration should be given to making sound pressure level measurements to ensure audibility has not been adversely affected. These areas should be evident during the visual inspection required throughout the building. As specified in 14.3.4, the visual inspections are intended to ensure that no changes have been made that will adversely affect equipment performance. Building modifications triggering consideration for additional sound pressure level measurements might include areas where the occupancy changed, renovated or remodeled areas, and areas where new equipment or processes have increased the ambient or peak sound pressure levels.

	N/A	Annually	[o]For periodic testing, verify the operation of the notification appliances.
(b) Audible textual notification appliances (speakers and other appliances to convey voice messages)	X	N/A	For initial and reacceptance testing, measure sound pressure levels for signals with a sound level meter meeting ANSI S1.4a, *Specifications for Sound Level Meters,* Type 2 requirements. Measure sound pressure levels throughout the protected area to confirm that they are in compliance with Chapter 18. Set the sound level meter in accordance with ANSI S3.41, *American National Standard Audible Evacuation Signal,* using the time-weighted characteristic F (FAST).

These test methods address both the signals produced by audible textual notification appliances (speakers) and the intelligibility of voice messages produced by these appliances. Requirements for the measurement of sound pressure levels for "signals" are similar to those in item (22)(a). The requirements for verification of voice message intelligibility were revised in the 2010 edition.

Previous Code editions specified that where voice intelligibility was required, intelligibility was required to be verified via test methods identified in ANSI S3.2, *Method for Measuring the Intelligibility of Speech over Communications Systems*; IEC 60849, *Sound Systems for Emergency Purposes*; or other methods acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. Since the subject of intelligibility was introduced in the 2007 edition of the Code, extensive research has been conducted on the subject, including studies by the Fire Protection Research Foundation (see the findings in the final report, *Intelligibility of Fire Alarm and Emergency Communication Systems*). The 2010 edition of the Code introduced additional information on the subject of intelligibility as well as a new Chapter 24, Emergency Communications Systems (ECS). Additional information on intelligibility is included in Annex D.

Table 14.4.3.2, item (22)(b), states that audible information must be verified as being distinguishable and understandable and in compliance with 14.4.11 and 18.4.10 (by reference). Quantitative measurements to determine intelligibility is neither a requirement of the Code nor is it the intent of the technical committee. (See the commentary for A.14.4.11.2.) The Code only requires that voice messages be verified as being distinguishable and understandable and permits qualitative assessment — a simple listen test. In some cases it may be acceptable to simply ensure that the voice messages broadcast over the speakers in a fire alarm or emergency communications system are intelligible (understandable) to the building occupants. Voice

(*continues*)

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	*Initial Acceptance*	*Periodic Frequency*	*Method*

intelligibility requirements in 18.4.10 are specified using the term *acoustically distinguishable space* (ADS), defined in 3.3.6. Only those spaces requiring voice intelligibility need to be verified as distinguishable and understandable. An important concept is that the sound pressure level measurements required in item (22)(b) apply to "signals" (evacuations signals and alert tones). The measurement of sound pressure levels for voice messages is not required (see 18.4.1.5), although it may be done in conjunction with measurements for intelligibility. Item (22)(b) requires verification that intelligibility is provided but does not require that the verification be specifically confirmed by testing (intelligibility measurements). Subjective verification (listening) may be sufficient in many situations. Designers, owners, and authorities having jurisdiction have to decide when and where testing is desirable, if at all.

For periodic testing, Table 14.4.3.2, item (22)(b), requires verification of notification appliance operation. Changes in occupancy, the building, or the system may affect the audibility of signals and the intelligibility of voice messages. Consideration should be given to ensuring that audibility and intelligibility have not been adversely affected. See the related commentary following item 22(a). Compliance with the requirement for voice intelligibility begins with the system design. To comply with requirements for audibility and intelligibility, many installers attempt to tap speakers at a higher wattage rather than increase the number of speakers in an area. This incorrect approach to sound level compliance leads to distortion of voice messages through the speakers. The 2010 Code edition introduced new requirements and additional guidance for the proper design of intelligible voice systems. Refer to 18.4.10, 24.4.2.2, the related Annex A material, and Annex D. Also refer to Supplement 2 in this handbook.

	N/A	Annually	Verify audible information to be distinguishable and understandable and in compliance with 14.4.11. [o]For periodic testing, verify the operation of the notification appliances.
(c) Visible	X	N/A	Perform initial and reacceptance testing in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions. Verify appliance locations to be per approved layout and confirm that no floor plan changes affect the approved layout. Verify that the candela rating marking agrees with the approved drawing. Confirm that each appliance flashes.

Acceptance tests must ensure that visible notification appliances operate and that the marked candela rating agrees with the approved drawings. Periodic tests are only required to verify that each appliance operates. The visual inspection required by 14.3.1 includes verification that the strobe is not blocked by shelving, furniture, ceiling-mounted light fixtures, movable partitions, or other obstructions.

	N/A	Annually	For periodic testing, verify that each appliance flashes.
23. Exit marking audible notification appliance	X	Annually	Perform tests in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions.
24. Emergency control functions[p]	X	Annually	For initial, reacceptance, and periodic testing, verify emergency control function interface device activation. Where an emergency control function interface device is disabled or disconnected during initiating device testing, verify that the disabled or disconnected emergency control function interface device has been properly restored.

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	*Initial Acceptance*	*Periodic Frequency*	*Method*

The Code generally uses the term *emergency control functions* to refer to fire safety functions, as well as other non-fire–related control functions that may be applicable in emergency communications systems as well. Refer to the definition of emergency control functions in 3.3.91.

25. Area of refuge two-way communication system	X	Annually	At a minimum, test the two-way communication system to verify operation and receipt of visual and audible signals at the transmitting and receiving unit respectively. Operate systems with more than five stations with a minimum of five stations operating simultaneously. Verify voice quality and clarity.

Area of refuge systems are installed to permit occupants requiring assistance in a emergency, such as someone with a physical disability, to communicate with emergency personnel. The system must be tested to ensure initiation of audible and visual signals at the receiving unit, and that voice communications are clear. Exhibit 14.25 following Table 14.4.3.2 shows an example of an area of refuge station used to communicate with emergency personnel.

26. Special procedures			
(a) Alarm verification	X	Annually	Verify time delay and alarm response for smoke detector circuits identified as having alarm verification.

To reduce the time required for testing circuits or devices equipped with alarm verification, the alarm verification feature may be disabled at the start of testing and re-enabled again after the final test. If this procedure is used, all circuits equipped with alarm verification must be tested again to ensure that the alarm verification feature is operable. Note that alarm verification is permitted only for smoke detectors.

(b) Multiplex systems	X	Annually	Verify communications between sending and receiving units under both primary and secondary power.

The performance of circuits and pathways should be verified in accordance with the circuit designations (classes as defined by Chapter 12), as well as the requirements of the control unit manufacturer. The authority having jurisdiction requires testing to meet the minimum requirements of the Code; however, it is possible that the system design exceeds minimum requirements. All system devices and functions installed should be verified for proper operation. The authority having jurisdiction might not witness testing of all installed devices and functions, but the installation contractor is responsible for testing the entire system and confirming proper operation in accordance with the design documents.

			Verify communications between sending and receiving units under open-circuit and short-circuit trouble conditions. Verify communications between sending and receiving units in all directions where multiple communications pathways are provided. If redundant central control equipment is provided, verify switchover and all required functions and operations of secondary control equipment. Verify all system functions and features in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions.

(*continues*)

TABLE 14.4.3.2 *Continued*

Component	***Initial Acceptance***	***Periodic Frequency***	***Method***
27. Supervising station alarm systems — receiving equipment			
(a) All equipment	X	Monthly	Perform tests on all system functions and features in accordance with the equipment manufacturer's published instructions for correct operation in conformance with the applicable sections of Chapter 26. Actuate initiating device and verify receipt of the correct initiating device signal at the supervising station within 90 seconds. Upon completion of the test, restore the system to its functional operating condition. If test jacks are used, perform the first and last tests without the use of the test jack.
(b) Digital alarm communicator receiver (DACR)	X	Monthly	Disconnect each transmission means in turn from the DACR, and verify audible and visual annunciation of a trouble signal in the supervising station. Cause a signal to be transmitted on each individual incoming DACR line (path) at least once every 6 hours (24 hours for DACTs installed prior to adoption of the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72*). Verify receipt of these signals.
(c) Digital alarm radio receiver (DARR)	X	Monthly	Cause the following conditions of all DARRs on all subsidiary and repeater station receiving equipment. Verify receipt at the supervising station of correct signals for each of the following conditions: (1) AC power failure of the radio equipment (2) Receiver malfunction (3) Antenna and interconnecting cable failure (4) Indication of automatic switchover of the DARR (5) Data transmission line failure between the DARR and the supervising or subsidiary station
(d) McCulloh systems	X	Monthly	Test and record the current on each circuit at each supervising and subsidiary station under the following conditions: (1) During functional operation (2) On each side of the circuit with the receiving equipment conditioned for an open circuit Cause a single break or ground condition on each transmission channel. If such a fault prevents the functioning of the circuit, verify receipt of a trouble signal. Cause each of the following conditions at each of the supervising or subsidiary stations and all repeater station radio transmitting and receiving equipment; verify receipt of correct signals at the supervising station: (1) RF transmitter in use (radiating) (2) AC power failure supplying the radio equipment (3) RF receiver malfunction (4) Indication of automatic switchover
(e) Radio alarm supervising station receiver (RASSR) and radio alarm repeater station receiver (RARSR)	X	Monthly	Cause each of the following conditions at each of the supervising or subsidiary stations and all repeater station radio transmitting and receiving equipment; verify receipt of correct signals at the supervising station: (1) AC power failure supplying the radio equipment (2) RF receiver malfunction (3) Indication of automatic switchover, if applicable

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(f) Private microwave radio systems	X	Monthly	Cause each of the following conditions at each of the supervising or subsidiary stations and all repeater station radio transmitting and receiving equipment; verify receipt of correct signals at the supervising station: (1) RF transmitter in use (radiating) (2) AC power failure supplying the radio equipment (3) RF receiver malfunction (4) Indication of automatic switchover
(g) Performance-based technologies	X	Monthly	Perform tests to ensure the monitoring of integrity of the transmission technology and technology path. Where a single communications path is used, disconnect the communication path. Verify that failure of the path is annunciated at the supervising station within 60 minutes of the failure (within 5 minutes for communication equipment installed prior to adoption of the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72*). Restore the communication path. Where multiple communication paths are used, disconnect both communication paths and confirm that failure of the path is annunciated at the supervising station within not more than 6 hours of the failure (within 24 hours for communication equipment installed prior to adoption of the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72*). Restore both communication paths.
28. Public emergency alarm reporting system transmission equipment			
(a) Publicly accessible alarm box	X	Semiannually	Actuate publicly accessible initiating device(s) and verify receipt of not less than three complete rounds of signal impulses. Perform this test under normal circuit conditions. If the device is equipped for open circuit operation (ground return), test it in this condition as one of the semiannual tests.
(b) Auxiliary box	X	Annually	Test each initiating circuit of the auxiliary box by actuation of a protected premises initiating device connected to that circuit. Verify receipt of not less than three complete rounds of signal impulses.
(c) Master box			
(1) Manual operation	X	Semiannually	Perform the tests prescribed for 28(a).
(2) Auxiliary operation	X	Annually	Perform the tests prescribed for 28(b).
29. Low-power radio (wireless systems)	X	N/A	The following procedures describe additional acceptance and reacceptance test methods to verify wireless protection system operation:

This requirement applies only to low-power wireless systems covered by Section 23.16 and not radio-type public emergency reporting systems.

			(1) Use the manufacturer's published instructions and the as-built drawings provided by the system supplier to verify correct operation after the initial testing phase has been performed by the supplier or by the supplier's designated representative.

(*continues*)

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	*Initial Acceptance*	*Periodic Frequency*	*Method*
			(2) Starting from the functional operating condition, initialize the system in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions. Confirm the alternative communications path exists between the wireless control unit and peripheral devices used to establish initiation, indication, control, and annunciation. Test the system for both alarm and trouble conditions. (3) Check batteries for all components in the system monthly unless the control unit checks all batteries and all components daily.
30. Mass notification systems			

The testing frequencies and methods in this section apply to free-standing mass notification systems that are not part of a fire alarm system and that were installed prior to adoption of the 2010 Code edition. Where a mass notification system is integrated with a fire alarm system, test frequencies must comply with the requirements for fire alarm systems.

(a) Functions	X	Annually	At a minimum, test control equipment to verify correct receipt of alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals (inputs); operation of evacuation signals and auxiliary functions (outputs); circuit supervision, including detection of open circuits and ground faults; and power supply supervision for detection of loss of ac power and disconnection of secondary batteries.

A local operating console (LOC) installed as part of a mass notification or emergency communication system should be tested as part of the control equipment. The LOC shown in Exhibit 14.26 following Table 14.4.3.2 has buttons to actuate each of the pre-programmed voice messages.

(b) Fuses	X	Annually	Verify the rating and supervision.
(c) Interfaced equipment	X	Annually	Verify integrity of single or multiple circuits providing interface between two or more control units. Test interfaced equipment connections by operating or simulating operation of the equipment being supervised. Verify signals required to be transmitted at the control unit.
(d) Lamps and LEDs	X	Annually	Illuminate lamps and LEDs.
(e) Primary (main) power supply	X	Annually	Disconnect all secondary (standby) power and test under maximum load, including all alarm appliances requiring simultaneous operation. Reconnect all secondary (standby) power at end of test. For redundant power supplies, test each separately.
(f) Audible textual notification appliances (speakers and other appliances to convey voice messages)	X	Annually	Measure sound pressure level with a sound level meter meeting ANSI S1.4a, *Specifications for Sound Level Meters,* Type 2 requirements. Measure and record levels throughout protected area. Set the sound level meter in accordance with ANSI S3.41, *American National Standard Audible Evacuation Signal,* using the time-weighted characteristic F (FAST). Record the maximum output when the audible emergency evacuation signal is on. Verify audible information to be distinguishable and understandable.

TABLE 14.4.3.2 *Continued*

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method

Note that the method in Table 14.4.3.2, item 30(f), for textual audible notification appliances (speakers) that are part of a mass notification is essentially the same as for fire alarm systems as described in Table 14.4.3.2, item 22(b), except for periodic testing.

Exhibit 14.27 following Table 14.4.3.2 shows an example of fire alarm and mass notification system visible notification appliances. The clear strobe is for fire alarm notification. The amber strobe is for mass notification functions. If the mass notification system is combined with the fire alarm system, testing is conducted in accordance with the requirements of the fire alarm system. If the mass notification system is separate from the fire alarm system, testing is conducted in accordance with the requirements for mass notification systems.

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method
(g) Visible	X	Annually	Perform test in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions. Verify appliance locations to be per approved layout and confirm that no floor plan changes affect the approved layout. Verify that the candela rating marking agrees with the approved drawing. Confirm that each appliance flashes.
(h) Control unit functions and no diagnostic failures are indicated	X	Annually	Review event log file and verify that the correct events were logged. Review system diagnostic log file; correct deficiencies noted in file. Delete unneeded log files. Delete unneeded error files. Verify that sufficient free disk space is available. Verify unobstructed flow of cooling air is available. Change/clean filters, cooling fans, and intake vents.
(i) Control unit reset	X	Annually	Power down the central control unit computer and restart it.
(j) Control unit security	X	Annually	If remote control software is loaded onto the system, verify that it is disabled to prevent unauthorized system access.
(k) Audible/visible functional test	X	Annually	Send out an alert to a diverse set of predesignated receiving devices and confirm receipt. Include at least one of each type of receiving device.
(l) Software backup	X	Annually	Make full system software backup. Rotate backups based on accepted practice at site.
(m) Secondary power test	X	Annually	Disconnect ac power. Verify the ac power failure alarm status on central control equipment. With ac power disconnected, verify battery voltage under load.
(n) Wireless signals	X	Annually	Check forward/reflected radio power is within specifications.
(o) Antenna	X	Annually	Check forward/reflected radio power is within specifications. Verify solid electrical connections with no observable corrosion.
(p) Transceivers	X	Annually	Verify proper operation and mounting is not compromised.

[a]Some transmission equipment (such as but not limited to cable modems, fiber-optic interface nodes, and VoIP interfaces) are typically powered by the building's electrical system using a standby power supply that does not meet the requirements of this Code. This is intended to ensure that the testing authority verifies full standby power as required by Chapter 10. Additionally, refer to Table 14.4.3.2, Items 7 through 9 for secondary power supply testing.
[b]The automatic transmission of the check-in (handshake) signal can take up to 60 minutes to occur.
[c]See Table 14.4.3.2, Item 4(a) for the testing of transmission equipment.
[d]Example: 4000 mAh × 1⁄25 = 160 mA charging current at 77°F (25°C).
[e]The voltmeter sensitivity has been changed from 1000 ohms per volt to 100 ohms per volt so that the false ground readings (caused by induced voltages) are minimized.

(*continues*)

TABLE 14.4.3.2 Continued

Component	Initial Acceptance	Periodic Frequency	Method

[f]Initiating devices such as smoke detectors used for elevator recall, closing dampers, or releasing doors held in the open position that are permitted by the Code *(see* NFPA *101*, *Life Safety Code, 9.6.3)* to initiate supervisory signals at the fire alarm control unit (FACU) should be tested at the same frequency (annual) as those devices when they are generating an alarm signal. They are not supervisory devices, but they initiate a supervisory signal at the FACU.
[g]Fusible thermal link detectors are commonly used to close fire doors and fire dampers. They are actuated by the presence of external heat, which causes a solder element in the link to fuse, or by an electric thermal device, which, when energized, generates heat within the body of the link, causing the link to fuse and separate.
[h]Note, it is customary for the manufacturer of the smoke detector to test a particular product from an aerosol provider to determine acceptability for use in smoke entry testing of their smoke detector/ smoke alarm. Magnets are not acceptable for smoke entry tests.
[i]There are some detectors that use magnets as a manufacturer's calibrated sensitivity test instrument.
[j]For example, it might not be possible to individually test the heat sensor in a thermally enhanced smoke detector.
[k]Manufacturer's instructions should be consulted to ensure a proper operational test. No suppression gas or agent is expected to be discharged during the test of the solenoid. See Test Plan of 14.2.10.
[l]Testing of CO device should be done to the requirements of NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment*.
[m]A monitor module installed on an interface device is not considered a supervisory device and therefore not subject to the quarterly testing frequency requirement. Test frequencies for interface devices should be in accordance with the applicable standard. For example, fire pump controller alarms such as phase reversal are required to be tested annually. If a monitor module is installed to identify phase reversal on the fire alarm control panel, it is not necessary to test for phase reversal four times a year.
[n]Chapter 18 would require 15 dB over average ambient sound for public mode spaces. Sometimes the ambient sound levels are different from what the design was based upon. Private operating mode would require 10 dB over average ambient at the location of the device.
[o]Where building, system, or occupancy changes have been observed, the owner should be notified of the changes. New devices might need to be installed and tested per the initial acceptance testing criteria.
[p]See A.14.4.3.2, and Table 14.4.3.2, Item 24.

EXHIBIT 14.18

Foam Suppression Actuation Switch. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

EXHIBIT 14.19

Cordless Tester for Heat Detectors. (Courtesy of SDi, LLC., Neptune, NJ)

EXHIBIT 14.20

Testing the Response of a Flame Detector. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

EXHIBIT 14.21

Functional Testing of Smoke Detector. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

EXHIBIT 14.22

Duct Detector Installation Being Tested with a Manometer. (Courtesy of Warren Olsen, FSDI, Elgin, IL)

EXHIBIT 14.23

Combination Smoke and Heat Detector. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

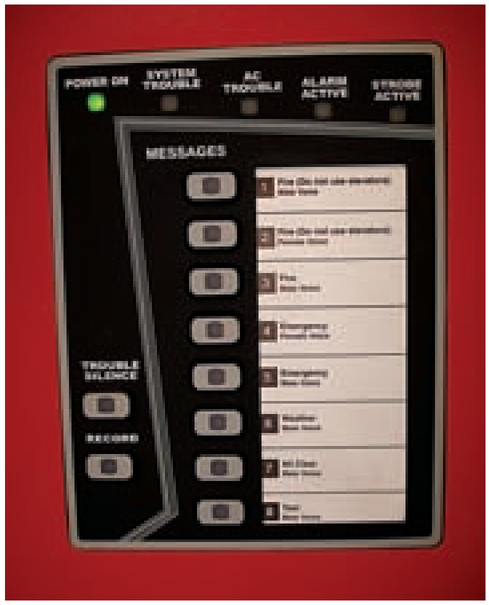
EXHIBIT 14.24

Multicriteria Detector Tester. (Courtesy of SDi, LLC., Neptune, NJ)

EXHIBIT 14.25

Area of Refuge Station Used for Emergency Communications. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

EXHIBIT 14.26



Local Operating Console with Pre-Programmed Voice Messages. (Courtesy of Jeffrey Moore, P.E., Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

EXHIBIT 14.27

Combination Fire/Alert Visible Notification Appliance.

A.14.4.3.2 Table 14.4.3.2, Item 24. The extent of testing of a fire alarm or signaling system, including devices that were not tested, should be documented per the Test Plan in 14.2.10. *NFPA 72* does not require testing of an emergency control function, such as elevator recall, but does require testing of the emergency control function interface device, such as the relay powered by the fire alarm or signaling system. Where the emergency control function is not being tested concurrent with the fire alarm or signaling system testing, measurement of the emergency control function interface device output should be verified using the proper test devices. This might require reading or observing the condition of a relay, a voltage measurement, or the use of another type of test instrument. Once testing is complete, verification that any disabled or disconnected interface devices have been restored to normal is essential and this verification should be documented in the testing results.

Testing of the emergency control functions themselves is outside of the scope of *NFPA 72*. A complete end-to-end test that demonstrates the performance of emergency control functions activated by the fire alarm or signaling system might be required by some other governing laws, codes, or standards, or the authority having jurisdiction. In that situation, other applicable installation standards and design documents, not *NFPA 72*, would address testing and performance of the emergency control functions. NFPA 3, *Recommended Practice for Commissioning and Integrated Testing of Fire Protection and Life Safety Systems*, provides guidance for integrated (end-to-end) testing of combined systems. The following excerpt from NFPA 3 includes guidance on when integrated testing should be performed.

7.2 Test Frequency [3, 2012]

7.2.1 In new construction, integrated testing of fire protection and life safety systems should occur following:

(1) Verification of completeness and integrity of building construction
(2) Individual system functional operation and acceptance as required in applicable installation standards tests
(3) Completion of pre-functional tests of integrated systems [**3,** 2012]

7.2.2 Existing fire protection and life safety systems should have periodic integrated testing. [**3,** 2012]

7.2.2.1 Integrated systems that were commissioned upon installation in accordance with Chapter 6 should have integrated testing at the interval specified in the commissioning plan. [**3,** 2012]

7.2.2.2 For integrated systems that were not commissioned, an integrated testing plan should be developed to identify the appropriate extent and frequency of integrated system testing. [**3,** 2012]

7.2.3 In addition to periodic integrated testing, integrated system testing should be done when any of the following events occurs:

(1) New component fire protection or life safety systems are installed and interconnected to existing fire protection and life safety systems.
(2) Existing fire protection or life safety systems are modified to become components of interconnected systems.
(3) Interconnections or sequence of operations of existing integrated fire protection and life safety systems are modified. [**3,** 2012]

NFPA 3 also includes guidance on test methods for integrated testing. It is important to note that the appropriate NFPA standard would provide the acceptance criteria for the overall emergency control function operation requirements including performance and test methods while *NFPA 72* covers the required performance and testing of the emergency function interface device.

For instance, if an end-to-end test for a building with an engineered smoke control system is required by some other governing laws, codes, standards, or the authority having jurisdiction, the test protocol would have unique criteria for the smoke control system design and a special inspector would be responsible for the overall operation and performance of the smoke control system in accordance with the appropriate standard (NFPA 92, *Standard for Smoke Control Systems*, and NFPA *101*, *Life Safety Code*) during the testing, including measuring pressure differentials and ensuring proper fan and damper operation. Refer to the following extract from NFPA *101* on smoke control:

9.3.2 The engineer of record shall clearly identify the intent of the system, the design method used, the appropriateness of the method used, and the required means of inspecting, testing, and maintaining the system. [***101*****,** 2012]

9.3.3 Acceptance testing shall be performed by a special inspector in accordance with Section 9.9. [***101*****,** 2012]

Even though the fire alarm or signaling system initiating device might activate the smoke control system, the actual testing of the dampers and fan operation would be as required by the smoke control design and not part of the fire alarm or signaling system.

Other emergency control operation requirements might be as follows: For fan shutdown and smoke damper operation, the fan and damper operations would be in accordance with NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, and NFPA 105, *Standard for Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives*, respectively, and those equipment operations would be verified by those responsible for HVAC systems in combination with the fire alarm system personnel. Guidance for elevator inspection and testing can be found in ASME A.17.2, *Guide for Inspection of Elevators,* *Escalators and Moving Walks*. For elevator systems, the recall function, elevator power shutdown, and hat illumination would be done with the elevator mechanics present during the test. This operational test is often accomplished during routine periodic fire alarm testing. For fire door holder and fire shutter release, it would be expected that the emergency control function operation of the doors/shutters would be verified in accordance with NFPA 80, *Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives*, and NFPA *101* during the test. In some cases, the door manufacturer representative might need to be present to reset the equipment.

Guidance on documenting and handling of faults, failures, and corrective action for integrated testing can be found in 7.4.5 of NFPA 3.

14.4.3.3 Video image smoke and flame detectors shall be inspected, tested, and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

Paragraph 14.4.3.4 was added by a tentative interim amendment (TIA).

14.4.3.4 Gas detectors shall be inspected, tested, and maintained in accordance with manufacturers' published instructions.

Requirements were added in the 2007 edition for video image smoke and flame detection in 17.7.7 and 17.8.5. Requirements for gas detection were added in Section 17.10 in the 2010 edition. Paragraphs 14.4.3.3 and 14.4.3.4 include provisions for the testing of this equipment to comply with the manufacturer's published instructions.

14.4.4* Testing Frequency. Unless otherwise permitted by other sections of this Code, testing shall be performed in accordance with the schedules in Table 14.4.3.2 or more often if required by the authority having jurisdiction.

The required frequency of tests is detailed in Table 14.4.3.2. These frequencies must be observed unless the authority having jurisdiction permits a reduced testing frequency as permitted by 14.4.4.1 or an increased frequency as directed by the authority having jurisdiction.

A.14.4.4 It is suggested that the annual test be conducted in segments so that all devices are tested annually.

The intent of 14.4.4 is to prevent a test from being made at intervals exceeding those allowed by Table 14.4.3.2. Annual tests should be made every 12 months; monthly tests should be made every 30 days, and so forth. For example, it is not acceptable to conduct an annual test in January of year one, and December of year two (23-month frequency), just because Table 14.4.3.2 requires a test once each year. See the definition of *frequency* in 3.3.115 for minimum and maximum time between testing events.

14.4.4.1 Devices or equipment that are inaccessible for safety considerations (e.g., continuous process operations, energized electrical equipment, radiation, and excessive height) shall be permitted to be tested during scheduled shutdowns if approved by the authority having jurisdiction. Extended intervals shall not exceed 18 months.

The intent of this section of the Code is to provide some relief from the testing frequencies for situations that prevent testing of components in locations or areas that pose a significant safety hazard to personnel conducting the testing. Such situations might include inside compartments or areas containing radiation hazards, inside electrical equipment, or on the top of a continuous process structure. A system component is not exempt from testing simply because it may be inconvenient or difficult to access. In all cases, a reduced testing frequency under this provision of the Code requires the approval of the authority having jurisdiction.

14.4.4.2 If automatic testing is performed at least weekly by a remotely monitored fire alarm control unit specifically listed for the application, the manual testing frequency shall be permitted to be extended to annually. Table 14.4.3.2 shall apply.

This provision of the Code is intended to accommodate development of new technologies able to test system equipment and components remotely. Currently, the sensitivity of most analog addressable smoke detectors can be tested from the control unit. The control equipment must be specifically listed to perform the remote testing.

14.4.4.3* In other than one- and two-family dwellings, sensitivity of smoke detectors shall be tested in accordance with 14.4.4.3.1 through 14.4.4.3.7.

A.14.4.4.3 Detectors that cause unwanted alarms should be tested at their lower listed range (or at 0.5 percent obscuration if unmarked or unknown). Detectors that activate at less than this level should be replaced.

14.4.4.3.1 Sensitivity shall be checked within 1 year after installation.

14.4.4.3.2 Sensitivity shall be checked every alternate year thereafter unless otherwise permitted by compliance with 14.4.4.3.3.

14.4.4.3.3 After the second required calibration test, if sensitivity tests indicate that the device has remained within its listed and marked sensitivity range (or 4 percent obscuration light gray smoke, if not marked), the length of time between calibration tests shall be permitted to be extended to a maximum of 5 years.

FAQ

What sensitivity should be used for older smoke detectors without sensitivity markings?

Detectors manufactured prior to current standards did not require a sensitivity range to be marked on the product. These detectors typically have a sensitivity in the range of 0.5 to 44 percent per foot obscuration using light gray smoke. Sensitivities less than 0.5 percent obscuration per foot may lead to unwanted alarms. Sensitivities over 4 percent per foot may result in detection delays. The manufacturer of the smoke detector can usually provide a recommended level of sensitivity for unmarked smoke detectors.

14.4.4.3.3.1 If the frequency is extended, records of nuisance alarms and subsequent trends of these alarms shall be maintained.

14.4.4.3.3.2 In zones or in areas where nuisance alarms show any increase over the previous year, calibration tests shall be performed.

14.4.4.3.4 To ensure that each smoke detector is within its listed and marked sensitivity range, it shall be tested using any of the following methods:

(1) Calibrated test method
(2) Manufacturer's calibrated sensitivity test instrument
(3) Listed control equipment arranged for the purpose
(4) Smoke detector/fire alarm control unit arrangement whereby the detector causes a signal at the fire alarm control unit where its sensitivity is outside its listed sensitivity range
(5) Other calibrated sensitivity test methods approved by the authority having jurisdiction

Paragraph 14.4.4.3.4 lists the permitted means of testing smoke detector sensitivity. Each of the five options provides a measured means of determining sensitivity. After two tests in which sensitivity has remained stable, sensitivity testing may be extended to 5-year intervals in recognition of the apparent stability of the detector and the environment in which it is installed. Extending the sensitivity testing frequency requires maintaining detailed records of unwanted alarms that may indicate the detector has drifted outside the acceptable range of sensitivity. Such changes may warrant more frequent testing, or cleaning or replacement of the detector. Exhibit 14.28 illustrates test equipment that can be used for smoke detector sensitivity testing.

EXHIBIT 14.28

Test Equipment. (Left) Smoke Detector Sensitivity Tester (Courtesy of SDi, LLC., Neptune, NJ); (Right) Technician Using Calibrated Test Instrument. (Source: Gemini Scientific, Sunnyvale, CA)

Detectors found to be outside their marked sensitivity range must be recalibrated and then retested or replaced in accordance with 14.4.4.3.5. Removal tools can assist maintenance personnel in removal of smoke detectors. See Exhibit 14.29 for an example of a removal tool.

14.4.4.3.5 Unless otherwise permitted by 14.4.4.3.6, smoke detectors found to have a sensitivity outside the listed and marked sensitivity range shall be cleaned and recalibrated or be replaced.

14.4.4.3.6 Smoke detectors listed as field adjustable shall be permitted to either be adjusted within the listed and marked sensitivity range, cleaned, and recalibrated, or be replaced.

14.4.4.3.7 The detector sensitivity shall not be tested or measured using any device that administers an unmeasured concentration of smoke or other aerosol into the detector or smoke alarm.

14.4.4.4 Test frequency of interfaced equipment shall be the same as specified by the applicable NFPA standards for the equipment being supervised.

Fire detection and alarm equipment installed as part of a special suppression system or dedicated function fire alarm system is tested in accordance with the applicable standard for the system. For example, heat detectors installed to actuate a high-pressure carbon dioxide extinguishing system are covered by NFPA 12, *Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems*.

14.4.4.5 *Restorable* fixed-temperature, spot-type heat detectors shall be tested in accordance with 14.4.4.5.1 through 14.4.4.5.4.

Accurate record keeping is imperative so that the same detectors are not tested each year and all detectors are tested over the 5-year period. An important note is that 14.4.4.5 and its subparagraphs apply only to restorable fixed-temperature-type detectors. All other heat detectors require annual tests.

14.4.4.5.1 Two or more detectors shall be tested on each initiating circuit annually.

14.4.4.5.2 Different detectors shall be tested each year.

14.4.4.5.3 Test records shall be kept by the building owner specifying which detectors have been tested.

14.4.4.5.4 Within 5 years, each detector shall have been tested.

14.4.4.6* Circuit and pathway testing of each monitored circuit or pathway shall be conducted with initial acceptance or reacceptance testing to verify signals are indicated at the control unit for each of the abnormal conditions specified in Sections 23.5 through 23.7.

Paragraph 14.4.5 was revised by a tentative interim amendment. (TIA)

A.14.4.4.6 It is not intended to require testing the pathways at every device or circuit junctions.

Circuits must be tested to ensure proper operation under fault conditions. The specific performance required of a specific circuit depends on the class of the circuit as defined by Chapter 12, Circuits and Pathways. The abnormal conditions to be introduced refer to those specified in Sections 23.5, 23.6, and 23.7 for fire alarm systems.

14.4.5 Single- and Multiple-Station Smoke Alarms. Smoke alarms and all connected appliances shall be inspected and tested in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions at least monthly. The responsibility for maintenance and testing shall be in accordance with 14.2.3. (SIG-HOU)

Subsection 14.4.5 requires smoke alarms to be tested in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions at least monthly. It is important that homeowners keep the manufacturer's instructions that were supplied with the smoke alarm. These instructions may require testing more frequently than once per month. The instructions also include important information about maintenance of the smoke alarm, including periodic cleaning and battery replacement information. Also refer to 14.4.7.

14.4.6 Household Fire Alarm Systems.

14.4.6.1 Testing. Household fire alarm systems shall be tested by a qualified service technician at least annually according to the methods of Table 14.4.3.2. The installing contractor shall be required to provide this information in writing to the customer upon completion of the system installation. To the extent that the fire alarm system is monitored offsite, the

EXHIBIT 14.29

Removal Tool Used to Remove Detectors on High Ceilings. (Courtesy of SDi, LLC., Neptune, NJ) supervising station contractor shall provide notice of this requirement to the customer on a yearly basis. (SIG-HOU)

14.4.6.2 Maintenance. Maintenance of household fire alarm systems shall be conducted according to the manufacturer's published instructions. (SIG-HOU)

14.4.7 Replacement of Smoke Alarms in One- and Two-Family Dwellings.

14.4.7.1 Unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer's published instructions, single- and multiple-station smoke alarms installed in one- and two-family dwellings shall be replaced when they fail to respond to operability tests but shall not remain in service longer than 10 years from the date of manufacture. (SIG-HOU)

14.4.7.2* Combination smoke/carbon monoxide alarms shall be replaced when the end-of-life signal activates or 10 years from the date of manufacture, whichever comes first. (SIG-HOU)

FAQ Does the requirement to replace smoke alarms every 10 years apply to system smoke detectors?

The 10-year replacement requirement applies only to smoke alarms (not smoke detectors) located in one- and two-family dwelling units.

Combination smoke/carbon monoxide alarms include carbon monoxide sensing elements that may have a shorter life span than 10 years. These alarms include an end-of-life signal for the carbon monoxide sensor. Therefore, these alarms must be replaced when the end-of-life signal activates or at the 10-year limit, whichever occurs first.

A.14.4.7.2 Carbon monoxide alarm replacement is covered under NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment*.

14.4.7.3 Where batteries are used as a source of energy for combination smoke/carbon monoxide alarms as well as single- and multiple-station smoke alarms, they shall be replaced in accordance with the alarm equipment manufacturer's published instructions. (SIG-HOU)

14.4.8 Circuits from Central Station. Tests of all circuits extending from the central station shall be made at intervals of not more than 24 hours.

Operators at the central station initiate these tests to verify that all circuits and pathways between the central station and the protected premises are operational.

14.4.9 Public Emergency Alarm Reporting Systems.

14.4.9.1 Emergency power sources other than batteries shall be tested at least weekly in accordance with 14.4.9.1.1 and 14.4.9.1.2.

14.4.9.1.1 Testing shall include operation of the power source to supply the system for a continuous period of 1 hour.

14.4.9.1.2 Testing shall require simulated failure of the normal power source.

14.4.9.2 Unless otherwise permitted by 14.4.9.3, testing facilities shall be installed at the communications center and each subsidiary communications center, if used.

14.4.9.3 Testing facilities for systems leased from a nonmunicipal organization shall be permitted to be installed at locations other than the communications center if approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

14.4.10* In-Building Emergency Radio Communication Systems. In-building emergency radio communication systems shall be inspected and operationally tested in accordance with the manufacturer's published requirements by the local fire department, the building owner, or a designated representative.

Two-way in-building radio communications enhancement systems are permitted by 24.5.2. These systems are installed to enhance the radio communications used by the fire department and are typically installed at the request of the responding fire department in lieu of a dedicated firefighter telephone system within the facility. Where such systems are installed, inspection and testing of these systems must be accomplished in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and the requirements outlined in 14.4.10.

Testing should be coordinated with the public fire department or other emergency response agencies expected to use the system during an emergency.

A.14.4.10 In-building emergency radio communication systems where the ac power source is monitored for integrity should be tested annually. Systems where the ac power source is not monitored for integrity should be tested quarterly.

14.4.10.1 Signal Level Testing. Signal level testing shall be conducted to verify the signal strengths as required in 24.5.2.3 at the following times:

(1) Initial assessment of radio coverage in accordance with 24.5.2.2.1 and 24.5.2.2.2 for new or existing buildings
(2) After installation or modification of public safety radio enhancement system needed to ensure compliance with 24.5.2.2.3
(3) On an annual basis or other interval as specified by the authority having jurisdiction

14.4.10.2 System Commissioning Testing. System commissioning tests shall comply with the following:

(1) The building owner shall be responsible for ensuring that a commissioning test of the public safety radio enhancement system occurs prior to final acceptance testing with the authority having jurisdiction.
(2) The commissioning test shall ensure that two-way coverage on each floor of the building meets the minimum coverage requirements of 24.5.2.2.1 and 24.5.2.2.2.
(3) Tests shall be made using the frequencies assigned to the jurisdiction.
(4) Testing shall be coordinated with the authority having jurisdiction to ensure no undue interference to any public safety operations.
(5) All testing shall be done on frequencies authorized by the FCC.

14.4.10.3* Test Procedures. The test plan shall ensure testing throughout the building. Test procedures shall be as directed by the authority having jurisdiction.

A.14.4.10.3 Testing procedures typically are done on a grid system. A grid is overlaid onto a floor area to provide 20 grid cells. Grid cells are provided with definite minimum and maximum dimensions. For most buildings, using a minimum grid dimension of 20 ft (6.1 m) and a maximum grid dimension of 80 ft (24.4 m) will suffice to encompass the entire floor area. Where a floor exceeds 128,000 ft^2 (11,890 m^2), which is the floor area that can be covered by the maximum grid dimension of 80 ft (24.4 m), it is recommended that the floor be subdivided into sectors, each having an area of less than or equal to 128,000 ft^2 (11,890 m^2), and that each sector be tested individually with 20 grid cells in each sector. Signal quality measurements should be taken at the center of each grid and should be performed using standardized parameters as specified in A.14.4.10.4. Signal quality typically is recorded on the delivered audio quality (DAQ) scale. This scale is a universal standard often cited in system designs and specifications, using the following measures:

(1) DAQ 1: Unusable speech present but unreadable
(2) DAQ 2: Understandable with considerable effort; frequent repetition due to noise/distortion

(3) DAQ 3: Speech understandable with slight effort; occasional repetition required due to noise/distortion
(4) DAQ 3.4: Speech understandable with repetition only rarely required; some noise/distortion
(5) DAQ 4: Speech easily understood; occasional noise/distortion
(6) DAQ 4.5: Speech easily understood; infrequent noise/distortion
(7) DAQ 5: Speech easily understood

The minimum allowable DAQ for each grid cell typically is DAQ 3 (17 ±1.5 dB SINAD).

The minimum downlink signal strength is specified in 24.5.2.3.1. The signal strengths are measured as per A.14.4.10.4 and will be recorded in each cell as well as the DAQ.

Not more than two nonadjacent grid cells should be allowed to fail the test. In the event that three of the areas fail the test, or if two adjacent areas fail the test, in order to be more statistically accurate, the testing grid resolution should be doubled. This would require decreasing the size to one-half the dimension used in the failed test to a minimum of 10 ft (3.0 m) and a maximum of 40 ft (12.2 m). Further, to cover the same floor area, the number of grids is quadrupled to 80. Not more than eight nonadjacent or five adjacent grid cells should then be allowed to fail the test. In the event that nine or more nonadjacent and/or six or more adjacent grid cells fail the test, consideration should be given to redesigning and reinstalling the public safety radio enhancement system to meet the minimum system design requirements. Failures should not be allowed in critical areas. Measurements should be made with the antenna held in a vertical position at (3 ft to 4 ft) [0.91 m to 1.22 m] above the floor. The DAQ and signal strength measurements should be recorded on small-scale drawings that are used for testing with the authority having jurisdiction. In addition, the gain values of all amplifiers should be measured, and the test measurement results should be kept on file with the building owner so that the measurements can be verified each year during annual tests.

14.4.10.4* Measurement Parameters. Signal levels shall be measured to ensure the system meets the criteria of 24.5.2.3 according to parameters as directed by the authority having jurisdiction.

A.14.4.10.4 Downlink measurements should be made with the following standardized parameters:

(1) Calibrated spectrum analyzer or calibrated automatic signal level measurement recording system to measure signal strength in dBm
(2) Receiving antennas of equal gain to the agency's standard portable radio antenna, oriented vertically, with a centerline between 3 ft (0.91 m) and 4 ft (1.22 m) above floor
(3) Resolution bandwidth nearest the bandwidth of the channel under test
(4) Levels recorded while walking an "X" pattern, with the center of the pattern located approximately in the center of each grid area
(5) Linear distance of each side of the "X" equal to at least 10 percent of the length of the grid's side and a minimum length of 10 ft (3.0 m)
(6) Measurement sampled in averaging mode to include a minimum of one sample per each 5 ft (1.52 m) traveled, recorded with not less than five samples per measurement recorded per side of the "X"

14.4.10.5* Acceptance Test. An acceptance test of the public safety radio enhancement system shall be scheduled with the authority having jurisdiction. Acceptance test procedures and requirements shall be as directed by the authority having jurisdiction.

A.14.4.10.5 Typically, acceptance tests are required by the authority having jurisdiction prior to building occupancy. As-built drawings should be provided at the acceptance test along with other information required from the signal level and commissioning tests, including a full report with grid locations, DAQ and signal strength measurements, and amplifier gain values. The acceptance test typically entails a random test by the authority having jurisdiction of radio communication in various portions of the building, especially including the critical areas. The authority having jurisdiction can review any test documentation and ensure that the findings of the commissioning test with respect to DAQ and signal strength levels and gain values are supported by the acceptance test.

If amplification systems are utilized in the public safety radio enhancement system, a spectrum analyzer should be utilized to ensure spurious oscillations are not being generated or unauthorized carriers are being repeated in violation of FCC regulations. This testing should be conducted at time of installation and during subsequent inspections. Downlink and uplink spectrum should be recorded with a maximum-hold screen capture at the active system air interfaces, with the system under normal load and at least one uplink carrier active on the indoor portion of the system. Measurements should be analyzed for correct gains on both unlink and downlink paths, noise floor elevation from active components, intermodulation, and other parameters determined necessary by the authority having jurisdiction.

Gain values of all amplifiers should be measured and the results kept on file with the building owner and the authority having jurisdiction. In the event that the measurement results become lost, the building owner will need to repeat the acceptance test to reestablish the gain values.

14.4.10.6* Annual Tests. Where a public safety radio enhancement system is required, it shall be the building owner's responsibility to have all live components of the system, such as signal boosters, newer supplies, and backup batteries tested at a minimum of once every 12 months. The authority having jurisdiction shall be notified in advance and shall direct annual test procedures and requirements.

A.14.4.10.6 Typically, annual tests require several items to be checked. Annual tests should include all procedures encompassed in 14.4.10.1 through 14.4.10.4. Signal boosters should be tested to ensure that the gain is the same as it was upon initial installation and acceptance. Backup batteries and power supplies should be tested under load for a period of 1 hour to verify that they will properly operate during an actual power outage. Other active components are typically checked to determine that they are operating within the manufacturer's specifications for the intended purpose.

14.4.11* Voice Intelligibility.

A.14.4.11 See Annex D, Speech Intelligibility.

Annex D, Speech Intelligibility, provides guidance on the planning, design, installation, and especially the testing of voice communications systems. Refer to the commentary following Table 14.4.3.2, item 22(b).

14.4.11.1 Voice communication using prerecorded messages and manual voice announcements shall be verified as being intelligible in accordance with the requirements of 18.4.10.

14.4.11.2 Intelligibility shall not be required to be determined through quantitative measurements.

Determination of the intelligibility of a voice message does not have to be made through quantitative measurements. This Code paragraph was added to the 2013 edition to reinforce that the technical committee does not require quantitative measurements to determine intelligibility. The Code only requires that voice messages be verified as being distinguishable and understandable and permits qualitative assessment — a simple listen test. In some cases it may be acceptable to simply ensure that the voice messages broadcast over the speakers in a fire alarm or emergency communications system are intelligible (understandable) to the building occupants.

While a quantitative evaluation using intelligibility meters is permitted and is described in Annex D, it is not required. Even if intelligibility meters were used, intelligibility testing in every office or space might not be necessary if voice messages can obviously be understood. Or, if a meter measurement were made in one office, similar offices would not need to be tested if a qualitative assessment was made to ensure that the message quality was similar.

Subsection 18.4.10 addresses requirements for a designer to designate where intelligibility is required and where it is not required or will not be provided.

Note that attempting to test for intelligibility in a building without the interior finishes and furnishings will likely yield a lower level of intelligibility than with the building fully furnished and occupied. Even the presence of people, and the noise that they generate, can result in higher intelligibility due to their absorbing the energy of the louder voice message or intelligibility test signal, even though a meter may indicate an error due to interference from other sources of sound.

14.4.11.3 Quantitative measurements as described in Annex D shall be permitted but shall not be required.

14.5 Maintenance

See 3.3.150 for the definition of maintenance.

14.5.1 System equipment shall be maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

14.5.2 The frequency of maintenance of system equipment shall depend on the type of equipment and the local ambient conditions.

14.5.3 The frequency of cleaning of system equipment shall depend on the type of equipment and the local ambient conditions.

The Code requires that maintenance be performed in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions with an emphasis on cleaning. Cleaning should be done in strict accordance with the manufacturer's instructions and as frequently as the ambient conditions of the placement area necessitate. For example, the manufacturer of a smoke detector could recommend yearly cleaning, but the ambient conditions might dictate that cleaning be conducted at six-month intervals.

Areas subject to accumulations of dust and dirt that might require more frequent cleaning include elevator hoistways and machine rooms, HVAC ducts, and boiler rooms.

14.5.4 All apparatus requiring rewinding or resetting to maintain normal operation shall be rewound or reset as promptly as possible after each test and alarm.

14.5.5 Unless otherwise permitted by 14.5.6, the retransmission means as defined in Section 26.3 shall be tested at intervals of not more than 12 hours.

Subsection 14.5.5 applies to the frequency of testing the means of signal retransmission from the central station to the public fire alarm receiving center. This subsection applies only to central station fire alarm systems.

14.5.6 When the retransmission means is the public-switched telephone network, testing shall be permitted at weekly intervals to confirm its operation to each communications center.

14.5.7 As a part of the testing required in 14.5.5, the retransmission signal and the time and date of the retransmission shall be recorded in the central station.

14.6 Records

14.6.1* Permanent Records. After successful completion of acceptance tests approved by the authority having jurisdiction, the requirements in 14.6.1.1 through 14.6.1.3 shall apply.

A.14.6.1 For final determination of record retention, see 14.4.4.3 for sensitivity options.

14.6.1.1 A set of reproducible as-built installation drawings, operation and maintenance manuals, and a written sequence of operation shall be provided to the building owner or the owner's designated representative.

14.6.1.2* Site-Specific Software.

A.14.6.1.2 With many software-based fire systems, a copy of the site-specific software is required to restore system operation if a catastrophic system failure should occur. Without a back-up copy readily available on site, recovery of system operation by authorized service personnel can be substantially delayed.

The intent of this requirement is to provide authorized service personnel with an on-site copy of the site-specific software. The on-site copy should provide a means to recover the last installed and tested version of the site-specific operation of the system. This typically would be an electronic copy of the source files required to load an external programming device with the site-specific data. This requirement does not extend to the system executive software, nor does it require that the external programmer software if required be stored on site.

It is intended that this copy of the software be an electronic version stored on a nonrewritable media containing all of the file(s) or data necessary to restore the system and not just a printed version of the operation stored on electronic media. One example of a nonrewritable medium is a CD-R.

14.6.1.2.1 For software-based systems, a copy of the site-specific software shall be provided to the system owner or owner's designated representative.

14.6.1.2.2 A copy of the site-specific software shall be stored on-site in nonvolatile, nonerasable, nonrewritable memory.

14.6.1.3 The system owner shall be responsible for maintaining these records for the life of the system for examination by any authority having jurisdiction. Paper or electronic media shall be permitted.

A historical record of the system installation that includes the information required by Chapter 7 provides the technician valuable information to assist with diagnosing and repairing system faults. The owner is to be provided with and maintain a copy of the site-specific software so that it is available to determine how the system is programmed and to reprogram the system if the program in the control unit is corrupted or deleted.

FAQ Who is responsible for maintaining the fire alarm system records?

The system owner is responsible for maintaining records for the life of the system.

14.6.2 Maintenance, Inspection, and Testing Records.

14.6.2.1 Records shall be retained until the next test and for 1 year thereafter.

14.6.2.2 For systems with restorable fixed-temperature, spot-type heat detectors tested over multiple years, records shall be retained for the 5 years of testing and for 1 year thereafter.

14.6.2.3 The records shall be on a medium that will survive the retention period. Paper or electronic media shall be permitted.

14.6.2.4* A record of all inspections, testing, and maintenance shall be provided in accordance with 7.8.2.

A.14.6.2.4 One method used to define the required sequence of operations and to document the actual sequence of operations is an input/output matrix *(see Figure A.14.6.2.4)*.

System Outputs

System Inputs

		Control Unit Annunciation									Notification							Required Fire Safety Control											Supplementary						
		Actuate common alarm signal indicator	Actuate audible alarm signal	Actuate common supervisory signal indicator	Actuate audible supervisory signal	Actuate common trouble signal indicator	Actuate audible common trouble signal	Actuate 1st floor (zone 1) alarm indicator	Actuate 1st floor (zone 2) alarm indicator	Actuate 1st floor (zone 3) alarm indicator	Actuate 1st floor evacuation signals	Actuate 2nd floor evacuation signals	Actuate 3rd floor evacuation signals	Display/print change of status	Transmit fire alarm signal to supervising station	Transmit supervisory signal to supervising station	Transmit trouble signal to supervising station	Release magnetically held smoke doors	Recall elevators to primary recall floor	Recall elevators to alternate recall floor	Close smoke/fire dampers in rated walls	Actuate 1st floor smoke exhaust	Actuate 2nd floor smoke exhaust	Actuate 3rd floor smoke exhaust	Unlock exits	Actuate suppression system predischarge alarms	Initiate suppression system releasing sequence	Energize releasing solenoids	Actuate graphics system – display floor map	Pressurize stairwells	Shutdown process #1	Shutdown process #2	Shutdown process #3	Actuate exterior strobe at f.d. response point	
		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	AA	BB	CC	DD	EE	FF	GG	
1	Manual fire alarm boxes – 1st floor	●	●					●			●			●	●			●							●				●		●			●	1
2	Manual fire alarm boxes – 2nd floor	●	●						●			●		●	●			●							●				●			●		●	2
3	Manual fire alarm boxes – 3rd floor	●	●							●			●	●	●			●							●				●				●	●	3
4	Smoke detectors – 1st floor	●	●					●			●			●	●			●	●			●			●				●					●	4
5	Smoke detectors – 3rd floor	●	●						●			●		●	●			●	●				●		●				●					●	5
6	Smoke detectors – 1st floor	●	●							●			●	●	●			●	●					●	●				●					●	6
7	Smoke detectors – 1st floor elev. lobby	●	●					●			●			●	●			●		●					●				●					●	7
8	2nd floor computer rm. smoke det.-zone 1	●	●						●			●		●	●			●	●						●	●			●					●	8
9	2nd floor computer rm. smoke det.-zone 2	●	●						●			●		●	●			●	●						●		●	●	●					●	9
10	In-duct smoke detector – supply fan 1	●	●					●						●	●			●							●				●					●	10
11	In-duct smoke detector – supply fan 2	●	●					●						●	●			●							●				●					●	11
12	In-duct smoke detector – 1st floor return	●	●					●						●	●			●							●				●					●	12
13	In-duct smoke detector – 2nd floor return	●	●						●					●	●			●							●				●					●	13
14	In-duct smoke detector – 3rd floor return	●	●							●				●	●			●							●				●					●	14
15	Heat detectors – 1st floor mech. rm.	●	●					●						●	●			●	●						●				●					●	15
16	Heat detectors – 2nd floor storage room	●	●						●					●	●			●	●						●				●					●	16
17	Heat detectors – 3rd floor janitor's closet	●	●							●				●	●			●	●						●				●					●	17
18	Waterflow – 1st floor	●	●					●						●	●			●	●		●	●			●				●	●	●			●	18
19	Waterflow – 2nd floor	●	●						●					●	●			●	●		●		●		●				●	●		●		●	19
20	Waterflow – 3rd floor	●	●							●				●	●			●	●		●			●	●				●	●			●	●	20
21	Sprinkler control valve – 1st floor			●	●									●		●													●						21
22	Sprinkler control valve – 2nd floor			●	●									●		●													●						22
23	Sprinkler control valve – 3rd floor			●	●									●		●													●						23
24	Fire pump running	●	●											●	●			●							●				●					●	24
25	Fire pump power failure/phase reversal			●	●									●		●													●						25
26	Fire alarm ac power failure					●	●										●																		26
27	Fire alarm system low battery					●	●										●																		27
28	Open circuit					●	●										●																		28
29	Ground fault					●	●										●																		29
30	Notification appliance circuit short					●	●										●																		30
		A	B	C	D	E	F	G	H	I	J	K	L	M	N	O	P	Q	R	S	T	U	V	W	X	Y	Z	AA	BB	CC	DD	EE	FF	GG	

***FIGURE A.14.6.2.4** Typical Input/Output Matrix.*

14.6.3 Supervising Station Records. For supervising station alarm systems, records pertaining to signals received at the supervising station that result from maintenance, inspection, and testing shall be maintained for not less than 12 months.

14.6.3.1 Records shall be permitted to be maintained on either paper or electronic media.

14.6.3.2 Upon request, a hard copy record shall be provided to the authority having jurisdiction.

14.6.4 Simulated Operation Note. If the operation of a device, circuit, fire alarm control unit function, or special hazard system interface is simulated, it shall be noted on the inspection/test form that the operation was simulated.

Interfaced systems, such as elevators, sprinkler systems, HVAC systems, and smoke control systems, are not generally fully tested during a fire alarm system test because these interfaced systems generally require personnel with special training and knowledge to test them properly. If testing the fire alarm system simply simulates operation of the interfaced systems, this must be noted on the test report. For example, if a fire alarm system test simulates actuation of a suppression system by measuring the output voltage from a set of contacts, this needs to be noted on the test report.

References Cited in Commentary

ANSI S3.2, *Method for Measuring the Intelligibility of Speech Over Communications Systems*, 1999 edition, American National Standards Institute, Inc., New York, NY.

"Cry Wolf," *NEMA Magazine*, Fall 2003, National Electrical Manufacturers Association, Rosslyn, VA.IEC 60849, *Sound Systems for Emergency Purposes*, 1998 edition, International Electrotechnical Commission, Geneva, Switzerland.

Intelligibility of Fire Alarm and Emergency Communication Systems, November 2008, Fire Protection Research Foundation, Quincy, MA. Available on-line at http://www.nfpa.org/assets/files//PDF/Research/intelligibilityFireAlarm.pdf

Joglar, Francisco, "Reliability, Availability, and Maintainability," *SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering*, Fourth Edition, 2008, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 11, *Standard for Low-, Medium-, and High-Expansion Foam*, 2010 edition.

NFPA 12, *Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems*, 2011 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*, 2013 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 20, *Standard for the Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection*, 2013 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 25, *Standard for the Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems*, 2011 edition.

NFPA 80, *Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives,* 2010 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 551, *Guide for the Evaluation of Fire Risk Assessments*, 2010 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 2001, *Standard on Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

Reserved Chapters

In the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72*®, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, the following chapters are reserved for future use:

- Chapter 15
- Chapter 16

CHAPTER

Initiating Devices

17

Chapter 17 covers the design and installation criteria for all sensors and devices that recognize or are used to provide recognition of the existence of a fire or the status of a protected space and fire protection systems within that space. The term *initiating device* refers to all forms of signal input devices and sensors, which include manually operated fire alarm boxes, automatic fire detectors, gas detectors, and switches that detect the operation of a fire extinguishing or fire suppression system. Also, various supervisory switches for control valve status, temperature, pressure, water level, and potential other conditions are covered by Chapter 17. In short, this chapter covers any device that provides an incoming signal to the fire alarm control unit.

The following list is a summary of significant changes to the chapter on initiating devices in the 2013 edition:

- New 17.1.2, clarifying that Chapter 17 does *not*, by itself, require initiating devices, and that other governing laws, codes, or standards establish when initiating devices are required and what types are required
- Revised Section 17.14 expressly permitting listed protective covers over single- or double-action manually actuated alarm-initiating devices (manual fire alarm boxes)
- New 17.4.9, formalizing a Tentative Interim Amendment (TIA) that appeared in the 2010 edition and defining the accessibility and labeling requirements for the use of remote alarm or supervisory indicators
- Several sections revised and coordinated to clarify how a "total coverage" detection approach is to be implemented, including coordination with the provisions for application of area smoke detectors within smoke compartments
- Revised 17.6.3.2.1, clarifying the intent of the heat detector spacing rules
- Revised 17.7.6.3.3.1 and 17.7.6.3.3.2, specifying that adjustments to spot-type smoke detector spacing for high airflow conditions (7.5 air changes per hour or greater) are to be accounted for prior to adjustments required for other conditions (e.g., beam construction)

Performance-based detection designs play a prominent role in the application of fire alarm systems, and the option of using performance-based design continues in the 2013 edition. In the sections dealing with heat detectors and smoke detectors, the designer has the option of selecting either a prescriptive- or a performance-based approach to design. Once the design option has been selected, the designer follows the criteria outlined for that option. In 17.7.7, Video Image Smoke Detection, and Section 17.8, Radiant Energy–Sensing Fire Detectors, the performance-based design method is the only permissible option. This has been the case for radiant energy–sensing fire detectors since the 1990 edition of NFPA 72E, *Standard on Automatic Fire Detectors*.

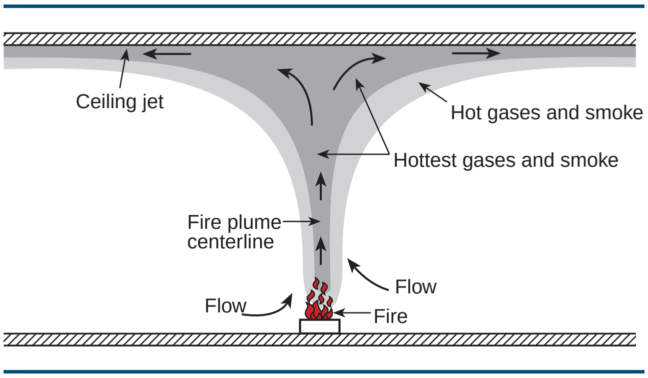
In general, the earlier a fire detector or other initiating device status change is reported, the better. In the case of fire detectors, a prompt signal allows for an emergency response to smaller fires that are easier to extinguish and less damaging than larger fires. The objective of the system design is to achieve sufficient speed and surety of response to a fire or supervised condition with minimal probability that such signals are the result of a non-fire stimulus or spurious false source. System designers can achieve this objective only if they select the proper type of initiating device for each application. This selection process requires a thorough understanding of how each type of initiating device operates and how it is affected by its environment. The mission effectiveness of the fire alarm system depends heavily on this choice.

Automatic fire detectors respond to changes in the ambient conditions in the immediate vicinity of the detector that is the result of the fire. A heat detector responds to an increase in the ambient temperature in its immediate vicinity. A smoke detector responds to the presence of smoke in the air in its immediate vicinity. A flame detector responds to the influx of radiant energy that has traveled from the fire to the detector. In each case, heat, smoke, or electromagnetic radiation (light) must travel from the fire to the detector before the detector initiates an alarm signal.

The placement and spacing of both smoke detectors and heat detectors depend on the transfer of combustion products (heat, smoke, and so forth) from the location of the fire to the vicinity of the detector. A set of physical principles, generally called *fire plume dynamics,* describes this transfer of smoke aerosol or of heated combustion product gases and air. The combustion reactions of the fire heat the air immediately above it as hot combustion product gases and radiant energy are released. The hot air and combustion gas mixture rises in an expanding buoyant column, or *plume*, from the fire to the ceiling. As the fire burns, it continues to produce additional hot combustion product gases, which flow upward as a buoyant plume. When the hot gases in the plume collide with the ceiling, the plume turns and flows horizontally beneath the ceiling. This horizontal flow of combustion product gases beneath the ceiling is called a *ceiling jet*. The ceiling jet consists of a layer of hot air and combustion gases that expand radially away from the fire plume centerline, as shown in Exhibit 17.1.

EXHIBIT 17.1

Ceiling Jet Formed by Fire Plume. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)



The ceiling jet carries the heat and combustion product gases (smoke) to the heat detector or smoke detector mounted on the ceiling. The location and spacing criteria for heat and smoke detectors in Chapter 17 are derived from an understanding of how the ceiling jet forms and how it behaves. The speed of response of a system using heat detectors or smoke detectors is determined, in part, by two factors. The first is the velocity of the ceiling jet as it conveys heat and smoke from the fire plume to the detector. The second is the distance the ceiling jet must travel from the fire plume centerline to the nearest detector.

Radiant energy–sensing detectors respond to the electromagnetic radiation from the fire. The fire emits radiation in all directions. All materials in the environment, including the air through which the radiation must travel, reflect, diffract, absorb, and transmit radiant energy. As the distance between the fire and the detector increases, the intensity of the radiant energy available to the detector diminishes. The speed of response of the radiant energy–sensing detector is determined, in part, by the distance between the detector and the fire and the effect the air has on the transmission of radiant energy from the fire to the detector.

Manual fire alarm boxes provide a means for human observers to initiate a fire alarm signal. They are distributed in a manner that provides both relatively short travel time and ease of operation while occupants are leaving the building. The speed of response is determined largely by the speed with which the occupants can travel and the distance they must travel to reach a manual fire alarm box.

The prescriptive system design requirements in this chapter of *NFPA 72*®, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, are intended to provide the minimum criteria sufficient to fulfill generally accepted response expectations. However, the Code does not quantify those response expectations. Where the needed response differs from the generally accepted expectations or where conditions are different from those presumed by the prescriptive criteria, this chapter permits the use of performance-based design methods. Refer to Supplement 1, Performance-Based Design and Fire Alarm Systems, and Annex B, Engineering Guide for Automatic Fire Detector Spacing.

17.1 Application

17.1.1 The performance, selection, use, and location of automatic or manual initiating devices, including but not limited to fire detection devices, devices that detect the operation of fire suppression and extinguishing systems, waterflow detectors, pressure switches, manual fire alarm boxes, and other supervisory signal–initiating devices (including guard tour reporting) used to ensure timely warning for the purposes of life safety and the protection of a building, a space, a structure, an area, or an object shall comply with the minimum requirements of this chapter.

17.1.2* This chapter establishes the minimum installation criteria for initiating devices required by other governing laws, codes, standards, or section of this document. This chapter does not, by itself, require the installation of initiating devices.

Section 17.1 addresses the applicability of the requirements of Chapter 17. The basic scope of the chapter is established in 17.1.1. An understanding of the scope limitations of Chapter 17 is crucial. In this regard, the provision of 17.1.2 has been added to the 2013 edition to rectify a common misapplication of Chapter 17. Chapter 17, the initiating devices chapter, does not mandate, require, or specify any type of initiating device for any particular application, building, or structure. The legal basis for the installation of initiating devices is found in other NFPA codes and standards, or in other governing laws, codes, or standards with some very special exceptions. Those exceptions include a few unique requirements in other chapters of *NFPA 72*. For example, 10.4.4 requires a smoke detector at control unit locations but does not require complete smoke detection of any particular area. Similarly, 23.8.5.1.2 requires at least one manual fire alarm box for any fire alarm system that is connected to a supervising station and that also employs automatic fire detectors or waterflow detection devices. Thus, a system that might be required solely for the purpose of monitoring a sprinkler system and sending a signal off-premises would still require a smoke detector at any control unit location, as well as a single manual fire alarm box.

FAQ Does Chapter 17 establish the need for the installation of initiating devices?

Fire officials, building officials, and building owners must recognize that Chapter 17 is not intended to serve as the legal requirement or mandate to install initiating devices. Such requirement or mandate originates from other legally adopted codes or ordinances. For example, assume a community adopts NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®, or a local ordinance or state building code that states residential buildings must install smoke detectors in corridors per *NFPA 72*. In this case, the corridor smoke detectors are mandated by a legal code adoption and must follow the implementation rules of Chapter 17. Accordingly, Chapter 17 establishes the design and installation requirements for that corridor smoke detection system but does not by itself require the corridor smoke detection system.

The requirement for some form of fire or supervisory signal initiation is established in the codes and standards that cover a specific class of occupancy or, in some cases, a specific class of fire protection system. The property owner, property insurance carrier, or other authority having jurisdiction might also establish requirements for fire alarm or supervisory signal initiation. Once a requirement has been established by some other code or authority, the designer then refers to Chapter 17 for the specifics of selection, installation, and placement.

For example, NFPA 664, *Standard for the Prevention of Fires and Explosions in Wood Processing and Woodworking Facilities*, requires the use of spark/ember detectors in certain instances. The designer using NFPA 664 must then refer to Chapter 17 of the Code for the relevant installation requirements for spark/ember detectors.

As another example, Chapter 40 of NFPA *101*, which covers industrial occupancies, requires a fire alarm system where 100 or more people are on-site and 25 or more people are on a floor other than the exit discharge–level floor. Chapter 40 also addresses the means (manual initiation, automatic fire detection, automatic sprinkler operation) needed to initiate the fire alarm system and the requirements for occupant notification. The fire protection designer of such an industrial site must then refer to *NFPA 72* for the relevant requirements for that fire alarm system and to Chapter 17 for the determination of the type, quantity, and placement of the fire detection devices. The designer must also refer to Chapter 17 for the installation requirements for waterflow switches, pressure switches, and other initiating devices that might be required by NFPA 12, *Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems*; NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*; or other standards.

Chapter 17 establishes the selection and placement criteria for initiating devices. These criteria ultimately establish the number and type of initiating devices. When a designer places detection in a specific area or in a manner to protect from a specific hazard, the detection devices to be installed must follow the requirements outlined in this Code.

A.17.1.2 The initiating devices chapter does not specify requirements for having or using any particular type of initiating device for a particular application. The requirements to have certain initiating devices are found in other NFPA codes and standards, or in other governing laws, codes or standards. In a few instances other parts of this code may require some minimal complement of initiating devices. For example, section 10.5 requires a smoke detector at control unit locations but does not require complete smoke detection of any particular area. Similarly, 23.8.5.1.2 requires at least one manual fire alarm box on any fire alarm system that is connected to a supervising station and that also employs automatic fire detectors or water flow detection devices. Thus, a system that might be required solely for the purpose of monitoring a sprinkler system and sending a signal off premises would still require a smoke detector at any control unit locations as well as a single manual pull station.

17.1.3 The requirements of Chapters 7, 10, 12, 21, 23, and 24 shall also apply unless they are in conflict with this chapter.

Chapter 17 provides the installation requirements regarding fire alarm signal and supervisory signal–initiating devices. Chapters 7, 10, 12, 21, 23, and 24 include some requirements that relate to where and under what circumstances such devices are required. The designer must refer to Chapters 7, 10, and 12 for requirements relating to the means of connection. Chapters 21, 23, and 24 have criteria that are implemented by referring to Chapter 17.

17.1.4 The requirements of Chapter 14 shall apply.

Chapter 14 covers the inspection, testing, and maintenance criteria for the fire alarm system, including all initiating devices.

17.1.5 The requirements of single- and multiple-station alarms and household fire alarm systems shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 29.

17.1.6 The material in this chapter shall be applied by persons knowledgeable in the application of fire detection and fire alarm systems and services.

In 17.1.6, the phrase "persons knowledgeable in the application of fire detection and fire alarm systems and services" refers to someone of a higher skill and knowledge level than that which is necessary to simply read the Code. The user is expected to understand the role that the fire alarm system plays in the overall fire safety strategy for the site. Knowing the limitations of the types of detectors is as important as knowing which detector is the right choice for the application. Understanding which type of system will meet the owner's goals is as important as understanding how the system will operate. Many jurisdictions have licensure or certification requirements for persons working on fire protection equipment. See also the requirements for the system designer in 10.5.1.

17.1.7 The interconnection of initiating devices with control equipment configurations and power supplies, or with output systems responding to external actuation, shall be as detailed elsewhere in this Code or in other governing laws, codes, or standards.

The interconnection of initiating devices to the fire alarm control unit via system wiring is subject to requirements that relate to both the initiating device and the fire alarm control unit. Consequently, in the design process, the user must apply the requirements of this chapter and Chapters 7, 10, 12, 21, 23, and 24, as well as requirements in any relevant occupancy standards.

17.2 Purpose

Automatic and manual initiating devices shall contribute to life safety, fire protection, and property conservation by providing a reliable means to signal other equipment arranged to monitor the initiating devices and to initiate a response to those signals.

17.3* Performance-Based Design

The process of performance-based design is described in Supplement 1. The three areas where fire alarm systems lend themselves to performance-based design methods are initiation; notification; and inspection, testing, and maintenance. This chapter provides a performance-based design alternative to the prescriptive criteria for the design of the initiating part of the fire alarm system and includes specific requirements that pertain to the review and approval of performance-based designs in Section 17.3. Usually, a performance-based design is deemed "engineering," and those performing this work are subject to the licensure requirements of the governing jurisdiction.

A.17.3 Annex B, Engineering Guide for Automatic Fire Detector Spacing, provides a detailed design guide for the implementation of the performance-based design of fire alarm systems.

17.3.1 Performance-based designs submitted to the authority having jurisdiction for review and approval shall include documentation, in an approved format, of each performance objective and applicable scenario, together with any calculations, modeling, or other technical substantiation used in establishing the proposed design's fire and life safety performance.

17.3.2 The authority having jurisdiction shall determine whether such identified performance objectives are appropriate and have been met.

Performance-based approaches may utilize various calculation and engineering methodologies including those for fire development and detector activation estimates. Although many authorities having jurisdiction are familiar and knowledgeable in the general application of fire detection devices, a performance-based approach may merit a peer review from a qualified engineer. This review can greatly assist the authority having jurisdiction in determining the adequacy of a performance-based design.

17.3.3 The authority having jurisdiction shall approve modifications to or variations from the approved design or design basis in advance.

17.4 General Requirements

17.4.1 The requirements of 17.4.2 through 17.4.9 shall apply to all initiating devices.

As used in this Code, the term *initiating device* covers not only fire detection devices such as manual fire alarm boxes, heat detectors, smoke detectors, and radiant energy–sensing detectors, but also gas detectors and other devices that monitor conditions related to fire safety. These devices include sprinkler system waterflow switches, pressure switches, valve tamper switches, building temperature monitoring devices, and any signaling switches used to monitor special extinguishing systems. The requirements in Section 17.4 apply to all monitoring devices that provide information in the form of binary, digital, or analog data transmitted to a fire alarm control unit. See also the definition of the term *initiating device* in 3.3.132.

• **17.4.2** Where subject to mechanical damage, an initiating device shall be protected. A mechanical guard used to protect a smoke, heat, or radiant energy–sensing detector shall be listed for use with the detector.

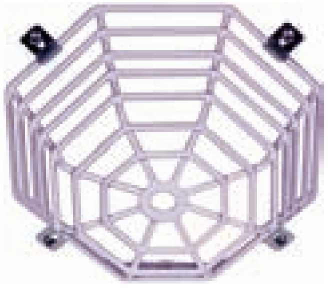
A prudent designer and installer would apply the requirement in 17.4.2 to every component of the fire alarm system. The cause of many unwanted alarms as well as system failures has been found to be the result of damage to a detector or other initiating device.

Mechanical damage can be expected in low ceiling areas or tight equipment areas where detectors are in proximity to a zone of frequent maintenance operations. An inadvertent blow from a heavy tool or an abrupt collision from some person or object can seriously damage a detector or other initiating device. Also, mechanical damage can occur over an extended period of time from vibration, extremes in temperature, corrosive atmospheres, other chemical reactions, or excessive humidity. The designer and the installer must be sure that the initiating device is appropriate for the environment in which it is to be installed.

FAQ Why must mechanical guards be listed for use with the detector?

Subsection 17.4.2 requires that mechanical guards used to protect smoke detectors, heat detectors, and radiant energy–sensing detectors be listed for that purpose. Because both smoke detectors and heat detectors rely on the ceiling jet to convey smoke and hot combustion product gases from the fire plume to the detector, any object that impedes that flow retards the detector's response. Similarly, any object that impedes the transmission of radiant energy to radiant energy–sensing detectors would have an adverse effect on the detector's response. The only means to be certain the mechanical guard is not a material impediment to detector response is to require that a qualified testing laboratory test and list the guard for the specific make and model detector. The listing will indicate the reduction in spacing or sensitivity that will result from use of the guard. See Exhibit 17.2 for an example of a mechanical guard for a smoke detector.

EXHIBIT 17.2



Protective Mechanical Guard for a Smoke Detector. (Source: Safety Technology International, Inc., Waterford, MI)

17.4.3 Initiating devices shall be supported independently of their attachment to the circuit conductors.

Subsection 17.4.3 applies to all types of initiating devices. The copper used in the wiring conductors is not formulated to serve as a mechanical support. Copper fatigues over time if placed under a mechanical stress, resulting in increasing brittleness and electrical resistance. Ultimately, the fatigued conductor breaks or its resistance becomes too high to allow the circuit to function properly. In either case, the operation of the circuit is impaired, and a loss of life or property could conceivably result because of fire alarm system failure.

Initiating devices must always be mounted as shown in the manufacturer's installation instructions. The requirements for listing include a method for mounting that adequately supports the initiating device so that no undue mechanical stresses are applied to the circuit conductors. Listing also requires that no electrical shock hazard exist if the device is mounted according to the instructions. If the instructions show the use of an electrical device or outlet box, then installation of the device with a box is a requirement of the listing, and the specific type of box shown must be used. If not shown, the use of an electrical box is determined by field conditions and the requirements of *NFPA 70®*, *National Electrical Code®* (*NEC®*). See also the requirements of 10.3.1 regarding the installation of listed equipment.

17.4.4 Initiating devices shall be installed in a manner that provides accessibility for periodic inspection, testing, and maintenance.

This requirement has been included to prevent the installation of initiating devices where they cannot be maintained during the life of the system. If the initiating devices are inaccessible, the maintenance contractor will not be able to maintain them in accordance with Chapter 14. If the initiating devices cannot be maintained in accordance with Chapter 14, they cannot be expected to provide reliable service. The term *inaccessible* is not defined in the Code; however, the *NEC* has developed three definitions that are now incorporated in Chapter 3 of *NFPA 72*. These definitions provide the criteria to judge the acceptability of equipment, wiring, and device locations:

> **Accessible (as applied to equipment).** Admitting close approach; not guarded by locked doors, elevation, or other effective means. (See 3.3.1.)
>
> **Accessible (as applied to wiring methods).** Capable of being removed or exposed without damaging the building structure or finish or not permanently closed in by the structure or finish of the building. (See 3.3.2.)
>
> **Accessible, Readily (Readily Accessible).** Capable of being reached quickly for operation, renewal, or inspections without requiring those to whom ready access is requisite to climb over or remove obstacles or to resort to portable ladders, and so forth. (See 3.3.3.)

The intent of the requirement is not to discourage the use of portable ladders to access detection devices; the use of portable ladders would typically be needed to service detectors on normal height and higher ceilings. Rather, the Code is concerned with extreme cases in which unusually tall extension ladders (such as would be required in atriums) would be needed to service the devices. In high ceiling space areas, the only method of readily accessing detectors would be by using proper equipment such as high lifts. If special equipment is necessary to install a detection device, the designer should ensure that the owner understands that this special equipment will be needed for future inspection, testing, and maintenance of that device. The accessibility of a detector or other initiating device will ultimately be reflected in the ability of service personnel to perform the required inspection, testing, and maintenance in accordance with Chapter 14.

17.4.5 Initiating devices shall be installed in all areas, compartments, or locations where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards.

Subsection 17.4.5 provides correlation between the *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code* and other codes and standards. Initiating devices must be used wherever required by another code or standard. Chapter 17 answers the questions relative to how many devices are required and how they should be installed. (Also see 17.5.3 as it relates to coverage for automatic detection.)

17.4.6* Duplicate terminals, leads, or connectors that provide for the connection of installation wiring shall be provided on each initiating device for the express purpose of connecting into the fire alarm system to monitor the integrity of the signaling and power wiring.

Exception: Initiating devices connected to a system that provides the required monitoring.

Traditionally, fire alarm system control unit initiating device circuits (IDCs) have used a small monitoring current to recognize a break in a conductor or the removal of a device from the circuit. Under normal conditions, the monitoring current flows through the circuit. When a device is removed or a conductor is broken, the current path is interrupted and the flow of current stops. The control unit translates this action into a trouble signal.

A common practice in the electrical trade in the installation of electrical receptacles has been to remove a short section of insulation from the conductor and loop the wire beneath the screw terminal without ever cutting the conductor. This method of installation of fire alarm initiating devices is unacceptable. If this method is used, the connection to the initiating device (detector) could loosen over time and the device could become disconnected from the circuit. If this situation were to occur, the control unit would not recognize this as a break in the circuit and a loss of a detection device. Subsection 17.4.6 was incorporated into the Code to preclude this practice.

FAQ Are duplicate leads required for initiating devices that are interrogated by an addressable system?

Systems using addressable detectors and addressable control units are available. A microcomputer in the control unit maintains a list of the binary code that serves as the "name" of each initiating device in the system. The control unit sequentially addresses each device by name, also known as point-identification (binary code), and verifies the response from that device. The control unit recognizes when an initiating device fails to respond when it has been addressed, indicating that the device has failed or has been removed or that a break has occurred in the wiring. This method does not depend on the continuous flow of current. Therefore, these systems are exempt from the duplicate terminal requirement unless a Class A circuit is used.

See Exhibits 17.3 and 17.4 for examples of duplicate terminals/leads.

EXHIBIT 17.3

Smoke Detector with Base Showing Incoming and Outgoing Terminals. (Source: Hochicki America Corp., Buena Park, CA; photo courtesy of Mammoth Fire Alarms, Inc., Lowell, MA)

EXHIBIT 17.4

Connections for Manual Fire Alarm Box Showing Incoming and Outgoing Leads. (Source: Edwards, Bradenton, FL)

A.17.4.6 The monitoring of circuit integrity relies on the interruption of the wiring continuity when the connection to the initiating device is lost. Terminals and leads, as illustrated in Figure A.17.4.6(a) and Figure A.17.4.6(b), monitor the presence of the device on the initiating device circuit.

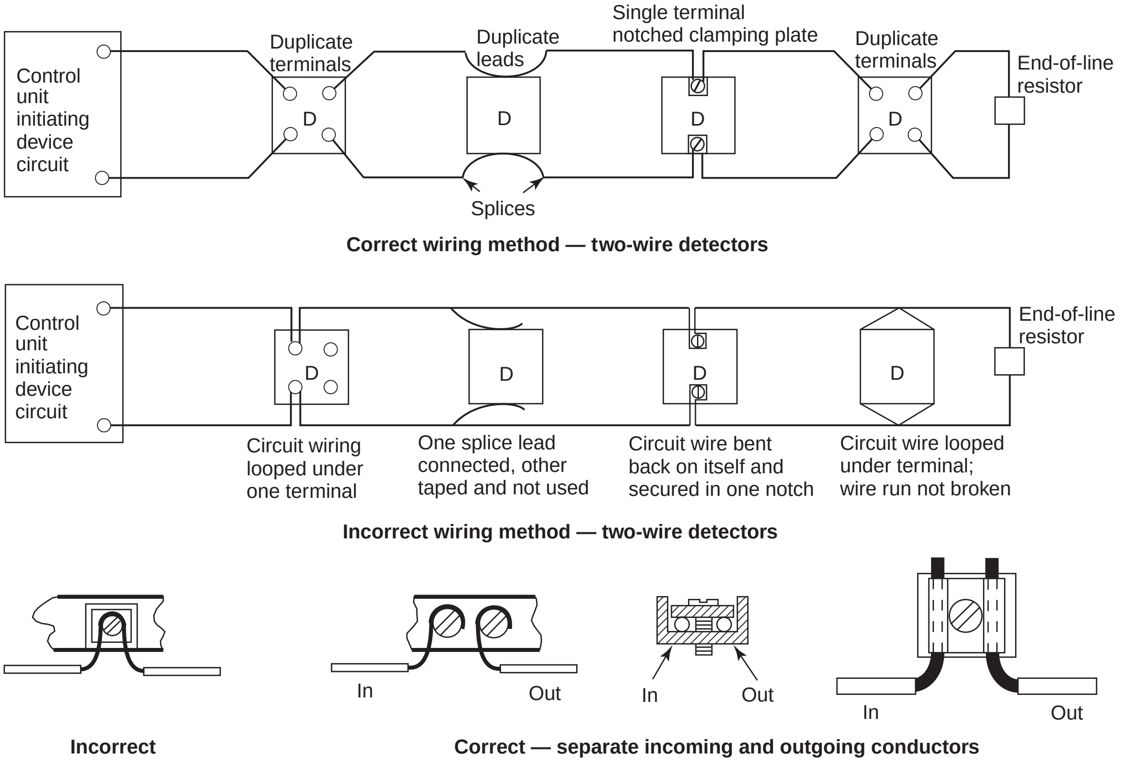
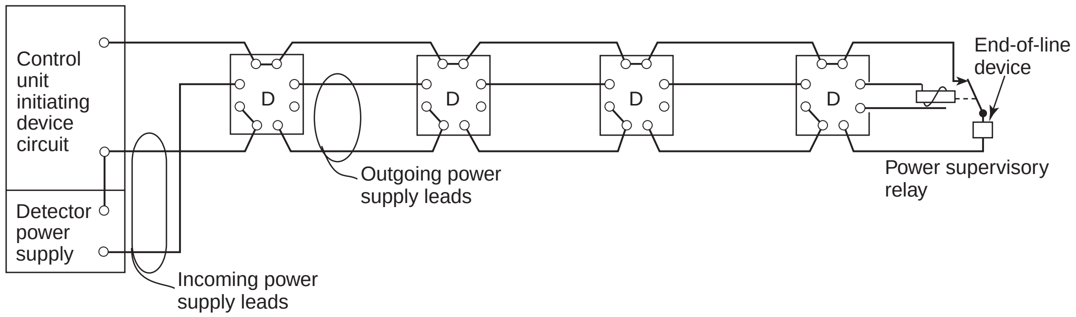
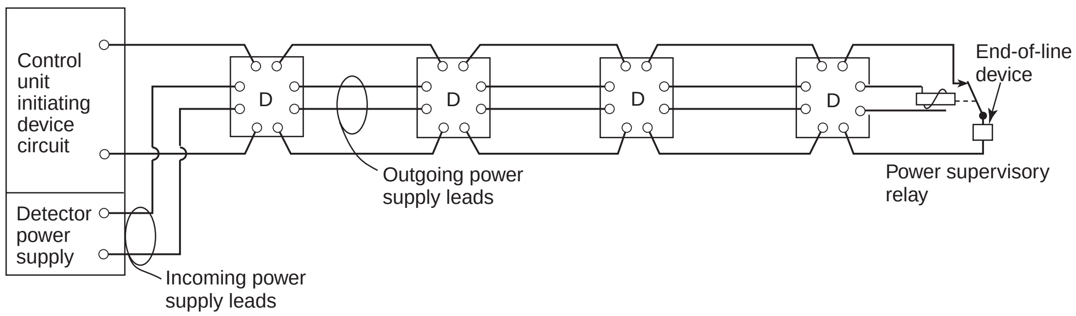


FIGURE A.17.4.6(a) *Correct (and Incorrect) Wiring Methods.*



Illustrates four-wire smoke detector employing a three-wire connecting arrangement. One side of power supply is connected to one side of initiating device circuit. Wire run broken at each connection to smoke detector to provide supervision.

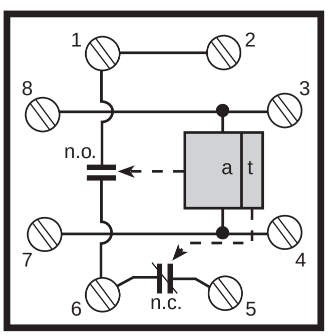


Illustrates four-wire smoke detector employing a four-wire connecting arrangement. Incoming and outgoing leads or terminals for both initiating device and power supply connections. Wire run broken at each connection to provide supervision.

D = Detector

FIGURE A.17.4.6(b) *Wiring Arrangements for Four-Wire Detectors.*

EXHIBIT 17.5



Equivalent Circuit of Generic Four-Wire Detector. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)

A review of the equivalent circuit inside the detector is helpful when considering Figure A.17.4.6(b).

The generic four-wire detector has power supply terminals, terminals for a normally closed (n.c.) trouble contact, and terminals for a normally open (n.o.) alarm contact. Exhibit 17.5 shows the equivalent schematic of the detector (initiating device). Note that the numbering of the terminals shown in Exhibit 17.5 is strictly illustrative and will not necessarily be consistent with the numbering of commercially available detectors. Also note that the circuitry (shaded area) is divided into two parts — a sensing part (a), which operates the alarm-operated contact, and a trouble indicating part (t), which operates the trouble-operated contact. Using Exhibit 17.5, one can follow the flow of current through the circuit in Figure A.17.4.6(b).

As shown by the designations in Exhibit 17.5, the operating potential (voltage) for the detector is supplied to terminals 7 and 8. Within the detector, connections exist from terminal 7 to terminal 4 and from terminal 8 to terminal 3. Terminals 4 and 3 are wired to terminals 7 and 8, respectively, of the next detector on the circuit, providing operating potential (voltage) to the subsequent detectors. The application of operating potential (voltage) in the proper polarity closes a normally closed trouble contact between terminals 5 and 6. Within the detector, a jumper is between terminals 2 and 1. Thus, under normal operational conditions, terminals 1, 2, 5, and 6 provide a circuit path for the monitoring current. Between terminals 1 and 6, a normally open alarm contact closes when the detector senses the byproducts of fire.

The normally closed contacts allow a monitoring current to flow from the control unit into terminal 6, out terminal 5, on through each detector, through the end-of-line device, and back through terminals 1 and 2 of each detector to the control unit. If an initiating device (detector) loses its source of operating potential (voltage), the trouble contact between terminals 5 and

6 opens, interrupting the current flow. If an initiating device senses a fire, the alarm contact between terminals 1 and 6 closes, bypassing the end-of-line device, which increases the current flowing through the initiating device circuit. The control unit interprets the larger flow of current as a fire alarm.

The ability to use the three-wire format or the four-wire format is determined by the initiating device input circuit of the fire alarm control unit, not the detector. Some control units use one side of the power supply as part of the initiating device circuit and others do not. The system must be wired according to the instructions provided by the manufacturer of the fire alarm system control unit. In addition, the only circuit-powered detectors that are permitted to be connected to a fire alarm control unit are those that have been listed as being compatible with the specific make and model control unit.

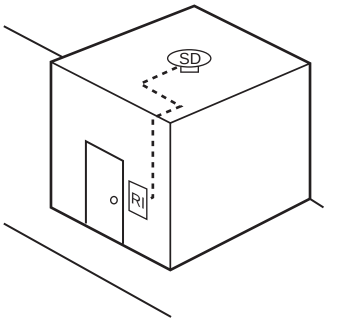
EXHIBIT 17.6

Remote Indicator Used for Concealed Detectors. (Source: System Sensor Corp., St. Charles, IL)

17.4.7 Where smoke detectors are installed in concealed locations more than 10 ft (3.0 m) above the finished floor or in arrangements where the detector's alarm or supervisory indicator is not visible to responding personnel, the detectors shall be provided with remote alarm or supervisory indication in a location acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

Subsections 17.4.7 through 17.4.9 describe a remote alarm (or supervisory) indicator that is depicted in Exhibit 17.6. Some manufacturers offer a complete line of remote indicator products. These could include power on indicator, reset switch, test switch, and remote indicator; test switch and remote indicator; reset switch and remote indicator; remote indicator; and so forth. Subsections 17.4.7 through 17.4.9 pertain to the remote alarm/supervisory indicator. Other functions such as power on and test are not required by Chapter 17. Normally, detectors receive their operating power from the FACU; refer to 23.8.5.4.6.4 for an application where a duct smoke detector(s) is not resettable from the protected premises fire alarm system. Also refer to Exhibit 21.9 in Chapter 21. Any detector accessories such as these must be listed in accordance with 10.3.1 and installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions.

EXHIBIT 17.7



Concealed Smoke Detector (SD) in Locked Room with Remote Indicator (RI). (Source: FIREPRO Incorporated, Andover, MA)

17.4.8* If a remote alarm indicator is provided for an automatic fire detector in a concealed location, the location of the detector and the area protected by the detector shall be prominently indicated at the remote alarm indicator by a permanently attached placard or by other approved means.

A.17.4.8 Embossed plastic tape, pencil, ink, or crayon should not be considered to be a permanently attached placard.

In a conventional fire alarm system (nonaddressable), a remote alarm indicator, usually a red light-emitting diode (LED) mounted on a single gang plate, is the most common method of indicating an alarm from a concealed detector. Locating and marking the remote alarm indicator are important so that the detector in the alarm can be found easily. Engraved phenolic plates permanently attached to the remote alarm indicator are generally considered the most appropriate way of complying with this requirement. See Exhibits 17.6 and 17.7 for examples of a remote indicator and a concealed smoke detector, respectively. In an addressable fire alarm system, the liquid crystal display (LCD) or video screen, located at the FACU or remote annunciator, provides detailed detector location information and is an acceptable alternative to meet the intent of 17.4.9 (see Exhibit 17.8).

17.4.9 Where required by 17.4.7 and unless the specific detector alarm or supervisory signal is indicated at the control unit (and on the drawings with its specific location and functions), remote alarm or supervisory indicators shall be installed in an accessible location and shall be clearly labeled to indicate both their function and any device or equipment associated with each detector.

EXHIBIT 17.8

FACU/LCD Display. (Source: Gamewell-FCI, Northford, CT)

In earlier editions of the Code, the requirements contained in 17.4.7 and 17.4.8 were originally associated only with the use of duct-type smoke detectors. Beginning with the 2010 edition, they are now applicable to all initiating devices.

Identification of which initiating device is activated is a chronic problem wherever devices are installed in facilities with unfinished ceilings or in the above-ceiling space because of the difficulties typically involved in getting to such detectors. This is especially true where duct-type smoke detectors are used for heating, ventilation, and air-conditioning (HVAC) system shutdown or damper actuation. Because the fire causing activation may be located far from the detector location, rapid identification of the individual activated detector is critical. The location of the remote alarm or supervisory indication must be acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction, and two methods of providing this indication are given in 17.4.9. One method permits a point-identified signal that includes device location at an addressable FACU, provided the specific location and function(s) are noted. Alternatively, a remote alarm or supervisory indicator that is accessible and properly labeled could be used. Even if the first method (point-identified signal at FACU) is used for the code-required indication, any remote alarm indicator additionally used for fire detectors in concealed spaces must meet the requirements of 17.4.8 to indicate the detector location and area protected by placard or other approved means.

17.4.10* If the intent is to initiate action when smoke/fire threatens a specific object or space, the detector shall be permitted to be installed in close proximity to that object or space.

A.17.4.10 There are some applications that do not require full area protection, but do require detection, to initiate action when specific objects or spaces are threatened by smoke or fire, such as at elevator landings that have ceilings in excess of 15 ft (4.6 m) and for protection of fire alarm control units. In high-ceiling areas, to achieve the desired initiation, such as for elevator recall and protection of fire alarm control units (FACUs), detection should be placed on the wall above and within 60 in. (1.52 m) from the top of the elevator door(s) or FACU.

Subsection 17.4.10 provides specific permission to install detectors very near and in close proximity to a specific object or space so that emergency or protective action can be taken when such a closely installed detector operates. The purpose of the closely installed detector is to indicate a proximate threat to that object or space. Two common examples discussed in *NFPA 72* are where ceiling heights exceed 15 ft (4.6 m) in the room or area of an installed FACU or the elevator lobby and, hence, with such high ceilings there is a desire to place a detector very near to the elevator doors or the FACU. Refer to A.10.4.4, A.17.4.10, and 21.3.5, which provide detailed discussions on these scenarios. In actual application, these sections recognize what constitutes a "close proximity" smoke detector installation. For the FACU and elevator lobby high ceiling scenarios, smoke detectors located approximately within 60 in. (1.52 m) are considered to be within close proximity. Detailed consideration of various technical factors in a given space and other scenarios may warrant different positioning rules for detector(s) to achieve a "close proximity" detector installation.

17.5 Requirements for Smoke and Heat Detectors

As both heat detectors and smoke detectors rely on the fire plume and the ceiling jet, many requirements are equally applicable to both heat and smoke detectors. These requirements are grouped together in Section 17.5.

17.5.1 Recessed Mounting. Unless tested and listed for recessed mounting, detectors shall not be recessed into the mounting surface.

Both heat and smoke detectors rely on the flow of the ceiling jet to convey the heat and smoke, respectively, to the detector. Recessing heat and smoke detectors that are not tested and listed for recessed mounting would locate the detector out of the prevailing flow of the ceiling jet and, hence, would have an adverse effect on the detector's ability to perform as intended.

A heat detector must absorb heat from the hot gases of the ceiling jet, as shown in Exhibit 17.1, before it can respond. Approximately 92 percent to 98 percent of the heat that a heat detector receives is carried to the detector in the hot air and combustion product gases of the ceiling jet that are created by the fire. This process is called *convection* or *convective heat transfer*. Note that the velocity, temperature, and smoke concentration are not uniform across the thickness of the ceiling jet. At the surface of the ceiling, the ceiling jet moves more slowly due to frictional losses and is slightly cooler due to heat transfer to the ceiling. A heat detector that is recessed is removed from the flow of air; consequently, the quantity of heat it receives per unit of time is reduced. The heat detector's response slows, allowing the fire to grow larger before it is detected. A heat detector also receives a small percentage of radiated heat. If the detector is recessed, less of this radiated heat energy can strike the detector. Consequently, if heat detectors are installed recessed into the ceiling, contrary to the Code, the system will likely respond more slowly, if at all, than if the heat detectors are mounted as required by the Code.

The effect is the same with smoke detectors. Smoke detectors depend on air movement to convey smoke from the fire to the detector. Usually this air movement is the ceiling jet produced by the fire. Smoke detectors are typically mounted on the ceiling to take advantage of fire plume dynamics and the ceiling jet. However, because of frictional energy loss between the ceiling jet and the ceiling surface, a very thin layer of air immediately beneath the ceiling surface is flowing more slowly than the layer a little farther down. The force that pushes the smoke into the sensing chamber is a function of the ceiling jet velocity. If the velocity at the detector is low, smoke moves into the detector slowly. If a smoke detector is recessed, this more slowly moving air immediately beneath the ceiling surface is the only flow impinging upon the detector. Because a recessed detector is in a no-flow or low-flow location, relative to the ceiling jet, it will be very slow to respond – if it responds at all – compared with the same detector mounted on the ceiling surface.

17.5.2* Partitions. Where partitions extend to within 15 percent of the ceiling height, the spaces separated by the partitions shall be considered as separate rooms.

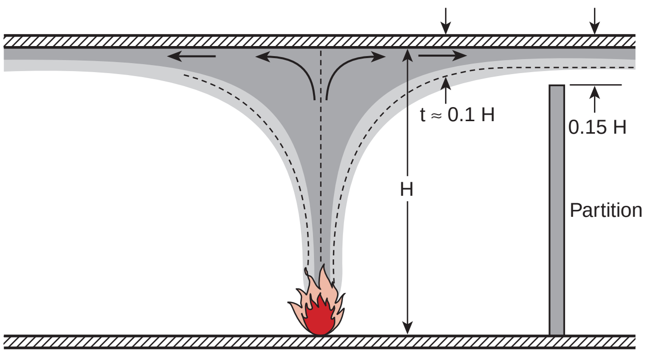
FAQ What is the reason for the value of 15 percent when considering the effect of partitions?

Research on fire plumes and ceiling jets indicates that the thickness of the ceiling jet under most conditions is approximately 10 percent of the distance from the floor to the ceiling in the fire compartment. Refer to Exhibit 17.9. Keep in mind that the ceiling jet does not have an abrupt boundary. The ceiling jet velocity varies with the distance from the ceiling, and the 10 percent depth criterion is the depth above which the majority of the flow occurs. Some flow exists below the upper 10 percent of the floor-to-ceiling height. Once the ceiling jet collides with the walls of the compartment, it forms an "upper layer." This layer will increase in thickness as the fire grows. However, during the time period in which a fire alarm system should respond, the 10 percent ceiling jet thickness is generally valid.

The technical committee increased the 10 percent number by 50 percent to provide for a margin of safety and to address the fact that the ceiling jet does not have an abrupt lower boundary. This results in a clearance criterion of 15 percent of the floor-to-ceiling height. Partitions that are more than 85 percent of the floor-to-ceiling height are expected to interfere with the natural flow of the ceiling jet and retard detector response.

EXHIBIT 17.9

Partitions Extending Higher Than 85 Percent of Floor-to-Ceiling Height, Necessitating Addition of Detectors for Each Partitioned-Off Area. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)



In the case of a fire with an established plume, the plume jet is the dominant air mover and produces a ceiling jet. The objective is to ensure that the partition does not interfere with the smoke travel across the ceiling to the detector location.

In the case of a small, low-energy fire, whether the partition affects detection system response depends entirely on the extent to which the partitions impede the flow of smoke entrained in the normal air currents.

The treatment of partitions in the Code is very different from the treatment of partitions in NFPA 13, where the principal concern is the discharge pattern of the sprinkler head and the impact of the partition on that discharge pattern and, thus, on the control of the fire.

A.17.5.2 This requirement is based on the generally accepted principle that the ceiling jet is approximately 10 percent of the distance from the base of the fire to the ceiling. To this figure, an additional safety factor of 50 percent has been added. Performance-based methods are available to predict the impact of partitions on the flow of smoke to detectors and can be used to substantiate a less restrictive design criterion.

17.5.3* Detector Coverage.

A.17.5.3 The requirement of 17.5.3 recognizes that there are several different types of detector coverage.

For years, locally adopted codes have required smoke detection in specific parts of the building but not necessarily in all compartments, as sound fire protection engineering usually dictates. Subsection 17.5.3 describes different detection coverage concepts, allowing the designer alternatives for the application under consideration. The extent of detection coverage is generally related to the tacit performance expectations in the relevant building code. These tacit performance expectations can be inferred from the prescribed coverage requirements based on the occupancy.

Where the locally adopted code is not specific about the type and extent of the automatic detection coverage required, the owner and the designer should consult with the local authority having jurisdiction and establish the type and extent of coverage to be provided. The type of coverage established for the system should be included as a part of the system documentation addressed in Chapter 7.

The designer should consider that whenever a fire is ignited in a building compartment that is not equipped with detection, the smoke and/or heat must travel a longer distance before it impinges upon a detector that can initiate an alarm signal. This scenario usually results in a substantial — and often critical — delay in fire detection. This delay allows the fire time to grow much larger before detection than would have been the case if detection were installed in the compartment of fire origin.

The Code is silent as to the type of detection (heat, smoke, flame, etc.) required for any specific type of occupancy. The relevant building code or the performance objectives of the owner establish the type and extent of required coverage. If the governing, adopted building code does not dictate the type of detection or its required coverage, then the designer should develop the detection strategy (type of detection and spacing) based on speed of response, environmental conditions, output functions to be initiated, and other project or loss control objectives.

17.5.3.1 Total (Complete) Coverage. Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, and unless otherwise modified by 17.5.3.1.1 through 17.5.3.1.5, total coverage shall include all rooms, halls, storage areas, basements, attics, lofts, spaces above suspended ceilings, and other subdivisions and accessible spaces, as well as the inside of all closets, elevator shafts, enclosed stairways, dumbwaiter shafts, and chutes.

FAQ What does "total coverage" mean?

The concept of total, or complete, detector coverage is effectively defined by 17.5.3.1. The term *total coverage* means that detectors are installed in all accessible compartments or spaces. In the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72,* a definition of the term *accessible spaces* as it applies to detection coverage has been added (see 3.3.4). This definition was necessary in order that other definitions using the term *accessible* as it pertains to equipment, wiring methods, and readily accessible are not confused with the term *accessible spaces* as it applies to concepts for total coverage in Chapter 17. Specifically, the term *accessible spaces* means those spaces or concealed areas of construction that can be entered via openable panels, door hatches, or other readily movable elements such as lift-out ceiling tiles in a suspended grid. The underlying premise is that if an enclosed compartment is accessible, it might be used to store combustible materials. The requirement set forth in 17.5.3.1 is parallel to that of Section 4.1 of NFPA 13, as follows:

> **4.1 Level of Protection.** A building, where protected by an automatic sprinkler system installation, shall be provided with sprinklers in all areas except where specific sections of this standard permit the omission of sprinklers. [**13:**4.1]

17.5.3.1.1 Where inaccessible areas are constructed of or contain combustible material, unless otherwise specified in 17.5.3.1.2, they shall be made accessible and shall be protected by a detector(s).

Under the concept of total coverage, detectors must be located in all compartments. An inaccessible compartment that contains combustible material is a potential fire location and must be equipped with detection if total coverage is to be provided. Since all detectors must be accessible, the inaccessible compartment that contains combustible materials must be made accessible. Note that other sections of the Code prohibit the installation of smoke detection under certain situations such as elevator shafts (see 21.3.6).

17.5.3.1.2 Detectors shall not be required in combustible blind spaces if any of the following conditions exist:

(1) Where the ceiling is attached directly to the underside of the supporting beams of a combustible roof or floor deck
(2) Where the concealed space is entirely filled with a noncombustible insulation (In solid joist construction, the insulation shall be required to fill only the space from the ceiling to the bottom edge of the joist of the roof or floor deck.)
(3) Where there are small concealed spaces over rooms, provided that any space in question does not exceed 50 ft^2 (4.6 m^2) in area
(4) In spaces formed by sets of facing studs or solid joists in walls, floors, or ceilings, where the distance between the facing studs or solid joists is less than 6 in. (150 mm)

Combustible blind spaces include a number of boxed-in spaces that are common in stud-wall, curtain-wall, and frame construction. These spaces are in place as a result of construction or where renovations have created void spaces with no access, thus preventing the storage of combustible materials. Furthermore, if a space is inaccessible, the probability of ignition becomes extremely remote. Consequently, 17.5.3.1.2 excludes these specific spaces from the total coverage requirement.

17.5.3.1.3 Detectors shall not be required below open grid ceilings if all of the following conditions exist:

(1) Openings of the grid are ¼ in. (6.4 mm) or larger in the least dimension.
(2) Thickness of the material does not exceed the least dimension.
(3) Openings constitute at least 70 percent of the area of the ceiling material.

All three of the criteria must be met for a compartment or room with an open grid ceiling to qualify for an exemption for detectors under the concept of total coverage. Where true open grid ceilings complying with the criteria of 17.5.3.1.3 exist, the ceiling does not represent a significant barrier to the movement of smoke and fire gases. In most facilities with suspended ceilings, the grid is not sufficiently open to permit smoke to travel through the grid, and the compartment does not comply with the criteria of 17.5.3.1.3. Furthermore, the above-ceiling space often contains combustibles, resulting in the need for detection both above and beneath the ceiling plane where total coverage is required.

17.5.3.1.4* Where concealed accessible spaces above suspended ceilings are used as a return air plenum meeting the requirements of NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, detection shall be provided in one of the following means:

(1) Smoke detection shall be provided in accordance with 17.7.4.2, or
(2) Smoke detection shall be provided at each connection from the return air plenum to the central air-handling system.

Paragraph 17.5.3.1.4 addresses above-ceiling spaces used, as defined in *NFPA 70*, as "other spaces used for environmental air." Where these above-ceiling, return air spaces meet the requirements of NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, and are equipped with smoke detection at each connection to the central air-handling system, then 17.5.3.1.4 waives the requirement for detectors throughout the above-ceiling space. The relevant sections of NFPA 90A limit the types and quantities of combustible materials that can be included within the above-ceiling return air space. This exemption relies on the construction limitations and the limitations on combustibles imposed by NFPA 90A.

Detectors in the above-ceiling space do *not* supplant detectors installed on the compartment ceiling for general area protection. Consequently, area detection at the ceiling plane is still required.

Also see the commentary following 17.5.3.1.5(4).

A.17.5.3.1.4 Total coverage requires that a fire above the suspended ceiling be detected. Detector spacing and location for above ceiling spaces are addressed in 17.7.3.5.2. If that above-ceiling space is used as a air return plenum, this detection can be provided either by smoke detectors placed in accordance with 17.7.4.2 or where the air leaves the smoke compartment in accordance with 17.7.5.4.2.2.

17.5.3.1.5 Detectors shall not be required underneath open loading docks or platforms and their covers and for accessible underfloor spaces if all of the following conditions exist:

(1) Space is not accessible for storage purposes or entrance of unauthorized persons and is protected against the accumulation of windborne debris.
(2) Space contains no equipment such as steam pipes, electric wiring, shafting, or conveyors.
(3) Floor over the space is tight.
(4) No flammable liquids are processed, handled, or stored on the floor above.

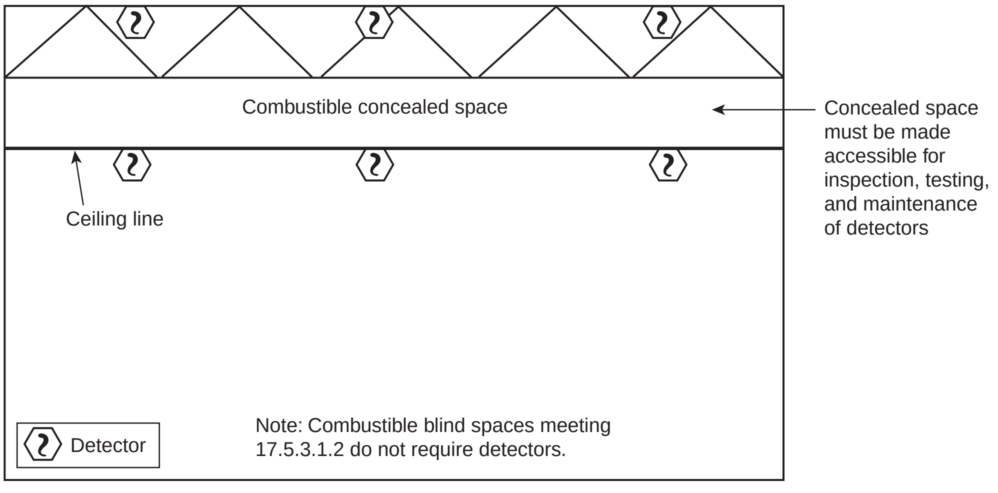
All the criteria enumerated in 17.5.3.1.5 must exist if detectors are to be omitted from underneath open loading docks or platforms where total coverage is to be provided for a facility.

Given the preceding review and discussion of the terms *total coverage*, *accessible spaces*, and the various exceptions related to total coverage, several basic scenarios can be illustrated to further explain how total coverage is to be implemented when it is required by another building code or standard.

Exhibit 17.10 illustrates total coverage — Scenario 1. This scenario relates to 17.5.3.1, 17.5.3.1.1, and 17.5.3.1.2 where combustible concealed spaces are present. Exhibit 17.10 illustrates a combustible concealed space created by a wood truss structure. To accomplish total coverage in Scenario 1, detectors are shown installed below the ceiling and in the concealed space. If the ceiling was intended to be a hard ceiling preventing entry into the combustible concealed space, then it is important to recognize that access panels or other openings are required to be installed to permit access to the detectors in the combustible concealed space for inspection, testing, and maintenance.

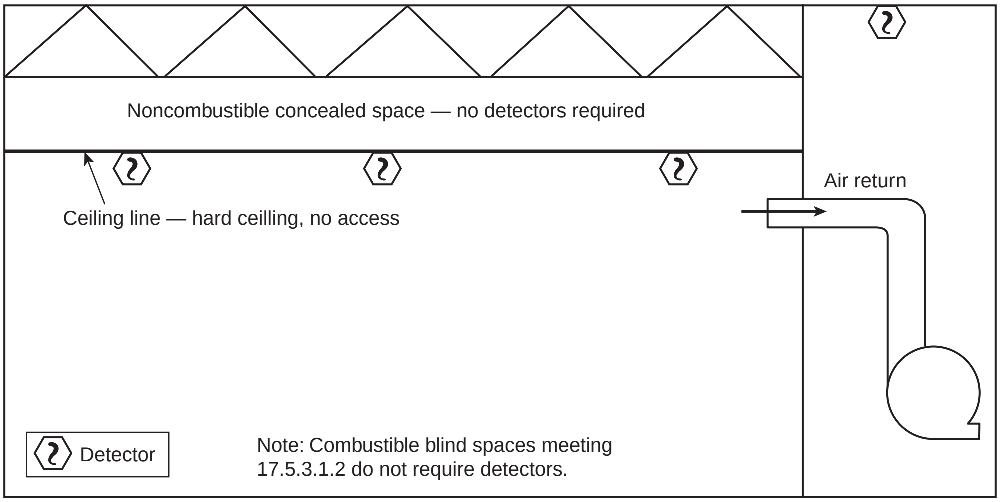
Exhibit 17.11 illustrates total coverage — Scenario 2, which considers a steel structural system that forms an isolated noncombustible concealed space. Isolated with no easy entry possible, this concealed space does not require detectors to be installed. However, the occupied space below the ceiling is required to have detectors installed, as well as an adjacent

EXHIBIT 17.10



Total Coverage — Scenario 1. (Source: Aon Fire Protection Engineering, Glenview, IL)

EXHIBIT 17.11

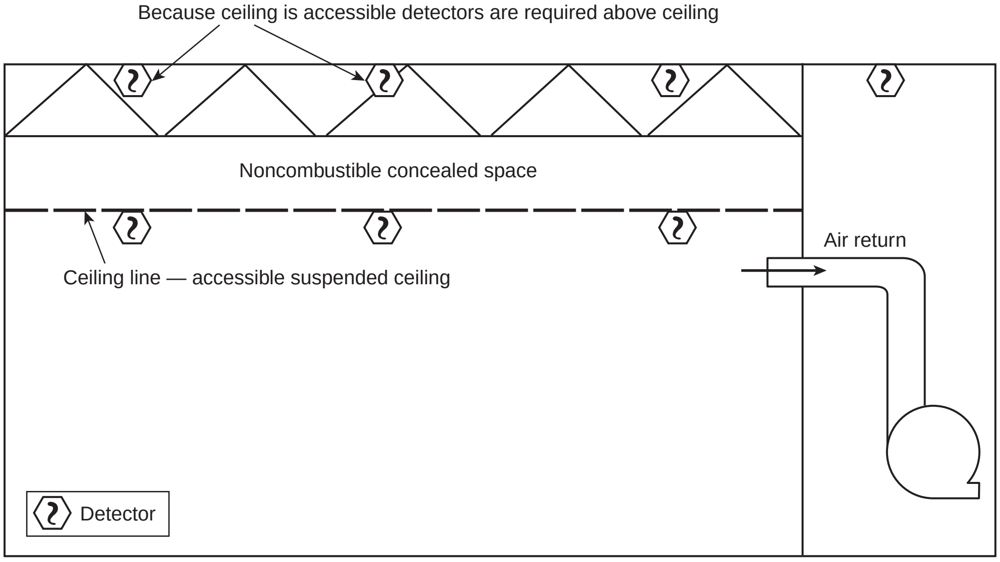


Total Coverage – Scenario 2. (Source: Aon Fire Protection Engineering, Glenview, IL)

mechanical space. In Scenario 2, the ceiling provides no access to the concealed area and, therefore, there is no risk of storage or other combustibles migrating into the concealed space.

Exhibit 17.12, total coverage – Scenario 3, addresses a situation similar to Scenario 2; however, Scenario 3 contains a suspended ceiling that provides access into the noncombustible concealed space. Here, there is a potential for combustibles being stored or placed above the suspended ceiling; therefore, to meet the criteria for total coverage, detectors are required to be installed in the concealed space.

EXHIBIT 17.12

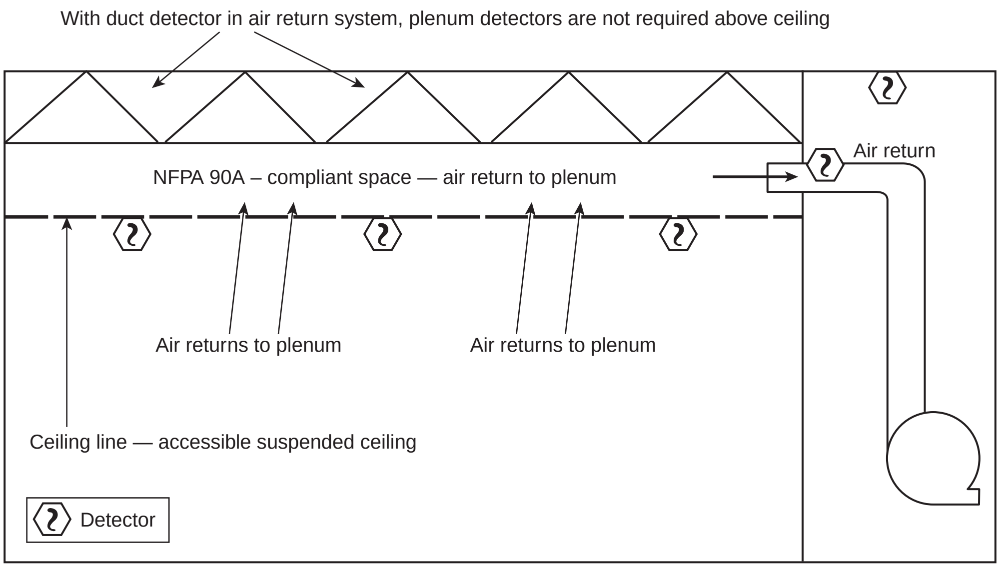


Total Coverage – Scenario 3. (Source: Aon Fire Protection Engineering, Glenview, IL)

Exhibit 17.13 addresses the provisions of 17.5.3.1.4 related to concealed spaces serving as air-handling plenums, which are diagrammed as total coverage – Scenario 4. Scenario 4 illustrates how total coverage can be achieved when an air return plenum has detection in the connection(s) to a central air-handling system. In this case, the plenum must be an NFPA 90A–compliant return air space, which effectively means combustibles are limited. However, should a fire incident occur in the plenum, such incident can be handled by the transport of heat/smoke to detector(s) in the connection(s) to the air handler. With this type of plenum detection scheme, detectors are not deemed necessary in the concealed plenum space ceiling area.

Exhibits 17.10 to 17.13 address the four basic total coverage scenarios; however, two additional variations are possible with smoke compartments using return air system arrangements. These additional two scenarios are discussed later within the commentary following 17.7.5.4.2.2.

EXHIBIT 17.13



Total Coverage – Scenario 4. (Source: Aon Fire Protection Engineering, Glenview, IL)

17.5.3.2* Partial or Selective Coverage. Where other governing laws, codes, or standards require the protection of selected areas only, the specified areas shall be protected in accordance with this Code.

A.17.5.3.2 If there are no detectors in the room or area of fire origin, the fire could exceed the design objectives before being detected by remotely located detectors. When coverage other than total coverage is required, partial coverage can be provided in common areas and work spaces such as corridors, lobbies, storage rooms, equipment rooms, and other tenantless spaces. The intent of selective coverage is to address a specific hazard only.

Where a specific area is to be protected, all points within that area should be within 0.7 × the adjusted detector spacing for spot-type detectors as required by 17.6.3 and 17.7.3.2. Note that an area does not necessarily mean an entire room. It is possible to provide properly spaced detectors to provide detection for only part of a room. Similarly, the Code permits protection of a specific hazard. In that case, detectors within a radius of 0.7 × the adjusted detector spacing from the hazard provide the required detection. An example of protection of specific risk is the smoke detector required by Section 21.3 to be within 21 ft (6.4 m) of an elevator, where elevator recall is required.

It should also be noted that fire detection by itself is not fire protection. Also, protection goals could be such that detection being provided for a specific area or hazard might require a form of total coverage for that particular area or hazard. That is, it might be necessary to provide detectors above suspended ceilings or in small closets and other ancillary spaces that are a part of, or an exposure to, the area or hazard being protected.

FAQ What is meant by the terms *partial coverage* and *selective coverage*?

Many locally adopted building codes require an automatic fire alarm system in all corridors, foyers, common spaces, mechanical equipment rooms, and other tenantless spaces. Where the building code itemizes the portions of a building required to be equipped with smoke detection, it is effectively establishing a requirement for partial coverage. Selective coverage is intended to address only a specific hazard.

Partial or selective coverage allow for the protection of the selected compartments or areas without requiring additional detection in other compartments or areas of the building. However, the detectors used for this coverage must be installed in the selected compartments or areas in conformance with the appropriate prescriptive spacing and location criteria in the Code. If the prescriptive criteria in the Code result in an excessive equipment burden, performance-based design methods can be used to tailor the detection system design to a specific performance objective.

The building owner or operator must keep in mind that although partial or selective coverage might fulfill a minimum compliance requirement, it does not necessarily provide sound fire protection, and careful consideration should be given to the logic of placing detection in only part of the building. A fire alarm system cannot be expected to detect a fire in a timely manner if detectors are not in the compartment of fire origin. Building codes often require smoke detectors in a corridor without requiring detection within the rooms served by that corridor. The tacit objective served by that requirement is to notify building occupants that the tenability of the route to the means of egress is being compromised by smoke. The detectors are *not* there to detect fires in the rooms served by the corridor. Where smoke detectors are required in a corridor but not in the rooms served by that corridor, a substantial delay is to be expected in detecting a fire in one of the rooms, especially if the door to the room or compartment of fire origin is closed. When a fire ignites in a building compartment that is not equipped with detection, it can grow undetected until it becomes sufficiently large to pressurize the compartment and force smoke out past the closed door into an adjoining compartment that is equipped with detectors. Such a scenario can result in a substantial delay in warning occupants and initiating response to the fire. Doors, ceiling irregularities, ventilation supplies and returns, and distance all retard the flow of smoke and heat toward a building compartment equipped with detection. In addition, where selective coverage is provided only for a specific hazard, it will provide little protection for personnel or assets outside the room, compartment, or immediate vicinity of the detector(s), depending on the circumstances.

As further concern, where any detection coverage other than total or complete is used in a system design, the designer should be aware that the interconnecting wiring between the devices, appliances, and the fire alarm control unit will often pass through unprotected areas of the building. The designer should consider the potential for thermal impact of a fire on the detection system wiring prior to the initiation of a fire alarm signal. The designer should consider protecting the fire alarm system wiring in those areas through which fire alarm system wiring passes. Generally, installation in a fire-rated enclosure or using fire-rated circuit integrity cable can provide important protection.

17.5.3.3* Nonrequired Coverage.

The term *nonrequired* is not the same as the terms *supplementary* or *selective.* Refer to the definitions of the terms *nonrequired* and *supplementary* found in 3.3.171 and 3.3.289 along with their associated commentary.

The subparagraphs of 17.5.3.3 address the circumstances in which a need exists for fire detection to serve purposes or achieve objectives not established by a locally adopted, minimum-compliance building or fire code. Often, a user has specific fire protection goals or objectives that can be achieved only by using automatic fire detection. For example, a building operator might have a mission continuity objective and intends to use a special extinguishing system, actuated by automatic detection, to achieve that objective. Such a system is a nonrequired system because it would be installed at the option of the owner or operator and not because of a building or fire code requirement.

The language of 17.5.3.3 subparagraphs provides the necessary latitude in design for systems that are being installed to meet an objective other than the minimum requirements for property protection and life safety provided in the local building code. Although the requirements in 17.5.3.3.1 and 17.5.3.3.2 are specified in prescriptive terms, designs for some objectives may be best achieved through the use of the performance-based design option in this chapter. The process of performance-based design involves a documented formal analysis that serves as the basis for design decisions. This process is outlined in Supplement 1 and in Annex B.

Where the building owner or system designer elects to install fire detection systems or components that are not required by the relevant building codes, the systems still must be installed in accordance with the minimum-compliance criteria of this Code.

A.17.5.3.3 The requirement of 17.5.3.3 recognizes there will be instances where, for example, a facility owner would want to apply detection to meet certain performance goals and to address a particular hazard or need, but that detection is not required. Once installed, of course, acceptance testing, annual testing, and ongoing maintenance in accordance with this Code is expected. The intent of this section is to allow the use of a single detector, or multiple detectors provided for specific protection, with spacing to meet specific fire safety objectives as determined in accordance with 17.6.1.1 and 17.7.1.1.

17.5.3.3.1 Detection installed for reasons of achieving specific fire safety objectives, but not required by any laws, codes, or standards, shall meet all of the requirements of this Code, with the exception of the prescriptive spacing criteria of Chapter 17.

FAQ What requirements apply to installations of nonrequired coverage?

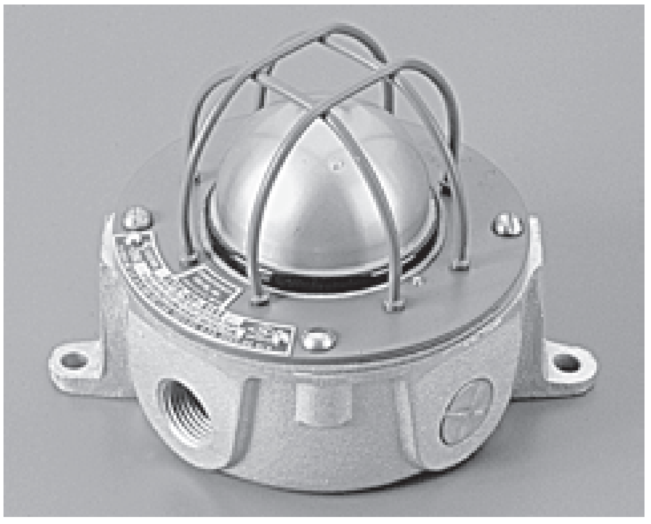
Even where detection is not required by some applicable law, code, or standard, 17.5.3.3.1 requires that detection must still comply with all the requirements of *NFPA 72,* including the specific detector location, installation, operation, and maintenance requirements for the type of detector being used. The technical committee adopted this requirement to help ensure that purchasers of nonrequired systems receive systems that work. Decades of experience in fire alarm system design, installation, and maintenance have demonstrated that compliance with the criteria in this Code results in systems that have a high probability of providing consistent, reliable service. The exception in 17.5.3.3.1 permits the use of detector spacing that is different from the spacing specified in the prescriptive sections of this Code. This exception was adopted because with some system objectives, using detection at the spacings found elsewhere in this Code is not necessary in order to attain the performance intended for the nonrequired system.

Whenever any system is designed, 17.6.1.1, 17.7.1.1, and 17.8.1.1 require that the objectives for that system be stipulated in the design documentation. Consequently, these sections apply to nonrequired systems. Although the exception in 17.5.3.3.1 exempts nonrequired detection from the prescriptive spacing rules of Chapter 17, the spacing selected must still be substantiated in the design documentation to show that design objectives for the system will be satisfied when the detectors are selected and installed on the spacing selected.

17.5.3.3.2 Where nonrequired detectors are installed for achieving specific fire safety objectives, additional detectors not necessary to achieve the objectives shall not be required.

The concept of nonrequired coverage addresses situations such as the possible placement of detection to protect a valuable asset in one portion of a much larger compartment where complete coverage is not required or desired. Generally, the objective is to attain an early warning of a fire involving that valuable asset but not necessarily some other portion of the compartment. Under these circumstances, providing detection for the portion of the compartment where the asset is actually located, rather than throughout the entire compartment or building, might be sufficient. Exhibits 17.14 and 17.15 represent special application detection devices.

EXHIBIT 17.14



Explosionproof Spot-Type Heat Detector. (Source: Kidde-Fenwal, Ashland, MA)

EXHIBIT 17.15

Typical Line-Type Heat Detector Installed in Cable Tray Applications. (Source: The Protectowire Co., Inc., Pembroke, MA)

17.6 Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors

Heat-sensing fire detectors are addressed in Section 17.6. The relationship between heat and temperature must be understood if heat-sensing detectors are to be applied properly. Heat is energy and is quantified in terms of an amount usually measured in British thermal units (Btu) or joules (J). Temperature is a measure of the quantity of heat in a given mass of material and is measured as an intensity, quantified in terms of degrees Fahrenheit or Celsius.

The majority of the heat flowing into or absorbed by a heat detector is from the hot gases that make up the ceiling jet. This process is called *convective heat transfer.* A much smaller portion of the heat absorbed by a heat detector is transferred by radiation, which is a process called *radiant heat transfer.* Heat detectors operate on one or more of three different principles. These operating principles are categorized as fixed-temperature, rate-compensation, and rate-of-rise. Most heat detectors are devices that change in some way when the temperature at the detector achieves a particular level or a set point. These detectors are classified as *fixed-temperature* heat detectors. Another type of detector adjusts its set point temperature in response to the rate of increase in the temperature. These heat detectors are classified as *rate-compensation* heat detectors. Other detectors respond to the rate of temperature change and are classified as *rate-of-rise* heat detectors. Each principle has its performance advantages and can be used in either a *spot-type device* or a *line-type device,* which are two general types of heat detectors. Spot-type devices occupy a specific spot or point, while line-type devices are linear and extend over a distance, sensing temperature along their entire length.

A number of different technologies can be used to detect the heat from a fire, including the following:

1. Expanding bimetallic components
2. Eutectic solders
3. Eutectic salts
4. Melting insulators
5. Thermistors
6. Temperature-sensitive semiconductors
7. Expanding air volume
8. Expanding liquid volume
9. Temperature-sensitive resistors
10. Thermopiles

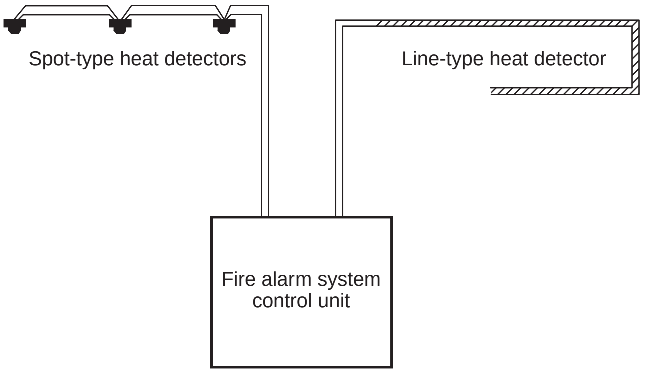
The Code has been written to allow the development and use of new technologies. The designer must be careful not to confuse the terms *type* and *principle* with *technology,* which is the method used to achieve heat detection.

See Exhibits 17.16 through 17.22 for examples of typical heat detectors. A precise definition and explanation of the mode of operation for each type of heat detector can be found in 3.3.66.

EXHIBIT 17.16

Electronic Spot-Type Heat Detector. (Source: System Sensor Corp., St. Charles, IL)

EXHIBIT 17.17



Two Types of Heat Detectors: Spot-Type and Line-Type. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)

EXHIBIT 17.18

Spot-Type Fixed-Temperature Heat Detector. (Source: System Sensor Corp., St. Charles, IL)

EXHIBIT 17.19

Line-Type Heat Detector. (Source: The Protectowire Co., Inc., Pembroke, MA)

EXHIBIT 17.20

Rate Compensation Heat Detector – Horizontal Mounting. (Source: Kidde-Fenwal, Ashland, MA)

EXHIBIT 17.21

Rate Compensation Heat Detector – Vertical Mounting. (Source: Thermotech Inc., Ogden, UT)

17.6.1 General.

17.6.1.1* The heat detection design documentation shall state the required performance objective of the system.

A.17.6.1.1 The performance objective statement should describe the purpose of the detector placement and the intended response of the fire alarm control unit to the detector activation. This statement can include a narrative description of the required response time of the detectors, a narrative of the sequence of operations, a tabular list of programming requirements or some other method.

The performance objective of a fire detection system is usually expressed in terms of time and the size fire the system is intended to detect, measured in British thermal units per second (Btu/sec) or kilowatts (kW). Typically, the fire alarm system designer does not establish this criterion. It is usually obtained from the design documentation prepared by the designer responsible for the strategy of the structure as a whole. Where a prescriptive design is being provided, this requirement is fulfilled by stating in the design documentation that the design conforms to the prescriptive provisions of this Code.

FAQ

When is design documentation required to include a statement of the performance objective of the system?

With the increasingly widespread acceptance of performance-based design, the Code incorporates a performance-based design alternative for the design of fire detection systems using heat detectors. The designer is afforded two alternative routes in the design process. One route is the prescriptive process, in which the designer follows the prescribed spacing and location criteria provided in the Code. The second route is to use the performance-based design methods that are outlined in Annex B. In either case, 17.6.1.1 requires the performance objective of the system to be stated in the heat detection design documentation.

17.6.1.2 Designs not in accordance with 17.6.1.3 shall be deemed prescriptive designs and shall be designed in accordance with the prescriptive requirements of this chapter.

17.6.1.3* Performance-based designs shall be executed in accordance with Section 17.3.

A.17.6.1.3 In a performance-based design environment, the performance objectives for the fire alarm system are not established by the fire alarm system designer.

A fire protection strategy is developed to achieve those goals. General performance objectives are developed for the facility. These general objectives give rise to specific performance objectives for each fire protection system being employed in the facility. Consequently, the performance objectives and criteria for the fire alarm system are part of a much larger strategy that often relies on other fire protection features, working in concert with the fire alarm system to attain the overall fire protection goals for the facility.

In the performance-based design environment, the designer uses computational models to demonstrate that the spacing used for automatic fire detectors connected to the fire alarm system will achieve the objectives established by the system, by showing that the system meets the performance criteria established for the system in the design documentation. Consequently, it is imperative that the design objectives and performance criteria to which the system has been designed are clearly stated in the system documentation.

Performance-based design as described in A.17.6.1.1 and A.17.6.1.3 is a holistic process that leads to a design from a starting point of stated, agreed-upon, quantified objectives. In many cases concerning heat detection system design, the objective is to detect a fire before it exceeds a specified size, assuming a growing fire. Supplement 1 and Annex B provide an overview of the process and the methods employed in that process.

17.6.1.4* Spot-type heat detectors shall include in their installation instructions, technical data, and listing documentation the operating temperature and response time index (RTI) as determined by the organization listing the device.

A.17.6.1.4 In order to predict the response of a heat detector using current fire modeling programs and currently published equations describing plume dynamics, two parameters must be known: operating temperature and response time index (RTI). The RTI is the quantification of the rate of heat transfer from the ceiling jet to the detector sensing element per unit of time, expressed as a function of ceiling jet temperature, ceiling jet velocity, and time. Spot-type heat detectors manufactured prior to July 1, 2008, were not required to be marked with an RTI.

Two performance parameters must be quantified in order to predict the operation of a heat detector for a fire scenario in a given compartment or building environment: set-point temperature and response time index (RTI). These two operating parameters are the result of the physical design of the detector.

Set-point temperature is well understood. It is the temperature at which the detector is designed to operate. RTI is a measure of the speed of the detector's response and is quantified during the listing evaluation.

17.6.2 Temperature.

In general, where a heat detector with a lower operating temperature is used, the system will produce a faster response to a fire. However, when the detector operating temperature

EXHIBIT 17.22

Spot-Type Combination Rate-of-Rise and Fixed-Temperature Heat Detector. (Source: Kidde-Fenwal, Ashland, MA) is too close to the maximum ambient temperature, the probability of an unwarranted alarm increases. The prudent designer makes certain that the heat detector operating temperature stipulated is consistent with the criteria in Table 17.6.2.1.

17.6.2.1 Classification. Heat-sensing fire detectors of the fixed-temperature or rate-compensated, spot type shall be classified as to the temperature of operation in accordance with Table 17.6.2.1.

TABLE 17.6.2.1 *Temperature Classification and Color Code for Heat-Sensing Fire Detectors*

Temperature Classification	Temperature Rating Range °F	Temperature Rating Range °C	Maximum Ceiling Temperature °F	Maximum Ceiling Temperature °C	Color Code
Low*	100–134	39–57	80	28	Uncolored
Ordinary	135–174	58–79	115	47	Uncolored
Intermediate	175–249	80–121	155	69	White
High	250–324	122–162	230	111	Blue
Extra high	325–399	163–204	305	152	Red
Very extra high	400–499	205–259	380	194	Green
Ultra high	500–575	260–302	480	249	Orange

*Intended only for installation in controlled ambient areas. Units shall be marked to indicate maximum ambient installation temperature.

FAQ

What two factors must be considered in the selection of a heat detector temperature classification?

Spot-type heat detectors are currently the most widely used type of heat detector for general purpose use. Paragraph 17.6.2.1 requires spot detectors of the fixed-temperature or rate-compensated design to be classified as to the temperature of operation.

Table 17.6.2.1 presents specific criteria for the nominal temperature classification versus the maximum expected normal temperature for the location of the detector. Both Table 17.6.2.1 and 17.6.2.3 require that the designer select a detector temperature classification that provides at least a 20°F (11°C) difference between the temperature classification of the detector and the maximum expected normal ceiling temperature. This requirement is in place to minimize the likelihood of unwarranted responses to normal fluctuations in the ambient environment where the detector is installed. Typically, the detector selected would not have a detector temperature classification higher than necessary, because the higher the temperature classification, the longer the detector will take to initiate an alarm — a larger fire will be needed to produce the higher temperatures at the detector location. There can be special circumstances where a heat detector is chosen to have an unusually high temperature rating [greater than 20°F (11°C) above maximum ceiling temperature]. Such a circumstance would be where heat detectors used to trigger a roof vent(s) need to be delayed to allow for full sprinkler system operation. The delay (with a high temperature detector) ensures proper sprinkler operation without the negative impact that a prematurely open vent may pose on the sprinkler system operation. Consequently, the designer must consider the detector operating temperature, the maximum expected ambient temperature, and coordination with other safety equipment operations.

The color code for heat detectors is very similar to that used for sprinkler heads, as described in NFPA 13. Manufacturers also provide this information for each type of heat detector in their data sheets.

17.6.2.2 Marking.

17.6.2.2.1 Color Coding.

17.6.2.2.1.1 Heat-sensing fire detectors of the fixed-temperature or rate-compensated, spot type shall be marked with a color code in accordance with Table 17.6.2.1.

17.6.2.2.1.2 If the overall color of a heat-sensing fire detector is the same as the color code marking required for that detector, one of the following arrangements, applied in a contrasting color and visible after installation, shall be employed:

(1) Ring on the surface of the detector
(2) Temperature rating in numerals at least ⅜ in. (9.5 mm) high

Not all heat detector manufacturers use a color code. Some manufacturers simply provide a label on the side or bottom of the detector. Using the unified color coding of heat detectors facilitates inspections because it allows a person standing on the floor to identify the temperature rating of a ceiling-mounted heat detector.

17.6.2.2.2 Operating Temperature.

17.6.2.2.2.1 Heat-sensing fire detectors shall be marked with their listed operating temperature.

17.6.2.2.2.2 Heat-sensing fire detectors where the alarm threshold is field adjustable shall be marked with the temperature range.

The commercial availability of solid-state thermal sensors and analog/addressable fire alarm system control units has made the development of analog/addressable heat detectors possible. These detectors permit the designer to adjust the alarm threshold temperature at the fire alarm control unit and select a unique threshold temperature based on an analysis of the compartment and the fire hazard. A color code would be meaningless for this technology and, consequently, is waived; this is addressed in 17.6.2.2.2.2. Clearly, where analog/addressable technology is used, an alternative means for facilitating inspection should be in place.

17.6.2.2.2.3 Spot-type heat detectors shall also be marked with their RTI.

RTI is a measure of the speed with which heat can flow into the detector and raise the temperature of the heat-sensing component. RTI can be thought of as a measure of the sensitivity of the heat-sensing element responding to rising temperature. Commercially available heat detectors generally exhibit RTIs with values less than 100, with 10 indicating a more rapid response than 100. The response time of a heat detector to a given fire in a given compartment can be predicted if and only if both the operating temperature and the RTI are known. The computational method for predicting heat detector response is outlined in Annex B with design examples provided in B.3.3. RTI is measured in units of $(m \cdot sec)^{1/2}$ — the computational method that uses RTI requires that only SI units be employed. The only method for determining RTI is the "plunge test" as outlined in FM Approval Standard 3210, *Heat Detectors for Automatic Fire Alarm Signaling*.

The reader should note that small differences in the numerical value of RTI suggest only small differences in response time. No basis exists for a conclusion that a heat detector with an RTI of 15 is significantly faster than one with a published RTI of 16. However, a heat detector with an RTI of 5 will respond substantially faster than one with an RTI of 50, if all other factors affecting response are held constant.

While other testing laboratories are free to perform the test to quantify the RTI for a heat detector, the testing laboratory must correlate its test procedure and instrumentation so it produces a numerical value consistent with that obtained by FM Global using FM Approval Standard 3210. At this time, the only recognized test method that has been validated is the method outlined in and performed in accordance with FM Approval Standard 3210.

17.6.2.3* Ambient Ceiling Temperature. Detectors having fixed-temperature or rate-compensated elements shall be selected in accordance with Table 17.6.2.1 for the maximum expected ambient ceiling temperature. The temperature rating of the detector shall be at least 20°F (11°C) above the maximum expected temperature at the ceiling.

Paragraph 17.6.2.3 establishes a minimum temperature difference between the highest expected ceiling temperature and the temperature set point of the detector. The intent of this requirement is to prevent unwarranted alarms due to variations in the ambient temperature. Selecting a detector with a higher set-point temperature means that the fire will have to grow larger before an alarm is achieved. Consequently, prudent design dictates that the detector should be selected that has a set-point temperature that is higher than, but as close as practical to, the requirements of this section.

A.17.6.2.3 Detectors should be selected to minimize this temperature difference in order to minimize response time. However, a heat detector with a temperature rating that is somewhat in excess of the highest normally expected ambient temperature is specified in order to avoid the possibility of premature operation of the heat detector to non-fire conditions.

17.6.3 Location and Spacing.

Subsection 17.6.3 prescribes the proper location and spacing of heat detectors for general purpose, open area detection. The distance between the fire and the nearest heat detector establishes the response time of the fire detection system. The hot combustion product gases must rise to the ceiling plane and then move horizontally across the ceiling to the detector location. Detectors that are closer to the fire will give a more rapid response. Since where a fire will occur in the compartment is usually not known, detectors are placed according to a geometric spacing with a defined "spacing" between detectors. The smaller the spacing, the more rapid the anticipated response of the system.

Another factor that governs response time is the shape of the ceiling. Smooth ceilings allow the ceiling jet gases to flow without impediment from the fire toward the detectors. Joists, beams, or other downward projecting features on the ceiling will impede the flow of the ceiling jet gases and increase the time needed for the hot gases to reach the first detector, retarding system response. Consequently, if equivalent response time is desired in such a compartment (and presumably it is), then the presence of joists and beams necessitates the reduction of the detector spacing.

17.6.3.1 Smooth Ceiling.

17.6.3.1.1* Spacing. One of the following requirements shall apply:

(1) The distance between detectors shall not exceed their listed spacing, and there shall be detectors within a distance of one-half the listed spacing, measured at right angles from all walls or partitions extending upward to within the top 15 percent of the ceiling height.
(2) All points on the ceiling shall have a detector within a distance equal to or less than 0.7 times the listed spacing (0.7*S*).

FAQ What is the basis of the spacing factor, *S*, for heat detectors?

The number of detectors required is a function of the spacing factor, *S*, of the chosen detector. *S* is established through a series of fire tests conducted in the course of the listing evaluation by the organization listing the detector. The spacing is an approximation of the relative sensitivity of the detector.

The spacing derived from the fire tests relates the response of the heat detector to the response of a specially chosen 160°F (71.1°C) automatic sprinkler head. The fire test room has a ceiling height of 15 ft, 9 in. (4.8 m) above the floor and has no airflow. The test fire is situated at the center of a square array of the test sprinkler heads, installed on 10 ft by 10 ft (3 m by 3 m) centers. This arrangement places the centerline of the test fire 7.07 ft (2.2 m) from the test sprinklers.

Heat detectors are mounted in square arrays that are centered about the test fire with progressively increased spacing. The fire is located approximately 3.0 ft (0.9 m) above the floor and consists of a number of pans of an ethanol/methanol mixture yielding an output of approximately 1138 Btu/sec (1200 kW). The height of the test fire and the fire area are adjusted to produce a time versus temperature curve at the test sprinklers that falls within the envelope established for the test and causes the activation of the test sprinkler at 2 minutes ± 10 seconds. The greatest detector spacing that produces an alarm signal before a test sprinkler actuates becomes the listed spacing for the heat detector.

With this method of measuring heat detector performance, heat detector response is defined relative to the distance at which it could detect the same fire that fused the test sprinkler head in 2 minutes ± 10 seconds. For example, a heat detector installed on a 50 ft by 50 ft (15.2 m by 15.2 m) array receives a 50 ft (15.2 m) listed spacing if it responds to the test fire just before the test sprinkler head operates.

It is important to keep in mind that the listed spacing for a heat detector is a "lumped" parameter, meaning that a number of unrelated variables are lumped together into a single parameter. These variables include fire size, fire growth rate, ambient temperature, ceiling height, and RTI. All these factors are lumped into a single parameter called the *listed spacing*. The listed spacing is sufficiently accurate to compare two heat detectors, but it cannot be used to predict when a given detector will respond, except in the context of the fire test in the test room under test conditions. Outside the context of the listing test, the listed spacing is only a relative indication of the detector thermal response. When using the prescriptive design rules of the Code, the designer uses a spacing based on the listed spacing of the heat detector to be used.

The number of detectors necessary for a given application also depends on the ceiling height, the type of ceiling (whether it has exposed joists or beams), and other features that may affect the flow of air or the accumulation of heat from a fire. All these factors are addressed in the spacing design rules that are provided in 17.6.3.

If a quantitative prediction of detector performance is needed either for analysis or for the basis of a design, the alternative design method in Annex B should be used. (See 17.6.1.3.) In this case, fairly precise predictions of heat detector response time can be developed using the RTI of the heat detector, its operating temperature, and the prediction calculations in Section B.3.

A.17.6.3.1.1 Maximum linear spacings on smooth ceilings for spot-type heat detectors are determined by full-scale fire tests. *[See Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(c).]* These tests assume that the detectors are to be installed in a pattern of one or more squares, each side of which equals the maximum spacing as determined in the test, as illustrated in Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(a). The detector to be tested is placed at a corner of the square so that it is positioned at the farthest possible distance from the fire while remaining within the square. Thus, the distance from the detector to the fire is always the test spacing multiplied by 0.7 and can be calculated as shown in Table A.17.6.3.1.1. Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(b) illustrates the smooth ceiling spacing layout for line-type heat detectors.

TABLE A.17.6.3.1.1 *Test Spacing for Spot-Type Heat Detectors*

Test Spacing		*Maximum Test Distance from Fire to Detector (0.7D)*	
ft	*m*	*ft*	*m*
50 × 50	15.2 × 15.2	35.0	10.7
40 × 40	12.2 × 12.2	28.0	8.5
30 × 30	9.1 × 9.1	21.0	6.4
25 × 25	7.6 × 7.6	17.5	5.3
20 × 20	6.1 × 6.1	14.0	4.3
15 × 15	4.6 × 4.6	10.5	3.2

Once the correct maximum test distance has been determined, it is valid to interchange the positions of the fire and the detector. The detector is now in the middle of the square, and the listing specifies that the detector is adequate to detect a fire that occurs anywhere within that square — even out to the farthest corner.

In laying out detector installations, designers work in terms of rectangles, as building areas are generally rectangular in shape. The pattern of heat spread from a fire source, however, is not rectangular in shape. On a smooth ceiling, heat spreads out in all directions in an ever-expanding circle. Thus, the coverage of a detector is not, in fact, a square, but rather a circle whose radius is the linear spacing multiplied by 0.7.

This is graphically illustrated in Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(d). With the detector at the center, by rotating the square, an infinite number of squares can be laid out, the corners of which create

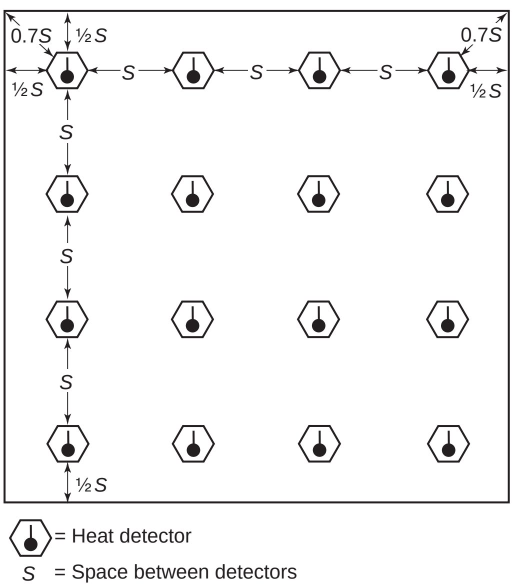


FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.1(a) *Spot-Type Heat Detectors.*

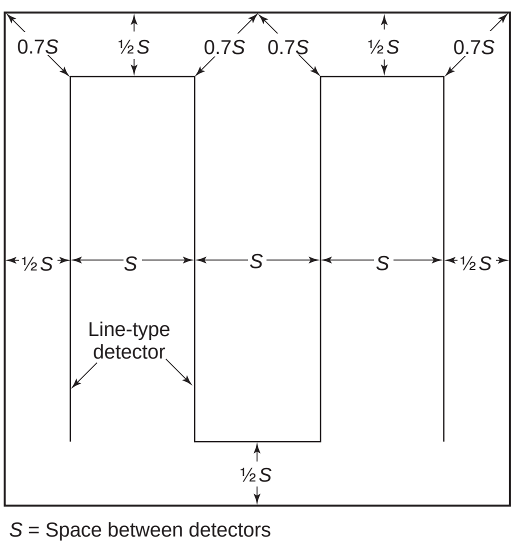


FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.1(b) *Line-Type Detectors — Spacing Layouts, Smooth Ceiling.*

the plot of a circle whose radius is 0.7 times the listed spacing. The detector will cover any of these squares and, consequently, any point within the confines of the circle.

So far this explanation has considered squares and circles. In practical applications, very few areas turn out to be exactly square, and circular areas are extremely rare. Designers deal generally with rectangles of odd dimensions and corners of rooms or areas formed by wall intercepts, where spacing to one wall is less than one-half the listed spacing. To simplify the rest of this explanation, the use of a detector with a listed spacing of 30 ft × 30 ft (9.1 m × 9.1 m) should be considered. The principles derived are equally applicable to other types.

Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(g) illustrates the derivation of this concept. In Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(g), a detector is placed in the center of a circle with a radius of 21 ft (0.7 × 30 ft) [6.4 m (0.7 × 9.1 m)]. A series of rectangles with one dimension less than the permitted maximum of 30 ft (9.1 m) is constructed within the circle. The following conclusions can be drawn:

(1) As the smaller dimension decreases, the longer dimension can be increased beyond the linear maximum spacing of the detector with no loss in detection efficiency.
(2) A single detector covers any area that fits within the circle. For a rectangle, a single, properly located detector may be permitted, provided the diagonal of the rectangle does not exceed the diameter of the circle.
(3) Relative detector efficiency actually is increased, because the area coverage in square meters is always less than the 900 ft^2 (84 m^2) permitted if the full 30 ft × 30 ft (9.1 m × 9.1 m) square were to be utilized. The principle illustrated here allows equal linear spacing between the detector and the fire, with no recognition for the effect of reflection from walls or partitions, which in narrow rooms or corridors is of additional benefit. For detectors that are not centered, the longer dimension should always be used in laying out the radius of coverage.

Areas so large that they exceed the rectangular dimensions given in Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(g) require additional detectors. Often proper placement of detectors can be facilitated by breaking down the area into multiple rectangles of the dimensions that fit most appropriately *[see Figure*

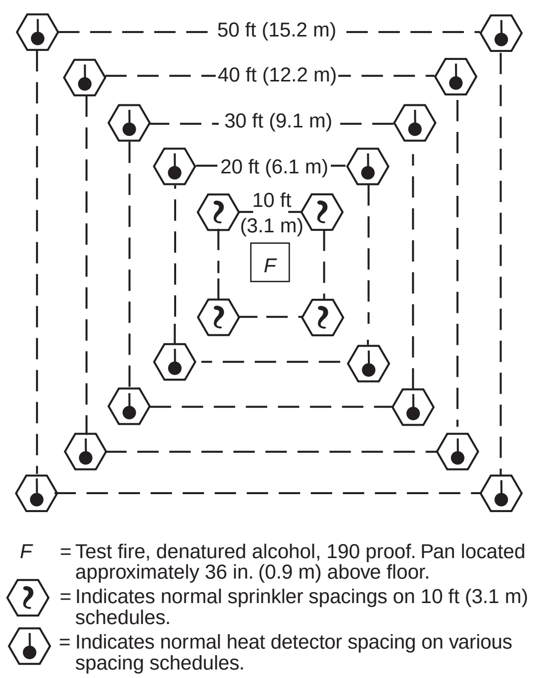


FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.1(c) *Fire Test Layout.*

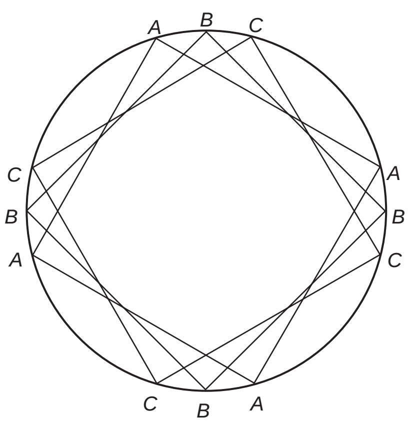


FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.1(d) *Detector Covering any Square Laid Out in Confines of Circle in Which Radius Is 0.7 Times Listed Spacing.*

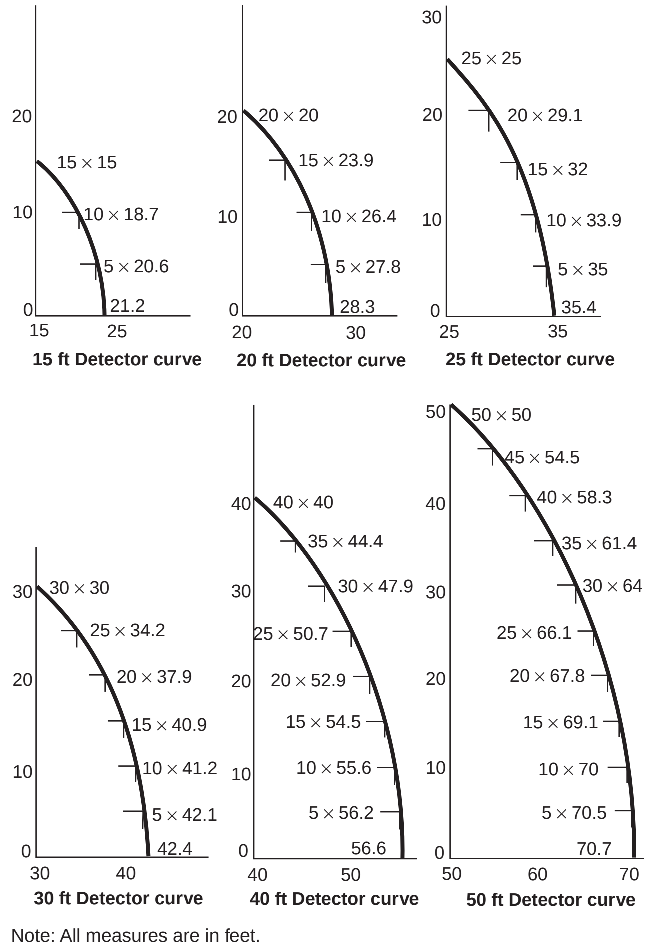


FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.1(e) Typical Rectangles for Detector Curves of 15 ft to 50 ft.

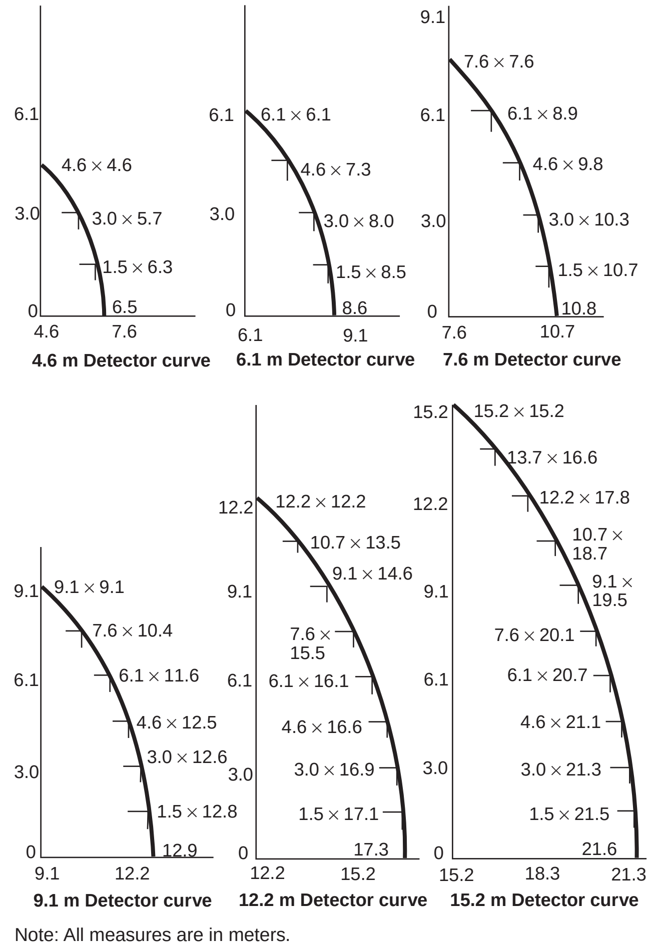


FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.1(f) Typical Rectangles for Detector Curves of 4.6 m to 15.2 m.

A.17.6.3.1.1(e) and Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(f)]. For example, refer to Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(h). A corridor 10 ft (3.0 m) wide and up to 82 ft (25.0 m) long can be covered with two 30 ft (9.1 m) spot-type detectors. An area 40 ft (12.2 m) wide and up to 74 ft (22.6 m) long can be covered with four spot-type detectors. Irregular areas need more careful planning to make certain that no spot on the ceiling is more than 21 ft (6.4 m) away from a detector. These points can be determined by striking arcs from the remote corner. Where any part of the area lies beyond the circle with a radius of 0.7 times the listed spacings, additional detectors are required.

Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(h) illustrates smoke or heat detector spacing layouts in irregular areas.

FAQ

Why is reduced spacing required?

The spacing criteria established by 17.6.3.1.1 determine how many detectors of a given type are necessary to provide heat detection for a compartment of a given area. The designer must reduce the spacing used for design from the listed spacing to compensate for the impact that variations in the specific compartment can have on the temperature and velocity of the ceiling

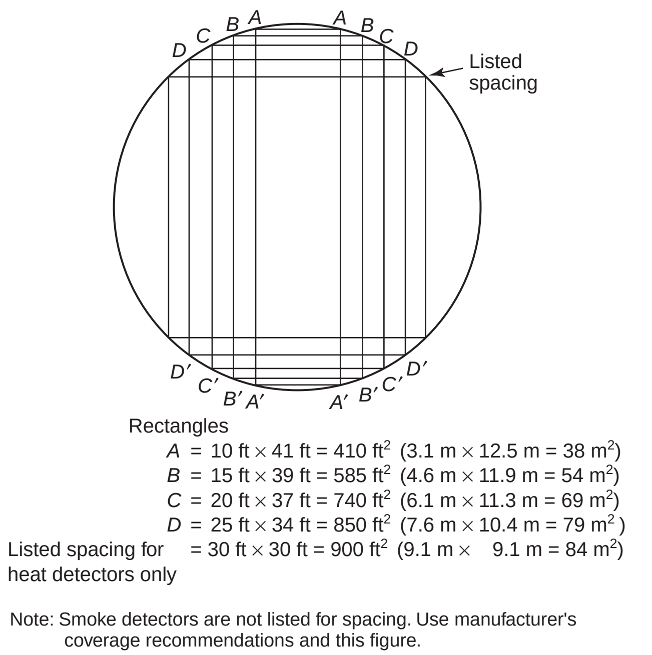


FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.1(g) *Detector Spacing, Rectangular Areas.*

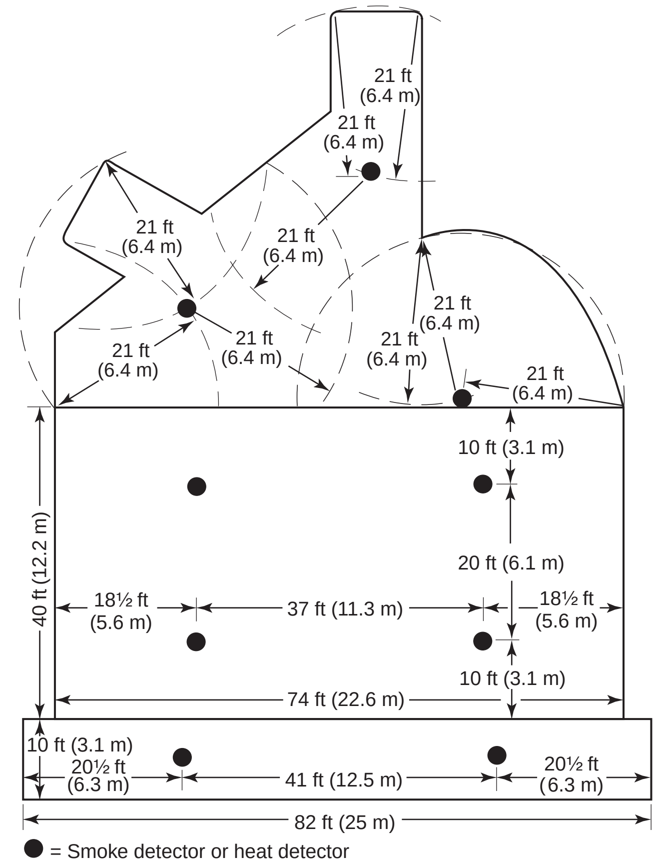


FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.1(h) *Smoke or Heat Detector Spacing Layout in Irregular Areas.*

jet. These spacing reductions, addressed in 17.6.3.2 through 17.6.3.5, are intended to compensate for environmental impacts on the detector performance and provide response roughly equivalent to that attainable from the same detectors installed on smooth, level ceilings 10 ft (3 m) in height using the listed spacing.

17.6.3.1.2 Irregular Areas. For irregularly shaped areas, the spacing between detectors shall be permitted to be greater than the listed spacing, provided that the maximum spacing from a detector to the farthest point of a sidewall or corner within its zone of protection is not greater than 0.7 times the listed spacing.

In Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(h), an arc having a radius of 0.7*S* has been drawn about each detector in the irregular areas to verify that no point in the room is more than a distance of 0.7*S* from the nearest detector. If the room has an irregular shape, this method often results in detectors being located in an asymmetrical pattern.

17.6.3.1.3 Location.

17.6.3.1.3.1* Unless otherwise modified by 17.6.3.2.2, 17.6.3.3.2, or 17.6.3.7, spot-type heat-sensing fire detectors shall be located on the ceiling not less than 4 in. (100 mm) from the sidewall or on the sidewalls between 4 in. and 12 in. (100 mm and 300 mm) from the ceiling.

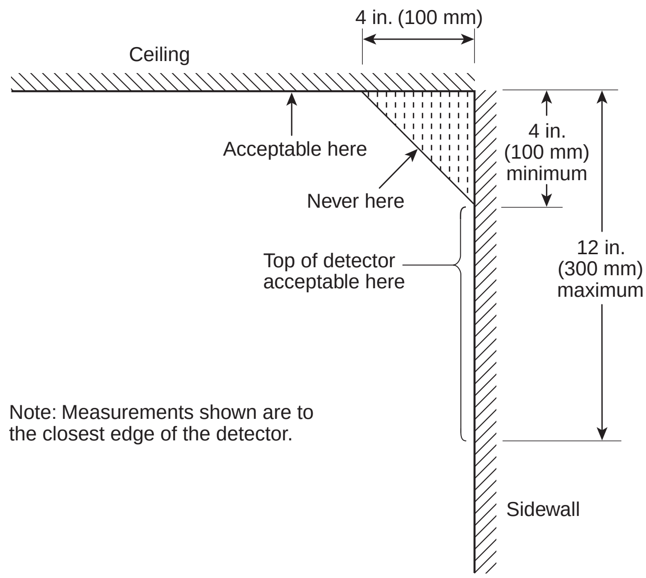


***FIGURE A.17.6.3.1.3.1** Example of Proper Mounting for Heat Detectors.*

A.17.6.3.1.3.1 Figure A.17.6.3.1.3.1 illustrates the proper mounting placement for detectors.

Paragraph 17.6.3.1.3.1 applies only to spot-type heat detectors. Subsection 3.3.37 defines ceiling surfaces and the terms *solid joist construction* and *beam construction* for use in this context.

Subsection 3.3.35 defines the term *ceiling* as "the upper surface of a space, regardless of height."

In compartments equipped with heat detection, spot-type heat detectors must be located on the ceiling at a distance 4 in. (100 mm) or more from a vertical sidewall or on the sidewall between 4 in. (100 mm) and 12 in. (300 mm) from the ceiling, measured to the top of the detector.

FAQ What is the best location for the installation of heat detectors?

The ceiling location derives the maximum benefit from the upward flow of the fire plume and the flow of the ceiling jet beneath the ceiling plane. The original research data used to support the existence of a dead air space where the walls meet the ceiling in a typical room was based on work performed in 1993 [Fire Protection Research Foundation, 1993]. More recent work related to smoke detection but not heat detectors indicates that this dead air may not exist to the degree originally thought [O'Connor, et al., 2005]. Figure A.17.6.3.1.3.1 shows this potential dead air space extending 4 in. (100 mm) in from the wall and 4 in. (100 mm) down from the ceiling. At this time since research has yet to be extended to heat detectors, the Code still excludes heat detectors from being installed in those areas. As the ceiling jet approaches the wall, its velocity declines. Lower ceiling jet velocities result in slower heat transfer to the detector and, therefore, a retarded response. Generally it is best to keep detectors further from the wall than the 4 in. (100 mm) minimum distance criterion established by the Code. In practice, this rule is appropriate to be applied where heat detectors are installed near to downward projecting obstructions such as beams.

17.6.3.1.3.2 Unless otherwise modified by 17.6.3.2.2, 17.6.3.3.2, or 17.6.3.7, line-type heat detectors shall be located on the ceiling or on the sidewalls not more than 20 in. (510 mm) from the ceiling.

Line-type heat detectors are generally considered to be equivalent to a row of spot-type detectors for the purposes of spacing and location. However, different manufacturers of line-type detection have had their products listed with different mounting techniques. The location of line-type detection must always be in conformance with the manufacturer's installation instructions. Keep in mind that attaching a line-type detector directly to and in contact with a structural building component that can absorb heat will retard response of the detector — the building component will act as a "heat sink" and retard the increase in detector temperature as a function of time.

17.6.3.2* Solid Joist Construction.

The definition of the term *joist* must be inferred from the definition, in 3.3.37.4, of *solid joist construction*. Joists are solid projections, whether structural or not, extending downward from the ceiling that are more than 4 in. (100 mm) in depth and are spaced on centers of 36 in. (910 mm) or less. The commonly encountered 2 in. by 10 in. (50 mm by 250 mm) rafter installed on 16 in. (400 mm) centers supporting a roof deck is typical of solid joist construction as used in *NFPA 72*.

The structural component commonly called a *bar joist* is actually an open web beam. If the upper web member of an open web beam is less than 4 in. (100 mm) deep, the beam is ignored. If it is more than 4 in. (100 mm) deep, it is called either a joist or a beam, depending on the center-to-center spacing.

A.17.6.3.2 In addition to the special requirements for heat detectors that are installed on ceilings with exposed joists, reduced spacing also could be required due to other structural characteristics of the protected area, such as possible drafts or other conditions that could affect detector operation.

Figure A.17.6.3.2 illustrates the result from application of the 50 percent spacing reduction rule when solid joists are encountered. The example shows how the spacing between detectors must be reduced to 50 percent of the listed spacing per 17.6.3.2.1. The example maximizes the efficiency of the heat detector distribution by also providing a dimension of ¼*S* from the walls at each end of the space. However, it should be noted that the ¼*S* dimension illustrated

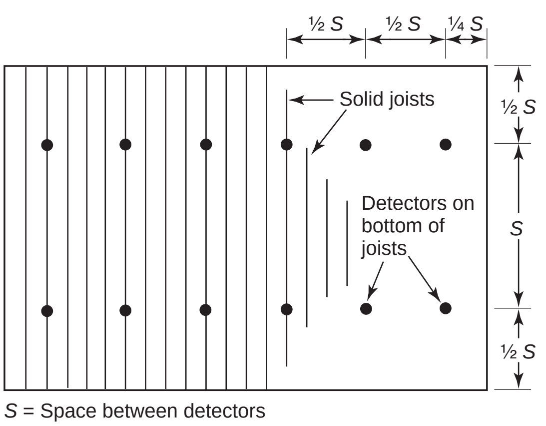


FIGURE A.17.6.3.2 *Detector Spacing Layout, Solid Joist Construction.*

in Figure A.17.6.3.2 is not a requirement of the Code and that this dimension could be greater than ¼S provided the basic spacing rules of 17.6.3.1.1 are not violated. Due to the effects of heat reflection from the wall or corner boundaries, effective detection is expected with heat detectors spaced more than ¼S from the walls.

See Figure A.17.6.3.2 for an example of reduced spacing for solid joist construction.

17.6.3.2.1 Spacing. The design spacing of heat detectors, where measured at right angles to the solid joists, shall not exceed 50 percent of the listed spacing.

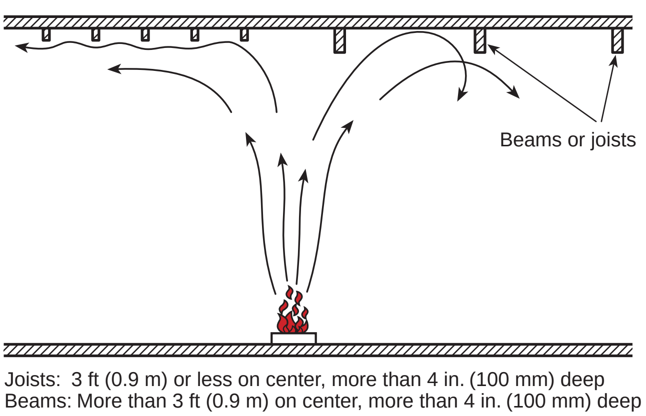
Paragraph 17.6.3.2.1 establishes the effect of joists on detector spacing. The hot combustion product gases and smoke from a fire rise vertically in a plume until the plume impinges on the ceiling. There, the hot combustion product gases and entrained air of the fire plume change direction and move horizontally across the ceiling, becoming a ceiling jet.

Where the joists are running parallel to the direction of travel of the ceiling jet, they have little effect on the speed with which the hot gases of the ceiling jet move across the ceiling. However, where the joists are perpendicular to the direction of gas flow from the fire to the detector, they produce turbulence and thus reduce the ceiling jet velocity, as depicted in Exhibit 17.23. Consequently, a closer spacing for heat detectors in the direction perpendicular to the joists is necessary to attain uniform performance.

An important point to remember is that joists are solid members extending more than 4 in. (100 mm) down from the ceiling and are installed on centers of 36 in. (910 mm) or less. If the solid members extending down from the ceiling are on centers larger than 36 in. (910 mm), they are beams. Also, bar joists have no effect on spacing unless the top cord is greater than 4 in. (100 mm) deep.

EXHIBIT 17.23

Effect of Joists and Beams on Ceiling Jet. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)



17.6.3.2.2 Location. Detectors shall be mounted at the bottom of the joists.

The thickness of the ceiling jet is usually taken to be approximately one-tenth the floor-to-ceiling height. In a normal room with an 8 ft (2.4 m) ceiling, this height leads to a presumed ceiling jet thickness of 9.6 in. (244 mm). Locating a heat detector on the bottom of a 4 in. (100 mm) joist would place the detector in the center of the ceiling jet, an ideal location for undelayed response.

17.6.3.3* Beam Construction.

A definition of the term *beam* must be inferred from the definition, in 3.3.37.1, of *beam construction*. Beams are effectively defined as solid projections, whether structural or not, extending downward from the ceiling that are more than 4 in. (100 mm) in depth and are spaced on centers of more than 36 in. (910 mm). In the context of the Code, the principal distinction between a joist and a beam is the center-to-center spacing. Unlike joists, the location of detectors in an area with beams varies depending upon the depth and center-to-center spacing of the beams.

Due to their increased depth, beams are expected to create barriers to the horizontal flow of the ceiling jet because they project more than 4 in. (100 mm) from the ceiling and are on center-to-center spacing greater than 36 in. (910 mm). The bay created by the beams and the walls at either end or by the purlins (cross beams) extending from beam to beam fills up with smoke and hot combustion product gases before spilling into the next bay. This fill-and-spill progression of the ceiling jet is slower than the velocity attained on a smooth, flat ceiling.

As the rate of heat transfer from the ceiling jet gases to the detector is proportional to the velocity of the ceiling jet flow, slower flow results in slower detector response. Consequently, for the design to attain consistent performance, the detector spacing in the direction perpendicular to the beams must be reduced to compensate for the reduced ceiling jet velocity and the reduced speed of response.

Open web beams and trusses have little effect on the passage of air currents that are caused by fire. Generally, open web beams and trusses are not considered in determining the proper spacing of detectors unless the solid part of the top cord extends more than 4 in. (100 mm) down from the ceiling.

A.17.6.3.3 The location and spacing of heat detectors should consider beam depth, ceiling height, beam spacing, and fire size.

If the ratio of beam depth (D) to ceiling height (H), (D/H), is greater than 0.10 and the ratio of beam spacing (W) to ceiling height (H), (W/H), is greater than 0.40, heat detectors should be located in each beam pocket.

If either the ratio of beam depth to ceiling height (D/H) is less than 0.10 or the ratio of beam spacing to ceiling height (W/H) is less than 0.40, heat detectors should be installed on the bottom of the beams.

The criteria included in A.17.6.3.3 make some tacit assumptions regarding the thickness of the ceiling jet under varied conditions. In general, research has shown that, to a first-order approximation, the ceiling jet can be thought of as occupying the upper 10 percent of the compartment volume [Alpert, 1972; Heskestad and Delichatsios, 1989]. If the downward extension of the beams is less than 10 percent of the ceiling height, the impact of the beams on the flow of the hot combustion product gases in the ceiling jet will be lessened, because a significant portion of the ceiling jet will pass beneath the beams.

Research also shows that as the plume rises from the fire, it expands [Heskestad, 1975; Morton, Taylor, and Turner, 1956; Schifiliti, 1986]. Generally, a first-order approximation of the plume diameter at the ceiling is 40 percent of the ceiling height (0.4H). Therefore, when relatively narrow center-to-center beam spacing is encountered with a beam spacing-to-ceiling height ratio of less than 0.4, the plume will be wider than the bay formed by the beams and purlins in at least one direction when it impinges upon the ceiling.

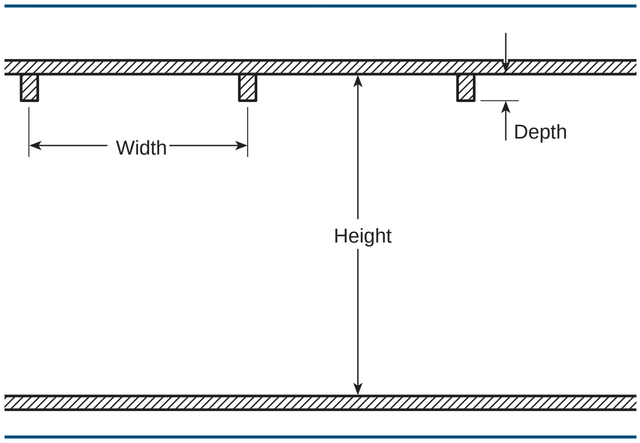
FAQ What effects do beam spacing and depth have on detection?

As more than one bay will be filling from the plume and the bays will fill rapidly, the fill part of the fill-and-spill propagation of the ceiling jet causes only a relatively short delay in time. Where the beam depths are relatively large or the bay volumes that are proportional to beam center-to-center spacing are large, the fill delay is significant and detectors must be located in each bay.

Exhibit 17.24 shows the measurements that affect the location of heat detectors where beamed ceilings are encountered.

EXHIBIT 17.24

Beam Measurements for Predicting Effects on Detection. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)



17.6.3.3.1 Spacing.

17.6.3.3.1.1 A ceiling shall be treated as a smooth ceiling if the beams project no more than 4 in. (100 mm) below the ceiling.

Beams of depths of 4 in. (100 mm) or less have insufficient effect on the overall flow of the ceiling jet to materially affect system response.

17.6.3.3.1.2 Where the beams project more than 4 in. (100 mm) below the ceiling, the spacing of spot-type heat detectors at right angles to the direction of beam travel shall be not more than two-thirds of the listed spacing.

17.6.3.3.1.3 Where the beams project more than 18 in. (460 mm) below the ceiling and are more than 8 ft (2.4 m) on center, each bay formed by the beams shall be treated as a separate area.

17.6.3.3.2 Location. Where beams are less than 12 in. (300 mm) in depth and less than 8 ft (2.4 m) on center, detectors shall be permitted to be installed on the bottom of beams.

Paragraph 17.6.3.3.2 permits the installation of heat detectors on the beam bottoms only where the beams are less than 12 in. (300 mm) deep and only where the beams are on centers of less than 8 ft (2.4 m). If the beams are more than 12 in. (300 mm) deep, they will likely project downward far enough to sufficiently interrupt and divert the ceiling jet. Additionally, if the beams are spaced more than 8 ft (2.4 m) apart, the volume enclosed by the bay formed by the beams will be of a sufficient size that a large quantity of ceiling jet gases must accumulate in that bay before they will spill into the adjacent bay. These two factors will retard detector response; consequently, the detectors must be placed on the ceiling surface between the beams.

Finally, the only permitted location for spot-type heat detectors is at or in close proximity to the ceiling plane, consistent with the stipulations in 17.6.3.1.3.1. Detectors are not permitted to be mounted on the bottoms of open web beams. Research is not available to provide guidance for detector placement in areas without ceilings. If the room or space does not have a sufficiently solid ceiling on which to locate heat detectors, heat detection cannot be installed in compliance with the prescriptive requirements of the Code. For example, a slatted ceiling open to the atmosphere or other large area would not be an appropriate ceiling surface to accommodate heat detectors.

17.6.3.4* Sloping Ceilings (Peaked and Shed).

When the fire plume impinges on a sloped ceiling, the development of the ceiling jet is affected by the slope of the ceiling. The plume is buoyant and flows upward due to the force of cooler and denser ambient air beneath. When the plume impinges upon a sloped ceiling, the buoyancy forces continue to accelerate the plume up the sloped ceiling. Furthermore, less energy is needed to turn the flow of combustion product gases and entrained air up a sloped ceiling than to turn it 90 degrees for a flat ceiling. These two effects result in the ceiling jet moving much more rapidly up a sloped ceiling and much more slowly down the slope than it would across a level ceiling. When the ceiling jet reaches the peak of the roof, its flow stops.

In the design of detection for sloped ceilings, two spacings must be applied. The first is the spacing perpendicular to the slope of the ceiling. All the detectors on this row are the same height from the floor, and the spacing is determined by the ceiling height criteria in 17.6.3.4.1.1 or 17.6.3.4.1.2, depending on the slope of the ceiling. For shallow slopes (<30 degree slope), the designer assumes the ceiling height established by the peak of the roof. For steeper slopes (>30 degree slope), the designer must use, at a minimum, the average height to calculate the spacing.

The second spacing is in the up-slope direction. To compensate for the slope, the horizontal projection down onto the floor is used. The actual distance between the detectors will be greater as the slope gets steeper, but the buoyancy effects will also be greater, accelerating the ceiling jet up the slope.

A.17.6.3.4 Figure A.17.6.3.4(a) illustrates smoke or heat detector spacing for peaked-type sloped ceilings.

Figure A.17.6.3.4(b) illustrates smoke or heat detector spacing for shed-type sloped ceilings.

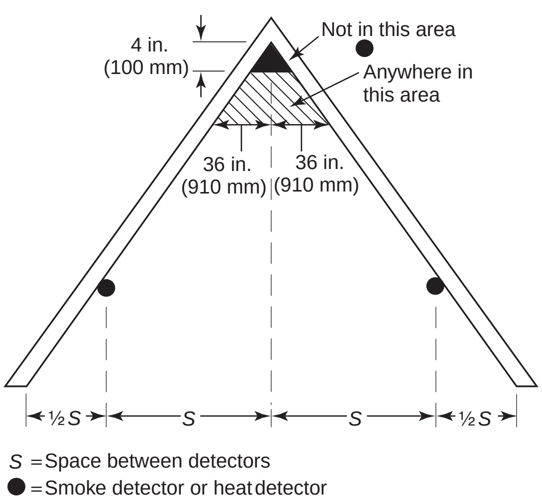


FIGURE A.17.6.3.4(a) *Smoke or Heat Detector Spacing Layout, Sloped Ceilings (Peaked Type).*

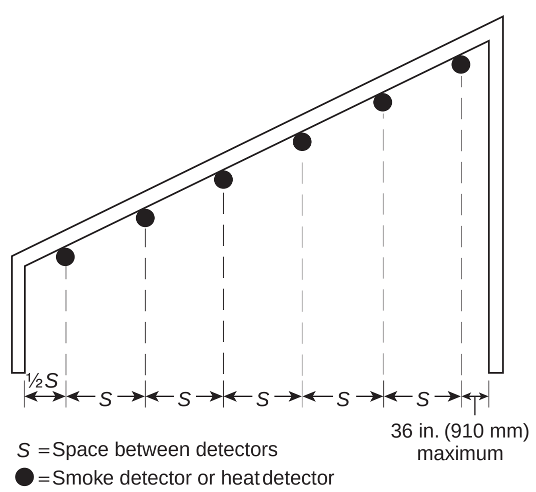


FIGURE A.17.6.3.4(b) *Smoke or Heat Detector Spacing Layout, Sloped Ceilings (Shed Type).*

17.6.3.4.1 Spacing.

17.6.3.4.1.1 Ceiling Slope Less Than 30 Degrees. For a ceiling slope of less than 30 degrees, all detectors shall be spaced using the height at the peak.

The term *sloping ceiling* is defined in 3.3.35.2 as a ceiling that has a slope of more than 1 in 8, which means 1 in. (25.4 mm) rise (vertical) over 8 in. (200 mm) of run (horizontal). This slope corresponds to a rise-over-run ratio of 0.125, or an angle of about 7.2 degrees. Any slope less than or equal to 1 in 8 is deemed equivalent to a level ceiling.

Since the buoyancy of the ceiling jet gases accelerates the ceiling jet beneath a sloped ceiling, the spacing of detectors along the slope can be increased. A spacing based on the horizontal projection down from the ceiling provides a response roughly equivalent to that of a horizontal ceiling.

17.6.3.4.1.2 Ceiling Slopes of 30 Degrees or Greater. All detectors, other than those located in the peak, shall be spaced using the average slope height or the height of the peak.

Where the slope of the ceiling is 30 degrees or greater, the acceleration of the ceiling jet due to buoyancy becomes more of a factor. Less cooling of the ceiling jet occurs as it flows up the ceiling slope. Consequently, less compensation is necessary and, therefore, the average ceiling height is used for the determination of detector spacing.

17.6.3.4.1.3 Spacing shall be measured along a horizontal projection of the ceiling in accordance with the type of ceiling construction.

The acceleration of the ceiling jet up the sloped ceiling is accounted for by using the horizontal projection of the ceiling onto the floor. The horizontal projection is the cosine of the slope angle. For a ceiling slope of 30 degrees and a design spacing of 30 ft (9.1 m) (projected onto the floor), divide 30 ft (9.1 m) by cos 30° to obtain the actual distance along the ceiling between detectors:

$$\frac{30 \text{ ft. } (9.1 \text{ m})}{0.866} = 34.6 \text{ ft } (10.5 \text{ m})$$

Thus, adjacent detectors will be 34.6 ft (10.5 m) apart when measured along the ceiling surface. Although 17.6.3.4.1.3 requires measurement along a horizontal projection, this commentary discussion might be useful for designers and enforcers and might help clarify the dimensions along the slope.

17.6.3.4.2 Location.

The buoyancy of the fire plume and ceiling jet affects the location of heat detectors as well as the spacing. The spacing is affected in the up/down slope direction and is adjusted for buoyancy by using the horizontal projection measurements between detectors. At the peak, the ceiling jet collides with a mass of the hottest air that normally exists beneath the ceiling. The ceiling jet usually displaces this air because the ceiling jet is usually hotter than the air at the peak of the roof. Because the volume of the roof peak area is relatively small, it rapidly fills with the hottest gas from the plume. Usually the speed of response for a heat detector is a factor of both the temperature of the ceiling jet gases and the velocity of the ceiling jet flow. The hotter the gas and the faster the flow, the more rapid the detector response. At the peak of the roof, even though the ceiling jet velocity decreases, the temperature remains high as the flow of gases continues up to the peak creating the initial hot gas zone. Consequently, a row of spot-type detectors is required in the peak of the roof that serves as an effective heat collection zone and; therefore, an effective heat detection zone.

17.6.3.4.2.1 A row of detectors shall first be located at or within 36 in. (910 mm) of the peak of the ceiling.

17.6.3.4.2.2 Additional detectors shall be located as determined in 17.6.3.4.1.

The process of design starts with a row of detectors, spaced in accordance with 17.6.3.1, 17.6.3.2, or 17.6.3.3, as appropriate at the peak, within 36 in. (910 mm) of the ridge beam. Then additional rows of detectors are located downslope from the peak, with spacing measured across the floor in a horizontal projection from the roof, until a row of detectors is installed within one-half the design spacing of the ceiling-wall intersection.

17.6.3.5 High Ceilings.

FAQ

What is the reason that detector spacing must be reduced for ceilings higher than 10 ft (3 m)?

The speed of response of a heat detector is dependent on both the temperature of the ceiling jet gas and the speed of the ceiling jet flow. The higher the gas temperature and flow velocity are, the more rapid the heat detector response. As the fire plume rises, it cools due to fresh air entrainment and volumetric expansion. As the plume cools, its buoyancy is reduced and its upward velocity decreases. These cooling and velocity loss phenomena continue after the plume turns and forms a ceiling jet. The ceiling jet entrains cool air as it moves across the ceiling. As the ceiling jet moves further from the plume centerline, its velocity decreases, as does its temperature.

In compartments with higher than normal ceilings, the plume gases undergo increased cooling due to the increased cool air entrainment and expansion as the plume travels the increased distance to the ceiling. When the plume reaches the ceiling and turns due to its momentum, it becomes a ceiling jet. In the case of a room with a high ceiling, the plume is cooler and slower, yielding a ceiling jet that is both cooler and moving at a slower initial velocity. Consequently, if all other variables are held constant, heat detectors installed on high ceilings experience lower temperatures at lower velocities than when they are installed on lower ceilings.

One way to compensate for the cooler and slower flow of the ceiling jet at high ceiling elevations is to move the detectors closer together and, hence, closer to the fire plume centerline, where velocity and temperature will be higher. This is the basis for the reduction in heat detector spacings based on ceiling height. For high ceilings, to attain a roughly equivalent response to one obtained at normal ceiling heights [10 ft (3.0 m)], the detector spacing must be reduced. Essentially, Table 17.6.3.5.1 is a basis of adjustment to ensure roughly equivalent heat detector response times for ceiling heights from 10 ft to 30 ft (3.0 m to 9.1 m). The user of Chapter 17 should note that the requirements for spacing heat detectors apply to a broad array of potential occupancies and uses, and for any given project the spacing reduction requirements for increasing ceiling heights need not be utilized if a performance-based design approach is considered and acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

17.6.3.5.1* On ceilings 10 ft to 30 ft (3.0 m to 9.1 m) high, heat detector spacing shall be reduced in accordance with Table 17.6.3.5.1 prior to any additional reductions for beams, joists, or slope, where applicable.

A.17.6.3.5.1 Both 17.6.3.5.1 and Table 17.6.3.5.1 are constructed to provide detector performance on higher ceilings [to 30 ft (9.1 m) high] that is essentially equivalent to that which would exist with detectors on a 10 ft (3.0 m) ceiling.

The Fire Detection Institute Fire Test Report *[see Annex* G.1.2.13*(16)]* is used as a basis for Table 17.6.3.5.1. The report does not include data on integration-type detectors. Pending development of such data, the manufacturer's published instructions will provide guidance.

TABLE 17.6.3.5.1 *Heat Detector Spacing Reduction Based on Ceiling Height*

Ceiling Height Greater than (>)		*Up to and Including*		*Multiply Listed Spacing by*
ft	*m*	*ft*	*m*	
0	0	10	3.0	1.00
10	3.0	12	3.7	0.91
12	3.7	14	4.3	0.84
14	4.3	16	4.9	0.77
16	4.9	18	5.5	0.71
18	5.5	20	6.1	0.64
20	6.1	22	6.7	0.58
22	6.7	24	7.3	0.52
24	7.3	26	7.9	0.46
26	7.9	28	8.5	0.40
28	8.5	30	9.1	0.34

Exception: Table 17.6.3.5.1 shall not apply to the following detectors, which rely on the integration effect:

(1) Line-type electrical conductivity detectors (see 3.3.66.11)
(2) Pneumatic rate-of-rise tubing heat detectors (see 3.3.66.15)

In these cases, the manufacturer's published instructions shall be followed for appropriate alarm point and spacing.

Table 17.6.3.5.1 provides for spacing modification to take into account different ceiling heights for generalized fire conditions. Information regarding a design method that allows the designer to take into account ceiling height, fire size, and ambient temperatures is provided in Annex B.

The listed spacing factor for a given heat detector is a rough measure of how far the ceiling jet can travel from the test fire (used in the listing evaluation) before the jet has cooled and slowed down too much to provide detection in the required time period (<2 minutes ± 10 seconds). As hot combustion product gases in the fire plume rise from the fire, the gases expand, giving off energy and cooling down. Furthermore, cool air becomes entrained into the plume, cooling it more. This process leaves less energy available to continue accelerating the plume toward the ceiling. Once the ceiling plane has been reached, the remaining plume momentum is the only force available to accelerate the ceiling jet horizontally across the ceiling.

Increased ceiling height has a significant effect on the ceiling jet temperature and velocity. The reduction of detector spacing with increased ceiling height places detectors closer to the fire plume centerline, thus allowing the hot combustion product gas, air, and radiated heat to travel a shorter distance before encountering a detector.

The inverse square law predicts that when the distance between the fire and the detector is doubled, the amount of radiated heat reaching the detector will be reduced by a factor of 4. To the extent that some contribution may be from radiant heat transfer, this factor also increases the need to reduce the detector spacing as the ceiling height is increased.

An important note is that Table 17.6.3.5.1 covers ceiling heights up to 30 ft (9.1 m). This ceiling is the highest for which the Technical Committee on Initiating Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems had test data. (See references in Annex B.) Where ceilings are higher than 30 ft (9.1 m), the designer must act with the knowledge that those conditions are beyond the limits of the testing that provided the basis for the requirements of the Code. The temptation is to extrapolate for higher ceiling heights. However, a theoretical basis for doing so has yet to be reviewed by the Technical Committee on Initiating Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems.

The computational method in Annex B can be used in conjunction with performance-based design methods in accordance with 17.6.1.3 to account for ceiling height. The predicted response obtained from Annex B calculations is preferable to the predictions obtained from the table because the calculations are based on the actual RTI of the detector rather than an average.

The Code does not prohibit the use of heat detectors on ceilings higher than 30 ft (9.1 m). Computer models such as FPETool and Fire Dynamic Simulator have been used to predict detector performance at higher ceiling heights. Some studies have confirmed the predictions derived from these models. However, in the context of growing fires, a much larger fire will be necessary to actuate the detectors on higher ceilings. The fire allowed by the delayed detection might be considerably larger than that normally assumed. In some cases, this delay will mean that the detection system will not meet the protection goals of the owner nor the intent of the Code. The final decision as to whether a design is acceptable rests with the appropriate authority having jurisdiction.

17.6.3.5.2* Spacing Minimum. The minimum spacing of heat detectors shall not be required to be less than 0.4 times the height of the ceiling.

A.17.6.3.5.2 The width of uniform temperature of the plume when it impinges on the ceiling is approximately 0.4 times the height above the fire, so reducing spacing below this level will not increase response time. For example, a detector with a listed spacing of 15 ft (4.6 m) or 225 ft^2 (21 m^2) need not be spaced closer than 12 ft (3.7 m) on a 30 ft (9.1 m) ceiling, even though Table 17.6.3.5.1 states that the spacing should be 0.34 × 15 ft (0.34 × 4.6 m), which equals 5.1 ft (1.6 m).

With regard to the provisions for heat detector spacing, a number of requirements require the reduction of the listed spacing, such as the rules for high ceilings [>10 ft (3.0 m)] and the rules for joist and beam construction. The reductions required by these other sections, however, are limited to a practical minimum dimension by 17.6.3.5.2.

Research shows that as the plume rises from the fire it expands. Generally, the plume diameter when it contacts the ceiling is approximately 40 percent of the ceiling height (0.4*H*), as shown in Exhibit 17.25. Given this fact, 17.6.3.5.2 specifies that as a practical matter, the spacing between any two heat detectors need never be less than 40 percent of the ceiling

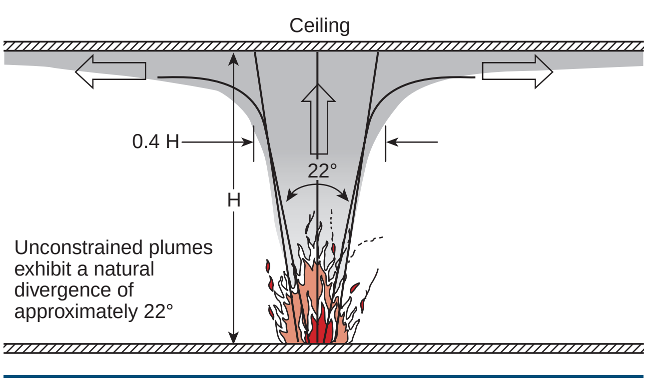


EXHIBIT 17.25 *Generally Accepted Behavior of Axisymmetric Fire Plume and Ceiling Jet. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)*

height (0.4*H*). If when applying other reduction factors, the resulting spacing was 0.3*H*, then the minimum requirement of 0.4*H* would take precedence. At 40 percent of the ceiling height, there will always be one, and possibly two, heat detector(s) exposed directly to the rising fire plume from a fire on the floor below. Although the temperatures do vary across the width of the plume at ceiling level, it is not the intent to intercept the maximum temperature zone of the rising plume but, rather, know that a detector will intercept the plume as it first reaches the ceiling. Consequently, no practical advantage is accrued where heat detectors are installed with spacings smaller than 40 percent of the ceiling height, given that most heat detection spacing schemes are based on detecting the heat transfer from the ceiling jet zone and not the higher temperature plume ceiling-strike zone.

Consider the following example: A heat detection system using spot detectors with a listed spacing of 25 ft (7.6 m) are to protect an area with a 29 ft (8.8 m) high ceiling. Per the ceiling height reduction factors of Table 17.6.3.5.1, the spot detectors must use a spacing of 25 ft (7.6 m) multiplied by 0.34, which equates to a reduced spacing of 8.5 ft (2.6 m) between detectors. However, since the minimum spacing need not be less than 40 percent of the ceiling height (0.4*H*), the spot detectors need only be reduced to 11.6 ft (3.5 m) [i.e., 0.4×29 ft (8.8 m)].

17.6.3.6* Integral Heat Sensors on Combination and Multi-Sensor Detectors. A heat-sensing detector integrally mounted on a smoke detector shall be listed for not less than 50 ft (15.2 m) spacing.

A.17.6.3.6 The linear space rating is the maximum allowable distance between heat detectors. The linear space rating is also a measure of the heat detector response time to a standard test fire where tested at the same distance. The higher the rating, the faster the response time. This Code recognizes only those heat detectors with ratings of 50 ft (15.2 m) or more.

Some commonly used smoke detectors are equipped with an integral heat sensor as mentioned in 17.6.3.6. Because the customary spacing of smoke detectors is 30 ft (9.1 m), and because smoke detectors are primarily considered to be fulfilling an early warning role, the heat detector, if deemed a necessary addition to the smoke detector, should be sufficiently sensitive to provide a response before the fire has grown to an excessive size. For the heat sensor portion of the detector to fulfill this expectation, it must have a minimum 50 ft (15.2 m) spacing factor.

See Exhibit 17.26 for an example of a combination smoke and heat detector. In this example, the entrance to the smoke-sensing chamber is shown at the center with heat-sensing thermistors located on either side.

17.6.3.7 Other Applications. Where a detector is used in an application other than open area protection, the manufacturer's published instructions shall be followed.

17.6.3.8 Alternative Design Methods. Annex B shall be permitted to be used as one alternative design method for determining detector spacing.

The computational method for heat detection system design presented in Annex B is based on first principles of physics and experimental correlations. This method serves as an alternative design to the prescriptive criteria in 17.6.3. Designers who elect to use Annex B should involve the authority having jurisdiction. The design method in Annex B can lead to detector spacings that exceed the listed spacing in many cases. This difference does not mean the spacings are wrong. Where the design objectives, fire behavior, and compartment dimensions differ from those in the UL fire test room, one would expect to obtain different spacing. This difference is to be expected when a designer uses the design methods of Annex B; the performance that

EXHIBIT 17.26

Smoke Detector with 50 ft (15.2 m) Listed Heat Detection. (Source: System Sensor Corp., St. Charles, IL)

characterizes a particular fire will likely be quite different from the characteristics of the test fire used to evaluate the detector for listing.

17.7 Smoke-Sensing Fire Detectors

The definition of the term *smoke detector* can be found in 3.3.66.20. Also refer to the definitions in 3.3.269 for the mode of operation of each type of smoke detection.

17.7.1 General.

17.7.1.1* The smoke detection design documentation shall state the required performance objective of the system.

A.17.7.1.1 The performance objective statement should describe the purpose of the detector placement and the intended response of the fire alarm control unit to the detector activation. This statement can include a narrative description of the required response time of the detectors, a narrative of the sequence of operations, a tabular list of programming requirements, or some other method.

The performance objective of a fire detection system is usually expressed in terms of time and the size fire the system is intended to detect, measured in British thermal units per second (Btu/sec) or kilowatts (kW). Typically, the fire alarm system designer does not establish this criterion. It is usually obtained from the design documentation prepared by the designer responsible for the strategy of the structure as a whole. Where a prescriptive design is being provided, this requirement is fulfilled by stating in the design documentation that the design conforms to the prescriptive provisions of this Code.

With the increasingly widespread acceptance of performance-based design, the Code incorporates a performance-based design alternative for the design of fire detection systems using smoke detectors. The designer is afforded two alternative routes in the design process. One route is the prescriptive process, in which the designer follows the prescribed spacing and location criteria provided in the Code. The second route is the use of the performance-based design methods outlined in Annex B. In either case, 17.7.1.1 requires the performance objective of the system to be stated in the smoke detection design documentation.

Smoke detectors are required by the relevant building code where a life safety objective is to be achieved. Smoke detectors are often also used where a property conservation objective justifies early warning. "Early warning" is not defined and often means different things to different people. Usually, fires are measured by their heat release rate in British thermal units per second or kilowatts. Is the detection of a 100 kW fire early enough? Customarily, smoke detectors are spaced using a 30 ft (9.1 m) spacing. The experience in the industry suggests that this spacing is adequate to achieve the life safety objectives implied by the building codes. If the objective for the fire detection system is other than life safety, some other spacing could conceivably be more appropriate, meaning that it would achieve the response objectives with the minimum number of smoke detectors. Consequently, it is imperative that the design documentation explicitly state what objectives the system is intended to achieve.

FAQ What types of fire are assumed in the methods in Annex B for predicting the actuation of smoke detectors?

Annex B gives two methods for predicting the actuation of smoke detectors for fires that produce a buoyant plume, such as flaming fires. The limitation on the applicability of Annex B to buoyant plume fires for smoke detector design comes from the fact that both methods use conservation of momentum and energy relationships to infer temperature at a given location relative to the fire centerline. The methodology then uses correlations to temperature to infer the probable optical density or mass density at the detector locations. Because both methods assume a buoyant plume and a ceiling jet as the mechanism of smoke transfer, the validity of these methods is limited to a flaming fire.

Popular computer models such as FPETool and FastLite model the smoke detector as a very sensitive (RTI = 1) heat detector. These models usually presume that a smoke detector will actuate when a temperature rise of 20°F (13°C) occurs at the detector. This simplified assumption of a correlation of temperature to smoke density, introduced in early research [Schifiliti, 1986], has persisted since the 1980s. Today, many researchers consider this estimate extremely conservative. There are algorithms now being used in Fire Dynamics Simulator (FDS) that track temperature, mass, and velocity that also infer the operation of a smoke detector.

In some applications, the computational methods in Annex B yield smoke detector spacings that are considerably greater than the customary 30 ft (9.1 m) spacing permitted in the prescriptive section of this Code. The computational methods outlined in Annex B are derived from testing performed under the auspices of the Fire Detection Institute [Heskestad and Delichatsios, 1986, 1995; Heskestad and Delichatsios, 1989]. This procedure provides a more analytical and precise method of determining detector spacing if a specific fire-size criterion has been established for smoke detection system response.

The designer must understand the behaviors of the fire plume and the ceiling jet in order to understand how the building structure can affect the flow of smoke through the compartment and from one compartment to others. The site evaluation includes an audit of all combustibles within the compartment, as well as all ignition sources, including transient ones [Babrauskas, et al., 1982; Heskestad and Delichatsios, 1986, 1995; 47 CFR 1934]. The designer models the fires to obtain an estimate of the rate of fire growth for each combustible and ignition source scenario and then compares the fire scenarios to the performance objectives for the compartment. This procedure leads to a basis for design.

Without sound performance metrics and validated modeling methods for smoke detectors, the selection of detector locations often becomes more of an art than a science. Most manufacturers recommend a spacing of 30 ft (9.1 m) on center. This recommendation is purported to have been derived from the size of the room in which the testing laboratories perform full-scale fire tests. Detailed analysis of the ANSI/UL 268, *Standard for Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems*, test criteria tends to refute that idea. The convention of using a 30 ft (9.1 m) spacing for smoke detectors can only be attributed to observations over many years that when used on that spacing, listed detectors seem to provide the level of performance expected of them.

17.7.1.2* Designs not in accordance with 17.7.1.3 shall be deemed prescriptive designs and shall be designed in accordance with the prescriptive requirements of this chapter.

A.17.7.1.2 The person designing an installation should keep in mind that, in order for a smoke detector to respond, the smoke has to travel from the point of origin to the detector. In evaluating any particular building or location, likely fire locations should be determined first. From each of these points of origin, paths of smoke travel should be determined. Wherever practicable, actual field tests should be conducted. The most desired locations for smoke detectors are the common points of intersection of smoke travel from fire locations throughout the building.

NOTE: This is one of the reasons that specific spacing is not assigned to smoke detectors by the testing laboratories.

17.7.1.3* Performance-based designs shall be executed in accordance with Section 17.3.

A.17.7.1.3 In a performance-based design environment, the performance objectives for the fire alarm system are not established by the fire alarm system designer.

A fire protection strategy is developed to achieve those goals. General performance objectives are developed for the facility. These general objectives give rise to specific performance objectives for each fire protection system being employed in the facility. Consequently, the performance objectives and criteria for the fire alarm system are part of a much larger strategy that often relies on other fire protection features, working in concert with the fire alarm system to attain the overall fire protection goals for the facility.

In the performance-based design environment, the designer uses computational models to demonstrate that the spacing used for automatic fire detectors connected to the fire alarm system will achieve the objectives established by the system, by showing that the system meets the performance criteria established for the system in the design documentation. Consequently, it is imperative that the design objectives and performance criteria to which the system has been designed are clearly stated in the system documentation.

Performance-based design as described in A.17.7.1.1 and A.17.7.1.3 is a holistic process that leads to a design from a starting point of stated, agreed-upon, quantified objectives. In most cases concerning fire detection system design, the objective is to detect a fire of a specified size, assuming a growing fire. Supplement 1 and Annex B provide an overview of the process and the methods employed within that process.

17.7.1.4 The prescriptive requirements in this section shall be applied only where detectors are installed in ordinary indoor locations.

Paragraph 17.7.1.4 limits the applicability of the prescriptive requirements and recommendations of Section 17.7 to "ordinary indoor locations." The authority having jurisdiction must decide whether a hazard area falls into this category. The Code assumes that users understand what is meant by ordinary indoor locations. The term is not defined in the Code; however, from a common sense point of view, consider that outdoor locations are not conducive to smoke detectors due to the variable, uncontrolled conditions of wind, humidity, precipitation, and temperatures. Ordinary indoor locations should be thought of as typical building spaces with relatively constant and not drastically changing environmental conditions, or conditions that would subject the smoke detectors to nuisance alarms. An inside truck dock may qualify as an indoor location but not as an ordinary location due to the vehicle exhaust fumes (e.g., diesel) that would adversely affect smoke detectors.

Where the application falls outside the conditions assumed for the prescriptive requirements of Section 17.7, the designer must consider the impact of those conditions on the operability and reliability of the detector. In evaluating the reasons why the conditions are not appropriate, the designer might identify an alternative design approach that solves the problem. Some authorities having jurisdiction establish additional requirements for specific types of occupancies that go above and beyond the requirements of Section 17.7. To protect extremely valuable assets, the designer might also choose a closer spacing in certain areas, such as in a data center or where the owner's fire protection goals demand a closer spacing of smoke detectors. In some cases, the situation might warrant the use of a more fully developed performance-based approach or the use of a different type of fire detection than smoke-sensing fire detection.

Finally, the common interpretation of 17.7.1.4 usually does not include special compartments, such as switchgear enclosures, laboratories, or wafer fabrication facilities. Although a particular design might use detectors in these and similar locations, the designer should carefully consider the impact of the intended environment on both detector response and stability.

17.7.1.5 Where smoke detectors are being installed to control the spread of smoke, they shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of 17.7.5.

Early in the second half of the 20th century, several fires in high-rise buildings demonstrated the difficulty of trying to evacuate all the occupants. Concurrently, smoke inhalation became well known to be the principal cause of death associated with fires. Designers developed a new strategy of protecting in place or using areas of refuge. Now, to protect occupants in place, the HVAC system or an engineered smoke control system automatically controls the flow of smoke. Designers typically employ smoke detectors to actuate such systems. As stated in 17.7.1.5, the use of smoke detectors for that purpose is covered in 17.7.5.

17.7.1.6 Smoke detectors shall be installed in all areas where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards or by other parts of this Code.

FAQ Where does *NFPA 72* require the installation of smoke detectors?

Paragraph 17.7.1.6 has been included to correlate with national and state adopted codes that reference this Code. *NFPA 72* does not stipulate where or in which occupancies detection must be installed. Rather, the Code establishes how detection must be designed and installed once an applicable law, code, or standard has established the requirement for detection in the occupancy in question.

17.7.1.7 The selection and placement of smoke detectors shall take into account both the performance characteristics of the detector and the areas into which the detectors are to be installed to prevent nuisance and unintentional alarms or improper operation after installation.

The logic used by the designer in the process of detector selection should be documented as part of the project file. How the design addresses the criteria outlined in A.17.7.1.8 and A.17.7.1.9 should also be documented. Paragraph 17.7.1.7 relates to the requirement in 17.7.1.1 for a statement of the objective being achieved by the system. If the system fails at some time in the future, the designer will have to show that a logical process was followed in selecting the type of detector and the detector locations.

17.7.1.8* Unless specifically designed and listed for the expected conditions, smoke detectors shall not be installed if any of the following ambient conditions exist:

(1) Temperature below 32°F (0°C)
(2) Temperature above 100°F (38°C)

(3) Relative humidity above 93 percent
(4) Air velocity greater than 300 ft/min (1.5 m/sec)

The temperature, humidity, and airflow criteria cited in 17.7.1.8 reflect the test criteria in the test standards used by the listing agency in the process of the listing evaluation. Different detection technologies are affected differently by these environmental extremes. Different makes and models within each group may be affected more or less than others. Apart from the generalities presented here, identifying these effects is beyond the scope of this handbook. However, the designer must recognize that some detector designs are inherently more forgiving than others.

The tests performed in the process of listing ascertain that a detector meets minimum performance criteria. Design features in specific devices that allow them to be effectively used in extreme environments can be beyond those considered in the listing evaluation. The manufacturer should be consulted if such an application is contemplated.

Environmental limits may require the designer to consider alternative detection methods. Although smoke detection may be preferable from the standpoint of the anticipated first evidence of a fire, heat- or radiant energy–sensing detection might be a better choice where the hazard area is one that undergoes too broad a range of environmental conditions to allow the use of smoke detection.

A.17.7.1.8 Product-listing standards include tests for temporary excursions beyond normal limits. In addition to temperature, humidity, and velocity variations, smoke detectors should operate reliably under such common environmental conditions as mechanical vibration, electrical interference, and other environmental influences. Tests for these conditions are also conducted by the testing laboratories in their listing program. In those cases in which environmental conditions approach the limits shown in Table A.17.7.1.8, the detector manufacturer's published instructions should be consulted for additional information and recommendations.

TABLE A.17.7.1.8 *Environmental Conditions that Influence Smoke Detector Response*

Detection Protection	*Air Velocity >300 ft/min (>91.44 m/min)*	*Altitude >3000 ft (>914.4 m)*	*Humidity >93% RH*	*Temperature <32°F >100°F (<0°C >37.8°C)*	*Color of Smoke*
Ion	X	X	X	X	O
Photo	O	O	X	X	X
Beam	O	O	X	X	O
Air sampling	O	O	X	X	O

X: Can affect detector response. O: Generally does not affect detector response.

17.7.1.9* The location of smoke detectors shall be based on an evaluation of potential ambient sources of smoke, moisture, dust, or fumes, and electrical or mechanical influences, to minimize nuisance alarms.

A.17.7.1.9 Smoke detectors can be affected by electrical and mechanical influences and by aerosols and particulate matter found in protected spaces. The location of detectors should be such that the influences of aerosols and particulate matter from sources such as those in Table A.17.7.1.9(a) are minimized. Similarly, the influences of electrical and mechanical factors shown in Table A.17.7.1.9(b) should be minimized. While it might not be possible to isolate environmental factors totally, an awareness of these factors during system layout and design favorably affects detector performance.

TABLE A.17.7.1.9(a) *Common Sources of Aerosols and Particulate Matter Moisture*

Moisture	Humid outside air Humidifiers Live steam Showers Slop sink Steam tables Water spray
Combustion products and fumes	Chemical fumes Cleaning fluids Cooking equipment Curing Cutting, welding, and brazing Dryers Exhaust hoods Fireplaces Machining Ovens Paint spray
Atmospheric contaminants	Corrosive atmospheres Dust or lint Excessive tobacco smoke Heat treating Linen and bedding handling Pneumatic transport Sawing, drilling, and grinding Textile and agricultural processing
Engine exhaust	Diesel trucks and locomotives Engines not vented to the outside Gasoline forklift trucks
Heating element with abnormal conditions	Dust accumulations Improper exhaust Incomplete combustion

TABLE A.17.7.1.9(b) *Sources of Electrical and Mechanical Influences on Smoke Detectors*

Electrical Noise and Transients	*Airflow*
Vibration or shock	Gusts
Radiation	Excessive velocity
Radio frequency	
Intense light	
Lightning	
Electrostatic discharge	
Power supply	

In applications where the factors listed in Table A.17.7.1.9(a) and Table A.17.7.1.9(b) cannot be sufficiently limited to allow reasonable stability and response times, alternative modes of fire detection should be considered.

17.7.1.10* The effect of stratification below the ceiling shall be taken into account. The guidelines in Annex B shall be permitted to be used.

A.17.7.1.10 Stratification of air in a room can hinder air containing smoke particles or gaseous combustion products from reaching ceiling-mounted smoke detectors or fire–gas detectors.

Stratification occurs when air containing smoke particles or gaseous combustion products is heated by smoldering or burning material and, becoming less dense than the surrounding cooler air, rises until it reaches a level at which there is no longer a difference in temperature between it and the surrounding air.

Stratification also can occur when evaporative coolers are used, because moisture introduced by these devices can condense on smoke, causing it to fall toward the floor.

Therefore, to ensure rapid response, it might be necessary to install smoke detectors on sidewalls or at locations below the ceiling.

In installations where detection of smoldering or small fires is desired and where the possibility of stratification exists, consideration should be given to mounting a portion of the detectors below the ceiling. In high-ceiling areas, projected beam–type or air sampling–type detectors at different levels also should be considered. *(See Figure A.17.7.1.10.)*

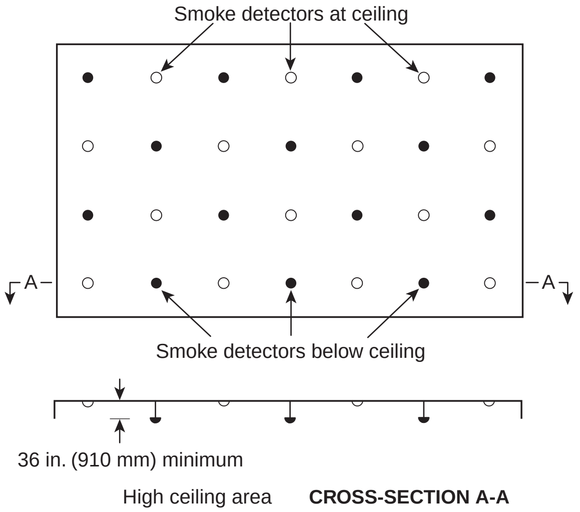


FIGURE A.17.7.1.10 *Smoke Detector Layout Accounting for Stratification.*

The requirements in 17.7.1.10 are not limited to certain conditions of room dimensions or temperature. The potential for stratification must be considered whenever and wherever smoke detectors are being employed.

When gaseous combustion products (smoke) form in a fire, they are hot and, consequently, begin expanding. These expanded gases are less dense than the surrounding air and are buoyed upward. According to the ideal gas law, as a gas expands, it loses heat. In addition, the rising plume gases mix with the surrounding air, entraining the air as the plume flows upward. The entrainment of ambient air also contributes to the cooling of the plume. As long as the plume remains hotter than the surrounding air, despite some cooling due to expansion and entrainment, it continues to expand and rise. This process results in a V-shaped fire plume that is small at the bottom and grows larger in diameter the higher it rises. Eventually, the gaseous combustion products in the fire plume decrease in temperature due to expansion and entrainment until they are no longer hotter than the surrounding air, and the plume loses buoyancy and spreads out in a layer. If that happens before the fire plume impinges on the ceiling, the layer of smoke will be below the ceiling-mounted smoke detectors and response will be delayed until the fire grows sufficiently large to drive the smoke up to the ceiling plane.

A ceiling jet is formed when the plume hits the ceiling with sufficient momentum. The radial flow of the ceiling jet from the plume centerline is the result of the residual momentum of the upward flowing plume gases. This momentum conveys smoke to the detector location. Without a ceiling jet, the smoke and heat from the fire will not move horizontally beneath the ceiling. Most of the spacing criteria for smoke and heat detectors are based on the assumption that a ceiling jet exists and that it is moving the smoke and heat horizontally in a layer immediately beneath the ceiling. Stratification affects the performance of the detection system because the smoke forms a layer too far below the ceiling-mounted smoke detectors.

FAQ What considerations can affect the height at which stratification occurs?

The height at which the stratification occurs depends on both the size of the fire and the ambient temperature and temperature gradient of the space. Stratification is most likely to occur when the fire is very small and the floor-to-ceiling temperature difference is relatively high. The calculation guidelines in Annex B show that very small flaming fires (<10 kW, which is less than a small wastebasket fire) have the ability to drive smoke to relatively high ceilings unless the temperature gradient between the floor and the ceiling becomes quite large. For example, a very small fire of 10 kW can reach a ceiling of 47 ft (14.3 m) assuming an 80°F (26.7°C) ceiling temperature and 72°F (22.2°C) at the floor. A larger wastebasket fire of around 100 kW would require a 100°F (37.8°C) temperature gradient over 25 ft (7.6 m) of plume rise to cause smoke to stratify at 25 ft (7.6 m) above the floor. Also, HVAC systems designed to form a layer of cool air near the floor while upper zones near the ceiling are not tempered by HVAC equipment can create similar conditions as naturally occurring stratification. This mechanically induced scenario can have the same or greater effects on the performance of a detection system as would result due to naturally occurring temperature gradients.

Where stratification can be expected, the location and spacing of smoke detectors must be adjusted. The design of a smoke detection system must address both the spectrum of ambient conditions and the relevant fire scenarios for the space. In areas of high ceilings, layering of detectors or combining detectors to address credible fire scenarios is often necessary. If a second "layer" of detectors is contemplated, remember that the spacing rules assume the existence of a ceiling jet to move smoke horizontally to the detector. A layer of smoke detectors suspended a number of feet (meters) from the ceiling does not have the benefit of a ceiling jet, and the conventional spacing rules may not be adequate. In the case of spot smoke detectors, more detectors may be necessary than would be practical. Consequently, beam detectors, air sampling detectors, or video image detectors may be better choices for stratified detection scenarios. Selecting a detector spacing equivalent to no more than 0.4 times the detector height above the floor could be used as justification for a second layer of spot detectors on the basis of plume divergence.

The objective of detecting the fire before it has achieved a high-energy output requires additional insight into the placement of detectors. The high-energy output flaming fire produces a fire plume that propels smoke and hot air upward. The larger the fire, the higher the plume extends and the greater the air velocity within the plume.

In the smoldering, low-energy-output fire often encountered in residential (e.g., homes, hotels, apartments), institutional (e.g., hospitals, nursing homes, schools), and commercial (e.g., offices, stores) occupancies, significant quantities of smoke may be produced before an energetic flaming fire plume develops. In the smoldering scenarios, smoke may lack the energy to rise up to ceiling-mounted smoke detectors where the ceilings are higher than normally encountered and, generally, the smoke is transported via diffusion processes rather than buoyancy driven processes, which results in longer times to smoke detector activation. It is difficult to address the smoldering situation where high ceilings are involved. If the situation warrants detection for high challenge smoldering scenarios, then technologies other than spot detection should be considered (e.g., air sampling, video image detection, and beam detection). The addition of smoke detectors at some distance below the ceiling generally does not eliminate the requirement for ceiling-mounted detectors.

17.7.1.11* Protection During Construction.

Many needless alarms are caused by smoke detectors installed too early in the construction process. Construction activities produce airborne dust that inevitably finds its way into detectors, contaminating them and making them prone to false alarms. History, however, shows that fires often occur during renovation and construction because these activities include numerous fire ignition sources. Often, smoke detection is required in areas under construction for that very reason. If smoke detection is required in the area under construction or renovation, 17.7.1.11 establishes the requirements for cleaning and sensitivity measurement or replacement.

Where the authority having jurisdiction requires early installation, detectors installed prior to the completion of final finish work must be cleaned and measured for their normal operating sensitivity. Those detectors found outside their design sensitivity range must be replaced.

A.17.7.1.11 Construction debris, dust (especially gypsum dust and the fines resulting from the sanding of drywall joint compounds), and aerosols can affect the sensitivity of smoke detectors and, in some instances, cause deleterious effects to the detector, thereby significantly reducing the expected life of the detector.

17.7.1.11.1 Where detectors are installed for signal initiation during construction, they shall be cleaned and verified to be operating in accordance with the listed sensitivity, or they shall be replaced prior to the final commissioning of the system.

17.7.1.11.2 Where detectors are installed but not operational during construction, they shall be protected from construction debris, dust, dirt, and damage in accordance with the manufacturer's recommendations and verified to be operating in accordance with the listed sensitivity, or they shall be replaced prior to the final commissioning of the system.

The requirement in 17.7.1.11.2 was introduced in the 2010 edition and should be considered as an alternative to the more restrictive provision in 17.7.1.11.3. If detectors are installed before completion of construction cleanup, they must be protected in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

Many smoke detectors are shipped with a thin plastic cover over the sensing portion of the detector. These covers are widely assumed to be suitable for protecting the detector from construction dust, dirt, and debris. In actuality, most of the "covers" supplied are merely for shipping and are not intended to be used in lieu of proper protection from construction debris.

In some cases, the authority having jurisdiction may allow the installation of protective covers. However, these covers cannot be relied on to keep the detector entirely free of contaminants. Therefore, sensitivity measurement and cleaning of the detectors after all construction trades have finished their work will probably still be necessary. If covers are used, the contractor must also have a means of verifying that they all have been removed when the construction trades have completed their work. If the authority having jurisdiction requires the covers to be removed at the end of each day, a good practice is to number the covers to ensure that all have been removed and then to replace them the next morning. Again, if the covers are removed during the construction process, it will be necessary to inspect the detectors closely, cleaning them when necessary, and testing them to ensure that their sensitivity is within the listed and marked sensitivity range. See Exhibit 17.27 for an example of a smoke detector protective cover.

EXHIBIT 17.27

Smoke Detector with Protective Plastic Cover. (Source: Hochiki America Corp., Buena Park, CA)

17.7.1.11.3 Where detection is not required during construction, detectors shall not be installed until after all other construction trades have completed cleanup.

Many needless alarms are caused by smoke detectors installed too early in the construction process. Construction activities produce airborne dust that inevitably finds its way into detectors, contaminating them and making them prone to false alarms. Unless detection is required while the area is under construction, experience has shown that the best practice is to not install smoke detectors until all construction cleanup is completed.

17.7.2* Sensitivity.

A.17.7.2 Throughout this Code, smoke detector sensitivity is referred to in terms of the percent obscuration required to alarm or produce a signal. Smoke detectors are tested using various smoke sources that have different characteristics (e.g., color, particle size, number of particles, particle shape). Unless otherwise specified, this Code, the manufacturers, and the listing agencies report and use the percent obscuration produced using a specific type of gray smoke. Actual detector response will vary when the characteristics of the smoke reaching the detector are different from the smoke used in testing and reporting detector sensitivity.

Listing agencies base the listings of smoke detectors on repeatable laboratory tests. These tests do not necessarily correlate to actual fires in actual applications. Consequently, the listing agencies do not provide a listed spacing for smoke detectors as they do for heat detectors. With the 2010 edition of *NFPA 72*, the technical committee adopted a prescriptive spacing for smoke detectors (see 17.7.3.2.3.1).

The tests conducted in the course of a listing investigation by the organization providing the listing include a sensitivity measurement in a smoke box using a cotton lamp wick under controlled airflow to produce a light gray smoke with a controlled rate of optical density increase per unit of time. The manufacturer marks the detector with its sensitivity, based on the response obtained in the smoke box test as outlined in the listing investigation standard used. However, the sensitivity measurements obtained from the test are relevant only in the context of the smoke box and smoke used. The measurements are not intended to predict performance in any other context. Consequently, a marking of a nominal smoke obscuration of 0.6 percent to 4.0 percent obscuration per foot does not necessarily mean that an installed detector will respond to a real fire at that level of optical obscuration. The combustibles in a real fire environment bear little resemblance to the dry cotton lamp wicking used in smoke box tests. Consequently, the level of optical obscuration at which an alarm signal is generated can be very different in a real compartment fire from that obtained in a smoke box. Therefore, a designer should not base a design on the marked sensitivity.

Full-scale room fire tests are also conducted by the listing organization during the listing evaluation of a smoke detector. In accordance with UL 268, smoke detectors are required to render an alarm when subjected to fires that ultimately produce smoke obscurations of 37 percent per foot for the paper fire, 17 percent per foot for the wood fire, 21 percent per foot for the heptane/toluene fire, and 10 percent per foot for a smoldering wood fire. These pass/fail tests also do not provide a meaningful basis for predicting smoke detector performance.

17.7.2.1* Smoke detectors shall be marked with their nominal production sensitivity and tolerance (percent per foot obscuration), as required by the listing.

A.17.7.2.1 The production sensitivity range should only be used as a benchmark for testing and should not be used as the sole basis for selection of devices. The percent per foot sensitivity marked on the smoke detector is derived from testing in a smoke chamber, usually referred to as the ANSI/UL 268 Smoke Box. The measurements derived from this measurement apparatus are only valid in the context of the apparatus and cannot be used outside the context of the smoke box. The polychromatic light source employed in the smoke box results in measurements that are highly dependent upon smoke color and does not account for variations in light transmission as a function of wavelength that occurs as fuels and fire ventilation rates change or as smoke ages. Furthermore, the measurement apparatus uses a measurement of light obscuration by smoke to infer a measure of light reflectance when there is no correlation between these two optical characteristics.

FAQ To what does percent per foot obscuration relate?

As the mission of most smoke detection systems is the protection of human life, the response of a smoke detector is usually defined in human terms. The percent per foot obscuration method of measuring sensitivity relates to a person's ability to see well enough to escape from a fire. Smoke is composed of both visible and invisible gases and particulate matter. Although the portion of the smoke that is invisible has little immediate impact on an individual's ability to escape, it can constitute the majority of the smoke mass under some fire conditions.

Refer to the commentary following A.17.7.2 for an explanation of how the sensitivity marked on a smoke detector is obtained and what it means with respect to performance in actual fires.

The marking of the detector with its sensitivity does allow for the testing of the unit and comparison of its present sensitivity to its initial nominal production sensitivity.

17.7.2.2 Smoke detectors that have provision for field adjustment of sensitivity shall have an adjustment range of not less than 0.6 percent per foot obscuration.

The adjustment of detector sensitivity over a range of less than 0.6 percent per foot has little, if any, practical benefit. Even where smoke detectors are used for property protection (as in data centers), the difference in response represented by an adjustment range of less than 0.6 percent per foot is minor. This consideration is reflected in the requirement of 17.7.2.2.

17.7.2.3 If the means of adjustment of sensitivity is on the detector, a method shall be provided to restore the detector to its factory calibration.

Some smoke detectors have a feature that allows the adjustment of detector sensitivity to accommodate the immediate ambient conditions in the area of the detector. If maintenance personnel use the adjustment feature between cleaning intervals to maintain stability, they should restore the detector to its original design sensitivity after it has been cleaned. Chapter 14 covers the maintenance of smoke detectors.

17.7.2.4 Detectors that have provision for program-controlled adjustment of sensitivity shall be permitted to be marked with their programmable sensitivity range only.

Most addressable/analog smoke detectors have provisions for detector sensitivity adjustment by means of the system software. These smoke detectors send a voltage or current value back to the control unit that is proportional to the concentration of smoke sensed by the detector. In such a case, the detector's trip point is often a voltage or current level stored in the control unit memory. Consequently, the adjustment of the detector's activation point is actually the adjustment of the activation value stored in memory for that detector. When a provision for the adjustment of the detector sensitivity is at the control unit, there must be a means to restore the detector to its factory sensitivity. The manufacturer must mark the detector to show the sensitivity range. If maintenance personnel use the adjustment feature between cleaning intervals to maintain stability, they should restore the detector to its original design sensitivity after the detector has been cleaned. Chapter 14 covers the maintenance of smoke detectors.

17.7.3 Location and Spacing.

As with heat detectors, smoke detectors rely primarily on plume and ceiling jet flows to transport the smoke from a fire to the detector. Note the similarity in the location criteria between smoke detectors and heat detectors.

All the criteria for a given type of detector are organized in a single section of the Code. All the spot-type detector criteria are collected in 17.7.3.2 through 17.7.3.5. The criteria for air sampling–type detectors are collected in 17.7.3.6, and the criteria for projected beam–type detectors are collected in 17.7.3.7. Refer to Exhibits 3.19, 17.31 through 17.34, and 3.16 and 3.17, respectively, for examples of these three different types of smoke-sensing fire detectors.

17.7.3.1* General.

A.17.7.3.1 Except in the case of smoldering, low-energy fires, all smoke detectors, regardless of the type of technology, usually rely on the plume and ceiling jet produced by the fire to transport the smoke upward and across the ceiling to the detector, sampling port, or projected sensing light beam. Once sufficient concentration is attained at the detector, sampling port, or sensing light beam location and, in the case of spot-type detectors, sufficient flow velocity is attained to overcome the flow resistance into the sensing chamber, the detector responds with an alarm signal. Detectors are usually mounted at the ceiling plane to take advantage of the flow provided by the plume and the ceiling jet. A hot, energetic fire produces large plume velocities and temperatures and hot, fast ceiling jets. This minimizes the time it takes for the smoke to travel to the detector. A smoldering fire produces little, if any, plume and no appreciable ceiling jet. Far more time elapses between ignition and detection under this circumstance.

• **17.7.3.1.1** The location and spacing of smoke detectors shall be based upon the anticipated smoke flows due to the plume and ceiling jet produced by the anticipated fire, as well as any pre-existing ambient airflows that could exist in the protected compartment.

When determining the location and spacing of smoke detectors, the designer must consider how smoke is likely to flow. The likely flow of smoke depends on the ambient conditions as well as the fire. In some cases, the ambient airflow can be deduced by inspection. In other cases, the use of a velometer or an anemometer can be helpful in determining the direction and the speed of ambient air currents that constitute the dominant ambient air movement in the compartment or space. The flow of the plume and the ceiling jet depends on the fuel load, the ambient conditions, and the location of the fire within the space. Usually, the behavior of the fire plume cannot be determined by direct measurements. Computational fluid dynamics (CFD) programs can be used to model airflows if necessary.

Under smoldering, low-energy-output fire conditions, the fire does not achieve an energy output (heat release rate) sufficient to serve as the primary source of propulsion for the smoke. Existing air currents through the hazard area dominate the flow of smoke with little, if any, contribution from the fire. The prediction of flow is far more dependent on site-specific airflow variables, meaning that prediction of detection becomes much more difficult.

The Code requires that the designer consciously analyze the space as part of the design process even when using a prescriptive design. The prudent designer will document this analysis for future reference. If the air movement patterns are changed in the protected space after the system has been installed, the relocation of smoke detectors might be advisable.

17.7.3.1.2 The design shall account for the contribution of the following factors in predicting detector response to the anticipated fires to which the system is intended to respond:

(1) Ceiling shape and surface
(2) Ceiling height
(3) Configuration of contents in the protected area
(4) Combustion characteristics and probable equivalence ratio of the anticipated fires involving the fuel loads within the protected area
(5) Compartment ventilation
(6) Ambient temperature, pressure, altitude, humidity, and atmosphere

The general criteria listed in 17.7.3.1.2 are far less specific than those established for heat detectors. The reasoning can be understood by a review of the importance of fire plume dynamics in the location and spacing of heat detectors versus smoke detectors.

Heat detectors depend on the fire plume and ceiling jet to carry hot gaseous combustion products and entrained air to the detector where heat can flow from the ceiling jet into the detector, resulting in an alarm. Although not explicitly stated in the Code, heat detectors are generally used where response is needed once the fire has achieved an energy output of at least 1.2 MW, which is the size fire used in determining the listed spacing for a heat detector. This size fire liberates a significant quantity of energy, which serves as the engine that creates its own air currents. The energy from the fire propels the hot air and smoke mixture across the ceiling; thus, the fire is the dominant air mover in the compartment.

FAQ What is the dominant factor in predicting smoke flow under smoldering, low-energy-output fire conditions?

Under smoldering, low-energy-output fire conditions, the fire does not yet represent an energy output (heat release rate) sufficient to serve as the primary source of propulsion for the smoke. Existing air currents through the hazard area dominate the flow of smoke with little, if any, contribution from the fire. The prediction of flow is far more dependent on site-specific airflow variables, meaning that prediction of detection becomes much more difficult.

Modeling the flow of the fire plume and ceiling jet is possible with computer programs such as Fire Dynamics Simulator (FDS) that apply the rules of fluid flow physics and thermodynamics to the plume from a fire. If the plume and ceiling jet correlations are used to predict the response of smoke detectors, it can be seen that smoke detectors will provide response significantly before heat detectors will provide response. Because the space-specific variables are dominant factors in predicting plume behavior, the location and spacing of smoke detectors, if explicit modeling is not used, must be determined subject to the judgment of the designer on how the site-specific environmental features enumerated in 17.7.3.1.2 will affect the flow of smoke from early-stage, low-energy-output fires.

17.7.3.1.3 If the intent is to protect against a specific hazard, the detector(s) shall be permitted to be installed closer to the hazard in a position where the detector can intercept the smoke.

Usually, the design process begins by locating detectors so that they will provide general area protection. Additional detectors are added or positions adjusted to take into account known or anticipated ignition sources and known air currents. Paragraph 17.7.3.1.3 is generally cited when detectors are placed closer to hazards like switchgear enclosures, power supplies, and similar assets with known histories of ignition.

17.7.3.2* Spot-Type Smoke Detectors.

This section on spot-type smoke detectors has been substantially revised based on research conducted under the auspices of the Fire Protection Research Foundation that specifically addressed questions regarding smoke detector spacing on ceilings with beams and bays.

A.17.7.3.2 In high-ceiling areas, such as atriums, where spot-type smoke detectors are not accessible for periodic maintenance and testing, projected beam–type or air sampling–type detectors should be considered where access can be provided.

The importance of accessibility and the maintenance of a smoke detection system cannot be overemphasized. The designer must exercise judgment and discretion to provide a system that can be maintained pursuant to the criteria established in Chapter 14. Paragraph A.17.7.3.2 clarifies 17.4.4, which requires that all initiating devices, including smoke detectors, be installed in such a manner that they can be effectively maintained.

Atria and other areas with exceptionally high ceilings (such as auditoriums, gymnasiums, exhibit halls, storage facilities, and some manufacturing facilities) represent very difficult situations for the use of spot-type smoke detection. Stratification, maintenance concerns, accessibility for testing, and smoke dissipation may warrant the use of other types of detection. Paragraph A.17.7.3.2 advises the designer to consider either air sampling or linear projected beam–type photoelectric light obscuration smoke detection as alternatives. However, note that the air-sampling ports of an air sampling–type detector are treated as individual spot-type detectors. Air sampling–type detectors rely on the plume and ceiling jet to carry smoke to the sampling ports. Consequently, where stratification is a concern, this type of detection (air-sampling detectors) might not represent an advantage over traditional spot-type detectors. Furthermore, where stratification is a concern, the beams of projected-beam smoke detection must be carefully located to ensure that the design fire will be detected. Video image smoke detection might also be a potential solution. Annex B provides additional information on how to predict the elevation of a stratification plane under known conditions.

17.7.3.2.1* Spot-type smoke detectors shall be located on the ceiling or, if on a sidewall, between the ceiling and 12 in. (300 mm) down from the ceiling to the top of the detector.

A.17.7.3.2.1 Refer to Figure A.17.7.3.2.1 for an example of proper mounting for detectors. Sidewall detectors mounted closer to the ceiling will respond faster.

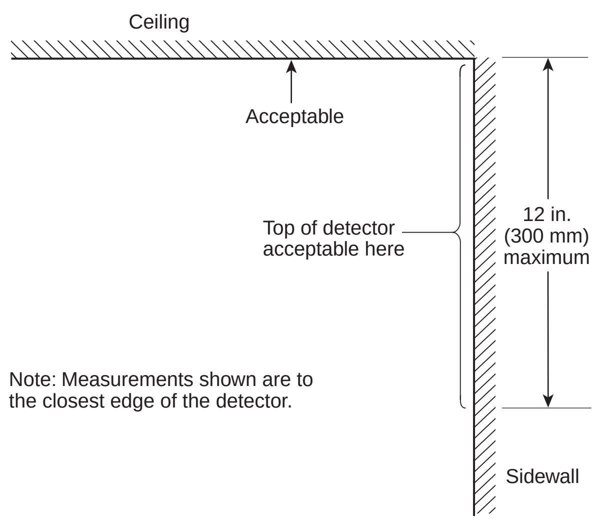


FIGURE A.17.7.3.2.1 *Example of Proper Mounting of Smoke Detectors.*

In earlier editions of the Code, ceiling-mounted smoke detectors were not permitted within 4 in. (100 mm) of a sidewall, and sidewall-mounted smoke detectors were not permitted within 4 in. (100 mm) of the ceiling. The concern was that smoke flow would be compromised in a "dead-air space" in the corner where the ceiling and the wall meet.

Recent experimentation and CFD investigations have challenged this conventional wisdom. CFD simulations have shown smoke flowing into such corners for a range of room geometries and ceiling heights. Based upon this more recent test data, the technical committee elected to drop the prohibition from installing smoke detectors in the corner where the ceiling and a wall meet. [Note that the 4 in. (100 mm) prohibition still applies to heat-sensing fire detectors. See 17.6.3.1.3.1.]

The location requirement in 17.7.3.2.1 is valid for both the low-energy incipient fire and a high-energy output fire that is immediately life threatening. Either the normally existing air currents or the fire plume and ceiling jet from the larger fire convey smoke to ceiling-mounted detectors. While the ceiling-wall corner is permitted, it yet may not be the most desirable location. For the detectors to be able to respond, they must be installed in the working air volume of the compartment. A prudent designer should avoid locating detectors in tight corner spaces that may preclude sufficient air flow and circulation of smoke into the detector entry points.

17.7.3.2.2* To minimize dust contamination, smoke detectors, where installed under raised floors, shall be mounted only in an orientation for which they have been listed.

A.17.7.3.2.2 Figure A.17.7.3.2.2 illustrates underfloor mounting installations.

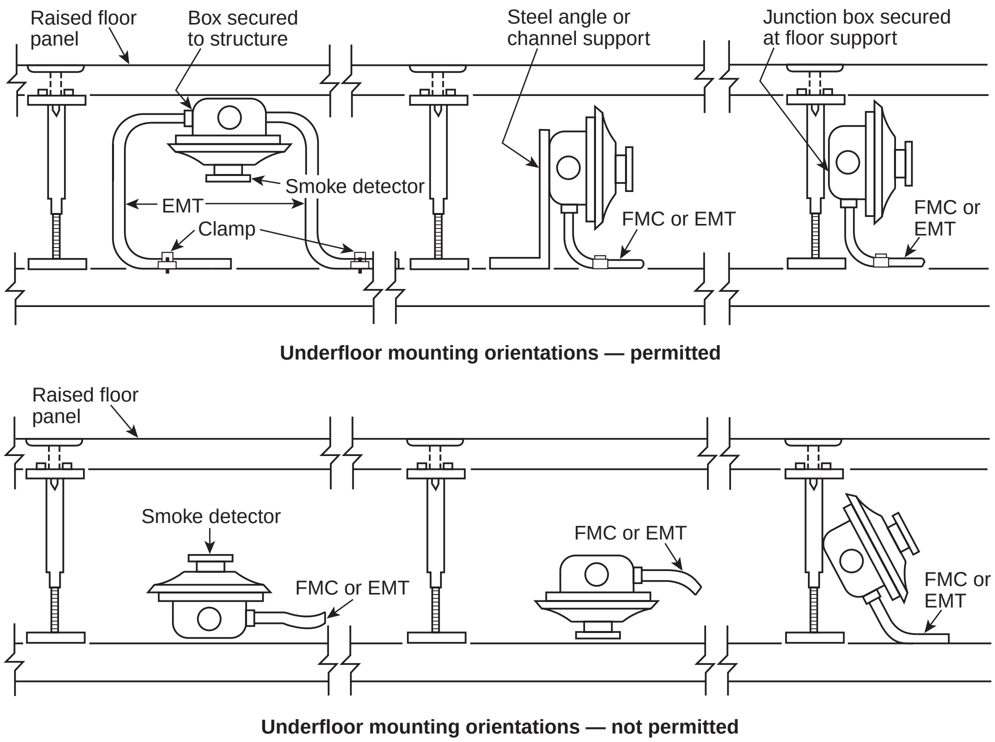


FIGURE A.17.7.3.2.2 Mounting Installations Permitted (top) and Not Permitted (bottom).

The fast-moving air in a data center under-floor space has sufficient energy to suspend dust. As that air enters the detector, it slows down and the suspended dust settles in the detector. The accumulation of dust within a smoke detector has an effect similar to that of smoke. In an ionization smoke detector, the dust impedes the flow of current within the chamber. In a spot-type photoelectric detector, the dust increases the reflectance within the chamber. Thus, dust causes each type of detector to become more sensitive, increasing the likelihood of unwarranted alarms. The permitted orientations shown in Figure A.17.7.3.2.2 (top) minimize the possibility of dust falling into the detector from the floor and also minimize the effect of air-conveyed dust on the detector.

Other concerns reinforce the benefits of positioning detectors as shown in Figure A.17.7.3.2.2 (top). The detector is placed in the upper half of the under-floor volume. Because the purpose of the under-floor space is to allow for the routing of cables between machines, the floor is usually covered with cable. This cable has the same effect on the flow of air in the under-floor volume that joists have on airflow in a room. The cables create turbulence and force the flow to be concentrated in the upper half of the under-floor volume. Placing the detector in the upper half of the under-floor volume improves the system's ability to respond to an early-stage fire.

Another reason for positioning detectors as shown in Figure A.17.7.3.2.2 (top) is that detectors mounted in the upper half of the under-floor volume are far less likely to be damaged as new cables are installed or old cables are rerouted through the under-floor space. Where water-cooled computers are in use, the detectors are less likely to become wet if the computer cooling system leaks. Also, when air is not flowing, the detectors will be in the best orientation for detection. Finally, Figure A.17.7.3.2.2 (top) shows the detectors in the orientation for which they have been tested and listed.

17.7.3.2.3 On smooth ceilings, spacing for spot-type smoke detectors shall be in accordance with 17.7.3.2.3.1 through 17.7.3.2.3.4.

17.7.3.2.3.1* In the absence of specific performance-based design criteria, one of the following requirements shall apply:

(1) The distance between smoke detectors shall not exceed a nominal spacing of 30 ft (9.1 m) and there shall be detectors within a distance of one-half the nominal spacing, measured at right angles from all walls or partitions extending upward to within the top 15 percent of the ceiling height.
(2)* All points on the ceiling shall have a detector within a distance equal to or less than 0.7 times the nominal 30 ft (9.1 m) spacing (0.7*S*).

A.17.7.3.2.3.1 The 30 ft (9.1 m) spacing is a guide for prescriptive designs. The use of such a spacing is based upon customary practice in the fire alarm community.

Where there are explicit performance objectives for the response of the smoke detection system, the performance-based design methods outlined in Annex B should be used.

For the purposes of this section, "nominal 30 ft (9.1 m)" should be determined to be 30 ft (9.1 m) ±5 percent [±18 in. (460 mm)].

Paragraph 17.7.3.2.3.1 was changed beginning with the 2010 edition of the Code. In earlier editions, the 30 ft (9.1 m) spacing criterion was stipulated as a guideline and not a specific prescribed spacing dimension. It now is an explicit requirement. However, it must be noted that 17.7.1.3 effectively allows designers to use any other spacing they deem appropriate as a performance-based alternative.

In the 2013 edition of the Code, 17.7.3.2.3.1 further clarifies the spacing requirements for spot-smoke detectors relative to walls, partitions, and any point on the ceiling. These provisions for spot-type smoke detectors are now explicitly consistent with those applied to spot-type heat detectors.

The concept of detector spacing was developed in the context of heat detectors, where the testing laboratories have test standards that compare the response of a given make and model of heat detector with that of a fire suppression sprinkler head. [See Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(c).] The results of the test establish a listed spacing for the detector under test. Since the fire in the listing fire tests is located in the center of a square array of detectors, the distance between the fire and the detectors is equivalent to 0.707 times the spacing between detectors.

Consequently, one can think of the detector as covering a circular area that encompasses the square array. This concept, called the *circle of coverage*, is shown in Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(d).

If the detector is capable of covering any point within the circle of coverage, then detectors can be placed in rectilinear arrays so long as the rectangular area assigned to each detector falls within that same circle of coverage. This arrangement is shown in Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(g). Consequently, a detector spacing of 30 ft (9.1 m) does not necessarily mean that the space between adjacent detectors cannot be greater than 30 ft (9.1 m). As shown in Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(g), if a detector is assigned a coverage area of 10 ft (3.1 m) by 41 ft (12.5 m), permitted under a 30 ft (9.1 m) "spacing," and two such rectangular areas are stacked end-to-end, such as might be encountered in a corridor, there will be a distance of 42 ft (12.8 m) between adjacent detectors. The distance of 42 ft (12.8 m) between adjacent detectors in a corridor is consistent with the 30 ft (9.1 m) "spacing" for the detectors. This arrangement makes intuitive sense when the effect that walls have on channeling the ceiling jet produced by a fire is considered.

FAQ What is the reason for the 30 ft (9.1 m) "spacing" requirement for spot-type smoke detectors?

In the listing investigations performed on smoke detectors, no full-scale fire test establishes a listed spacing for smoke detectors. One reason is because a sufficiently explicit response criterion against which a smoke detector can be measured has not been established. However, experience has shown that installing smoke detectors using a nominal 30 ft (9.1 m) spacing criterion works — it achieves the necessary life safety objectives. Where the owner and other relevant stakeholders have objectives other than life safety or are applying a performance-based design, a different spacing criterion might be appropriate. That criterion could be developed using the performance-based methods outlined in Annex B or other acceptable methods.

Finally, it is important to keep in mind that the technical committee does *not* intend for enforcement authorities to measure smoke detector–to–smoke detector spacings with critical precision. The nominal plus or minus 5 percent criterion set forth in A.17.7.3.2.3.1 is intended to provide some latitude in enforcement. The development of a fire and the extension of smoke through a real space are highly variable. A difference in smoke detector spacing of as much as 2 or 3 ft (0.61 to 0.91 m) will have no material effect on the ultimate performance of the system.

A.17.7.3.2.3.1(2) This is useful in calculating locations in corridors or irregular areas *[see 17.6.3.1.1 and Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(h)]*. For irregularly shaped areas, the spacing between detectors can be greater than the selected spacing, provided the maximum spacing from a detector to the farthest point of a sidewall or corner within its zone of protection is not greater than 0.7 times the selected spacing (0.7*S*).

The concepts behind the spacing of smoke detectors follow directly from the concepts developed for heat detectors. Paragraph A.17.6.3.1.1 develops the concepts that enable a designer to determine the area that will be covered by a detector. That area can vary in shape as long as the distance from the detector to the farthest point to be covered by the detector does not exceed 0.7 times the selected spacing. See Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(a) through Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(h) for a graphical representation of these mathematical concepts.

17.7.3.2.3.2 In all cases, the manufacturer's published instructions shall be followed.

When a manufacturer, through its own testing and research program, publishes a specific spacing recommendation that is different from the 30 ft (9.1 m) spacing, that spacing recommendation becomes an enforceable part of this Code.

17.7.3.2.3.3 Other spacing shall be permitted to be used depending on ceiling height, different conditions, or response requirements.

In the prescriptive design environment, a spacing other than 30 ft (9.1 m) can be used provided the justification for doing so is based on the fire dynamics, environment, compartment dimensions, and response objectives. The criteria in 17.7.3.2.3.3 imply, but do not explicitly require, a formal design process such as that required by 17.7.1.3. The designer should document the basis for selecting a spacing other than 30 ft (9.1 m), and that document should become a permanent part of the project file. Finally, the spacing selected will be subject to review and approval by the relevant authority having jurisdiction.

17.7.3.2.3.4 For the detection of flaming fires, the guidelines in Annex B shall be permitted to be used.

Currently, no computational models are designed to develop predictions of smoke flow for nonflaming fires. Where the design objective is the detection of a smoldering fire, the designer should model ambient compartment air currents and the power commitment to them to determine to what extent they will dominate the flow of smoke.

Two analytical methods are provided in Annex B. Because these methods rely on plume and ceiling jet dynamics, their use must be limited to scenarios involving flaming fires that produce a buoyant plume. For smoldering fire scenarios, other methods must be used until open flaming commences. Then Annex B methods can be used.

Several available computer models (including FPETool, FastLite, and Hazard 1) predict smoke detector activation to the flaming fire scenario. However, it must be noted that these computer models use a temperature rise model, not optical density or mass density of smoke, to predict the activation of smoke detectors. Their credibility is limited by the validity of the temperature correlation plugged into the model for smoke detector response.

In this regard, the Fire Detection Institute sponsored a research paper entitled *Fire Detection Modeling, State of the Art*, by Robert P. Schifiliti and William E. Pucci. This paper analyzes the various ways the computer fire models predict smoke detector operation and points out the advantages and disadvantages of each method [Schifiliti and Pucci, 1998].

More recently, Fire Dynamics Simulator, a computational fluid dynamics model, has become popular for modeling the flow of smoke and fire plumes in rooms and buildings. However, this computer model is not simple to operate and requires considerable skill to generate reliable simulations. FDS tracks mass, velocity, and temperature. Users of the FDS model must, again, set numerical values for these parameters, which are then used to infer smoke detector activation.

• **17.7.3.2.4*** For solid joist and beam construction, spacing for spot-type smoke detectors shall be in accordance with 17.7.3.2.4.1 through 17.7.3.2.4.6.

The paragraphs in 17.7.3.2.4 were completely rewritten for the 2010 edition of the Code. The technical committee considered research from a number of different sources, including Schirmer Engineering, Hughes Associates, and Combustion Science and Engineering. The technical committee selected bounding condition design parameters that should provide detector response at roughly the same time that would be attained were the beams and bays not present.

A.17.7.3.2.4 Detectors are placed at reduced spacings at right angles to joists or beams in an attempt to ensure that detection time is equivalent to that which would be experienced on a flat ceiling. It takes longer for the combustion products (smoke or heat) to travel at right angles to beams or joists because of the phenomenon wherein a plume from a relatively hot fire with significant thermal lift tends to fill the pocket between each beam or joist before moving to the next beam or joist.

Though it is true that this phenomenon might not be significant in a small smoldering fire where there is only enough thermal lift to cause stratification at the bottom of the joists, reduced spacing is still recommended to ensure that detection time is equivalent to that which would exist on a flat ceiling, even in the case of a hotter type of fire.

17.7.3.2.4.1 Solid joists shall be considered equivalent to beams for smoke detector spacing guidelines.

When the rules for spacing of spot-type smoke detectors in 17.7.3.2.4 are applied, solid joists and solid beams are treated the same. At the fire sizes normally associated with the response of a smoke detection system, the ceiling jet velocities are relatively low and produce less turbulence at the beam and joist bottoms. Consequently, the effects of beams and joists on the ceiling jet flow are expected to be essentially the same.

17.7.3.2.4.2 For level ceilings, the following shall apply:

(1) For ceilings with beam depths of less than 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), smooth ceiling spacing shall be permitted. Spot-type smoke detectors shall be permitted to be located on ceilings or on the bottom of beams.

Since the thickness of the ceiling jet is generally taken to be equal to the upper 10 percent of the floor-to-ceiling height, beams and joists extending down a depth of less than this thickness are not expected to have a significant effect on the response time of the smoke detector, especially in view of the fact that the farthest a detector should be from the fire is 0.7 times the 30 ft (9.1 m) spacing. Consequently, the Code permits the designer to use smooth ceiling spacing where the beams and joists extend less than 10 percent of the floor-to-ceiling height down from the ceiling surface regardless of the beam spacing. Detectors can be located on either the ceiling or the bottom of the beam. Also see 17.7.3.2.4.6 where applicable. Refer to Exhibit 17.28.

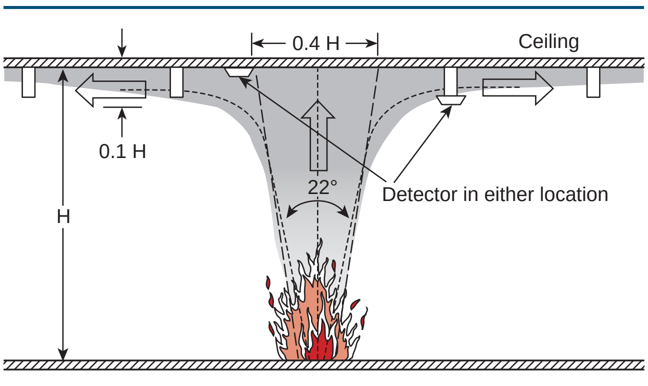


EXHIBIT 17.28
Smoke Detector Spacing with Beams Less Than 0.1H. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)

(2) For ceilings with beam depths equal to or greater than 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), the following shall apply:
   (a) Where beam spacing is equal to or greater than 40 percent of the ceiling height (0.4 *H*), spot-type detectors shall be located on the ceiling in each beam pocket.
   (b) Where beam spacing is less than 40 percent of the ceiling height (0.4 *H*), the following shall be permitted for spot detectors:

i. Smooth ceiling spacing in the direction parallel to the beams and at one-half smooth ceiling spacing in the direction perpendicular to the beams
ii. Location of detectors either on the ceiling or on the bottom of the beams

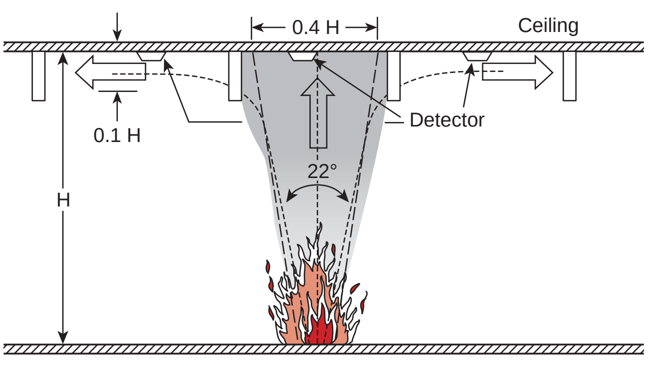
When the beams extend down from a level ceiling more than 10 percent of the floor-to-ceiling height, they are expected to obstruct the ceiling jet flow. The obstruction of the ceiling jet delays the arrival of the smoke at the detector location. Furthermore, the speed with which smoke enters the sensing chamber of the detector is controlled by the speed of the ceiling jet past the detector. When ceiling jet flow is obstructed, it flows more slowly, and might increase the smoke entry time once it arrives at the detector location.

FAQ What spacing should be used when beam spacing is greater than 40 percent of the floor-to-ceiling height (0.4*H*)?

Since the concept that the smoke plume from the fire will diverge at a nominal 22 degrees (see Exhibit 17.25) is generally accepted, the plume will cover an area on the ceiling equal to 40 percent of the floor-to-ceiling height (0.4*H*). When the beam spacing exceeds 40 percent of the floor-to-ceiling height, the entire plume can be surrounded by beams. See Exhibit 17.29. If a smoke detector is not located in the bay created by the beams, the entire bay must fill with smoke before there is fill-and-spill propagation to an adjacent bay where a smoke detector might be located. This phenomenon can result in a delayed response. In the case where the beams are *both* equal to or more than 10 percent of the floor-to-ceiling height in depth *and* spaced equal to or more than 40 percent of the floor-to-ceiling height, a detector must be installed in each beam pocket.

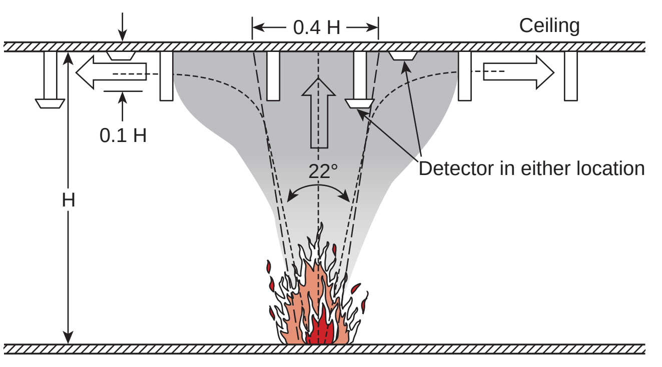
Where the beams are greater than 10 percent of the floor-to-ceiling height and are spaced less than 40 percent of the floor-to-ceiling height, the plume will fill more than one bay regardless of where the plume is located relative to the beams. The presence of the beams will retard the flow of the ceiling jet in the direction perpendicular to the beams and channel the flow in the direction parallel to the beams. See Exhibit 17.30.

EXHIBIT 17.29



Smoke Detector Spacing with Beam Depths Greater Than 0.1H and Spaced More Than 0.4H. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)

EXHIBIT 17.30



Smoke Detector Spacing with Beam Depths Greater Than 0.1H and Spaced Less Than 0.4H. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)

(3)* For beam pockets formed by intersecting beams, including waffle or pan-type ceilings, the following shall apply:
(a) For beam depths less than 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), spacing shall be in accordance with 17.7.3.2.4.2(1).

(b) For beam depths greater than or equal to 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), spacing shall be in accordance with 17.7.3.2.4.2(2).

(4)* For corridors 15 ft (4.6 m) in width or less having ceiling beams or solid joists perpendicular to the corridor length, the following shall apply:

(a) Smooth ceiling spacing shall be permitted.

(b) Location of spot-type smoke detectors on ceilings, sidewalls, or the bottom of beams or solid joists

(5) For rooms of 900 ft^2 (84 m^2) or less, the following shall be permitted:

(a) Use of smooth ceiling spacing

(b) Location of spot-type smoke detectors on ceilings or on the bottom of beams

Paragraph 17.7.3.2.4.2(5) was added in the 2010 edition of the Code to address small mechanical rooms with unfinished ceilings that might have deep beams yet constitute a modest fire risk. The technical committee did not intend that this section be applied to 5 ft (1.5 m) wide passageways 180 ft (54.9 m) in length, 10 ft (3.1 m) wide corridors 90 ft (27.4 m) in length, or other compartments where the fire hazard and risk are nominally equivalent to the rest of the normally occupied portion of the building.

Where smoke detectors are installed in a room of only 900 ft^2 (84 m^2), the small floor constrains the ceiling jet such that even when ceiling beams are present, the fire can be detected sufficiently early to achieve the objective. Where other objectives demand more rapid response, performance-based design methods should be employed.

A.17.7.3.2.4.2(3) The geometry and reservoir effect is a significant factor that contributes to the development of velocity, temperature, and smoke obscuration conditions at smoke detectors located on the ceiling in beam pocket areas or at the bottom of beams as smoke collected in the reservoir volume spills into adjacent pockets. The waffle- or pan-type ceiling created by beams or solid joists, although retarding the initial flow of smoke, results in increased optical density, temperature rise, and gas velocities comparable to unconfined smooth ceilings.

For waffle- or pan-type ceilings with beams or solid joists, an alternative smoke detector grid arrangement (such as a shifted grid), with detectors located to take advantage of the channeling effect due to the reservoirs created by the beam pockets, will improve detector response and might allow greater spacing. See Figure A.17.7.3.2.4.2(3)(a) and Figure A.17.7.3.2.4.2(3)(b) for an example of shifted grids. The alternative smoke detector grid

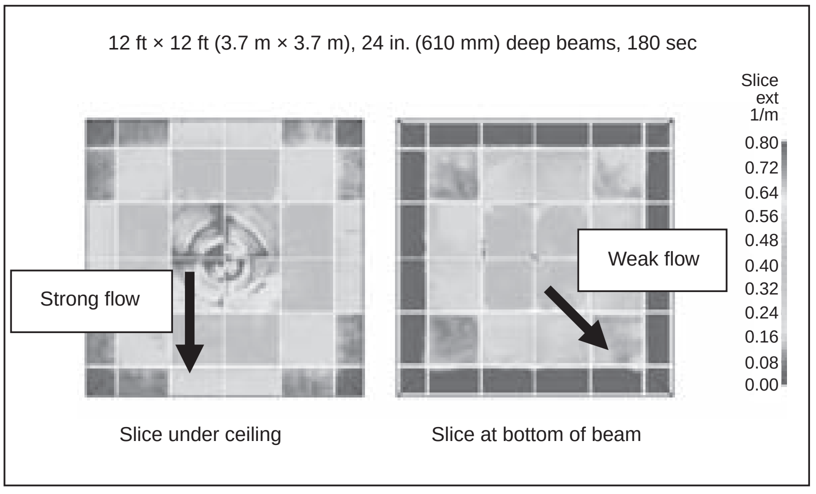


FIGURE A.17.7.3.2.4.2(3)(a) *Reservoir and Channeling Effect of Deep Beams.*

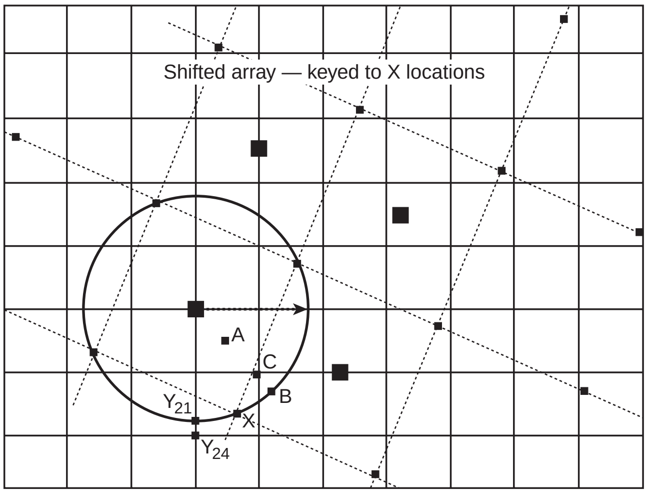


FIGURE A.17.7.3.2.4.2(3)(b) *Shifted Smoke Detection Grid to Optimize Detection for Deep Beam Effects.*

arrangement and spacing should be justified by an engineering analysis comparing the alternative smoke detector grid arrangement with the performance of smoke detectors on a level ceiling of equal height using 30 ft (9.1 m) smoke detector spacing.

Figure A.17.7.3.2.4.2(3)(a) illustrates the reservoir and channeling effect that results from the deep beam configuration. The strongest gas flows occur in a direction perpendicular to the beam opposite the fire location. The weaker flow occurs in a directional 45 degrees off the beam grid; however, the reservoir effect accounts for higher concentrations of smoke eventually flowing from the strong area reservoirs into the weak area reservoirs.

Figure A.17.7.3.2.4.2(3)(b) is a generic example illustrating how a smoke detection grid using 30 ft (9.1 m) spacing can be shifted to take advantage of the channeling and reservoir effect to optimize detection response. In the circle, the fire is split into four beam bays that must fill with smoke before appreciable flows occur into the next adjoining eight beam bays. This represents the worst case scenario for smoke to reach the detectors on the circle. The three other fire locations shown require the fire to initially fill only one or two bays before spilling to adjacent bays.

Recent research conducted under the auspices of the Fire Protection Research Foundation using Fire Dynamics Simulator (FDS) initially suggested that the relatively small volume of 12 ft long by 12 ft wide by 2 ft deep (3.7 m by 3.7 m by 0.6 m) bays present in waffle- or pan-type ceilings did not adversely affect system response. However, further study indicated that the revisions in the 2007 edition of the Code were not sufficiently conservative to establish design criteria that would be valid in all cases. Subsection 17.7.3 was revised in the 2010 edition to bound all sets of conditions of beam depth and spacing. Where the waffle-type ceiling consists of beam-equivalent elements that are less than the ceiling jet thickness, bounding smooth ceiling spacings are appropriate. However, when the beam elements of a waffle ceiling exceed the ceiling jet thickness in depth, spacing reductions are needed to achieve response equivalent to that for smooth ceilings.

The research performed by Schirmer Engineering showed how a 30 ft (9.1 m) spacing grid of smoke detectors could be reoriented to take advantage of the strong versus weak smoke flow patterns that develop on gridded deep beam ceilings, as illustrated in Figure A.17.7.3.2.4.2(3)(b). This figure considers the performance of detectors at several locations noted as locations A, B, and C. Of these three locations, location C is a detector mounted under the beams while A and B are on the ceiling in the beam pockets. Also, detectors are at locations X, Y_{21}, and Y_{24} where the 21 and 24 designations represent the radial distance from the centerline vertical axis of the fire location. The circle depicts all possible locations that are 21 ft (6.4 m) from the fire axis and that would correspond to a 30 ft (9.1 m) grid spacing of smoke detectors. In this example, the detector at the X location is selected as the key position from which all other detectors are distributed on a shifted 30 ft (9.1 m) spacing grid. This X location was chosen because it is in the strong flow pattern from the fire location in the center of the circle, as are locations Y_{21} and Y_{24}. By inspection, the other potential fire locations will result in strong flow patterns to all other detector locations in the shifted grid.

A.17.7.3.2.4.2(4) Corridor geometry is a significant factor that contributes to the development of velocity, temperature, and smoke obscuration conditions at smoke detectors located along a corridor. This is based on the fact that the ceiling jet is confined or constrained by the nearby walls without opportunity for entrainment of air. For corridors of approximately 15 ft (4.6 m) in width and for fires of approximately 100 kW or greater, modeling has demonstrated that the performance of smoke detectors in corridors with beams has been shown to be comparable to spot smoke detector spacing on an unconfined smooth ceiling surface.

To understand the importance of corridor geometry on constraining the fire plume and ceiling jet, the fires considered were relatively small fires on the order of a medium to large trash can, which equates to the 100 kW energy level. Based on the increased smoke densities and gas velocities that develop in corridors, the general smooth ceiling rules can be applied to corridors up to 30 ft (9.1 m) in width. Hence, for the narrowest corridors smoke detectors can be located as far as approximately 40 ft (12.2 m) apart regardless of the beams or joists at the ceiling.

17.7.3.2.4.3* For sloping ceilings with beams running parallel up slope, the following shall apply:

(1) Spot-type detector(s) shall be located on the ceiling within beam pocket(s).
(2) The ceiling height shall be taken as the average height over slope.
(3) Spacing shall be measured along a horizontal projection of the ceiling.
(4) Smooth ceiling spacing shall be permitted within beam pocket(s) parallel to the beams.
(5) For beam depths less than or equal to 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), spot-type detectors shall be located with smooth ceiling spacing perpendicular to the beams.
(6) For beam depths greater than 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), the following shall apply for spacing perpendicular to the beams:
    (a) For beam spacing greater than or equal to 40 percent of the ceiling height (0.4 *H*), spot-type detectors shall be located in each beam pocket.
    (b) For beam spacing less than 40 percent of the ceiling height (0.4 *H*), spot-type detectors shall not be required in every beam pocket but shall be spaced not greater than 50 percent of smooth ceiling spacing.

Sloping ceilings are defined in 3.3.35.2 as ceilings that have a slope of more than 1 in 8. A slope of 1 in 8 corresponds to a rise-over-run ratio of 0.125 or an angle of about 7.2 degrees. Any slope less than or equal to 1 in 8 is deemed equivalent to a level ceiling. Beams that are parallel to the slope are perpendicular to the ridge beam of the roof. (Beams that are perpendicular to the slope are parallel to the ridge beam.)

Research was conducted on sloped ceilings since the technical committee action in the 2007 edition. The requirements in 17.7.3.2.4.3 were introduced in the 2010 edition and are based on that research.

The concept behind these design requirements is analogous to those regarding heat detectors. When a buoyant plume from a flaming fire impinges on a sloped ceiling, it will progress rapidly upward toward the ridge beam. The buoyancy of the ceiling jet gases accelerates the ceiling jet up the slope. This acceleration provides for faster response by detectors that are upslope from the fire. Computer CFD modeling demonstrated that the beams are very effective in channeling the smoke in the beam channel up the slope to the peak of the roof. This rapid upward flow reduces the lateral flow parallel to the ridge beam.

A.17.7.3.2.4.3 A smoke detector should be placed within each beam channel. Computer modeling has shown that parallel beams (upslope) are very effective at channeling smoke, and smoke spillover is rarely detectable in adjacent parallel pockets.

Paragraph A.17.7.3.2.4.3 refers to the fact that beam channels having beam spacing greater than or equal to 40 percent of the ceiling height (average height over the slope) will need a spot smoke detector in each channel. For more closely spaced beams [see 17.7.3.2.4.3(6)(b)], the spacing of spot detectors may be extended to 50 percent of the smooth ceiling requirement.

17.7.3.2.4.4* For sloping ceilings with beams running perpendicular across slope, the following shall apply:

(1) Spot-type detector(s) shall be located at the bottom of the beams.
(2) The ceiling height shall be taken as the average height over slope.
(3) Spacing shall be measured along a horizontal projection of the ceiling.
(4) Smooth ceiling spacing shall be permitted within beam pocket(s).
(5) For beam depths less than or equal to 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 H), spot-type detectors shall be located with smooth ceiling spacing.
(6) For beam depths greater than 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 H), spot-type detectors shall not be required to be located closer than (0.4 H) and shall not exceed 50 percent of smooth ceiling spacing.

Beams that are perpendicular to the slope are parallel to the ridge beam. These beams form dams that prevent the smoke from flowing up the ceiling slope toward the ridge beam. When the smoke encounters a beam running across the slope, the ceiling jet will begin forming a smoke layer. Smoke will flow laterally as the depth of the smoke layer increases. Eventually the smoke layer will become deep enough to spill over the beam and begin filling the next bay. This process is a much slower propagation than when the beams run up the slope. However, the damming effect of the beams will tend to channel smoke across the roof, parallel to the beams. The spacing adjustments in this section are the result of a detailed analysis of the computer CFD modeling research that was conducted to investigate this issue.

A.17.7.3.2.4.4 Irregular area spacing guidance for level beam ceilings can be used. Computer modeling has shown that spot-type detectors should be located on the bottom of perpendicular beams.

17.7.3.2.4.5* For sloped ceilings with beam pockets formed by intersecting beams, the following shall apply:

(1) Spot-type detector(s) shall be located at the bottom of the beams.
(2) The ceiling height shall be taken as the average height over slope.
(3) Spacing shall be measured along a horizontal projection of the ceiling.
(4) For beam depths less than or equal to 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 H), spot-type detectors shall be spaced with not more than three beams between detectors and shall not exceed smooth ceiling spacing.

(5) For beam depths greater than 10 percent of the ceiling height (0.1 *H*), spot-type detectors shall be spaced with not more than two beams between detectors, but shall not be required to be spaced closer than (0.4 *H*), and shall not exceed 50 percent of smooth ceiling spacing.

A.17.7.3.2.4.5 Computer modeling has shown that spot-type detectors should be located on the bottom of perpendicular beams and should be aligned with the center of pocket, as shown, in Figure A.17.7.3.2.4.5.

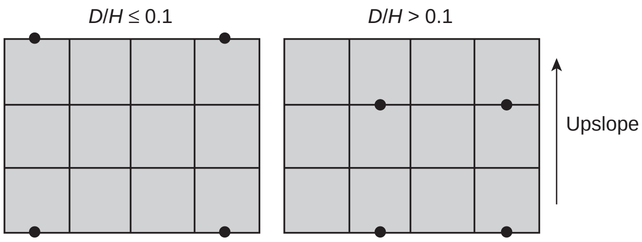


FIGURE A.17.7.3.2.4.5 *Spot-Type Detector Spacing for Sloping Ceilings with Beam Pockets.*

17.7.3.2.4.6 For sloped ceilings with solid joists, the detectors shall be located on the bottom of the joist.

The relatively small volume of the channel between joists results in smoke filling this volume quickly. Once filled, the smoke flows across the bottom of the joists. Locating smoke detectors at the bottom of the joist places them where the dominant flow of smoke is expected to occur. Paragraph 17.7.3.2.4.1 specifies that solid joists be treated as beams for smoke detector spacing guidelines. However, where the beams are actually joists, that is, greater than 4 in. (100 mm) in depth and on centers 3.0 ft (0.9 m) or less, the detectors *must* be placed on the bottoms of the joists. Keep in mind that bar joists or open web beams do not affect smoke flow unless the top plate exceeds 4 in. (100 mm) in depth.

17.7.3.3* Peaked. Detectors shall first be spaced and located within 36 in. (910 mm) of the peak, measured horizontally. The number and spacing of additional detectors, if any, shall be based on the horizontal projection of the ceiling.

A.17.7.3.3 Refer to Figure A.17.6.3.4(a).

The criteria in 17.7.3.3 are applicable to all types of smoke detection. Where the ceiling is not level, the plume and the resulting ceiling jet will concentrate smoke in the highest portion of the interior volume. By requiring that the location of detectors begin with a row of detectors, or their equivalent, at the peak of the peaked roof and space rows of detectors, or their equivalent, down the sloping ceiling from that high point, an optimally responsive design is ensured.

17.7.3.4* Shed. Detectors shall first be spaced and located within 36 in. (910 mm) of the high side of the ceiling, measured horizontally. The number and spacing of additional detectors, if any, shall be based on the horizontal projection of the ceiling.

A.17.7.3.4 Refer to Figure A.17.6.3.4(b).

17.7.3.5 Raised Floors and Suspended Ceilings. Spaces beneath raised floors and above suspended ceilings shall be treated as separate rooms for smoke detector spacing purposes.

Detectors installed beneath raised floors or above suspended ceilings, or both, including raised floors and suspended ceilings used for environmental air, shall not be used in lieu of providing detection within the room.

When total coverage is required by the authority having jurisdiction or other codes, 17.5.3.1 requires detection in all accessible spaces (combustible or noncombustible) and in inaccessible combustible spaces. The spaces beneath raised floors and above suspended ceilings usually fall into that category and, hence, require detection using the same location and spacing concepts as required for the occupied portion of a building.

17.7.3.5.1 For raised floors, the following shall apply:

(1) Detectors installed beneath raised floors shall be spaced in accordance with 17.7.3.1, 17.7.3.1.3, and 17.7.3.2.2.
(2) Where the area beneath the raised floor is also used for environmental air, detector spacing shall also conform to 17.7.4.1 and 17.7.4.2.

Although the requirements of Chapter 17, particularly Section 17.7, apply as a whole, the referenced paragraphs have a specific bearing on smoke detector applications in these spaces.

17.7.3.5.2 For suspended ceilings, the following shall apply:

(1) Detector spacing above suspended ceilings shall conform to the requirements of 17.7.3 for the ceiling configuration.
(2) Where detectors are installed in ceilings used for environmental air, detector spacing shall also conform to 17.7.4.1, 17.7.4.2, and 17.7.4.3.

17.7.3.6 Air Sampling–Type Smoke Detector.

Air sampling–type detectors, addressed in 17.7.3.6, are defined in 3.3.66.1. These detectors use one or more sampling pipes and draw a sample of air from the hazard area to the detector, where the presence of visible smoke or invisible combustion products is determined. These detectors include a number of cloud chamber–type smoke detectors and several varieties of high sensitivity, photoelectric-type smoke detectors. Air sampling–type smoke detectors consist of a sampling pipe network, an aspirating fan, and a highly sensitive centralized detector.

Air sampling–type detectors are used in a variety of applications where the designer is concerned with very early smoke detection and often where increased sensitivity is needed to meet the owner's fire protection goals. Because of their sensitivity range flexibility, air-sampling detectors are often used in areas that house valuable equipment as well as conventional settings that do not require high sensitivity. See Exhibits 17.31 through 17.34 for examples of air sampling–type smoke detectors.

17.7.3.6.1 Each sampling port of an air sampling–type smoke detector shall be treated as a spot-type detector for the purpose of location and spacing.

The International Fire Detection Research Project considered an issue directly relating to air sampling–type detectors when it evaluated the flow velocity field in the immediate vicinity of the sampling port. This research showed that the sampling port does *not* produce the effect of drawing the smoke up to the sampling port from lower down in the compartment. Consequently, when air-sampling detectors are used to protect rooms and other large compartments, they rely on either ambient air currents or the fire plume and ceiling jet as much as spot-type smoke detectors.

17.7.3.6.2 Maximum air sample transport time from the farthest sampling port to the detector shall not exceed 120 seconds.

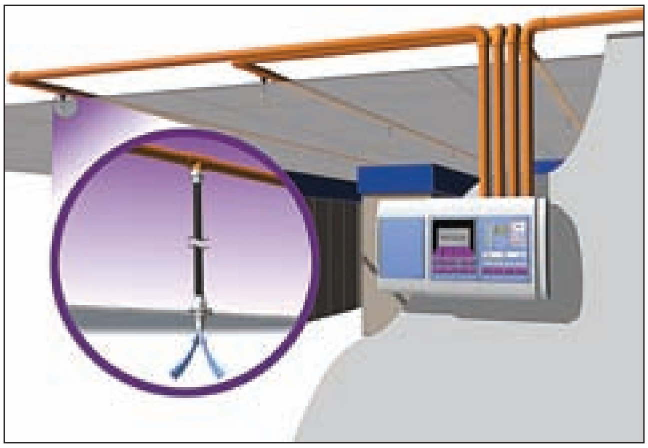
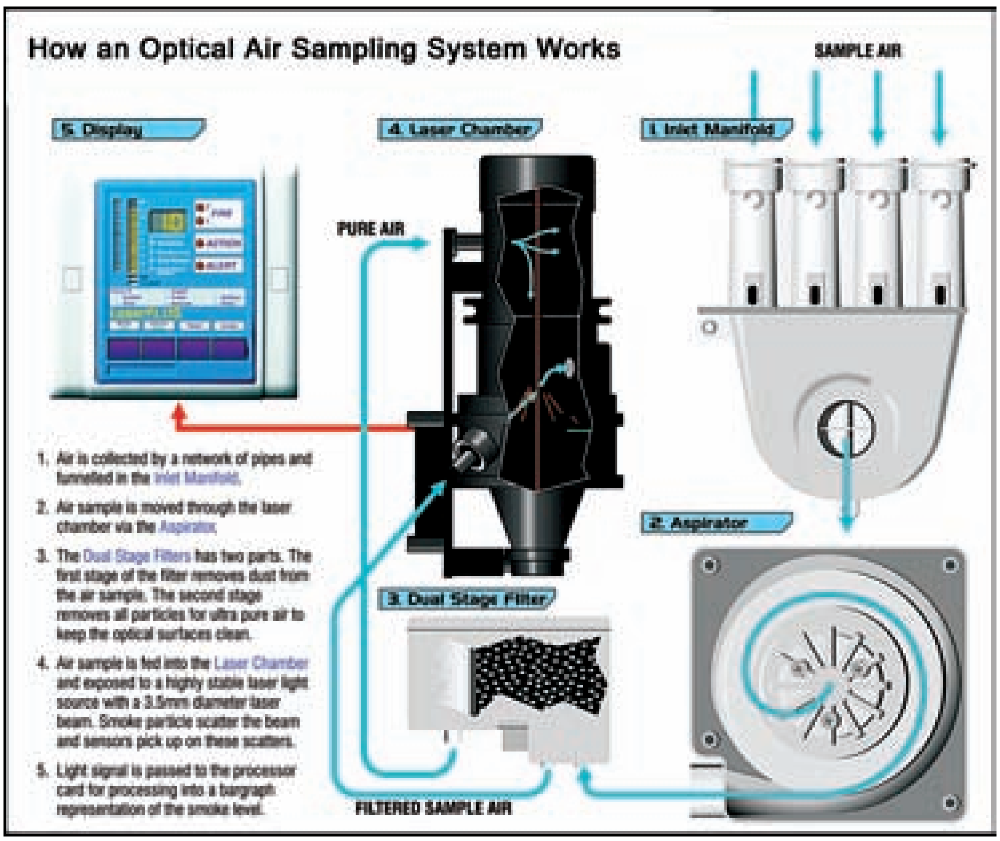


EXHIBIT 17.31

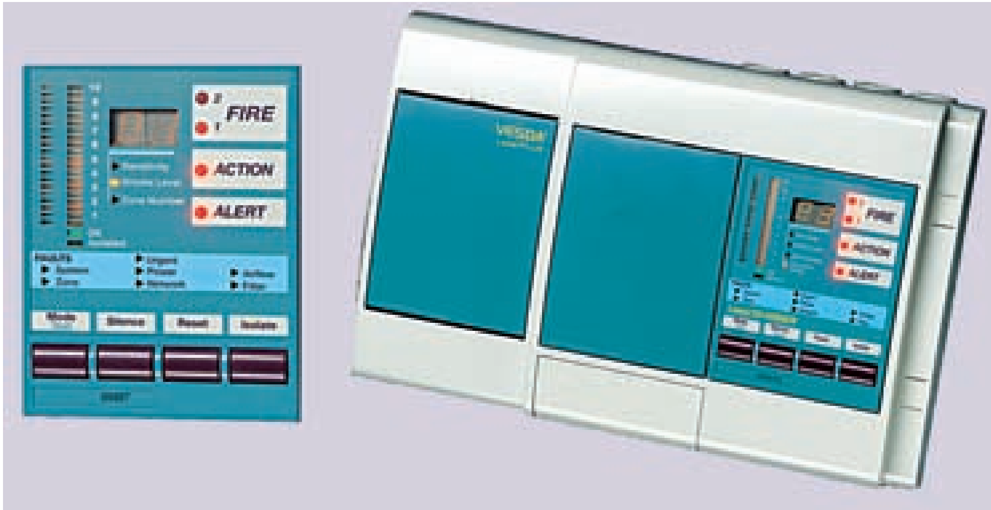
Use of Sampling Tubes to Convey Smoke-Laden Air to Central Detection Unit of Air-Sampling Detector. (Source: Xtralis, Norwell, MA)

EXHIBIT 17.32



How Optical Air-Sampling System Works. (Source: Xtralis, Norwell, MA)

EXHIBIT 17.33



Air Sampling–Type Smoke Detectors. (Source: Xtralis, Norwell, MA)

EXHIBIT 17.34

Air Sampling–Type Smoke Detector with Cover Removed. (Source: Fenwal Protection Systems, Ashland, MA)

FAQ What effect does limiting the transport time have on the system design?

The air transport time criterion in 17.7.3.6.2 places an effective limit on the design of the fan and the maximum distance from the detector to the farthest sampling port, as well as the size and layout of the sampling pipes. The manufacturer's listing and instructions provide the details on how the particular product must be used in order to comply with this limitation. Some air sampling–type smoke detectors have a means to detect changes in airflow, which provides some measure of monitoring the integrity of the tubing or piping network.

17.7.3.6.3* Sampling pipe networks shall be designed on the basis of, and shall be supported by, sound fluid dynamic principles to ensure required performance.

A.17.7.3.6.3 A single-pipe network has a shorter transport time than a multiple-pipe network of similar length pipe; however, a multiple-pipe system provides a faster smoke transport time than a single-pipe system of the same total length. As the number of sampling holes in a pipe increases, the smoke transport time increases. Where practicable, pipe run lengths in a multiple-pipe system should be nearly equal, or the system should be otherwise pneumatically balanced.

The manufacturers of air sampling–type smoke detectors provide engineering guidelines in their installation manuals that ensure that the products meet the criteria of 17.7.3.6.3. These guidelines are evaluated by the testing laboratories as part of the listing evaluation procedure. The factors in A.17.7.3.6.3 are generalizations that the designer can use as guidance in deciding the type of piping network that best serves the application under consideration.

17.7.3.6.4 Sampling pipe network design details shall include calculations showing the flow characteristics of the pipe network and each sample port.

The transport time is determined by flow calculations. Flow calculations provide the only way to be certain that sufficient pressure and flow volume are available at all the sampling ports and that the air sampling–type detector will provide detection over the entire area it is to cover.

17.7.3.6.5 Air-sampling detectors shall give a trouble signal if the airflow is outside the manufacturer's specified range.

The detection of a flow rate outside the manufacturer's design range is indicative of a failure of the physical integrity of the sampling pipes. This requirement is analogous to the monitoring for integrity of the initiating device circuit wiring.

17.7.3.6.6* The sampling ports and in-line filter, if used, shall be kept clear in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

A.17.7.3.6.6 The air sampling–type detector system should be able to withstand dusty environments by air filtering, electronic discrimination of particle size, or other listed methods or combinations thereof. The detector should be capable of providing optimal time delays of alarm outputs to eliminate nuisance alarms due to transient smoke conditions. The detector should also provide facilities for the connection of monitoring equipment for the recording of background smoke level information necessary in setting alert and alarm levels and delays.

Dust from the protected space can cause clogging of the sampling pipes as well as the sampling ports of those makes of detectors that employ a filter at the sampling port. Both clogging and filter loading can lead to reduced sampling flow from the affected portions of the sampling network.

17.7.3.6.7 Air-sampling network piping and fittings shall be airtight and permanently fixed.

Although Article 760 of the *NEC* has detailed criteria for detection system wiring, no national consensus standards are published for sampling tube installation. Each manufacturer makes its own recommendations that establish the minimum compliance criteria for that product. The integrity of the sampling tube network is just as important to the air sampling–type detector as the integrity of the wiring is to the spot-type smoke detector. The installation methods used for air-sampling tubing should provide equivalent security and mechanical protection.

17.7.3.6.8 Sampling system piping shall be conspicuously identified as "SMOKE DETECTOR SAMPLING TUBE — DO NOT DISTURB," as follows:

(1) At changes in direction or branches of piping
(2) At each side of penetrations of walls, floors, or other barriers
(3) At intervals on piping that provide visibility within the space, but no greater than 20 ft (6.1 m)

Numerous building systems are often installed in the above-ceiling space. If the sampling piping is damaged by some other trade at a later time, a break in the air-sampling detector piping could result in the detector sampling the above-ceiling air rather than the air beneath the ceiling plane, as intended. This possibility necessitates that tubing be clearly marked in a manner that will endure for the lifetime of the unit.

17.7.3.7* Projected Beam–Type Smoke Detectors.

A.17.7.3.7 On smooth ceilings, a spacing of not more than 60 ft (18.3 m) between projected beams and not more than one-half that spacing between a projected beam and a sidewall (wall parallel to the beam travel) should be used as a guide. Other spacing should be determined based on ceiling height, airflow characteristics, and response requirements.

In some cases, the light beam projector is mounted on one end wall, with the light beam receiver mounted on the opposite wall. However, it is also permitted to suspend the projector and receiver from the ceiling at a distance from the end walls not exceeding one-quarter the selected spacing (*S*). *(See Figure A.17.7.3.7.)*

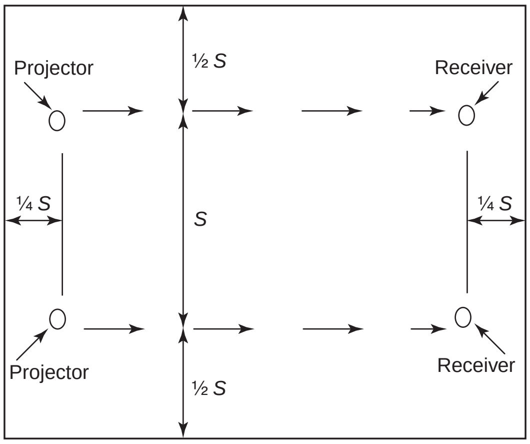


***FIGURE A.17.7.3.7** Maximum Distance at Which Ceiling-Suspended Light Projector and Receiver Can Be Positioned from End Wall Is One-Quarter Selected Spacing (S).*

17.7.3.7.1 Projected beam–type smoke detectors shall be located in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

Each make and model of linear projected beam–type smoke detector has specific installation limitations as well as performance capabilities. Most notable of these limitations are the minimum and the maximum beam lengths. The designer should make certain that the contemplated installation is consistent with the criteria established in the published installation instructions of the product the designer plans to use. It should be noted that the spacing criteria noted in Figure A.17.7.3.7 is a general example and that the actual spacing requirements will be dependent on the technology of the beam detector and the performance standards applied by the listing authority.

17.7.3.7.2 The effects of stratification shall be evaluated when locating the detectors.

As with other types of smoke detection, the location selected for detectors must account for the effects of stratification. In high-ceiling areas where stratification is probable and a serious concern, detectors can be positioned at several levels. Alternatively, the methods in Annex B can be used to calculate the plume divergence at the detector mounting height. The plume width at the detector mounting height can then be used as the "spacing" between adjacent beams in a performance-based design.

17.7.3.7.3 The beam length shall not exceed the maximum permitted by the equipment listing.

FAQ Why is the observance of the manufacturer's beam length limitations important?

Linear projected beam–type smoke detectors have limitations on both the minimum and the maximum beam lengths over which they will operate properly. The minimum beam length limitation is established by the lowest smoke concentration that can be detected at that minimum beam length. The maximum beam length is determined by the maximum distance at which the detector can maintain its design stability even when some normal light obscuration is present. The projected beam–type smoke detector must be able to identify a low concentration of smoke distributed along a substantial portion of the beam and a high concentration of smoke localized in a short segment of the beam. Each manufacturer obtains a listing from a qualified testing laboratory that sets the upper and lower limits on the beam length. Failure to observe these limits could result in an unstable detector or the failure to detect a fire consistent with the performance objectives.

17.7.3.7.4 If mirrors are used with projected beams, the mirrors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

Mirrors used with linear projected beam–type smoke detectors must also be listed for use with the detector.

17.7.3.7.5 A projected beam–type smoke detector shall be considered equivalent to a row of spot-type smoke detectors for level and sloping ceiling applications.

The similarity between the installation and spacing concepts developed for line-type heat detectors and projected-beam smoke detectors should be noted. The logic behind the design rules remains consistent. When spacing strategies are being developed, just as a line-type heat detector can be thought of as a row of spot-type heat detectors, it is often helpful to think of a linear projected-beam detector as equivalent to a row of spot-type smoke detectors, as stated in 17.7.3.7.5. The distance between the linear projected beams is analogous to the distance between rows of spot-type smoke detectors.

17.7.3.7.6 Projected beam–type detectors and mirrors shall be mounted on stable surfaces to prevent false or erratic operation due to movement.

17.7.3.7.7 The beam shall be designed so that small angular movements of the light source or receiver do not prevent operation due to smoke and do not cause nuisance or unintentional alarms.

Contrary to popular belief, buildings move under normal, everyday conditions. Portions of buildings vibrate due to traffic on nearby streets. Buildings sway due to wind or uneven thermal expansion; even the ebb and flow of the tides can cause oceanfront buildings to flex. Modern curtain wall/steel frame buildings are designed to flex. This movement, however, places a demand on fire alarm systems, especially fire alarm systems using projected-beam smoke detection. The detectors must be able to accommodate the natural or designed movement of the building. The manufacturers of projected beam–type detectors provide installation instructions that address the potential for this type of difficulty. Because of the physical instability of mounting surfaces and building movement, some manufacturers do not allow the use of mirrors. Often a limiting factor on beam length is the diameter of the projected beam and the receiver in relation to the expected flexure of the building.

17.7.3.7.8* The light path of projected beam–type detectors shall be kept clear of opaque obstacles at all times.

A.17.7.3.7.8 Where the light path of a projected beam–type detector is abruptly interrupted or obscured, the unit should not initiate an alarm. It should give a trouble signal after verification of blockage.

Modern projected beam–type detectors use obscuration algorithms in their software that can distinguish the progressive obscuration that occurs during a fire with the step-wise obscuration that usually indicates interference in the path of the beam by an opaque object. However, in spite of the most sophisticated software, Christmas decorations, party balloons, and hanging plants have been known to cause problems. Obstructions that can gradually grow and block a beam detector, such as trees in an atrium, should also be considered a potential problem.

17.7.4 Heating, Ventilating, and Air-Conditioning (HVAC).

17.7.4.1* In spaces served by air-handling systems, detectors shall not be located where airflow prevents operation of the detectors.

A.17.7.4.1 Detectors should not be located in a direct airflow or closer than 36 in. (910 mm) from an air supply diffuser or return air opening. Supply or return sources larger than those commonly found in residential and small commercial establishments can require greater clearance to smoke detectors. Similarly, smoke detectors should be located farther away from high velocity air supplies. See B.4.10.

For years, the rule in 17.7.4.1 had been applied only to air supplies. In research conducted under the International Fire Detection Research Project, managed by the Fire Protection Research Foundation, the computer modeling conducted by the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) identified situations where areas of nonactuation extended almost 11 ft (3.4 m) from some supply diffusers. In addition, the research showed that a smoke dilution effect occurred near air returns. An air return pulls air up from levels in the room that are beneath the ceiling jet, which has the effect of diluting smoke concentration near the air return grille. Consequently, the designer should arrange the detection so that detectors are not adjacent to either air supplies or air returns.

Situations may exist where even a 36 in. (910 mm) separation is not adequate. This situation would depend on the air velocity (supply air and return air) and the throw characteristics of the supply diffuser and diffuser size. Unfortunately, because the research did not address wide variations in HVAC flow rates, the minimum distance between a detector and the HVAC system supply or return recommended in A.17.7.4.1 might not be valid in all cases. Where in doubt, airflow in the vicinity of the detector should be mapped with a velometer or anemometer. Certainly, the ambient airflow at the detector location should be only a fraction of that used in the UL 268 smoke box of 30 ft/min (0.152 m/sec).

17.7.4.2 In under-floor spaces and above-ceiling spaces that are used as HVAC plenums, detectors shall be listed for the anticipated environment as required by 17.7.1.8. Detector spacings and locations shall be selected on the basis of anticipated airflow patterns and fire type.

To cool a room to 70°F (21°C), the introduction of extremely frigid air into the room may be necessary. Conversely, heating a room sometimes requires introducing extremely hot air into a room. Consequently, HVAC plenums usually have ambient conditions that are far more extreme than the spaces they support.

Smoke detectors are electronic sensors. Ambient temperature, the relative humidity, and, especially in the case of spot-type ionization detectors, the velocity of the air around the detector all affect detector operation. Not all smoke detectors are listed for the range of conditions found in HVAC plenums or in under-floor or above-ceiling spaces. The designer's responsibility is to verify that the detector is listed for use in the range of environmental conditions that will be encountered where it is to be installed. See also 17.7.1.8 and A.17.7.1.8.

17.7.4.3* Detectors placed in environmental air ducts or plenums shall not be used as a substitute for open area detectors. Where detectors are used for the control of smoke spread, the requirements of 17.7.5 shall apply. Where open area protection is required, 17.7.3 shall apply.

In most buildings, there are times when the HVAC system is not moving significant quantities of air from the compartments it serves. This is typical of variable air volume (VAV) systems. Consequently, the fire detection system cannot be designed to rely on the HVAC system operation for the transport of smoke to smoke detectors.

A.17.7.4.3 Smoke might not be drawn into the duct or plenums when the ventilating system is shut down. Furthermore, when the ventilating system is operating, the detector(s) can be less responsive to a fire condition in the room of fire origin due to dilution by clean air.

17.7.4.4 Detectors placed in environmental air ducts or plenums shall be permitted to be either supervisory or alarm initiating devices.

17.7.5* Smoke Detectors for Control of Smoke Spread.

A.17.7.5 Refer to NFPA *101*, *Life Safety Code*, for the definition of smoke compartment; NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, for the definition of duct systems; and NFPA 92, *Standard for Smoke Control Systems*, for the definition of smoke zone.

Between 1960 and 1971, several fires in high-rise buildings demonstrated the difficulty of trying to evacuate an entire building. Not only did occupants incur injuries during the evacuation, but also the means of egress often became untenable due to heavy smoke concentrations.

As improved building codes resulted in structures that could maintain their integrity in spite of the complete combustion of the interior fire load through passive fire-resistive construction and compartmentation, defending occupants in place became a viable option. Strategies for establishing smoke compartments and areas of refuge and for managing the flow of smoke by directing it away from the occupants were developed. Experiences with high-rise fires indicate that the proactive control of smoke with either automatic smoke detectors and HVAC systems or engineered smoke control systems is a viable strategy for occupant protection in high-rise buildings.

FAQ

Does 17.7.5 require the installation of smoke detectors for smoke control?

Subsection 17.7.5 does not require the installation of smoke detectors for smoke control. The purpose of 17.7.5 is to describe the performance and installation requirements for smoke detectors being used for smoke control, as required by some other code or standard.

17.7.5.1* Classifications. Smoke detectors installed and used to prevent smoke spread by initiating control of fans, dampers, doors, and other equipment shall be classified in the following manner:

(1) Area detectors that are installed in the related smoke compartments
(2) Detectors that are installed in the air duct systems
(3) Video image smoke detection that is installed in related smoke compartments

Either dedicated detectors installed in the HVAC system or area detectors can be used to control smoke spread. With modern addressable/analog detection technology, individual ceiling-mounted spot-type detectors produce discrete alarm signal codes that are logged by the fire alarm control unit. This technology permits the use of area detection without the incremental cost of large numbers of detector relays, as was the case decades ago. Both projected beam smoke detectors and video image smoke detectors are also used as area detection and can be used as an input signal for the control of the HVAC system serving the related smoke compartments.

A.17.7.5.1 Smoke detectors located in an open area(s) should be used rather than duct-type detectors because of the dilution effect in air ducts. Active smoke management systems installed in accordance with NFPA 92, *Standard for Smoke Control Systems*, should be controlled by total coverage open area detection.

Paragraph 17.5.3.1 identifies all the spaces that must have smoke detectors if total coverage is to be achieved.

17.7.5.2* Limitations.

A.17.7.5.2 Dilution of smoke-laden air by clean air from other parts of the building or dilution by outside air intakes can allow high densities of smoke in a single room with no appreciable smoke in the air duct at the detector location. Smoke might not be drawn from open areas if air-conditioning systems or ventilating systems are shut down.

17.7.5.2.1 Detectors that are installed in the air duct system in accordance with 17.7.5.1(2) shall not be used as a substitute for open area protection.

All too often, uninformed designers attempt to use air duct–type smoke detectors to provide open area protection. This strategy does not address the potential for a fire during those times when the HVAC system is not running, nor does it address the delay in detection due to smoke dilution. Paragraph 17.7.5.2.1 specifically prohibits the use of duct smoke detection in lieu of area detection installed pursuant to Section 17.7.

17.7.5.2.2 Where open area protection is required, 17.7.3 shall apply.

17.7.5.3* Purposes.

A.17.7.5.3 Smoke detectors can be applied in order to initiate control of smoke spread for the following purposes:

(1) Prevention of the recirculation of dangerous quantities of smoke within a building
(2) Selective operation of equipment to exhaust smoke from a building
(3) Selective operation of equipment to pressurize smoke compartments
(4) Operation of doors and dampers to close the openings in smoke compartments

17.7.5.3.1 To prevent the recirculation of dangerous quantities of smoke, a detector approved for air duct use shall be installed on the supply side of air-handling systems as required by NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, and 17.7.5.4.2.1.

17.7.5.3.2 If smoke detectors are used to initiate selectively the operation of equipment to control smoke spread, the requirements of 17.7.5.4.2.2 shall apply.

17.7.5.3.3 If detectors are used to initiate the operation of smoke doors, the requirements of 17.7.5.6 shall apply.

17.7.5.3.4 If duct detectors are used to initiate the operation of smoke dampers within ducts, the requirements of 17.7.5.5 shall apply.

17.7.5.4 Application.

17.7.5.4.1 Area Smoke Detectors Within Smoke Compartments. Area smoke detectors within smoke compartments shall be permitted to be used to control the spread of smoke by initiating operation of doors, dampers, and other equipment.

Paragraph 17.7.5.4.1 permits area detectors to serve the additional purpose of providing signals to initiate the control of the spread of smoke. Although this approach might not have been very practical when the only available technology was conventional detection on an initiating device circuit, now addressable/analog detectors, whose principal function is area protection, can be used effectively to provide signals that are then used to control smoke spread. Existing detectors can perform double duty through the programming of the fire alarm control unit. When area smoke detectors are used, smoke detectors are needed where they can identify the presence of smoke at a particular location or the movement of smoke past a particular location. The locations for area smoke detectors are a function of building geometry, anticipated fire locations, and intended goals of smoke control functions.

FAQ Is complete area smoke detection always required?

Except where used as permitted in 17.7.5.4.2.2(B), complete area smoke detection is not necessary to provide for such control features. Specific locations are often identified for specific fire scenarios. For example, smoke detectors are often placed at the perimeter of an atrium to detect smoke movement into the atrium space from a corridor that opens into the atrium. Another example is the use of smoke detectors to release smoke doors only as their associated smoke detector is actuated, thus avoiding premature release of all other doors. Selective door release is sometimes chosen to prevent the premature release of doors needed to facilitate rapid evacuation.

Paragraph 17.7.5.4.1 also allows complete area coverage to be used for the control of smoke spread. In this case, when a compartment detector actuates in the smoke compartment, it signals the fire alarm control unit, which, in turn, signals the HVAC control system or smoke door release system. The HVAC controller operates or controls fans and dampers to prevent the introduction of smoke into other smoke compartments and to vent the smoke from the fire compartment, facilitating occupant egress. The smoke door release system either closes all doors in the building or all doors in the smoke zone.

17.7.5.4.2* Smoke Detection for Air Duct System.

A.17.7.5.4.2 Smoke detectors are designed to sense the presence of particles of combustion, but depending on the sensing technology and other design factors, different detectors respond to different types of particles. Detectors based on ionization detection technology are most responsive to smaller, invisible sub-micron sized particles. Detectors based on photoelectric technology, by contrast, are most responsive to larger visible particles.

It is generally accepted that particle size distribution varies from sub-micron diameter particles predominant in the proximity of the flame of a flaming fire to particles one or more orders of magnitude larger, which are characteristic of smoke from a smoldering fire. The actual particle size distribution depends on a host of other variables including the fuel and its physical make-up, the availability of oxygen including air supply and fire–gas discharge, and other ambient conditions, especially humidity. Moreover, the particle size distribution is not constant, but as the fire gases cool, the sub-micron particles agglomerate and the very large ones precipitate. In other words, as smoke travels away from the fire source, the particle size distribution shows a relative decrease in smaller particles. Water vapor, which is abundantly present in most fires, when cooled sufficiently will condense to form fog particles — an effect frequently seen above tall chimneys. Because water condensation is basically clear in color, when it is mixed with other smoke particles, it can be expected to lighten the color of the mixture.

In almost every fire scenario in an air-handling system, the point of detection will be some distance from the fire source; therefore, the smoke will be cooler and more visible because of the growth of sub-micron particles into larger particles due to agglomeration and recombination. For these reasons, photoelectric detection technology has advantages over ionization detection technology in air duct system applications.

17.7.5.4.2.1 Supply Air System. Where the detection of smoke in the supply air system is required by other NFPA standards, a detector(s) listed for the air velocity present and that is located in the supply air duct downstream of both the fan and the filters shall be installed.

Exception: Additional smoke detectors shall not be required to be installed in ducts where the air duct system passes through other smoke compartments not served by the duct.

The NFPA standards relevant to 17.7.5.4.2.1 are NFPA 90A; NFPA 92A, *Standard for Smoke-Control Systems Utilizing Barriers and Pressure Differences*; and NFPA *101*. The purpose of supply-side smoke detection is the sensing of smoke that might be contaminating the area served by the duct but not as a result of a fire in that area. The smoke might be coming from another area via return air ducts, from outside via fresh air mixing ducts, or from a fire within the duct (such as in a filter or fan belt). If the source of the smoke is from outside or from within the duct, a fire alarm response for area detection within the space would not normally be expected to produce the most appropriate set of responses.

Different airflow management programs are required for supply-side smoke inflow as opposed to smoke generated within the compartment. Furthermore, compartment area detection cannot be relied on to respond to a supply duct smoke inflow, because of the expected dilution of smoke-laden air with fresh air as it enters the smoke compartment where the area detection is installed. This expected condition necessitates the use of detectors downstream of the fan and filters in the supply air duct.

The exception to 17.7.5.4.2.1 is based on the fire resistance of HVAC ducts and the unlikelihood of smoke escaping from the HVAC duct into a compartment not served by the duct.

Refer to the following excerpt from NFPA 90A for supply and return air smoke detection requirements.

6.4.2* Location. [90A:6.4.2]

6.4.2.1 Smoke detectors listed for use in air distribution systems shall be located as follows:

(1) Downstream of the air filters and ahead of any branch connections in air supply systems having a capacity greater than 944 L/sec (2000 ft³/min)
(2) At each story prior to the connection to a common return and prior to any recirculation or fresh air inlet connection in air return systems having a capacity greater than 7080 L/sec (15,000 ft³/min) and serving more than one story [**90A:**6.4.2.1]

6.4.2.2 Return system smoke detectors shall not be required where the entire space served by the air distribution system is protected by a system of area smoke detectors. [**90A:**6.4.2.2]

6.4.2.3 Smoke detectors shall not be required for fan units whose sole function is to remove air from the inside of the building to the outside of the building. [**90A:**6.4.2.3]

17.7.5.4.2.2* Return Air System. Unless otherwise modified by 17.7.5.4.2.2(A) or 17.7.5.4.2.2(B), if the detection of smoke in the return air system is required by other NFPA standards, a detector(s) listed for the air velocity present shall be located where the air leaves each smoke compartment, or in the duct system before the air enters the return air system common to more than one smoke compartment.

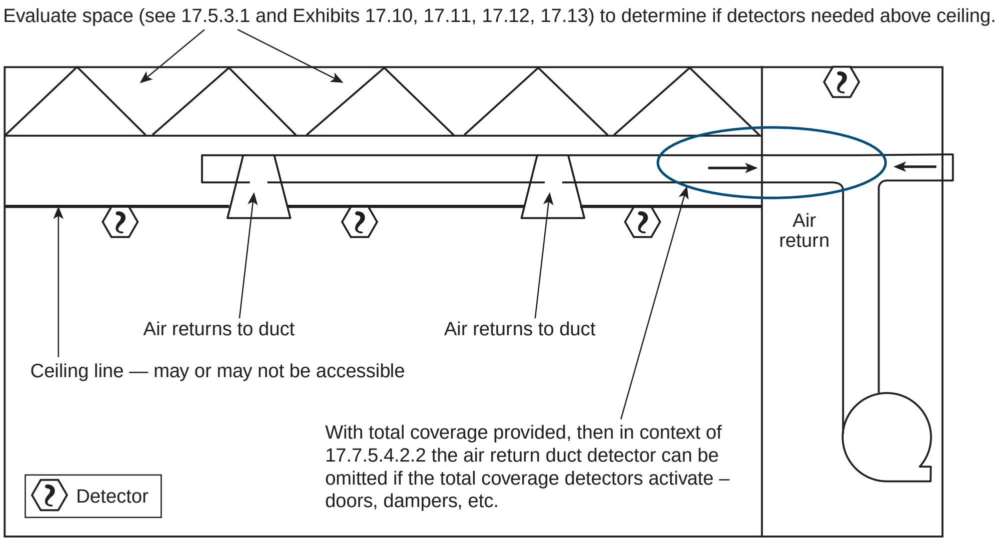
(A) Additional smoke detectors shall not be required to be installed in ducts where the air duct system passes through other smoke compartments not served by the duct.

Paragraph 17.7.5.4.2.2(A) is based on the same reasoning used in the exception to 17.7.5.4.2.1. With reference to Figure A.17.7.5.4.2.2(c), the top duct does not need additional detectors and/or dampers where it passes through either the center compartment or the right compartment.

(B) Where total coverage smoke detection is installed in accordance with 17.5.3.1 in all areas of the smoke compartment served by the return air system, installation of additional detector(s) listed for the air velocity present where the air leaves each smoke compartment, or in the duct system before the air enters in the return air system shall not be required, provided that their function is accomplished by the design of the total coverage smoke detection system.

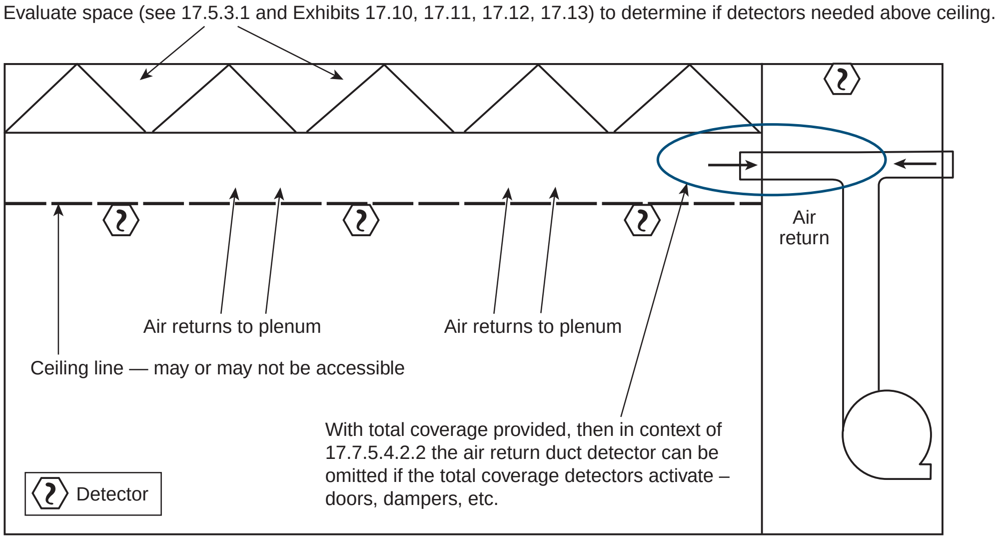
The context for the requirements in 17.7.5.4.2.2 are spaces physically defined as smoke compartments with supply and return air systems and associated smoke detectors that are used to operate doors, dampers, or other equipment to control the spread of smoke. In the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72*, 17.7.5.4.2.2 has been revised to clarify an exception [17.7.5.4.2.2(B)] that permits omitting the return air duct smoke detector when *total coverage* is installed. To understand how the exception applies, Exhibits 17.35 and 17.36 illustrate the scenarios. First, in Exhibit 17.35, a total coverage scenario (Scenario 5) that includes a ducted return air system is shown without any smoke detector in the duct. In this scenario, the space below the ceiling is provided with smoke detection and the concealed space must be evaluated according to the rules of 17.5.3.1 to determine to what extent smoke detectors are needed to qualify this scenario as having total coverage. The second example, Exhibit 17.36, is a total coverage scenario (Scenario 6) that includes a return air plenum system — again, without any smoke detector in the air return duct. In both scenarios, the space below the ceiling is provided with smoke detection and the concealed space must be evaluated according to the rules of 17.5.3.1 to determine to what extent smoke detectors are needed to qualify this scenario as having total coverage. There is no requirement for a smoke detector in the return air duct system with the proper complement of smoke detectors installed to satisfy the definition of total coverage, provided the total coverage smoke detectors serve to close doors, dampers, and so on, as required by 17.7.5.4.2.2(B).

EXHIBIT 17.35



Total Coverage – Scenario 5 (Source: Aon Fire Protection Engineering, Glenview, IL)

EXHIBIT 17.36



Total Coverage – Scenario 6 (Source: Aon Fire Protection Engineering, Glenview, IL)

A.17.7.5.4.2.2 Detectors listed for the air velocity present can be permitted to to be installed at the opening where the return air enters the common return air system. The detectors should be installed up to 12 in. (300 mm) in front of or behind the opening and spaced according to the following opening dimensions *[see Figure A.17.7.5.4.2.2(a) through Figure A.17.7.5.4.2.2(c)]*:

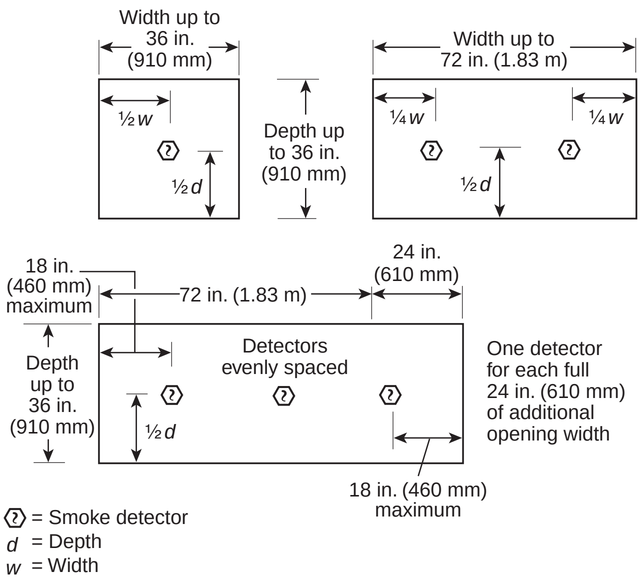


FIGURE A.17.7.5.4.2.2(a) Location of a Smoke Detector(s) in Return Air System Openings for Selective Operation of Equipment.

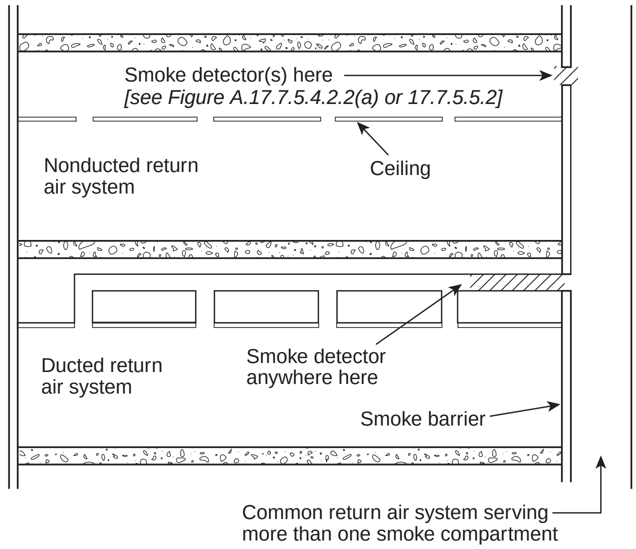


FIGURE A.17.7.5.4.2.2(b) Location of a Smoke Detector(s) in Return Air Systems for Selective Operation of Equipment.

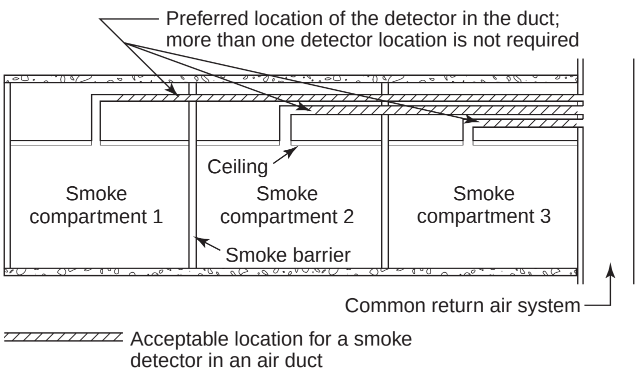


FIGURE A.17.7.5.4.2.2(c) Detector Location in a Duct that Passes Through Smoke Compartments Not Served by the Duct.

(1) *Width.*
   (a) Up to 36 in. (910 mm) — One detector centered in opening
   (b) Up to 72 in. (1.83 m) — Two detectors located at the one-quarter points of the opening
   (c) Over 72 in. (1.83 m) — One additional detector for each full 24 in. (610 mm) of opening
(2) *Depth.* The number and spacing of the detector(s) in the depth (vertical) of the opening should be the same as those given for the width (horizontal) in A.17.7.5.4.2.2(1).
(3) *Orientation.* Detectors should be oriented in the most favorable position for smoke entry with respect to the direction of airflow. The path of a projected beam–type detector across the return air openings should be considered equivalent in coverage to a row of individual detectors.

The objective of HVAC system return detection is to prevent the recirculation of smoke-laden air to other, smoke-free portions of the building via the HVAC system. While use of complete area detection is preferable because it provides the earliest possible response, the use of return duct detection is permitted and most often used.

FAQ Where must detectors be installed if duct detection is used in return air applications?

If duct detection is used for control of smoke spread, detectors must be installed only where the return air duct leaves the smoke compartment or before the duct joins a return air plenum serving more than one smoke compartment. These locations are intended to minimize the effects of smoke dilution.

The specific detector location criteria outlined in A.17.7.5.4.2.2 are intended to achieve a representative sample of the air flowing into the system. The HVAC system return will draw air from a portion of the room volume based on its location. Ceiling returns pull fresh air up from lower elevations in the room, through the ceiling jet, diluting the smoke. Wall-mounted returns also tend to draw in air from a range of elevations in the room, reducing the relative smoke concentration. Consequently, dilution is almost always present and almost always delays response. Therefore, dilution is one of the reasons that duct-type smoke detection will be slower than spot detection in the area of the fire.

Additional duct smoke detection is not required where the air leaves each smoke compartment or in the duct system before the air enters the return air system in the return air of a smoke compartment provided with total (complete) smoke detection compliant with 17.5.3 because the addition of duct smoke detection would essentially not add any substantial detection benefit.

17.7.5.5 Location and Installation of Detectors in Air Duct Systems.

Sampling tubes provide a flow of air through the detector enclosure due to a pressure differential that results from the flow of air across the tubes. Small errors in the orientation of the sampling tubes can reduce the pressure differential, rendering them ineffective in drawing air into the detector enclosure, especially at low air velocities in variable air volume (VAV) HVAC systems.

For sampling tubes to take a representative sample of the air passing through the duct, they must be fabricated and installed in a manner consistent with their listing. The pressure differential between the inflow and outflow tubes is usually measured with either a manometer or pressure gauges. If the flow of air through the sampling tube and the detector enclosure assembly cannot be verified, as required by 17.7.5.5, there is no basis to presume that the air within the duct is being sampled by the detector. Prudent practice dictates that the pressure differential be measured at the lowest air velocity anticipated for the duct where the detector is located in a VAV HVAC system.

Finally, duct-type smoke detectors usually consist of a standard production smoke detector and a specially designed enclosure equipped with a smoke detector mounting base and sampling tube fittings already installed. However, not all detectors are listed for use in a duct smoke detector enclosure that uses sampling tubes. Care should be taken to make certain that the detector is listed for use in the duct smoke detector housing as an assembly.

17.7.5.5.1 Detectors shall be listed for the purpose for which they are being used.

The listing of the detector stipulates the range of air velocities over which it can operate, as well as the temperature and the relative humidity range. These last two criteria are particularly important where a general purpose detector is being installed in a duct detector housing. Often HVAC system fans and ducts are located in penthouses and mechanical rooms, where comfort heating and cooling are not provided. Consequently, a smoke detector could be inadvertently installed where the ambient conditions exceed its design range. The location of the duct detector must be maintained within the operating range of the detector used.

17.7.5.5.2* Air duct detectors shall be installed in such a way as to obtain a representative sample of the airstream. This installation shall be permitted to be achieved by any of the following methods:

(1) Rigid mounting within the duct

Support of the detector by the conduit or raceway containing wiring conductors is not permitted by *NFPA 70* unless the box is specifically listed for the purpose and installed in accordance with the listing.

(2) Rigid mounting to the wall of the duct with the sensing element protruding into the duct
(3) Installation outside the duct with rigidly mounted sampling tubes protruding into the duct
(4) Installation through the duct with projected light beam

The flow of air through a duct is not necessarily uniform. Bends and changes in cross-sectional area and cross-sectional shape of the duct produce regions of reduced flow velocity and, hence, reduced flow volume. The flow in a duct can also become divided into layers depending on differing temperatures, resulting in smoke being concentrated in a portion of the duct cross-section and not uniformly dispersed across the duct area. The options in 17.7.5.5.2(1) and 17.7.5.5.2(2) are often most appropriate for smaller ducts or where an engineering analysis shows that smoke concentrations will be even across the duct cross-section and that laminar flow is not going to produce a nonuniform smoke concentration. Option (3) is more suited to larger ducts. The use of sampling tubes enables the duct detector to sample the air across the entire duct cross-section rather than a small portion of it. The designer should consult the manufacturer's technical bulletin for installation limitations.

See Exhibits 17.37 and 17.38 for examples of typical duct-type smoke detectors.

A.17.7.5.5.2 Where duct detectors are used to initiate the operation of smoke dampers, they should be located so that the detector is between the last inlet or outlet upstream of the damper and the first inlet or outlet downstream of the damper.

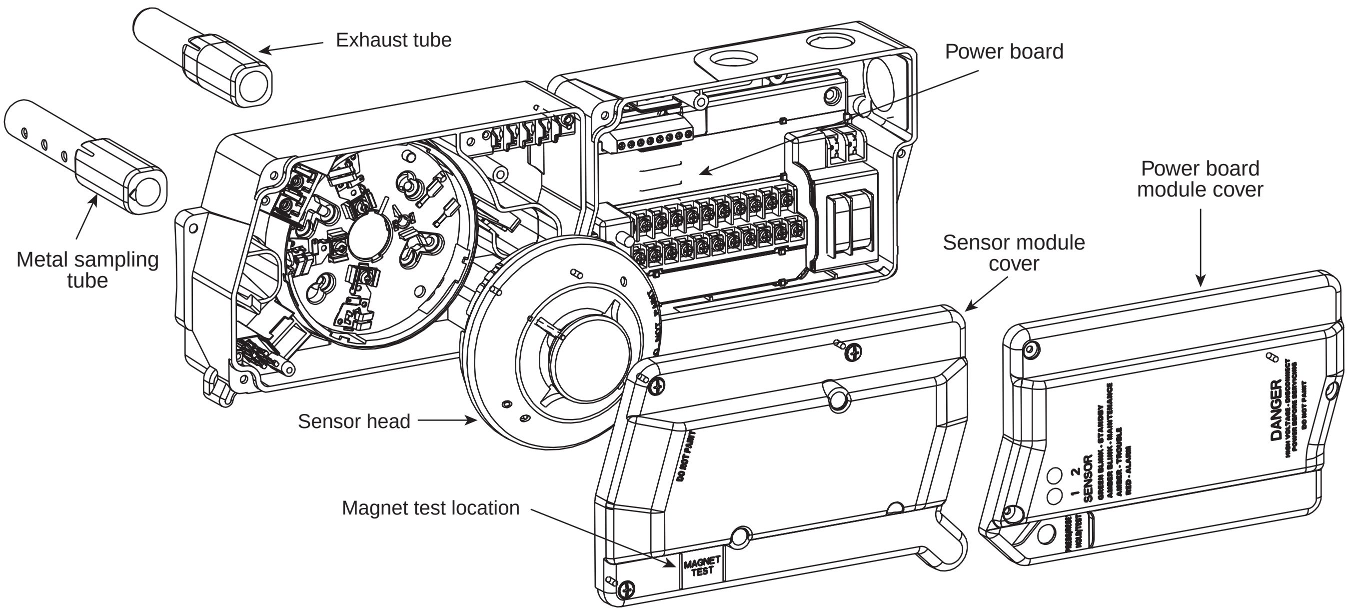
In order to obtain a representative sample, stratification and dead air space should be avoided. Such conditions could be caused by return duct openings, sharp turns, or connections, as well as by long, uninterrupted straight runs.

In return air systems, the requirements of 17.7.5.4.2.2 take precedence over these considerations. *[See Figure A.17.7.5.5.2(a) and Figure A.17.7.5.5.2(b).]*

Usually, it is necessary to manage smoke flow in buildings. Duct smoke detectors are used to shut down HVAC systems or initiate smoke management.

Filters have a serious effect on the performance of duct smoke detectors. The location of the detector relative to the filter and the source of smoke must be considered during the design process. Where smoke detectors are installed downstream from filters, they should be deemed to serve the purpose of providing an alarm indication of the occurrence of a fire in the HVAC unit (filters, belts, heat exchangers, etc.). These detectors usually serve the purpose of protecting building occupants from the smoke produced by an HVAC unit fire, or smoke

EXHIBIT 17.37



Internal View of Duct-Type Smoke Detector. (Source: System Sensor Corp., St. Charles, IL)

EXHIBIT 17.38

Duct-Type Smoke Detector. (Source: Hochiki America Corp., Buena Park, CA)

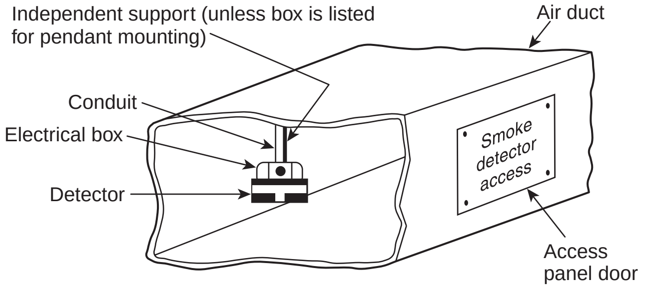


FIGURE A.17.7.5.5.2(a) *Pendant-Mounted Air Duct Installation.*

ingress via the fresh air intake for the unit. They cannot be expected to serve the purpose of providing detection for the return side of the system.

Where return side detection is required, that requirement should be fulfilled with separate detectors from those monitoring the supply side. In order to be effective, return air duct smoke detectors should be located such that there are no filters between them and the source of the smoke.

Sampling tubes should be oriented to overcome thermal stratification due to buoyancy of the smoke in the upper half of the duct. This condition occurs where duct velocities are low, buoyancy exceeds flow inertia, or the detector is installed close to the fire compartment. A vertical orientation of sampling tubes overcomes the effects of differential buoyancy.

Where a detector is installed on a duct serving a single fire compartment, where the buoyancy exceeds the flow inertia of the air in the duct and the sampling tube cannot be oriented vertically, then the effects of thermal stratification can be minimized by locating the detector sampling tube in the upper half of the duct.

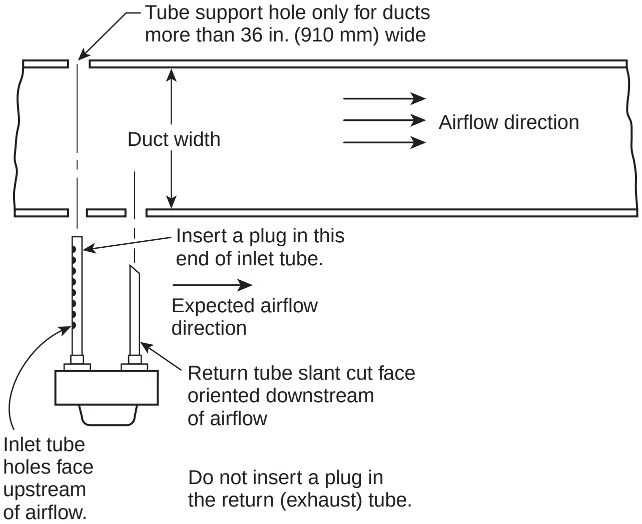


FIGURE A.17.7.5.5.2(b) *Inlet Tube Orientation.*

The thermal stratification is not a concern where the detector is installed far from the fire compartment or where the smoke is at or close to the average temperature in the duct.

FAQ According to the research, what orientation has been shown to improve detector performance?

This portion of the Code was substantially revised for the 2007 edition. For years, the Code had recommended that duct detector sampling tubes be located at least 6 to 10 duct diameters downstream of a bend or change in dimension. Research conducted under the auspices of the Fire Detection Institute discovered that the recommendation had no technical basis.

The research also showed that in most cases detector performance would be improved by mounting sampling tubes in a vertical orientation rather than the horizontal orientation most often seen in actual practice. The vertical orientation would provide for effective sampling when thermal stratification in the duct caused variations in smoke concentration. However, the validity of this generalization becomes less reliable when ducts are encountered that are much wider than they are tall in cross-section.

The requirements in 17.7.5.5.2 and the guidance in A.17.7.5.5.2 are provided to ensure that the detectors in the air duct are suitably located to obtain an adequate sampling of air. These location guidelines should be followed to maximize the probability that smoke will be evenly distributed throughout the duct cross-section at the detector location.

17.7.5.5.3 Detectors shall be mounted in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and shall be accessible for cleaning by providing access doors or control units in accordance with NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*.

Chapter 14 provides inspection and testing schedules for each type of detector. The accessibility of detectors is critical in order to facilitate cleaning. Poor or neglected maintenance is a dominant cause of unwarranted alarm in smoke detectors.

17.7.5.5.4 The location of all detectors in air duct systems shall be permanently and clearly identified and recorded.

A permanent placard placed outside the first point of access is advisable to indicate that a detector is accessible from that point. For example, the placard might be mounted on the wall beneath the ceiling tile that must be removed to access the duct. HVAC and fire alarm drawings should clearly show the actual as-built locations of the detectors. In most cases, one drawing that shows only the smoke detector locations is useful. The location can also be included in the display descriptor of addressable systems.

17.7.5.5.5 Detectors mounted outside of a duct that employs sampling tubes for transporting smoke from inside the duct to the detector shall be designed and installed to allow verification of airflow from the duct to the detector.

17.7.5.5.6 Detectors shall be listed for operation over the complete range of air velocities, temperature, and humidity expected at the detector when the air-handling system is operating.

The listing requirements of 17.7.5.5.6 are important to ensure proper operation of a detector in its installed location. Often HVAC system fans and ducts are located in penthouses and mechanical rooms, where comfort heating and cooling are not provided. Consequently, the environment of the detector might exceed the limits observed in the listing investigation. In addition, when warm moist air is circulated through a cold duct smoke detector housing, condensation can occur in the duct smoke detector housing. These conditions can seriously degrade detector performance and stability. Where these extremes are likely, provisions must be made to maintain the operating environment of the detector within its operating range.

17.7.5.5.7 All penetrations of a return air duct in the vicinity of detectors installed on or in an air duct shall be sealed to prevent entrance of outside air and possible dilution or redirection of smoke within the duct.

17.7.5.6 Smoke Detectors for Door Release Service.

Two general methods of controlling doors with smoke detectors are available. The first is to use area smoke detectors to control the doors for that area. Either smoke detectors served by a selected circuit of a fire alarm control unit or specific addressable detectors are programmed to operate magnetic door release devices via the fire alarm system control unit. When one of the area smoke detectors renders an alarm, the control unit transfers to the alarm state and energizes the output circuit that controls the door holders. The requirements for such a system are addressed in Chapter 21. The second method is to control the door holder mechanism directly with a dedicated smoke detector or smoke detectors.

The requirements in 17.7.5.6 apply equally to both design concepts. When the open area protection system is used, 17.7.5.6.1 allows the spacing in the corridors as normally required for area protection in conformance with 17.7.3 to be considered acceptable for smoke door release service. In that case, the explicit spacing requirements of 17.7.5.6.2 do not apply. When dedicated smoke detectors are used for door release service, the requirements of 17.7.5.6.3 through 17.7.5.6.6 apply.

17.7.5.6.1 Smoke detectors that are part of an open area protection system covering the room, corridor, or enclosed space on each side of the smoke door and that are located and spaced as required by 17.7.3 shall be permitted to accomplish smoke door release service.

FAQ

What location and spacing requirements apply when an open area detection system is used?

Area detection installed in accordance with 17.7.3 is permitted to be used as long as area detection is provided on both sides of the doors to be closed. Discrete and dedicated smoke detectors separate from the area protection are not required to be used when the area detectors are wired or programmed to actuate the door release. Furthermore, the requirements of 17.7.5.6.5.1 through 17.7.5.6.5.4, which stipulate the quantities of detectors used for door release service, do not apply where both sides of the door are protected by open area smoke detection in accordance with 17.7.3.

17.7.5.6.2 Smoke detectors that are used exclusively for smoke door release service shall be located and spaced as required by 17.7.5.6.

Where area detection per 17.7.3 is not provided and where automatic closure of doors upon the presence of smoke is required, smoke detectors must be installed according to the prescriptive requirements in 17.7.5.6.3 through 17.7.5.6.6.

17.7.5.6.3 Where smoke door release is accomplished directly from the smoke detector(s), the detector(s) shall be listed for releasing service.

17.7.5.6.4 Smoke detectors shall be of the photoelectric, ionization, or other approved type.

17.7.5.6.5 The number of detectors required shall be determined in accordance with 17.7.5.6.5.1 through 17.7.5.6.5.4.

The placement requirements outlined in 17.7.5.6.5 have been derived from a qualitative understanding of the expected behavior of a ceiling jet, similar to the physical principles from which the rules for location and placement of area smoke detection have been derived. As research continues, additional insight may be developed for this application.

The original reason for this application of smoke detectors at smoke doors in corridors was simply to control smoke movement in the corridors. Early designs often used stand-alone smoke detectors that did not connect to a fire alarm system. Generally, this type of design is not used today because area smoke detector coverage in the corridors perform the same function more rapidly than waiting for the smoke to travel to the doorway.

If smoke detectors are installed only for door release, designers should consider the added benefit of using these detectors as part of the fire alarm system (if the building has one) and connect them to a fire alarm control unit to actuate notification appliances when smoke is detected.

If the smoke detectors from the fire alarm system corridor detection are used to control the doors, they are covered under 17.7.5.6.1 and the spacing requirements at the doors outlined in 17.7.5.6.5 are not applicable.

17.7.5.6.5.1 If doors are to be closed in response to smoke flowing in either direction, the requirements of 17.7.5.6.5.1(A) through 17.7.5.6.5.1(D) shall apply.

Paragraphs 17.7.5.6.5.1(A) through 17.7.5.6.5.1(D) and Figure 17.7.5.6.5.1(A) recognize that both ceiling- and wall-mounted detectors can be used. The prescribed locations for smoke detectors to control doors are depicted in Figure 17.7.5.6.5.1(A).

(A) If the depth of wall section above the door is 24 in. (610 mm) or less, one ceiling-mounted smoke detector shall be required on one side of the doorway only, or two wall-mounted detectors shall be required, one on each side of the doorway. Figure 17.7.5.6.5.1(A), part A or B, shall apply.

The requirements in 17.7.5.6.5.1(A) are intended to address the same issues as the requirements regarding smoke detectors and ceilings with deep beams (see 17.7.3.2.4). However, the requirements have been amended to permit the use of wall-mounted smoke detectors for door release service.

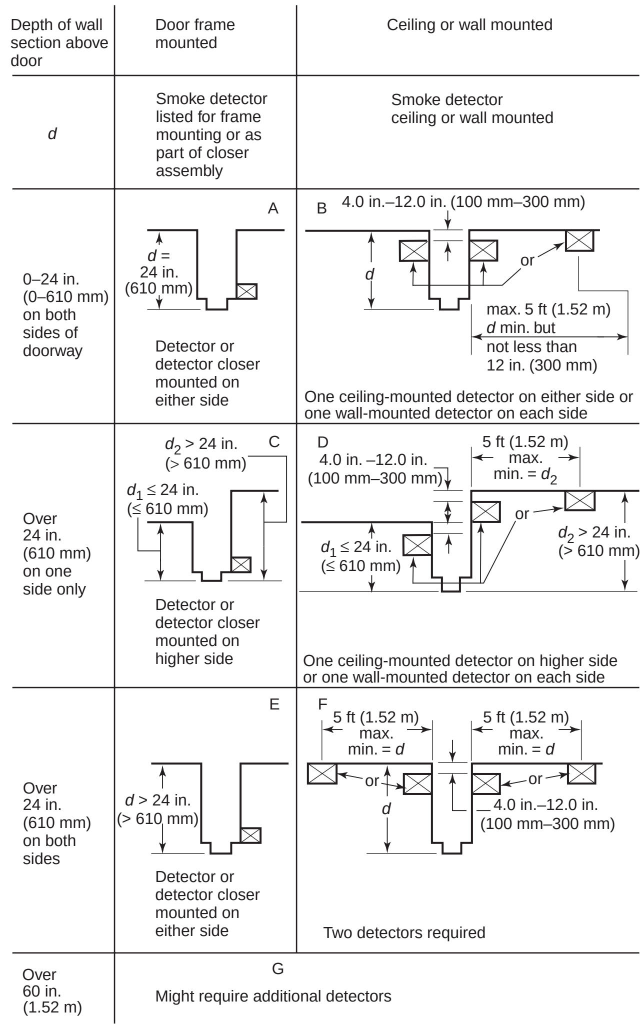


FIGURE 17.7.5.6.5.1(A) Detector Location Requirements for Wall Sections.

In the editions of the Code prior to 2007, the use of wall-mounted smoke detectors was not mentioned, implying that wall-mounted detectors were not to be used. The technical committee determined that no research supported the exclusion of the use of wall-mounted detectors in a minimum-compliance design standard.

FAQ Why are two wall-mounted detectors required as opposed to a single ceiling-mounted detector?

The requirements in 17.7.5.6.5.1(A) have been derived from a qualitative assessment of anticipated smoke flows in a corridor where smoke flow is channeled by the corridor walls but must then flow under the door header or wall section immediately above those doors for them to close automatically. For the case described in 17.7.5.6.5.1(A), only one ceiling-mounted detector is required. It can be located on either side of the smoke–control door. Under the worst-case scenario, the door-control smoke detector is on the far side of the smoke–control door relative to the source of smoke. As smoke begins to flow into a corridor, it forms a layer of smoke immediately beneath the corridor ceiling. The upper portion of the corridor will fill with smoke until it begins to spill beneath the top of the door opening. As soon as this spillage occurs, the ceiling-mounted smoke detector on the far side of the door responds, closing the door and preventing further ingress of smoke. Since the wall section is less than 24 in. (610 mm), it does not produce an inordinately long delay in response, even when the detector is on the far side of the door. However, under the same worst-case scenario, if only one wall-mounted smoke detector is used, response is delayed until smoke fills both the corridor with the source of smoke *and* the far side corridor to the level of the smoke detector. Under that circumstance, the smoke–control doors have already failed in their intended mission: to prevent the ingress of smoke into the corridor. Consequently, if the smoke detectors for door closure are mounted on the corridor walls, a smoke detector must be mounted on each side of the door.

(B) If the depth of wall section above the door is greater than 24 in. (610 mm) on one side only, one ceiling-mounted smoke detector shall be required on the higher side of the doorway only, or one wall-mounted detector shall be required on both sides of the doorway. Figure 17.7.5.6.5.1(A), part D, shall apply.

This paragraph addresses the condition illustrated in Figure 17.7.5.6.5.1(A), part D, where the depth of the wall section is greater than 24 in. (610 mm) on one side of the door only.

(C)* If the depth of wall section above the door is greater than 24 in. (610 mm) on both sides, two ceiling-mounted or wall-mounted detectors shall be required, one on each side of the doorway. Figure 17.7.5.6.5.1(A), part F, shall apply.

A.17.7.5.6.5.1(C) If the depth of wall section above the door is 60 in.(1.52 m) or greater, additional detectors might be required as indicated by an engineering evaluation.

As the average door height is a nominal 84 in. to 96 in. (2.1 m to 2.4 m), the addition of 60 in. (1.52 m) above the door results in a ceiling height as high as 13 ft (3.9 m). The data in Annex B suggest that when the ceiling height exceeds 10 ft (3 m), reduced spacing for heat detectors is required if there is to be no reduction in performance due to the higher ceilings. In the modeling of smoke detectors, a similar logic is accepted. Thus, when the height above the door exceeds 60 in. (1.52 m) on either side of the door opening, an engineering evaluation may be warranted to determine if reduced smoke detector spacing is appropriate for the specific application under consideration. The engineering evaluation would be most appropriate where the door closing is initiated only by detectors located within 5 ft (1.52 m) of the door openings. In cases where multiple devices are used for door closing operation, such as systems with full corridor detection or closing initiated by sprinkler waterflow in fully sprinklered buildings, the need for such an engineering evaluation is generally not warranted.

(D) If a detector is specifically listed for door frame mounting, or if a listed combination or integral detector–door closer assembly is used, only one detector shall be required if installed in the manner recommended by the manufacturer's published instructions. Figure 17.7.5.6.5.1(A), parts A, C, and E, shall apply.

17.7.5.6.5.2 If door release is intended to prevent smoke transmission from one space to another in one direction only, detectors located in the space to which smoke is to be confined, regardless of the depth of wall section above the door, shall be in accordance with 17.7.5.6.6. Alternatively, a smoke detector conforming with 17.7.5.6.5.1(D) shall be permitted to be used.

Occasionally, there is a need to limit smoke spread in only one direction. When that is the case, 17.7.5.6.5.2 allows the elimination of some detectors that would otherwise be required.

17.7.5.6.5.3 If there are multiple doorways, additional ceiling-mounted detectors shall be required as specified in 17.7.5.6.5.3(A) through 17.7.5.6.5.3(C).

(A) If the separation between doorways exceeds 24 in. (610 mm), each doorway shall be treated separately. Figure 17.7.5.6.5.3(A), part E, shall apply.

(B) Each group of three or more doorway openings shall be treated separately. Figure 17.7.5.6.5.3(B) shall apply.

(C) Each group of doorway openings that exceeds 20 ft (6.1 m) in width, measured at its overall extremes, shall be treated separately. Figure 17.7.5.6.5.3(C) shall apply.

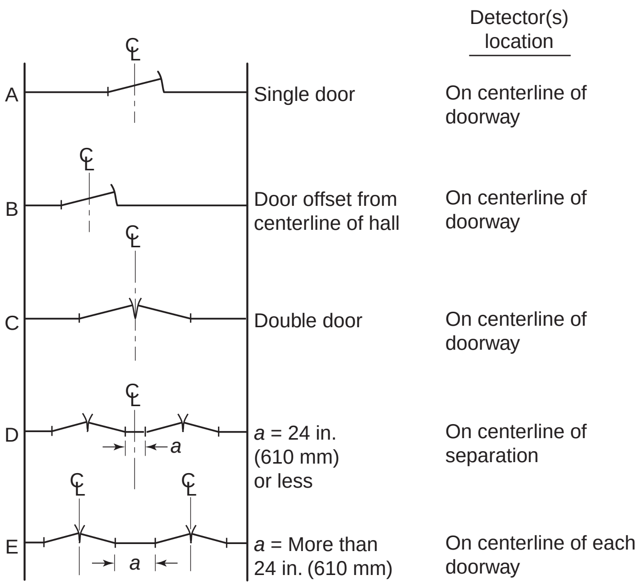


FIGURE 17.7.5.6.5.3(A) *Detector Location Requirements for Single and Double Doors.*

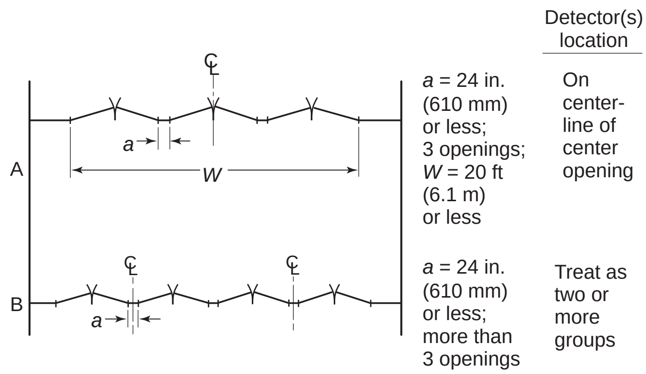


FIGURE 17.7.5.6.5.3(B) *Detector Location Requirements for Group Doorways.*

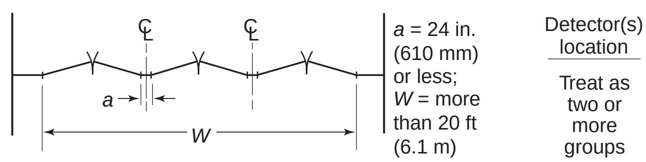


FIGURE 17.7.5.6.5.3(C) *Detector Location Requirements for Group Doorways over 20 ft (6.1 m) in Width.*

17.7.5.6.5.4 If there are multiple doorways and listed door frame–mounted detectors, or if listed combination or integral detector–door closer assemblies are used, there shall be one detector for each single or double doorway.

17.7.5.6.6 The locations of detectors shall be determined in accordance with 17.7.5.6.6.1 and 17.7.5.6.6.2.

17.7.5.6.6.1 If ceiling-mounted smoke detectors are to be installed on a smooth ceiling for a single or double doorway, they shall be located as follows *[Figure 17.7.5.6.5.3(A) shall apply]*:

(1) On the centerline of the doorway
(2) No more than 5 ft (1.5 m), measured along the ceiling and perpendicular to the doorway *[Figure 17.7.5.6.5.1(A) shall apply.]*
(3) No closer than shown in Figure 17.7.5.6.5.1(A), parts B, D, and F

17.7.5.6.6.2 If ceiling-mounted detectors are to be installed in conditions other than those outlined in 17.7.5.6.6.1, an engineering evaluation shall be made.

17.7.6 Special Considerations.

An important consideration for a designer to recognize in presenting minimum requirements is that the Code might not cover those special considerations that are unique to a specific application. The Code also might not address a particular product that allows the system to fulfill its design objective aside from the minimum prescriptive criteria in the Code. Although the Code makes every effort to establish minimum compliance criteria to address problems that have a documented history of affecting smoke detection systems, the issues addressed by the requirements of 17.7.6 cannot be assumed to be exhaustive and cover every conceivable contingency. The designer should consider all known factors in the protected area that have the potential to contribute to unwanted alarms or that could prevent the successful conveyance of smoke to the detector.

17.7.6.1 Spot-Type Detectors.

17.7.6.1.1 Combination and multi-sensor smoke detectors that have a fixed-temperature element as part of the unit shall be selected in accordance with Table 17.6.2.1 for the maximum ceiling temperature expected in service.

Refer to the defined terms *combination detector* and *multi-sensor detector* in 3.3.66.4 and 3.3.66.13, respectively. While the requirement in 17.7.6.1.1 was originally developed for application to smoke detectors that also have a heat sensor, its applicability was broadened in the 2007 edition of the Code.

The temperature rating of a fixed-temperature heat sensor incorporated into a combination or multi-sensor detector does not necessarily imply that the detector is listed for installation in spaces where the ambient temperature is as high as permitted by Table 17.6.2.1. For combination and multi-sensor detectors, care must be taken to ensure that ambient conditions fall within those listed for the detector as a whole.

In most fires, smoke detectors respond much sooner than either automatic sprinklers or heat detectors. Even in flaming fire tests, smoke detectors actuate long before typical fixed-temperature heat detectors. The difference in the speed of response becomes even more dramatic with low-energy fires. Because of this profound difference in the speed of response, adding a fixed-temperature heat detector to a smoke detector adds little to overall fire detection performance, particularly when the design criteria imply a life safety objective.

FAQ What advantage can multi-sensor detectors sometimes provide in smoke detection applications?

In the past few years, multi-sensor detectors have become available that employ ionization, photoelectric, and thermistor-type thermal sensors in a single device that utilizes a microcomputer algorithm to match the sensed conditions to known fire "signatures" stored in memory. While these detectors are tested to the same criteria in UL 268 as conventional smoke detectors, the multi-sensor architecture provides improved immunity to known false alarm sources.

17.7.6.1.2* Holes in the back of a detector shall be covered by a gasket, sealant, or equivalent means, and the detector shall be mounted so that airflow from inside or around the housing does not prevent the entry of smoke during a fire or test condition.

A.17.7.6.1.2 Airflow through holes in the rear of a smoke detector can interfere with smoke entry to the sensing chamber. Similarly, air from the conduit system can flow around the outside edges of the detector and interfere with smoke reaching the sensing chamber. Additionally, holes in the rear of a detector provide a means for entry of dust, dirt, and insects, each of which can adversely affect the detector's performance.

The conditions stated in A.17.7.6.1.2 have been encountered frequently enough to warrant inclusion of the requirements in 17.7.6.1.2. However, the list of installation-related problems in A.17.7.6.1.2 cannot be assumed to be exhaustive. Once again, the designer should be aware of any factor in the protected area that could contribute to unwanted alarms or that could prevent the successful conveyance of smoke to the detector and then take steps consistent with the manufacturer's installation instructions to address it.

17.7.6.2* High-Rack Storage. The location and spacing of smoke detectors for high-rack storage shall address the commodity, quantity, and configuration of the rack storage.

The term *high-rack storage* is a general term used to describe rack storage that could exceed 12 ft (3.7 m) in height.

A.17.7.6.2 For the most effective detection of fire in high-rack storage areas, detectors should be located on the ceiling above each aisle and at intermediate levels in the racks. This is necessary to detect smoke that is trapped in the racks at an early stage of fire development when insufficient thermal energy is released to carry the smoke to the ceiling. Earliest detection of smoke is achieved by locating the intermediate level detectors adjacent to alternate pallet sections as shown in Figure A.17.7.6.2(a) and Figure A.17.7.6.2(b). The detector manufacturer's published instructions and engineering judgment should be followed for specific installations.

A projected beam–type detector can be permitted to be used in lieu of a single row of individual spot-type smoke detectors.

Sampling ports of an air sampling–type detector can be permitted to be located above each aisle to provide coverage that is equivalent to the location of spot-type detectors. The manufacturer's published instructions and engineering judgment should be followed for the specific installation.

Fire protection for high-rack storage warehouses is a particularly difficult problem. The fuel load per unit of floor area is extremely high, and the accessibility to the fuel is relatively low. Also, the combustibility of the materials in any given rack can vary from nominally noncombustible to flammable.

The orientation of the fuel also creates vertical flues between the combustibles that produce ideal conditions for the propagation of the fire and the worst possible conditions for extinguishment. Likewise, the presence of solid shelving can create horizontal flues that materially aid in horizontal fire spread. The shelves also tend to shield the fire from water discharged by the automatic fire suppression sprinkler system and hose streams intended to extinguish the fire. These factors make early detection highly desirable so that rapid extinguishment of the fire in the incipient stages is possible. Once the fire becomes well established, it is virtually impossible to extinguish. A number of catastrophic total losses have occurred in high-rack storage facilities in the past decade.

The guidance provided for locating detectors in rack storage arrays strives to ensure that any vertical flue spaces created by the stored commodities and solid shelves are covered with a detector at some level. Care must also be used in installing detectors in these applications because they are vulnerable to damage as commodities are moved into and out of the storage racks.

Although maintaining accessibility for service and maintenance while locating detectors for both maximum speed of response and minimum exposure to damage from operations may seem impossible, it is not. System designs exist that have satisfied all three of these apparently conflicting requirements. Air sampling–type smoke detectors, with the piping network extended throughout each rack, as well as projected beam detectors, have been used successfully in this application.

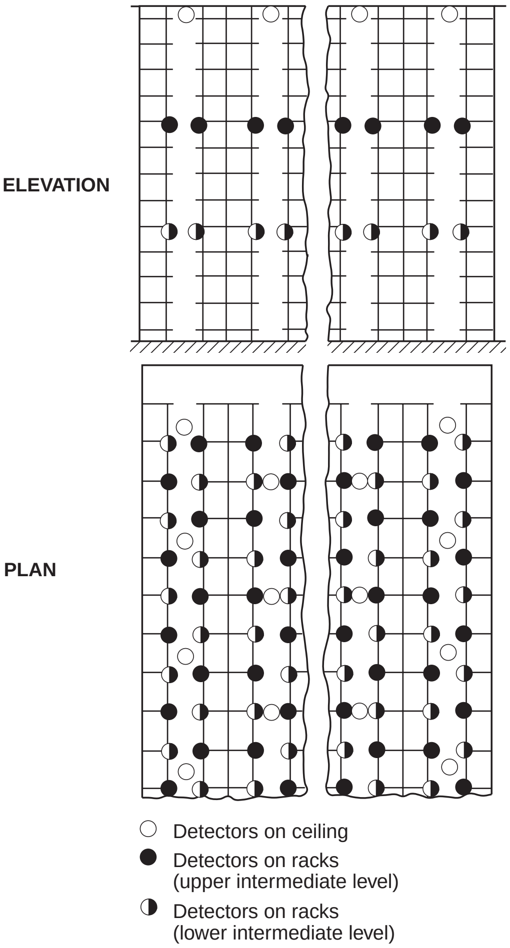


FIGURE A.17.7.6.2(a) *Detector Location for Solid Storage (Closed Rack) in Which Transverse and Longitudinal Flue Spaces Are Irregular or Nonexistent, as for Slatted or Solid Shelved Storage.*

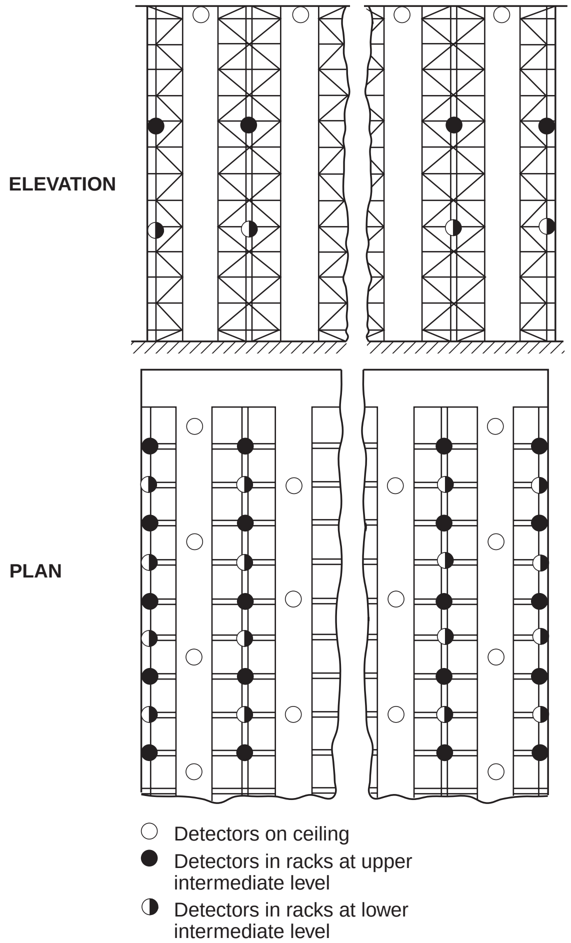


FIGURE A.17.7.6.2(b) *Detector Location for Palletized Storage (Open Rack) or No Shelved Storage in Which Regular Transverse and Longitudinal Flue Spaces Are Maintained.*

17.7.6.3 High Air Movement Areas.

17.7.6.3.1 General. The purpose and scope of 17.7.6.3 shall be to provide location and spacing guidance for smoke detectors intended for early warning of fire in high air movement areas.

Exception: Detectors provided for the control of smoke spread are covered by the requirements of 17.7.5.

17.7.6.3.2 Location. Smoke detectors shall not be located directly in the airstream of supply registers.

17.7.6.3.3* Spacing.

A.17.7.6.3.3 Smoke detector spacing depends on the movement of air within the room.

17.7.6.3.3.1 Smoke detector spacing shall be reduced where the airflow in a defined space exceeds 8 minutes per air change (total space volume) (equal to 7.5 air changes per hour).

17.7.6.3.3.2 Where spacing must be adjusted for airflow, spot-type smoke detector spacing shall be adjusted in accordance with Table 17.7.6.3.3.2 or Figure 17.7.6.3.3.2 before making any other spacing adjustments required by this Code.

TABLE 17.7.6.3.3.2 *Smoke Detector Spacing Based on Air Movement (Not to Be Used for Under-Floor or Above-Ceiling Spaces)*

Minutes per Air Change	Air Changes per Hour	Spacing per Detector	
		ft^2	m^2
1	60	125	12
2	30	250	23
3	20	375	35
4	15	500	46
5	12	625	58
6	10	750	70
7	8.6	875	81
8	7.5	900	84
9	6.7	900	84
10	6	900	84

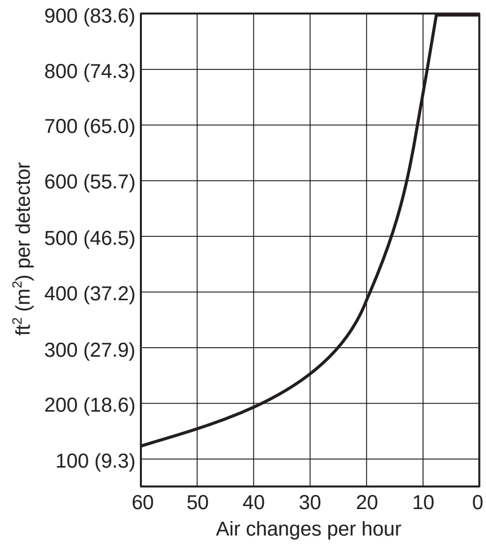


FIGURE 17.7.6.3.3.2 *High Air Movement Areas (Not to Be Used for Under-Floor or Above-Ceiling Spaces).*

The most regularly encountered example of a high air movement area is the data center (computer room). Because of the very high concentration of value in a data center, reducing the spacing of spot-type smoke detectors is common. This spacing can be derived from Table 17.7.6.3.3.2 and Figure 17.7.6.3.3.2. In some cases, an authority having jurisdiction, such as an insurance carrier, will establish a spacing criterion for such locations. Data centers are by no means the only areas that fall into this category. Usually, high air movement areas are characterized by six or more air changes per hour.

FAQ

What provisions in the Code apply to smoke detection in under-floor or above-ceiling spaces used for environmental air?

Note that Table 17.7.6.3.3.2 and Figure 17.7.6.3.3.2 are not intended to be used to compute detector spacing for spaces under the floor or above the ceiling. Under-floor and above-ceiling spaces used for environmental air are addressed in 17.7.3.5, 17.7.4.1, 17.7.4.2, and 17.7.4.3.

Table 17.7.6.3.3.2 and Figure 17.7.6.3.3.2 provide the detector spacing for high air movement ambient conditions in areas other than above-ceiling and under-floor spaces. These data were developed in the early 1980s and have not been reviewed with current technology detectors.

As air movement in these spaces increases, air currents disrupt the formation of a ceiling jet and mixing can result in dilution and other effects that can impact detection. For this reason, detector spacing is reduced as the number of air changes increases. In the majority of very high air movement areas, spot-type detectors might not be the best detectors for the application. Air-sampling detectors can offer increased sensitivity and have been used for such spaces quite successfully.

High air movement areas might not necessarily mean high air velocity at the detector or detection location. Airflow patterns at the detector locations should be measured and recorded in the system documentation.

The velocity of the air stream from supply registers supplying high air movement areas is likely to exceed 300 ft/min (1.5 m/sec), which is the maximum for which most detectors are listed. (See 17.7.1.8.) It is important to remember that when detectors are tested for a listing that includes high airflow environments, they are tested to ensure they do not render a false alarm in high airflow conditions. No test verifies that they will detect fires as quickly as they would in a non–high airflow condition. The designer should take into consideration any potential effects of high air velocity at the detector location on the ability of the detector to sense smoke from the fires it is intended to detect as well as the effect the air velocity might have on the detector stability and maintenance needs.

Some authorities having jurisdiction compute the rate of air change based on the entire air volume, including the room, under-floor plenum, and above-ceiling plenum. In other circumstances, the above-ceiling space is not part of the working air volume of the hazard area, and only the volumes of the room and the under-floor space are used to compute air changes per hour. Before the design process is begun, the HVAC system must be well understood and the designer and the authorities having jurisdiction must agree on what air volume the calculations are to be based.

The spacing adjustments in Table 17.7.6.3.3.2 and Figure 17.7.6.3.3.2 were developed from experimental data developed in the 1980s using spot-type detectors. No research has been found that allows the development of analogous spacing reductions, if any, for air sampling or projected beam smoke detection. On a qualitative basis, the principal impact of high air movement is suspected to be on the disruption of the plume and the distortion or prevention of the formation of a ceiling jet. The fire must compete with the normal air movement to establish the flow effects on which smoke detection normally relies. Since smoke detection is usually placed in high air movement areas to achieve property protection and mission continuity objects, a performance-based approach should be considered.

17.7.6.3.3.3 Air-sampling or projected beam smoke detectors shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

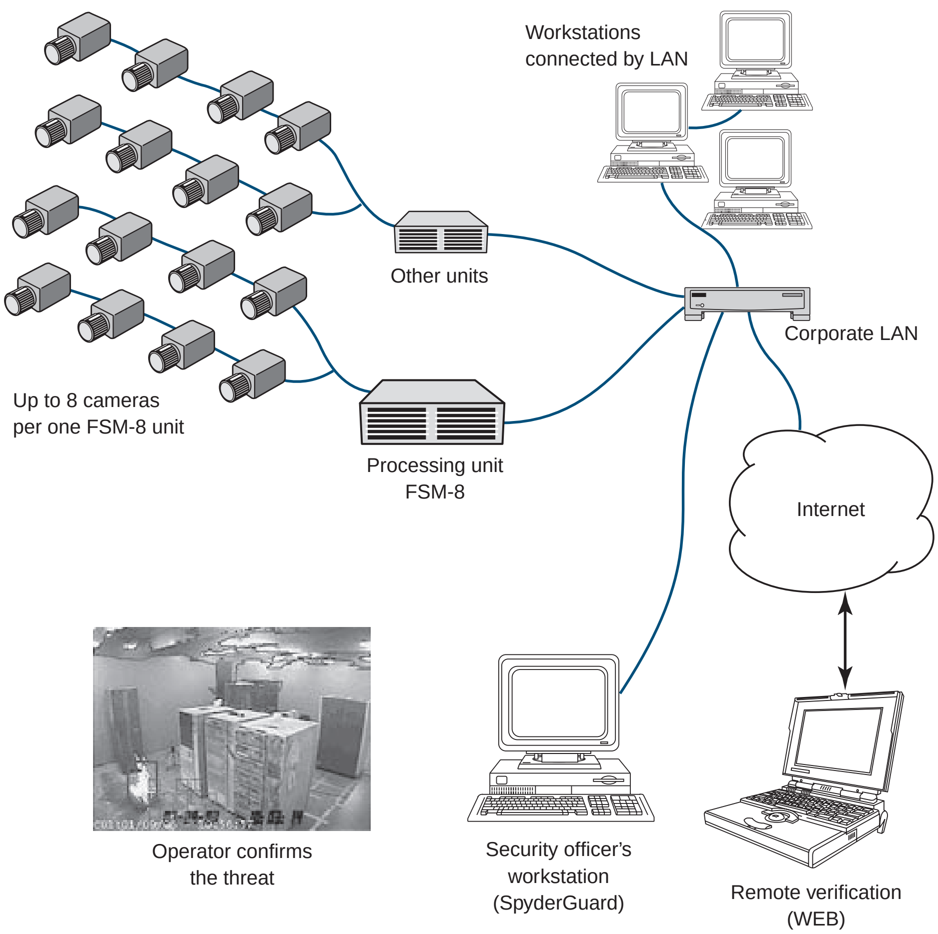
17.7.6.3.4 HVAC Mechanical Rooms. Where HVAC mechanical rooms are used as an air plenum for return air, the spacings of smoke detectors shall not be required to be reduced based on the number of air changes.

Where smoke detection is employed in HVAC mechanical rooms, the objective is to detect a fire involving the HVAC units. This objective does not require a spacing reduction. Where HVAC mechanical rooms are used as a plenum for return air, the HVAC system is the dominant mechanism for smoke transport, and reduced spacing of detectors would not improve detection response.

17.7.7 Video Image Smoke Detection.

Recently, video cameras have been used in conjunction with frame capture and comparison software in a computer for the purposes of detecting smoke. As with any new technology, the Code recognizes that video cameras offer a potentially viable solution to a particular set of fire detection problems. At least one manufacturer of this type of detection technology has had its product listed. Consequently, a section was added to the Code in the 2007 edition to establish the requirement to follow the manufacturer's application guidelines as accepted by the listing organization's testing and listing process. As with any new technology, application and device location information will develop through the product's use, and additional requirements may appear in future editions of the Code. See Exhibit 17.39 for an example of a conceptual video detection system.

EXHIBIT 17.39



Conceptual Video Detection System. (Source: axonX LLC, Sparks, MD)

17.7.7.1 Video image smoke detection systems and all of the components thereof, including hardware and software, shall be listed for the purpose of smoke detection.

The listing requirement in 17.7.7.1 places the responsibility on the organization providing the listing to evaluate the efficacy of the equipment and software for appropriateness for a defined scope of applications. The limits on the size of the monitored compartment versus the size of the fire that can be reliably detected and the limitations on the environment within the compartment necessary to permit reliable detection have not yet been established by the technical committee.

17.7.7.2 Video image smoke detection systems shall comply with all of the applicable requirements of Chapters 1, 10, 14, 17, and 23 of this Code.

A video image smoke detection system consists of one or more video cameras, a signal router or interface, and a computer to analyze the individual video image frames in real time. Chapters 1, 10, 14, 17, and 23 include requirements that are applicable to such a system because the system that serves the role of this smoke detector is a large assemblage of components with the same level of complexity as a fire alarm system. For example, all these components require power and must comply with the power supply criteria in Chapter 10. All the interconnections between cameras, interfaces, and computers must be monitored for integrity. All the components in the system must be listed for the purpose for which they are used. The alarm signal must be conveyed to a fire alarm control unit via a circuit that is monitored for integrity. The requirements in Chapters 1, 10, 14, 17, and 23 address these and many other issues that are relevant to the video image smoke detection system and are applicable in much the same way they are applicable to an air-sampling smoke detection system.

17.7.7.2.1 Systems shall be designed in accordance with the performance-based design requirements of Section 17.3.

Since prescriptive design criteria have not yet been developed for video image smoke detection, each video image smoke detection system should be designed with complete documentation, including the basis of the design, calculations demonstrating the capability of detecting the design fire over the entire volume covered by the system, and reliability calculations demonstrating that the system will be adequately reliable over the maintenance interval for the system. Section B.2 provides guidance on the performance-based design method.

17.7.7.2.2 The location and spacing of video image smoke detectors shall comply with the requirements of 17.11.5.

Section 17.11 provides general rules for detection technologies that are not explicitly itemized in this chapter. Subsection 17.11.5 establishes general spacing and location rules that are deemed applicable to video image smoke detection systems.

17.7.7.3* Video signals generated by cameras that are components of video image smoke detection systems shall be permitted to be transmitted to other systems for other uses only through output connections provided specifically for that purpose by the video system manufacturer.

A.17.7.7.3 Facility owners and managers might desire to use cameras and their images for purposes other than smoke detection. The intent of this paragraph is not to prohibit additional uses, but to ensure the integrity of the life safety smoke detection mission of the equipment.

FAQ What types of applications are suitable for video detection systems?

Video image smoke detection systems are best suited for large open spaces with high value assets that warrant such protection. In many cases, the facility security system includes cameras to monitor the space during unoccupied times to maintain surveillance. There is little basis for two sets of cameras, one for smoke detection and a second for surveillance. Paragraph 17.7.7.3 permits the video signal to be shared as long as the equipment and the software that allow the sharing are listed for the purpose and the system ensures that the security use of the signal does not interfere with the fire safety use of the signal.

17.7.7.4* All component controls and software shall be protected from unauthorized changes. All changes to the software or component settings shall be tested in accordance with Chapter 14.

A.17.7.7.4 Video image smoke detection control and software should be protected from tampering by passwords, software keys, or other means of limiting access to authorized/qualified personnel. Component settings include any control or programming that might affect the operation of coverage of the detection. This includes, but is not limited to, camera focus, field of view, motion sensitivity settings, and change of camera position. Any changes in component settings or ambient conditions that affect the design performance of the detector should initiate a trouble signal.

Since this technology is new and experience with it is limited, only a general requirement has been established by the technical committee. Video image smoke detection systems operate by comparing the view of the hazard area to earlier views of the hazard area and initiate alarm signals when the changes in groups of pixels are consistent with the presence of smoke in the monitored space. Changes in camera position, focus, contrast setting, field of view, ambient lighting, and the criteria in the software for a smoke detection decision all can affect the reliability of the system as a smoke detection means. The system must be designed to provide protection against unauthorized changes that could affect the system's performance or reliability. Any intentional changes must be subject to the acceptance testing criteria in Chapter 14.

17.8 Radiant Energy–Sensing Fire Detectors

The term *radiant energy–sensing fire detectors* encompasses both of the terms *flame detectors* and *spark/ember detectors*. (See the definitions in 3.3.66.8, 3.3.66.17, and 3.3.66.21.) The physics that govern the operation of both types of detectors is largely the same. However, the applications of the two different types of radiant energy–sensing detectors are radically different. Flame detectors are generally employed in large open spaces where lines of sight from the detector to the anticipated fire location are clear and ambient lighting is normal. Such spaces include fuel loading racks, aircraft hangars, electrostatic paint booths, and petroleum production and processing facilities. Spark/ember detectors are usually used on pneumatic-conveying system duct work, enclosed belt conveyors and other normally dark locations found in wood processing and woodworking plants, refuse-derived fuel plants, chemical plants, and other facilities where combustible particulate solids are processed or conveyed.

The design approach recognized for radiant energy–sensing fire detectors is a performance-based approach. This type of detector has no prescriptive spacing nor a uniform test standard that results in detectors from different manufacturers all having roughly equivalent sensitivities. The opposite is the case. Each make and model detector has unique performance attributes and the system design must take into account those design attributes.

For each type of radiant energy–sensing detector, the fire to be detected must be quantified in terms of an energy release rate (power), usually measured in terms of British thermal units per second or kilowatts for flame detectors and milliwatts or microwatts for spark/ember detectors. A worst-case scenario is considered where the "design fire" is situated in the least favorable location relative to the detector. The universal response equation is solved using the sensitivity parameter published for the detector (and verified by the organization providing the listing) to determine whether the detector will respond to the worst-case scenario. This process is repeated with each location or detector in the design. This design method is the only one recognized by the Code. A detailed description of the design method is provided in Annex B.

17.8.1* General.

A.17.8.1 For the purpose of this Code, radiant energy includes the electromagnetic radiation emitted as a by-product of the combustion reaction, which obeys the laws of optics. This includes radiation in the ultraviolet, visible, and infrared portions of the spectrum emitted by flames or glowing embers. These portions of the spectrum are distinguished by wavelengths as shown in Table A.17.8.1.

TABLE A.17.8.1 *Spectrum Wavelength Ranges*

Radiant Energy	*μm*
Ultraviolet	0.1–0.35
Visible	0.36–0.75
Infrared	0.76–220

Conversion factors: 1.0 μm = 1000 nm = 10,000 Å.

The radiant emissions from an ember and a flame are very different. Furthermore, flame detectors and spark/ember detectors are used in very different contexts. Although they share similar physical principles, the ways in which they are applied differ. Paragraphs 3.3.66.8 and 3.3.66.21 provide definitions for these two types of detectors.

Subsection A.17.8.1 clarifies the distinction drawn in the Code between heat (which is commonly detected with heat detectors using convective heat transfer) and radiant energy (which is detected with either flame or spark/ember detectors using electro-optical methods to sense sparks, embers, and flames). See 3.3.314 for the definition of the term *wavelength* and A.3.3.314 for associated explanatory material.

17.8.1.1 The radiant energy detection design documentation shall state the required performance objective of the system.

The design documentation should clearly state the performance objective of the system and the criteria that are used to demonstrate attainment of that objective. This language parallels the language of 17.6.1.1 and 17.7.1.1. The requirements in Section 17.8 establish criteria for radiant energy–sensing detectors in performance-based terms that can be addressed only through a performance-based design.

17.8.1.2 The purpose and scope of Section 17.8 shall be to provide requirements for the selection, location, and spacing of fire detectors that sense the radiant energy produced by burning substances. These detectors shall be categorized as flame detectors and spark/ember detectors.

17.8.2* Fire Characteristics and Detector Selection.

When using radiant energy–sensing detectors, the designer must match the detector to the radiant emissions, or signature, of the flame or spark/ember to be detected. The designer must do so with a degree of precision and attention to detail that is not generally required with other types of detectors.

The requirements of Chapter 17 effectively direct the system designer to work through an analysis to arrive at the most appropriate detector for the fire hazard under consideration. The first decision is whether flame detection or spark/ember detection is the most appropriate type of radiant energy–sensing fire detector. The type of detector is often determined by the physical state of the material involved in the fire.

FAQ What is the difference between gas-phase combustion and solid-phase combustion?

Combustion occurs in the gas phase and in the solid phase. Flammable gases, flammable liquids, combustible liquids, and many combustible solids will support the formation of a flame (see the defined term *flame* in 3.3.112). With a flame, the combustion takes place in the gas phase, regardless of the physical state of the unburned fuel. The heat from the combustion gasifies the fuel, allowing it to mix with air, supporting the flame. Because gas molecules are free to vibrate in free space, the flame spectra show typical emission spikes that indicate flame intermediates and products. Flame detectors respond to the radiant emissions that occur as the result of gas-phase chemical combustion reactions that take place in the flame.

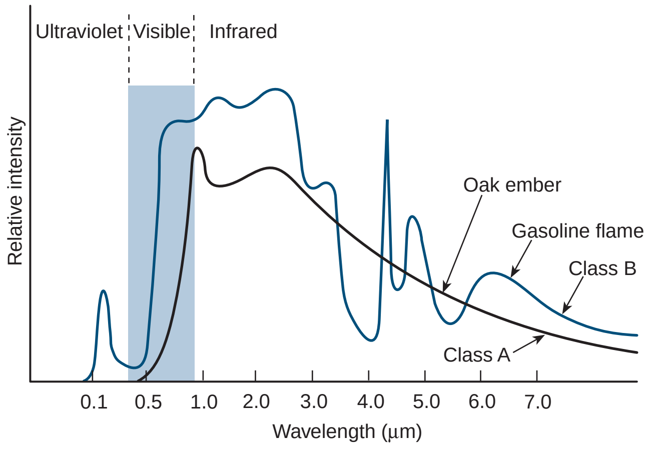
Many solids also burn in the solid phase as embers (see the defined term *ember* in 3.3.84). In solid-phase combustion, the molecules on the surface of the fuel particle are oxidized off the surface of the particle without the development of a layer of gasified fuel, which could produce a true flame. Therefore, combustion intermediates (partially oxidized molecules) and often combustion products are locked up on the surface of the fuel particle and are not free to assume the diverse vibrational states of a gas-phase molecule. Consequently, the radiant emissions in solid-phase combustion are profoundly different from those in gas-phase combustion. This difference in combustion radiant emissions necessitates different types of radiant energy–sensing detectors for the different physical combustion states. Spark/ember detectors are designed to respond to the infrared emissions that occur as the result of solid-phase combustion reactions that occur in the surface of a solid fuel. While most spark/ember detectors will respond to a flame, most flame detectors will not respond to a glowing ember.

In an effort to reduce unwanted alarms from non-fire radiant-emission sources, flame detector designers have developed detectors that look for specific radiant-emission wavelengths that are uniquely associated with the combustion process of particular fuels. The result is detectors that will detect one type of radiant emissions from one class of fuels but will be virtually blind to fires involving other combustibles. A thorough understanding of how these detectors operate is necessary if they are to be properly applied. See Exhibits 17.40 through 17.45 for examples of spectral response characteristics of commonly encountered flame detectors.

A.17.8.2 Following are operating principles for two types of detectors:

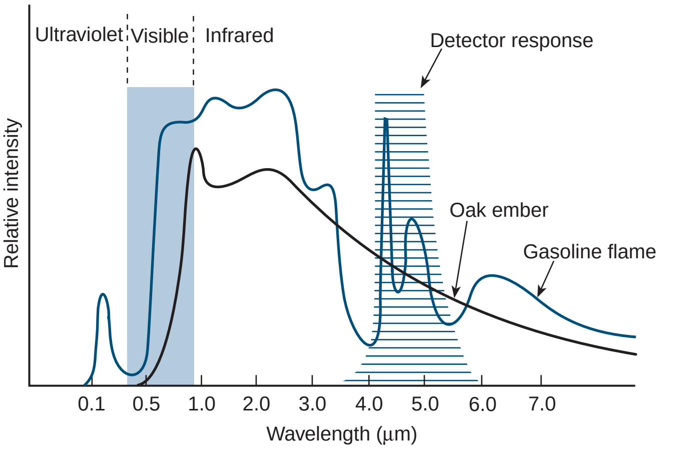
(1) *Flame Detectors.* Ultraviolet flame detectors typically use a vacuum photodiode Geiger–Muller tube to detect the ultraviolet radiation that is produced by a flame. The photodiode allows a burst of current to flow for each ultraviolet photon that hits the active area of the tube. When the number of current bursts per unit time reaches a predetermined level, the detector initiates an alarm. A single wavelength infrared flame detector uses one of several different photocell types to detect the infrared emissions in a single wavelength band that are produced by a flame. These detectors generally include provisions to minimize alarms from commonly occurring infrared sources such as incandescent lighting or sunlight. An ultraviolet/infrared (UV/IR) flame detector senses ultraviolet radiation with a vacuum photodiode tube and a selected wavelength of infrared radiation with a photocell and uses the combined signal to indicate a fire. These detectors need exposure to both types of radiation before an alarm signal can be initiated. A multiple wavelength infrared (IR/IR) flame detector

EXHIBIT 17.40



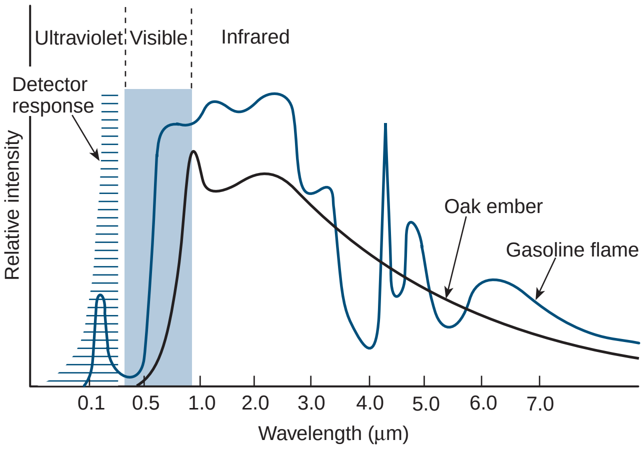
Emission Spectral Response of Class A and Class B Combustibles. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)

EXHIBIT 17.41



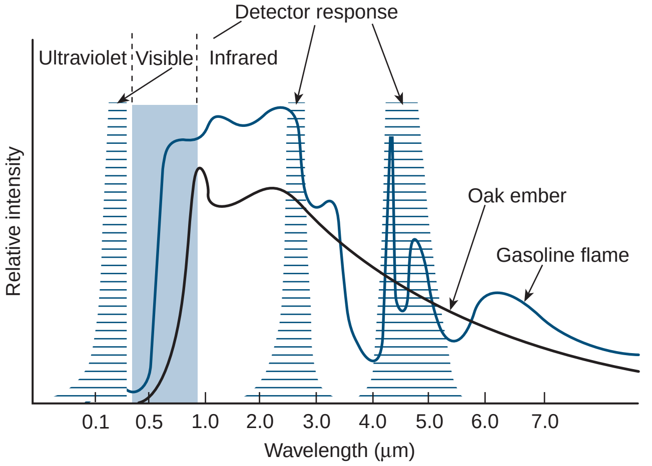
Spectral Response of Single Wavelength Infrared Flame Detector Superimposed on Spectrum of Typical Radiators. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)

EXHIBIT 17.42



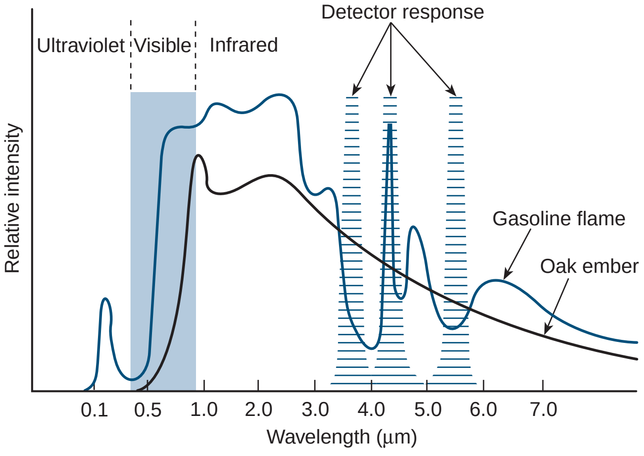
Spectral Response of Ultraviolet (UV) Flame Detector Superimposed on Spectrum of Typical Radiators. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)

EXHIBIT 17.43



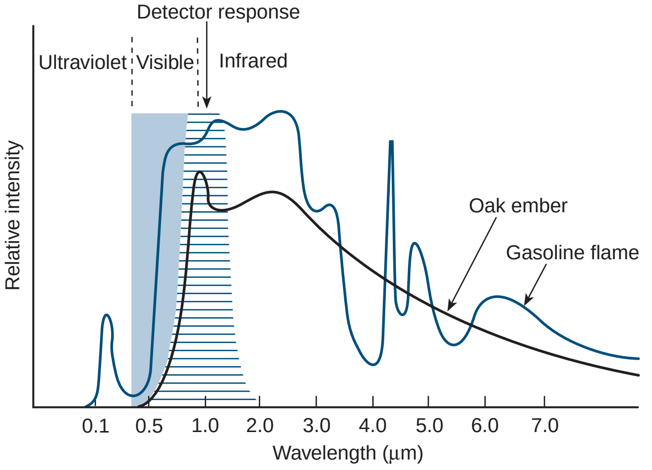
Spectral Response of Ultraviolet/Infrared (UV/IR) Flame Detector Superimposed on Spectrum of Typical Radiators. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)

EXHIBIT 17.44



Spectral Response of Multiple Wavelength Infrared (IR/IR) Flame Detector Superimposed on Spectrum of Typical Radiators. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)

EXHIBIT 17.45



Spectral Response of Infrared Spark/Ember Detector Superimposed on Spectrum of Typical Radiators. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)

senses radiation at two or more narrow bands of wavelengths in the infrared spectrum. These detectors electronically compare the emissions between the bands and initiate a signal where the relationship between the two bands indicates a fire.

Some UV/IR flame detectors require radiant emissions at 0.2 microns (μm) (UV) and 2.5 μm (IR). Other UV/IR flame detectors require radiant emissions at 0.2 μm (UV) and nominal 4.7 μm (IR).

Some IR/IR flame detectors compare radiant emissions at 4.3 μm (IR) to a reference at nominal 3.8 μm (IR). Other IR/IR flame detectors use a nominal 5.6 μm (IR) reference.

Different products use different slices of the spectrum for detection. The designer must verify that the fuels in the hazard area emit radiation at the wavelengths that the detectors use for detection.

(2) *Spark/Ember Detectors.* A spark/ember-sensing detector usually uses a solid state photodiode or phototransistor to sense the radiant energy emitted by embers, typically between 0.5 microns and 2.0 microns in normally dark environments. These detectors can be made extremely sensitive (microwatts), and their response times can be made very short (microseconds).

17.8.2.1* The type and quantity of radiant energy–sensing fire detectors shall be determined on the basis of the performance characteristics of the detector and an analysis of the hazard, including the burning characteristics of the fuel, the fire growth rate, the environment, the ambient conditions, and the capabilities of the extinguishing media and equipment.

A.17.8.2.1 The radiant energy from a flame or spark/ember is comprised of emissions in various bands of the ultraviolet, visible, and infrared portions of the spectrum. The relative quantities of radiation emitted in each part of the spectrum are determined by the fuel chemistry, the temperature, and the rate of combustion. The detector should be matched to the characteristics of the fire.

Almost all materials that participate in flaming combustion emit ultraviolet radiation to some degree during flaming combustion, whereas only carbon-containing fuels emit significant radiation at the 4.35 micron (carbon dioxide) band used by many detector types to detect a flame. *(See Figure A.17.8.2.1.)*

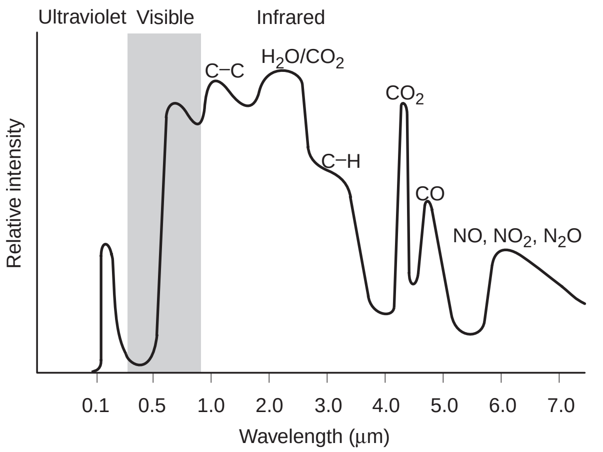


FIGURE A.17.8.2.1 *Spectrum of a Typical Flame (Free-Burning Gasoline).*

The radiant energy emitted from an ember is determined primarily by the fuel temperature (Planck's law emissions) and the emissivity of the fuel. Radiant energy from an ember is primarily infrared and, to a lesser degree, visible in wavelength. In general, embers do not emit ultraviolet energy in significant quantities (0.1 percent of total emissions) until the ember achieves temperatures of 3240°F (1727°C or 2000°K). In most cases, the emissions are included in the band of 0.8 microns to 2.0 microns, corresponding to temperatures of approximately 750°F to 1830°F (398°C to 1000°C).

Most radiant energy detectors have some form of qualification circuitry within them that uses time to help distinguish between spurious, transient signals and legitimate fire alarms.

These circuits become very important where the anticipated fire scenario and the ability of the detector to respond to that anticipated fire are considered. For example, a detector that uses an integration circuit or a timing circuit to respond to the flickering light from a fire might not respond well to a deflagration resulting from the ignition of accumulated combustible vapors and gases, or where the fire is a spark that is traveling up to 328 ft/sec (100 m/sec) past the detector. Under these circumstances, a detector that has a high-speed response capability is most appropriate. On the other hand, in applications where the development of the fire is slower, a detector that uses time for the confirmation of repetitive signals is appropriate. Consequently, the fire growth rate should be considered in selecting the detector. The detector performance should be selected to respond to the anticipated fire.

The radiant emissions are not the only criteria to be considered. The medium between the anticipated fire and the detector is also very important. Different wavelengths of radiant energy are absorbed with varying degrees of efficiency by materials that are suspended in the air or that accumulate on the optical surfaces of the detector. Generally, aerosols and surface deposits reduce the sensitivity of the detector. The detection technology used should take into account those normally occurring aerosols and surface deposits to minimize the reduction of system response between maintenance intervals. It should be noted that the smoke evolved from the combustion of middle and heavy fraction petroleum distillates is highly absorptive in the ultraviolet end of the spectrum. If using this type of detection, the system should be designed to minimize the effect of smoke interference on the response of the detection system.

The environment and ambient conditions anticipated in the area to be protected impact the choice of detector. All detectors have limitations on the range of ambient temperatures over which they will respond, consistent with their tested or approved sensitivities. The designer should make certain that the detector is compatible with the range of ambient temperatures anticipated in the area in which it is installed. In addition, rain, snow, and ice attenuate both ultraviolet and infrared radiation to varying degrees. Where anticipated, provisions should be made to protect the detector from accumulations of these materials on its optical surfaces.

17.8.2.2* The selection of the radiant energy–sensing detectors shall be based on the following:

(1) Matching of the spectral response of the detector to the spectral emissions of the fire or fires to be detected
(2) Minimizing the possibility of spurious nuisance alarms from non-fire sources inherent to the hazard area

A.17.8.2.2 Normal radiant emissions that are not from a fire can be present in the hazard area. When selecting a detector for an area, other potential sources of radiant emissions should be evaluated. Refer to A.17.8.2.1 for additional information.

The designer must select the most appropriate detector model or technology only after the type of combustion has been determined and the decision regarding type of detector to be used has been made.

FAQ What must be determined before the designer can select the most appropriate detector?

The expected emission spectrum from the fuel is matched to the wavelength bands of the candidate detector to ensure response to the fire, using the criteria stated in the detector manufacturer's engineering manual. The performance capabilities of the detector must be matched with the known radiant emissions of the fuel. To ascertain that the detector is appropriate for the fuels to be detected, the designer can use the performance attributes that were verified by a qualified testing laboratory during the listing evaluation.

The candidate detector must then be evaluated for its unwanted alarm immunity with respect to the ambient or false alarm sources anticipated in the hazard area. The information provided in A.17.8.2.1 also relates to 17.8.2.2(2) and should be used as guidance.

Finally, the designer must consider the impact of the full range of expected ambient conditions on both the detection capability and the stability of the candidate detector. Both flame detectors and spark/ember detectors are routinely installed outdoors, where they are exposed to the weather and fluctuations in temperature.

Special attention must be given to the temperature range limits and other limiting weather-related conditions that are specified by the manufacturer. Such attention will help ensure that the detector has been qualified for the anticipated extremes. The prudent designer will document the decision-making process in writing for future reference.

17.8.3 Spacing Considerations.

The spacing considerations for radiant energy–sensing fire detectors in 17.8.3 are derived from the physics of light transmission. This method contrasts with fire plume dynamics and fluid flow physics, which govern the spacing of heat and smoke detectors. Consequently, when using radiant energy–sensing fire detectors, the designer must determine the spacing of the detectors by the location and aiming of the devices.

In turn, the location and the aiming of the detectors are determined by two critical factors: the *field of view* of the detector (see the defined term in 3.3.100) and the sensitivity of the detector (see the defined terms in 3.3.114, *flame detector sensitivity,* and 3.3.277, *spark/ember detector sensitivity*).

17.8.3.1 General Rules.

17.8.3.1.1* Radiant energy–sensing fire detectors shall be employed consistent with the listing or approval and the inverse square law, which defines the fire size versus distance curve for the detector.

A.17.8.3.1.1 All optical detectors respond according to the following theoretical equation:

$$S = \frac{kP^{-e\zeta d}}{d^2}$$

where:

S = radiant power reaching the detector
k = proportionality constant for the detector
P = radiant power emitted by the fire
e = Naperian logarithm base (2.7183)
ζ = extinction coefficient of air
d = distance between the fire and the detector

The sensitivity (S) typically is measured in nanowatts. This equation yields a family of curves similar to the one shown in Figure A.17.8.3.1.1.

The curve defines the maximum distance at which the detector consistently detects a fire of defined size and fuel. Detectors should be employed only in the shaded area above the curve.

Under the best of conditions, with no atmospheric absorption, the radiant power reaching the detector is reduced by a factor of 4 if the distance between the detector and the fire is doubled. For the consumption of the atmospheric extinction, the exponential term zeta (ζ) is added to the equation. Zeta is a measure of the clarity of the air at the wavelength under consideration. Zeta is affected by humidity, dust, and any other contaminants in the air that are absorbent at the wavelength in question. Zeta generally has values between −0.001 and −0.1 for normal ambient air.

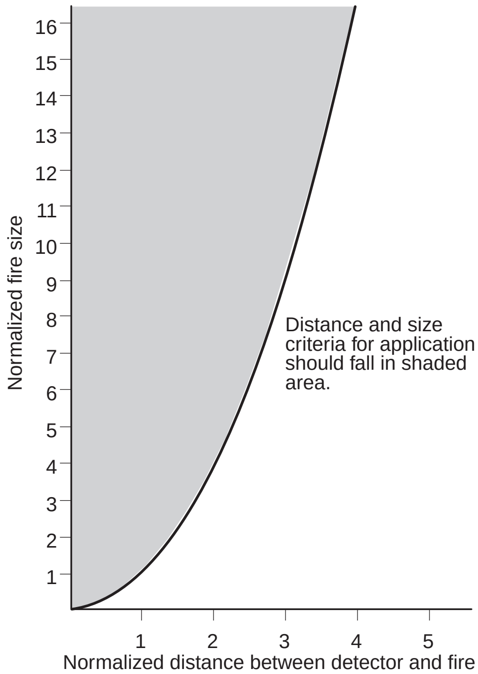


FIGURE A.17.8.3.1.1 *Normalized Fire Size vs. Distance.*

The inverse square law modeled by the relationship shown in A.17.8.3.1.1 relates the size of the fire, the detector sensitivity, and the distance between the fire and the detector. The inverse square law applies to all radiant energy–sensing detectors. However, two tacit assumptions are made when the inverse square law is used for modeling the performance of flame detectors.

The first assumption is that the fire is small and far away from the detector. This assumption permits modeling the fire as a point source. When the fire is modeled as a point source, all of the radiant power is thought of as emanating from a single point. The alternative would be to model the fire as a portion of the field of view. This alternative approach requires the use of advanced calculus and is far more difficult for the average designer.

The second assumption is that the flame is assumed to be "optically dense," meaning that radiation from the back side of the flame does not pass through the flame. Generally, because flame intermediates absorb radiation at the same wavelengths at which they emit radiation, this assumption holds true.

Using the inverse square law enables the design engineer to compute with considerable precision how large the fire must get before enough radiant energy hits the detector to cause an alarm. These calculations are critical because they help determine the number of detectors of given sensitivity, location, and aiming that are necessary to detect a fire of given size.

An important point to remember is that fire size is quantified in units of power output, either British thermal units per second or kilowatts, regardless of the type of radiant energy–sensing fire detector under consideration. Also the normally assumed 35 percent radiative fraction used in other fire calculations is not used when quantifying the power output of a fire in this context. The sensitivity of radiant energy–sensing detectors is derived from listing evaluations performed by the listing agency. The listing evaluations use the whole fire output as the metric.

Finally, for flame detectors, the numerical value of zeta (ξ) is determined by the set of wavelengths that were chosen for sensing and reference in the detector architecture and the atmospheric absorption at those wavelengths. The numerical value for ξ should be stated on the detector engineering and installation documentation. A design cannot be performed in accordance with this Code if the value of ξ for the detector is not provided. Keep in mind that if the air is contaminated with vapors or gases not normally in the air, the value of ξ has probably changed. Consult the detector manufacturer for guidance. Refer to Section B.5 for the design process.

In the design of spark/ember detectors, the extinction factor, ξ, is the measure of the opacity of the fuel particulate at the detector operating wavelengths. The extinction relation is used to address the absorption of ember radiation by the nonburning fuel particles between the ember and the detector. In the spark/ember detection context, ξ is determined by the combustible.

17.8.3.1.2 Detector quantity shall be based on the detectors being positioned so that no point requiring detection in the hazard area is obstructed or outside the field of view of at least one detector.

A flame detector or spark/ember detector cannot detect what it cannot "see." The definition of the term *field of view* in 3.3.100 has a sensitivity criterion attached to it. Field of view is the angle off the optical axis of the detector where the effective sensitivity is 50 percent of the on-axis sensitivity.

All points where a fire can exist in the hazard area must be within the field of view of at least one detector, as required by 17.8.3.1.2. This requirement also effectively demands that the manufacturer provide sensitivity versus angle of incidence data in its engineering manual.

FAQ

What is usually required when flame detectors are used to release extinguishing agents?

When flame detectors are used to release extinguishing agents, such as aqueous film-forming foam (AFFF), alarm signals from two or more detectors are usually required before the agent is released. Under those circumstances, the designer should apply 17.8.3.1.2 in a manner that requires all points in the hazard area where a fire can exist to be within the fields of view of the number of detectors required to discharge the extinguishing agent. Otherwise, the fire could occur in a portion of the hazard area that is within the field of view of only one detector. The release of the extinguishing agent would be delayed until the fire grows to a size sufficient to alarm the additional confirmation detector(s). This situation would result in far more fire damage and a greater threat of loss of life.

The requirements in 17.8.3.1.1 and 17.8.3.1.2 pertain to both flame and spark/ember detectors. Other design considerations are more specific to one type of detector or the other. These considerations are addressed in 17.8.3.2 for flame detectors and 17.8.3.3 for spark/ember detectors, respectively.

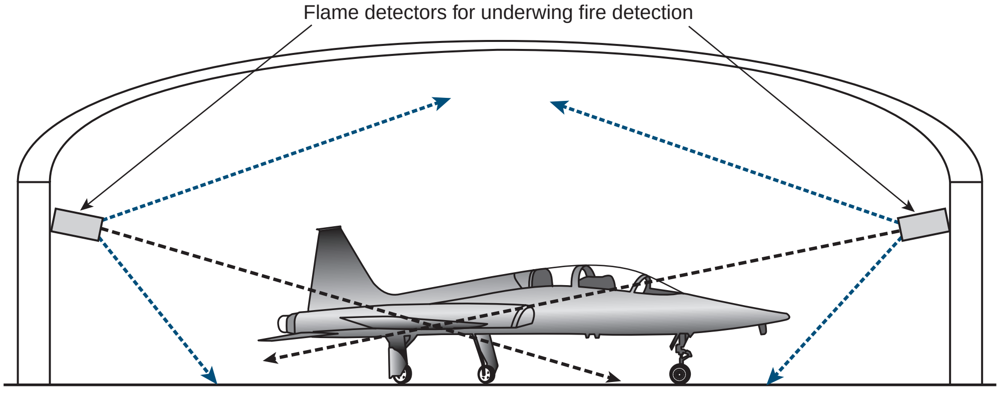
17.8.3.2 Spacing Considerations for Flame Detectors.

17.8.3.2.1* The location and spacing of detectors shall be the result of an engineering evaluation that includes the following:

(1) Size of the fire that is to be detected
(2) Fuel involved
(3) Sensitivity of the detector
(4) Field of view of the detector
(5) Distance between the fire and the detector
(6) Radiant energy absorption of the atmosphere
(7) Presence of extraneous sources of radiant emissions
(8) Purpose of the detection system
(9) Response time required

In the context of 17.8.3.2.1, the term *spacing* includes the number, location, and aiming of the detectors selected for the hazard area. In every system design using flame detectors, the location of each unit in the system must address the criteria listed in 17.8.3.2.1. Exhibit 17.46 depicts a typical flame detector application.

EXHIBIT 17.46



Typical Application for Flame Detection. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)

Product development in the field of radiant energy–sensing fire detection has been vigorous. New design concepts are introduced frequently. Consequently, at the current rate of change, providing an exhaustive list of the available technologies in the Code or the Code handbook is impossible.

Recently, microcomputer-based multi-spectrum flame detectors have become available that use a microcomputer to evaluate emissions from four, five, and possibly six different bands in the UV, visible, and IR regions. However, the wavelength bands and operational architecture of these multi-spectrum devices have not yet been disclosed in sufficient detail to provide the Technical Committee on Initiating Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems with the requisite information for inclusion in this edition of the Code.

Paragraph 17.8.3.2.1 states the criteria that must be considered during the decision-making process the designer uses to select a flame detector and then apply it to a given location. The commentary following 17.8.3.2.2 provides additional insight into how the decision-making process is driven by the detector performance criteria and the anticipated fire and hazard environment.

A.17.8.3.2.1 The following are types of application for which flame detectors are suitable:

(1) High-ceiling, open-spaced buildings such as warehouses and aircraft hangars
(2) Outdoor or semioutdoor areas where winds or drafts can prevent smoke from reaching a heat or smoke detector
(3) Areas where rapidly developing flaming fires can occur, such as aircraft hangars, petrochemical production areas, storage and transfer areas, natural gas installations, paint shops, or solvent areas
(4) Areas needing high fire risk machinery or installations, often coupled with an automatic gas extinguishing system
(5) Environments that are unsuitable for other types of detectors

Some extraneous sources of radiant emissions that have been identified as interfering with the stability of flame detectors include the following:

(1) Sunlight
(2) Lightning
(3) X-rays
(4) Gamma rays
(5) Cosmic rays
(6) Ultraviolet radiation from arc welding
(7) Electromagnetic interference (EMI, RFI)
(8) Hot objects
(9) Artificial lighting

A single detector type or model is unlikely to be susceptible to all or even a majority of the unwanted alarm sources listed in A.17.8.3.2.1. Different types and models of flame detectors exhibit different degrees of susceptibility to some of these sources. Despite the best intentions and ardent efforts of flame detector manufacturers, the completely nuisance alarm–proof radiant energy–sensing detector has not yet been invented.

17.8.3.2.2 The system design shall specify the size of the flaming fire of given fuel that is to be detected.

Paragraph 17.8.3.2.2 is a performance-based code requirement. Because of the complexities inherent in the design of flame detection systems, a performance criterion must drive the design. The performance criterion is the detection of a fire of specified size and fuel.

Fire size is usually measured in British thermal units per second or in kilowatts, but more information is necessary in this context because flames are optically dense radiators. With optically dense radiators, the radiation from the back side of the flame does not travel through the flame toward the detector. Instead, the radiation is reabsorbed by the flame. Consequently, the flame detector "sees" only the profile of the fire, that is, its width and height.

The flame height is proportional to the heat release rate (British thermal units per second or kilowatts). Consequently, both fire width and heat release rate are necessary to quantify the size of a fire. Many designers have not yet made the conversion from simply stipulating a fire size criterion in terms of a pool fire of given fuel and area.

Annex B outlines a detailed design method for flame detection systems. The design fire is specified and the fire flame height calculated. The radiating area of the fire is then calculated. Next, the radiant output of the fire is correlated to the sensitivity tests performed by a testing laboratory in the course of the listing evaluation. The correlated radiant density per unit of flame area is then assigned to the design fire, and the radiant output is calculated based on the radiant output per unit area times the radiating area of the fire. The design fire is then modeled as a point source radiator having the calculated radiant output. See Section B.5.

17.8.3.2.3* In applications where the fire to be detected could occur in an area not on the optical axis of the detector, the distance shall be reduced or detectors shall be added to compensate for the angular displacement of the fire in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

A.17.8.3.2.3 The greater the angular displacement of the fire from the optical axis of the detector, the larger the fire must become before it is detected. This phenomenon establishes the field of view of the detector. Figure A.17.8.3.2.3 shows an example of the effective sensitivity versus angular displacement of a flame detector.

17.8.3.2.4* In applications in which the fire to be detected is of a fuel that differs from the test fuel used in the process of listing or approval, the distance between the detector and the fire shall be adjusted consistent with the fuel specificity of the detector as established by the manufacturer.

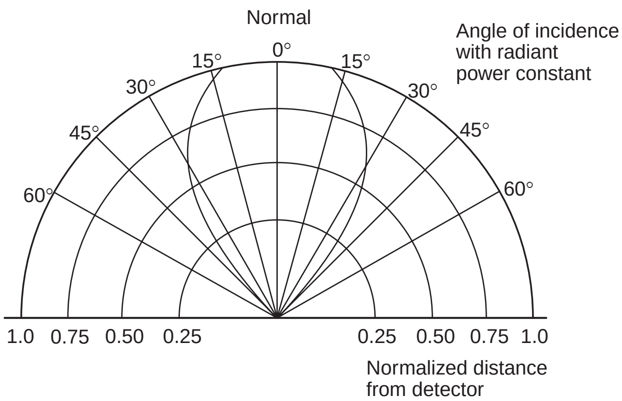


FIGURE A.17.8.3.2.3 *Normalized Sensitivity vs. Angular Displacement.*

A.17.8.3.2.4 Virtually all radiant energy–sensing detectors exhibit some kind of fuel specificity. If burned at uniform rates [W (J/sec)], different fuels emit different levels of radiant power in the ultraviolet, visible, and infrared portions of the spectrum. Under free-burn conditions, a fire of given surface area but of different fuels burns at different rates [W (J/sec)] and emits varying levels of radiation in each of the major portions of the spectrum. Most radiant energy detectors designed to detect flame are qualified on the basis of a defined fire under specific conditions. If employing these detectors for fuels other than the defined fire, the designer should make certain that the appropriate adjustments to the maximum distance between the detector and the fire are made consistent with the fuel specificity of the detector.

In an effort to make flame detectors more sensitive yet more immune to unwanted alarms, manufacturers began designing detectors that concentrated on very specific features of the flame spectrum. These features include the emissions of the flame across the range of wavelengths from UV to IR. In concept, such flame detectors infer that a flame exists if an emission of a specific wavelength or set of wavelengths is detected. However, one fuel emits a different radiant intensity at a given wavelength than another fuel. This characteristic gives rise to detectors that are fuel-specific. In some cases, a flame detector may be several times more sensitive to one fuel than to another.

FAQ What must the designer obtain in order to ensure the proper spacing of the detectors?

The language of 17.8.3.2.4 effectively requires the designer to obtain flame spectra of potential fuels in the hazard area and response curves from the detector manufacturer to make certain the detector will respond to the fuel(s) involved. Furthermore, if the detector chosen for the system is less sensitive to one of the fuels in the hazard area, the spacing (including quantity, location, and aiming) of the detectors must be adjusted for the fuel to which the detector is least sensitive.

17.8.3.2.5 Because flame detectors are line-of-sight devices, their ability to respond to the required area of fire in the zone that is to be protected shall not be compromised by the presence of intervening structural members or other opaque objects or materials.

Some atmospheric contaminants, including vapors and gases, are absorptive at the wavelengths used by some flame detectors, which can have a significant effect on the performance of the system. See A.17.8.3.1.1 for the relationship of fire size and distance from a detector. The extinction coefficient, ξ, is multiplied by the distance between the detector and the design fire to determine the portion of the emitted radiation that is lost due to atmospheric absorption. The design calculations should state the expected concentrations of absorptive air contaminants and their effect on the value for ξ that is being used. Contaminants on detector windows can often adversely affect performance. Also, a window material that is clear in the visible portion of the spectrum might be opaque in either the UV or the IR portion of the spectrum. Common glass is opaque in both UV and IR. Consequently, 17.8.3.2.5 must be applied to any window material that is not specifically listed for use with the detector in question.

17.8.3.2.6* Provisions shall be made to sustain detector window clarity in applications where airborne particulates and aerosols coat the detector window between maintenance intervals and affect sensitivity.

A.17.8.3.2.6 This requirement has been satisfied by the following means:

(1) Lens clarity monitoring and cleaning where a contaminated lens signal is rendered
(2) Lens air purge

The need to clean detector windows can be reduced by the provision of air purge devices. These devices are not foolproof, however, and are not a replacement for regular inspection and testing. Radiant energy–sensing detectors should not be placed in protective housings (e.g., behind glass) to keep them clean, unless such housings are listed for the purpose. Some optical materials are absorptive at the wavelengths used by the detector.

17.8.3.3 Spacing Considerations for Spark/Ember Detectors.

17.8.3.3.1* The location and spacing of detectors shall be the result of an engineering evaluation that includes the following:

(1) Size of the spark or ember that is to be detected
(2) Fuel involved
(3) Sensitivity of the detector
(4) Field of view of the detector
(5) Distance between the fire and the detector
(6) Radiant energy absorption of the atmosphere
(7) Presence of extraneous sources of radiant emissions
(8) Purpose of the detection systems
(9) Response time required

A.17.8.3.3.1 Spark/ember detectors are installed primarily to detect sparks and embers that could, if allowed to continue to burn, precipitate a much larger fire or explosion. Spark/ember detectors are typically mounted on some form of duct or conveyor, monitoring the fuel as it passes by. Usually, it is necessary to enclose the portion of the conveyor where the detectors are located, as these devices generally require a dark environment. Extraneous sources of radiant emissions that have been identified as interfering with the stability of spark/ember detectors include the following:

(1) Ambient light
(2) Electromagnetic interference (EMI, RFI)
(3) Electrostatic discharge in the fuel stream

Exhibit 17.47 shows typical applications where spark/ember detectors are used. Spark/ember detectors are usually used on conveyance ducts and conveyors to detect embers in particulate solids as they are transported. The top drawing in Exhibit 17.47 shows the general concept of spark/ember detectors. The middle drawing illustrates the application of spark/ember detectors to protect a dust collector. The bottom drawing illustrates the protection of a conveyor.

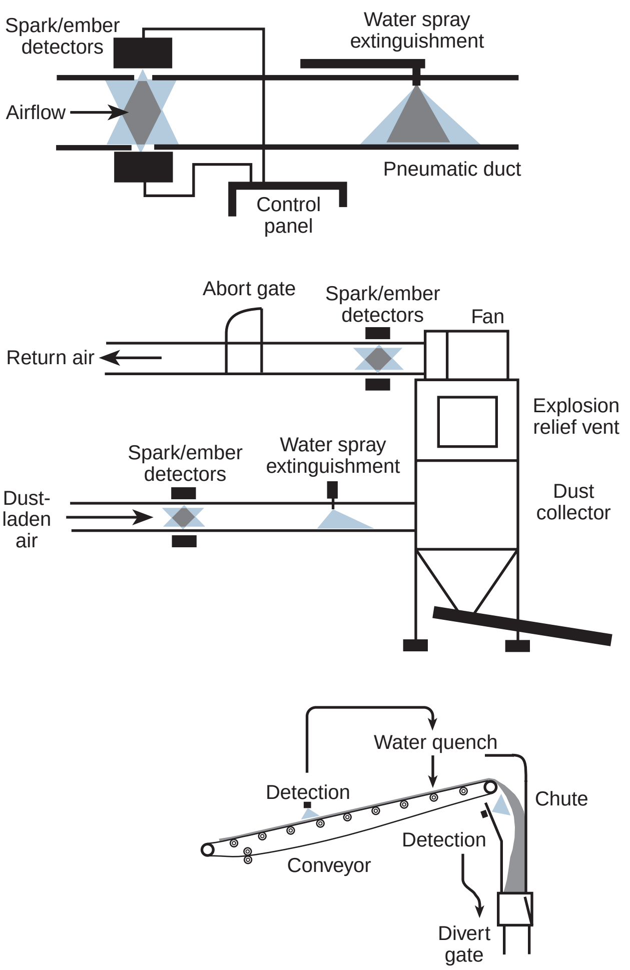


EXHIBIT 17.47

Spark/Ember Detector Applications. (Source: J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)

Note that the detectors are located at a point along the duct or conveyor, monitoring the cross-section of the duct or conveyor at that one point by essentially "looking across" the duct. Commercially available, listed spark/ember detectors are designed to monitor a fuel stream as it moves past the detector. These detectors are not designed to "look down the duct." The capacitive nature of the circuitry of this type of detector generally makes it incapable of detecting a slowly growing radiator; the radiator must move past the detector rapidly if it is to be detected.

Annex B provides a more detailed design guide for spark detection system design.

17.8.3.3.2* The system design shall specify the size of the spark or ember of the given fuel that the detection system is to detect.

A.17.8.3.3.2 There is a minimum ignition power (watts) for all combustible dusts. If the spark or ember is incapable of delivering that quantity of power to the adjacent combustible material (dust), an expanding dust fire cannot occur. The minimum ignition power is determined by the fuel chemistry, fuel particle size, fuel concentration in air, and ambient conditions such as temperature and humidity.

The size of an ember is measured in terms of watts, milliwatts, or microwatts. The radiant energy from an ember and hence its size cannot be accurately inferred from a description that states diameter and temperature only. See the definition for the term *spark/ember detector sensitivity* in 3.3.277. Furthermore, the equation for the inverse square law in A.17.8.3.1.1 cannot be used to calculate the ability of the detector to detect the ember in question unless both the detector sensitivity and the ember size are specified in the same terms of radiant power: watts, milliwatts, or microwatts.

As with 17.8.3.2.2 regarding flame detectors, 17.8.3.3.2 is a performance-based design criterion that drives the entire system design. However, sparks are so close to actually being a point source radiator in real life that calculating radiating area, as is done with flames, is not necessary. The radiant output of the spark is used directly.

As with 17.8.3.2 dealing with flame detectors, the selected decision-making process brings the designer to this section on spark detection that is based on the analysis of the radiant characteristics of the combustible and the environmental factors applicable to the hazard area. The hazard analysis begins with the determination of whether the combustible will burn in the solid phase as an ember or in the gas phase as a flame. That determination then points the designer toward the spark/ember detector (for solid-phase combustion) or the flame detector (for gas-phase combustion). The engineering manuals provided by the manufacturers of the various detectors under consideration should be used to determine the usefulness of a particular device for the hazard under consideration.

17.8.3.3.3 Spark detectors shall be positioned so that all points within the cross section of the conveyance duct, conveyor, or chute where the detectors are located are within the field of view *(as defined in 3.3.100)* of at least one detector.

FAQ How many detectors are needed to ensure proper coverage for each location on a pneumatic conveyance duct?

Most makes of spark detection require a minimum of two detectors at each location on a pneumatic conveyance duct requiring detection. The need for this quantity of detectors is determined by the detector's field of view. Unless the field of view is 180 degrees, at least two devices are needed to cover the inside of a duct. As the duct diameter increases, using that portion of the field of view where the detector is most sensitive is necessary to offset the absorption of the radiant emission from the spark by the nonburning material. Consequently, most spark detection systems require additional detectors as duct size increases.

17.8.3.3.4* The location and spacing of the detectors shall be adjusted using the inverse square law, modified for the atmospheric absorption and the absorption of nonburning fuel suspended in the air in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

A.17.8.3.3.4 As the distance between the fire and the detector increases, the radiant power reaching the detector decreases. Refer to A.17.8.3.1.1 for additional information.

The equation used for spark detection design is the same as that used for flame detection design. However, the atmospheric extinction coefficient, ξ (zeta), is determined by the optical absorbance of the nonburning material in the band of wavelengths used by the detector and by the concentration of the nonburning material per unit of air volume. The conservative design approach is to assume an emissivity (absorbance) of 1.0, which means that the material is 100 percent absorbent and does not reflect any radiation that strikes a nonburning fuel particle.

17.8.3.3.5* In applications where the sparks to be detected could occur in an area not on the optical axis of the detector, the distance shall be reduced or detectors shall be added to compensate for the angular displacement of the fire in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

A.17.8.3.3.5 The greater the angular displacement of the fire from the optical axis of the detector, the larger the fire must become before it is detected. This phenomenon establishes the field of view of the detector. Figure A.17.8.3.2.3 shows an example of the effective sensitivity versus angular displacement of a flame detector.

17.8.3.3.6* Provisions shall be made to sustain the detector window clarity in applications where airborne particulates and aerosols coat the detector window and affect sensitivity.

A.17.8.3.3.6 This requirement has been satisfied by the following means:

(1) Lens clarity monitoring and cleaning where a contaminated lens signal is rendered
(2) Lens air purge

17.8.4 Other Considerations.

The requirements in 17.8.4 are intended to be applied to all radiant energy–sensing detectors, regardless of type.

17.8.4.1 Radiant energy–sensing detectors shall be protected either by design or installation to ensure that optical performance is not compromised.

As radiant energy–sensing detectors are usually installed where they must endure the rigors of difficult industrial environments, the designer is cautioned to consider the long-term impact of the environment on the optical performance of the detectors to ensure compliance with 17.8.4.1.

Atmospheric contaminants are often opaque at detector operating wavelengths. Structures are often modified after detector placement and aiming. Snow and ice can accumulate on either the detector or the adjacent structure, obscuring the field of view. These factors as well as others might affect the clear view of the hazard area or impede the required routine maintenance of detectors. Finally, unless a detector has been specifically listed for use with a particular window material, the installation of a detector behind a protective window violates the operational characteristics as outlined in the listing of the detector. Most detectors employ windows made of optical material other than glass, selected for their transmittance in nonvisible portions of the spectrum. Glass is not transmittant at either UV or mid-IR wavelengths and would "blind" most flame detectors.

17.8.4.2 If necessary, radiant energy–sensing detectors shall be shielded or otherwise arranged to prevent action from unwanted radiant energy.

In some cases, shielding a detector from radiant emissions coming from a portion of its field of view — where the sole source of radiant emissions is a spurious source — can be an effective way of dealing with the source of unwanted alarms. Many detectors are available with scoops or baffles to limit the field of view to a small portion of the total viewing area. Scoops or baffles provide the detector with the ability to operate in spite of the presence of a spurious alarm source. When considering such methods, the designer should consult the manufacturer. The designer should also keep in mind that reflected radiant emissions can also cause alarms.

All surfaces are not uniformly reflective at all wavelengths. Unwanted alarms are often traced to reflections from radiant sources that are outside the actual field of view of the detector.

17.8.4.3 Where used in outdoor applications, radiant energy–sensing detectors shall be shielded or otherwise arranged in a fashion to prevent diminishing sensitivity by conditions such as rain or snow and yet allow a clear field of vision of the hazard area.

Both water and snow are highly absorptive in both the UV and IR portions of the spectrum. Where detectors are exposed to interference from streaming water or snow, their ability to respond to the design fire can be seriously compromised. Water can also initiate false alarms by causing the modulation of background radiant emissions, simulating the modulated emissions of a flame.

17.8.4.4 A radiant energy–sensing fire detector shall not be installed in a location where the ambient conditions are known to exceed the extremes for which the detector has been listed.

17.8.5 Video Image Flame Detection.

New products have recently been introduced that use a video camera and image recognition software to detect flames. These systems consist of a set of video cameras, a signal router/interface, and a computer with frame capture and image recognition software that result in the recognition of a flame. An output signal is then initiated that serves to initiate an alarm signal in the connected fire alarm control unit.

17.8.5.1 Video image flame detection systems and all of the components thereof, including hardware and software, shall be listed for the purpose of flame detection.

The listing requirement in 17.8.5.1 places the responsibility on the organization providing the listing to evaluate the efficacy of the equipment and software for appropriateness for a defined scope of applications. The limits on the size of the monitored compartment versus the size of the fire that can be reliably detected and the limitations on the environment within the compartment necessary to permit reliable detection have not yet been established by the technical committee.

17.8.5.2 Video image flame detection systems shall comply with all of the applicable requirements of Chapters 1, 10, 14, 17, and 23 of this Code.

A video image flame detection system consists of one or more video cameras, a signal router or interface, and a computer to analyze the individual video image frames in real time. Chapters 1, 10, 14, 17, and 23 include requirements that are applicable to such a system because the system that serves the role of this flame detector is a large assemblage of components with the same level of complexity as a fire alarm system. For example, all these components require power and must comply with the power supply criteria in Chapter 10. All the interconnections between cameras, interfaces, and computers must be monitored for integrity. All the components in the system must be listed for the purpose for which they are used. The alarm signal must be conveyed to a fire alarm control unit via a circuit that is monitored for integrity. The requirements in Chapters 1, 10, 14, 17, and 23 address these and many other issues that are relevant to the video image flame detection system and are applicable in much the same way they are applicable to an air-sampling smoke detection system.

17.8.5.3* Video signals generated by cameras that are components of video image flame detection systems shall be permitted to be transmitted to other systems for other uses only through output connections provided specifically for that purpose by the video system manufacturer.

A.17.8.5.3 Facility owners and managers might desire to use cameras and their images for purposes other than flame detection. The intent of this paragraph is not to prohibit additional uses, but to ensure the integrity of the life safety flame detection mission of the equipment.

Video image flame detection systems are best suited for large open spaces with high value assets that warrant such protection. In many cases, the facility security system includes cameras to monitor the space during unoccupied times to maintain surveillance. There is little basis for two sets of cameras, one for flame detection and a second for surveillance. Paragraph 17.8.5.3 permits the video signal to be shared as long as the equipment and the software that allows the sharing are listed for the purpose and the system ensures that the security use of the signal does not interfere with the fire safety use of the signal.

17.8.5.4* All component controls and software shall be protected from unauthorized changes. All changes to the software or component settings shall be tested in accordance with Chapter 14.

A.17.8.5.4 Video image flame detection control and software should be protected from tampering by passwords, software keys, or other means of limiting access to authorized/qualified personnel. Component settings include any control or programming that might affect the operation of coverage of the detection. This includes, but is not limited to, camera focus, field of view, motion sensitivity settings, and change of camera position. Any changes in component settings or ambient conditions that affect the design performance of the detector should initiate a trouble signal.

Since this technology is new and experience with it is limited, only a general requirement has been established by the technical committee. Video image flame detection systems operate by comparing the view of the hazard area to earlier views of the hazard area and initiate alarm signals when the changes in groups of pixels are consistent with the presence of flame in the monitored space. Changes in camera position, focus, contrast setting, field of view, ambient lighting, and the criteria in the software for recognition of a flame all can affect the reliability of the system as a flame detection means. The system must be designed to provide protection against unauthorized changes that could affect the system's performance or reliability. Any intentional changes must be subject to the acceptance testing criteria in Chapter 14.

17.9 Combination, Multi-Criteria, and Multi-Sensor Detectors

This section was added in the 2007 revision cycle. Detectors that respond to a number of different stimuli in order to detect a hostile fire have recently entered the fire alarm market. This section was added to address those products.

17.9.1 General. Section 17.9 provides requirements for the selection, location, and spacing of combination, multi-criteria, and multi-sensor detectors.

17.9.2 Combination Detectors.

17.9.2.1 A combination detector shall be listed for each sensor.

FAQ

What is the reason for requiring that each sensor of a combination detector be listed?

Since, by definition, a combination detector is two or more separate detectors combined into a single unit, each capable of producing its own, individual signal, each of the detectors within the combination detector has the ability to operate alone, respond independently of the others, and initiate its own signal. (See 3.3.66.4.) Consequently, the individual detection devices within the combination detector must be listed as if they were stand-alone devices. For example, a combination smoke/heat detector would be listed as a smoke detector under UL 268 and a heat detector under ANSI/UL 521, *Standard for Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems*.

17.9.2.2 The device listings shall determine the locations and spacing criteria in accordance with Chapter 17.

With earlier versions of combination detectors, there is the distinct possibility that a combination detector containing a smoke sensor and a heat sensor could have a listed spacing as a heat detector that is smaller than the conventionally used 30 ft (9.1 m) spacing for smoke detectors in this chapter. In that case, the designer could use the most conservative spacing as the design spacing for the combination detector. [Note that 17.6.3.6 currently requires a listed spacing of at least 50 ft (15.2 m) for an integral heat sensor on a smoke detector.] Historically, the heat detector was considered by some authorities having jurisdiction to be a back-up to the smoke sensor should the smoke sensor fail. However, if the generation of a heat detection signal relies on any of the electronic processing or switching circuitry of the smoke detector, it cannot serve that function. If the primary purpose of the detector is to provide life safety, the spacing should be based on the smoke detector spacing rules in the Code.

17.9.3 Multi-Criteria Detectors.

17.9.3.1 A multi-criteria detector shall be listed for the primary function of the device.

Multi-criteria detectors are defined in 3.3.66.12. While the detector utilizes multiple sensors to measure multiple criteria, it produces only a single alarm signal. In most cases, these detection devices include (1) both a photoelectric smoke sensor and a thermistor heat sensor, (2) an ionization smoke sensor and a thermistor heat sensor, or (3) both an ionization and photoelectric smoke sensor and a thermistor heat sensor. These detection devices are usually listed under UL 268 as smoke detectors. They can be designed as addressable/analog devices or as conventional (on/off) initiating devices.

17.9.3.2 Because of the device-specific, software-driven solution of multi-criteria detectors to reduce unwanted alarms and improve detector response to a nonspecific fire source, location and spacing criteria included with the detector installation instructions shall be followed.

If the unit is listed under UL 268 as a smoke detector, it is to be located, spaced, and installed in accordance with Section 17.7.

17.9.4 Multi-Sensor Detectors.

17.9.4.1 A multi-sensor detector shall be listed for each sensor.

Multi-sensor detectors are defined in 3.3.66.13. In addition to utilizing multiple criteria, these detectors can initiate an alarm signal as a result of any one of the sensors achieving its alarm threshold. These detectors can produce a number of alarm signals. In most cases, these detection devices include (1) a photoelectric smoke sensor, (2) a thermistor heat sensor, (3) an ionization smoke sensor, (4) a carbon monoxide sensor, and (5) a carbon dioxide sensor and a set of fire algorithms in a microcomputer that matches the detected levels to fire signatures in memory. If a multi-sensor detector uses an ionization chamber, a photoelectric chamber, a thermistor heat sensor, and a carbon monoxide sensor to arrive at a single alarm signal, then it is listed as a single multi-criteria detector. However, if that same detector is capable of sending the individual signals to the fire alarm control unit (FACU) and the FACU can initiate a fire alarm on the basis of any one of those sensing means, then the multi-sensor detector is actually serving as a group of individual detectors and must be listed for each detection mode. These detectors are usually designed as addressable/analog devices, and the control unit often performs signature matching to generate the alarm signals.

17.9.4.2 Because of the device-specific, software-driven solution of multi-sensor detectors to reduce unwanted alarms and improve detector response to a nonspecific fire source, location and spacing criteria included with the detector installation instructions shall be followed.

17.10 Gas Detection

Section 17.10 was added to the 2010 edition of the Code. Its development was precipitated by the recognition that flammable gas and combustible vapor detection systems were being required by numerous occupancy standards. If the fire safety of a particular occupancy relies on a flammable gas or combustible vapor detection system, then that system should be installed to the same level of reliability as the fire protection signaling system.

17.10.1 General. The purpose and scope of Section 17.10 shall be to provide requirements for the selection, installation, and operation of gas detectors.

17.10.2 Gas Characteristics and Detector Selection.

17.10.2.1 Gas detection equipment shall be listed for the specific gas or vapor it is intended to detect.

Different sensing technologies are used for the detection of different gases. While most flammable hydrocarbon gases and combustible hydrocarbon vapors are detected using a catalytic bead technology, the catalyst varies depending on the target gas to be detected. Some flammable gases are detected best with electrochemical sensors. In other cases, semiconductor sensors are used. The sensor must be matched and calibrated to the specific gas to be detected. While there are some broad-spectrum flammable hydrocarbon gas sensors available on the market, their sensitivity and output vary considerably with the specific gas present. The gas detector must be carefully matched to the gas or vapor that is present. When a mixture of gases or vapors is present, the detector must be calibrated for that mixture.

Gas detectors generally do not have a fixed alarm threshold. Usually a gas detection system consists of a sensor located where the gas is expected to be present, wired to a controller in a safe location. The controller has adjustable alarm thresholds, usually expressed as a percentage of the lower flammable limit (LFL), the lowest concentration of the gas in air that will propagate a flame. For a general review of gas and vapor detection systems and monitors, refer to Section 14, Chapter 8, of the *Fire Protection Handbook*®, 20th edition.

17.10.2.2 Any gas detection systems installed on a fire alarm system shall comply with all the applicable requirements of Chapters 1, 10, 14, 17, and 23 of this Code.

Fire losses have occurred that were ultimately traced back to the failure of a flammable gas or combustible vapor detection system. The referenced chapters establish the minimum compliance criteria for a gas detection system installed to provide part of the fire safety for a compartment of a building.

17.10.2.3 The requirements of this Code shall not apply to gas detection systems used solely for process control.

Where the gas detection system is not providing a fire safety function but is limited only to process control, the requirements of this Code are not applicable. The gas detection systems in those applications are designed by the persons responsible for the design of the process. The process designers are in the best position to know what is necessary to control that process.

Once the presence of the gas or vapor detection system begins serving a fire safety function, the requirements of this Code become applicable.

The design of gas detection systems is inherently different from the design of smoke detection systems. In a smoke detection system, the fire produces a buoyant plume that forms a ceiling jet, and the fire sends the smoke to a predictable location — the ceiling. Consequently, smoke detectors are installed on the ceiling in an array, the spacing of which is derived from a response time criterion. With a gas or vapor leak, there is not necessarily a buoyant plume. The gases or vapors are carried by the ambient air movement unless the difference in the density between the gases or vapors and the ambient air is substantial. Consequently, a detailed engineering analysis of the ambient air in the compartment or compartments to be served by the gas detection system is necessary to determine where to locate the sensors. That analysis will include a three-dimensional map of the airflow currents under the entire range of operating scenarios to ensure that sensors are located where the air currents will convey the gas or vapor to be detected.

17.10.2.4* The selection and placement of the gas detectors shall be based on an engineering evaluation.

A.17.10.2.4 The engineering evaluation should include, but is not limited to, the following:

(1) Structural features, size, and shape of the rooms and bays
(2) Occupancy and uses of areas
(3) Ceiling heights
(4) Ceiling shape, surface, and obstructions
(5) Ventilation
(6) Ambient environment
(7) Gas characteristics of the gases present
(8) Configuration of the contents in the area to be protected
(9) Response time(s)

17.11 Other Fire Detectors

The intent of the Code is to provide for the development of new technologies and to allow the use of such technologies consistent with sound principles of fire protection engineering. A number of aerosol-sensing detectors do not yet conform to the response criteria of UL 268 and for that reason are not called "smoke detectors." One detector senses hydrogen chloride; another senses carbon monoxide. The requirements in Section 17.11 provide for methods not explicitly described in other sections of the chapter to accommodate new technology developed during Code cycles.

17.11.1 Detectors that operate on principles different from those covered by Sections 17.6 through 17.8 shall be classified as "other fire detectors."

Chapter 14 outlines the required maintenance procedures and schedules for all components of a fire alarm system, including the initiating devices. Initiating devices covered by Section 17.11 must be maintained pursuant to Chapter 14 and the manufacturer's recommendations.

17.11.1.1 Such detectors shall be installed in all areas where they are required either by other NFPA codes and standards or by the authority having jurisdiction.

17.11.2* "Other fire detectors" shall operate where subjected to the abnormal concentration of combustion effects that occur during a fire.

A.17.11.2 Examples of such combustion effects are water vapor, ionized molecules, or other phenomena for which they are designed. The performance characteristics of the detector and the area into which it is to be installed should be evaluated to minimize nuisance alarms or conditions that would interfere with operation.

17.11.3 Detection layout shall be based upon the size and intensity of fire to provide the necessary quantity of required products and related thermal lift, circulation, or diffusion for operation.

17.11.4 Room sizes and contours, airflow patterns, obstructions, and other characteristics of the protected hazard shall be taken into account.

17.11.5 Location and spacing of detectors shall comply with 17.11.5.1 through 17.11.5.3.

17.11.5.1 The location and spacing of detectors shall be based on the principle of operation and an engineering survey of the conditions anticipated in service.

17.11.5.1.1 The manufacturer's published instructions shall be consulted for recommended detector uses and locations.

17.11.5.2 Detectors shall not be spaced beyond their listed or approved maximums.

17.11.5.2.1 Closer spacing shall be used where the structural or other characteristics of the protected hazard warrant.

17.11.5.3 The location and sensitivity of the detectors shall be based on a documented engineering evaluation that includes the manufacturer's installation instructions and the following:

(1) Structural features, size, and shape of the rooms and bays
(2) Occupancy and uses of the area
(3) Ceiling height
(4) Ceiling shape, surface, and obstructions
(5) Ventilation
(6) Ambient environment
(7) Burning characteristics of the combustible materials present
(8) Configuration of the contents in the area to be protected

17.12 Sprinkler Waterflow Alarm-Initiating Devices

17.12.1* The provisions of Section 17.12 shall apply to devices that initiate an alarm indicating a flow of water in a sprinkler system.

A.17.12.1 Piping between the sprinkler system and a pressure actuated alarm-initiating device should be galvanized or of nonferrous metal or other approved corrosion-resistant material of not less than ⅜ in.(9.5 mm) nominal pipe size.

17.12.2* Activation of the initiating device shall occur within 90 seconds of waterflow at the alarm-initiating device when flow occurs that is equal to or greater than that from a single sprinkler of the smallest orifice size installed in the system.

The 90-second response criterion addresses only the time lag between the initial flow of water and the issuance of the electronic signal to the fire alarm control unit by the switch. The criterion does not include any polling delays introduced by the fire alarm control unit.

The water in a wet pipe automatic sprinkler system riser is not static; it moves upward and downward in the riser, depending on differences in pressure between the sprinkler system riser and the municipal water supply. Any air trapped in the sprinkler system piping provides a compressible gas cushion, enhancing the tendency for flow to occur as a result of variance of

EXHIBIT 17.48

Vane-Type Waterflow Switch. (Source: Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC, St. Louis, MO)

EXHIBIT 17.49

High/Low-Pressure Supervisory Switch. (Source: Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC, St. Louis, MO)

pressures in the water supply system. The alarm check valve in the sprinkler system tends to slow down, but not eliminate, this flow. Consequently, the majority of sprinkler systems require a means to retard the initiation of a sprinkler waterflow signal to prevent the small flows that are the artifact of pressure variations from generating a waterflow alarm. The prevention of small flows is accomplished with a "retard" feature. This feature can be part of the sprinkler system or it can be incorporated into the flow switch.

Some waterflow alarm–initiating devices are implemented as pressure switches installed on the wet pipe sprinkler system alarm trim, rather than with paddle- or vane-type switches located on the riser itself. If a valve is installed in the connection between the sprinkler system and the waterflow initiating device, it must be supervised and transmit a supervisory signal if in the off-normal (full open) state. In general, pressure-type flow switches should not be installed on the top of a retard chamber, because a valve is always located between the alarm check valve and the retard chamber that is difficult if not impossible to supervise or lock open. Furthermore, false alarms can occur if the retard chamber drain on the sprinkler system trim becomes clogged.

FAQ

What type of flow switch should be used in a dry pipe, preaction, or deluge-type system?

Due to their design, dry pipe, preaction, and deluge sprinkler systems do not suffer from the phenomenon of riser flow from pressure variations. However, these types of sprinkler systems should always be equipped with pressure-type flow switches rather than paddle- or vane-type flow switches. If a paddle- or vane-type flow switch is installed downstream of a dry pipe, preaction, or deluge-type system, the paddle or vane is likely to be damaged when the valve opens. See Exhibit 17.48 for a typical waterflow switch and Exhibit 17.49 for a typical pressure switch.

A.17.12.2 The waterflow device should be field adjusted so that an alarm is initiated no more than 90 seconds after a sustained flow of at least 10 gpm (40 L/min).

Features that should be investigated to minimize alarm response time include the following:

(1) Elimination of trapped air in the sprinkler system piping
(2) Use of an excess pressure pump
(3) Use of pressure drop alarm-initiating devices
(4) A combination thereof

Care should be used when choosing waterflow alarm-initiating devices for hydraulically calculated looped systems and those systems using small orifice sprinklers. Such systems might incorporate a single point flow of significantly less than 10 gpm (40 L/min). In such cases, additional waterflow alarm-initiating devices or the use of pressure drop-type waterflow alarm-initiating devices might be necessary.

Care should be used when choosing waterflow alarm-initiating devices for sprinkler systems that use on–off sprinklers to ensure that an alarm is initiated in the event of a waterflow condition. On–off sprinklers open at a predetermined temperature and close when the temperature reaches a predetermined lower temperature. With certain types of fires, waterflow might occur in a series of short bursts of a duration of 10 seconds to 30 seconds each. An alarm-initiating device with retard might not detect waterflow under these conditions. An excess pressure system or a system that operates on pressure drop should be considered to facilitate waterflow detection on sprinkler systems that use on–off sprinklers.

Excess pressure systems can be used with or without alarm valves. The following is a description of one type of excess pressure system with an alarm valve.

An excess pressure system with an alarm valve consists of an excess pressure pump with pressure switches to control the operation of the pump. The inlet of the pump is connected to the supply side of the alarm valve, and the outlet is connected to the sprinkler system. The pump control pressure switch is of the differential type, maintaining the sprinkler system pressure above the main pressure by a constant amount. Another switch monitors low sprinkler system pressure to initiate a supervisory signal in the event of a failure of the pump or other malfunction. An additional pressure switch can be used to stop pump operation in the event of a deficiency in water supply. Another pressure switch is connected to the alarm outlet of the alarm valve to initiate a waterflow alarm signal when waterflow exists. This type of system also inherently prevents false alarms due to water surges. The sprinkler retard chamber should be eliminated to enhance the detection capability of the system for short duration flows.

In many facilities, the sprinkler system is used as both a suppression system and a detection system. The flow of water initiates an alarm. In a large wet pipe system with large sprinkler risers, depending on the amount of trapped air, the flow from a single head has proved hard to detect. The air acts as a gas cushion, allowing pulsating variations in water pressure within the riser when a single head discharges. This action can prevent the vane of a vane-type waterflow switch from lifting, or the clapper of an alarm check valve from opening, long enough to overcome the pneumatic, electronic, or mechanical retard mechanism of the switch. (Rising and falling water supply pressure over the course of any 24-hour period causes the pressure entering the wet pipe sprinkler system to change. This pressure change can cause unwanted alarms. Consequently, most flow switches are equipped with a retard feature that delays the transmission of a signal until after stable waterflow has been achieved.) With pulsating flow in the riser, flow from one or two sprinkler heads can go undetected. Consequently, the acceptance testing for systems with large risers should include flowing the system from the inspector's test connection at the most remote point on the sprinkler system to verify that the flow from a single head does, indeed, initiate an alarm signal within the maximum 90-second criterion. Often, exhausting the entrapped air in the sprinkler system is necessary to reduce this effect.

If the sprinkler system uses on–off sprinklers, a waterflow alarm-initiating device must be used that can sense a possible flow of shorter duration. Meeting the 90-second criterion also can be a challenge with large systems using conventional sprinklers.

Finally, the designer must be familiar with NFPA 13. Some authorities having jurisdiction desire a very rapid alarm activation to occur (less than 30 seconds) without understanding that an increase in false activations, typically caused by system pressure surges, is likely to occur. Others have argued that false alarms, caused by waterflow surges, are a concern and have proposed that waterflow signals should be retarded and set to alarm not sooner than 45 to 60 seconds after activation of a single sprinkler. The technical committee has considered both sides of this issue and finds that buildings and sprinkler designs vary widely — therefore, a range of 0 to 90 seconds is reasonable to address the wide variety of project conditions that may need to be addressed.

17.12.3 Movement of water due to waste, surges, or variable pressure shall not initiate an alarm signal.

17.13* Detection of Operation of Other Automatic Extinguishing Systems

The operation of fire extinguishing systems or suppression systems shall initiate an alarm signal by alarm-initiating devices installed in accordance with their individual listings.

A.17.13 Alarm initiation can be accomplished by devices that detect the following:

(1) Flow of water in foam systems
(2) Pump activation
(3) Differential pressure

(4) Pressure (e.g., clean agent systems, carbon dioxide systems, and wet/dry chemical systems)
(5) Mechanical operation of a release mechanism

EXHIBIT 17.50

Emergency Manual Cable Release for Extinguishing Systems. (Source: Kidde-Fenwal, Ashland, MA)

The operation of any automatic fire extinguishing system is a clear indication of a fire. Currently listed automatic fire extinguishing systems include electric switching devices that are intended to be used to transmit a fire alarm signal to the building fire alarm system.

FAQ What are usual means to signal operation of the extinguishing system?

Discharge pressure switches or actuation mechanism microswitches are the usual means of providing the extinguishing system operation signal to the fire detection control unit. Due to the critical function these switches perform, they must be listed for use with the specific make and model of extinguishing system. The connection of a listed extinguishing agent release initiating device to an appropriate initiating device circuit on the fire alarm control unit, consistent with the listings of both the unit and the initiating device, is critical for the successful operation of most special extinguishing systems.

Many extinguishing systems include emergency mechanical manual release capability. This feature provides for the release of the extinguishing agent, bypassing the operation of the fire detection system that is used to actuate the extinguishing system. Provisions must be in place to ensure that any automatic functions necessary for the proper operation of the extinguishing agent, including shutdown of local HVAC, actuation of HVAC dampers, closing doors, interruption of production equipment, shutoff of fuel flow, and so on — functions normally accomplished by means of electrical switching in the extinguishing system control panel — also occur when the mechanical manual release is used. See Exhibit 17.50 for an example of a manual agent release device.

The designer should review the following standards for more information on alarm initiation requirements that are unique to the various extinguishing agents covered by these standards:

NFPA 12, *Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems*
NFPA 12A, *Standard on Halon 1301 Fire Extinguishing Systems*
NFPA 16, *Standard for the Installation of Foam-Water Sprinkler and Foam-Water Spray Systems*
NFPA 17, *Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems*
NFPA 2001, *Standard on Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems*

17.14 Manually Actuated Alarm-Initiating Devices

The user should note that many fire alarm systems are not equipped with an automatic off-site signal transmission capability to a supervising station. In those buildings where the fire alarm system is not equipped with automatic off-site signal transmission to a supervising station system, activation of the manual fire alarm box only notifies other building occupants of the presence of a fire. The manual fire alarm box does not notify the fire service. For those buildings, explicit instructions to the operator of the manual fire alarm box to also notify the fire department from outside the building are desirable and might be required by local ordinance or code to be placed at each manual fire alarm box location.

17.14.1 Manually actuated alarm-initiating devices for initiating signals other than for fire alarm shall be permitted if the devices are differentiated from manual for fire alarm boxes by a color other than red and labeling.

Paragraph 17.14.1 reserves the color red for the manual initiating device that initiates a fire signal. If manual initiating devices are used to initiate some other emergency signal (e.g., toxic release, radiological release, medical emergency, hazardous weather), they must be differentiated from each other and from the fire alarm boxes by both color and labeling. No consensus has yet been reached on a color code for manual emergency reporting–initiating devices.

17.14.2 Combination manual fire alarm boxes and guard's signaling stations shall be permitted.

If the manual fire alarm box is incorporated into some other non-fire-related assembly (with the single exception of guards' tour supervisory stations), the probability of unwarranted operation is increased. This arrangement leads to false alarms and erodes the occupants' confidence in the system. Also, when manual fire alarms are combined with non-fire-related functions, the probability that a failure in the non-fire-related function will compromise the fire alarm system increases.

17.14.3 Manually actuated alarm-initiating devices shall be securely mounted.

17.14.4 Manually actuated alarm-initiating devices shall be mounted on a background of contrasting color.

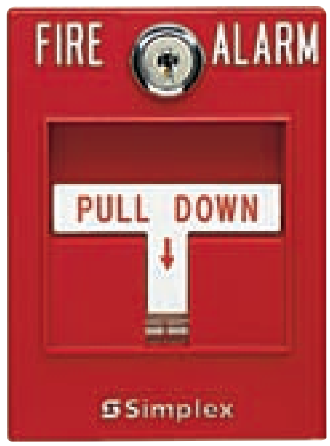
17.14.5 The operable part of a manually actuated alarm-initiating device shall be not less than 42 in. (1.07 m) and not more than 48 in. (1.22 m) from the finished floor.

As a minimum-compliance standard, the Code permits the use of the widest range deemed acceptable. The updated *Americans with Disabilities Act and Architectural Barriers Act Accessibility Guidelines* (July 23, 2010), which became effective March 15, 2012, specifies a maximum unobstructed "side reach" of 48 in. (1.22 m). The guidelines also retain the maximum value of 48 in. (1.22 m) for unobstructed "forward reach." Refer to the specific details of the guidelines for what constitutes obstructed versus unobstructed approach. Information concerning the current policy of the Architectural and Transportation Barriers Compliance Board and the final draft of the guidelines can be found at the access board website *www.access-board.gov*.

See Exhibit 17.51 for an example of a manual fire alarm box.

Manual fire alarm boxes mounted in damp or wet locations must be listed for such use.

EXHIBIT 17.51



Manual Fire Alarm Box. (Source: SimplexGrinnell, Westminster, MA)

17.14.6 Manually actuated alarm-initiating devices shall be permitted to be single action or double action.

17.14.7* Listed protective covers shall be permitted to be installed over single- or double-action manually actuated alarm-initiating devices.

A.17.14.7 Protective covers, also called pull station protectors can be installed over manually actuated alarm initiating devices to provide mechanical protection, environmental protection, and to reduce the likelihood of accidental or malicious activation. The protective covers must be listed to ensure that they do not hinder the operation of the pull stations and to ensure that they meet accessibility requirements for activation by persons with physical disabilities. The Code explicitly permits installing them over single- or double-action devices. When installed over a double-action device, the assembly effectively becomes a triple-action device. Some units include battery-operated audible warning signals that have been shown to deter malicious activations. To be effective, it is important that the regular staff or occupants be aware of the sound and investigate immediately in order to catch someone who might otherwise activate the device without cause or to ensure that the device is activated if there is a legitimate reason.

17.14.8 Manual fire alarm boxes shall comply with 17.14.8.1 through 17.14.8.6.

17.14.8.1 Manual fire alarm boxes shall be used only for fire alarm initiating purposes.

The requirement in 17.14.8.1 stems from two concerns: credibility and reliability.

If manual fire alarm boxes are used for some other purpose, for the actuation of a special extinguishing system, for example, then someone unfamiliar with the facility could actuate the wrong manual fire alarm box in response to a fire incident. Consequently, manual fire alarm boxes are permitted to be used only for initiation of a fire alarm signal. A manual alarm-initiating device other than a manual *fire* alarm initiation device must be used for those other purposes. This requirement limits the potential for occupant confusion during a fire.

When manual alarm-initiating devices are installed to initiate some other type of emergency response, such as for toxic release or spill, the manual alarm-initiating device should be obviously different from those used to report a fire to minimize the probability of confusion during an emergency. Refer to Chapter 24 for guidance on manual initiation devices used for mass notification systems.

17.14.8.2 Manual fire alarm boxes shall be installed so that they are conspicuous, unobstructed, and accessible.

EXHIBIT 17.52

Protective Cover for Manual Fire Alarm Box. (Source: Safety Technology International, Inc., Waterford, MI)

The objective behind 17.14.8.2 is to ensure that, as they leave the building, occupants can find manual fire alarm–initiating devices without searching. The authority having jurisdiction decides if the manual fire alarm–initiating devices are sufficiently conspicuous, unobstructed, and accessible.

Paragraph 17.14.8.2 addresses the issue of decorative items or furnishings placed in front of or adjacent to manual fire alarm boxes. The manual fire alarm box must be clearly identifiable from a distance, and nothing can hinder a person from operating the manual fire alarm box as that person proceeds to the means of egress.

Plastic covers are permitted to protect manual fire alarm boxes and provide relief from accidental or malicious unwarranted alarms. These covers must be listed for such use. Some provide a local signal that sounds at the device when the cover is lifted. In the event that an audible signal is incorporated into a cover, care must be taken to educate users that the opening of the cover does *not* constitute the initiation of a fire alarm signal and that the fire alarm box must still be actuated. See Exhibit 17.52 for an example of a manual fire alarm box protective cover.

17.14.8.3* Unless installed in an environment that precludes the use of red paint or red plastic, manual fire alarm boxes shall be red in color.

A.17.14.8.3 In environments where red paint or red plastic is not suitable, an alternative material, such as stainless steel, could be used as long as the box meets the requirements of 17.14.8.2.

17.14.8.4 Manual fire alarm boxes shall be located within 5 ft (1.5 m) of each exit doorway on each floor.

The purpose of locating the manual fire alarm box within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the exit doorway on each floor is to have the location consistent with the path of travel that occupants will use during an evacuation. As occupants approach the entry door into an exit stairway, a manual fire alarm box (if required) should be in close proximity to that entry door. Normally, the discharge doors of a stairway do not require a manual fire alarm box, as this may not be considered an exit entry door; review of the *Life Safety Code* or relevant building code is recommended. Doors that serve as entry into an exit passageway, a horizontal exit, or doors that provide direct access to the exterior from a grade floor are normally considered exit entry doors and require the manual fire alarm box to be within 5 ft (1.5 m) of the exit doorway, when manual fire alarm boxes are required by codes or ordinances.

17.14.8.5* Additional manual fire alarm boxes shall be provided so that the travel distance to the nearest manual fire alarm box will not exceed 200 ft (61 m), measured horizontally on the same floor.

A.17.14.8.5 It is not the intent of 17.14.8.5 to require manual fire alarm boxes to be attached to movable partitions or to equipment, nor to require the installation of permanent structures for mounting purposes only.

The criterion described in 17.14.8.5 is derived from the requirements established in NFPA *101*.

17.14.8.6 Manual fire alarm boxes shall be mounted on both sides of grouped openings over 40 ft (12.2 m) in width, and within 5 ft (1.5 m) of each side of the grouped opening.

FAQ What is the reason for requiring manual fire alarm boxes on both sides of grouped openings?

The objective of 17.14.8.6 is to provide a manual fire alarm box within easy reach in the normal exit path of the occupants. When multi-leaf door sets are installed, the actual exitway can become sufficiently wide that the departing occupant might not notice the fire alarm box on the far side of a wide set of doors, or the occupant would have to delay departure in order to cross the doors to activate the manual fire alarm box. The consensus of the technical committee was that when door sets attain this width, fire alarm boxes are needed on both sides of the means of egress. In the 1999 edition, the Technical Committee on Initiating Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems clarified this requirement to ensure that the number and the location of the manual fire alarm boxes required for multi-leaf doors are consistent where there are groups of exit doors.

17.15 Fire Extinguisher Electronic Monitoring Device

A fire extinguisher electronic monitoring device shall indicate those conditions for a specific fire extinguisher required by NFPA 10, *Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers*, to a fire alarm control unit or other control unit.

Note that this section does not require that fire extinguisher monitoring devices be provided. Section 17.15 requires that if and where they are provided that they monitor those conditions required by the inspection criteria of NFPA 10, *Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers*. The signals provided to the fire alarm control unit or other control unit are intended to serve in lieu of the regular, routine inspection of fire extinguishers as required by NFPA 10, and an off-normal condition should initiate a supervisory signal at the control unit. Chapter 23 provides further information on these devices (see 23.8.4.9). See Exhibit 17.53.

EXHIBIT 17.53

Fire Extinguisher Monitored by Fire Extinguisher Monitoring Device. (Source: Engauge Inc., Rockland, MA)

17.16 Supervisory Signal–Initiating Devices

17.16.1 Control Valve Supervisory Signal–Initiating Device.

Control valve supervisory signal–initiating devices, addressed in 17.16.1, have traditionally been switches specifically designed and listed for service as valve-monitoring devices. See Exhibit 17.54 for an example of a valve supervisory switch. The requirement for two distinct signals does not necessarily mean two switches. A switch that transfers when the valve begins to close and stays transferred while the valve remains closed, then returns to normal when the

EXHIBIT 17.54

Outside Screw and Yoke (OS&Y) Valve Supervisory Switch.

valve is reopened, satisfies the requirement. The initial transfer is the first signal. The return to normal is the second signal.

For example, assume the switch on the valve is a normally open contact. As the operator begins to turn the valve, the switch closes, indicating an off-normal condition. The switch stays in the closed, off-normal position as the operator continues to close the valve. When the operator reopens the valve, the closed contact transfers back to the open state when the valve is completely open. The opening of the contact provides the second, distinct signal.

17.16.1.1 Two separate and distinct signals shall be initiated: one indicating movement of the valve from its normal position (off-normal), and the other indicating restoration of the valve to its normal position.

17.16.1.2 The off-normal signal shall be initiated during the first two revolutions of the handwheel or during one-fifth of the travel distance of the valve control apparatus from its normal position.

EXHIBIT 17.55

Pressure Supervisory Switch. (Source: Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC, St. Louis, MO)

17.16.1.3 The off-normal signal shall not be restored at any valve position except normal.

17.16.1.4 An initiating device for supervising the position of a control valve shall not interfere with the operation of the valve, obstruct the view of its indicator, or prevent access for valve maintenance.

17.16.2 Pressure Supervisory Signal–Initiating Device.

17.16.2.1 Two separate and distinct signals shall be initiated: one indicating that the required pressure has increased or decreased (off-normal), and the other indicating restoration of the pressure to its normal value.

As with supervisory signal–initiating devices for valve operation, water pressure supervisory signal–initiating devices may consist of a single switch.

See Exhibit 17.55 for an example of a pressure supervisory switch.

17.16.2.2 The requirements in 17.16.2.2.1 through 17.16.2.2.4 shall apply to pressure supervisory signal–initiating devices.

17.16.2.2.1 Pressure Tank.

(A) A pressure tank supervisory signal–initiating device for a pressurized limited water supply, such as a pressure tank, shall indicate both high- and low-pressure conditions.

(B) The off-normal signal shall be initiated when the required pressure increases or decreases by 10 psi (70 kPa).

17.16.2.2.2 Dry Pipe Sprinkler System.

(A) A pressure supervisory signal–initiating device for a dry-pipe sprinkler system shall indicate both high- and low-pressure conditions.

(B) The off-normal signal shall be initiated when the pressure increases or decreases by 10 psi (70 kPa).

17.16.2.2.3 Steam Pressure.

(A) A steam pressure supervisory signal–initiating device shall indicate a low pressure condition.

(B) The off-normal signal shall be initiated prior to the pressure falling below 110 percent of the minimum operating pressure of the steam-operated equipment supplied.

17.16.2.2.4 Other Sources. An initiating device for supervising the pressure of sources other than those specified in 17.16.2.2.1 through 17.16.2.2.3 shall be provided as required by the authority having jurisdiction.

17.16.3 Water Level Supervisory Signal–Initiating Device.

17.16.3.1 Two separate and distinct signals shall be initiated: one indicating that the required water level has been lowered or raised (off-normal), and the other indicating restoration.

As with supervisory signal–initiating devices for valve operation, water level supervisory signal–initiating devices may consist of a single switch.

See Exhibit 17.56 for an example of a tank water level supervisory switch.

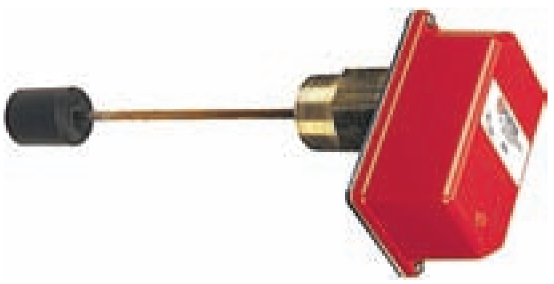


EXHIBIT 17.56

Tank Water Level Supervisory Switch. (Source: Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC, St. Louis, MO)

17.16.3.2 A pressure tank signal-initiating device shall indicate both high and low water level conditions.

17.16.3.2.1 The off-normal signal shall be initiated when the water level falls 3 in. (70 mm) or rises 3 in. (70 mm).

17.16.3.3 A supervisory signal–initiating device for other than pressure tanks shall initiate a low water level signal when the water level falls 12 in. (300 mm).

17.16.4 Water Temperature Supervisory Signal–Initiating Device.

17.16.4.1 A temperature supervisory device for a water storage container exposed to freezing conditions shall initiate two separate and distinctive signals, as specified in 17.16.4.2.

Water temperature supervisory signal–initiating devices may consist of a single switch. See Exhibit 17.57 for a tank water temperature supervisory switch.

EXHIBIT 17.57

Tank Water Temperature Supervisory Switch. (Source: Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC, St. Louis, MO)

17.16.4.2 One signal shall indicate a decrease in water temperature to 40°F (4.4°C), and the other shall indicate its restoration to above 40°F (4.4°C).

17.16.5 Room Temperature Supervisory Signal–Initiating Device. A room temperature supervisory device shall indicate a decrease in room temperature to 40°F (4.4°C) and its restoration to above 40°F (4.4°C).

As with the other supervisory signal–initiating devices mentioned in Section 17.16, room temperature supervisory signal–initiating devices may also consist of a single switch. See Exhibit 17.58 for a typical room temperature supervisory switch.

EXHIBIT 17.58

Room Temperature Supervisory Switch. (Source: Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC, St. Louis, MO)

References Cited in Commentary

Alpert, R., "Ceiling Jets," *Fire Technology* (August) 1972.

Americans with Disabilities Act and Architectural Barriers Act Accessibility Guidelines. (July 23, 2010), United States Access Board, Washington, DC. www.access-board.gov.

ANSI/UL 268, *Standard for Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems*, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL, 2009; available from www.Comm2000.com.

ANSI/UL 521, *Standard for Heat Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems*, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL, 1999; available from www.Comm2000.com.

Babrauskas, V., Lawson, J. R., Walton, W. D., and Twilley, W. H., "Upholstered Furniture Heat Release Rates Measured with a Furniture Calorimeter" [NBSIR 82-2604 (December)], National Institute of Standards and Technology (formerly National Bureau of Standards), Center for Fire Research, Gaithersburg, MD, 1982.

Cote, A. E., ed., *Fire Protection Handbook*®, 20th edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 2008.

Fire Protection Research Foundation, *International Fire Detection Research Project*, Technical Report Year 1 (April), National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 1993.

Fire Protection Research Foundation, *International Fire Detection Research Project*, Technical Report Year 2 (October), National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 1994.

Fire Protection Research Foundation, *International Fire Detection Research Project*, Technical Report Year 3 (April), National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 1996.

Fire Protection Research Foundation, *International Fire Detection Research Project*, Technical Report Year 4 (June), National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 1998.

FM Approval Standard 3210, *Heat Detectors for Automatic Fire Alarm Signaling*, FM Global, Norwood, MA, 2007.

Heskestad, G., "Characterization of Smoke Entry and Response for Products-of-Combustion Detectors," Proceedings of the 7th International Conference on Problems of Automatic Fire Detection, Rheinish-Westfalischen Technischen Hochschule Aachen (March 1975).

Heskestad, G., and Delichatsios, M. A., "Environments of Fire Detectors — Phase 1: Effect of Fire Size, Ceiling Height and Material," Measurements vol. I (NBS-GCR-77-86), Analysis vol. II (NBS-GCR-77-95), National Technical Information Service (NTIS), Springfield, VA, 1986, 1995.

Heskestad, G., and Delichatsios, M. A., "Update: The Initial Convective Flow in Fire," *Fire Safety Journal*, vol. 15(5), 1989.

Morton, B. R., Taylor, G., and Turner, J. S., "Turbulent Gravitational Convection from Maintained and Instantaneous Sources," *Proc. Royal Society A,* 234:1–23, 1956.

NFPA 10, *Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers,* 2010 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 12, *Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems*, 2011 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 12A, *Standard on Halon 1301 Fire Extinguishing Systems*, 2009 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*, 2013 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 16, *Standard for the Installation of Foam-Water Sprinkler and Foam-Water Spray Systems*, 2011 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 17, *Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems*, 2009 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code®*, 2011 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 72E, *Standard on Automatic Fire Detectors*, 1990 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 92A, *Standard for Smoke-Control Systems Utilizing Barriers and Pressure Differences*, 2009 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA *101®*, *Life Safety Code®*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 664, *Standard for the Prevention of Fires and Explosions in Wood Processing and Woodworking Facilities*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 2001, *Standard on Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

O'Connor, D. J., Cui, E., Klaus, M. J., Lee, C. H., Su, C., Sun, Z., He, M., Jiang, Y., Vythoulkas, J., and Al-Farra, T., "Smoke Detector Performance for Level Ceilings with Deep Beams and Deep Pocket Configurations Research Project," NFPA Fire Protection Research Foundation Report, April, 2006.

Schifiliti, R., "Use of Fire Plume Theory in the Design and Analysis of Fire Detector and Sprinkler Response," Master's Thesis, Worcester Polytechnic Institute, Center for Firesafety Studies, Worcester, MA, 1986.

Schifiliti, R. P., and Pucci, W. E., *Fire Detection Modeling, State of the Art*, Fire Detection Institute, Windsor, CT, 1998.

CHAPTER

18

Notification Appliances

Chapter 18 includes requirements for audible and visible notification appliances for all types of systems. The use of notification appliances is not limited to occupant notification. Notification appliances are also used to alert and inform emergency services personnel and staff. In addition to notification equipment, this chapter addresses equipment used to signal or present information to operators and other users of alarm and emergency communications systems (ECSs).

As in the 2007 and 2010 editions, changes have been made to accommodate ECSs. These changes began in the 2007 edition with the removal of the word *fire* in many locations where the term *fire alarm* had been used. This allowed the requirements of Chapter 18 to be used in the application of notification appliances for any system. An important addition in the 2010 edition of the Code was the concept of acoustically distinguishable spaces (ADSs). In this 2013 edition, requirements for textual and graphical visible appliances have been moved from Chapter 24 to Chapter 18 and updated.

Dimensions and other numerical values have been reviewed to ensure that they express the intended level of precision for design, installation, and enforcement. (See Section 1.6, Units and Formulas, for more discussion on the subject of precision.) Values converted to metric units are rounded to convey the same approximate level of precision as the original U.S. units. Due to rounding, the two values might not convert exactly because of the intended precision of the measurement. For example, in the 2007 edition, the metric equivalent of 90 in. was given as 2290 mm, not 2286 mm, because measurements are not intended to be made to the exact millimeter. In the 2013 edition, 90 in. is converted and rounded to 2.29 m to better convey the intended precision. Where a measurement had been in inches, the intended precision is approximately 1 in., not 1 mm. By rounding the millimeter conversion to the nearest 10, the precision implied is 10 mm ÷ 25.4 mm/in. = 0.4 in. Users, however, might question whether the zero in 2290 was considered a "significant digit." By expressing the value in meters as 2.29, there is no confusion – the 9 is the significant digit, and the number has a precision of 0.01 m.

The following list is a summary of significant changes to the chapter on notification appliances in the 2013 edition:

- Addition of references to new Chapter 7, Documentation
- New 18.4.1.4.2 and 18.5.1.2 clarifying that other governing laws, codes, or standards specify which parts of a building or space require audible notification or visible signaling, respectively, while *NFPA 72*®, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code,* requires coverage of only occupiable spaces
- New 18.4.1.4.1 requiring designers to document areas that will or will not have audible signaling
- New 18.5.2.1 requiring designers to document areas that will or will not have visible signaling
- New 18.4.1.4.4 and 18.4.1.4.5 requiring ambient sound levels and design sound levels to be documented
- Revised 18.4.2.1 requiring the use of three-pulse temporal code audible signals for relocation or partial evacuation, not just total evacuation

- Removal of the "Two Lights per Room" column from Table 18.5.5.4.1(a) for wall-mounted strobes
- New Section 18.9 covering textual and graphical visible appliances relocated from Chapter 24 and expanded

18.1* Application

A.18.1 Notification appliances should be sufficient in quantity, audibility, intelligibility, and visibility so as to reliably convey the intended information to the intended personnel during an emergency.

Notification appliances in conventional commercial and industrial applications should be installed in accordance with the specific requirements of Section 18.4 and Section 18.5.

The Code recognizes that it is not possible to identify specific criteria sufficient to ensure effective occupant notification in every conceivable application. If the specific criteria of Section 18.4 and Section 18.5 are determined to be inadequate or inappropriate to provide the performance recommended, approved alternative approaches or methods are permitted to be used.

18.1.1 The requirements of this chapter shall apply where required by the enforcing authority; governing laws, codes, or standards; or other parts of this Code.

FAQ Where are the requirements to have occupant notification or staff notification?

The requirement to provide notification of occupants or staff is not found in this chapter. If an enforcing authority; governing laws, codes, or standards; or other parts of this Code require notification of occupants or staff, this chapter contains methods to accomplish that task. For example, requirements for having notification appliances are found in other codes, such as NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®. Also, some other sections of this Code contain requirements for alerting occupants or staff. For example, Section 10.15 and 10.6.9.1.1 require an audible and visible trouble indication upon failure of either primary or secondary power supply voltage. The required location for the signal is given in 10.15.7 and 10.15.8. Chapter 18 of *NFPA 72* covers the installation and performance requirements for that required signal and the appliance that generates the signal. Also note that if audible occupant notification is required (by some other code) and if the noise level is high (105 dBA), then 18.4.1.1 requires that visible signaling be added even if the enabling codes do not require visible appliances.

The *Americans with Disabilities Act and Architectural Barriers Act Accessibility Guidelines* also address visible notification requirements, including requirements for where visible appliances *should* be located. Since it was first introduced, the ADA/ABA have been updated and now reference *NFPA 72* for the "how to" part. The ADA/ABA guidelines are just that — guides intended to demonstrate how to comply with a law that says to treat everyone equally and fairly. Those guidelines are the "standard of care" that would be used in a lawsuit to evaluate compliance with the law. However, most jurisdictions have adopted their own accessibility codes or incorporated similar requirements into their building and fire codes to define where audible and visible signaling is required and are thus enforceable. Most, if not all, of those codes and standards reference *NFPA 72* for the "how to" part.

18.1.2 The requirements of this chapter shall address the reception of a notification signal and not the signal's information content.

As noted in 18.1.2, the requirements in Chapter 18 do not address the content of a textual message or a message contained in a coded audible or visible signal. Rather, the requirements address the ability of notification appliances to deliver a message. Chapter 18, in 18.4.2, does require the use of the three-pulse temporal pattern. [Also see Table 14.4.3.2, items 22(a), 22(b), and 30(f), and 29.3.5.] This chapter also requires that signal to meet certain audibility and installation requirements.

18.1.3 The performance, location, and mounting of notification appliances used to initiate or direct evacuation or relocation of the occupants, or for providing information to occupants or staff, shall comply with this chapter.

This Code recognizes that a building's fire emergency plan may require evacuation of the building or relocation of occupants within the protected premises.

18.1.4 The performance, location, and mounting of annunciators, displays, and printers used to display or record information for use by occupants, staff, responding emergency personnel, or supervising station personnel shall comply with this chapter.

The scope of the chapter includes the types of notification appliances noted in 18.1.4 that provide information, not just alerting, to occupants, staff, responding emergency personnel, or supervising station personnel.

18.1.5* The requirements of this chapter shall apply to the areas, spaces, or system functions where required by the enforcing authority; governing laws, codes, or standards; or other parts of this Code requiring compliance with this chapter.

A.18.1.5 Chapter 18 establishes the means, methods, and performance requirements of notification appliances and systems. Chapter 18 does not require the installation of notification appliances or identify where notification signaling is required. Authorities having jurisdiction, other codes, other standards, and chapters of this Code require notification signaling and might specify areas or intended audiences.

For example, Chapter 10 requires audible and visible trouble signals at specific locations. A building or fire code might require audible and visible occupant notification throughout all occupiable areas. In contrast, a building or fire code might require complete coverage with audible signaling, but might only require specific areas or spaces to have visible signaling. It is also possible that a referring code or standard might require compliance with mounting and notification appliance performance requirements without requiring complete notification signaling system performance. An example might be where an appliance is specifically located to provide information or notification to a person at a specific desk within a larger room.

In some cases, other parts of this Code may require notification of occupants or staff. The audible or visible notification appliances referred to in other chapters of this Code are described in detail in this chapter. An example is the requirement in Chapter 12 that a fault on a circuit produce an audible trouble signal at certain locations. As another example, requirements in Chapter 23 for occupant notification refer to Chapter 18 for requirements on the use of notification appliances to alert occupants of the need for evacuation. Similarly, notification appliances required by Chapter 26 to alert supervising station personnel must meet the requirements of Chapter 18.

18.1.6 The requirements of Chapter 7 shall apply where referenced in Chapter 18.

In the 2013 edition, Chapter 7 has been added to provide a single location where all documentation requirements can be found or referenced. In some cases, Chapter 7 lists the specific requirements and other chapters, such as Chapter 18, require compliance with specific parts of Chapter 7. In other instances, Chapter 7 points to specific requirements in other chapters. For notification appliances, most documentation requirements are detailed within Chapter 18. Project specifications, other codes, or other parts of this Code, such as Chapter 24, may then require specific documentation elements listed in Chapter 7 for certain types of systems or projects.

18.1.7 The requirements of Chapters 10, 14, 23, and 24 shall apply to the interconnection of notification appliances, the control configurations, the power supplies, and the use of the information provided by notification appliances.

18.1.8 Notification appliances shall be permitted to be used within buildings or outdoors and to target the general building, area, or space, or only specific parts of a building, area, or space designated in specific zones and sub-zones.

This paragraph explicitly recognizes the broader role of emergency communications systems (ECSs). While most fire alarm systems provide general evacuation of an entire building, some may provide only partial evacuation or relocation. An ECS used for both fire and other emergencies may be required to communicate with a small subset of building occupants or even with an entire community.

18.2 Purpose

Notification appliances shall provide stimuli for initiating emergency action and provide information to users, emergency response personnel, and occupants.

In the 2013 edition, the Code incorporated a condition-signal-response model. See Section 10.8 and A.3.3.57. In this model, a signal is used to convey or indicate some condition to people or to equipment that then respond in some way. For example, when a smoke detector senses a smoke condition, it electrically signals the control unit, which then responds. One of the control unit responses is usually to activate occupant notification signals. Those occupant notification signals are intended to alert people to respond in some predetermined way.

18.3 General

18.3.1 Listing. All notification appliances installed in conformity with Chapter 18 shall be listed for the purpose for which they are used.

The requirement in 18.3.1 states that the listing of notification appliances must be use-specific. This provision means that the listing of an appliance must relate to the exact manner in which it will be used. This requirement correlates with the rules of 10.3.1 and 10.3.2, which also require fire alarm system components to be installed in accordance with the manufacturers' published instructions. These instructions are taken into consideration by the listing organization. For example, visible notification appliances listed for wall mounting are not permitted to be installed on a ceiling (or horizontally suspended below the ceiling) because they are designed, tested, and listed for a specific vertical orientation to cover a specific area. Visible notification appliances that are listed for wall mounting but that are mounted horizontally, such as on a ceiling, will produce inadequate coverage. Appliances listed for ceiling mounting would be required for that application.

See Exhibit 18.1 for an example of a typical notification appliance listed for fire alarm use.

EXHIBIT 18.1

Listed Notification Appliance. (Source: Cooper Wheelock, Inc. dba Cooper Notification, Long Branch, NJ)

18.3.2 Nameplates.

18.3.2.1 Notification appliances shall include on their nameplates reference to electrical requirements and rated audible or visible performance, or both, as defined by the listing authority.

18.3.2.2 Audible appliances shall include on their nameplates reference to their parameters or reference to installation documents (supplied with the appliance) that include the parameters in accordance with 18.4.3 or 18.4.4.

18.3.2.3 Visible appliances shall include on their nameplates reference to their parameters or reference to installation documents (supplied with the appliance) that include the parameters in accordance with 18.5.3.1 or Section 18.6.

To guide designers and installers of fire alarm systems so that the system will deliver audible and visible information with appropriate intensity, the nameplate must state the capabilities of the appliance, as determined through tests conducted by the listing organization. The nameplate information also assists inspectors in verifying compliance with approved documents.

For example, an audible appliance nameplate or specification sheet might state that the unit will provide 75 dBA at 10 ft. A designer can use these data to determine expected sound levels at other distances and locations. (See the commentary following 18.4.3.1 and Exhibit 18.11.)

Notification appliance circuits (NACs) require special treatment to ensure that the voltage supplied to all the connected appliances will be within the limits specified for proper operation of each appliance. Voltage that is below the operating range of the appliance can cause the appliances to produce visible signal intensities or sound pressure levels (SPLs) that are below the levels assumed in the design of the system.

FAQ What is the purpose of voltage drop calculations?

Voltage drop calculations must be performed to ensure proper performance of the appliance and, on request, must be provided to the authority having jurisdiction in accordance with 7.2.1. In developing voltage drop calculations, the designer of the NAC should consider the following questions:

- What are the current and voltage limits of the power source for the circuit?

- Do these limits include the effects of any reduced voltage due to extended operation of the system on the secondary power supply?
- How many appliances can be connected to the NAC?
- What is the size planned for the field-wiring conductors?
- What is the total length of the NAC?
- Is the wire gauge selected appropriate for termination to the notification appliance?

The following examples use nominal 24 VDC fire alarm systems. The same method of calculating voltage drop can be applied to 12 VDC fire alarm systems using the appropriate corresponding values of 12 VDC control units and appliances.

Under all operating conditions, the voltage on the NAC must be sufficient to operate all the notification appliances so that they deliver the proper signal intensity. Often, the worst-case operating condition is when the control unit's primary power supply has failed and the battery capacity is at its lowest point. ANSI/UL 864, *Standard for Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems*, indicates a minimum value of 20.4 VDC (end of useful battery life). This value then becomes the starting point for the voltage drop calculations.

NOTE: If unique power supplies are used that maintain control unit voltage higher than 20.4 VDC for the conditions mentioned in the previous paragraph, consult the manufacturer's instructions for the allowable voltage to be used as the starting voltage.

Product Test Standard The particular edition of the Underwriter Laboratories Inc. (UL) standards to which the notification appliance has been tested and listed (for public mode, ANSI/UL 1971, *Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired*; for private mode, ANSI/UL 1638, *Standard for Visual Signaling Appliances – Private Mode Emergency and General Utility Signaling*; and ANSI/UL 464, *Standard for Audible Signal Appliances*) determines the voltage range and maximum current that can be used in voltage drop calculations.

In the past, notification appliances were marked with a rated (nameplate) range (e.g., 22–29 VDC). For instance, in the case of visible appliances (strobes), testing laboratories tested notification appliances at 80 percent and 110 percent of their rated (nameplate) voltage to ensure proper signal intensity and flash rate. This testing provided a reasonable level of assurance that the appliances would operate at lower voltages, which might occur when incoming ac power nears brownout conditions or when the system has been operating on battery near the end of a required 24-hour time period. For example, if an appliance was rated for operation between 22 volts and 29 volts (nameplate voltage range), testing laboratories would test the output of the notification appliance at 17.6 volts and 31.9 volts. This range is called the *operating range* and is different (wider range) from the nameplate range. In this example, this particular NAC must be designed and installed to provide no less than 17.6 VDC at any appliance in order to deliver the required light output (intensity) and flash rate. In this example, the maximum voltage drop between the NAC terminals and the last appliance must be 2.8 VDC or less (20.4 starting voltage at the control unit less the 17.6 VDC required at the appliance equals 2.8 VDC maximum voltage drop).

More current editions of UL standards relating to notification appliances eliminate the 80 percent to 110 percent testing that established the operating range and instead require a standard operating voltage range for notification appliances. In the case of 24 VDC appliances, when the voltage drop is being calculated, both the listed and the nameplate operating voltage ranges will be 16–33 VDC, unless the appliance has been listed as a "special applications" appliance. Therefore, 16 VDC should be considered the minimum voltage that must be delivered to any appliance. (Appliances for 12 VDC systems will have a standard operating range of 8–17.5 VDC.) In the case of a "special applications" appliance, the operating voltage range will be identified on both the appliance and its installation instructions.

When new appliances are added to older NACs or when the fire alarm control unit is replaced, compatibility must be ensured. The appliance manufacturer should be contacted if any questions relating to the electrical specifications or listing of the product arise.

Calculation Methods Several methods exist for calculating the voltage drop between the control unit and the last notification appliance on the NAC. Two possible methods are center-load calculations and point-to-point calculations. These methods require knowledge of actual appliance current draws at the minimum operating voltage and accurate measurements or estimates of conductor length between the appliances as well as total conductor length. Manufacturers have calculation tools that use these methods. However, circuit length data might not be reliably estimated during the design phase. Another method, the lump sum method, can be used because of the margin of safety it provides for unknowns. It is also an easy method to demonstrate.

The simplest voltage drop calculation method is to assume that the entire appliance loads are *at the end of the circuit* (lump sum). Ohm's law is used to calculate the voltage drop for the circuit. The relationship is as follows:

$$V_{\text{load}} = V_{\text{terminals}} - (I_{\text{load}}\, R_{\text{conductors}})$$

where:

V_{load} = 16 VDC minimum operating voltage of the appliance (unless it has been listed as a "special applications" appliance)

$V_{\text{terminals}}$ = 20.4 VDC (unless otherwise specified by the manufacturer and the listing)

I_{load} = total current draw in amperes of the connected appliances*

$R_{\text{conductors}}$ = total conductor resistance in ohms

*The total current draw is the sum of the maximum current draw for all the appliances on the circuits. The maximum current is the maximum RMS (root mean square) current within the listed voltage range (16–33 VDC for 24 VDC units). For strobes, the maximum current may be at the minimum listed voltage (16 VDC for 24 VDC units). For audible appliances, the maximum current is usually at the maximum listed voltage (33 VDC for 24 VDC units). The product listing standards for notification appliances specify that only the maximum current be marked on the appliance. See Exhibit 18.2.

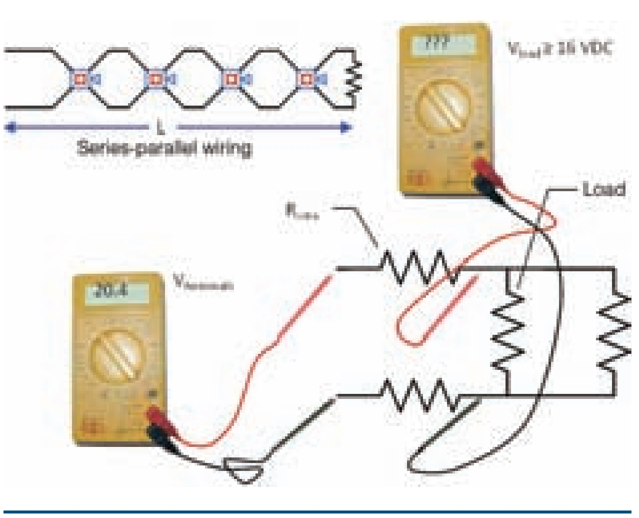


EXHIBIT 18.2

Lump Sum Model for Voltage Drop Calculations. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA)

Solving for $R_{\text{conductors}}$ and using Table 8 of Chapter 9 in *NFPA 70®*, *National Electrical Code®* (*NEC®*), 2011 edition, the required conductor size can be determined. Table 8 provides resistance per 1000 m and per 1000 ft for solid or stranded conductors at 167°F (75°C). The conductor resistance at other temperatures can be calculated or obtained from the wire manufacturer's data sheet. However, the temperature used should be representative of the ambient temperature where the conductors are located. The use of an elevated temperature might be necessary if it is known that the circuit will be run through a hot area such as some attics or in certain industrial areas. Note that the calculated total conductor resistance ($R_{conductors}$) includes the resistance of both outgoing and return circuit conductors.

FAQ What resistance must be included in the calculated total conductor resistance?

The actual length of the circuit run (the routing path between the control unit and the farthest appliance) used in the determination of conductor size is only half of the total conductor length, since the total path is from the control unit out to the last appliance and then back to the control unit.

Example: Using the low battery starting voltage of 20.4 VDC and assuming a minimum appliance operating voltage (V_{load}) of 16 VDC and a total current draw (I_{load}) of 5.0 amperes, the resulting (maximum) total conductor resistance ($R_{conductors}$) is calculated as follows:

$$R_{conductors} = \frac{20.4 - 16}{5} = 0.88 \text{ ohm}$$

If the circuit were 100 ft from end to end, the total conductor length would be 200 ft (out and back). (For simplicity, measurements in this example are presented only in U.S. units.) The permitted resistance per foot would be 0.88 ohm ÷ 200 ft = 0.0044 ohm/ft, or 4.4 ohms/1000 ft. Per Table 8 of the *National Electrical Code*, Chapter 9, this calculated resistance-per-foot limit would require a 14 AWG wire size (assuming stranded, uncoated copper at 167°F), which has a resistance of 3.14 ohms/1000 ft, which is less than the maximum calculated resistance of 4.4 ohms/1000 ft. A larger-size conductor or a reduction in total current draw would be needed to increase the circuit length. Note that the total current draw might also be limited by the capability of the control unit output circuit. For example, many power-limited NACs have a maximum current output of 2.0 amperes. For a 2 amp circuit maximum, the length that circuit could be if wired using 18 AWG stranded, uncoated copper at 167°F (7.95 ohms/1000 ft per Table 8 of the *NEC*) is calculated as follows:

$$\frac{20.4 - 16}{2} = 2.2 \text{ ohms}$$

$$\frac{2.2 \text{ ohms}}{0.00795 \text{ ohms/ft}} = \text{276 ft max. conductor length or 138 ft from the control unit to the last appliance.}$$

This lump sum method to calculate voltage drop applies to NACs that are laid out and installed in a true series-parallel configuration, as are most of today's NACs. See Exhibit 18.2. However, addressable notification appliances are permitted to be installed on Class B signaling line circuits that have T-taps; refer to the manufacturer's installation instructions. If the circuit has T-taps, it is not a true series-parallel circuit. The lump sum calculation method can still be used if the longest path is used as a length and the total current for all appliances is used for the load. However, the calculations will be conservative. More sophisticated calculation methods and tools that use point-to-point calculations would be more accurate. Some equipment manufacturers provide spreadsheets or software tools that can be used to perform center-load or point-to-point circuit voltage calculations. A center-load calculation assumes the load is in the middle of the circuit length. A point-to-point model places each appliance load along the circuit and calculates the required wire size for each connecting segment. For ease of stocking and installation, most installers would not bother changing wire sizes four or five times on a single circuit. However, some long circuits might be wired with a larger gauge wire at the start and then change to a smaller wire to feed a few appliances at the end that might be remotely located.

FAQ What load (current draw) should be used in the calculations?

Use of the actual current draw, that is, the amount of current based on the actual load intended to be on the circuit is acceptable. However, if any appliances must be added to the circuit at a later date, the wire size might be incorrect unless some factor of safety is used. The control unit manufacturer's maximum rated current for the circuit is recommended to be used as the load. That way, the circuit is calculated at its maximum capacity. A factor of safety should also be used in estimating the circuit length. Some owners, engineers, and authorities might require factors of safety in the calculations.

Commentary Table 18.1 shows circuit lengths calculated for a variety of current flows and wire sizes. The lump sum calculations use the low battery starting voltage of 20.4 VDC and assumed a minimum appliance operating voltage (V_{load}) of 16 VDC.

COMMENTARY TABLE 18.1 *Circuit Lengths*

	Uncoated Copper at 75 °C									
AWG	**18 Solid**	**18 Strand**	**16 Solid**	**16 Strand**	**14 Solid**	**14 Strand**	**12 Solid**	**12 Strand**	**10 Solid**	**10 Strand**
Strands	1	7	1	7	1	7	1	7	1	7
Ohms/1000 ft	7.77	7.95	4.89	4.99	3.07	3.14	1.93	1.98	1.21	1.24
Amps	**Allowable Circuit Length**									
0.5	566	553	900	882	1433	1401	2280	2222	3636	3548
1.0	283	277	450	441	717	701	1140	1111	1818	1774
1.5	189	184	300	294	478	467	760	741	1212	1183
2.0	142	138	225	220	358	350	570	556	909	887
2.5	113	111	180	176	287	280	456	444	727	710
3.0	94	92	150	147	239	234	380	370	606	591
3.5	81	79	129	126	205	200	326	317	519	507
4.0	71	69	112	110	179	175	285	278	455	444
4.5	63	61	100	98	159	156	253	247	404	394
5.0	57	55	90	88	143	140	228	222	364	355
5.5	51	50	82	80	130	127	207	202	331	323
6.0	47	46	75	73	119	117	190	185	303	296

Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA.

18.3.3 Physical Construction.

18.3.3.1 Appliances intended for use in special environments, such as outdoors versus indoors, high or low temperatures, high humidity, dusty conditions, and hazardous locations, or where subject to tampering, shall be listed for the intended application.

Maintaining the operational integrity of audible and visible notification appliances is essential despite their possible location in relatively hostile environments. Use of appliances not listed for the type of environment in which the appliance is to be placed is a violation of 18.3.3.1.

18.3.3.2* Notification appliances used for signaling other than fire shall not have the word FIRE, or any fire symbol, in any form (i.e., stamped, imprinted, etc.) on the appliance visible to the public. Notification appliances with multiple visible elements shall be permitted to have fire markings only on those visible elements used for fire signaling.

A.18.3.3.2 The intent is to prohibit labeling that could give an incorrect message. Wording such as "Emergency" would be acceptable for labeling because it is generic enough not to cause confusion. Fire alarm systems are often used as emergency notification systems, and therefore attention should be given to this detail.

Combination audible and visible units may have several visible appliances, each labeled differently or not labeled at all.

An ECS can use the same appliances for signaling both fire and other emergencies. If that is the case, the appliance is not permitted to have "FIRE" markings. Some ECSs use multiple visible appliances. In those cases, one visible appliance is labeled "FIRE" and is used to signal the need for immediate evacuation or relocation, while another visible appliance is used during more complex situations to signal the need for occupants to get additional information from other sources. For example, during a chemical release or bomb threat, communicating specific evacuation or relocation instructions might be necessary to prevent undesired exposure to occupants. The use of different types or colors of notification appliances on a system to influence occupant behavior should be carefully considered but might be advisable only where the occupants are not transient and are well trained and drilled in the required response.

18.3.4* Mechanical Protection.

A.18.3.4 Situations exist where supplemental enclosures are necessary to protect the physical integrity of a notification appliance. Protective enclosures should not interfere with the performance characteristics of the appliance. If the enclosure degrades the performance, methods should be detailed in the manufacturer's published instructions of the enclosure that clearly identify the degradation. For example, where the appliance signal is attenuated, it might be necessary to adjust the appliance spacings or appliance output.

The protection described in 18.3.4 is usually provided by an enclosure that protects the actual audible or visible mechanism. In the case of speakers, a mechanical baffle protects the cone from being punctured by a sharp object. See Exhibit 18.3 for an example of a typical notification appliance with a mechanical baffle.

Guards placed over an audible or visible appliance can degrade the level of the audible signal or the light intensity of the appliance. For that reason, the guard or protective device must be tested with the specific appliance, and its effect must be measured and reported. System designers, installers, and inspectors can then de-rate the appliance performance and make corrections when using the appliance with the guard in a design. Exhibit 18.4 is an example of a typical protective guard for an audible/visible appliance.

EXHIBIT 18.3

Notification Appliance Showing Mechanical Baffle. (Source: Cooper Wheelock, Inc. dba Cooper Notification, Long Branch, NJ)

18.3.4.1 Appliances subject to mechanical damage shall be suitably protected.

18.3.4.2 If guards, covers, or lenses are employed, they shall be listed for use with the appliance.

In the case of an appliance such as that shown in Exhibit 18.3, the integral mechanical baffle is a normal part of the appliance, and its effect is accounted for in the product listing. The guard shown in Exhibit 18.4 is an aftermarket product that must be listed for use with the appliance. That listing will state the performance restrictions, if any.

18.3.4.3 The effect of guards, covers, or lenses on the appliance's field performance shall be in accordance with the listing requirements.

18.3.5 Mounting.

18.3.5.1 Appliances shall be supported independently of their attachments to the circuit conductors.

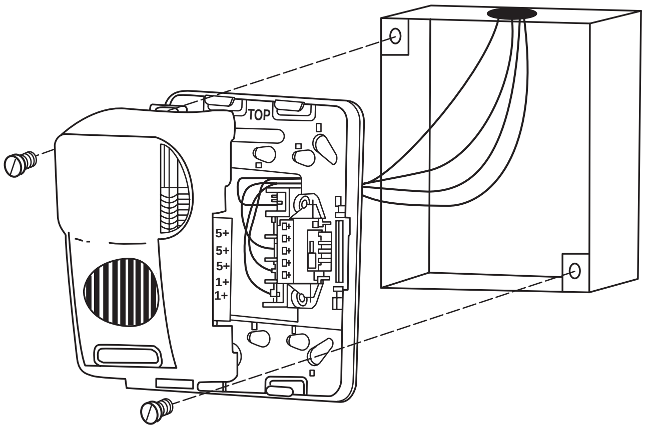
18.3.5.2 Appliances shall be mounted in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions.

Physically supporting the appliance by means of the conductors that connect the appliance to the NAC of the fire alarm system is not permitted. Constant strain on terminal connections can cause conductors to pull free or to break. See Exhibit 18.5 for an example of independent support for a notification appliance.

EXHIBIT 18.4

Protective Guard for Audible/Visible Appliance. (Source: Safety Technology International, Inc., Waterford, MI)

EXHIBIT 18.5



Notification Appliance with Independent Support. (Source: Gentex Corp., Zeeland, MI)

18.3.6* Connections. Terminals, leads, or addressable communication, that provide for monitoring the integrity of the notification appliance connections shall be provided.

A.18.3.6 For hardwired appliances, terminals or leads, as described in 18.3.6, are necessary to ensure that the wire run is broken and that the individual connections are made to the leads or other terminals for signaling and power.

A common terminal can be used for connection of incoming and outgoing wires. However, the design and construction of the terminal should not permit an uninsulated section of a single conductor to be looped around the terminal and to serve as two separate connections. For example, a notched clamping plate under a single securing screw is acceptable only if separate conductors of a notification circuit are intended to be inserted in each notch. *[See Figure A.17.4.6(a).]*

Another means to monitor the integrity of a connection is to establish communication between the appliance and the control unit. The integrity of the connection is verified by the presence of communication. Monitoring integrity in this fashion might not require multiple terminals or leads, as previously described.

It should be noted that monitoring the integrity of the installation conductors and their connection to an appliance does not guarantee the integrity of the appliance or that it is operational. Appliances can be damaged and become inoperable or a circuit can be overloaded, resulting in failure when the appliances are called upon to work. Presently, only testing can establish the integrity of an appliance.

FAQ What is required to ensure the monitoring for integrity of the NAC?

To provide system reliability and availability, NACs are monitored for integrity in accordance with the requirements of Section 12.6. The appliances themselves are not required to be monitored or supervised. To comply with the requirements of Section 12.6, especially for appliances that are not addressable, the appliance must have the correct number and type of screw terminals or pigtail leads to permit proper connection to the circuit. See Figure A.17.4.6(a). Although Figure A.17.4.6(a) shows initiating devices, the figure is equally applicable to notification appliances. The correct type of terminals or leads, combined with correct installation practice, results in the circuit opening if a connection to an appliance is broken. This open circuit results in a trouble signal at the fire alarm control unit.

As with initiating devices, addressable notification appliances produced by some manufacturers monitor circuit integrity using digital communication rather than current flow.

18.4 Audible Characteristics

18.4.1 General Requirements.

18.4.1.1* An average ambient sound level greater than 105 dBA shall require the use of a visible notification appliance(s) in accordance with Section 18.5 where the application is public mode or Section 18.6 where the application is private mode.

In some occupancies, the ambient sound level is so high that the sole reliance on audible notification appliances would be impractical. A drop forge shop, a large casino, a rock music dance hall, or a newspaper press room are all candidates for the addition of visible signal appliances to help ensure that the signals will be perceived by the occupants. See Exhibits 18.6 and 18.7 for examples of typical visible notification appliances.

Visible signaling is required by this Code when the ambient sound pressure levels exceed 105 dBA, as noted in 18.4.1.1, because trying to overcome that level with audible fire alarm signals is difficult and possibly harmful. In some occupancies, such as theaters, concert halls, and nightclubs, it may be possible to turn off the ambient noise when the fire alarm system is activated as permitted by 18.4.3.5.

EXHIBIT 18.6

One Type of Visible Notification Appliance. (Source: Cooper Wheelock, Inc. dba Cooper Notification, Long Branch, NJ)

A.18.4.1.1 The Code does not require that all audible notification appliances within a building be of the same type. However, a mixture of different types of audible notification appliances within a space is not the desired method. Audible notification appliances that convey a similar audible signal are preferred. For example, a space that uses mechanical horns and bells might not be desirable. A space that is provided with mechanical horns and electronic horns with similar audible signal output is preferred.

However, the cost of replacing all existing appliances to match new appliances can impose substantial economic impact where other methods can be used to avoid occupant confusion of signals and signal content. Examples of other methods used to avoid confusion include, but are not limited to, training of occupants, signage, consistent use of temporal code signal pattern, and fire drills.

Hearing protection can attenuate both the ambient noise level and the audible signal. Specifications from hearing protection manufacturers might allow the effect of hearing protection devices to be evaluated. In spaces where hearing protection is worn due to high ambient noise conditions, visible signal appliances should be considered.

In addition, where hearing protection is worn due to high ambient noise conditions, the audible signal and ambient noise measurements can be analyzed and the audible signal can be adjusted to account for attenuation caused by the hearing protection devices.

EXHIBIT 18.7

Another Type of Visible Notification Appliance. (Source: SimplexGrinnell, Westminster, MA)

18.4.1.2* The total sound pressure level produced by combining the ambient sound pressure level with all audible notification appliances operating shall not exceed 110 dBA at the minimum hearing distance.

A.18.4.1.2 The maximum sound pressure level permitted in a space is 110 dBA, reduced from 120 dBA in previous editions. The change from 120 dBA to 110 dBA is to coordinate with other laws, codes, and standards.

In addition to the danger of exposure to a high sound level, long-term exposure to lower levels may also be a problem when, for example, occupants must traverse long egress paths to exit or technicians test large systems over extended time periods.

This Code does not presume to know how long a person will be exposed to an audible notification system. The limit of 110 dBA has been set as a reasonable upper limit for the performance of a system. For workers who may be exposed to high sound levels over the course of a 40-year employment history, OSHA (Occupational, Health and Safety Administration) has established a maximum permitted dose before a hearing conservation program must be implemented. A worker exposed to 120 dBA for 7.5 minutes a day for 40 years might be in danger of suffering a hearing impairment. The OSHA regulation includes a formula to calculate a dose for situations where a person is exposed to different sound levels for different periods of time. The maximum permitted by the regulation is an 8-hour equivalent dose of 90 dBA. It is possible to calculate the dose a person experiences when traversing an egress path where the sound pressure level varies as he/she passes close to, then away from, audible appliances. Table A.18.4.1.2 depicts OSHA permissible noise exposures.

TABLE A.18.4.1.2
Permissible Noise Exposures

Duration (hr)	*L_A (dBA)*
8	90
6	92
4	95
3	97
2	100
1.5	102
1	105
0.5	110
0.25	115
0.125 (7.5 minutes)	120

Source: OSHA, 29 CFR 1910.5, Table G-16, Occupational Noise Exposure.

Prior to the 2007 edition, the audible limit was set at 120 dBA. In the 2007 edition, the limit in 18.4.1.2 was changed to 110 dBA as a reasonable upper limit for the performance of a system. The reduction was made to correlate with other codes and standards. Note that the limit is for the sound pressure level at any location with the entire system operating, not just any one appliance. The "minimum hearing distance" is not defined but for most installations can be assumed to result when a person is standing directly under or next to one appliance or noise source.

18.4.1.3* Sound from normal or permanent sources, having a duration greater than 60 seconds, shall be included when measuring maximum ambient sound level. Sound from temporary or abnormal sources shall not be required to be included when measuring maximum ambient sound level.

The intent of the Code for all audible signaling is that the worst-case conditions be used for all ambient and alarm sound level measurements. This might require testing with doors and other barriers opened and closed to determine the worst case. However, it is not necessary to open a door to get the worst-case noise and then close the door to get the worst-case alarm level – or vice versa. Instead, the difference between ambient and alarm can be measured with the door open and then again with the door closed to ensure that the required levels are met in both situations. See also 18.4.5.2.

A.18.4.1.3 In determining maximum ambient sound levels, sound sources that should be considered include air-handling equipment and background music in a typical office environment, office cleaning equipment (vacuum cleaner), noisy children in a school auditorium, car engines in an auto shop, conveyor belts in a warehouse, and a running shower and fan in a hotel bathroom. Temporary or abnormal sound sources that can be excluded would include internal or external construction activities (i.e., office rearrangements and construction equipment).

18.4.1.4 Audible notification appliances for alert and evacuation signal tones shall meet the requirements of 18.4.3 (Public Mode Audible Requirements), 18.4.4 (Private Mode Audible Requirements), 18.4.5 (Sleeping Area Requirements), or 18.4.6 (Narrow Band Tone Signaling for Exceeding Masked Thresholds), as applicable.

Note that the requirements in this paragraph apply to the *tones* produced by audible appliances used for alert and evacuation. This paragraph works with 18.4.1.5 and Table 14.4.3.2 item 22(b) to require measurement of the sound pressure levels (SPL) of tones, but not the SPL of voice messages. See the text of A.18.4.1.5 for an explanation of why the SPL of voice messages is not required to be measured.

18.4.1.4.1* The designer of the audible notification system shall identify the rooms and spaces that will have audible notification and those where audible notification will not be provided.

A.18.4.1.4.1 Audibility of a fire or emergency signal might not be required in all rooms and spaces. For example, a system that is used for general occupant notification should not require audibility of the signal in closets and other spaces that are not considered as occupiable spaces. However, a space of the same size used as a file room would be considered occupiable and should have coverage by notification appliances. Also, signaling intended only for staff or emergency forces might only have to be effective in very specific locations.

The requirement to have the system designer identify where audible signaling will be provided was added in 2013. There are two primary purposes for this requirement. The first is to point out to all users that there might be places where audible signaling will not be provided. The second is to set up the documentation requirements in 18.4.1.4.3.

18.4.1.4.2* Unless otherwise required by other sections of this Code, the coverage area for audible occupant notification shall be as required by other governing laws, codes, or standards.

Where the other governing laws, codes, or standards require audible occupant notification for all or part of an area or space, coverage shall only be required in occupiable areas as defined in 3.3.178.

Although this paragraph was added in 2013, the actual requirement was always implied. By design, *NFPA 72* does not require any type of notification — audible or visible — except for a few control unit and supervising station signaling needs. The requirements to have occupant notification are supposed to come from the "other governing laws, codes, or standards," such as the *Life Safety Code* or local building or fire codes. Ideally, those other documents would be very clear about what parts of a building or space require audible and/or visible signaling. However, many of those documents provide only a blanket requirement for an occupancy or use group to have notification signaling, and they rely on *NFPA 72* to provide the detail. No code, including *NFPA 72,* can anticipate all scenarios. Therefore, this paragraph provides a default for the designer to provide audible signaling only in the occupiable parts of the building or area required to be covered by the enabling code, law, or standard. See the definitions of *occupiable* and *occupiable area* in 3.3.177 and 3.3.178.

A.18.4.1.4.2 See 3.3.177 for the definition of occupiable.

18.4.1.4.3 The sound pressure levels that must be produced by the audible appliances in the coverage areas to meet the requirements of this Code shall be documented by the system designer during the planning and design of the notification system. The greater of the expected average ambient sound pressure level or expected maximum sound pressure level having a duration of at least 60 seconds shall also be documented for the coverage area by the system designer to ensure compliance with 18.4.3, 18.4.4, 18.4.5, or 18.4.6 for the coverage area.

18.4.1.4.4 The design sound pressure levels to be produced by the notification appliances for the various coverage areas shall be documented for use during acceptance testing of the system.

18.4.1.4.5 Where required by the authority having jurisdiction, documentation of the design sound pressure levels for the various coverage areas shall be submitted for review and approval.

Paragraphs 18.4.1.4.3 through 18.4.1.4.5 were added in 2013 to help ensure proper design and testing. When a system is being tested, the maximum ambient noise level might not be present. Although the maximum ambient noise level is not required to be present to conduct a test, it is necessary to know what sound level is required for the system to pass. Paragraph 18.4.1.4.3 requires the design ambient levels to be documented, so that if changes in the environment or occupancy occur and significant changes in ambient noise are measured, the adequacy of the design can be questioned. The design noise level is not necessary to be present when testing because the difference in the measurement would be minor compared to the required design sound pressure level. Note that 18.4.1.4.5 only requires the data to be submitted for approval "where required by the authority having jurisdiction." This is an example of where the authority having jurisdiction would use Chapter 7 as a "menu" to select the specific documentation to be submitted for certain projects. Remember that the term *authority having jurisdiction* is broadly defined — see A.3.2.2 for examples.

18.4.1.5* Voice messages shall not be required to meet the audibility requirements of 18.4.3 (Public Mode Audible Requirements), 18.4.4 (Private Mode Audible Requirements), 18.4.5 (Sleeping Area Requirements), or 18.4.6 (Narrow Band Tone Signaling for Exceeding Masked Thresholds), but shall meet the intelligibility requirements of 18.4.10 where voice intelligibility is required.

FAQ Why are audibility measurements not required for textual (voice) signals?

The Technical Committee on Notification Appliances for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems wanted to clarify the following two facts:

- Sound pressure level requirements within Chapter 18 are for tone signals only and not for voice messages.
- Intelligible voice messages are dependent on more than just adequate loudness.

Additional requirements for textual audible appliances are covered in Section 18.8. If a textual audible notification appliance produces a signal of adequate sound level, but the message is not intelligible, then such a signal is not adequate. Chapter 14, which covers inspection, testing, and maintenance, does not require voice signals to be measured for audibility because the sound being produced is modulated and would not result in a meaningful measurement. See also the defined terms *intelligibility* and *intelligible* in 3.3.135 and 3.3.136.

Additional discussion of voice system intelligibility, the factors that affect it, and how it is evaluated and measured can be found in Supplement 2, Voice Intelligibility for Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications Systems, and in Annex D, Speech Intelligibility.

A.18.4.1.5 Because voice is composed of modulated tones, it is not valid to compare loudness measurements of tone signals with loudness measurements of voice signals. A voice signal that is subjectively judged to be equally as loud as a tone signal will actually produce a dB reading below that of the tone signal. The modulated tones of a voice signal can have the same or greater peak amplitude as that of a tone signal. However, because they are modulated meters with fast or slow time, constants will show a lower dB or dBA reading.

A voice signal must have sufficient audibility to result in intelligible communication. Intelligibility modeling/measurements (subject based and instrument based) include audibility as well as many other factors when determining whether a voice signal is adequate or not adequate.

Where a voice signal includes an audible alert or evacuation tone, the tone portion of the signal should meet the audible signal requirements listed in 18.4.3.

18.4.1.6 Audible notification appliances used for exit marking shall not be required to meet the audibility requirements of 18.4.3 (Public Mode Audible Requirements), 18.4.4 (Private Mode Audible Requirements), 18.4.5 (Sleeping Area Requirements), or 18.4.6 (Narrow Band Tone Signaling for Exceeding Masked Thresholds), except as required by 18.4.7 (Exit Marking Audible Appliance Requirements).

The technical committee recognizes that exit marking systems (see 18.4.7) may have "targeted" areas where specific appliances should be heard to direct occupant movement.

18.4.2 Distinctive Evacuation Signal.

The requirement for and definition of a distinctive evacuation signal were relocated to this chapter in 2010 to provide one place for the systems' chapters to reference. In prior editions, that requirement was in the protected premises fire alarm systems chapter and simply referenced ANSI S3.41, *American National Standard Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal*. The functional requirements for the three-pulse temporal code have been explicitly placed in the body of the Code rather than simply referencing ANSI S3.41.

A significant change in 2013 is to require the use of the three-pulse temporal pattern for more than just *total building* evacuation. The distinctive evacuation signal is to be used also for *partial* evacuation or relocation as explained in A.18.4.2.1. This change was made to correlate with and help drive expected changes in ANSI S3.41.

18.4.2.1* To meet the requirements of Section 10.10, the alarm audible signal pattern used to notify building occupants of the need to evacuate (leave the building) or relocate (from one area to another) shall be the standard alarm evacuation signal consisting of a three-pulse temporal pattern. The pattern shall be in accordance with Figure 18.4.2.1 and shall consist of the following in this order:

(1) "On" phase lasting 0.5 second ±10 percent
(2) "Off" phase lasting 0.5 second ±10 percent for three successive "on" periods
(3) "Off" phase lasting 1.5 seconds ±10 percent

Exception: Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction, continued use of the existing consistent evacuation signaling scheme shall be permitted.

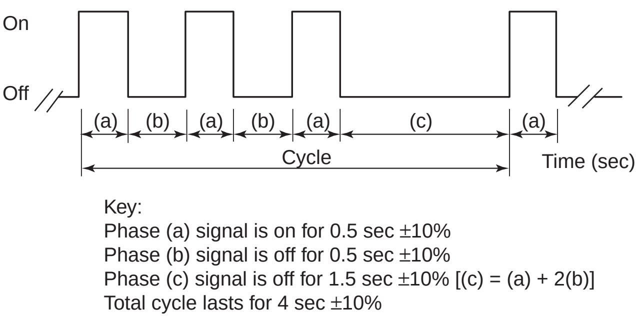


FIGURE 18.4.2.1 *Temporal Pattern Parameters.*

A.18.4.2.1 Paragraph 10.10 requires that alarm signals be distinctive in sound from other signals and that this sound not be used for any other purpose. The use of the distinctive three-pulse temporal pattern signal required by 18.4.2.1 became effective July 1, 1996, for new systems installed after that date. It is not the intent to prohibit continued use of an existing consistent evacuation signaling scheme, subject to approval by the authority having jurisdiction. It is also not the intent that the distinct pattern be applied to visible appliances.

Prior to the 2013 edition, the use of the temporal code 3 distinctive evacuation signal was intended only where evacuation of the building was the intended response. In order to eliminate the need for additional signals to mean "relocate," the signal is now permitted to be used where relocation or partial evacuation is the intended response. The simple result is people should not be in any area where the signal is sounding and that it is safe to be anywhere that signal is not sounding.

The temporal pattern can be produced by any audible notification appliance, as illustrated in Figure A.18.4.2.1(a) and Figure A.18.4.2.1(b).

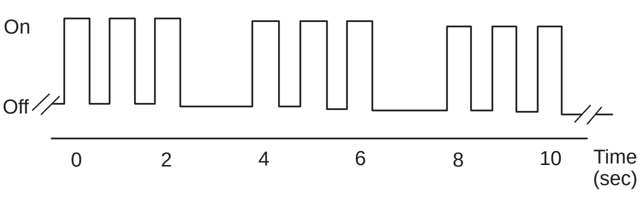


FIGURE A.18.4.2.1(a) *Temporal Pattern Imposed on Signaling Appliances That Emit Continuous Signal While Energized.*

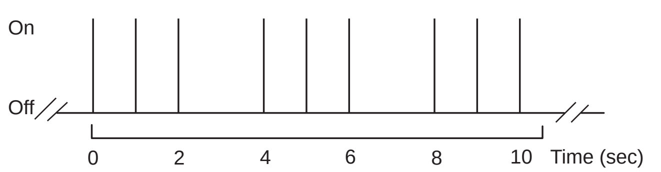


FIGURE A.18.4.2.1(b) *Temporal Pattern Imposed on Single-Stroke Bell or Chime.*

18.4.2.2 A single-stroke bell or chime sounded at "on" intervals lasting 1 second ±10 percent, with a 2-second ±10 percent "off" interval after each third "on" stroke, shall be permitted.

18.4.2.3 The signal shall be repeated for a period appropriate for the purposes of evacuation of the building, but for not less than 180 seconds. The minimum repetition time shall be permitted to be manually interrupted.

18.4.2.4* The standard evacuation signal shall be synchronized within a notification zone.

A.18.4.2.4 Coordination or synchronization of the audible signal within a notification zone is needed to preserve the temporal pattern. It is unlikely that the audible signal in one evacuation/notification zone will be heard in another at a level that will destroy the temporal pattern. Thus, it would not normally be necessary to provide coordination or synchronization for an entire system. Caution should be used in spaces such as atriums, where the sounds produced in one notification zone can be sufficient to cause confusion regarding the temporal pattern.

18.4.3* Public Mode Audible Requirements.

The requirement that audible appliances produce some minimum sound pressure level (75 dBA at 10 ft) was removed in 2002 to permit signaling at lower sound levels in small, enclosed spaces and spaces with low ambient noise levels. This also permits targeted signaling using personal notification appliances. The audible notification requirements found in this chapter are performance-based. In many instances performance requirements can be met using appliances rated at less than 75 dBA at 10 ft.

A.18.4.3 The typical average ambient sound level for the occupancies specified in Table A.18.4.3 are intended only for design guidance purposes. The typical average ambient sound levels specified should not be used in lieu of actual sound level measurements.

TABLE A.18.4.3 *Average Ambient Sound Level According to Location*

Location	*Average Ambient Sound Level (dBA)*
Business occupancies	55
Educational occupancies	45
Industrial occupancies	80
Institutional occupancies	50
Mercantile occupancies	40
Mechanical rooms	85
Piers and water-surrounded structures	40
Places of assembly	55
Residential occupancies	35
Storage occupancies	30
Thoroughfares, high-density urban	70
Thoroughfares, medium-density urban	55
Thoroughfares, rural and suburban	40
Tower occupancies	35
Underground structures and windowless buildings	40
Vehicles and vessels	50

Sound levels can be significantly reduced due to distance and losses through building elements. Every time the distance from the source doubles, the sound level decreases by about 6 decibels (dB). Audible notification appliances are typically rated by manufacturers' and testing agencies at 10 ft (3 m) from the appliance. Subsequently, at a distance of 20 ft (6.1 m) from an audible appliance rated at 84 dBA, the sound level might be reduced to 78 dBA. At a closed door, the loss might be about 10 dB to 24 dB or more depending on construction. If the opening around the door is sealed, this might result in a loss of 22 dB to 34 dB or more.

FAQ What do the values in Table A.18.4.3 represent?

The sound levels shown in Table A.18.4.3 are defined in 3.3.29 as "the root mean square, A-weighted, sound pressure level." This A-weighted RMS value can be experimentally determined (measured) for a particular occupancy by using an integrating, sound pressure level meter. Exhibit 18.8 shows two examples of meters that can be used to measure the total integrated sound pressure level in dBA or to analyze the dB at specific frequency bands (see 18.4.6). These particular meters can also be used to measure the voice intelligibility score discussed in the sections on speech intelligibility.

Measurements taken by a major manufacturer of fire alarm equipment in a large sampling of hotel rooms with through-the-wall air-conditioning units determined that the average ambient sound level in those rooms with the air conditioners operating was 55 dBA.

The suggested value of 85 dBA for mechanical rooms is only an example, as are all the other table entries. Some mechanical equipment rooms might have an average ambient sound level that exceeds this value, and others might be lower. Based on the average ambient sound level of 85 dBA, the audible notification appliances would need to deliver 100 dBA throughout the room. See Exhibits 18.9 and 18.10 for examples of typical audible notification appliances for high ambient noise areas, such as might be found in some mechanical rooms or some industrial occupancies.

EXHIBIT 18.8

Combination Sound Pressure Level Meter/Analyzer and Speech Intelligibility Meter (left) and XL2 Audio and Acoustic Analyzer Displaying Basic STI-PA Result (right). [Sources: (left) Gold Line, West Redding, CT; (right) NTI Americas, Tigard, OR]

EXHIBIT 18.9

Audible Notification Appliance for High Ambient Noise Areas. (Source: Signal Communications Corp., Woburn, MA)

EXHIBIT 18.10

Cluster Speakers. (Source: Cooper Wheelock, Inc. dba Cooper Notification, Long Branch, NJ)

18.4.3.1* To ensure that audible public mode signals are clearly heard, unless otherwise permitted by 18.4.3.2 through 18.4.3.5, they shall have a sound level at least 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds, whichever is greater, measured 5 ft (1.5 m) above the floor in the area required to be served by the system using the A-weighted scale (dBA).

Care must be exercised in selection of the source of the maximum ambient sound level for each occupancy to ensure that it is the maximum. The average ambient sound level is more difficult to determine than the maximum sound level that lasts at least 60 seconds. Note that in acoustics, the maximum sound level is not the peak sound level. The maximum sound level in this case is the maximum RMS value that lasts at least 60 seconds. In addition, if the maximum level is not at least 10 dB above the average ambient sound level, the sound level from an audible notification system designed to produce 5 dB over the maximum sound level will not comply fully with the requirements of 18.4.3.1.

It should also be pointed out that the definition of the term *average ambient sound level* in 3.3.29 specifies that average is over the "time that any person is present, or a 24-hour period, whichever time period is the lesser." Measurements are made at 5 ft (1.5 m) above the floor to reduce the effects of sound wave reinforcement and cancellation due to walls and surfaces.

Additional appliances might be required so that the signal will be heard clearly throughout the target area. In 2010, the technical committee changed the text to indicate that the audibility requirement is in the "area required to be served by the system." In the past, the requirement addressed the "occupiable" or "occupied" area. However, those terms created confusion and misapplication, with some authorities requiring full audibility in small closets and other similar spaces because they *could* be occupied. The technical committee's intent is that other codes and standards specify where a system must be audible. However, where those codes do not give specific examples of where the full audible performance requirement must be met, common sense should apply.

Audible appliance ratings, as measured by the manufacturer and qualified testing laboratories, are specified as a decibel rating at a predetermined distance, usually 10 ft (3 m). The rule of thumb is that the output of an audible notification appliance is reduced by 6 dB if the distance between the appliance and the listener is doubled. The accuracy of this rule of thumb depends on many intervening variables, particularly the acoustic properties of the materials in the listening space, such as ceiling materials and floor and wall coverings.

The use of the appliance's rating along with this rule allows system designers to estimate audible levels in occupiable spaces before a system is installed. See Exhibit 18.11 for an example of how this rule of thumb is applied.

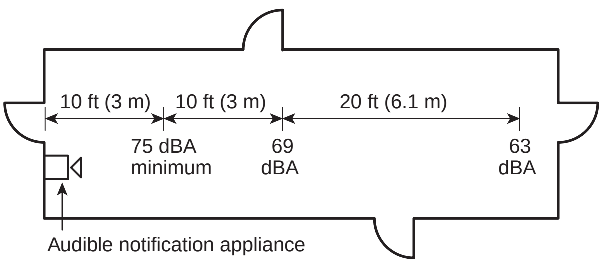


EXHIBIT 18.11

Estimating Audible Levels Using 6 dB Rule of Thumb Method. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA)

More complex situations require calculating sound attenuation through doors and walls. See *The SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering* for appropriate calculation methods.

A.18.4.3.1 Audio levels are commonly measured using units of decibels, or ¹⁄₁₀ Bell, abbreviated dB. When measured using a sound level meter, the operator can select either an A-weighted, B-weighted, or C-weighted measurement. The C-weighted measurement is nominally flat from 70 Hz to 4000 Hz, and the B-weighted measurement is nominally flat from 300 Hz to 4000 Hz. The A-weighted measurement filters the input signal to reduce the measurement sensitivity for frequencies to which the human ear is less sensitive and is relatively flat from 600 Hz to 7000 Hz. This results in a measurement that is weighted to simulate the segment of the audio spectrum that provides the most significant intelligibility components heard by the human ear. The units used for measurement are still dB, but the shorthand for specifying use of the A-weighted filter is typically dBA. The difference between any two sound levels measured on the same scale is always expressed in units of dB, not dBA.

The constantly changing nature of pressure waves, which are detected by ear, can be measured by electronic sound meters, and the resulting electronic waveforms can be processed and presented in a number of meaningful ways. Most simple sound level meters have a fast or slow time constant (125 ms and 1000 ms, respectively) to quickly average a sound signal and present a root mean square (RMS) level to the meter movement or display. This is the type of measurement used to determine the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds. Note that Chapter 14 requires this measurement to be made using the FAST time setting on the meter. However, this quick average of impressed sound results in fast movements of the meter's output that are best seen when talking into the microphone; the meter quickly rises and falls with speech. However, when surveying the ambient sound levels to establish the increased level at which a notification appliance will properly function, the sound source needs to be averaged over a longer period of time. See 3.3.29, Average Ambient Sound Level. Moderately priced sound level meters have such a function, usually called L_{eq} or equivalent sound level. For example, an L_{eq} of speech in a quiet room would cause the meter movement to rise gradually to a peak reading and slowly fall well after the speech is over. L_{eq} measurements are made over a specified time period and reported as $L_{eq,t}$, where t is the time period. For example, a measurement taken over 24 hours is reported as L_{eq24}.

L_{eq} readings can be misapplied in situations where the background ambient noises vary greatly during a 24-hour period. L_{eq} measurements should be taken over the period of occupancy. This is clarified by the definition of average ambient sound level *(see* 3.3.29*)*. Note that average in this context is the integrated average at a particular measurement location, not the average of several readings taken at different locations. For example, it would be incorrect to take a reading in a quiet bathroom and average it with a reading taken near a noisy machine to get an average to use for the alarm signal design. The alarm would probably be excessively loud in the quiet bathroom and not loud enough near the noisy machine.

In areas where the background noise is generated by machinery and is fairly constant, a frequency analysis can be warranted. It might be found that the high sound levels are predominantly in one or two frequency bandwidths — often lower frequencies. Notification appliances producing sound in one or two other frequency bandwidths can adequately penetrate the background noise and provide notification. The system would still be designed to produce or have a sound level at the particular frequency or frequency bandwidth of at least 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds, whichever is greater.

In very high noise areas, such as theaters, dance halls, nightclubs, and machine shops, sound levels during occupied times can be 100 dBA and higher. Peak sounds might be 110 dBA or greater. At other occupied times, the sound level might be below 50 dBA. A system designed to have a sound level of at least 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds might result in a required sound pressure level in excess of the maximum of 115 dBA. A viable option is to reduce or eliminate the background noise. Professional theaters or other entertainment venues can have road show connection control units *(see NFPA 70, National Electrical Code, Section 520.50)* to which troupes can connect their light and sound systems. These power sources can be controlled by the system. In less formal applications, such as many nightclubs, designated power circuits could be controlled. Diligence needs to be exercised to ensure that the controlled circuits are used.

Also, in occupancies such as machine shops or other production facilities, care must be exercised in the design to ensure that the removal of power to the noise source does not create some other hazard. As with other emergency control functions, control circuits and relays would be monitored for integrity in accordance with Chapter 10, Chapter 12, and Chapter 23.

Appropriate audible signaling in high ambient noise areas is often difficult. Areas such as automotive assembly areas, machining areas, paint spray areas, and so on, where the ambient noise is caused by the manufacturing process itself, require special consideration. Adding additional audible notification appliances that merely contribute to the already noisy environment might not be appropriate. Other alerting techniques such as visible notification appliances, for example, could be more effectively used.

Other codes, standards, laws, or regulations, and the authority having jurisdiction determine where a signal must be audible. This Code section describes the performance requirement needed for a signal to be considered reliably audible.

18.4.3.2 Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction or other governing codes or standards, the requirements for audible signaling shall be permitted to be reduced or eliminated when visible signaling is provided in accordance with Section 18.5.

FAQ

What conditions must be satisfied to reduce or eliminate audible signaling?

The provision in 18.4.3.2 was added to previous editions of the Code for both public and private mode signaling. Audible signaling can be reduced or eliminated only where permitted by the authority having jurisdiction or other governing codes or standards, and only where public or private mode visible signaling is also provided. Use of this allowance should be for cases specifically addressed by an occupancy code or where supported by careful evaluation of the special conditions that warrant its use. Part of the explanation in A.18.4.3.1 discusses reducing or eliminating ambient noises through the use of control circuits, but eliminating ambient noise primarily caused by operating equipment in such locations as manufacturing facilities is not always possible or desired due to the loss of product or production that could occur every time the fire alarm system activates. In many situations, production machinery can operate without the employees' involvement while they evacuate the building after having been notified by a signal, such as a flashing strobe light, during the activation of the alarm system. Refer to 18.4.4.2 and A.18.4.4.2 for additional insight.

18.4.3.3 Audible alarm notification appliances installed in elevator cars shall be permitted to use the audibility criteria for private mode appliances detailed in 18.4.4.1.

This paragraph does not require elevator cars to have audible appliances. It simply states that if they are provided, they can be designed at the lower levels permitted for private mode signaling. Note that for a protected premises fire alarm system, 23.8.6.2.4 explicitly states that the signal is not required to operate in elevator cars. Similarly, for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems (EVACS), 24.4.2.8.4 permits audible appliances to be installed, but requires that the evacuation signal not operate in the elevators. This permits loudspeakers to be installed and used for manual communication to elevator occupants.

18.4.3.4 If approved by the authority having jurisdiction, audible alarm notification appliances installed in restrooms shall be permitted to use the audibility criteria for private mode appliances detailed in 18.4.4.1.

Note the difference between 18.4.3.3, which applies to elevators, and 18.4.3.4, which applies to restrooms. In the requirement for elevators, the text states that audible appliances in elevators "shall be permitted" to use the audibility criteria for private mode. This means that the designer has a choice and that the authority having jurisdiction will permit the application. In the requirement for restrooms, the text states "if approved by the authority having jurisdiction." This means that the designer has a choice, but that approval of the authority having jurisdiction is required.

18.4.3.5 A signaling system arranged to stop or reduce ambient noise shall comply with 18.4.3.5.1 through 18.4.3.5.3.

Where acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction, reducing the background noise is a viable alternative to providing a fire alarm system with a high level of audio output. In fact, in some situations, such as nightclubs, concert halls, and theaters, an advisable action is to stop the background noise and control the lighting to create a sudden and noticeable change in the environment to get people's attention. However, care must be exercised to ensure that the shutdown mechanism is reliable and will not damage the equipment being shut down.

18.4.3.5.1 A signaling system arranged to stop or reduce ambient noise shall produce a sound level at least 15 dB above the reduced average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds after reduction of the ambient noise level, whichever is greater, measured 5 ft (1.5 m) above the floor in the area required to be served by the system using the A-weighted scale (dBA).

18.4.3.5.2 Visible notification appliances shall be installed in the affected areas in accordance with Sections 18.5 or 18.6.

18.4.3.5.3 Relays, circuits, or interfaces necessary to stop or reduce ambient noise shall meet the requirements of Chapters 10, 12, 21, and 23.

18.4.4 Private Mode Audible Requirements.

18.4.4.1* To ensure that audible private mode signals are clearly heard, they shall have a sound level at least 10 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds, whichever is greater, measured 5 ft (1.5 m) above the floor in the area required to be served by the system using the A-weighted scale (dBA).

A.18.4.4.1 See A.18.4.3.1 for additional information on sound measurements and weighting scales.

18.4.4.2* Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction or other governing codes or standards, the requirements for audible signaling shall be permitted to be reduced or eliminated when visible signaling is provided in accordance with Section 18.5.

A.18.4.4.2 For example, in critical care patient areas, it is often desirable to not have an audible alarm even at reduced private mode levels. Each case requires consideration by the governing authority. Another example would be high noise work areas where an audible signal needed to overcome background noise at one time of day would be excessively loud and potentially dangerous at another time of lower ambient noise. A sudden increase of more than 30 dB over 0.5 seconds is considered to cause sudden and potentially dangerous fright.

A hospital patient care area is one example of where a code or an authority having jurisdiction can permit private mode signaling. The public occupants include patients who might not be able to respond to a fire alarm signal. In some cases, alerting them directly with audible (and possibly visible) signals might even be dangerous. For this reason, the system is designed to alert trained staff.

Areas that use private mode signaling (such as certain areas in a hospital) often have a less intense average ambient sound level and a lower maximum sound level, making the reduced level cited in 18.4.4.1 appropriate. In the delivery of private mode signals, the sound level of the audible notification appliance is important to be adequate but not so loud as to startle the occupants.

Lower audible levels are permitted because part of the staff's job is to listen for and respond appropriately to the fire alarm signals. In addition, they must communicate among themselves to be able to implement emergency procedures; a louder alarm might interfere with that communication.

In a few cases, such as operating rooms or critical care patient areas, other codes and authorities having jurisdiction may permit elimination of audible (and possibly visible) signaling altogether.

18.4.4.3 A system arranged to stop or reduce ambient noise shall comply with 18.4.4.3.1 through 18.4.4.3.3.

18.4.4.3.1 A system arranged to stop or reduce ambient noise shall be permitted to produce a sound level at least 10 dB above the reduced average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds after reduction of the ambient noise level, whichever is greater, measured 5 ft (1.5 m) above the floor, using the A-weighted scale (dBA).

18.4.4.3.2 Visible notification appliances shall be installed in the affected areas in accordance with Sections 18.5 or 18.6.

18.4.4.3.3 Relays, circuits, or interfaces necessary to stop or reduce ambient noise shall meet the requirements of Chapters 10, 12, 21, and 23.

18.4.5 Sleeping Area Requirements.

18.4.5.1* Where audible appliances are installed to provide signals for sleeping areas, they shall have a sound level of at least 15 dB above the average ambient sound level or 5 dB above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds or a sound level of at least 75 dBA, whichever is greater, measured at the pillow level in the area required to be served by the system using the A-weighted scale (dBA).

A.18.4.5.1 See A.18.4.3.1 for additional information on sound measurements and weighting scales.

FAQ

What additional condition must be satisfied for sleeping areas, compared with the requirements in 18.4.3.1?

Paragraph 18.4.5.1 requires that the sound level delivered by the audible notification system in rooms where people sleep be either 15 dB above the average ambient sound level, 5 dB above any peak sound level lasting 60 seconds or more, or at least 75 dBA, whichever is greatest. If the average ambient sound level in the sleeping area is 40 dBA, then the audible notification appliances must deliver at least 75 dBA (40 + 15 = 55, which is less than the 75 dBA minimum). If the average ambient sound level in the sleeping area is 65 dBA, then the audible notification appliances must deliver at least 80 dBA (65 + 15 = 80).

Note that 75 dBA is a change from the requirement of 70 dBA prior to the 2002 edition. Some studies suggest a minimum of 75 dBA, while others suggest 70 dBA. These levels are for people without hearing impairments and without incapacitation due to drugs, alcohol, or exhaustion. Also, a certain sound pressure level does not instantly awaken all test subjects. There is a distribution of time to alert some or all of the occupants. Obviously, as the sound level increases, the time to alert the majority of people decreases. The time it takes to awaken someone and the time it takes for the person to act must be considered by designers with respect to the development of hazardous conditions.

18.4.5.2 If any barrier, such as a door, curtain, or retractable partition, is located between the notification appliance and the pillow, the sound pressure level shall be measured with the barrier placed between the appliance and the pillow.

Although 18.4.5.2 applies only to sleeping areas, the intent of the Code for all audible signaling is that the worst-case conditions be used for all ambient and alarm sound level measurements. This might require testing with doors and other barriers opened and closed to determine the worst case. However, it is not necessary to open a door to get the worst-case noise and then close the door to get the worst-case alarm level — or vice versa. Instead, the difference between ambient and alarm can be measured with the door open and then again with the door closed to ensure that the required levels are met in both situations. The sound loss going through a bedroom door varies based on construction features and undercut. In many cases, the required 75 dBA in the bedroom might not be attainable using an appliance located outside of the bedroom. In other situations it might be possible, but the resulting sound level near the audible appliance might exceed the maximum of 110 dBA permitted by 18.4.1.2.

18.4.5.3* Effective January 1, 2014, audible appliances provided for the sleeping areas to awaken occupants shall produce a low frequency alarm signal that complies with the following:

(1) The alarm signal shall be a square wave or provide equivalent awakening ability.
(2) The wave shall have a fundamental frequency of 520 Hz ± 10 percent.

Two research programs and their resultant reports (*Optimizing Fire Alarm Notification for High Risk Groups, Summary Report*; *Waking Effectiveness of Alarms for Adults Who Are Hard of Hearing*; and *Waking Effectiveness of Alarms for the Alcohol Impaired*), which were supported by the Fire Protection Research Foundation under the umbrella of "optimizing notification systems," have led to new requirements for tones used to awaken people. Previous editions of the Code had not specified any particular frequency content for audible tones. Most fire alarm and smoke alarm tones for new equipment use sounders that produce high frequency tones on the order of 3150 Hz. That frequency band is also the one at which most adults experience hearing loss. The Foundation's research programs have shown that a low frequency 520 Hz square wave signal can awaken and alert people with hearing loss and alcohol-impaired adults.

The Technical Committee on Notification Appliances for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems has written this Code requirement that all sleeping area signals are to use the new low frequency signal effective January 1, 2014. This requirement applies to new system-activated signals. The use of speakers and amplifiers that also provide voice capability is one way to accommodate this need. Other hardware solutions can also be used. The effective date allows time for system product development and listing. The Technical Committee on Single- and Multiple-Station Alarms and Household Fire Alarm Systems (Chapter 29) has incorporated the same low frequency signal requirement for residential protection without an effective date, which would be applicable when the 2010 or 2013 edition is adopted in the particular jurisdiction. Refer to 29.3.8 for the requirements and conditions that apply in household applications.

The text of 18.4.5.3 was revised in 2013 to emphasize that the low frequency signal is only required when the audible appliance is provided to awaken people. So, for example, in a hospital, the signal is not intended to awaken the patients and would not have to have the low frequency content. A new paragraph was added to A.18.4.5.3 to help explain that the signal is needed only in the areas where someone might reasonably be expected to be asleep. For example, the hallway of a hotel would not require use of a low frequency audible signal, but the hotel sleeping rooms would. In an apartment, it is reasonable to expect someone to be asleep in a living room, but not in a kitchen.

A.18.4.5.3 The intent of this section is to require the use of the low frequency signal in areas intended for sleeping and in areas that might reasonably be used for sleeping. For example, this section requires a low frequency audible signal in a bedroom of an apartment and also in the living room area of an apartment as it might have sleeping occupants. However, it would not be required to use the low frequency signal in the hallways, lobby, and other tenantless spaces. In hotels, the guest rooms would require use of the low frequency signals, but other spaces that might require audible signals could use any listed audible appliances regardless of the frequency content of the signal being produced. This chapter of the Code addresses notification appliances connected to and controlled by a fire alarm or emergency communications system. This chapter does not address dwelling unit protection such as smoke alarms and their audible signal characteristics. Requirements for single- and multiple-station alarms and household fire alarm systems can be found in Chapter 29.

It is not the intent of this section to preclude devices that have been demonstrated through peer-reviewed research to awaken occupants with hearing loss as effectively as those using the frequency and amplitude specified in this section.

Non-voice (e.g., horns) notification appliances should be listed as a "low frequency alarm" alarm appliance. Voice appliances and systems should be capable of 520 Hz ±10 percent with the appropriate harmonics.

For increased protection in the sleeping area, tactile notification in accordance with Section 18.10 might be an effective means of awakening those who have normal hearing, as well as those who are hearing impaired.

Although the Code specifies a specific frequency of 520 Hz ±10 percent, frequency measurements are not necessary provided that the appliances are listed for awakening sleeping persons. This is a case where the Code was developed before a product standard existed. In early 2012, listing agencies were in the final stages of developing product test standards to be used in the listing process.

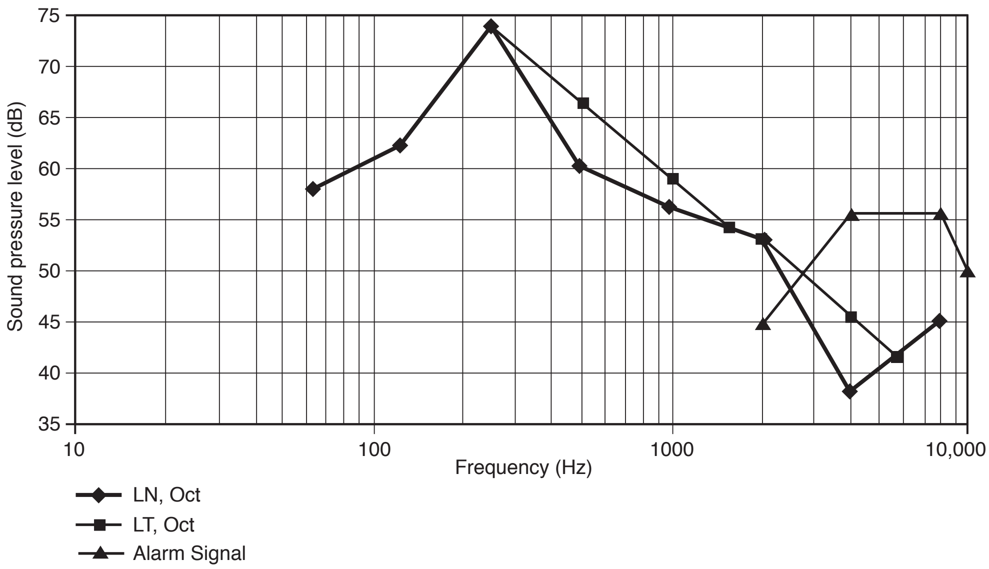
18.4.6* Narrow Band Tone Signaling for Exceeding Masked Thresholds.

A.18.4.6 This subsection permits a more rigorous analysis and design for audible signaling. Acoustic design practice and psychoacoustic research have long recognized that for a signal to be audible, it need only penetrate the background noise in a one-third or a one octave band. The averaging resulting from A-weighted analysis and design is a simplification that often results in systems being overdesigned. This overdesign is not dangerous but can be costly and is certainly not needed for effective system performance.

18.4.6.1 Masked Threshold Allowance. Audible tone signaling shall be permitted to comply with the masked threshold requirements in this subsection in lieu of the A-weighted signaling requirements in 18.4.3 and 18.4.4.

18.4.6.2* Calculation Method. The effective masked threshold shall be calculated in accordance with ISO 7731, *Danger signals for work places — Auditory danger signals*.

A.18.4.6.2 Noise at a lower frequency can mask a signal at an adjacent higher frequency. Thus, it is necessary to calculate the effective masked level of the noise in accordance with established procedures. Figure A.18.4.6.2 shows an example of an octave band analysis of noise along with the calculated effective masked threshold and the proposed alarm signal.



At the first octave band center frequency, the masked threshold of hearing, LT, Oct is equal to the noise level. For each subsequent center frequency, LT, Oct is the greater of either the noise level at that octave band, LN, Oct, or the masked threshold of the previous band less 7.5 dB.

***FIGURE A.18.4.6.2** Threshold Masking Level Example.*

The effective masked threshold can be thought of as the adjusted ambient noise. The actual ambient noise level is adjusted to account for the masking effect that a lower frequency band has on a higher, adjacent frequency band. If an octave band analysis is done, the masked noise level is calculated as follows: Starting at the lowest octave band, move up (to the right) to the next octave band. The masked level is either the actual measured noise level or the noise level of the adjacent lower band minus 7.5 dB, whichever is greater. For a one-third octave band analysis, the masked level is either the actual measured noise level or the noise level of the adjacent lower band minus 2.5 dB, whichever is greater.

The example of narrow band signaling shown in Figure A.18.4.6.2 uses a line plot for the noise and the masked threshold signal. This graphically shows that the masking of a higher frequency by a lower frequency results in a minimum slope of −7.5 dB per octave. This masking level is specified in the referenced document ISO 7731, *Danger Signals for Work Places – Auditory Danger Signals*.

Also refer to the defined terms *effective masked threshold* in 3.3.82 and *octave band* and *one-third octave band* in 3.3.179 and 3.3.179.1.

For example, see the data in Commentary Table 18.2. These one-third octave band data are shown graphically in Exhibit 18.12. The noise level in the lowest band (25 Hz) is 71 dB. In the next band (32 Hz), the noise is 73 dB. The masked level in the 32 Hz band is either the actual measured noise level (73 dB) or the masked noise level of the adjacent lower band minus 2.5 dB (71 − 2.5 = 68.5 dB), whichever is greater. In the 40 Hz band, the noise is 72 dB. Therefore, the masked level is either the actual measured noise level (72 dB) or the masked noise level of the adjacent lower band minus 2.5 dB (73 − 2.5 = 70.5 dB), whichever is greater. In the 500 Hz band, the noise is 80 dB. Therefore, the masked level is either the actual measured noise level (80 dB) or the masked noise level of the adjacent lower band minus 2.5 dB (83 − 2.5 = 80.5 dB), whichever is greater.

18.4.6.3 Noise Data. Noise data for calculating the effective masked threshold shall be the peak value of noise lasting 60 seconds or more for each octave or one-third octave band.

18.4.6.4 Documentation. Analysis and design documentation shall be submitted to the authority having jurisdiction and shall contain the following information:

(1) Frequency data for the ambient noise, including the date, time, and location where measurements were taken for existing environments, or projected data for environments not yet constructed
(2) Frequency data of the audible notification appliance
(3) Calculations of the effective masked threshold for each set of noise data
(4) A statement of the sound pressure level that would be required by 18.4.3 or 18.4.4 if masked threshold signaling had not been done

18.4.6.5 Sound Pressure Level. For masked threshold signaling, the audible signal tone shall meet the requirements of either 18.4.6.5.1 or 18.4.6.5.2 but not for the reproduction of prerecorded, synthesized, or live messages.

18.4.6.5.1 The sound pressure level of the audible tone signal shall exceed the masked threshold in one or more octave bands by at least 10 dB in the octave band under consideration.

18.4.6.5.2 The sound pressure level of the audible tone signal shall exceed the masked threshold in one or more one-third octave bands by at least 13 dB in the one-third octave band under consideration.

The human ear can discriminate distinct frequency bands. These bands can be thought of as pickets in a fence. Commentary Table 18.2 shows a particular compressor room one-third octave band noise data (unweighted) and the resulting calculated masked threshold. Bold entries show frequency bands where the masked level is greater than the measured noise level.

The total integrated sound pressure level (L_P) is 92 dB (unweighted). When adjusted for the way the human ear hears different frequencies, the total A-weighted sound pressure level (L_A) is shown as 88 dBA. The peak sound pressure level is approximately 84 dB at 315 Hz. If these data were the average ambient sound level in the space, 18.4.3.1 would require a fire alarm signal of 88 + 15 = 103 dBA.

Commentary Table 18.3 shows the dominant frequency distribution of a typical piezo-electric fire alarm sounder. The data have been adjusted using the 6 dB rule (see Exhibit 18.12) for the distance from the planned mounting location to the point where the noise data in Commentary Table 18.2 were measured.

FAQ In the example provided, how do the results of the one-third octave band analysis compare to the result in the preceding paragraphs, using the requirements of 18.4.3.1?

Exhibit 18.12 uses a bar graph to show the noise, the threshold masked level, and the fire alarm signal. The noise and resulting threshold masked level can be thought of as a picket fence trying to obscure our view of the fire alarm signal. To know that the fire alarm signal is there, we need only "see" one of its pickets behind the adjusted noise data (threshold masked level).

In this example, the noise measured at 3150 Hz is 65 dB, but the masked threshold at that frequency is 71 dB (73.5 at the previous band minus 2.5). The fire alarm signal produces 85 dB at 3150 Hz, resulting in a signal-to-noise ratio of 14 dB. This ratio meets the requirement of 18.4.6.5.2 for a minimum 13 dB for one-third octave band signaling.

Measured using an integrating meter set to the A scale, this system would not meet the Code's requirements. However, using a one-third octave band analysis, the system passes.

COMMENTARY TABLE 18.2 *Compressor Room One-Third Octave Noise Data and Calculated Masked Threshold*

Center Frequency (Hz)	Noise (dB)	Masked Threshold (dB)	Center Frequency (Hz)	Noise (dB)	Masked Threshold (dB)	Center Frequency (Hz)	Noise (dB)	Masked Threshold (dB)
25	71	71.0	315	84	84.0	4,000	68	68.5
32	73	73.0	400	83	83.0	5,000	69	69.0
40	72	72.0	500	80	80.5	6,300	67	67.0
50	74	74.0	630	76	78.0	8,000	66	66.0
63	76	76.0	800	78	78.0	10,000	64	64.0
80	75	75.0	1,000	77	77.0	12,500	63	63.0
100	78	78.0	1,250	79	79.0	16,000	67	67.0
125	79	79.0	1,600	78	78.0	20,000	65	65.0
160	80	80.0	2,000	76	76.0	L_P	92	
200	80	80.0	2,500	70	73.5	L_A	88	
250	81	81.0	3,150	65	71.0			

Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA.

COMMENTARY TABLE 18.3 *Dominant Frequency Distribution of Typical Piezo-Electric Fire Alarm Sounder*

Center Frequency (Hz)	Alarm (dB)
1,600	30
2,000	36
2,500	73
3,150	85
4,000	67
5,000	49
L_P	85
L_A	87

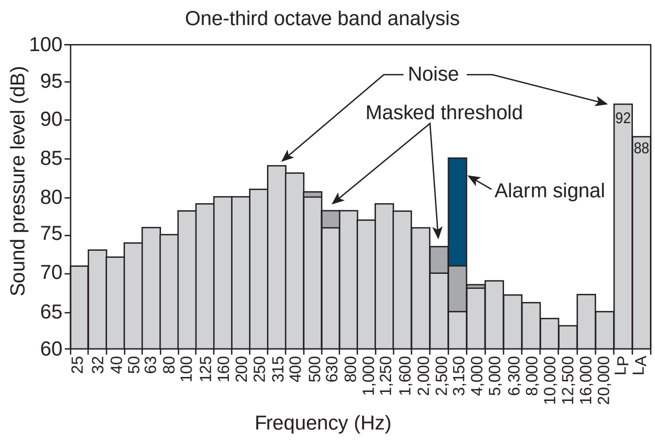
Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA.

18.4.7 Exit Marking Audible Notification Appliance Requirements.

Refer to the defined term of *exit marking audible notification appliance* in 3.3.173.1.1.

EXHIBIT 18.12

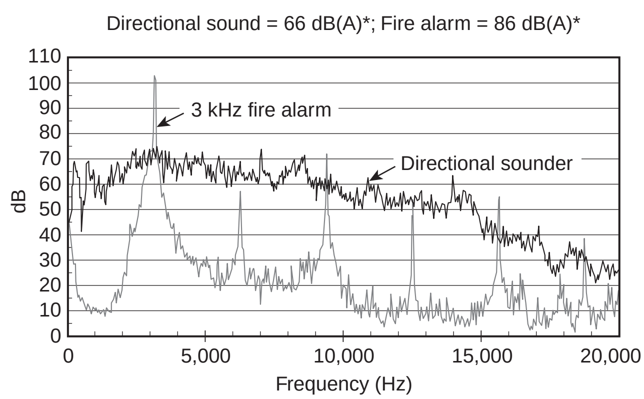
Noise Data, Threshold Masked Level (Adjusted Noise Data), and Fire Alarm Signal. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA)



18.4.7.1* Exit marking audible notification appliances shall meet or exceed the frequency and sound level settings and guidelines specified in the manufacturer's documented instructions.

A.18.4.7.1 The sound content of directional sounders is very different from that of the traditional fire alarm sounders. Traditional fire alarm sounders have a strong tonal content, usually centered near the 3 kHz region. Directional sounders use broadband frequency content, usually covering most of the human audible frequency range, 20 Hz to 20 kHz. Figure A.18.4.7.1(a) compares the frequency content of a traditional fire alarm sounder to a directional sounder. This figure shows that while the fire alarm sounder clearly dominates the 3 kHz and upper harmonics, the broadband content of the directional sounder is 20 dB to 30 dB in other frequency bands or ranges. The fire alarm has an overall A-weighted sound level greater than the directional sounder and will be perceived as being louder. However, since the directional sounder has a wide spectral range, the signal penetrates the fire alarm signal in several other frequency bands as permitted by 18.4.6.

There are three main types of information that allow the brain to identify the location of a sound. The first two are known as binaural cues because they make use of the fact that we



* Measured at 10 ft in an anechoic room.

FIGURE A.18.4.7.1(a) *Comparison of Frequency Content of Traditional Fire Alarm Sounder to Directional Sounder.*

have two ears, separated by the width of our head. A sound that emanates from either side of the mid-line will arrive first at the ear closer to it and will be loudest at the ear closer to it. At low frequencies the brain recognizes differences in the arrival time of sound between the ears (interaural time differences). At higher frequencies the salient signal is the loudness/intensity difference between the sounds at each ear (interaural intensity differences). Refer to Figure A.18.4.7.1(b). For single frequencies, these cues are spatially ambiguous.

The inherent ambiguity has been described as the "cone of confusion." This arises from the fact that for any given frequency there are numerous spatial positions that generate identical timing/intensity differences. These can be graphically represented in the form of a cone, the apex of which is at the level of the external ear. The cone of confusion is the main reason for our not being able to localize pure tones.

The final piece of sound localization information processed by the brain is the head-related transfer function (HRTF). The HRTF refers to the effect the external ear has on sound. As a result of passing over the bumps or convolutions of the pinna, the sound is modified so that some frequencies are attenuated and others are amplified. Refer to Figure A.18.4.7.1(c). Although there are certain generalities in the way the pinnae modify sound, the HRTF is unique to each individual. The role of the HRTF is particularly important when determining whether a sound is in front of or behind us. In this instance the timing and intensity differences are negligible, and there is consequently very little information available to the central nervous system on which to base this decision. To locate the direction of a sound source, the larger the frequency content to overcome the ambiguities inherent to single tones, the better the accuracy.

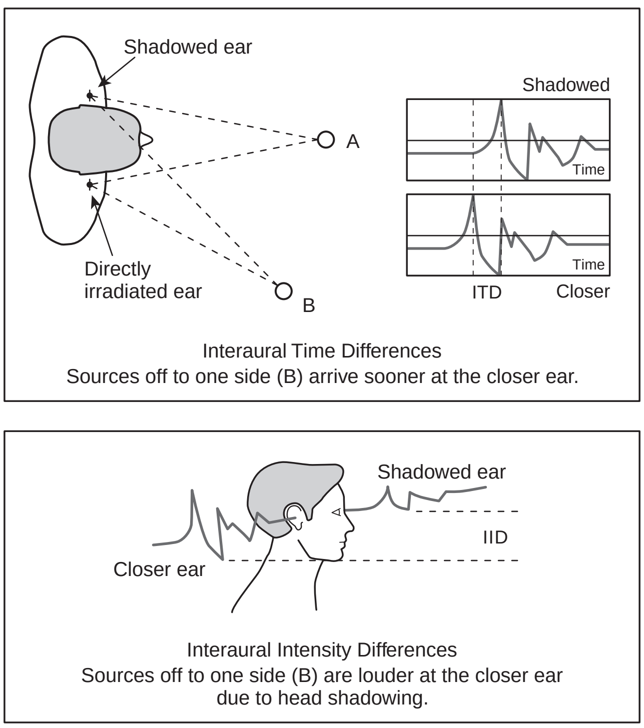


FIGURE A.18.4.7.1(b) *Interaural Time and Intensity Differences of Sound.*

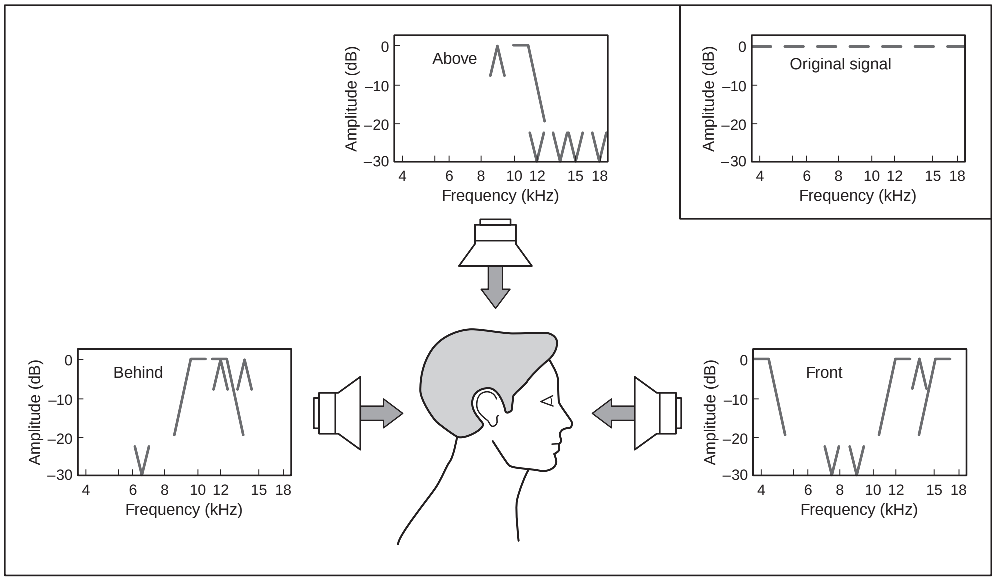


FIGURE A.18.4.7.1(c) *Examples of Frequency-Dependent Attenuation for Sources in Front, Above, and Behind Listener.*

18.4.7.2* In addition to 18.4.7.1, as a minimum, to ensure that exit marking audible notification appliance signals are clearly heard and produce the desired directional effects for 50 ft (15.24 m) within an unobstructed egress path, they shall meet the audibility requirements of 18.4.6 in at least one one-third octave band or one octave band within the effective frequency ranges of the interaural time difference (ITD), interaural level or intensity difference (ILD or IID), and anatomical transfer function or head-related transfer function (ATF or HRTF) localization cues. The signal shall penetrate both the ambient noise and the fire alarm signal.

A.18.4.7.2 *ITD*: A difference in arrival times of waveform features (such as peaks and positive-going zero crossings) at the two ears is known as the interaural time difference, or ITD. The binaural physiology is capable of using phase information from ITD cues only at low frequencies below about 1500 Hz. However, the binaural system can successfully register an ITD that occurs at a high frequency such as 4000 Hz if the signal is modulated. The modulation, in turn, must have a rate that is less than about 1000 Hz.

ILD: Comparison between intensities in the left and right ears is known as the interaural level difference, or ILD. ILD cues exist physically only for frequencies above about 500 Hz. They become large and reliable for frequencies above 3000 Hz, making ILD cues most effective at high frequencies.

ATF: The anatomical transfer function (ATF), also known as the head-related transfer function (HRTF), is used by listeners to resolve front–back confusion and to determine elevation. Waves that come from behind tend to be boosted in the 1000 Hz frequency region, whereas waves that come from the forward direction are boosted near 3000 Hz. The most dramatic effects occur above 4000 Hz.

These localization cues can be implemented simultaneously when the source signal is a broadband sound containing a range of low to high frequencies. For example, octave bands of 1 kHz (707–1414 Hz) for ITD, 4 kHz (2828–5856 Hz) for ILD, and 8 kHz (5657–11,314 Hz) for ATF would fall within the effective frequency ranges required in 18.4.6.

Additional information on sound localization and auditory localization cues is contained in the following article: http://www.aip.org/pt/nov99/locsound.html, G.1.2.12.1.

The ability to pinpoint the location of a sound source is based on the physics of sound and the physiology of the human hearing mechanism. The brain processes a large amount of neural signals, some of which provide cues to the sound source's location. People are able to hear sound ranging from about 20 Hz to 20,000 Hz. Unfortunately, pure tones in this frequency range provide only limited localization information. The primary localization cues are provided by interaural time differences (ITDs) (lower frequencies), interaural intensity differences (IIDs) (mid to higher frequencies), and the head-related transfer function (HRTF) (higher frequencies). In enclosed spaces that can be somewhat reverberant, the precedence effect (PE) also provides directional information.

The interaural time difference (ITD) and interaural intensity difference (IID) are termed binaural cues because they depend on both ears separated by the width of the head. At lower frequencies (longer wavelength), the time delay between arriving sound signals is detectable. ITD is most evident in frequencies below about 500 Hz with clicks or short bursts of sound. At higher frequencies (shorter wavelength), the loudness/intensity differences between the ears is more noticeable because of partial shielding of the more distant ear by the head. IID is most evident for frequencies above 3000 Hz.

The head-related transfer function (HRTF) relies on the effect of the external ear on perceived sound. The HRTF describes the transforming effect of the head, torso, and external ear on sound as it travels from the sound source to the ear canals. The HRTF changes depending on sound source location, providing an additional localization cue. HRTF operates over a range of frequencies but seems to be most effective in the 5000 Hz to 10,000 Hz range. Combined with the listener's head motion, HRTF provides an independent localization method to complement ITD and IID capabilities.

The precedence effect (PE) is important for discriminating between the direct sound signal and reflected sound, a common situation within buildings. The ear is capable of discerning and fixating on the first sound received (line-of-sight direct signal) and disregarding later signals (reflected sound). The acoustical signal arriving first at the ears suppresses the ability to hear other signals (including reverberation) that arrive up to about 40 milliseconds after the initial signal.

All of the preceding cues are utilized simultaneously when the source signal is broadband sound containing a range of low and high frequencies, and when the sound arrives in bursts rather than as steady state sound. The combination of different cues provides reinforcement and redundancy of information to enhance the ability to locate the sound source. Broadband sound tends to eliminate potential ambiguities that occur for pure tone or narrowband sound sources.

Other types of sound patterns can be used as directional sounders that can be used for audible exit marking. Some scientific research has been performed to develop a directional sounder that utilizes a tonal sound different from the example above. As with the directional sound example presented above, the development of this alternative signal is similarly rooted in the vast research data that exists for sound localization and directional auditory cues.

An example of an alternative directional sound signal can be a sequence of two harmonic two-tone complexes. This sequence starts with a complex of low fundamental frequencies of 262 and 330 Hz having duration of 200 ms. This sound is then followed by a 200-ms silence. Next the sequence continues with a second sound that is a complex of low fundamental frequencies of 330 and 392 Hz having a duration of 200 ms. After another 200-ms silence, this whole pattern is repeated.

Localizability was ensured by the dense harmonic structure of the signal, with closely spaced harmonics up to 20 kHz. In addition sharp signal onsets were included to aid the detection of interaural time differences, thus increasing localizability.

Requirements for exit marking systems were added in the 2007 edition. Exit marking systems use sound to direct occupants to exits. The intent is for the sound to be directional, allowing the occupant to distinctly identify the location and direction where the sound originates. To accomplish this, the signal must have very specific characteristics. The technical committee added performance-based requirements derived from underlying research on directional sound.

18.4.7.3 Where required by the enforcing authority; governing laws, codes, or standards; or other parts of this Code, exit marking audible notification appliances shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

18.4.7.4* Where required by the enforcing authority; governing laws, codes, or standards; or other parts of this Code, exit marking audible notification shall be located at the entrance to all building exits and areas of refuge as defined by the applicable building or fire code.

A.18.4.7.4 Where directional sounders are used, they should not be located on only a single exit. They should be located at all of the identified exits in the building. This is to ensure that in an evacuation or relocation the occupants utilize all of the exits and areas of refuge, not just those that have directional sounders located near them. Some examples of exits would include the following:

(1) Code-complying exterior doors and exit discharge
(2) Code-complying exit passageway
(3) Code-complying interior stairs, including smokeproof enclosures
(4) Code-complying outside stairs
(5) Code-complying ramps
(6) Code-complying fire escapes
(7) Code-complying horizontal exits

Note that the terms *exit* and *area of refuge* have very specific definitions in building, fire, and life safety codes.

18.4.7.5 Where exit marking audible notification appliances are utilized to mark areas of refuge, they shall provide an audible signal distinct from that used for other exits that do not have areas of refuge.

18.4.8 Location of Audible Notification Appliances for Building or Structure.

18.4.8.1 If ceiling heights allow, and unless otherwise permitted by 18.4.8.2 through 18.4.8.5, wall-mounted appliances shall have their tops above the finished floors at heights of not less than 90 in. (2.29 m) and below the finished ceilings at distances of not less than 6 in. (150 mm).

18.4.8.2 Ceiling-mounted or recessed appliances shall be permitted.

18.4.8.3 If combination audible/visible appliances are installed, the location of the installed appliance shall be determined by the requirements of 18.5.5.

Paragraph 18.4.8.3 requires that the location of a combination audible/visible notification appliance comply with the requirements for the mounting of visible notification appliances in 18.5.5. The height limitation specified in 18.5.5 is intended to keep visible notification appliances at a height that ensures that the light pattern covers the intended area.

18.4.8.4 Appliances that are an integral part of a smoke detector, smoke alarm, or other initiating device shall be located in accordance with the requirements for that device.

Refer to 18.5.5.7 regarding the installation of combination smoke detectors and visible notification appliances installed in sleeping areas.

18.4.8.5 Mounting heights other than required by 18.4.8.1 and 18.4.8.2 shall be permitted, provided that the sound pressure level requirements of 18.4.3 for public mode or 18.4.4 for private mode, or 18.4.5 for sleeping areas, based on the application, are met.

FAQ What is the purpose of the mounting height requirements for audible appliances?

The purpose of the mounting height requirements for audible appliances is to prevent common furnishings from blocking appliances after installation. However, the required sound pressure levels (see 18.4.3, 18.4.4, 18.4.5, and 18.4.6) are performance requirements. Thus, the Code permits audible appliances at other mounting heights as long as the system ultimately provides the required sound pressure level. The system must pass the testing requirements of Chapter 14. Remember that the appliances must also be accessible for repair and maintenance and that they should not be located where they would be subjected to mechanical damage or harsh environmental conditions unless they are suitable protected. This allowance for other mounting heights applies only to audible appliances, not to visible or combination appliances. The mounting heights for visible or combination appliances can deviate from the Code requirements but require a corresponding adjustment for their area of coverage. See 18.5.5.1, A.18.5.5.1, 18.5.5.2, and 18.5.5.6.

18.4.9 Location of Audible Notification Appliances for Wide-Area Signaling. Audible notification appliances for wide-area signaling shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of the authority having jurisdiction, approved design documents, and the manufacturer's installation instruction to achieve the required performance.

Wide-area signaling typically uses outdoor high power audible appliances and large text and graphics displays. For audible signaling, the system might only use tones or might use tones and voice. Chapter 18 does not provide performance-specific requirements for these systems at this time. If the system provides for voice messages, Chapter 24 does require that the messages be intelligible. Because of the special system goals and the environmental effects on audibility and intelligibility, each system must be carefully engineered. Exhibit 18.13 is an example of an outdoor high power speaker array.

EXHIBIT 18.13

Outdoor High Power Speaker Array. (Source: Acoustic Technology, Inc., East Boston, MA)

18.4.10* Voice Intelligibility. Within the acoustically distinguishable spaces (ADS) where voice intelligibility is required, voice communications systems shall reproduce prerecorded, synthesized, or live (e.g., microphone, telephone handset, and radio) messages with voice intelligibility.

A.18.4.10 See Annex D, Speech Intelligibility.

The concept of acoustically distinguishable space (ADS) was added in the 2010 edition. See the definition in 3.3.6.

18.4.10.1* ADSs shall be determined by the system designer during the planning and design of all emergency communications systems.

A.18.4.10.1 See the definition of acoustically distinguishable space in 3.3.6.

The intent is that all parts of a building or space be divided up into definable ADSs.

18.4.10.2 Each ADS shall be identified as requiring or not requiring voice intelligibility.

18.4.10.2.1* Unless specifically required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, or by other parts of this Code, intelligibility shall not be required in all ADSs.

A.18.4.10.2.1 For example, based on the system design the following locations might not require intelligibility. See also Annex D.

(1) Private bathrooms, shower rooms, saunas, and similar rooms/areas
(2) Mechanical, electrical, elevator equipment rooms, and similar rooms/areas
(3) Elevator cars
(4) Individual offices
(5) Kitchens
(6) Storage rooms
(7) Closets
(8) Rooms/areas where intelligibility cannot reasonably be predicted

In 2013, the technical committee added language to explicitly call out the fact that not all spaces are likely to need intelligible voice communications. Some proposals sought to list specific types of spaces where intelligibility would not be required. The technical committee chose, instead, to leave it up to other governing laws, codes, or standards, or by other parts of this Code, to specify where voice signaling must be intelligible. In the absence of specific language in those enabling references, the designer must designate which ADSs will have intelligible voice. Examples of where intelligible voice might not be required were added to A.18.4.10.2.1.

As more facilities are now incorporating voice communications for ECS and general paging and communications systems, there is a greater need to educate designers, installers, testing personnel, and authorities having jurisdiction about intelligible voice communications. The Fire Protection Research Foundation conducted a program to develop a guide test protocol. The final report also addresses certain planning and design factors. Much of that report has been incorporated as Annex D, Speech Intelligibility.

A significant change in the body of the Code that resulted from the study is the requirement for designers to plan and designate acoustically distinguishable spaces (ADSs). Designers must establish and document which spaces, if any, will require intelligible voice communications. Considerable discussion in Annex D and in A.3.3.6 points out that intelligible voice communications is not necessary in all spaces and that it might not be possible in certain circumstances. By requiring designers to list or otherwise document these spaces and conditions, the Code ensures that system goals are documented and agreed to by all interested parties.

For each ADS, the designer must identify the spaces where occupant notification is needed. If occupant notification is required, the designer must decide if it will be by tone only or if it will include voice. If tone only is used, the audibility requirements of 18.4.3, 18.4.4, 18.4.5, or 18.4.6 apply. If the notification will be by voice with a tone alert, the same audibility requirements apply to the tone. The last decision is whether the voice component in the ADS must be intelligible. The decision tree in Exhibit 18.14 can be used for each ADS.

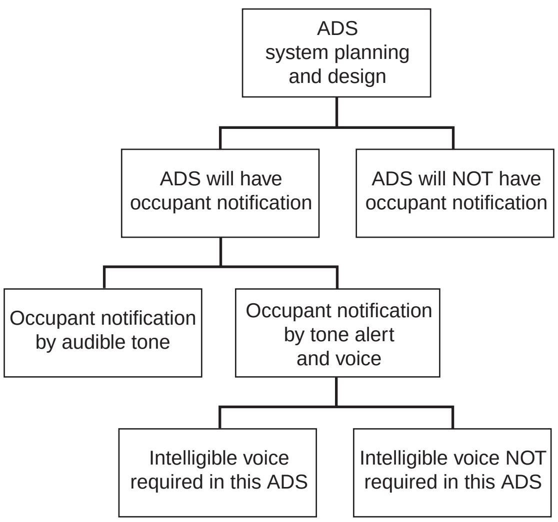


EXHIBIT 18.14

ADS Planning and Design Decision Tree. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA)

FAQ Why would a system have voice capability but not be required by the Code to be intelligible?

Of course a voice system must be intelligible to be effective. The key is that voice communications might not *need* to be intelligible in *all* ADSs. There will be ADSs where the system has to be intelligible if it is to serve any useful purpose. An example is an office building that has small offices around the perimeter and some combination of open plan and circulation corridors in the core. By definition, each small office, or a group of them, is an ADS. If the ECS also is to be used as a paging or music system, a designer might choose to require intelligible communications in the small offices. However, if the ECS is to be used only for emergencies, the designer might not design for intelligible communications in each of the small offices. The ADSs in the small offices would still have to receive an audible alert meeting the Code requirements for audibility. Occupants would then have to open their office doors and possibly move out to another ADS to receive intelligible voice communications.

FAQ Why not require all ADSs to have intelligible voice communications?

A system's mission or purpose will define where intelligible voice is needed. However, cost is another reason to not require all ADSs to have intelligible voice communications. For example, in certain highly reverberant spaces, a high degree of intelligibility is difficult to achieve. Intelligibility might be possible if acoustic treatments can be added and if more complex audio system components are used. Or, meeting the mission goals without using intelligible voice throughout the space might still be possible. Another reason to not require all ADSs to have intelligible voice communications might be if the system is used to provide background music in the core areas that is not wanted in the smaller office spaces in the preceding example.

A corridor or tunnel is a good example of a design that might not require intelligibility throughout. Good speech intelligibility can be achieved in the direct field of ceiling-mounted speakers if the system is properly designed. The speakers can be spaced so that someone walking the length of the corridor is always in an area with acceptable speech intelligibility. However, an acceptable design might also be to space the speakers farther apart. In that case, there might be small distances where the system is audible but not highly intelligible. In ADSs that have a lot of hard surfaces, resulting in high reverberation, speakers would have to be close together and powered at very low wattages to reduce reverberation and increase intelligibility. It might be perfectly acceptable and effective to use the alternative design in which the system would not be intelligible along the entire path. A reason the speakers are spaced more widely in the tunnel example is to reduce overall sound energy and attendant reverberation in the hard-finished space, which could improve intelligibility within the direct speaker field. The direct field is generally taken as the cone where the sound level is within 6 dB of the on-axis dB; it will vary with frequency and is usually taken at 2000 Hz for voice communications. The direct field is also a function of angle from the speaker axis and distance from the speaker.

18.4.10.3* Where required by the enforcing authority; governing laws, codes, or standards; or other parts of this Code, ADS assignments shall be submitted for review and approval.

A.18.4.10.3 ADS assignments should be a part of the original design process. See the discussion in A.3.3.6. The design drawings should be used to plan and show the limits of each ADS where there is more than one.

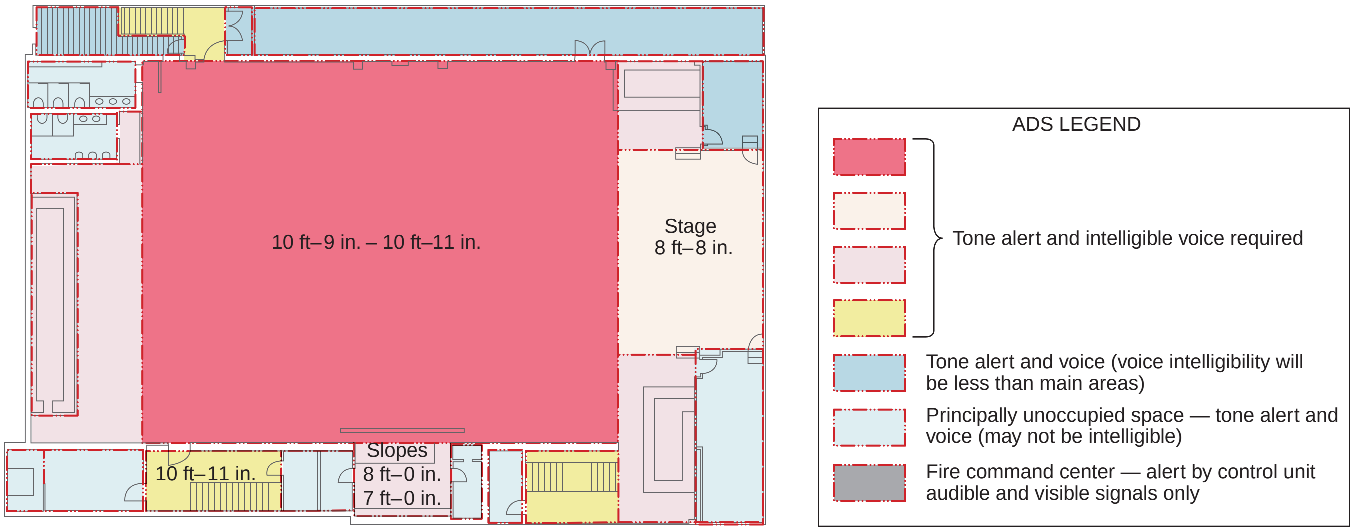
All areas that are intended to have audible occupant notification, whether by tone only or by voice should be designated as one or more ADSs. Drawings or a table listing all ADSs should be used to indicate which ADSs will require intelligible voice communications and those that will not. The same drawings or table could be used to list audibility requirements where tones are used and to list any forms of visual or other notification or communications methods being employed in the ADS.

Note that per 18.4.10.1, it is the designer who must designate ADSs and who must determine where voice is required by a local code or where it will be used to meet an owner's goals. Paragraph 18.4.10.3 then states that the proposed design may have to be submitted for review and approval — which is the usual case. If a table is used, as suggested in A.18.4.10.3, listing each ADS is not always necessary. In the office example given in the commentary following 18.4.10.2.1, the small, individual offices could be listed as "Offices 201 through 212" or "Perimeter Offices." On drawings, the offices could be outlined and a note could indicate that each is an ADS with common characteristics. Exhibit 18.15 is an example of one designer's approach to ADS designation using colored shading on a drawing. (Note that this is only an example and ADS assignments for any application must be determined by the designer on a case-by-case basis.)

18.4.10.4 Intelligibility shall not be required to be determined through quantitative measurements.

18.4.10.5 Quantitative measurements as described in D.2.4 shall be permitted but are not required.

EXHIBIT 18.15



Sample ADS Layout for Nightclub. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA)

18.5* Visible Characteristics — Public Mode

Following passage of the Americans with Disabilities Act (ADA) and the Architectural Barriers Act (ABA), a great deal of debate ensued about visible signaling requirements. In the past, *NFPA 72* differed from the *Americans with Disabilities Act Accessibility Guidelines* (ADAAG) and other accessibility standards, such as ICC/ANSI 117.1, *Standard on Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities*. The fire alarm industry has worked with the various code and advocacy groups to develop reasonable, safe, and effective visible notification requirements.

The requirements of *NFPA 72* have been accepted as "equivalent facilitation" (and in some cases are superior) to the original ADAAG requirements. Subsequently, the ADAAG has been revised to become the *Americans with Disabilities Act and Architectural Barriers Act Accessibility Guidelines* and now references *NFPA 72.* The ADA/ABA and ADAAG continue to trigger upgrades of existing fire alarm systems. However, most fire alarm systems are being installed new or as a part of some other building project. In those cases, almost all local jurisdictions have adopted some form of accessibility code or have incorporated the concepts directly into their building and fire codes, which then reference and require use of *NFPA 72.*

A.18.5 The mounting height of the appliances affects the distribution pattern and level of illumination produced by an appliance on adjacent surfaces. It is this pattern, or effect, that provides occupant notification by visible appliances. If mounted too high, the pattern is larger but at a lower level of illumination (measured in lumens per square foot or foot-candles). If mounted too low, the illumination is greater (brighter) but the pattern is smaller and might not overlap correctly with that of adjacent appliances.

A qualified designer could choose to present calculations to an authority having jurisdiction showing that it is possible to use a mounting height greater than 96 in. (2.44 m) or less than 80 in. (2.03 m), provided that an equivalent level of illumination is achieved on the adjacent surfaces. This can be accomplished by using listed higher intensity appliances or closer spacing, or both.

Engineering calculations should be prepared by qualified persons and should be submitted to the authority having jurisdiction, showing how the proposed variation achieves the same or greater level of illumination provided by the prescriptive requirements of Section 18.5.

The calculations require knowledge of calculation methods for high-intensity strobes. In addition, the calculations require knowledge of the test standards used to evaluate and list the appliance.

18.5.1* Visible Signaling.

A.18.5.1 There are two methods of visible signaling. These are methods in which notification of an emergency condition is conveyed by direct viewing of the illuminating appliance or by means of illumination of the surrounding area.

Visible notification appliances used in the public mode must be located and must be of a type, size, intensity, and number so that the operating effect of the appliance is seen by the intended viewers regardless of the viewer's orientation.

In the same manner that signals produced by audible notification appliances must be clearly heard, the signals produced by visible notification appliances must be clearly seen without regard to the viewer's position within the protected area, as noted in A.18.5.1. This does not mean that an appliance must be seen from any location in a space but rather that the operating effect must be seen. For example, if a single visible notification appliance in an L-shaped area is properly located and sized, the visible appliance may not be seen from all parts of the room, but the effect of the flash will be seen. Also note that there is no requirement to place an appliance so that it can be directly viewed by the majority of occupants or by any occupant in particular.

18.5.1.1 Public mode visible signaling shall meet the requirements of Section 18.5 using visible notification appliances.

18.5.1.2* The coverage area for visible occupant notification shall be as required by other governing laws, codes, or standards. Where the other governing laws, codes, or standards require visible occupant notification for all or part of an area or space, coverage shall only be required in occupiable areas as defined in 3.3.178.

A.18.5.1.2 Visible appliances for fire or emergency signaling might not be required in all rooms or spaces. For example, a system that is used for general occupant notification should not require visible signaling in closets and other spaces that are not considered as occupiable areas. However, a space of the same size used as a file room could be considered occupiable and should have coverage by notification appliances. Also, signaling intended only for staff or emergency forces might only have to be effective in very specific locations.

18.5.2 Area of Coverage.

In 2013, language was added to emphasize that other governing laws, codes, or standards require visible signaling. Proposals and comments attempted to create lists of places where visible appliances are not needed, such as in small closets. The technical committee chose to leave the burden of specifics to other enabling laws, codes, or standards. However, many of those codes do not provide the detail that is often the subject of debate between authorities, designers, installers, and owners. The technical committee used performance-type language to indicate that where a code uses broad language, such as simply requiring visible signaling for specific occupancy or use group, coverage is needed only for the "occupiable" parts of those occupancies. See the defined terms *occupiable* and *occupiable area* in 3.3.177 and 3.3.178.

18.5.2.1 The designer of the visible notification system shall document the rooms and spaces that will have visible notification and those where visible notification will not be provided.

The requirement for the system designer to document where visible signaling will be used and where it will not be used was added in 2013. The intent is similar to that of ADS designations for voice communications. In most simple cases, just showing appliances on a plan will suffice. However, in some cases, the areas or specific rooms should be designated so that it is clear that visible signaling is or is not intended for that space.

18.5.2.2* Unless otherwise specified or required by other sections of this Code, the required coverage area for visible occupant notification shall be as required by other governing laws, codes, or standards.

A.18.5.2.2 Occupant notification by visible signaling is not required by *NFPA 72* except in high noise areas *(see* 18.4.1.1*)*. Just as with audible occupant notification, the requirement to have such signaling originates from other governing laws, codes, or standards. Those other governing laws, codes, or standards specify the areas or spaces that require either audible, visible, or both types of occupant notification. *NFPA 72* then provides the standards for those systems.

18.5.2.3 Where required by the authority having jurisdiction, documentation of the effective intensity (cd) of the visible appliances for the area of coverage shall be submitted for review and approval.

18.5.3 Light, Color, and Pulse Characteristics.

The requirements of this subsection and 18.5.4 apply to strobe lights. Research is being done to determine how other light sources, such as LEDs, can be effective as occupant notification appliances.

18.5.3.1 The flash rate shall not exceed two flashes per second (2 Hz) nor be less than one flash every second (1 Hz) throughout the listed voltage range of the appliance.

18.5.3.2 A maximum pulse duration shall be 0.2 second with a maximum duty cycle of 40 percent.

18.5.3.3 The pulse duration shall be defined as the time interval between initial and final points of 10 percent of maximum signal.

The light intensity of a pulsed source can be graphed as a curve ascending to a peak and then decaying. The duration of the pulse as defined in 18.5.3.3 is measured beginning at the point where the upward side of the curve exceeds 10 percent of the maximum intensity to the point where the downward side of the curve drops below 10 percent of the maximum intensity. See Exhibit 18.16 for an example of a graph showing these phenomena. While an actual appliance output curve might be shaped differently, the exhibit illustrates the general concept.

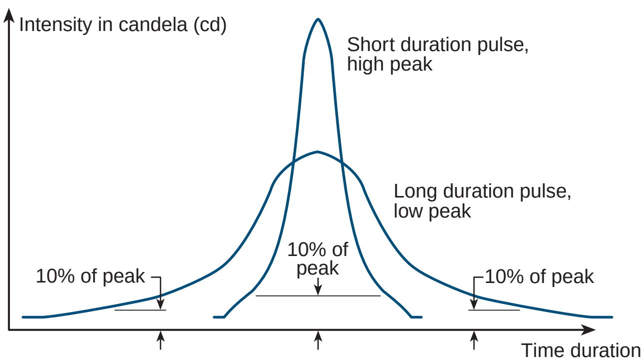
18.5.3.4* Lights used for fire alarm signaling only or to signal the intent for complete evacuation shall be clear or nominal white and shall not exceed 1000 cd (effective intensity).

A.18.5.3.4 Effective intensity is the conventional method of equating the brightness of a flashing light to that of a steady-burning light as seen by a human observer. The units of effective intensity are expressed in candelas (or candlepower, which is equivalent to candelas). For example, a flashing light that has an effective intensity of 15 cd has the same apparent brightness to an observer as a 15 cd steady-burning light source.

Measurement of effective intensity is usually done in a laboratory using specialized photometric equipment. Accurate field measurement of effective intensity is not practical. Other units of measure for the intensity of flashing lights, such as peak candela or flash energy, do not correlate directly to effective intensity and are not used in this standard.

EXHIBIT 18.16

Peak Versus Effective Intensity. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA)



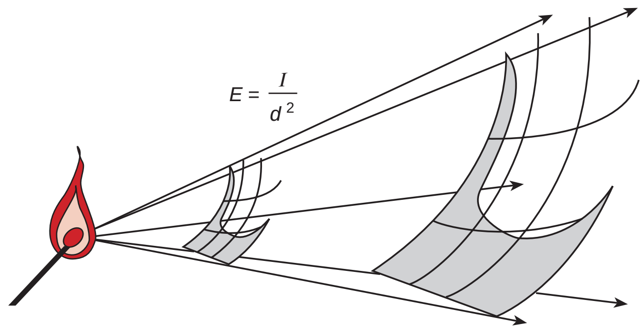
Strobe lights might be used to signal fire or other emergencies and might be intended to initiate evacuation, relocation, or some other behavior. Lights intended to initiate evacuation due to fire are required by the Code to be clear or white. Colored lights, such as amber/yellow lights, might be used in a combination system for any emergency (fire, bomb, chemical, weather, etc.) when the intent is for the signal recipient to seek additional information from other sources (voice, text displays, and so on).

Example Scenario 1: A building has a fire alarm system used for general evacuation. A separate mass notification system is used to provide voice instructions and information in the event of non-fire emergencies. The fire alarm system would have white/clear strobes intended to alert occupants of the need to evacuate. The mass notification system would have amber/yellow strobes that are intended to signal the need to get additional information from either audible voice announcements, text or graphical displays, or other information sources controlled or operated from the mass notification system. In the event that both systems are activated at the same time, the strobes should be synchronized per 18.5.5.4.2.

Example Scenario 2: A building has a mass notification system that provides information and instructions for a variety of emergency situations, including fire. Fire alarm initiation might be by a stand-alone fire detection system or might be an integral part of the mass notification system. In the event of an emergency, textual audible appliances are used to provide information. Visible alerting could be accomplished using one set of clear or colored strobes to indicate the need to get additional information. Visible textual information can be provided by text or graphic display or other visible information appliances. The content of the audible and visible messages will vary depending on the emergency.

FAQ What is source intensity?

Source intensity is a measure of the light output of the appliance. As noted in A.18.5.3.4, the unit of measure is the candela (cd). (This unit was formerly called candlepower. Candela and candlepower has a one-to-one relationship.) As you move away from any light source, its illumination decreases. Illumination is measured in units of lumens per square foot or lumens (lm) per square meter (also called lux). [Formerly, the unit used to describe illumination was the footcandle − 1 footcandle = 1 lm/ft^2 (0.0926 footcandle = 1 lm/m^2)]. See Exhibit 18.17 for graphic definitions of these terms and a mathematical relationship showing their use.



E = illumination [1 lumen/ft^2 or 1 footcandle (1 lumen/m^2 or 1 lux or 0.0926 footcandle)]

I = intensity of source (1 cd or 12.57 lumens)

d = distance from source to object (ft or m)

EXHIBIT 18.17 *Definitions of Light Source, Intensity, and Illumination. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA)*

Because strobe lights flash very briefly, the perceived brightness can vary depending on the actual peak source strength and the flash duration. Whereas one appliance might reach a peak intensity of 1000 cd in 0.1 second and another 750 cd in 0.2 second, the human eye might perceive both as being equally bright. A mathematical relationship is used to relate the perceived brightness of a strobe light to that of a constantly burning light. The result is called the effective intensity (candela effective, or cd eff.).

18.5.3.5 Lights used to signal occupants to seek information or instructions shall be clear, nominal white, or other color as required by the emergency plan and the authority having jurisdiction for the area or building.

As required by 18.3.3.2, notification appliances used for signaling other than fire cannot be labeled with the word "FIRE" or with any fire symbol, in any form. An ECS can use the same appliances for signaling both fire and other emergencies. Some ECSs use multiple visible appliances. In those cases, one visible appliance is labeled "FIRE" and is used to signal the need for immediate evacuation or relocation, while another visible appliance is used during more complex situations to signal the need for occupants to get additional information from other sources. The requirements in Chapter 24 offer some flexibility as to how visible appliances are to be used with ECSs. Unfortunately, the use of strobes as visible appliances in mass notification systems may not provide enough information for the hearing impaired to take appropriate action. Textual graphic or video displays can be used to serve that purpose.

The Technical Committee on Notification Appliances for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems chose to require clear or nominal white for fire alarm signaling only or when the intent is for complete evacuation. Where visible notification appliances are intended to elicit a different response, other colors are permitted, although clear or nominal white is still permitted provided the intent is clarified by the emergency plan. Signage and training of regular occupants might be necessary. The use of different types or colors of visible notification appliances on a system to influence occupant behavior should be carefully considered but might be advisable only where the occupants are not transient and are well trained and drilled in the required response.

18.5.3.6* The strobe synchronization requirements of this chapter shall not apply where the visible notification appliances located inside the building are viewed from outside of the building.

A.18.5.3.6 It is not the intent to establish viewing and synchronization requirements for viewing locations outdoors. As an example, there is no need for Floor No. 1 to be synchronized with Floor No. 2 if there is no visible coupling as in an atrium.

Studies have shown that the effect of strobes on photosensitive epilepsy lessens with distance and viewing angle.

As long as the composite flash rate is no greater than that produced by two listed strobes as allowed by 18.5.5.4.2, compliance is achieved.

Example: A ballroom has multiple synchronized strobes operating during an emergency, the doors exiting the ballroom are opened, and the strobes outside in the lobby and corridor are also operating. The strobes in the corridor and lobby are synchronized with each other, but the strobes outside the ballroom are not synchronized with the strobes inside the ballroom. This would be an acceptable application because the composite flash rate does not exceed that allowed by 18.5.5.4.2.

Where a multiple story building is viewed from the parking lot of the site, strobe lights viewed on each of the building levels might be synchronized on each floor level, but the floors are not synchronized with each other. This is permitted because the strobes are viewed from outside of the building and the intensity of the light from the strobes reaching an individual's eyes is greatly diminished.

18.5.4* Appliance Photometrics. The light output shall comply with the polar dispersion requirements of ANSI/UL 1971, *Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired*, or equivalent.

FAQ

Why are the polar dispersion characteristics of visible appliances important?

The polar dispersion characteristics of strobe appliances are very important for compliance with Chapter 18 because the effectiveness of visible signaling is based on tests in which the viewers responded to the illumination of their surroundings. Thus, it is important that the appliance produces a pattern of light on adjacent surfaces, such as walls, floors, desks, and so forth. Appliances listed to standards other than ANSI/UL 1971 and not having specified polar dispersion requirements might produce most of their light on axis and very little down or off to the side. Thus, the appliance might not produce a noticeable pattern sufficient to alert occupants.

A.18.5.4 The prescriptive requirements of Section 18.5 assume the use of appliances having very specific characteristics of light color, intensity, distribution, and so on. The appliance and application requirements are based on extensive research. However, the research was limited to typical residential and commercial applications such as school classrooms, offices, hallways, and hotel rooms. While these specific appliances and applications will likely work in other spaces, their use might not be the most effective solution and might not be as reliable as other visible notification methods.

For example, in large warehouse spaces and large distribution spaces such as super stores, it is possible to provide visible signaling using the appliances and applications of this chapter. However, mounting strobe lights at a height of 80 in. to 96 in. (2.03 m to 2.44 m) along aisles with rack storage subjects the lights to frequent mechanical damage by forklift trucks and stock. Also, the number of appliances required would be very high. It might be possible to use other appliances and applications not specifically addressed by this chapter at this time.

Alternative applications must be carefully engineered for reliability and function and would require permission of the authority having jurisdiction.

Tests of a system in large warehouse/super stores designed using the prescriptive approach of 18.5.5.4 showed that high ambient light levels resulted in both indirect and direct signaling effects. The signal-to-noise ratio produced by the operating visible notification appliances was low in many locations. However, with visible notification appliances located over the aisles or unobstructed by stock, indirect and some direct notification was sometimes achieved. Direct notification occurs even when occupants do not look up toward the ceiling-mounted visible notification appliances due to the extended cone of vision shown in Figure A.18.5.4(a). The visible notification appliance intensity and spacing resulting from the prescriptive design was generally sufficient for occupant notification by a combination of direct and indirect signaling. Testing showed that the best performance was achieved where visible notification appliances were directly over aisles or where visible notification appliances in adjacent aisles were not obstructed by stock. The performance-based design method will almost always result in aisles not having a line of visible notification appliances in them, because the spacing of visible notification appliances can be greater than the spacing of aisles. Also, it is recognized that aisles might be relocated after installation of the system. Good design practice is to place visible notification appliances over aisles, especially those that are likely to remain unchanged such as main aisles, and over checkout areas. Where reorganization of aisles results in visible notification appliances not in or over an aisle, or where that is the base design, it is important to have a clear view from that aisle to a nearby visible notification appliance. See Figure A.18.5.4(b). Some spaces might have marginal visible notification appliance effect (direct or indirect). However, occupants in these large stores and storage occupancies move frequently and place themselves in a position where they receive notification via the visible notification appliances. In addition, complete synchronization of the visible notification appliances in the space produced a desirable effect.

Visible notification using the methods contained in 18.5.5.4 is achieved by indirect signaling. This means the viewer need not actually see the appliance, just the effect of the appliance. This can be achieved by producing minimum illumination on surfaces near the appliance, such as the floor, walls, and desks. There must be a sufficient change in illumination to be noticeable. The tables and charts in Section 18.5 specify a certain candela-effective light intensity for certain size spaces. The data were based on extensive research and testing. Appliances do not typically produce the same light intensity when measured off-axis. To ensure that the appliance produces the desired illumination (effect), it must have some distribution of light intensity to the areas surrounding the appliance. ANSI/UL 1971, *Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired*, specifies the distribution of light shown to provide effective notification by indirect visible signaling.

Paragraph A.18.5.4 provides discussion and examples of possible visible signaling methods in large warehouse-type spaces. These guidelines are based on testing done under a grant from the Fire Protection Research Foundation (*www.rpsa-fire.com/strobeproject*).

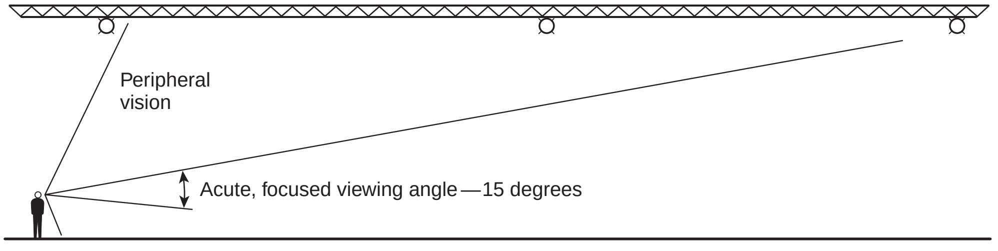


FIGURE A.18.5.4(a) *Extended Cone of Vision. (Courtesy of R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc.)*

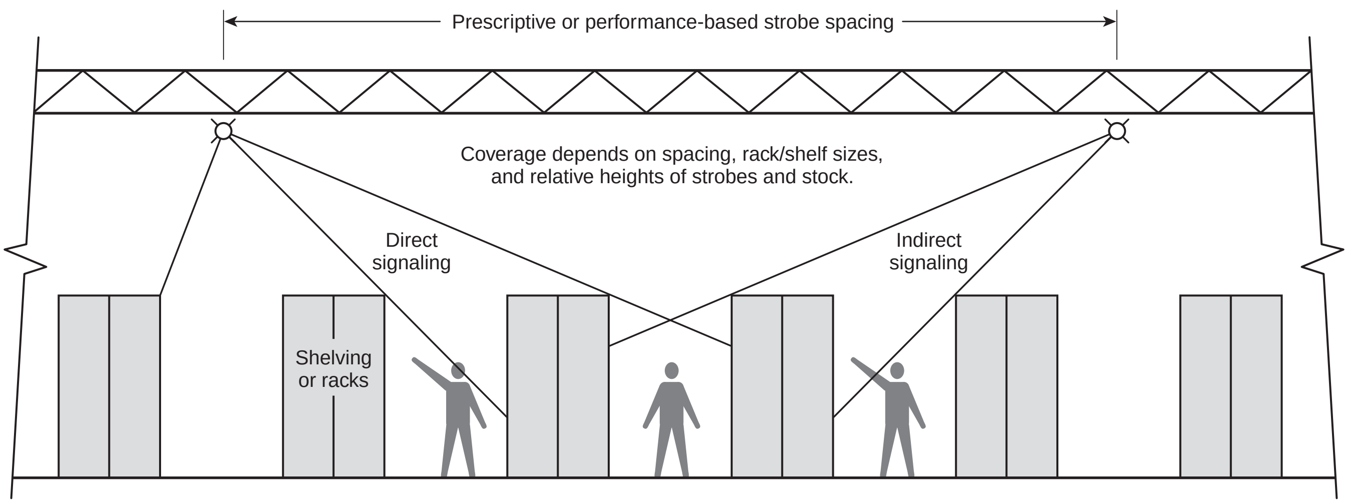


FIGURE A.18.5.4(b) *Visible Notification Appliances in Stores. (Courtesy of R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc.)*

18.5.5 Appliance Location.

18.5.5.1* Wall-mounted appliances shall be mounted such that the entire lens is not less than 80 in. (2.03 m) and not greater than 96 in. (2.44 m) above the finished floor or at the mounting height specified using the performance-based alternative of 18.5.5.6.

A.18.5.5.1 The requirements for the location of appliances within a building or structure are intended to apply to strobe lights applied in accordance with 18.5.5.4, 18.5.5.5, and 18.5.5.7. The mounting and location of appliances installed using the performance-based alternative of 18.5.5.6 can be located differently, provided they meet the intended performance requirements. Other appliances, such as graphic displays, video screens, and so on, should be located so that they meet their intended performance.

Where low ceiling heights or other conditions do not permit mounting at a minimum of 80 in. (2.03 m), visible appliances can be mounted at a lower height. However, lowering the mounting height reduces the area of coverage for that strobe. The performance-based methods of 18.5.5.6 can be used to determine the area of coverage. Strobe light mounting height should not be lowered below the plane of normal human viewing [approximately 5 ft (1.5 m)] except where ceiling heights limit the mounting position.

The mounting height requirement of 80 in. to 96 in. (2.03 m to 2.44 m) does not address the possibility of conditions where ceiling heights are less than 80 in. (2.03 m). The range that is permitted [80 in. to 96 in. (2.03 m to 2.44 m)] ensures that strobes are not mounted too high, which would result in lower levels of illumination on surrounding walls and on the floor. The lower limit of the range ensures that a minimum percentage of the surrounding surfaces is illuminated and that the top of the illuminated pattern is at or above the plane of normal human viewing [approximately 5 ft (1.5 m)]. Wall mounting of strobe lights, which are listed only for wall mounting, can result in little or no illumination above the plane of the strobe light. In the case of lower ceiling heights and mounting close to the ceiling, the level of illumination on the floor and surrounding walls is not reduced but the walls have a near 100 percent illuminated or "painted" area because the strobe is close to the ceiling. That is, there is little or no wall surface above the plane of the strobe that is not illuminated when the strobe is mounted close to the ceiling. Thus, when a strobe is mounted lower than the minimum [80 in. (2.03 m)] but still close to the ceiling, the only loss of signal is the smaller pattern produced on the horizontal plane (floor).

In the case where the only change is a lower mounting height due to a lower ceiling height, the room size covered by a strobe of a given value should be reduced by twice the difference between the minimum mounting height of 80 in. (2.03 m) and the actual, lower mounting height. For example, if a 15 cd effective strobe that normally covers a 20 ft (6.1 m) square space is being used and the height of the space is 63 in. (1.6 m) and the strobe is mounted at 59 in. (1.5 m), the strobe can only cover a 16.5 ft (5.03 m) square space: 20 ft – 2 (80 in. – 59 in.) (1 ft/12 in.) = 16.5 ft (5.03 m).

The room size reduction assumes that the horizontal pattern on each side of the strobe is reduced by the same amount that the strobe height is reduced.

18.5.5.2 Where low ceiling heights do not permit wall mounting at a minimum of 80 in. (2.03 m), wall mounted visible appliances shall be mounted within 6 in. (150 mm) of the ceiling. The room size covered by a strobe of a given value shall be reduced by twice the difference between the minimum mounting height of 80 in. (2.03 m) and the actual lower mounting height.

In rooms with sufficient ceiling height, the entire lens of wall-mounted visible appliances must be at least 80 in. (2.03 m) above the floor but not more than 96 in. (2.44 m) above the floor.

FAQ What is the purpose of the minimum and maximum mounting heights for wall-mounted visible notification appliances?

The minimum mounting height is intended to locate appliances so they are not blocked by common furnishings or equipment and, more important, to ensure a light pattern large enough to cover the intended space. The maximum mounting height is important because the illumination from a visible appliance reduces drastically with distance and angle from a horizontal plane through the appliance. Proof of this reduction can be determined by the mathematical relationship in Exhibit 18.17.

For this reason, wall-mounted appliances are limited to ensure that the entire lens is not less than 80 in. (2.03 m) and not more than 96 in. (2.44 m) above the floor. Ceiling mounting is permitted; however, the appliances must be specifically listed for ceiling mounting. See also A.18.5.

Where low ceilings do not permit wall-mounted appliances to be installed within the specified range, 18.5.5.2 has a method to alter the allowable coverage based on the actual mounting height. The allowance for lower ceiling heights is discussed in the fourth paragraph of A.18.5.5.1.

In many cases, an authority having jurisdiction has required a contractor to relocate appliances that were mounted 1 or 2 in. lower or higher than the height listed in 18.5.5.1. However, it is important to remember that where a dimension is listed in inches, the intended precision is 1 in. (see A.1.6.5). For that reason, errors of less than 1 in. would be allowed. Also, 18.5.5.2 and 18.5.5.6 can be used, if needed, to determine the acceptability of a different mounting height, whether intentional or accidental, and still meet the Code's intent.

18.5.5.3* Visible appliances listed for mounting parallel to the floor shall be permitted to be located on the ceiling or suspended below the ceiling.

This language was added in 2013 to point out that strobes that "look down" do not have to be installed on the ceiling — they can be suspended below the ceiling. This issue has often been debated because Table 18.5.5.4.1(b) uses the term *ceiling-mounted*. Similarly, although Table 18.5.5.4.1(a) uses the term *wall-mounted*, the appliances can also be mounted on the sides of columns.

A.18.5.5.3 Visible appliances must be listed for either wall mounting or ceiling mounting. The effectiveness of ceiling-mounted appliances does not depend on them being mounted on a surface. Therefore, the Code permits them to be suspended below the ceiling using proper electrical installation methods. Appliances mounted parallel to the floor, whether on a ceiling or suspended, can sometimes significantly reduce installation costs and provide better coverage.

In convention spaces and areas with racking and shelving, wall-mounted appliances are frequently obstructed or subjected to mechanical damage. Ceiling mounting (or suspending) the appliances can prevent problems and increases the ability for the appliance to cover the floor area through direct and indirect signaling. See A.18.5.4.

18.5.5.4* Spacing in Rooms.

A.18.5.5.4 The strobe intensities listed in Table 18.5.5.4.1(a) or Table 18.5.5.4.1(b), 18.5.5.5, or Table 18.5.5.7.2 or determined in accordance with the performance requirements of 18.5.5.6 are the minimum required intensities. It is acceptable to use a higher intensity strobe in lieu of the minimum required intensity.

Areas large enough to exceed the rectangular dimensions given in Figure A.18.5.5.4(a) through Figure A.18.5.5.4(c) require additional appliances. Often, proper placement of appliances can be facilitated by breaking down the area into multiple squares and dimensions that fit most appropriately *[see Figure A.18.5.5.4(a) through Figure A.18.5.5.4(d)]*. An area that is 40 ft (12.2 m) wide and 80 ft (24.4 m) long can be covered with two 60 cd appliances. Irregular areas and areas with dividers or partitions need more careful planning to make certain that at least one 15 cd appliance is installed for each 20 ft × 20 ft (6.1 m × 6.1 m) area and that light from the appliance is not blocked.

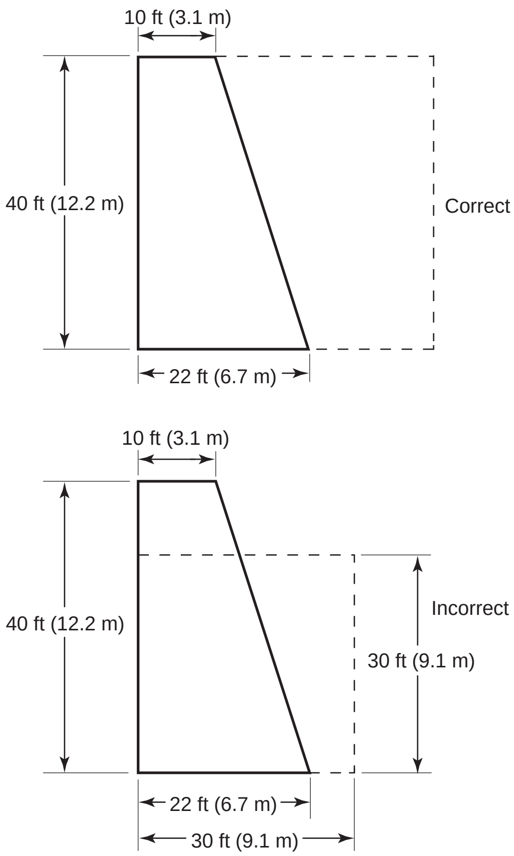
Figure A.18.5.5.4(a) through Figure A.18.5.5.4(d) help to avoid misinterpretation of the text. Figure A.18.5.5.4(a) demonstrates how a nonsquare or nonrectangular room can be fitted into the spacing allocation of Table 18.5.5.4.1(a) and Table 18.5.5.4.1(b). Figure A.18.5.5.4(b) demonstrates how to divide a room or area into smaller areas to enable the use of lower intensity visible notification appliances. Figure A.18.5.5.4(c) and Figure A.18.5.5.4(d) show the correct and incorrect placement of multiple visible notification appliances in a room.

Table 18.5.5.4.1(a) for wall mounting of visible notification appliances was expanded and edited for the 2002 edition and again for the 2007 edition. In 2002, entries were added for commonly manufactured strobe intensities, and the entry for a 30 ft (9.14 m) square room was modified to correct a rounding error. In 2007, entries were made in the column for four lights per room where the table previously listed "unknown."

Note that the historical record is incomplete concerning the development of table entries for multiple visible notification appliances in a room, ceiling appliances, and the use of visible notification appliances to cover square spaces without bounding (reflecting) walls. For that reason, the technical committee in the past chose to not add entries for two and four lights per room. In the 2007 edition, the technical committee added the entries for the four lights per room column by assuming that the large space was divided into four imaginary parts. See also 18.5.5.6.2 and associated commentary.

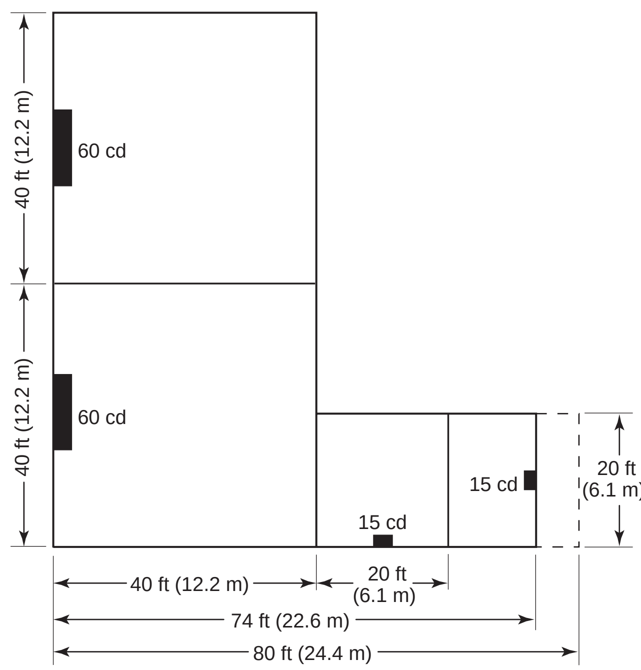
In 2013, the column for "Two Lights per Room" was deleted. Performance calculations showed that this option failed to provide the illumination required. For example, using one 15 cd strobe, a 20 ft × 20 ft (6.10 m × 6.10 m) room can be covered. The "Four Lights per Room" column permits the use of four 15 cd strobes for a 40 ft × 40 ft (12.2 m × 12.2 m) room because each is covering an imaginary space of 20 ft × 20 ft (6.10 m × 6.10 m). In the past, the "Two Lights per Room" option permitted the use of 30 cd strobes on opposite walls of the 40 ft × 40 ft (12.2 m × 12.2 m) room. But, according to the "One Light per Room" column, a 30 cd strobe only covers 28 ft × 28 ft (8.53 m × 8.53 m), leaving 40 − 28 = 12 ft (12.2 − 8.53 = 3.67 m) of space uncovered.

18.5.5.4.1 Spacing shall be in accordance with either Table 18.5.5.4.1(a) and Figure 18.5.5.4.1 or Table 18.5.5.4.1(b).



Note: Broken lines represent imaginary walls.

FIGURE A.18.5.5.4(a) *Irregular Area Spacing.*



Note: Broken lines represent imaginary walls.

FIGURE A.18.5.5.4(b) *Spacing of Wall-Mounted Visible Appliances in Rooms.*

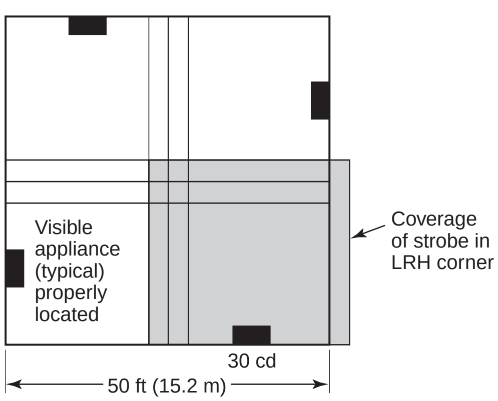


FIGURE A.18.5.5.4(c) *Room Spacing Allocation — Correct.*

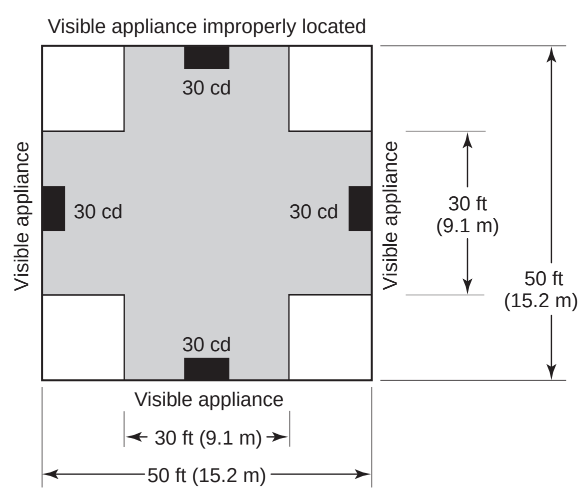


FIGURE A.18.5.5.4(d) *Room Spacing Allocation — Incorrect.*

TABLE 18.5.5.4.1(a) Room Spacing for Wall-Mounted Visible Appliances

Maximum Room Size		Minimum Required Light Output [Effective Intensity (cd)]	
ft	m	One Light per Room	Four Lights per Room (One Light per Wall)
20 × 20	6.10 × 6.10	15	NA
28 × 28	8.53 × 8.53	30	NA
30 × 30	9.14 × 9.14	34	NA
40 × 40	12.2 × 12.2	60	15
45 × 45	13.7 × 13.7	75	19
50 × 50	15.2 × 15.2	94	30
54 × 54	16.5 × 16.5	110	30
55 × 55	16.8 × 16.8	115	30
60 × 60	18.3 × 18.3	135	30
63 × 63	19.2 × 19.2	150	37
68 × 68	20.7 × 20.7	177	43
70 × 70	21.3 × 21.3	184	60
80 × 80	24.4 × 24.4	240	60
90 × 90	27.4 × 27.4	304	95
100 × 100	30.5 × 30.5	375	95
110 × 110	33.5 × 33.5	455	135
120 × 120	36.6 × 36.6	540	135
130 × 130	39.6 × 39.6	635	185

NA: Not allowable.

TABLE 18.5.5.4.1(b) Room Spacing for Ceiling-Mounted Visible Appliances

Maximum Room Size		Maximum Lens Height*		Minimum Required Light Output (Effective Intensity); One Light (cd)
ft	m	ft	m	
20 × 20	6.1 × 6.1	10	3.0	15
30 × 30	9.1 × 9.1	10	3.0	30
40 × 40	12.2 × 12.2	10	3.0	60
44 × 44	13.4 × 13.4	10	3.0	75
20 × 20	6.1 × 6.1	20	6.1	30
30 × 30	9.1 × 9.1	20	6.1	45
44 × 44	13.4 × 13.4	20	6.1	75
46 × 46	14.0 × 14.0	20	6.1	80
20 × 20	6.1 × 6.1	30	9.1	55
30 × 30	9.1 × 9.1	30	9.1	75
50 × 50	15.2 × 15.2	30	9.1	95
53 × 53	16.2 × 16.2	30	9.1	110
55 × 55	16.8 × 16.8	30	9.1	115
59 × 59	18.0 × 18.0	30	9.1	135
63 × 63	19.2 × 19.2	30	9.1	150
68 × 68	20.7 × 20.7	30	9.1	177
70 × 70	21.3 × 21.3	30	9.1	185

*This does not preclude mounting lens at lower heights.

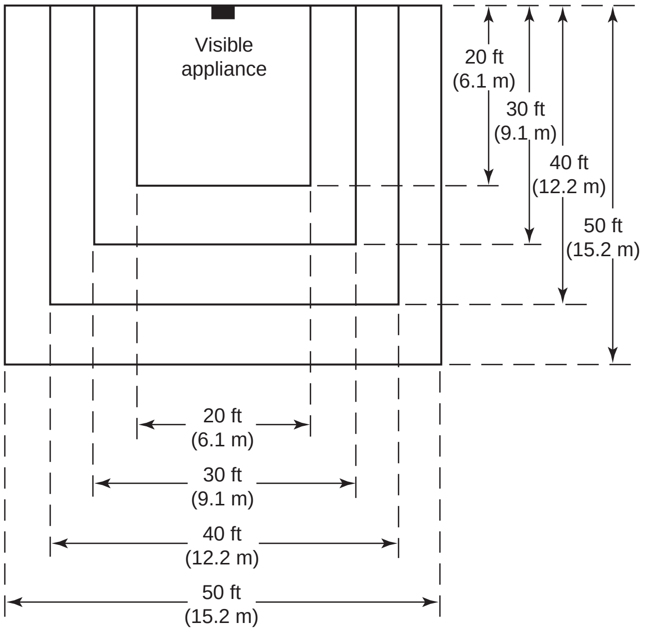


FIGURE 18.5.5.4.1 Room Spacing for Wall-Mounted Visible Appliances.

18.5.5.4.2 Visible notification appliances shall be installed in accordance with Table 18.5.5.4.1(a) or Table 18.5.5.4.1(b) using one of the following:

(1) A single visible notification appliance.
(2)* Two groups of visible notification appliances, where visual appliances of each group are synchronized, in the same room or adjacent space within the field of view. This shall include synchronization of strobes operated by separate systems.
(3) More than two visible notification appliances or groups of synchronized appliances in the same room or adjacent space within the field of view that flash in synchronization.

A.18.5.5.4.2(2) The field of view is based on the focusing capability of the human eye specified as 120 degrees in the *Illuminating Engineering Society (IES) Lighting Handbook Reference and Application*. The apex of this angle is the viewer's eye. In order to ensure compliance with the requirements of 18.5.5.4.2, this angle should be increased to approximately 135 degrees.

Testing has shown that high flash rates of high-intensity strobe lights can pose a potential risk of seizure to people with photosensitive epilepsy. To reduce this risk, more than two visible appliances are not permitted in any field of view unless their flashes are synchronized. This does not preclude synchronization of appliances that are not within the same field of view.

In 1996, the Code was modified to reduce the chances that visible notification appliances would induce seizures in persons with photosensitive epilepsy. The flash rate was adjusted so that two appliances (or groups of synchronized appliances) not flashing in unison cannot produce a flash rate that is considered dangerous. If more than two appliances or groups of synchronized appliances can be viewed at the same time, they must be synchronized. The option of spacing more than two appliances a minimum of 55 ft (16.8 m) apart in large rooms in lieu of synchronization is no longer permitted by the Code. In 2007, the intent was clarified by noting that groups or zones of visible notification appliances may be synchronized and that it is the perceived composite flash rate that is important.

Prior to the 1999 edition, the table for wall-mounted appliances did not permit more than two visible notification appliances in a room unless the room was at least 80 ft × 80 ft (24.4 m × 24.4 m), even if they were synchronized. Since the 1999 edition, the use of more than two visible notification appliances in any size space is permitted, provided they are synchronized.

In the 2010 edition, 18.5.5.4.2 was revised to include reference to ceiling-mounted visible notification appliances. In prior editions, the missing reference could have been interpreted to not require ceiling-mounted visible notification appliances to be synchronized, even though the technical committee did intend that they be synchronized.

As visible signaling is a complex topic, the Code presents prescriptive requirements rather than performance requirements, such as those for audible signaling. In essence, the Code provides preset designs that can be used for a variety of actual field conditions requiring these appliances. The prescriptive requirements contained in the Code are based, in part, on tests performed by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. in developing ANSI/UL 1971. Paragraph 18.5.5.6 contains a performance-based method for determining visible notification appliance coverage that is actually more stringent when compared with Table 18.5.5.4.1(a) and Table 18.5.5.4.1(b).

A visible notification appliance intensity greater than that specified for a certain room size is permitted, provided the limit of 18.5.3.4 is not exceeded.

In the 2010 edition, the column heading "Maximum Ceiling Height" in the table for ceiling-mounted visible appliances was changed to "Maximum Lens Height" to clarify that the location of the appliance lens dictates the spacing of the appliance and not the ceiling. In 18.5.5.3 of the 2013 edition, the allowance to suspend visible appliances below the ceiling has also been clarified, although the table still uses the term *ceiling-mounted visible appliances.*

18.5.5.4.3 Room spacing in accordance with Table 18.5.5.4.1(a) and Figure 18.5.5.4.1 for wall-mounted appliances shall be based on locating the visible notification appliance at the halfway distance of the wall.

18.5.5.4.4 In square rooms with appliances not centered or in nonsquare rooms, the effective intensity (cd) from one visible wall-mounted notification appliance shall be determined by maximum room size dimensions obtained either by measuring the distance to the farthest wall or by doubling the distance to the farthest adjacent wall, whichever is greater, as required by Table 18.5.5.4.1(a) and Figure 18.5.5.4.1.

Note that in the top drawing of Figure A.18.5.5.4(a) the dotted box is 40 ft × 40 ft (12.2 m × 12.2 m).

18.5.5.4.5 If a room configuration is not square, the square room size that allows the entire room to be encompassed or allows the room to be subdivided into multiple squares shall be used.

FAQ What method can be used to provide proper coverage for irregular spaces?

The tables and figures in the body of the Code and in Annex A help to ensure that a sufficient number of properly sized visible notification appliances are installed in each protected space to provide complete coverage. The key to proper coverage in irregular spaces is to divide the space into a series of squares and provide proper coverage for each square as if it were an independent space. Exhibit 18.18 illustrates this concept. Synchronization might be required per 18.5.5.4.2. The practice of using multiple visible notification appliances per room has been permitted by the Code since the visible notification appliance tables were first added in 1993. However, for additional insight comparing the prescriptive requirements of these tables with the performance requirements now addressed in the Code, see 18.5.5.6.2 and associated commentary.

18.5.5.4.6* If ceiling heights exceed 30 ft (9.14 m), ceiling-mounted visible notification appliances shall be suspended at or below 30 ft (9.14 m) or at the mounting height determined using the performance-based alternative of 18.5.5.6, or wall-mounted visible notification appliances shall be installed in accordance with Table 18.5.5.4.1(a).

A.18.5.5.4.6 This subsection is also intended to permit ceiling-mounted strobes to be suspended below the ceiling, provided the strobe height is not below the viewing plane for any ceiling height.

The Code currently does not have guidance or requirements for spaces with high ceilings. In some high-ceiling spaces, such as a gymnasium or a large atrium, suspending or wall-mounting appliances in accordance with the prescriptive requirements of the Code might not be feasible. Performance-based calculations or alternative methods for notification might need to be considered. Examples of alternatives are high-intensity revolving beacons, high-intensity indirect viewing appliances, or even the flashing of some or all of the building lights. One study showed that flashing only 20 percent of the lights in an office space would result in 100 percent alerting of persons who are not blind. Most of these methods are not yet recognized by the Code because the technical committees have not seen test data to support their use or because of other potential issues of reliability and use. Nevertheless, careful engineering might show these methods to be effective and more reliable than suspending standard appliances from the ceiling or wall mounting them in large congested spaces, such as warehouse stores or convention halls. Some methods, such as the use of building lighting systems, might use circuits that are not directly monitored for integrity. However, the large number of lighting units versus the number required for effective alerting combined with the use of branch circuits and daily operation might actually result in higher overall system availability and reliability. In applying alternative methods, the requirements of Section 1.5 must be observed.

Another possible solution for high-ceiling spaces is a performance-based design using a combination of direct and indirect signaling as described in A.18.5.4 for warehouse-type spaces.

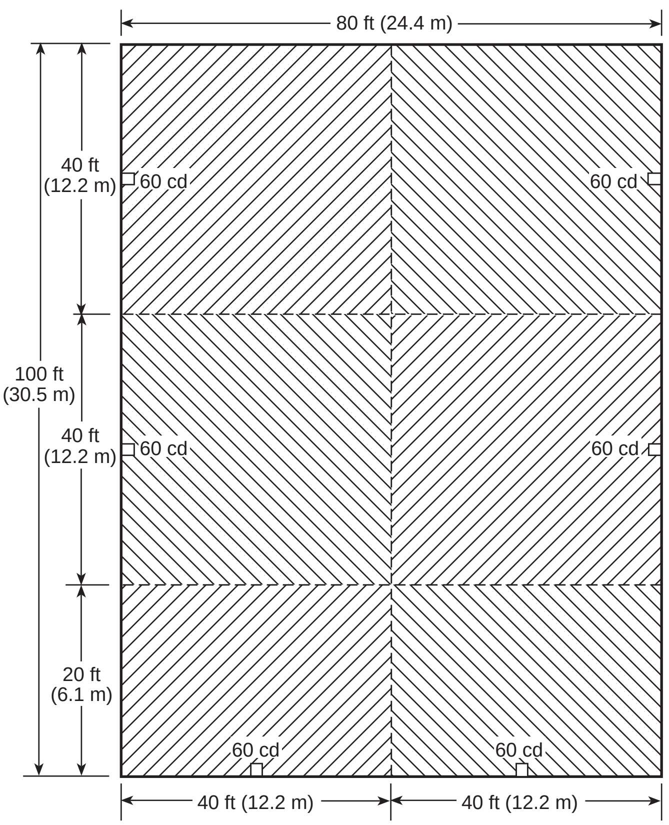
This paragraph was revised in the 2010 edition to clarify that performance-based methods are permitted for horizontally mounted visible notification appliances. The text is intended to allow visible notification appliances to be mounted at any height above the floor even if the appliance is below the ceiling. See Exhibit 18.19.

18.5.5.4.7 Table 18.5.5.4.1(b) shall be used if the ceiling-mounted visible notification appliance is at the center of the room. If the ceiling-mounted visible notification appliance is not located at the center of the room, the effective intensity (cd) shall be determined by doubling the distance from the appliance to the farthest wall to obtain the maximum room size.

18.5.5.5* Spacing in Corridors.

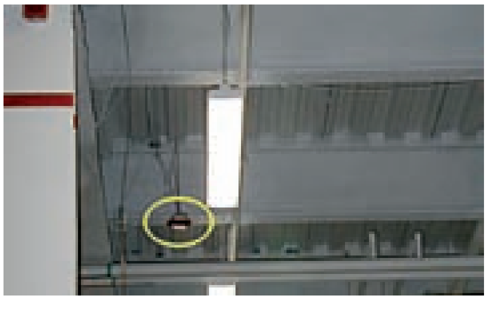
A.18.5.5.5 Because the occupants are usually alert and moving, and because their vision is focused by the narrowness of the space, corridor signaling is permitted to be by direct viewing of lower-intensity (15 cd) appliances. That is, the alerting is intended to be done by direct

EXHIBIT 18.18



Irregular Floor Plan Showing Notification Appliances for Required Locations.

EXHIBIT 18.19



Visible Notification Appliance Suspended Below Ceiling. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA) viewing of the strobe, not necessarily by its reflection off of surfaces (indirect viewing) as required for rooms in 18.5.5.4.

Note that it is acceptable to use 18.5.5.4 (Spacing in Rooms) to determine the number and location of strobes in corridors. If 18.5.5.4 is used, it is not necessary to have a corridor strobe within 15 ft (4.5 m) of the end of the corridor.

See Figure A.18.5.5.5 for corridor spacing for visible appliances.

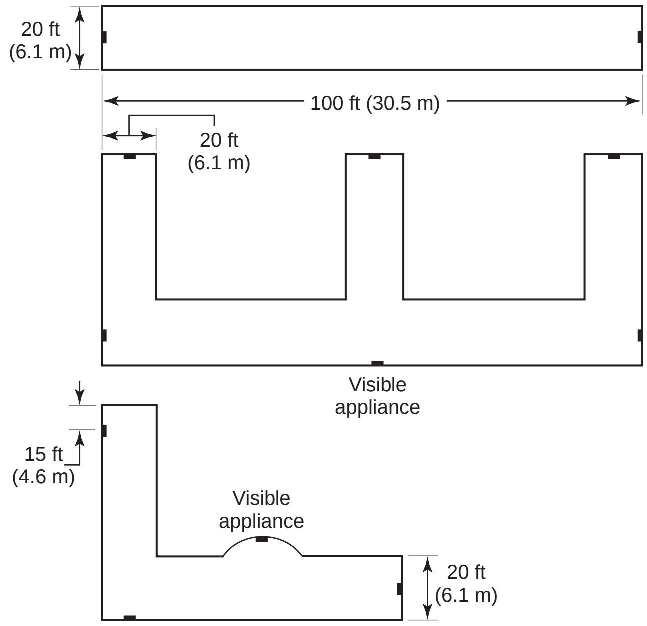


FIGURE A.18.5.5.5 Corridor Spacing for Visible Appliances.

18.5.5.5.1 The installation of visible notification appliances in corridors 20 ft (6.1 m) or less in width shall be in accordance with the requirements of either 18.5.5.4 or 18.5.5.5.

The allowance to use the more stringent requirements of indirect signaling (see 18.5.5.4) for corridor applications in lieu of the requirements of 18.5.5.5 was included in the 2002 edition. In the 2007 edition, this allowance was moved to the beginning of 18.5.5.5 to emphasize that alternative methods are acceptable. This allowance permits the designer to treat the corridor as a room and use the more stringent requirements of indirect signaling.

18.5.5.5.2 Paragraph 18.5.5.5 shall apply to corridors not exceeding 20 ft (6.1 m) in width.

18.5.5.5.3 In a corridor application, visible appliances shall be rated not less than 15 cd.

18.5.5.5.4 Corridors greater than 20 ft (6.1 m) wide shall comply with the spacing requirements for rooms in accordance with 18.5.5.4.

FAQ Are the spacing requirements for corridors based on direct or indirect viewing of appliances?

The intensity and spacing requirements for visible notification appliances located in corridors less than 20 ft (6.1 m) wide are less stringent than for those in rooms and are based on direct viewing rather than indirect viewing of appliances. A person in a corridor is usually moving and alert. Because the occupants usually are alert, fewer appliances are required, which results in greater spacing in long corridors. Only 15 cd appliances are required in corridors less than 20 ft (6.1 m) wide. Corridors that are more than 20 ft (6.1 m) wide are treated the same as rooms.

18.5.5.5.5* Visible notification appliances shall be located not more than 15 ft (4.57 m) from the end of the corridor with a separation not greater than 100 ft (30.5 m) between appliances.

A.18.5.5.5.5 Visible appliances in corridors are permitted to be mounted on walls or on ceilings in accordance with 18.5.5.5. Where there are more than two appliances in a field of view, they need to be synchronized.

Note that it is acceptable to use 18.5.5.4 (Spacing in Rooms) to determine the number and location of strobes in corridors. If 18.5.5.4 is used, it is not necessary to have a corridor strobe within 15 ft (4.5 m) of the end of the corridor. It is not the intent of this section to require strobes at or near every exit or exit access from a corridor.

It might be possible to share notification appliances under some conditions where corridors change direction or intersect. This arrangement will result in the proper coverage with fewer appliances. See also 18.5.5.5.8.

18.5.5.5.6 If there is an interruption of the concentrated viewing path, such as a fire door, an elevation change, or any other obstruction, the area shall be treated as a separate corridor.

18.5.5.5.7 In corridors where more than two visible notification appliances are in any field of view, they shall flash in synchronization.

In most cases where room visible notification appliances are required to be synchronized and where corridor visible notification appliances require synchronization, the corridor appliances may also be synchronized with the room appliances. However, as permitted by 18.5.5.4.2(2), the overall system would be acceptable provided that the viewer does not see more than two unsynchronized *groups* of visible notification appliances, where the synchronized room appliances would be one group and the synchronized corridor appliances would be the second group.

18.5.5.5.8 Wall-mounted visible notification appliances in corridors shall be permitted to be mounted on either the end wall or the side wall of the corridor in accordance with spacing requirements of 18.5.5.5.5.

18.5.5.6* Performance-Based Alternative.

A.18.5.5.6 A design that delivers a minimum illumination of 0.0375 lumens/ft^2 (footcandles) [0.4037 lumens/m^2 (lux)] to all occupiable spaces where visible notification is required is considered to meet the minimum light intensity requirements of 18.5.5.4.2(1). This level of illumination has been shown to alert people by indirect viewing (reflected light) in a large variety of rooms with a wide range of ambient lighting conditions.

The illumination from a visible notification appliance at a particular distance is equal to the effective intensity of the appliance divided by the distance squared (the inverse square law). Table 18.5.5.4.1(a) and Table 18.5.5.4.1(b) are based on applying the inverse square law to provide an illumination of at least 0.0375 lumens/ft^2 (0.4037 lumens/m^2) throughout each room size. For example, a 60 cd effective intensity appliance in a 40 ft × 40 ft (12.2 m × 12.2 m) room produces 0.0375 lumens/ft^2 (0.4037 lumens/m^2) on the opposite wall 40 ft (12.2 m) away [60 ÷ (40 ft)^2 or (60 ÷ (12.2 m)^2)]. This same 60 cd effective intensity appliance produces 0.0375 lumens/ft^2 (0.4037 lumens/m^2) on the adjacent wall 20 ft (6.1 m) away [60 × 25% ÷ (20 ft)^2 or (60 × 25% ÷ (12.2 m)^2)] where the minimum light output of the appliance at 90 degrees off-axis is 25 percent of rated output per ANSI/UL 1971, *Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired*. Similarly, a 110 cd strobe will produce at least 0.0375 lumens/ft^2 (0.4037 lumens/m^2) in a 54 ft × 54 ft (16.5 m × 16.5 m) room. Calculated intensities in Table 18.5.5.4.1(a) and Table 18.5.5.4.1(b) have been adjusted to standardize the intensity options of presently available products and take into account additional reflections in room corners and higher direct viewing probability when there is more than one appliance in a room.

The application of visible notification appliances in outdoor areas has not been tested and is not addressed in this standard. Visible appliances that are mounted outdoors should be listed for outdoor use (under ANSI/UL 1638, *Standard for Visual Signaling Appliances — Private Mode Emergency and General Utility Signaling*, for example) and should be located for direct viewing because reflected light will usually be greatly reduced.

The tables and charts for visible notification appliances form a prescriptive solution for visible signaling and are relatively easy to apply. The subparagraphs of 18.5.5.6 offer an alternative performance-based method for designing visible notification systems.

18.5.5.6.1 Any design that provides a minimum of 0.0375 lumens/ft^2 (0.4036 lumens/m^2) of illumination at any point within the covered area at all angles specified by the polar dispersion planes for wall- or ceiling-mounted visual appliances in ANSI/UL 1971, *Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired*, or equivalent, as calculated for the maximum distance from the nearest visual notification appliance, shall be permitted in lieu of the requirements of 18.5.5, excluding 18.5.5.7.

The stated performance goal is a level of illumination equal to or greater than 0.0375 lm/ft^2 (0.4036 lm/m^2). The Code requires this level to be achieved at "any" point within the covered space. From 18.5.5.6.2(1) and 18.5.5.6.2(2), the technical committee made it clear that they did not intend to mean "any one point." The minimum level of illumination applies to points within the covered area at each angle specified in the product test standard. These are the only points for which listing test data might be available for use in the calculations.

18.5.5.6.2 Documentation provided to the authority having jurisdiction shall include the following:

(1) Inverse Square Law calculations using each of the vertical and horizontal polar distribution angles in ANSI/UL 1971, *Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired*, or equivalent.
(2) The calculations shall account for the effects of polar distribution using one of the following:
    (a) The percentages from the applicable table(s) in ANSI/UL 1971, *Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired*, or equivalent
    (b) The actual results of laboratory tests of the specific appliance to be used as recorded by the listing organization

The performance objective must be achieved throughout the covered area. However, as noted in 18.5.5.6.2(1) and 18.5.5.6.2(2), proof of compliance is met by providing calculations for the space at a discrete number of points as defined by the product listing standard. One can use the minimum intensities permitted by the product standard for a given visible notification appliance rating or use actual polar dispersion intensities provided by the manufacturer. Proof of compliance is not intended to be achieved by testing at the installation site. Calculation and subsequent inspection of the installation are considered sufficient.

FAQ In applying the performance-based method of 18.5.5.6, what angles must be considered?

The required performance level must be calculated for each of the angles specified in ANSI/UL 1971 product standard. For wall-mounted units, the angles include 12 horizontal angles on the plane of the visible notification appliance, 14 vertical angles, and 2 compound angles. For a given visible notification appliance, it is possible to develop a three-dimensional shape that defines the maximum volume or space that can be covered by the appliance. However, the actual illumination of a surface requires that the illumination level be adjusted for the angle at which it strikes the surface. This angle is different from the angle at which the light ray leaves the appliance. Thus, the shape of the room (square, rectangular, etc.) will affect the calculations.

Exhibit 18.20 shows the results of calculations for a typical wall-mounted visible notification appliance. The plot is for the horizontal plane (parallel to the floor) through the appliance and is for a square room. The outer data points show the distance from the appliance at which the required 0.0375 lm/ft^2 (0.4036 lm/m^2) level of illumination perpendicular to the light ray is achieved. The inner data points account for the shape of the room and show the distance to the walls of a square room where the required illumination is achieved after adjusting for the angle at which the light ray strikes the surface. The superimposed square is the room size listed in the prescriptive Table 18.5.5.4.1(a). Note that these calculations show that the prescriptive requirements of the Code fall short of the performance requirements. From 0 to 45 degrees off-axis, the level of illumination on the walls (after correcting for the angle of incidence) is less than the stated performance objective. If the visible notification appliance is a 15 cd eff. appliance, the maximum room size, based on the performance calculations for the horizontal plane, is approximately 12.2 ft × 12.2 ft (3.7 m × 3.7 m) not 20 ft × 20 ft (6.1 m × 6.1 m) as listed in the prescriptive table. Even if the angle of incidence is not considered, the calculation and plot show that the prescriptive tables are in error up to an angle of 35 degrees.

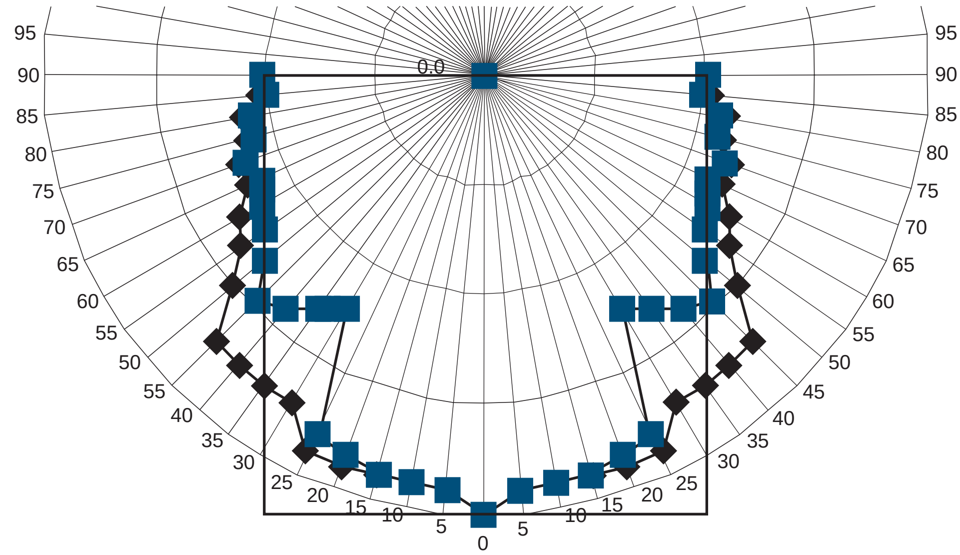
Why is there a discrepancy between the prescriptive requirements and the performance requirements? The technical committee reviewed the research report and NFPA records and found a gap in the documentation leading to the development of the product standard — including the polar dispersion requirements — and the *NFPA 72* prescriptive tables. Various sources have stated that the intended performance was a level of 0.0375 lm/ft^2 (0.4036 lm/m^2) illumination at each of the angles. However, calculations show this not to be the case for the tables. Another suggestion was that light reflection between walls in the corners increased the illumination to meet the performance requirements. An additive value of 10 percent was suggested. However, as shown in Exhibit 18.20, the values fall short by more than 10 percent. Also, large open-plan spaces do not have walls to reflect light.

The confidence level is high that the on-axis illumination of 0.0375 lm/ft^2 (0.4036 lm/m^2) is correct. The question is whether that level should be achieved at all angles or if the decreased levels consistent with the prescriptive requirements are sufficient. The fact that the prescriptive requirements of *NFPA 72* do not result in a level of 0.0375 lm/ft^2 (0.4036 lm/m^2) on the walls does not lead to the conclusion that the *NFPA 72* tables are in error. Thus, the technical committee did not have sufficient information to change or delete the prescriptive tables. However, the technical committee wanted to provide a performance-based approach and chose to include a conservative requirement.

18.5.5.7 Sleeping Areas.

18.5.5.7.1 Combination smoke detectors and visible notification appliances or combination smoke alarms and visible notification appliances shall be installed in accordance with the applicable requirements of Chapters 17, 18, and 29.

EXHIBIT 18.20



Outer data points—illumination not adjusted for angle of incidence

Inner data points—illumination after adjustment for angle of incidence

Polar Plot Showing Horizontal Plane Through Visible Notification Appliance Located in Center of Wall of Square Room. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA)

The requirement in 18.5.5.7.1 reinforces the detector coverage requirements of Chapter 17 and smoke alarm coverage of Chapter 29.

18.5.5.7.2* Table 18.5.5.7.2 shall apply to sleeping areas.

TABLE 18.5.5.7.2 *Effective Intensity Requirements for Sleeping Area Visible Notification Appliances*

Distance from Ceiling to Top of Lens		
in.	***mm***	***Intensity (cd)***
≥24	≥610	110
<24	<610	177

A.18.5.5.7.2 For sleeping areas, the use of lights with other intensities at distances different than within 16 ft (4.9 m) has not been researched and is not addressed in this Code.

This section on strobes for alerting sleeping persons intends that stand-alone strobes be located in accordance with 18.5.5. If the strobe is an integral part of a smoke detector or smoke alarm, the unit must be mounted in accordance with the requirements for the smoke detector or smoke alarm. In either case (stand-alone or combination), Table 18.5.5.7.2 is then consulted to determine the minimum required intensity. Where the appliance is mounted less than 24 in. (610 mm) from the ceiling, it must have a minimum 177 cd effective rating because it might be in a smoke layer at the time it is called upon to operate. If the appliance is 24 in. (610 mm) or more from the ceiling, it is permitted to be rated 110 cd effective or more. Note that the requirement for increasing the intensity when mounted close to the ceiling applies only to strobes used in sleeping areas to awaken sleeping people. It is assumed that in nonsleeping situations, a strobe is not needed to alert someone if there is a developing smoke layer.

In sleeping rooms, smoke can accumulate at the ceiling without a person who is asleep being aware of it. If a visible notification appliance is being used to awaken the person in the room, smoke might partially obscure the appliance and reduce the effective intensity. Thus, if the visible notification appliance is less than 24 in. (610 mm) from the ceiling, it must have a higher rating (177 cd eff.). Obviously, this requirement does not apply to nonsleeping spaces because a visible notification appliance should not be needed to notify an alert person that the space is filling with smoke.

The requirement in 18.5.5.7.2 does not change the mounting height requirement for wall-mounted visible notification appliances in 18.5.5. The hierarchy is as follows:

1. If the visible notification appliance is part of a smoke detector or smoke alarm, the unit must be mounted per the requirements for smoke detectors and smoke alarms. This requirement places the appliance either on the ceiling or on the wall within 12 in. (300 mm) of the ceiling. Therefore the visible notification appliance must be a 177 cd eff. appliance and listed for wall or ceiling mounting as required.
2. If the visible notification appliance is not part of a smoke detector or smoke alarm, and the unit is to be wall-mounted, it must be located at least 80 in. (2.03 m) above the floor but not more than 96 in. (2.44 m) above the floor. If that places it within 24 in. (610 mm) of the ceiling, it must have a 177 cd eff. rating. If it is 24 in. (610 mm) or more from the ceiling, it can be a 110 cd eff. appliance.
3. If the visible notification appliance is not part of a smoke detector or smoke alarm, and the unit is to be ceiling-mounted, it must be a 177 cd eff. appliance.

In the unlikely situation where the ceiling height of a sleeping area is less than 80 in. (2.03 m), the visible notification appliance should be located as high as possible — at ceiling level whether wall-mounted or ceiling-mounted. The visible notification appliance must then be a 177 cd eff. appliance. The critical measurement is the distance to the pillow, which cannot exceed 16 ft (4.87 m) measured horizontally.

18.5.5.7.3 For rooms with a linear dimension greater than 16 ft (4.87 m), the visible notification appliance shall be located within 16 ft (4.87 m) of the pillow.

18.5.6 Location of Visible Notification Appliances for Wide Area Signaling. Visible notification appliances for wide area signaling shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of the authority having jurisdiction, approved design documents, and the manufacturer's instructions to achieve the required performance.

18.6* Visible Characteristics — Private Mode

Visible notification appliances used in the private mode shall be of a sufficient quantity and intensity and located so as to meet the intent of the user and the authority having jurisdiction.

FAQ What are the uses of many private mode visible notification appliances?

Visible notification appliances in the private mode, addressed in Section 18.6, are often used in conjunction with an audible notification appliance to call the viewer's attention to the visible appliance. Many visible appliances in the private mode provide annunciated information that helps the viewer to locate the source of an alarm or a supervisory or trouble signal. A remote annunciator is an example of this usage.

A.18.6 Though the number of visible notification appliances might be reduced in private operating mode settings, visible notification appliances might still need to be considered in spaces occupied by the public or the hearing impaired or subject to other laws or codes.

18.7 Supplementary Visible Signaling Method

A supplementary visible notification appliance shall be intended to augment an audible or visible signal.

A supplementary visible notification appliance is not intended to serve as one of the required visible notification appliances. Examples are nonrequired remote annunciators and possibly a nonrequired flashing appliance located in a security or maintenance office. See the defined term *supplementary* in 3.3.289.

18.7.1 A supplementary visible notification appliance shall comply with its marked rated performance.

Recognizing that this appliance is not satisfying a requirement but is providing a supplemental function, 18.7.1 mandates that the appliance function be marked and rated. This requirement discourages manufacturers from overrating the marking, which might not be detected because the appliances are supplementary, and gives the authority having jurisdiction a basis for verifying the performance of such appliances.

18.7.2 Supplementary visible notification appliances shall be permitted to be located less than 80 in. (2.03 m) above the floor.

As such an appliance is supplementary, it does not need to meet the mandatory mounting height requirement for visible appliances.

18.8 Textual Audible Appliances

18.8.1 Speaker Appliances.

18.8.1.1 Speaker appliances shall comply with Section 18.4.

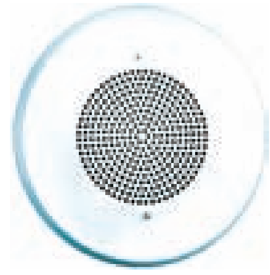
18.8.1.2* The sound pressure level, in dBA, of the tone produced by a signaling speaker shall comply with all the requirements in 18.4.3 (public), 18.4.4 (private), or 18.4.5 (sleeping) for the intended mode or shall comply with the requirements of 18.4.6 (narrow band tone signaling).

A.18.8.1.2 The tone signal is used to evaluate the sound pressure level produced by speaker appliances because of the fluctuating sound pressure level of voice or recorded messages.

Speaker appliances are called textual audible appliances, not speakers, because the term *speaker* might also refer to a person who is speaking.

In addition to conveying textual information, textual audible appliances are used to produce tones to warn occupants to evacuate the protected premises. Textual audible appliances are audible appliances and must comply with the audibility and mounting requirements of Section 18.4, which also includes the intelligibility requirements of 18.4.1.5 and 18.4.10. The audibility (sound pressure level) requirement applies to tone signals put through the appliance, not to voice signals, because voice is modulated. See 18.4.1.4 and also 18.4.1.5 and A.18.4.1.5. The testing requirements for audible appliances in Chapter 14 include measurement of the alert tone only. The test requirements in Chapter 14 only require that voice messages be verified as being distinguishable and understandable and permit a simple qualitative assessment — a simple listen test. While quantitative evaluations using intelligibility meters are permitted and described in Annex D, they are not required. See Annex D for additional discussion. Exhibit 18.21 shows a typical textual audible appliance.

EXHIBIT 18.21



Loudspeaker Used as Textual Audible Appliance. (Source: Cooper Wheelock, Inc. dba Cooper Notification, Long Branch, NJ)

18.8.2 Telephone Appliances. Telephone appliances shall be in accordance with 24.5.1.

18.9* Textual and Graphical Visible Appliances

Examples of textual visible appliances addressed in Section 18.9 are annunciators, panel displays (LED and LCD), CRTs, screens, and signs. See Exhibit 18.22 for an annunciator that represents a typical textual visible appliance.

EXHIBIT 18.22

Textual Visible Appliance (Annunciator). (Source: Silent Knight by Honeywell, Maple Grove, MN)

A.18.9 Textual and graphical visible appliances are selected and installed to provide temporary text, permanent text, or symbols. Textual and graphical visible appliances are most commonly used in the private mode for fire alarm systems. The use of microprocessors with computer monitors and printers has resulted in the ability to provide detailed information in the form of text and graphics to persons charged with directing emergency response and evacuation. Textual and graphical visible appliances are also used in the public mode to communicate emergency response and evacuation information directly to the occupants or inhabitants of the area protected by the system. For both private mode and public mode signaling, text and graphic annunciators can provide information about pre-alarm, alarm, trouble, and supervisory conditions. Because textual and graphical visible appliances do not necessarily have the ability to alert, they should only be used to supplement audible or visible notification appliances.

Textual and graphical visible information should be of a size and visual quality that is easily read. Many factors influence the readability of textual visible appliances, including the following:

(1) Size and color of the text or graphic
(2) Distance from the point of observation
(3) Observation time
(4) Contrast
(5) Background luminance
(6) Lighting
(7) Stray lighting (glare)
(8) Shadows
(9) Physiological factors

While many of these factors can be influenced by the equipment manufacturer and by the building designers, there is no readily available method to measure legibility.

18.9.1 Application.

18.9.1.1 Textual and graphical visible appliances shall be permitted to be used to signal information about fire or other emergency conditions or to direct intended responses to those conditions.

18.9.1.2 This section does not apply to means of egress signs, room identification signs, and other signage that could be required by other governing laws, codes, or standards.

18.9.1.3 Textual visible appliance messages shall be permitted to be static, flashing, or scrolling.

18.9.2 Location.

18.9.2.1 Private Mode. Unless otherwise permitted or required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, or by other parts of this Code or by the authority having jurisdiction, all textual and graphical visible notification appliances in the private mode shall be located in rooms that are accessible only to those persons directly concerned with the implementation and direction of emergency response in the areas protected by the system.

Paragraph 18.9.2.1 intends to limit access to private mode textual visible displays to only those persons authorized to obtain such information. The authority having jurisdiction is permitted to specify a more public location for the textual visible appliance, presumably for use by responding emergency personnel.

18.9.2.2 Public Mode. Textual and graphical visible notification appliances used in the public mode shall be located to ensure visibility to the occupants of the protected area or to the intended recipients.

18.9.2.3 Mounting. Desktop and surface-mounted textual and graphical appliances shall be permitted.

18.9.3 Performance. The information produced by textual and graphical visible appliances shall be clear and legible at the intended viewing distance.

18.9.4* Character and Symbol Requirements and Viewing Distance.

In 2013, specific requirements for text displays were moved from Chapter 24 to Chapter 18. The technical committee expanded the requirements to include graphical systems as well as text. Many of the requirements had originally come from the *Americans with Disability Act Accessibility Guidelines* (ADAAG). When the text was relocated in 2013, additional requirements from the ADAAG were added to make the section more complete. Prior to their inclusion in Chapter 24 in 2010, the Code did not have these detailed requirements for text and graphics. In the past, the construction and display characteristics of these appliances were not regulated. Manufacturers and authorities knew what worked, and very few problems were encountered. But, because these displays are now being used more often to convey information to occupants during an emergency and are being located with varying viewing distances, it made sense to add some requirements. The technical committees took advantage of long-standing research done by other disciplines to develop the standards. For some types of displays such as simple zone lists, site plans, or programmable television monitors, compliance with the requirements of 18.9.4 will be a matter of field inspection to determine if the visual characteristics meet the intent of the Code. For other cases, the appropriate characteristics will be confirmed as a part of the listing process.

A.18.9.4 Parts of this section on text characteristics are based on Section 703.5 of the updated accessibility guidelines in the U.S. Access Board's ADA-ABA-AG, released in 2004.

18.9.4.1 This section applies to visual characters and graphic elements and does not address raised characters or braille that could be required by other governing laws, codes, or standards.

18.9.4.2* Characters and symbols shall contrast with their background using either positive contrast (light on a dark background) or negative contrast (dark on a light background).

A.18.9.4.2 Signs are more legible for persons with low vision when characters contrast as much as possible with their background. Additional factors affecting the ease with which the text can be distinguished from its background include shadows cast by lighting sources, surface glare, and the uniformity of the text and its background colors and textures.

Stroke width-to-height ratios are an important part of character legibility and are affected by contrast. Ratios for light characters on a dark background and dark characters on a light background differ because light characters or symbols tend to spread or bleed into the adjacent dark background. To accommodate these differences, recommendations for symbol stroke width-to-character height ratios are as follows:

(1) Positive image — Dark characters on a light background, ratio of 1:6 to 1:8
(2) Negative image — Light characters on a dark background, ratio of 1:8 to 1:10

Source: Federal Aviation Administration (FAA) Human Factors Awareness Course available at http://www.hf.faa.gov/webtraining/Intro/Intro1.htm.

18.9.4.3 Characters and symbols and their background shall have a nonglare finish.

18.9.4.4* Characters shall be permitted to be uppercase or lowercase, or a combination of both.

A.18.9.4.4 The use of all uppercase characters in messages should be avoided as it decreases legibility. The exception is one- or two-word commands or statements such as stop, go, or exit stair.

18.9.4.5 Characters shall be conventional in form and not italic, oblique, script, highly decorative, or of other unusual form and shall use sans serif fonts.

18.9.4.6 Characters shall be selected from fonts where the width of the uppercase letter "O" is 55 percent minimum and 110 percent maximum of the height of the uppercase letter "I".

18.9.4.7* Character and symbol height for appliances other than desktop monitors or displays shall meet all of the following criteria:

(1) Minimum character height shall comply with Table 18.9.4.7.
(2) Viewing distance shall be measured as the horizontal distance between the character and an obstruction preventing further approach towards the appliance.
(3) Character height shall be based on the uppercase letter "I".

TABLE 18.9.4.7 *Visual Character and Graphic Symbol Heights Based on Height and Distance*

Height of Character or Symbol Above Ground or Finished Floor		Horizontal Viewing Distance		Minimum Character or Symbol Height	
in.	m	ft	m	in.	mm
40 in. min. to ≤70 in.	1.02 m to 1.78 m	<6	1.83	⅝ in.	16 mm
		≥6	1.83	⅝ in., plus ⅛ in. per foot of horizontal viewing distance beyond 6 ft	16 mm plus 3 mm per 0.30 m of horizontal viewing distance beyond 1.83 m
>70 in. to ≤120 in.	1.78 m to 3.05 m	<15	4.57	2 in.	51 mm
		≥15	4.57	2 in. plus ⅛ in. per foot of horizontal viewing distance beyond 15 ft	51 mm plus 3 mm per 0.30 m of horizontal viewing distance beyond 4.57 m
>120 in.	3.05 m	<21	6.40	3 in.	75 mm
		≥21	6.40	3 in. plus ⅛ in. per foot of horizontal viewing distance beyond 21 ft	75 mm plus 3 mm per 0.30 m of horizontal viewing distance beyond 6.40 m

A.18.9.4.7 Paragraph 18.9.4.7 and the associated table does not apply to text and graphics displayed on desktop monitors. The Code does not list any specific sizing requirements for desktop monitors. However, 18.9.3 does require them to be clear and legible at the intended viewing distance. Other requirements in 18.9.4 such as contrast, sans serif fonts, and so forth should still apply to desktop displays. The specific requirements of Table 18.9.4.7 are taken directly from Section 703.5 of the updated accessibility guidelines in the U.S. Access Board's ADA-ABA-AG, released in 2004. The table has been reformatted to be consistent with other parts of *NFPA 72*.

18.9.4.8* All characters and symbols displayed by textual and graphical visible notification appliances shall be a minimum of 40 in. (1.02 m) above the ground or finished floor.

A.18.9.4.8 The minimum height for textual and graphic visible appliances is given as 40 in. (1.02 m) above the ground or finished floor. However, the character or symbol sizes should be based on the height of the highest character or symbol displayed by the appliance.

18.9.4.9 Stroke thickness of the uppercase letter "I" shall be minimum 10 percent and maximum 30 percent of the height of the character.

18.9.4.10 Character spacing shall be measured between the two closest points of adjacent characters, excluding word spaces. Spacing between individual characters shall be minimum 10 percent and maximum 35 percent of character height.

18.9.4.11 Spacing between the baselines of separate lines of characters within a message shall be 135 percent minimum and 170 percent maximum of the character height.

18.10 Tactile Appliances

In a study by Ashley et al., "Waking Effectiveness of Audible, Visual and Vibratory Emergency Alarms Across All Hearing Levels" (funded by the National Institutes of Health, National Institute on Deafness and Other Communicative Disorders), tactile signaling was shown to be more effective than strobes for awakening hearing-impaired and deaf persons. However, the technical committee felt that the use of tactile appliances should not permit the elimination of visible appliances that cover a larger volume of space.

18.10.1 Application. Tactile appliances shall be permitted if used in addition to audible or visible, or both, notification appliances.

18.10.2* Performance. Tactile appliances shall meet the performance requirements of ANSI/UL 1971, *Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired*, or equivalent.

During the 2010 Code development cycle, proposals were made to require tactile signaling for certain risk groups. However, the technical committees determined that while this is a common method used in the deaf and hearing-loss community, additional research and performance specifications were needed before code language could be developed. Many variables that might affect the reliability of tactile appliance performance have not been tested or documented. Some of the tactile appliance variables include the mass of the appliance, frequency of vibration, and the throw or displacement of the vibrating mass as well as any pattern to the vibration. Occupant variables that might affect the reporting of test results and the effectiveness of the appliance include the person's age, whether a person has a profound hearing loss versus a partial hearing loss, how long a person has lived with hearing loss, and what sleep stage the person is experiencing when the appliance operates. The type of mattress might also have an effect on the performance of certain tactile appliances. Mattress variables include thickness, firmness, memory foam, pillow tops, water beds, and motion isolation mattresses. Until additional research is done, performance requirements for the manufacture, listing, installation, and use of tactile appliances cannot be specified with a sufficient degree of confidence.

A.18.10.2 Notification appliances are available for the deaf and hard of hearing. These appliances include, but are not limited to, supplemental tactical notification appliances. Such tactile notification appliances can be capable of awakening people. Tactile appliances can initiate in response to the activation of an audible smoke alarm, through hard wiring into the fire alarm system or by wireless methods.

Some tests show that strobes might not be effective in awakening some sleeping individuals during an emergency. Some tactile devices can be more effective in awakening individuals, regardless of hearing levels, from sleep.

18.11* Standard Emergency Service Interface

Where required by the enforcing authority; governing laws, codes, or standards; or other parts of this Code, annunciators, information display systems, and controls for portions of a system provided for use by emergency service personnel shall be designed, arranged, and located in accordance with the requirements of the organizations intended to use the equipment.

A.18.11 *Standard Emergency Service Interface.* Annunciators, information display systems, and controls for portions of a system provided for use by emergency service personnel should be designed, arranged, and located in accordance with the needs of the organizations intended to use the equipment.

Where annunciators, information display systems, and controls for portions of the system are provided for use by emergency service personnel, these should have a common design and operation to avoid confusion of users.

FAQ What is the purpose of the standard emergency service interface?

The requirement in Section 18.11 for a standard emergency service interface is intended to help serve the needs of the fire service and other emergency service personnel. The ability of emergency service personnel to understand and use the information can play a key role in incident command and resource allocation. The standard emergency service interface is intended to provide information in a consistent manner for all systems.

References Cited in Commentary

Americans with Disabilities Act and Architectural Barriers Act Accessibility Guidelines, published in the *Federal Register,* U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC, July 23, 2004 and amended August 5, 2005.

ANSI S3.41, *American National Standard Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal*, 1990, reaffirmed 2008, American National Standards Institute, Inc., New York, NY.

ANSI/UL 464, *Standard for Audible Signal Appliances*, 2009 edition, revised 2011, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL.

ANSI/UL 864, *Standard for Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems*, 2003, revised 2011, Underwriters Laboratories Inc. Northbrook, IL.

ANSI/UL 1638, *Standard for Visual Signaling Appliances – Private Mode Emergency and General Utility Signaling*, 2001 edition, revised 2008, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL.

ANSI/UL 1971, *Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired*, 2002, revised 2008, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL.

Ashley, E., Du Bois, J., Klassen, M., and Roby, R., "Waking Effectiveness of Audible, Visual and Vibratory Emergency Alarms Across All Hearing Levels," *Fire Safety Science – Proceedings of the Eighth International Symposium,* International Association for Fire Safety Science, 2005.

ICC/ANSI 117.1, *Standard on Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities*, 2009 edition, International Code Council, 5203 Leesburg Pike, Suite 600, Falls Church, VA 22041.

ISO 7731, *Danger Signals for Work Places – Auditory Danger Signals*, 2003 edition, International Standards Organization, Geneva, Switzerland.

NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code®*, 2011 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA *101®*, *Life Safety Code®*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

Optimizing Fire Alarm Notification for High Risk Groups, Summary Report, Fire Protection Research Foundation, Quincy, MA, June 2007.

The SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering, 4th edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, and Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Bethesda, MD, 2008, pp. 4-32–4-42.

Waking Effectiveness of Alarms for Adults Who Are Hard of Hearing, Fire Protection Research Foundation, Quincy, MA, June 2007.

Waking Effectiveness of Alarms for the Alcohol Impaired, Fire Protection Research Foundation, Quincy, MA, June 2007.

Bibliography

Butler, B., et al., *Locating Fire Alarm Sounders for Audibility*, Building Services Research and Information Association, Berkshire, UK, 1981.

IEC 60268-16, *Sound system equipment – Part 16: Objective rating of speech intelligibility by speech transmission index*, International Electrotechnical Commission, Geneva, Switzerland, 2011.

IEC 60849, *Sound Systems for Emergency Purposes*, 1998 edition, International Electrotechnical Commission, Geneva, Switzerland.

ISO 7240-19, *Fire Detection and Alarm Systems – Part 19: Design, Installation, Commissioning and Service of Sound Systems for Emergency Purposes*, 1st edition, International Organization for Standardization, Geneva, Switzerland, 15 Aug 2007.

Jacob, K., "Understanding Speech Intelligibility and the Fire Alarm Code," Bose™ Professional Systems, 2001. Available at *www.rpsa-fire.com*.

Myles, M., *Analysis of Acoustic Signals Produced by Residential Fire Alarms*, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 1979 Annual Meeting.

NEMA Standards Publication SB 50-2008, "Emergency Communications Audio Intelligibility Applications Guide," National Electrical Manufacturers Association, Rosslyn, VA, 2008.

Schifiliti, R. P., "Audibility and Audible Signaling, Selected Bibliography," March 2001. Available at *www.rpsa-fire.com*.

Schifiliti, R. P., "Can You Hear (and Understand) Me Now? Ten Key Issues Affecting the Intelligibility of Voice Communications," NFPA Fire Journal, November/December 2010, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

Schifiliti, R. P., "Designing Fire Alarm Audibility," *Fire Technology*, May 1988.

Schifiliti, R. P., "Intelligibility – Selected Bibliography," November 2010. Available at *www.rpsa-fire.com*.

Schifiliti, R. P., "Mass Notification Systems," NEMA Supplement in *Fire Protection Engineering*, Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Bethesda, MD, Fall 2005.

Schifiliti, R. P., "The Mosquito and the Picket Fence — A Modern Day Fire Alarm Fable About Broad-band versus Narrow-band Signaling," NEMA Supplement (three parts) in *Fire Protection Engineering*, Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Bethesda, MD, Winter, Spring, and Summer 2005.

Schifiliti, R. P., "Visual Signaling as a Means for Occupant Notification in Large Spaces," Fire Protection Research Foundation, Quincy, MA, January 2006.

Reserved Chapters

In the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72®, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, the following chapters are reserved for future use:

- Chapter 19
- Chapter 20

CHAPTER 21

Emergency Control Function Interfaces

Chapter 21 was a new chapter in the 2010 edition of the Code. This chapter contains the information that was in Section 6.16, Protected Premises Fire Safety Functions, in the 2007 edition of the Code. Because many of the fire safety functions might also be performed by an emergency signaling system under conditions other than a fire, the requirements were moved to a separate chapter. To reflect this broader scope, the term *emergency control function* is used in place of what was formerly referred to as *fire safety function*.

The following list is a summary of significant changes to this chapter in the 2013 edition:

- Revisions throughout Section 21.2 to recognize and use the new term *emergency control function interface device* defined in 3.3.90
- New exception to 21.3.3 addressing the use of a waterflow switch for elevator recall upon activation of a sprinkler in the elevator pit
- New 21.3.7 addressing the general location of automatic fire detection when sprinklers are located in elevator pits
- New 21.3.8 addressing the installation of smoke detectors in elevator pits
- Revised Section 21.5 addressing fire service access elevators (formerly called first responder use elevators)
- Extensive revision of Section 21.6 addressing occupant evacuation elevators (formerly called elevators for occupant-controlled evacuation)
- Revised 21.7.4 addressing the designation for signals from smoke detectors installed in air ducts
- Revised Section 21.9 addressing requirements for fire alarm system interface with electrically locked doors

21.1 Application

The provisions of Chapter 21 shall cover the minimum requirements and methods for emergency control function interfaces to fire alarm systems and emergency communications systems in accordance with this chapter.

The control of protected premises emergency control (fire safety) functions is automatically initiated by the fire alarm system in response to fire alarm signals. Some emergency control functions can be initiated as a result of nonspecific system alarm signals, while other fire emergency control functions can be initiated only from a specific device or zone (e.g., fire or smoke door release or fans shut down on the floor of fire origin only).

21.1.1 The requirements of Chapters 7, 10, 17, 18, 23, 24, and 26 shall also apply, unless they are in conflict with this chapter.

21.1.2 The requirements of Chapter 14 shall apply.

21.1.3 The requirements of this chapter shall not apply to Chapter 29 unless otherwise noted.

21.2 General

21.2.1* Emergency control functions shall be permitted to be performed automatically.

A.21.2.1 The performance of automatic emergency control functions refers to their normal operation. For instance, it is all right to shut down elevator mainline power when the system has been designed to do so.

21.2.2 The performance of automatic emergency control functions shall not interfere with power for lighting or for operating elevators.

21.2.3 The performance of automatic emergency control functions shall not preclude the combination of fire alarm services with other services requiring monitoring of operations.

21.2.4* Emergency control function interface devices shall be located within 3 ft (1 m) of the component controlling the emergency control function.

A.21.2.4 Emergency control function interface devices can be located far from the device to be activated, such as air-handling units and exhaust fans located on the roof. The requirement for monitoring installation wiring for integrity only applies to the wiring between the fire alarm control unit and the emergency control function interface device. For example, it does not apply to the wiring between the emergency control function interface device and a motor stop/start control relay, or between the emergency control function interface device and the equipment to be controlled (e.g., air-handling units and exhaust fans). The location of the emergency control function interface device within 3 ft (0.9 m) applies to the point of interface and not to remotely located equipment.

FAQ Where must the fire alarm system emergency control function interface device be located?

An emergency control (fire safety) function may involve turning on a fan through the operation of a motor controller located remote from the fan. This action is accomplished through the operation of an emergency control function interface device such as a listed relay connected as an output from the fire alarm system. Subsection 21.2.4 requires this device to be located within 3 ft (1 m) of the component controlling the emergency control function. Thus, the distance between the emergency control function interface device and the fan motor controller cannot exceed 3 ft (1 m). Positioning the emergency control function interface device within 3 ft (1 m) of the fan is unnecessary. However, as the distance between the fan motor controller and the fan increases, so does the potential for interruption of power to the fan.

21.2.5 The emergency control function interface device shall function within the voltage and current limitations of the fire alarm control unit.

The emergency control function interface device is often an auxiliary relay. These relays must be listed specifically to operate with the fire alarm control unit and not be off-the-shelf items from an electronics supply store.

21.2.6 The installation wiring between the fire alarm control unit and the emergency control function interface device shall be Class A, Class B, Class D, or Class X in accordance with Chapter 12.

This subsection has been modified to specify the allowable pathway class designations that can be used for these circuits. In previous editions, the requirement was to monitor the installation wiring for integrity unless the circuit was arranged to perform its function on loss of power (often referred to as "fail-safe" operation). Each of the class designations permitted by 21.2.6, except Class D, includes a provision to annunciate conditions that are adverse to the operation of the circuit or pathway. This change essentially preserves the original requirement and correlates with 21.2.8 and 21.2.11. The Class D designation corresponds to the previous allowance to exclude monitoring for integrity if the circuit operated in a fail-safe manner. Refer to 23.4.3 for requirements related to the designation of pathways for fire alarm system applications. Pathway class designations and their intended performance requirements can be found in Section 12.3.

21.2.7 Emergency control functions shall not interfere with other operations of the fire alarm system.

The requirement in 21.2.7 is similar to the requirements for combination systems. One way to ensure that the emergency control (fire safety) functions do not interfere with other operations of the fire alarm system is to use auxiliary relays listed for use with the fire alarm control unit to isolate the emergency control function from the control unit.

21.2.8 The method(s) of interconnection between the fire alarm system and emergency control function interface device shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with Section 12.6.

21.2.9 The method(s) of interconnection between the emergency control function interface device and the component controlling the emergency control function shall comply with the applicable provisions of *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*.

21.2.10 The method(s) of interconnection between the emergency control function interface device and the component controlling the emergency control function shall be achieved by one of the following recognized means:

(1) Electrical contacts listed for the connected load
(2) Data communications over a signaling line circuit(s) dedicated to the fire alarm or shared with other premises operating systems
(3) Other listed methods

21.2.11 If a fire alarm system is a component of a life safety network and it communicates data to other systems providing life safety functions, or it receives data from such systems, the following shall apply:

(1) The path used for communicating data shall be monitored for integrity. This shall include monitoring the physical communication media and the ability to maintain intelligible communications.
(2) Data received from the network shall not affect the operation of the fire alarm system in any way other than to display the status of life safety network components.
(3) Where non-fire alarm systems are interconnected to the fire alarm system using a network or other digital communication technique, a signal (e.g., heartbeat, poll, ping, query) shall be generated between the fire alarm system and the non-fire alarm system. Failure of the fire alarm system to receive confirmation of the transmission shall cause a trouble signal to indicate within 200 seconds.

The term *life safety network* is defined in 3.3.141 as "a type of combination system that transmits fire safety control data through gateways to other building system control units." Subsection 21.2.11 applies where data are communicated between the fire alarm system and other systems providing life safety functions. This communications path requires a level of monitoring for integrity consistent with that required for other fire alarm circuits.

21.3* Elevator Recall for Fire Fighters' Service

Elevator recall involves removing elevators from normal service by having them automatically travel to a predetermined level upon activation of specific smoke detectors (or other automatic fire detection devices as permitted by 21.3.9). This feature is a requirement of ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, and serves to provide a means of leaving elevator cars in a safe location for passengers to exit and for subsequent use by fire fighters. Some of the signals used for elevator recall are also used to provide appropriate warning to emergency personnel concerning the use of the elevators after they have been recalled.

A.21.3 The terms *machinery space*, *control space*, *machine room*, and *control room* are defined in *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, and ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44.

21.3.1 All initiating devices used to initiate fire fighters' service recall shall be connected to the building fire alarm system.

FAQ The requirement for the installation of initiating devices for elevator recall comes from which code?

The requirements in Section 21.3 apply to the elevator recall functions of the fire alarm system. The requirement to install initiating devices for elevator recall comes from ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44. All initiating devices associated with elevator recall must be connected to the building fire alarm system or, where there is no building fire alarm system, to a dedicated function fire alarm control unit in accordance with 21.3.2.

ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44 requires a fire alarm initiating device at each floor served by the elevator; in the associated elevator machine room, machinery space containing a motor controller or electric driving machine, control space, or control room; and in the elevator hoistway if sprinklers are located in the hoistway. The terms *machinery space*, *control room,* and *control space* are associated with elevators that use *machine-room-less* elevator designs. These machine-room-less designs can have various configurations of elevator controller and equipment locations. These terms are defined and illustrated in ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44. When machine-room-less elevators are used, the elevator code requires a fire alarm initiating device to be installed at these locations. Exhibit 21.1 provides an excerpt from ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44 showing the related elevator recall requirements.

Subsection 21.3.1 uses the term *initiating devices*. The intended type of initiating device for elevator recall is a system-type smoke detector, unless ambient conditions dictate the need for another type of automatic fire detection in accordance with 21.3.9. Refer to the commentary following 21.3.3 for additional discussion.

Some of the requirements in 2.27.3.2 of ANSI/ASME A.17.1/CSA B44 use the phrase "in jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC." The NBCC is the National Building Code of Canada. There are some differences with regard to how the NBCC approaches the actuation of elevator recall by fire alarm initiating devices. Users of the NBCC should consult the NBCC as well as ANSI/ASME A.17.1/CSA B44 rather than *NFPA 72*®, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code,* for fire alarm systems installation and interface requirements.

In addition, some jurisdictions in the United States amend the requirements in ANSI/ASME A.17.1/CSA B44, which should be noted. As an example, the state of Michigan does not permit initiating devices used for elevator recall functions to be connected to the building fire alarm system. System designers should consult with their local enforcing authority to determine if any amendments exist and refer to the specific details of these amendments as a part of the design process.

EXHIBIT 21.1

2.27.3.2 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation by Fire Alarm Initiating Devices

2.27.3.2.1 In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, fire alarm initiating devices used to initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation shall be installed in conformance with the requirements of NFPA 72, and shall be located

(a) at each floor served by the elevator
(b) in the associated elevator machine room, machinery space containing a motor controller or electric driving machine, control space, or control room
(c) in the elevator hoistway, when sprinklers are located in those hoistways

2.27.3.2.2 In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, smoke detectors, or heat detectors in environments not suitable for smoke detectors (fire alarm initiating devices), used to initiate Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, shall be installed in conformance with the requirements of the NBCC, and shall be located

(a) at each floor served by the elevator
(b) in the associated elevator machine room, machinery space containing a motor controller or electric driving machine, control space, or control room

NOTE (2.27.3.2.2): Smoke and heat detectors (fire alarm initiating devices) are referred to as fire detectors in the NBCC. Pull stations are not deemed to be fire detectors.

2.27.3.2.3 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation to the designated level shall conform to the following:

(a) The activation of a fire alarm initiating device specified in 2.27.3.2.1(a) or 2.27.3.2.2(a) at any floor, other than at the designated level, shall cause all elevators that serve that floor, and any associated elevator of a group automatic operation, to be returned nonstop to the designated level.

(b) The activation of a fire alarm initiating device specified in 2.27.3.2.1(b) or 2.27.3.2.2(b) shall cause all elevators having any equipment located in that machine room, and any associated elevators of a group automatic operation, to be returned nonstop to the designated level. If the machine room is located at the designated level, the elevator(s) shall be returned nonstop to the alternate level.

(c) In jurisdictions not enforcing NBCC, the activation of a fire alarm initiating device specified in 2.27.3.2.1(c) shall cause all elevators having any equipment in that hoistway, and any associated elevators of a group automatic operation, to be returned nonstop to the designated level, except that initiating device(s) installed at or below the lowest landing of recall shall cause the car to be sent to the upper recall level.
(d) In jurisdictions enforcing the NBCC, the initiation of a fire detector in the hoistway shall cause all elevators having any equipment in that hoistway, and any associated elevators of a group automatic operation to be returned nonstop to the designated level, except that initiating device(s) installed at or below the lowest landing of recall shall cause the car to be sent to the upper recall level.
(e) The Phase I Emergency Recall Operation to the designated level shall conform to 2.27.3.1.6(a) through (n).

2.27.3.2.4 Phase I Emergency Recall Operation to an alternate level (see 1.3) shall conform to the following:

(a) the activation of a fire alarm initiating device specified in 2.27.3.2.1(a) or 2.27.3.2.2(b) that is located at the designated level, shall cause all elevators serving that level to be recalled to an alternate level, unless Phase I Emergency Recall is in effect

(b) the requirements of 2.27.3.1.6(f), (j), (m), and (n)

(c) the requirements of 2.27.3.1.6(a), (b), (c), (d), (e), (g), (h), (i), (k), and (l), except that all references to the "designated level" shall be replaced with "alternate level"

2.27.3.2.5 The recall level shall be determined by the first activated fire alarm initiating device for that group (see 2.27.3.2.1 or 2.27.3.2.2).

If the car(s) is recalled to the designated level by the "FIRE RECALL" switch(es) [see also 2.27.3.1.6(j)], the recall level shall remain the designated level.

2.27.3.2.6 When a fire alarm initiating device in the machine room, control space, control room, or hoistway initiates Phase I Emergency Recall Operation, as required by 2.27.3.2.3 or 2.27.3.2.4, the visual signal [see 2.27.3.1.6(h) and Fig. 2.27.3.1.6(h)] shall illuminate intermittently only in a car(s) with equipment in that machine room, control space, control room, or hoistway.

Elevator Recall Requirements. [Excerpt from ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44] (Reprinted from ANSI/ASME A17.1-2010/CSA B44-10 by permission of The American Society of Mechanical Engineers. All rights reserved)

21.3.2* In facilities without a building fire alarm system, initiating devices used to initiate fire fighters' service recall shall be connected to a dedicated function fire alarm control unit that shall be designated as "elevator recall control and supervisory control unit," permanently identified on the dedicated function fire alarm control unit and on the record drawings.

A.21.3.2 In facilities without a building alarm system, dedicated function fire alarm control units are required by 21.3.2 for elevator recall in order that the elevator recall systems be monitored for integrity and have primary and secondary power meeting the requirements of this Code.

The fire alarm control unit used for this purpose should be located in an area that is normally occupied and should have audible and visible indicators to annunciate supervisory (elevator recall) and trouble conditions; however, no form of general occupant notification or evacuation signal is required or intended by 21.3.2.

Where elevator recall is required in buildings that do not have and are not required to have a fire alarm system, a fire alarm control unit designated and permanently labeled as the "Elevator Recall Control and Supervisory Control Unit" must be used. This control unit serves the initiating devices used for elevator recall or shutdown and is intended solely to provide signals to the elevator controller for elevator recall or shutdown. Installation of this dedicated function fire alarm control unit does not trigger the need to install any additional alarm-initiating devices other than those specifically required by *NFPA 72*.

The elevator recall control and supervisory control unit should be placed in an area that is constantly attended for monitoring, especially when it is installed as a stand-alone control.

21.3.3 Unless otherwise required by the authority having jurisdiction, only the elevator lobby, elevator hoistway, and elevator machine room smoke detectors, or other automatic fire detection as permitted by 21.3.9, shall be used to recall elevators for fire fighters' service.

Exception: A waterflow switch shall be permitted to initiate elevator recall upon activation of a sprinkler installed at the bottom of the elevator hoistway (the elevator pit), provided the waterflow switch and pit sprinkler are installed on a separately valved sprinkler line dedicated solely for protecting the elevator pit, and the waterflow switch is provided without time-delay capability.

In accordance with 21.3.3, unless otherwise required by the authority having jurisdiction, the only fire alarm initiating devices permitted to initiate elevator recall are the following:

- Elevator lobby, elevator hoistway, and elevator machine room smoke detectors
- Other automatic fire detection devices as permitted by 21.3.9
- Sprinkler waterflow switches installed to actuate from the operation of a sprinkler installed in the elevator pit, provided that the conditions of the exception are met

While 21.3.3 uses the more traditional term *elevator machine room*, some elevators now being installed are machine-room-less elevators, and ANSI/ASME A.17.1/CSA B44 requires fire alarm initiating devices to be installed in the associated spaces for these types of elevators. These spaces include the elevator machinery space, elevator control space, and elevator control room and are identified in 21.3.11. Where elevator configurations include these spaces, it is intended that smoke detectors, or other automatic fire detection devices as permitted by 21.3.9, be installed.

The exception to 21.3.3 was added in the 2013 edition to allow the use of waterflow switches to initiate elevator recall when sprinklers are located in the elevator pit. (Refer to the commentary following A.21.3.7 for a discussion of when automatic sprinklers are needed in the elevator hoistway, including the elevator pit.) This exception does not apply to applications of sprinklers protecting the top of the elevator hoistway. In addition, where the conditions of installation require elevator shutdown because of sprinklers located in the elevator pit, the use of a waterflow switch for elevator recall might not be advisable. Elevator shutdown is required to occur upon or prior to activation of the sprinklers. The use of a waterflow switch for elevator recall in that situation might have little effect, since power could be removed from the elevator at the same time. Refer to the commentary following Section 21.4 and 21.4.1 for a discussion of the need for elevator shutdown and the intended sequence of operation.

21.3.4 Each initiating device used to initiate fire fighters' service recall shall be capable of initiating elevator recall when all other devices on the same initiating device circuit have been manually or automatically placed in the alarm condition.

Some systems cannot guarantee that the individual smoke detector or relay responsible for initiating recall will be able to actuate if other devices on the circuit have already actuated. This concern is prevalent with conventional (i.e., zoned) fire alarm systems, specifically 2-wire initiating device circuits where the power for the devices (i.e., smoke detector or relay responsible for initiating recall) is carried over the same pair of wires as the monitoring for initiation. In many cases testing laboratories and listing agencies will only permit a quantity of one conventional 2-wire smoke detector with a relay base to be on an initiating device circuit because of this reason.

Unless the smoke detectors are installed on individual initiating device circuits without any other fire alarm devices installed on those circuits, the smoke detectors should be powered separately from the initiating device circuit. Smoke detectors installed on most signaling line circuits will not be affected.

21.3.5* A lobby smoke detector shall be located on the ceiling within 21 ft (6.4 m) of the centerline of each elevator door within the elevator bank under control of the detector.

Exception: For lobby ceiling configurations exceeding 15 ft (4.6 m) in height or that are other than flat and smooth, detector locations shall be determined in accordance with Chapter 17.

A.21.3.5 Smoke detectors should not be installed in outdoor locations or locations that are open to the weather (such as unenclosed elevator lobbies in open parking structures), because such environments can exceed the parameters of the detector listing and can result in unwanted alarms. *(See 21.3.9.)*

FAQ What is the basis of the 21 ft (6.4 m) requirement in 21.3.5?

The spacing rules for smoke detectors in Chapter 17 require that for smooth ceilings, all points along the ceiling have a smoke detector within 0.7 times the selected spacing of the detector. On smooth ceilings, 17.7.3.2.3.1 requires a nominal spacing of 30 ft (9.1 m) (unless performance-based criteria require something different). The value of 21 ft (6.4 m) specified in 21.3.5 correlates with this spacing (30 ft × 0.7 = 21 ft) and ensures that a smoke detector will be within 21 ft (6.4 m) of the centerline of the elevator door. High or non-smooth ceilings may require a different spacing. The Code does not require that the smoke detector be located immediately adjacent to the elevator doors. The Code also does not require that an individual smoke detector be provided for each elevator in a bank of elevators, as long as a detector is within 21 ft (6.4 m) of the centerline of each door. See Exhibit 21.2 for an illustration of the 21 ft (6.4 m) rule.

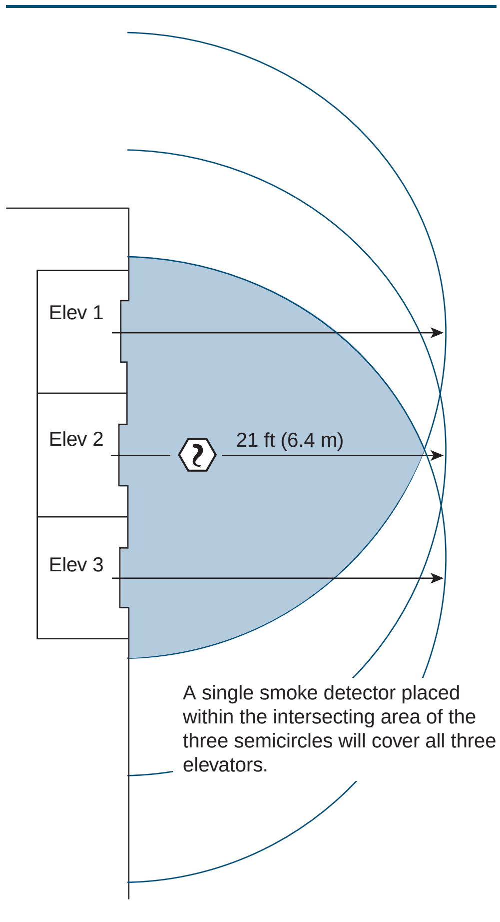
The exception to 21.3.5 directs users to Chapter 17 for detector locations where ceiling configurations are other than level, smooth ceilings and where ceiling heights exceed 15 ft (4.5 m). Subsection 17.4.10 addresses situations such as elevator lobbies with high ceilings. It permits locating smoke detectors in close proximity to an object or a space if it is the intent that action be initiated when smoke or fire threatens that object or space [e.g., on the wall above and within 60 in. (1.52 m) from the top of the elevator door(s)]. Refer to A.17.4.10 for further explanation.

21.3.6 Smoke detectors shall not be installed in unsprinklered elevator hoistways unless they are installed to activate the elevator hoistway smoke relief equipment.

Subsection 21.3.6 specifically prohibits the installation of smoke detectors in elevator hoistways unless the hoistway is protected by an automatic sprinkler system or unless they are required to activate hoistway smoke relief equipment. If sprinklers are installed in the hoistway, then the smoke detector (or other automatic fire detection) is needed to provide the required

EXHIBIT 21.2

The 21 ft (6.4 m) Rule.



recall feature. Refer to the commentary following A.21.3.7 for a discussion of when automatic sprinklers are needed in the elevator hoistway.

Although 17.5.3.1 mentions elevator hoistways as one of the areas where detection must be installed where total coverage is specified, smoke detectors installed in hoistways might require continuous maintenance and could be a common source of false or nuisance alarms. If total coverage is the fire protection design goal, then the hoistway could be protected by a heat detector(s) to meet that goal or smoke detectors that are specifically listed for the environment (see 21.3.8).

21.3.7* When sprinklers are installed in elevator pits, automatic fire detection shall be installed to initiate elevator recall in accordance with 2.27.3.2.1(c) of ANSI/ASME A.17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators,* and the following shall apply:

(1) Where sprinklers are located above the lowest level of recall, the fire detection device shall be located at the top of the hoistway.
(2) Where sprinklers are located in the bottom of the hoistway (the pit), fire detection device(s) shall be installed in the pit in accordance with Chapter 17.
(3) Outputs to the elevator controller(s) shall comply with 21.3.14.

A.21.3.7 This requirement applies to smoke and heat detectors installed in the hoistway. It is important to note that the hoistway includes the pit. The location of smoke or heat detectors will, most likely, require special consideration in order to provide the intended response of early detection of fire in the elevator pit. The location of these detectors will likely need to be below the lowest level of recall in order to provide an adequate response. Since there is no real ceiling at this location to allow installation using the spacing provisions of Chapter 17, the provisions of 17.7.3.1.3 and 17.4.10 should be considered, which allows detectors to be placed closer to the hazard in a position where the detector can intercept the smoke or heat. Also refer to A.21.3.14.2(3).

The provisions in 21.3.7 address the location of initiating devices when sprinklers are installed in the elevator pit. The need to have sprinklers installed in the elevator hoistway, including the elevator pit, is established by the requirements in 8.15.5 of NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*. See Exhibit 21.3 for an excerpt from NFPA 13.

The requirements in 8.15.5 of NFPA 13 prescribe two basic locations for sprinklers in the elevator hoistway: the bottom of the hoistway (the elevator pit) and the top of the hoistway (see 8.15.5.1 and 8.15.5.5, respectively). The related paragraphs in 8.15.5 include detailed conditions that affect whether or not sprinklers are actually needed in these locations. Many of these provisions are new for the 2013 edition of NFPA 13. Those involved with the design of fire alarm systems used for elevator recall and shutdown should consult with the design professionals responsible for the sprinkler system installation to determine what sprinklers will actually be provided for a given application.

FAQ Are automatic fire detectors required to be installed in elevator pits?

If sprinklers are installed in the elevator hoistway, ANSI/ASME A.17.1/CSA B44 requires fire alarm initiating devices to be installed in the hoistway to initiate elevator recall. An important note is that the elevator "pit" is part of the hoistway. ANSI/ASME A.17.1/CSA B44 defines *hoistway* as follows:

. . . hoistway (shaft), elevator, dumbwaiter, or material lift: an opening through a building or structure for the travel of elevators, dumbwaiters, or material lifts, extending from the pit floor to the roof or floor above. . . .

Therefore, if sprinklers are located in the elevator pit, automatic fire detection initiating devices are required to initiate elevator recall and, in accordance with 21.3.7, must be located in the elevator pit. For years fire protection professionals have been hesitant to install detection devices in elevator pits, stating that "they are not required" or "the environment is unacceptable for detectors." The provisions in 21.3.7 make it clear that automatic fire detection devices are required to initiate elevator recall when sprinklers are installed in the elevator pit, even if sprinklers are not located at the top of the hoistway. The requirement in 21.3.14.2(3) correlates with the requirements of ANSI/ASME A.17.1/CSA B44 and applies in cases where initiating devices are located below the lowest level of recall. The purpose of this important provision is so that the elevator will be recalled up and away from the fire hazard in the pit. The exception to 21.3.3 was added to allow the use of waterflow switches to meet this detection requirement. However, refer to the cautionary commentary following 21.3.3 if elevator shutdown is also required.

21.3.8* Smoke detectors shall not be installed in elevator pits to initiate elevator recall unless the smoke detector is listed for the environment.

The environment in elevator hoistways and especially in elevator pits is generally not suitable for the installation of most smoke detectors. However, some smoke detectors are designed and listed for installation in such environments and can be installed in those locations.

EXHIBIT 21.3

8.15.5 Elevator Hoistways and Machine Rooms.

8.15.5.1* Sidewall spray sprinklers shall be installed at the bottom of each elevator hoistway not more than 2 ft (0.61 m) above the floor of the pit.

A.8.15.5.1 The sprinklers in the pit are intended to protect against fires caused by debris, which can accumulate over time. Ideally, the sprinklers should be located near the side of the pit below the elevator doors, where most debris accumulates. However, care should be taken that the sprinkler location does not interfere with the elevator toe guard, which extends below the face of the door opening.

8.15.5.2 The sprinkler required at the bottom of the elevator hoistway by 8.15.5.1 shall not be required for enclosed, noncombustible elevator shafts that do not contain combustible hydraulic fluids.

8.15.5.3 Automatic fire sprinklers shall not be required in elevator machine rooms and elevator machinery spaces, control spaces or hoistways of traction elevators installed in accordance with the applicable provisions in NFPA *101*, or the applicable building code,where all of the following conditions are met:

(1) The elevator machine room, machinery space, control room, control room, control space or hoistway of traction elevator is dedicated to elevator equipment only.

(2) The elevator machine room, machine room, machinery space, control room, control space or hoistway of traction elevator are protected by smoke detectors, or other automatic fire detection, installed in accordance with *NFPA* 72.

(3) The elevator machinery space, control room, control space or hoistway of traction elevators is separated from the remainder of the building by walls and floor/ceiling or roof/ceiling assemblies having a fire resistance rating of not less than that specified by the applicable building code.

(4) No materials unrelated to elevator equipment are permitted to be stored in elevator machine rooms, machinery spaces, control rooms, control spaces or hoistways of traction elevators.

(5) The elevator machinery is not of the hydraulic type.

8.15.5.4* Automatic sprinklers in elevator machine rooms or at the tops of hoistways shall be of ordinary- or intermediate-temperature rating.

A.8.15.5.4 ASME A17.1, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators,* requires the shutdown of power to the elevator upon or prior to the application of water in elevator machine rooms or hoistways. This shutdown can be accomplished by a detection system with sufficient sensitivity that operates prior to the activation of the sprinklers (*see also NFPA 72, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*). As an alternative, the system can be arranged using devices or sprinklers capable of effecting power shutdown immediately upon sprinkler activation, such as a waterfow switch without a time delay. This alternative arrangement is intended to interrupt power before significant sprinkler discharge.

8.15.5.5* Upright, pendent, or sidewall spray sprinklers shall be installed at the top of elevator hoistways.

A.8.15.5.5 Passenger elevator cars that have been constructed in accordance with ASME A17.1, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators,* Rule 204.2a (under A17.1a-1985 and later editions of the code) have limited combustibility. Materials exposed to the interior of the car and the hoistway, in their end-use composition, are limited to a flame spread index of 0 to 75 and a smoke developed index of 0 to 450, when tested in accordance with ASTM E 84, *Standard Test Method of Surface Burning Characteristics of Building Materials*.

8.15.5.6 The sprinkler required at the top of the elevator hoistway by 8.15.5.5 shall not be required where the hoistway for passenger elevators is noncombustible or limited-combustible and the car enclosure materials meet the requirements of ASME A17.1, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators.*

Elevator Hoistways and Machine Rooms. [Excerpt from NFPA 13, 2013 edition]

A.21.3.8 It should be noted that smoke detectors installed in hoistways can be a source of nuisance activation. Therefore, hoistways need smoke detectors specifically intended for those types of spaces (environments).

21.3.9* If ambient conditions prohibit installation of automatic smoke detection, other automatic fire detection shall be permitted.

Some elevator lobbies, hoistways, and machine rooms are not suitable environments for the installation of spot-type smoke detectors. Dust, dirt, humidity, and temperature extremes may exceed the operating parameters of the smoke detector. Unheated parking garages normally have elevators, but a spot-type smoke detector installed in the lobby would likely experience problems due to vehicle exhaust, dust, dirt, humidity, and temperature extremes. The intent of 21.3.9 is to prevent nuisance alarms from smoke detectors installed in such areas. Another type of fire detector may be substituted for a smoke detector where the authority having jurisdiction or another code requires detection in an area with ambient conditions unsuitable for a smoke detector. Also refer to 21.3.8.

A.21.3.9 The objective of Phase I Emergency Recall Operation is to have the elevator automatically return to the recall level before fire can affect the safe operation of the elevator. This includes both the safe mechanical operation of the elevator, as well as the delivery of passengers to a safe lobby location. Where ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, specifies the use of smoke detectors, these devices are expected to provide the earliest response to situations that would require Phase I Emergency Recall Operations. The use of other automatic fire detection is only intended where smoke detection would not be appropriate due to the environment. Where ambient conditions prohibit the installation of smoke detectors, the selection and location of other automatic fire detection should be evaluated to ensure the best response is achieved. When heat detectors are used, consideration should be given to both detector temperature and time lag characteristics. The consideration of a low temperature rating alone might not provide the earliest response.

21.3.10 When actuated, any detector that has initiated fire fighters' recall shall also be annunciated at the building fire alarm control unit, or other fire alarm control unit as described in 21.3.2, and at required remote annunciators.

21.3.11 Actuation from the elevator hoistway, elevator machine room, elevator machinery space, elevator control space, or elevator control room smoke detectors, or other automatic fire detection as permitted by 21.3.9, shall cause separate and distinct visible annunciation at the building fire alarm control unit, or the fire alarm control unit described in 21.3.2, and at required annunciators to alert fire fighters and other emergency personnel that the elevators are no longer safe to use.

The Code requires that the elevator hoistway smoke detector (if one is present) and the elevator machine room, elevator machinery space, elevator control space, or elevator control room smoke detector(s) be connected to the building fire alarm control unit or the elevator recall control and supervisory control unit. Also any required annunciator is required to cause a separate and distinct indication to alert emergency responders that the elevators may no longer be safe to use. This requirement also correlates with the requirement in 21.3.14.3 for the elevator visual warning signal.

21.3.12 Where approved by the authority having jurisdiction, the detectors used to initiate elevator recall shall be permitted to initiate a supervisory signal in lieu of an alarm signal.

21.3.13 Where lobby detectors are used for other than initiating elevator recall, the signal initiated by the detector shall also initiate an alarm signal.

Signals from fire alarm initiating devices fall in the category of alarm signals. With the permission of the authority having jurisdiction, 21.3.12 permits signals used to initiate elevator recall to be supervisory signals unless, in accordance with 21.3.13, the signal is also used for something else, such as part of an open area protection system. This allowance is provided to minimize the nuisance alarms from smoke detectors in these areas. This option should be used only where trained personnel are constantly in attendance and can immediately respond to the supervisory signal. A means should be provided to initiate the fire alarm signal if investigation of the supervisory signal indicates that building evacuation is necessary.

21.3.14* Separate outputs from the fire alarm systems to the elevator controller(s) shall be provided to implement elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation in accordance with Section 2.27 of ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, as required in 21.3.14.1 through 21.3.14.3.

A.21.3.14 It is recommended that the installation be in accordance with Figure A.21.3.14(a) and Figure A.21.3.14(b). Figure A.21.3.14(a) should be used where the elevator is installed at

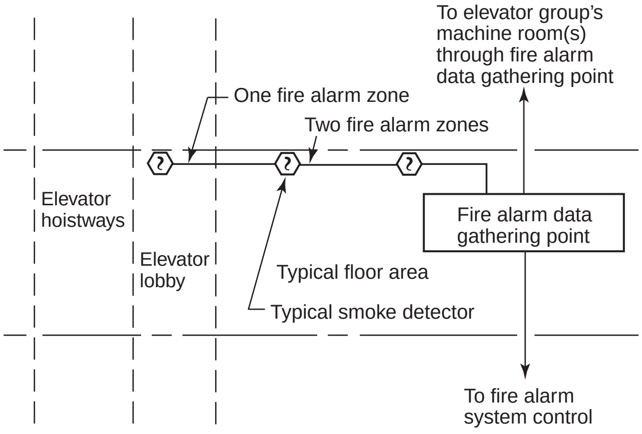


FIGURE A.21.3.14(a) *Elevator Zone — Elevator and Fire Alarm System Installed at Same Time.*

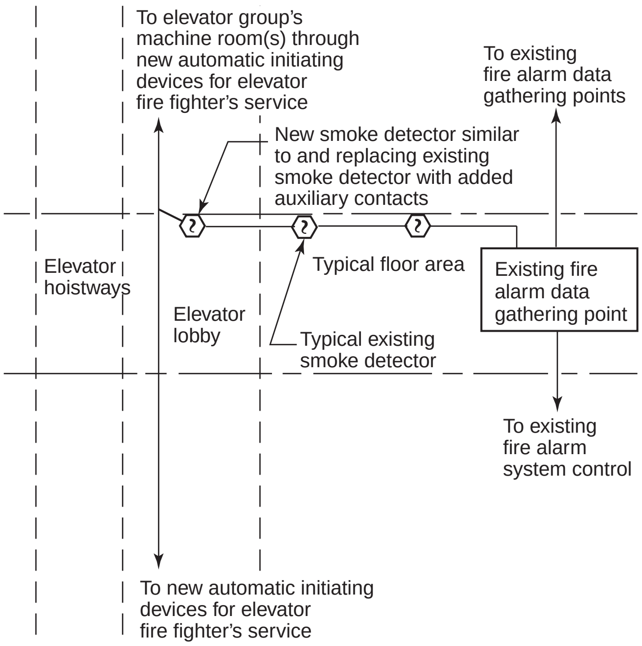


FIGURE A.21.3.14(b) *Elevator Zone — Elevator Installed After Fire Alarm System.*

the same time as the building fire alarm system. Figure A.21.3.14(b) should be used where the elevator is installed after the building fire alarm system.

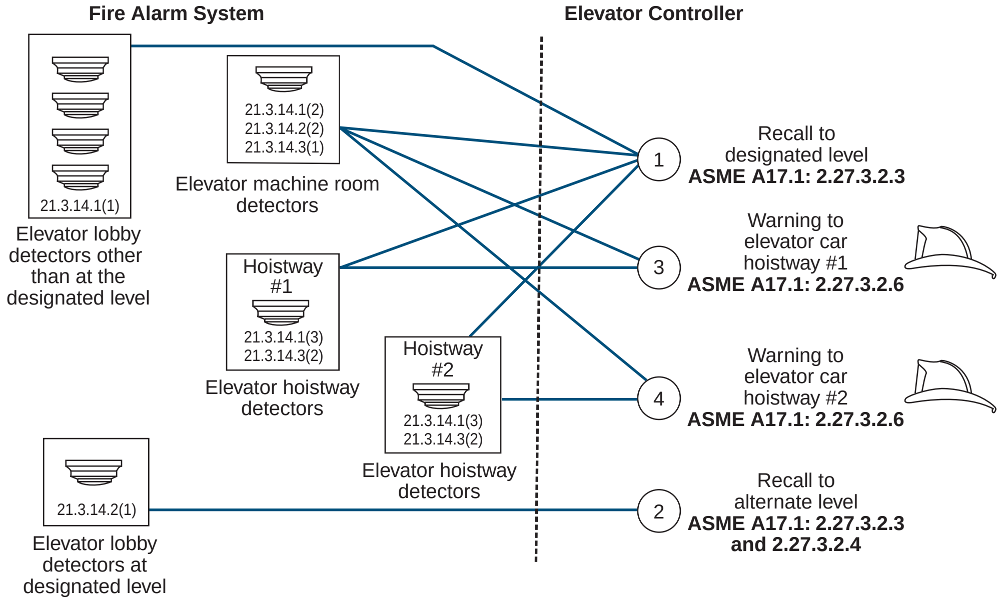
Subsection 21.3.14 addresses requirements for fire alarm system outputs to the elevator controller(s) and correlates with the requirements of ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44. This subsection is divided into three subparagraphs to address the three basic outputs involved: designated level recall, alternate level recall, and visual warning indicator. The rules given in ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, Sections 2.27.3.2.3 and 2.27.3.2.4, specify the conditions required to cause recall to the designated level or to the alternate level. As indicated in ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, Section 2.27.3.2.5, the location of the initial alarm-initiating device actuated determines which of the two recall levels will be used. Requirements for the elevator visual warning indicator are provided in ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, Section 2.27.3.2.6. Refer to Exhibit 21.1 for an excerpt of the related ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44 rules.

FAQ How are the designated and alternate levels determined?

As a point of information, the building code or enforcement authority assigns which floors are to be used as the "designated level" and the "alternate level." Note that the designated level is usually, but might not always be, the lowest recall level.

In the commentary following 21.3.14.1, 21.3.14.2, and 21.3.14.3, it might be helpful to refer to Exhibit 21.4. This exhibit shows a typical arrangement in which the designated level is the lowest recall level, the machine room is not located at the designated level, and the hoistway initiating devices are not at or below the designated level. (Note: This exhibit is intended to show the relationship of signals and should not be used as a wiring diagram.)

EXHIBIT 21.4



Note: NFPA 72, NFPA 13, and ASME A17.1 must be used jointly.

Detectors for Control of Elevator. (Source: SimplexGrinnell, Westminster, MA)

21.3.14.1 Designated Level Recall. For each elevator or group of elevators, an output shall be provided to signal elevator recall to the designated level in response to the following:

(1) Activation of smoke detectors, or other automatic fire detection as permitted by 21.3.9, located at any elevator lobby served by the elevator(s) other than the lobby at the designated level
(2) Activation of smoke detectors, or other automatic fire detection as permitted by 21.3.9, located at any elevator machine room, elevator machinery space, elevator control space, or elevator control room serving the elevator(s), except where such rooms or spaces are located at the designated level
(3) Activation of smoke detectors, or other automatic fire detection as permitted by 21.3.9, located in the elevator hoistway serving the elevator where sprinklers are located in the hoistway, unless otherwise specified in 21.3.14.2(3)

The fire alarm system output for designated level recall is required when any of the three conditions described in 21.3.14.1(1) through 21.3.14.1(3) occur. These conditions relate to ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, Section 2.27.3.2.1(a), (b), and (c), as shown in Exhibit 21.1.

21.3.14.2 Alternate Level Recall. For each elevator or group of elevators, an output shall be provided to signal elevator recall to the alternate level in response to the following:

(1) Activation of smoke detectors, or automatic fire detection as permitted by 21.3.9, located at the designated level lobby served by the elevator(s)
(2) Activation of smoke detectors, or other automatic fire detection as permitted by 21.3.9, located in the elevator machine room, elevator machinery space, elevator control space, or elevator control room serving the elevator(s) if such rooms or spaces are located at the designated level

(3)* Activation of the initiating devices identified in 21.3.14.1(3) if they are installed at or below the lowest level of recall in the elevator hoistway and the alternate level is located above the designated level

The fire alarm system output for alternate level recall is required when any of the three conditions described in 21.3.14.2(1) through 21.3.14.2(3) occur. The first two conditions are similar to those of 21.3.14.1(1) and 21.3.14.1(2), except that they apply where the locations are at the dedicated level. The condition in 21.3.14.2(3) is somewhat unique in that it applies where initiating devices are installed in the hoistway below the lowest level of recall and the lowest level of recall is the designated level. Paragraph A.21.3.14.2(3) provides further explanation concerning this condition.

With regard to 21.3.14.1(3), the installation in hoistways of smoke detectors, or other automatic fire detection as permitted by 21.3.9, depends on whether or not sprinklers are located in the hoistways. The need to have sprinklers in a hoistway is determined by the requirements of NFPA 13. Refer to Exhibit 21.3 for an excerpt from NFPA 13 and the related commentary following A.21.3.7.

A.21.3.14.2(3) Where initiating devices are located in the elevator hoistway at or below the lowest level of recall, ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, requires that the elevator be sent to the upper recall level. Note that the lowest level of recall could be the designated level or alternate level as determined by the local authority for the particular installation. Also note that the elevator hoistway, as defined in ASME A17.1, includes the elevator pit.

• **21.3.14.3* Visual Warning.** For each elevator or group of elevators, an output(s) shall be provided for the elevator visual warning signal in response to the following:

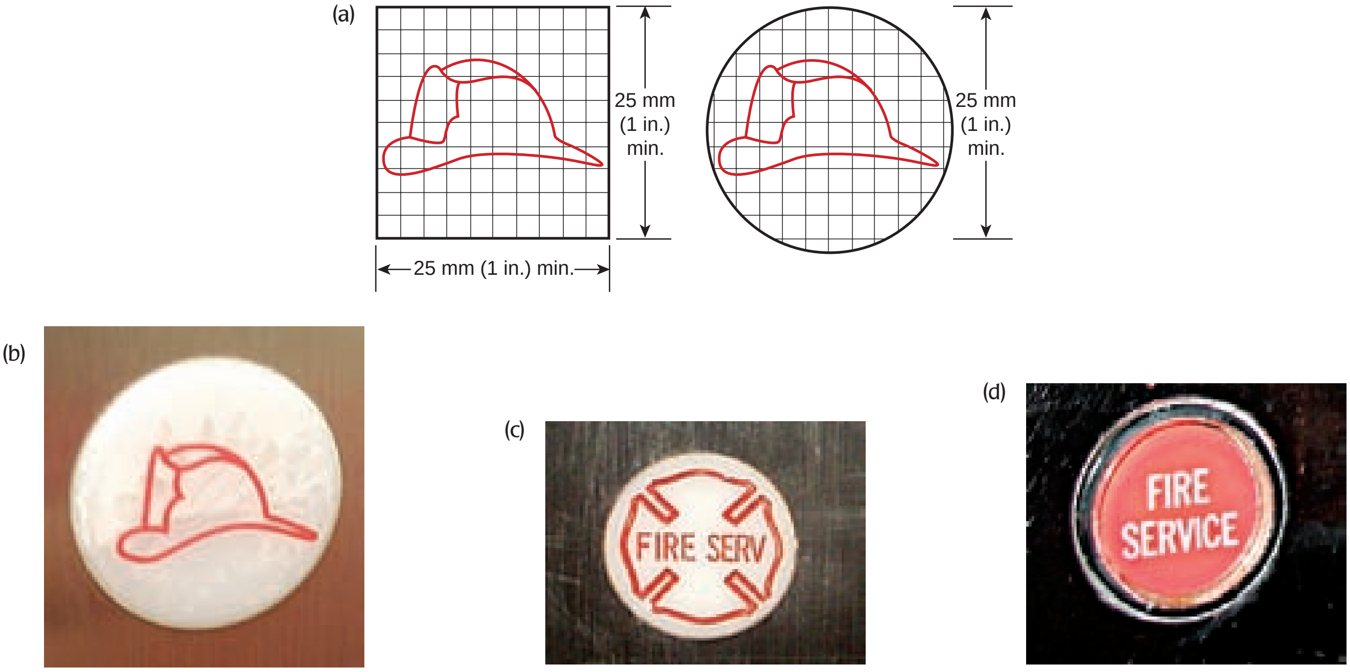
(1) Activation of the elevator machine room, elevator machinery space, elevator control space, or elevator control room initiating devices identified in 21.3.14.1(2) or 21.3.14.2(2)
(2) Activation of the elevator hoistway initiating devices identified in 21.3.14.1(3) or 21.3.14.2(3)

A.21.3.14.3 ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, requires differentiation between separate hoistways that share a common elevator machine room. For instance, in a situation where there is more than one single hoistway sharing the same elevator machine room, a separate signal must be derived from each hoistway.

Each elevator car is equipped with a special visual signal in the form of a fire fighter's fire hat. The fire hat illuminates whenever the elevator is on Phase I Emergency Recall Operation. However, when recall is initiated by an initiating device located in the elevator machine room, machinery space, control space, control room, or hoistway, the fire hat illuminates intermittently (flashes) as a warning to fire fighters that conditions in these locations could be adverse to the continued operation of the elevator. Fire fighters are permitted to use their own judgment as to whether to continue to use the elevator based on their knowledge of fire conditions. This function is often referred to as "flashing hat" in the fire protection industry.

In ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, Section 2.27.3.1.6(h) and Figure 2.27.3.1.6(h), shown in Exhibit 21.5 part (a), provide the requirements for the appearance of the fire fighter's fire hat symbol, shown in Exhibit 21.5 part (b). Older elevator cars or those that are located in jurisdictions with other requirements might have a different symbol that is located in the elevator car, such as a "Maltese cross" or a "fire service" symbol, shown respectively in Exhibit 21.5 parts (c) and (d). Although these symbols appear different from Figure 2.27.3.1.6(h), they should function in the same manner.

EXHIBIT 21.5



Visual Symbols. (a) Fire Fighter's Hat Symbol. (Source: ANSI/ASME A17.1a/CSA B44a, Figure 2.27.3.1.6(h) Visual Signal); (b) Fire Fighter's Hat Symbol; (c) Maltese Cross Symbol; and (d) Fire Service Symbol.

21.4 Elevator Shutdown

FAQ What is the purpose of elevator shutdown?

Provisions must be made to automatically disconnect power to the elevator (elevator shutdown) upon or prior to the application of water wherever a sprinkler system is installed in the elevator machine room, machinery space, control space, control room, or hoistway, as specified in 2.8.3.3 of ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44. An excerpt of this rule is shown in Exhibit 21.6.

The primary purpose of elevator shutdown is to avoid the potential hazards of a wet elevator braking system and other effects. If the elevator brakes are wet and cannot hold, the elevator can potentially move uncontrolled to the top or bottom of the hoistway, depending on the load in the car and the type of elevator control system.

A secondary concern is that an electrical safety circuit or elevator control circuit could get shorted due to the application of water, causing the elevator to operate erratically.

As shown in the excerpt 2.8.3.3.2 in Exhibit 21.6, a means is required to automatically disconnect main-line power to the affected elevator in situations where "elevator equipment is located or its enclosure is configured such that application of water from sprinklers could cause unsafe elevator operation." The need to have sprinklers in the elevator machine room, machinery space, control space, control room, or hoistway comes from the requirements of NFPA 13. Refer to Exhibit 21.3 for an excerpt of NFPA 13 and to the related commentary following A.21.3.7 for a discussion regarding the need for sprinklers in the elevator hoistway. It is important to remember that the elevator pit is part of the hoistway and sprinklers may be required at the bottom of the hoistway (the elevator pit) even though they may not be required at the top of the hoistway.

If sprinklers are installed, especially in the hoistway, the determination of what configurations are at risk of unsafe elevator operation will likely depend on the specific installation arrangement and require the consultation with the parties involved: the fire protection system designer, the elevator equipment service company of record, the authority having jurisdiction (the fire marshal, the state elevator inspector, the building department, etc.). In the 2004 and earlier editions of ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, this question was answered more prescriptively for sprinklers in the hoistway; it only applied if sprinklers were installed more than 24 in. (600 mm) above the pit floor. This was changed to the more general provision shown in 2.8.3.3.2 to reflect the broader range of equipment locations that can occur for machine-room-less elevators.

With regard to the need for sprinklers in the elevator machine room, machinery space, control space, and control room, it should be noted that revisions in the 2013 edition of NFPA 13 may affect the need for sprinklers in these locations.

EXHIBIT 21.6

Disconnection Requirement. [Excerpt from ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44] (Reprinted from ANSI/ASME A17.1-2010/CSA B44-10 by permission of The American Society of Mechanical Engineers. All rights reserved)

2.8.3.3 Sprinkler systems conforming to NFPA 13 or the NBCC, whichever is applicable (see Part 9), shall be permitted to be installed in the hoistway, machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room subject to 2.8.3.3.1 through 2.8.3.3.4.

2.8.3.3.1 All risers shall be located outside these spaces. Branch lines in the hoistway shall supply sprinklers at not more than one floor level. When the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room is located above the roof of the building, risers and branch lines for these sprinklers shall be permitted to be located in the hoistway between the top floor and the machinery space, machine room, control space, or control room.

2.8.3.3.2 In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, where elevator equipment is located or its enclosure is configured such that application of water from sprinklers could cause unsafe elevator operation, means shall be provided to automatically disconnect the main line power supply to the affected elevator and any other power supplies used to move the elevator upon or prior to the application of water.

(a) This means shall be independent of the elevator control and shall not be self-resetting.

(b) Heat detectors and sprinkler flow switches used to initiate main line elevator power shutdown shall comply with the requirements of NFPA 72.

(c) The activation of sprinklers outside of such locations shall not disconnect the main line elevator power supply. See also 2.27.3.3.6.

2.8.3.3.3 Smoke detectors shall not be used to activate sprinklers in these spaces or to disconnect the main line power supply.

2.8.3.3.4 In jurisdictions not enforcing the NBCC, when sprinklers are installed not more than 600 mm (24 in.) above the pit floor, 2.8.3.3.4(a) and (b) apply to elevator electrical equipment and wiring in the hoistway located less than 1 200 mm (48 in.) above the pit floor, except earthquake protective devices conforming to 8.4.10.1.2(d); and on the exterior of the car at the point where the car platform sill and the lowest landing hoistway door sill are in vertical alignment.

(a) Elevator electrical equipment shall be weatherproof (Type 4 as specified in NEMA 250).

(b) Elevator wiring, except traveling cables, shall be identified for use in wet locations in accordance with the requirements in NFPA 70.

21.4.1* Where heat detectors are used to shut down elevator power prior to sprinkler operation, the detector shall have both a lower temperature rating and a higher sensitivity as compared to the sprinkler.

While elevator shutdown is a separate function from elevator recall, the implicit relationship between the two functions is important to understand. Ideally, elevator recall should be completed before elevator shutdown occurs. The expected sequence is that the fire alarm initiating device used to initiate elevator recall, typically a smoke detector, would operate well in advance of the initiating device used to initiate elevator shutdown, typically a heat detector or waterflow initiating device. The initiating devices permitted for elevator recall are outlined in 21.3.3. The initiation devices permitted for elevator shutdown are not similarly prescribed. However, ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44 prohibits the use of smoke detectors to initiate elevator shutdown. In any case, it is important that, no matter what devices are used, their operation results in the expected sequence for recall and then shutdown (if needed). Adding to the complexity of this arrangement is the requirement that elevator shutdown occur upon or before associated sprinkler activation. Thus, when selecting equipment for these functions, the correct timing of events needs to be considered to the extent possible so that all three conditions are met.

The provisions in 21.4.1 and 21.4.2 for heat detector selection and placement intend to ensure that shutdown occurs upon or prior to sprinkler activation. Smoke detectors in the related area that are used to initiate elevator recall are assumed to respond in advance of heat detector or sprinkler activation. When another device is used in lieu of a smoke detector for elevator recall, as permitted by 21.3.9, it is very important to consider the intended sequence of operation when selecting and locating these devices to result in proper timing. Also see A.21.3.9.

Even with careful design, equipment selection, and placement, the possibility exists that initiation of elevator shutdown could occur prior to completion of elevator recall. This could potentially entrap elevator passengers. Refer to the commentary following A.21.4.2 for further discussion of this concern.

A.21.4.1 When determining desired performance, consideration should be given to the temperature and time lag characteristics of both the sprinkler head and the heat detector to ensure as much as possible that the heat detector will operate prior to the sprinkler head, because a lower temperature rating alone might not provide earlier response. The listed spacing rating of the heat detector should be 25 ft (7.6 m) or greater.

A seldom understood concept is that a 135°F (57.2°C) heat detector may not respond before a 165°F (73°C) sprinkler head despite the obvious differences in temperature rating. The response time of a heat detector or sprinkler head is based on the response time index (RTI) of each device. The RTI must be known before the design and installation of heat detectors for elevator shutdown. Until the RTI for heat detectors is readily available, a sensitive fixed-temperature heat detector with a listed spacing equal to or greater than 25 ft (7.6 m) must be used.

21.4.2* If heat detectors are used to shut down elevator power prior to sprinkler operation, they shall be placed within 24 in. (610 mm) of each sprinkler head and be installed in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 17. Alternatively, engineering methods, such as those specified in Annex B, shall be permitted to be used to select and place heat detectors to ensure response prior to any sprinkler head operation under a variety of fire growth rate scenarios.

A.21.4.2 Upon activation of the heat detector used for elevator power shutdown, there can be a delay in the activation of the power shunt trip. When such a delay is used, it is recommended that the delay should be approximately the time that it takes the elevator car to travel from the top of the hoistway to the lowest recall level. The purpose of the delay of the shunt trip is to increase the potential for elevators to complete their travel to the recall level. It is important to be aware that the requirements of A17.1/B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, relative to sprinkler water release and power shutdown would still apply.

As noted previously, even with careful design, equipment selection, and placement, the possibility exists that initiation of elevator shutdown could occur prior to completion of elevator recall. This could potentially entrap elevator passengers. Annex paragraph A.21.4.2 suggests that the fire alarm system output used to activate shunt trip for elevator shutdown can include a delay to allow time for the elevator to arrive at the recall level. However, implementing such a delay must be done with extreme caution with a clear understanding of the implications involved, as well as careful attention to the requirements in ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44 and to the requirements in NFPA 13. In order to achieve the intended sequence of recall completion followed by shutdown and then sprinkler operation, compliance with the requirements of these documents may prove to be a challenge.

While a great deal of discussion has occurred by the applicable NFPA and ASME technical committees, no consensus has been reached on how best to address the concern of entrapment due to shunt trip. Perhaps the best approach, if possible, would be to avoid the installation of sprinklers in elevator hoistways and machine rooms. Revisions made to 8.15.5 of the 2013 edition of NFPA 13 may impact the need to have sprinklers in these locations.

21.4.3* If pressure or waterflow switches are used to shut down elevator power immediately upon, or prior to, the discharge of water from sprinklers, the use of devices with time-delay switches or time-delay capability shall not be permitted.

A.21.4.3 Care should be taken to ensure that elevator power cannot be interrupted due to water pressure surges in the sprinkler system. The intent of the Code is to ensure that the switch and the system as a whole do not have the capability of introducing a time delay into the sequence. The use of a switch with a time delay mechanism set to zero does not meet the intent of the Code, because it is possible to introduce a time delay after the system has been accepted. This might occur in response to unwanted alarms caused by surges or water movement, rather than addressing the underlying cause of the surges or water movement (often due to air in the piping). Permanently disabling the delay in accordance with the manufacturer's printed instructions should be considered acceptable. Systems that have software that can introduce a delay in the sequence should be programmed to require a security password to make such a change.

21.4.4* Control circuits to shut down elevator power shall be monitored for the presence of operating voltage. Loss of voltage to the control circuit for the disconnecting means shall cause a supervisory signal to be indicated at the control unit and required remote annunciators.

Cases have occurred where the operating power for the elevator shunt trip circuit has been de-energized or never connected to a power source. This situation prevents shutdown of the elevator when automatic sprinklers operate in the machine room or hoistway. Monitoring the integrity of the control power as required by 21.4.4 is similar to monitoring the integrity of the power for an electric motor–driven fire pump.

A.21.4.4 Figure A.21.4.4 illustrates one method of monitoring elevator shunt trip control power for integrity.

21.4.5 The initiating devices described in 21.4.2 and 21.4.3 shall be monitored for integrity by the fire alarm control unit required in 21.3.1 and 21.3.2.

The requirement in 21.4.5 makes it clear that initiating devices used for elevator shutdown must be connected to a fire alarm system.

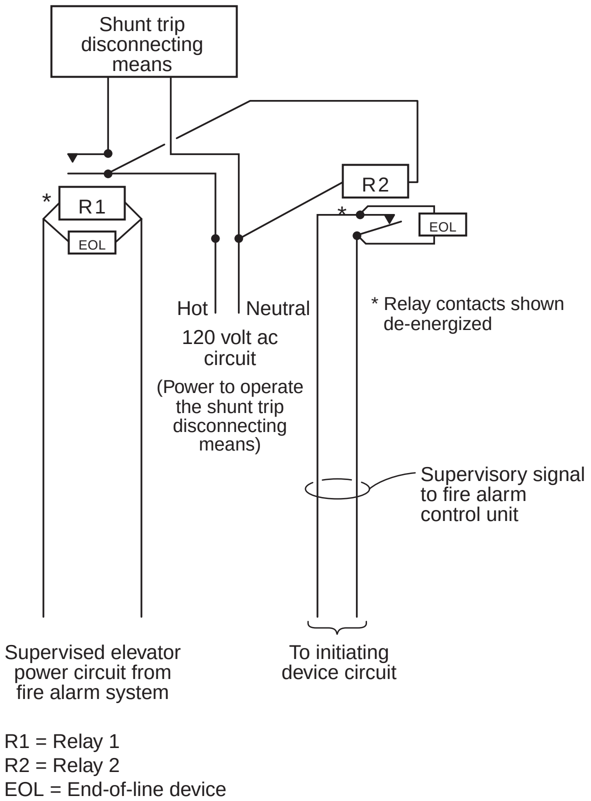


FIGURE A.21.4.4 *Typical Method of Providing Elevator Power Shunt Trip Supervisory Signal.*

21.5 Fire Service Access Elevators

Where one or more elevators are specifically designated and marked as fire service access elevators, the conditions specified in 21.5.1 for the elevators, associated lobbies, and machine rooms shall be continuously monitored and displayed during any such use.

In some cases, specific elevators may be marked and designated for use by the fire department and other emergency responders. The requirements of Section 21.5 are intended to provide information to emergency responders concerning the safety of continued use of the elevator(s) during the course of the emergency.

The 2010 edition of *NFPA 72* referred to "fire service access elevators" as "first responder use elevators," because in some jurisdictions or in certain emergencies, fire service personnel might not be the first personnel responding on the scene. However, for consistency with *NFPA 5000®, Building Construction and Safety Code®*, the terminology has been revised to "fire service access elevators."

Subsection 33.3.7 of *NFPA 5000,* 2012 edition, includes a requirement to have fire service access elevators in some high-rise buildings. Detailed provisions for fire service access elevators are contained in Section 54.12 of *NFPA 5000.*

21.5.1 The conditions monitored and displayed shall include, but are not limited to, the following:

(1) Availability of main and emergency power to operate the elevator(s), elevator controller(s), and machine room (if provided) ventilation

(2)* Status of the elevator(s), including location within the hoistway, direction of travel, and whether they are occupied

(3) Temperature and presence of smoke in associated lobbies and machine room (if provided)

21.5.2 The conditions shall be displayed on a standard emergency services interface complying with Section 18.11.

A.21.5.1(2) Signals to the standard emergency service interface providing the status of the elevator(s), including location within the hoistway, direction of travel, and whether they are occupied should be provided by the elevator management system.

21.6 Occupant Evacuation Elevators

Specific elevators may be marked and designated for occupant-controlled evacuation during an emergency. The requirements of Section 21.6 are intended to prescribe the interface requirements with the elevator controller and the information provided to the occupants concerning the availability of the elevator(s) for evacuation during the course of the emergency.

Section 7.14 of NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®, specifically outlines requirements for occupant-controlled evacuation elevators, such as an emergency plan; the monitoring and display of conditions necessary for the safe operation of the elevator at the building emergency command center; status indicators in elevator lobbies; fire detection, alarm, and communication system requirements; sprinkler system requirements; and construction/protection requirements for the elevator cars, hoistways, machine rooms, and electrical power and control wiring. Additionally, there are specific requirements for elevator lobby size.

Interesting to note, NFPA *101* does not permit sprinklers to be installed in elevator machine rooms or at the top of elevator hoistways for occupant-controlled evacuation elevators. Sprinklers, if installed in the hoistway, are only permitted to be installed if they are located 24 in. (610 mm) or less above the pit floor. Additionally, shunt trip breakers are not permitted to be installed on occupant-controlled evacuation elevators. Annex material associated with this section explains that the exclusion of a shunt trip breaker is not in violation of the power shutdown requirements of ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, because sprinklers are not permitted to be installed in elevator machine rooms or at the top of elevator hoistways, and that sprinklers in the hoistway cannot be more than 24 in. (610 mm) above the pit floor. However, the latter provision has been modified in ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, as noted in the commentary following Section 21.4, and sprinklers in the elevator pit may still require elevator shutdown. This inconsistency will need to be addressed in future revisions to these codes and standards.

Exhibit 21.7 is an excerpt from NFPA *101* that specifies the fire detection, alarm, and communications requirements that apply when elevators for occupant-controlled evacuation are used.

21.6.1 Elevator Status. Where one or more elevators are specifically designated and marked for use by occupants for evacuation during fires, they shall comply with all of the provisions of Sections 21.5 and 21.6.

21.6.2 Elevator Occupant Evacuation Operation (OEO). Outputs from the fire alarm system to the elevator controller(s) shall be provided to implement elevator occupant evacuation operation in accordance with Section 2.27 of ASME A17.1/CSA B44 (2013), *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, as required in 21.6.2.1 and 21.6.2.2.

EXHIBIT 21.7

Fire Detection, Alarm, and Communications Requirements. [Excerpt from NFPA 101, 2012 edition]

7.14.3 Fire Detection, Alarm, and Communication.

7.14.3.1 The building shall be protected throughout by an approved fire alarm system in accordance with Section 9.6.

7.14.3.2* The fire alarm system shall include an emergency voice/alarm communication system in accordance with *NFPA 72, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, with the ability to provide voice directions on a selective basis to any building floor.

7.14.3.3* The emergency voice/alarm communication system shall be arranged so that intelligible voice instructions are audible in the elevator lobbies under conditions where the elevator lobby doors are in the closed position.

7.14.3.4 Two-way Communication System. A two-way communication system shall be provided in each occupant evacuation elevator lobby for the purpose of initiating communication with the emergency command center or an alternative location approved by the fire department.

7.14.3.4.1 Design and Installation. The two-way communication system shall include audible and visible signals and shall be designed and installed in accordance with the requirements of ICC/ANSI A117.1, *American National Standard for Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities.*

7.14.3.4.2 Instructions. Instructions for the use of the two-way communication system, along with the location of the station, shall be permanently located adjacent to each station. Signage shall comply with the requirements of ICC/ANSI A117.1, *American National Standard for Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities,* for visual characters.

21.6.2.1 Partial Evacuation. Where an elevator or group of elevators is designated for use by occupants for evacuation, the provisions of 21.6.2.1.1 through 21.6.2.1.4 shall apply for partial evacuation.

21.6.2.1.1 Initiation. Output signal(s) shall be provided to initiate elevator occupant evacuation operation upon automatic or manual detection of a fire on a specific floor or floors as a result of either or both of the following:

(1) Activation of any automatic fire alarm initiating device in the building, other than an initiating device used for elevator Phase I Emergency Recall Operation in accordance with 21.3.14

(2)* Activation of manual means at the fire command center by authorized or emergency personnel

A.21.6.2.1.1(2) The manual means is intended in lieu of automatic initiating devices that are impaired or out of service and would otherwise have actuated to provide automatic initiation in accordance with 21.6.2.1.1(2). Manual fire alarm boxes location throughout the building are not included because they are typically activated at locations remote from the fire and could lead to misinformation about the location of the fire.

21.6.2.1.2* Floor Identification.

(A) The output signal(s) shall identify each floor to be evacuated.

(B) The identified floors shall be a contiguous block of floors including the following:

  (1) The floor with the first activated automatic initiating device.

  (2) Floors with any subsequently activated automatic initiating device(s).

(3) Floors identified by manual means from the fire command center.
(4) Two floors above the highest floor identified by 21.6.2.1.2(B)(1) through 21.6.2.1.2(B)(3).
(5) Two floors below the lowest floor identified by 21.6.2.1.2(B)(1) through 21.6.2.1.2(B)(3).

(C) The identified floors shall be displayed on a standard emergency services interface along with the other elevator status information required by 21.6.1.

A.21.6.2.1.2 The fire alarm system uses the floor identification to automatically establish a contiguous block of floors to be evacuated consistent with 21.6.2.1.2(B). The established block of floors is updated to reflect changing conditions as indicated by the output signal(s). This information is sent to the elevator system and also used for occupant notification. The output signals from the fire alarm system can be in the form of contact closures or serial communications. Coordination needs to be provided between the fire alarm system installer and the elevator system installer.

21.6.2.1.3 Manual Floor Selection.

(A) A means shall be provided at the fire command center to allow the manual selection of floors.
(B) The floors shall be selected on the basis of information from authorized or emergency personnel.

21.6.2.1.4* Occupant Notification. The in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system shall transmit coordinated messages throughout the building.

(A) Automatic voice evacuation messages shall be transmitted to the floors identified in 21.6.2.1.2 to indicate the need to evacuate and that elevator service is available.
(B) Automatic voice messages shall be transmitted to the floors not being evacuated to inform occupants of evacuation status and shall include an indication that elevator service is not available.
(C)* Automatic voice messages shall be transmitted to the floors identified in 21.6.2.1.2 to indicate that elevator service is not available when all elevators have been recalled on Phase I Emergency Recall Operation.
(D) All automatic voice messages shall be coordinated with the text displays provided separately by the elevator management system.

A.21.6.2.1.4 Messages need to be coordinated with the operation of the elevators so that occupants understand what to expect and how to react. Additional visual information will be provided in each elevator lobby by the elevator management system to further inform occupants of the status of the elevators.

A.21.6.2.1.4(C) This new message will require a signal from the elevator management system to the fire alarm system.

21.6.2.2 Total Evacuation. Where an elevator or group of elevators is designated for use by occupants for evacuation, the provisions of 21.6.2.2.1 through 21.6.2.2.3 shall apply for total evacuation.

21.6.2.2.1 Output(s) to signal elevator occupant evacuation operation for total evacuation shall be manually activated from the fire command center by a means labeled “ELEVATOR TOTAL BUILDING EVACUATION.”

21.6.2.2.2 The output(s) shall identify that all floors are to be evacuated.

21.6.2.2.3 The in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system shall transmit an evacuation message throughout the building to indicate the need to evacuate.

21.7 Heating, Ventilating and Air-Conditioning (HVAC) Systems

FAQ Does *NFPA 72* require duct smoke detectors to be installed?

NFPA 72 does not dictate when and where duct smoke detectors are required to be installed. These requirements reside in other codes and standards. For example, the 2012 edition of NFPA *101* states:

Air-conditioning, heating, ventilating ductwork, and related equipment shall be in accordance with NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, or NFPA 90B, *Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems*, as applicable, unless such installations are approved existing installations, which shall be permitted to be continued in service. [***101***, 2012]

Although the requirement for the installation of duct smoke detectors is not specifically identified in NFPA *101*, the paragraph cited refers the reader to NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*. Paragraph 6.4.2.1 of NFPA 90A requires that smoke detectors listed for use in air distribution systems be located as follows:

(1) Downstream of the air filters and ahead of any branch connections in air supply systems having a capacity greater than 944 L/sec (2000 ft^3/min)
(2) At each story prior to the connection to a common return and prior to any recirculation or fresh air inlet connection in air return systems having a capacity greater than 7080 L/sec (15,000 ft^3/min) and serving more than one story [**90A**, 2012]

Typically, applicable building codes address this requirement in a similar manner, by citing NFPA 90A or the applicable associated jurisdictional mechanical code. One important item to note is that NFPA 90A is not a retroactive code (see Section 1.4, Retroactivity, of NFPA 90A).

When duct smoke detectors are installed, they are to be installed in accordance with the requirements of *NFPA 72* (see 17.7.4, 17.7.5.4.2, and 17.7.5.5). See Exhibit 21.8 for an excerpt from NFPA 90A.

21.7.1 The provisions of Section 21.7 shall apply to the basic method by which a fire alarm system interfaces with the heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning (HVAC) systems.

21.7.2* If connected to the fire alarm system serving the protected premises, all detection devices used to cause the operation of HVAC systems smoke dampers, fire dampers, fan control, smoke doors, and fire doors shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with 10.6.9 and Section 12.6.

A.21.7.2 See A.21.7.3.

Where the devices are connected to the fire alarm system, the wiring to these devices must be monitored for integrity the same as any other system detector. Stand-alone detectors, including 120 VAC-powered, single-station smoke detectors used to control HVAC equipment, that are not connected to the fire alarm system cannot be monitored for integrity.

FAQ Does *NFPA 72* require detection devices to be connected to the building fire alarm system?

NFPA 72 does not specifically require detection devices used for HVAC system control to be connected to the building fire alarm system. The requirements for this connection would be established by other codes, standards, or sources.

EXHIBIT 21.8

6.4* Smoke Detection for Automatic Control.

A.6.4 The use of smoke detectors in relationship to HVAC systems and high air movement areas and the details regarding their optimum installation are covered in Section 5.7 of *NFPA 72, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code.*

Protection provided by the installation of smoke detectors and related requirements is intended to prevent the distribution of smoke through the supply air duct system and, preferably, to exhaust a significant quantity of smoke to the outside. Neither function, however, guarantees either the early detection of fire or the detection of smoke concentrations prior to dangerous smoke conditions where smoke movement is other than through the supply air system.

Where smoke-control protection for a facility is determined to be needed, see NFPA 92A, *Standard for Smoke Control Systems.*

6.4.1 Testing. All automatic shutdown devices shall be tested at least annually.

6.4.2* Location.

A.6.4.2 The summation of the capacities of individual supply-air fans should be made where such fans are connected to a common supply air duct system (i.e., all fans connected to a common air duct supply system should be considered as constituting a single system with respect to the applicability of the Chapter 6 provisions that are dependent on system capacity).

6.4.2.1 Smoke detectors listed for use in air distribution systems shall be located as follows:

(1) Downstream of the air filters and ahead of any branch connections in air supply systems having a capacity greater than 944 L/sec (2000 ft^3/min)
(2) At each story prior to the connection to a common return and prior to any recirculation or fresh air inlet connection in air return systems having a capacity greater than 7080 L/sec (15,000 ft^3/min) and serving more than one story

6.4.2.2 Return system smoke detectors shall not be required where the entire space served by the air distribution system is protected by a system of area smoke detectors.

6.4.2.3 Smoke detectors shall not be required for fan units whose sole function is to remove air from the inside of the building to the outside of the building.

6.4.3* Function.

A.6.4.3 Where automatic water sprinklers are provided and zoned to coordinate with the HVAC zones, their water flow switches should initiate devices for the functions described in Chapter 6.

Sprinklers are often tested weekly. Where it is desirable to prevent the accompanying automatic shutdown of the fan system(s) referred to in 6.4.3, a means can be permitted to be used to avoid such shutdown temporarily, provided one of the following occurs:

(1) A trouble signal is sustained in the sprinkler supervisory system until the automatic shutdown provision is restored.
(2) The automatic shutdown provision is restored at the end of the time period necessary to test the sprinkler system, its alarms, and related elements.

6.4.3.1 Smoke detectors provided as required by 6.4.2 shall automatically stop their respective fan(s) on detecting the presence of smoke.

6.4.3.2 Where the return air fan is functioning as part of an engineered smoke-control system and a different mode is required, the smoke detectors shall not be required to automatically stop their respective fans.

6.4.4 Installation.

6.4.4.1 Smoke detectors shall be installed, tested, and maintained in accordance with *NFPA 72*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*.

6.4.4.2 In addition to the requirements of 6.4.3, where an approved fire alarm system is installed in a building, the smoke detectors required by the provisions of Section 6.4 shall be connected to the fire alarm system in accordance with the requirements of *NFPA 72, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code.*

6.4.4.2.1 Smoke detectors used solely for closing dampers or for heating, ventilating, and air-conditioning system shutdown shall not be required to activate the building evacuation alarm.

6.4.4.3 Where smoke detectors required by Section 6.4 are installed in a building not equipped with an approved fire alarm system as specified by 6.4.4.2, the following shall occur:

(1) Smoke detector activation required by Section 6.4 shall cause a visual and audible signal in a normally occupied area.
(2) Smoke detector trouble conditions shall be indicated visually or audibly in a normally occupied area and shall be identified as air duct detector trouble.

6.4.4.4 Smoke detectors powered separately from the fire alarm system for the sole function of stopping fans shall not require standby power.

Smoke Detection for Automatic Control. [Excerpt from NFPA 90A, 2012 edition]

As an example, NFPA 90A states that duct smoke detectors are required to be installed in accordance with *NFPA 72* (see 6.4.4.1 of NFPA 90A). In addition, NFPA 90A states that where an approved fire alarm system is installed in a building, the duct smoke detectors required by NFPA 90A are required to be connected to the fire alarm system.

Where duct smoke detectors are installed to shut down associated HVAC air-handling units and the building does not contain a fire alarm system, 6.4.4.3 of NFPA 90A requires the following:

- Duct smoke detector activation to cause a visual signal and an audible signal in a normally occupied area; and
- Duct smoke detector trouble conditions to be indicated visually or audibly in a normally occupied area and identified as air duct detector trouble

Refer to Exhibit 21.9 for examples of annunciators that could be used to display visual and audible signals in a normally occupied area for stand-alone duct smoke detectors.

Stand-alone duct smoke detectors are not required by 6.4.4.4 of NFPA 90A to have back-up power, as follows:

Smoke detectors powered separately from the fire alarm system for the sole function of stopping fans shall not require standby power. [**90A**, 2012]

EXHIBIT 21.9

Examples of Stand-Alone Duct Smoke Detector Audible/Visible Signal Annunciator. [Source: System Sensor Corp., St. Charles, IL, and Space Age Electronics, Inc., Sterling, MA]

21.7.3* Connections between fire alarm systems and the HVAC system for the purpose of monitoring and control shall operate and be monitored in accordance with applicable NFPA standards.

A.21.7.3 This standard does not specifically require detection devices used to cause the operation of HVAC system smoke dampers, fire dampers, fan control, smoke doors, and fire doors to be connected to the fire alarm system.

21.7.4 Smoke detectors mounted in the air ducts of HVAC systems shall initiate a supervisory signal.

The purpose of a duct-mounted smoke detector is to shut down the air handler so it will not move smoke throughout the building. The use of duct-mounted smoke detectors is not intended as a method of detecting a fire in the open area covered by the HVAC system.

In accordance with NFPA 90A, a duct smoke detector used solely to close dampers or shut down HVAC equipment is not required to activate the building evacuation alarm.

In the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72*, 21.7.4 has been revised to specify that the preferred signal annunciated on the fire alarm system for actuation of duct smoke detectors is a supervisory signal – not an alarm signal – and to clarify the intent of the requirements. This correlates with the requirements in NFPA 90A. Requiring the duct smoke detector to initiate a supervisory signal is provided to minimize nuisance alarms.

However, there are situations and jurisdictions that require or recommend the actuation of a duct smoke detector annunciated on the fire alarm system as an alarm signal. Subsection 21.7.4 has been further expanded upon and clarified to permit two options in lieu of annunciation as a supervisory signal.

In buildings where there is no constantly attended location or the system is not currently sending signals off-site to a supervising station, *NFPA 72* permits the actuation of duct smoke detectors to initiate an alarm signal on the fire alarm system control unit. Additionally, where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, *NFPA 72* permits the actuation of duct smoke detectors to initiate an alarm signal on the fire alarm system control unit.

See Exhibit 21.8 for an excerpt from NFPA 90A.

21.7.4.1 Smoke detectors mounted in the air ducts of HVAC systems in a fire alarm system without a constantly attended location or supervising station shall be permitted to initiate an alarm signal.

21.7.4.2 Smoke detectors mounted in the air ducts of HVAC systems shall be permitted to initiate an alarm signal where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards.

21.7.5 If the fire alarm control unit actuates the HVAC system for the purpose of smoke control, the automatic alarm-initiating zones shall be coordinated with the smoke control zones they actuate.

21.7.6 If carbon monoxide detection or a dedicated carbon monoxide system initiates a ventilation response, a smoke control response of the fire alarm system shall take precedence over the response of the carbon monoxide detectors during a fire alarm condition.

A fire fighter's smoke control station (FSCS) permits responding fire fighters to manually control the operation of fans, dampers, and other equipment installed for controlling smoke movement within the building.

21.7.7 Where interconnected as a combination system, a fire fighter's smoke control station (FSCS) shall be provided to perform manual control over the automatic operation of the system's smoke control strategy.

21.7.8 Where interconnected as a combination system, the smoke control system programming shall be designed such that normal HVAC operation or changes do not prevent the intended performance of the smoke control strategy.

21.8 Door and Shutter Release

21.8.1 The provisions of Section 21.8 shall apply to the methods of connection of door and shutter hold-open release devices and to integral door and shutter hold-open release, closer, and smoke detection devices.

21.8.2 All detection devices used for door and shutter hold-open release service shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with Section 12.6.

Exception: Smoke detectors used only for door and shutter release and not for open area protection.

Monitoring for integrity is not required for detectors integral to the door assembly or stand-alone detectors not connected to the fire alarm system.

21.8.3 All door and shutter hold-open release and integral door and shutter release and closure devices used for release service shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with Section 21.2.

Generally, magnetic door release appliances are installed so that they release on loss of power. Where Class D circuits or pathways are used in accordance with 21.2.6, fail-safe operation is provided and monitoring for integrity is not required. Refer to the commentary following 21.2.6.

21.8.4 Magnetic door and shutter holders that allow doors to close upon loss of operating power shall not be required to have a secondary power source.

The purpose of a magnetic door release appliance is to hold doors open under normal conditions and allow the doors to close during smoke and fire conditions. If the designer or the authority having jurisdiction wants the doors to remain open even under a primary power failure, the magnetic door holders must be connected to a circuit with secondary power. The Code does not require secondary power for this optional method of operation, as stated in 21.8.4. In addition, using this option increases the battery size and standby power requirements without providing additional fire safety. Exhibit 21.10 shows examples of typical magnetic door hold-open release appliances.

21.9 Electrically Locked Doors

21.9.1* Electrically locked doors in a required means of egress shall unlock in the direction of egress where required by other laws, codes, and governing standards.

EXHIBIT 21.10

Magnetic Door Hold-Open Release Appliances. (Source: Edwards, Bradenton, FL)

Revisions have been made to Section 21.9 to correlate with the requirements of NFPA *101.* Prior to the 2010 edition of the Code, the requirements were expressed in terms of unlocking exits. The requirements are now expressed in terms of unlocking electrically locked doors in a required means of egress in the direction of egress. Means of egress doors are not limited to doors at exits.

NFPA *101* specifies the requirements for means of egress for each occupancy and defines and explains the term *means of egress* as follows:

> **3.3.170* Means of Egress.** A continuous and unobstructed way of travel from any point in a building or structure to a public way consisting of three separate and distinct parts: (1) the exit access, (2) the exit, and (3) the exit discharge. [***101,*** 2012]
>
> **A.3.3.170 Means of Egress.** A means of egress comprises the vertical and horizontal travel and includes intervening room spaces, doorways, hallways, corridors, passageways, balconies, ramps, stairs, elevators, enclosures, lobbies, escalators, horizontal exits, courts, and yards. [***101,*** 2012]

Additionally, editions of the Code prior to 2010 required unlocking of exits on any fire alarm signal unless permitted otherwise by the authority having jurisdiction. The Code was revised to require unlocking as prescribed by other laws, codes, and governing standards. Examples of how other laws, codes, and standards may prescribe unlocking requirements are provided in A.21.9.1. Other codes, standards, and authorities having jurisdiction may also include or provide specific permission for doors to remain locked in certain situations. Examples include detention and correctional facilities and psychiatric wards in a health care facility.

A.21.9.1 Doors are commonly locked for various security reasons. Though doors are permitted to be locked to prevent ingress, doors are generally not permitted to be locked to restrict egress unless specifically permitted by governing laws, codes, and standards. Examples of special locking arrangements include delayed egress locking and access control locking. Approved locking requirements by governing laws, codes, and standards can vary extensively. For example, some might require all fire alarm initiating devices to immediately unlock electrically locked egress doors, while others might permit such doors to remain locked when a single manual fire alarm box is activated. Some codes might also permit electrically locked doors to remain locked when a single smoke detector has activated. These allowances are typically permitted only in sprinklered buildings and are generally used as additional safeguards to counter efforts to breach security, without compromising occupant safety.

21.9.2 For all means of egress doors connected in accordance with 21.9.1 where fire alarm control unit batteries are used, they shall comply with 10.6.7.

21.9.3* Fire alarm control unit batteries shall not be utilized to maintain means of egress doors in the locked condition unless the fire alarm control unit is arranged with circuitry and sufficient secondary power to ensure the means of egress doors will unlock within 10 minutes of loss of primary power.

A.21.9.3 A problem could exist when batteries are used as a secondary power source if a fire alarm control unit having 24 hours of standby operating power were to lose primary power and be operated for more than 24 hours from the secondary power source (batteries). It is possible that sufficient voltage would be available to keep the doors locked, but not enough voltage would be available to operate the fire alarm control unit to release the locks.

Subsection 21.9.3 and A.21.9.3 discuss the requirement for fire alarm system control unit batteries to be designed with sufficient capacity in order to ensure that the means of egress doors will unlock within 10 minutes of loss of primary power. Without this requirement in the Code, batteries in a fire alarm control unit could be undersized and not have enough voltage to release the door locks when required.

FAQ

Under what circumstances does *NFPA 72* permit the use of the fire alarm system secondary power supply batteries to maintain doors in a locked condition?

In general, life safety concerns dictate that means of egress doors unlock immediately on actuation of the fire alarm system as prescribed in other laws, codes, or standards. However, circumstances sometimes exist where unlocking the doors (e.g., unlocking cell doors in a jail) could cause a security problem that poses a greater life safety risk than maintaining the exit doors locked. A change in the 2007 edition of the Code permitted batteries used as the secondary power supply in accordance with 10.5.6.1.1(1) [10.6.7 in the 2013 edition] to maintain the doors locked as long as sufficient power is provided to unlock the doors within 10 minutes. This time period is intended to permit security or other personnel to investigate the situation and take appropriate action to ensure an adequate level of security before the doors are unlocked.

21.9.4 Locks powered by independent power supplies dedicated to lock power and access control functions, and that unlock upon loss of power, shall not be required to comply with 21.9.2.

21.9.5 If means of egress doors are unlocked by the fire alarm system, the unlocking function shall occur prior to, or concurrent with, activation of any public-mode notification appliances in the area(s) served by the normally locked means of egress doors.

The intent of 21.9.5 is to prevent a possible panic situation where the fire alarm system has actuated and notification appliances are signaling the occupants to evacuate, but they cannot exit because the doors are still locked.

21.9.6 All doors that are required to be unlocked by the fire alarm system in accordance with 21.9.1 shall remain unlocked until the fire alarm condition is manually reset.

21.10* Exit Marking Audible Notification Systems

A.21.10 When a fire alarm evacuation signal activates, the exit marking system will be activated. In some cases, the activation might be sequenced to meet the fire safety plan of the property.

21.10.1 Where required by other governing laws, codes, standards, or the authority having jurisdiction, exit marking audible notification appliances shall be activated by the building fire alarm system.

21.10.2 Exit marking systems shall meet the requirements of Chapter 18.

Exit marking audible notification systems are designed to provide audible cues to assist building occupants to locate an exit during an emergency. The systems are not required by the Code, but Section 21.10, along with 18.4.7, details the requirements for their installation as part of a building fire alarm system if the exit marking audible notification system is required by other codes or the authority having jurisdiction. If exit marking systems are required by another code, standard, or authority having jurisdiction, the intent of the Code is that the system be actuated by the building fire alarm system.

References Cited in Commentary

ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, 2010 edition, American Society of Mechanical Engineers, New York, NY.

NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*, 2013 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 5000®, *Building Construction and Safety Code*®, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA..

Reserved Chapter

In the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72®, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code,* Chapter 22 is reserved for future use.

CHAPTER 23

Protected Premises Fire Alarm Systems

Chapter 23 covers the requirements for the installation and performance of protected premises fire alarm systems. The term *protected premises (local) fire alarm system* is defined in 3.3.105.4 as simply "a fire alarm system located at the protected premises." Building fire alarm system, dedicated function fire alarm system, and releasing fire alarm system are subcategories of protected premises (local) fire alarm system. Chapter 23 is a focal chapter of the Code in that it contains requirements common to all local fire alarm systems, excluding household fire alarm systems.

Some of the requirements formerly contained in this chapter were relocated to new chapters, because the requirements are common to more than just protected premises fire alarm systems. These relocated sections are included in the summary of changes below.

The following list is a summary of significant changes to the chapter on protected premises fire alarm systems in the 2013 edition:

- Relocation of specific system performance and integrity information to Chapter 12
- New 23.8.4.8 requiring that actuation of carbon monoxide detectors and/or carbon monoxide detection systems monitored by the fire alarm system be displayed on the fire alarm system as "carbon monoxide alarm" signals
- New 23.8.5.5.3, 23.8.5.6.3, 23.8.5.7.3, and 23.8.5.8.3 requiring that if a valve is installed in the connection between a sprinkler system or a suppression system and an initiating device, the valve be supervised in accordance with 17.16.1
- Relocation of prerecorded (digital) voice requirements to Chapter 24

23.1 Application

23.1.1* The application, installation, and performance of fire alarm systems within protected premises, including fire alarm and supervisory signals, shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

A.23.1.1 It is intended that fire alarm systems and their components used for mass notification applications be covered by Chapter 23.

FAQ

How is the need for a fire alarm system and its features established?

Chapter 23 does not require the installation of a protected premises (local) fire alarm system or any type of fire safety control functions. Required systems are basically those systems that are needed due to the requirements of other applicable codes or statutes that have been adopted by the enforcing jurisdiction (see 23.3.1). Typically, the need for these systems and their features is established by enabling codes such as the local building code or NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®. Those codes are the source of any requirements for the installation of a fire alarm system, supervisory functions, or other emergency control functions controlled by a protected premises (local) fire alarm system. For nonrequired systems, the system designer is responsible for determining the functions and features that the system will include. Chapter 23 explains the methods of accomplishing these functions where required by some other code, standard, or authority having jurisdiction or where selected by the system designer to meet the goals of the system owner. Refer to Section 23.3 and associated commentary.

In-building mass notification systems, defined in 3.3.87.1.3, are systems used to provide appropriate information and instructions to occupants in emergency situations, including terrorist threats, chemical or biological hazards, and natural disasters. These systems can be separate from the fire alarm system, or they can be integrated with the fire alarm system. When a fire alarm system is also used for mass notification, the system is considered a combination system, as defined in 3.3.105.1, and the requirements of 23.8.4 for combination systems apply in particular. Because the system is also used for mass notification, the requirements of Chapter 24 also apply.

23.1.2 The requirements of Chapters 7, 10, 12, 17, 18, 21, 24, and 26 shall also apply, unless they are in conflict with this chapter.

The requirements of Chapter 1, the references in Chapter 2, and the definitions in Chapter 3 apply throughout the Code, including Chapter 23.

Subsection 23.1.2 ensures that all fire alarm systems installed within the protected premises first comply with Chapter 23 and then comply with the requirements of other chapters. The other chapters may add to the requirements for protected premises system installations. If conflicts exist between the requirements of Chapter 23 and other chapters of the Code, the requirements of Chapter 23 prevail.

Chapter 7 is new to the 2013 edition of the Code and identifies the documentation associated with the design, acceptance, and completion of new systems, as well as the alteration, maintenance, and testing of existing systems previously installed under *NFPA 72*®, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code.*

Chapter 10 addresses the fundamental requirements, such as power supplies and monitoring of power supply integrity, applicable to all types of fire alarm systems. Chapter 12 applies to the class and survivability requirements of system circuits and pathways. Chapter 17 applies to the initiating devices installed within a protected premises. Chapter 18 applies to the notification appliances installed within a protected premises. The requirements for emergency control functions are covered in Chapter 21, and the requirements for transmission of signals to a supervising station are contained in Chapter 26. If a protected premises (local) fire alarm system sends a signal to a supervising station, in accordance with 26.1.1, the entire system becomes a supervising station alarm system. However, as explained in A.26.1.1, the requirements of Chapter 23 still apply to the portions of the system located at the premises, including the signaling between the transmitter and the balance of the protected premises portion of the system. Chapter 26 requirements apply to off-site signaling functions of the transmitter located at the protected premises, the transmission channel, and the remotely located supervising station. Chapter 27 covers signals transmitted to a communications center by means of an auxiliary alarm system.

Two choices can be made where a multiple-building, contiguous property has its proprietary supervising station in one of the on-site buildings. Each building can have its own protected premises system and be connected to the on-site supervising station through a transmitter and transmission channel that meets the requirements of Section 26.6. Alternatively, the individual building systems can be directly connected to a master fire alarm control unit (FACU) that is co-located within the supervising station. These systems must comply with the requirements of 23.8.2.1, 23.8.2.2, and 23.8.2.5 for interconnected FACUs. In addition, they must comply with the requirements for multiple buildings in 10.18.5 and 26.2.6.

For a single-building property, the initiating devices and notification appliances are either directly connected or connected through zone or floor fire alarm system control units to the proprietary supervising station using initiating device circuits or signaling line circuits. Where other interconnected control units are used, the requirements of 23.8.2.1, 23.8.2.2, and 23.8.2.5 apply. Regardless of the method of connection, the proprietary supervising station facilities for both single- and multiple-building properties must comply with the requirements of Section 26.4.

Where signals from a multiple-building, campus-style protected premises are sent to a central supervising station or remote supervising station, they can be sent directly from each building if each building has its own separate fire alarm system, or they can be sent from the premises (campus) main FACU where a single fire alarm system serves the entire campus. The single fire alarm system can comprise multiple interconnected FACUs or a single FACU that serves the entire premises. Compliance with 10.18.5, 23.8.2.1, 23.8.2.2, 23.8.2.5, and 26.2.6 must be considered when deciding on an appropriate configuration. The consideration of any control or display location requirements from the applicable building code would be prudent. Refer to the commentary following A.10.18.3.

Chapter 24 addresses the application, installation, and performance of emergency communications systems and their components both within buildings and outside.

23.1.3 The requirements of Chapter 14 shall apply.

Chapter 14 covers inspection, testing, and maintenance. Regular testing of a fire alarm system provides ongoing assurance that equipment is performing as intended and improves overall system reliability by minimizing the time interval between the occurrence of a problem and when it is discovered. Subsection 23.1.3 applies to all installed fire alarm systems. Some jurisdictions feel the need to develop and enforce their own fire alarm system testing requirements. However, the purpose of 23.1.3 is to provide the authority having jurisdiction with an enforceable, mandatory requirement to test all fire alarm systems in accordance with the Code. Note that the requirements of Chapter 14 apply to both new and existing fire alarm system installations.

23.1.4 The requirements of this chapter shall not apply to Chapter 29 unless otherwise noted.

Chapter 29 covers single- and multiple-station alarms and household fire alarm systems and contains specific requirements for the installation of fire warning equipment in residential occupancies. Refer to the introductory commentary in Chapter 29 regarding that chapter's scope and to the definition of the term *fire warning equipment* in 3.3.109.

Fire alarm systems as discussed in Chapter 23 may be used in single living units or as dwelling fire warning systems if the requirements of Chapter 29 are satisfied. Where a fire alarm system is installed in an apartment building to serve the common areas, smoke detectors and notification appliances connected to the system may be used within individual dwelling units in place of the required smoke alarms unless prohibited by the adopted building, occupancy, or fire code or by the authority having jurisdiction. The system functions within each dwelling unit would need to be arranged to mimic requirements specified in terms of smoke alarms, and the installation within the dwelling unit would still need to comply with the requirements of Chapter 29.

23.1.5 The requirements of 24.4.2 shall apply where in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems are used.

23.2 General

23.2.1* Purpose. The systems covered in Chapter 23 shall be for the protection of life or property, or both, by indicating the existence of heat, fire, smoke, or other emergencies impacting the protected premises.

A.23.2.1 Systems can be installed for the purposes of life safety, property protection, or both. Evacuation or relocation is not a required output action for every system installed in accordance with Chapter 23.

FAQ

Do all fire alarm systems require the installation of notification appliances for occupant notification?

Subsection 23.2.1 clearly states that the primary purpose of the systems covered in Chapter 23 is "the protection of life or property, or both." Subsection 23.2.1 gives the protection of both life and property equal and full consideration. Occupant notification for evacuation or relocation is not a required output action of every fire alarm system installed in accordance with this chapter. Refer to 23.8.6.1 and related commentary regarding requirements for systems where occupant notification is required. Fire alarm systems are often installed for reasons other than occupant notification such as systems intended for the supervision and actuation of extinguishing systems.

The phrase "or other emergencies impacting the protected premises" at the end of 23.2.1 reflects the role that fire alarm systems interfaced with mass notification systems can play in signaling for other emergencies such as terrorist threats, chemical or biological hazards, or natural disasters.

23.2.2 Software and Firmware Control.

Special requirements are provided in 23.2.2 for computerized or microprocessor-based fire alarm systems. Two types of software are defined in the Code: executive software and site-specific software. Executive software is defined in 3.3.272.1 as "control and supervisory program which manages the execution of all other programs and directly or indirectly causes the required functions of the product to be performed. Executive software is sometimes referred to as firmware, BIOS, or executive program." This type of software usually resides on a read-only memory (ROM) integrated circuit that is programmed at the factory, is considered a component of a listed fire alarm control unit, and cannot be modified in the field by the installer or user. Site-specific software is defined in 3.3.272.2 as a "program that is separate from, but controlled by, the executive software which allows inputs, outputs, and system configuration to be selectively defined to meet the needs of a specific installation. Typically it defines the type and quantity of hardware, customized labels, and the specific operating features of a system." Site-specific software contains information such as the operations matrix and device addresses. The installer programs site-specific software.

23.2.2.1 A record of installed software and firmware version numbers shall be maintained at the location of the fire alarm control unit.

Generally, the version numbers are recorded on the permanently attached diagram in the control unit and on the as-built record drawings for the system. The record of completion form required in Section 10.20 and Section 7.5 [see Figures 7.8.2(a) through 7.8.2(l)] must also show the current software version installed. A record copy of the actual site-specific software must be provided to the system owner in accordance with 7.5.3 and 14.6.1.2.1.

23.2.2.1.1* Software and firmware within the fire alarm control system that interfaces to other required software or firmware shall be functionally compatible.

A.23.2.2.1.1 Compatibility between software systems is necessary to ensure that the systems can communicate correctly and that the overall system can function as intended. Unfortunately, software that is compatible can become incompatible when the software is updated. Newer revisions of software might not maintain compatibility with older revisions. This paragraph requires that the fire alarm software or firmware that interfaces with software or firmware in another system is compatible. An example might be a smoke control system that gets information from the fire alarm system. The term "required" indicates that this compatibility requirement is intended for required functions (e.g., smoke control) and not for supplemental functions that are not part of the required operation of the fire alarm system. An example of a supplemental function might be an RS-232 port that connects to a terminal emulator program used for maintenance purposes. The term "functionally" is intended to ensure that the intended functionality is maintained by the software. It is trying to avoid a situation where a change in software revision might still be compatible but changes the available functionality so that the two systems no longer perform the intended functions, even though the software communicates correctly.

23.2.2.1.2* The compatible software or firmware versions shall be documented at the initial acceptance test and at any reacceptance tests.

A.23.2.2.1.2 Compatibility between systems will be documented in one or the other (or both) of the manufacturer's installation documents for the compatible products and controlled by the listings agencies. This documentation will be referenced in the marking on the product. The documentation might be paper copy or electronic media (disk, website, etc.). When a software revision changes, the documentation can be consulted to ensure that it is still compatible with the software or firmware on the other side of the interface.

23.2.2.2* All software and firmware shall be protected from unauthorized changes.

A.23.2.2.2 A commonly used method of protecting against unauthorized changes can be described as follows (in ascending levels of access):

(1) *Access Level 1.* Access by persons who have a general responsibility for safety supervision, and who might be expected to investigate and initially respond to a fire alarm or trouble signal
(2) *Access Level 2.* Access by persons who have a specific responsibility for safety, and who are trained to operate the control unit
(3) *Access Level 3.* Access by persons who are trained and authorized to do the following:
 (a) Reconfigure the site-specific data held within the control unit, or controlled by it
 (b) Maintain the control unit in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and data
(4) *Access Level 4.* Access by persons who are trained and authorized either to repair the control unit or to alter its site-specific data or operating system program, thereby changing its basic mode of operation

As required in 23.2.2.2, the software and firmware must be protected from unauthorized changes. As anyone with any experience in the use of computer software knows, a single change in the software has the potential of affecting the operation of the entire fire alarm system. In terms of reliability, software is the least reliable component of the fire alarm system, and care must be taken to ensure that the system is programmed to match the requirements of the Code, the authority having jurisdiction, project specifications, and the owner's fire protection goals.

23.2.2.3 All changes shall be tested in accordance with 14.4.2.

Paragraph 14.4.2.4 specifies testing that must be performed when changes are made to site-specific software.

Specifically, all functions known to be affected by the change, or identified by a means that indicates changes, are required to be 100 percent tested. Ten percent of initiating devices that are not directly affected by the change, up to a maximum of 50 devices, are also required to be tested and correct system operation verified.

When software is revised, the record of completion form must be updated to reflect the changes. If the authority having jurisdiction examines a control unit or record of completion form and finds a version of software or firmware that is different from the version installed at the time of the acceptance test, the results of the reacceptance test required by 14.4.2.4 should be reviewed.

23.3 System Features

The features required for a protected premises fire alarm system shall be documented as a part of the system design and shall be determined in accordance with 23.3.1 through 23.3.3.

This section of the Code requires the system designer to document the features and purposes of the fire alarm system. For small, uncomplicated systems, documentation might be accomplished by providing information on the record drawings. For other systems, the information is usually documented in a formal analysis. Whether the written analysis is called a design narrative, design analysis, basis of design report, or design brief, it should clearly explain the design objectives for the system and the decisions made to ensure that the design objectives are met.

23.3.1 Required Systems. Features for required systems shall be based on the requirements of other applicable codes or statutes that have been adopted by the enforcing jurisdiction.

23.3.2* Nonrequired (Voluntary) Systems and Components. The features for a nonrequired system shall be established by the system designer on the basis of the goals and objectives intended by the system owner.

A nonrequired system is installed for a specific purpose. Whoever makes the decision to install a nonrequired system must have specific reasons for installing the system. The designer must discuss fire protection goals with the owner to ensure they are in agreement with the type of fire alarm system and the expected performance of the system. This subsection requires the system designer to ensure that the nonrequired system meets the objectives of the system owner.

A.23.3.2 Nonrequired fire alarm features are defined in 3.3.171. These are fire alarm systems or components that are not required by the building or fire codes and are installed voluntarily by a building owner to meet site-specific fire safety objectives. There is a need to properly document the nonrequired system and components. Nonrequired components must be operationally compatible in harmony with other required components and must not be detrimental to the overall system performance. It is for this reason that 23.3.2.1 mandates that nonrequired (voluntary) systems and components meet the applicable installation, testing, and maintenance requirements of this Code. It is not the intent of the Code to have the installation of nonrequired (voluntary) systems or components trigger a requirement for the installation of additional fire alarm components or features in the building. For example, if a building owner voluntarily installs a fire alarm control unit to transmit sprinkler waterflow signals to a central station, that does not trigger a requirement to install other fire alarm system components or features, such as manual fire alarm boxes, occupant notification, or electronic supervision of sprinkler control valves. See also A.17.5.3.3 and A.18.1.5.

Alternatively, supervision and power requirements are required to be taken into account for the nonrequired components/systems on the required fire alarm systems.

FAQ What is a nonrequired system, and what requirements must it meet?

Nonrequired systems, addressed in 23.3.2, are systems that are installed to meet specific performance criteria desired by the owner. The building code, the fire code, or other NFPA standards may not mandate this performance; however, the system still must meet the requirements of *NFPA 72.* The intended performance needs to be documented so that the authority having jurisdiction can approve the final installation. Nonrequired systems that do not meet the requirements of the Code can create a false sense of security for owners and occupants who think they are protected by a code-compliant fire alarm system. Also important to understand is that the term *nonrequired* and the term *supplementary* have different meanings and are not interchangeable. Refer to the definitions of these terms in 3.3.171 and 3.3.289.

The requirements of 23.3.2 do not mean that a building owner who wants to install a fire alarm system in a particular area of a building for property protection must install a complete fire alarm system throughout the building. The Code contains specific guidance on the use of dedicated function fire alarm systems. See 3.3.105.4.2 for the definition of the term *dedicated function fire alarm system*. For example, if a building owner installs a fire detection and alarm system in a computer room for protection of the computer equipment, that system would have to meet the requirements of the Code for the area it protects. Documenting the rationale and design basis of the system is critical. Otherwise, an authority having jurisdiction may see the fire alarm system installed in the computer room and, not understanding that it was installed for specific property protection purposes, require the installation of additional devices and equipment throughout the building that extend coverage of the system beyond the original intent.

23.3.2.1 Nonrequired protected premises systems and components shall meet the requirements of this Code.

All fire alarm system installations are required to comply with the requirements of *NFPA 72* regardless of the reason that they are installed.

23.3.2.2 Nonrequired systems and components shall be identified on the record drawings required in 7.2.1(12).

This paragraph requires nonrequired systems and components to be identified on the record drawings. Note that Section 23.3 requires that the system features for both required and nonrequired systems be documented as a part of the system design. Nonrequired systems and components are often installed because the building owner has specific fire safety objectives, such as early fire detection in a computer room, warehouse, or other high-hazard or high-value area. The purpose and design basis of the system also should be documented for future reference if questions arise about why the system was installed. If the owner wishes to install a nonrequired building fire alarm system, then all the applicable Code requirements would apply.

23.3.3 Required Features.

The functions of a fire alarm system vary depending on the requirements of the applicable codes, the requirements of the authority having jurisdiction, and the objectives of the system owner. The Code does not require the provision of any specific features. The features of any particular system can include any or all of the features listed in 23.3.3.1.

23.3.3.1* Building Fire Alarm Systems. Protected premises fire alarm systems that serve the general fire alarm needs of a building or buildings shall include one or more of the following systems or functions:

(1) Manual fire alarm signal initiation
(2) Automatic fire alarm and supervisory signal initiation
(3) Monitoring of abnormal conditions in fire suppression systems
(4) Activation of fire suppression systems
(5) Activation of emergency control functions
(6) Activation of fire alarm notification appliances
(7) In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications
(8) Guard's tour supervisory service
(9) Process monitoring supervisory systems
(10) Activation of off-premises signals
(11) Combination systems

FAQ What is the purpose of a building fire alarm system?

A protected premises (local) fire alarm system, as defined in 3.3.105.4, is simply "a fire alarm system located at the protected premises." A building fire alarm system, as defined in 3.3.105.4.1, is "a protected premises fire alarm system that includes any of the features identified in 23.3.3.1 and that serves the general fire alarm needs of a building or buildings and that provides fire department or occupant notification or both." Note that in order to be a building fire alarm system, occupant notification, fire department notification, or both must be provided.

Remember that the Code does not require the installation of any type of fire alarm system in any type of occupancy. The requirements for installation of a fire alarm system come from other enabling codes or local requirements as explained in the commentary following A.23.1.1. This paragraph of the Code simply reinforces this fact.

A.23.3.3.1 The following functions are included in Annex A to provide guidelines for utilizing building systems and equipment in addition to proprietary fire alarm equipment in order to provide life safety and property protection. Building functions that should be initiated or controlled during a fire alarm condition include, but should not be limited to, the following:

(1) Elevator operation consistent with ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*
(2) Unlocking of stairwell and exit doors *(see* NFPA 80, *Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives,* and NFPA *101*, *Life Safety Code)*
(3) Release of fire and smoke dampers *(see* NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems,* and NFPA 90B, *Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems*)
(4) Monitoring and initiating of self-contained automatic fire extinguishing system(s) or suppression system(s) and equipment *(see* NFPA 11, *Standard for Low-, Medium-, and High-Expansion Foam*; NFPA 12, *Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems*; NFPA 12A, *Standard on Halon 1301 Fire Extinguishing Systems*; NFPA 13,

Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems; NFPA 14, *Standard for the Installation of Standpipe and Hose Systems*; NFPA 15, *Standard for Water Spray Fixed Systems for Fire Protection*; NFPA 17, *Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems*; NFPA 17A, *Standard for Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems;* and NFPA 750, *Standard on Water Mist Fire Protection Systems)*

23.3.3.2* Dedicated Function Fire Alarm Systems.

The term *dedicated function fire alarm system* was introduced in the 2007 edition of the Code, but the idea is not new. Several editions of the Code have contained provisions for installation of an FACU, designated as an "elevator recall control and supervisory control unit," to accomplish elevator recall and power shutdown. This paragraph of the Code applies to other functions that may require the use of a fire alarm system to accomplish specific objectives in buildings that are not otherwise required to have a fire alarm system. See 3.3.105.4.2 for the definition of a dedicated function fire alarm system.

A.23.3.3.2 Examples of dedicated function fire alarm systems would include an elevator recall control and supervisory control unit, as addressed in 21.3.2, or a system used specifically to monitor sprinkler waterflow and supervisory functions.

23.3.3.2.1 In facilities without a building fire alarm system, a dedicated function fire alarm system shall be permitted and shall not be required to include other functions or features of a building fire alarm system.

A dedicated function fire alarm system could be installed in a building that by code does not require a fire alarm system to be installed. It could provide monitoring of elevator recall initiating devices and activation of the related emergency control functions, such as designated level and alternate level recall.

FAQ What are examples of "other functions or features" that are not required to be included?

Paragraph 23.3.3.2.1 addresses the fact that just because this dedicated function fire alarm system is installed in the building, it is not required to include other functions or features of a building fire alarm system, such as these examples:

- Installing and connecting manual fire alarm boxes at the entrances or exits from the building to the dedicated function fire alarm system
- Installing and connecting audible and visible notification appliances throughout the building to the dedicated function fire alarm system
- Connecting the control unit to telephone lines and having it transmit signals off-site to a supervising station

Similarly, if a dedicated function fire alarm system is installed in a building that by code does not require a fire alarm system to monitor the sprinkler waterflow switches and sprinkler valve supervisory switches, it does not mean that this system is now required to operate like a building fire alarm system.

23.3.3.2.2 Where a dedicated function fire alarm system exists and a building fire alarm system is subsequently installed, the systems shall be interconnected and comply with 23.8.2.

The intent of the Code is that the building fire alarm system monitor the operation of dedicated function fire alarm systems and all other fire alarm systems or control units in the building.

These other systems would be monitored for conditions such as alarm, supervisory, and trouble by the building fire alarm system.

23.4 System Performance and Integrity

23.4.1 Purpose. Section 23.4 provides information that shall be used in the design and installation of protected premises fire alarm systems for the protection of life and property.

23.4.2 Circuit Designations. Initiating device circuits, notification appliance circuits, and signaling line circuits shall be designated by class, depending on the circuit's capability to continue to operate during specified fault conditions as indicated in Sections 23.5 through 23.7.

FAQ

Who is responsible for selection of a circuit class?

The Code requires the class of circuits to be designated in accordance with the classes of circuits and pathways defined in Chapter 12 but does not require the use of any specific class circuit. Unless another code or the authority having jurisdiction designates a class of circuit to be used, the designer is responsible for designating the circuit classifications. In the 2010 edition, significant revisions were made to this portion of the Code. The performance tables were removed and replaced by the information contained in Chapter 12. Where previous editions of the Code designated circuits by class and style, only class is used now. Additionally, where previous editions of the Code only designated Class A and Class B circuits, the Code describes the performance requirements for Class A, Class B, Class C, Class D, Class E, and Class X circuits. Another change is that the circuit class designations can now be applied to all types of fire alarm circuits, not just initiating device circuits, notification appliance circuits, and signaling line circuits.

The type of circuit selected by the designer should be based on consideration of the number of devices connected to the circuit, the amount of detection that would be lost during a fault condition, and the impact that the loss of detection would have on life safety or property protection. Furthermore, the selections can be based on the number and condition of occupants, the length of the circuit, and other factors.

The designer must carefully consider the performance objectives of the system and the influences listed in 23.4.3.2 when selecting the class for fire alarm system circuits. It is not required that a single class be selected and used throughout the system. Differing classes can be used in a system depending on the capabilities of the FACU and the design objectives for the system.

As mentioned, the circuit class and style tables have been removed. Tables 6.5, 6.6.1, and 6.7 in the 2007 edition of the Code, which had been a fixture for many editions of the Code, were removed entirely and replaced by the requirements of Chapter 12. However, note that these tables are still provided for reference in the 2013 edition of the Code as Tables A.12.3(a), A.12.3(b), and A.12.3(c).

The performance of a circuit depends on two factors: how the circuit is physically wired and how the FACU operates during the specified fault condition(s.) Chapter 12 provides the requirements for operation of the circuit under fault conditions as well as any specific physical arrangement of the circuit, such as requirements for a redundant pathway.

In addition to describing the performance characteristics of circuits and pathways by class, Chapter 12 also designates levels of survivability for circuits and pathways. Although Chapter 23 does not require the provision of any level of survivability of circuits and pathways, there are applications where it would be prudent design practice to provide a level of survivability. For example, circuits and pathways that control the actuation of a remote extinguishing system or the actuation of a critical fire safety control function may necessitate a level of survivability to meet site-specific fire safety objectives. Chapter 12 provides the means to designate the desired level of survivability.

Prescriptive requirements for pathway survivability appear in this Code for pathways included as a part of emergency communications systems (see 24.3.6 and 24.4.2.8.5.6) and part of public emergency alarm reporting systems (see 27.6.3.1.3). Additionally and important to note, where survivability of circuits (or pathways) is required by another section of the Code, equal protection is required to be provided for power supply circuits (see 10.6.11.3.1.3).

The designer is permitted and in some cases required to conduct an analysis, document the approach, and provide technical justification for the pathway survivability selected (see 23.10.2, A.24.3.6.3, 24.3.6.12, and 24.4.3.4.2). This is similar to where the Code identifies that the system designer is responsible for conducting an analysis to determine the level of class of pathways (see 7.3.9.1 and 23.4.3.1).

23.4.2.1 Specified fault conditions shall result in the annunciation of a trouble signal at the protected premises within 200 seconds as required in Section 12.6.

23.4.2.2* Where the power to a device is supplied over a separate circuit from the signaling line circuit or initiating device circuit, the operation of the power circuit shall meet the performance requirements of the initiating device circuit or signaling line circuit, unless different performance requirements are established in accordance with the evaluation in 23.4.3 and approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

In some cases, a fire alarm device is connected to a signaling line circuit but is supplied with operating power by a separate power circuit. Paragraph 23.4.2.2 requires that the power circuit meet the same performance requirements as the signaling line circuit. For example, if the signaling line circuit to which a smoke detector is attached is a Class A pathway as defined by Chapter 12, the power circuit to the smoke detector would have to be arranged in a manner that provides the same level of performance under the specified fault conditions as the signaling line circuit. The Code also recognizes that different performance requirements might be acceptable where an evaluation and approval of the authority having jurisdiction are provided.

A.23.4.2.2 The intent of this paragraph is to prevent situations where the signaling line circuit to a device is required to be one class of operation, while the power circuits, running in the same raceways and subject to the same threats, are wired to a lower class of operation. This means that it is possible to have power wiring connected to a device that is of a different class than the signaling line or initiating device circuits. One example of where meeting the same minimum performance requirements would still allow different classes of wiring is where the performance requirements are based on distance or the number of devices attached to the wires. For example, if the signaling line circuit supplies 200 devices and the performance requirement is that not more than 10 devices be lost to a wiring fault, then the class of wiring on the signaling line circuit will be Class A, with isolators to protect against shorts. Where the power wires never supply more than 10 devices, the power wires could be wired as Class B.

23.4.3 Pathway Classification.

See 3.3.190 for the defined term *path* (*pathways*). Also see Section 12.3 for pathway class designations.

23.4.3.1 The class of pathways shall be determined from an evaluation based on the path performance as required by governing laws, codes, standards, and a site-specific engineering analysis.

The Code does not require the use of any particular class of circuits. Unless a building code, the *Life Safety Code*, the building owner, or the authority having jurisdiction requires a specific circuit class, the choice is a design decision. The selection should be based on a careful evaluation of the site-specific conditions and needs of the facility. Establishing the performance objectives of the system in terms of life safety, property protection, and mission continuity is the first step in conducting the evaluation required by 23.4.3.1. (Also refer to the commentary following 23.4.2.) This evaluation should be documented in the design narrative, design analysis, basis of design report, design brief, or other documentation prepared by the designer as part of the overall system design documentation and included with the documentation required by Section 10.20 and 7.3.9.

Separate but related requirements concerning the reliability of the interconnecting signaling path are contained in Section 12.6 and involve monitoring the integrity of installation conductors. The concept of "T-tapping" is addressed in the related commentary (see 12.6.1). Although T-tapping is permitted for some types of fire alarm circuits and may offer some wiring convenience, this allowance should not dissuade the selection of circuits with a higher level of fault tolerance when the evaluation determines the need for them. Note that the designer may also choose to prohibit T-tapping of circuits that might permit it, such as Class B signaling line circuits.

A surge suppression device should protect any fire alarm circuit that extends outside the building envelope. At a minimum, the type and arrangement of the surge suppression should be as recommended by the manufacturer of the FACU.

23.4.3.2 When determining the integrity and reliability of the interconnecting signaling paths (circuits) installed within the protected premises, the following influences shall be considered:

(1) Transmission media used
(2) Length of the circuit conductors
(3) Total building area covered by, and the quantity of initiating devices and notification appliances connected to, a single circuit
(4) Effect of a fault in the fire alarm system that would hinder the performance objectives of the system that protects the occupants, mission, and property of the protected premises
(5) Nature of hazards present within the protected premises
(6) Functional requirements of the system necessary to provide the level of protection required for the system
(7) Size and nature of the population of the protected premises

FAQ What minimum factors must be considered in the evaluation required by 23.4.3.1?

The evaluation required in 23.4.3.1 must consider the factors in 23.4.3.2. The list in 23.4.3.2 is not all-inclusive, as the site-specific conditions may dictate that other factors be considered as well. Designers should avoid "putting all their eggs in one basket." For example, installing all initiating devices on a single signaling line circuit might be possible, but it may not be a good design practice in very large area facilities where all devices on the circuit could be affected by a single fault.

23.4.3.3 Results of the evaluation required by 23.4.3.1 shall be included with the documentation required by 7.3.9.

Paragraph 23.4.3.3 requires the system designer to record the evaluation required in 23.4.3.1 in the system documentation required by 7.3.9.1. The documentation should explain the rationale for selecting the class or style of each circuit.

23.5 Performance of Initiating Device Circuits (IDCs)

The assignment of class designations to initiating device circuits shall be based on their performance capabilities under abnormal (fault) conditions in accordance with the requirements for Class A or Class B pathways specified in Chapter 12.

Section 23.5 requires that initiating device circuits be Class A or Class B as described by Chapter 12. The circuits must also meet the performance requirements of 12.3.1 for Class A and 12.3.2 for Class B.

23.6 Performance of Signaling Line Circuits (SLCs)

The assignment of class designations to signaling line circuits shall be based on their performance capabilities under abnormal (fault) conditions in accordance with the requirements for Class A, Class B, or Class X pathways specified in Chapter 12.

Section 23.6 requires that signaling line circuits (SLCs) meet the requirements of Class A, Class B, or Class X as described by Chapter 12. The circuits must also meet the requirements of 12.3.1 for Class A, 12.3.2 for Class B, and 12.3.6 for Class X.

23.6.1* A single fault on a pathway connected to the addressable devices shall not cause the loss of more than 50 addressable devices.

Paragraph A.23.6 was deleted by a tentative interim amendment (TIA).

A.23.6.1 The intent is to clarify that this requirement applies only to SLCs that connect to addressable devices and not to SLCs that interconnect fire alarm control units (FACU).

Fire incidents have occurred where substantial losses were incurred due to the shorting and failure of an SLC damaged by fire prior to the activation of an alarm. In addition SLC shorts caused inadvertently as part of building operations, and activities can cause a catastrophic failure of the fire and life system to operate if a fire occurs subsequently to the occurrence of a fault that had not been corrected. A single short on an SLC of an *NFPA 72* 2013 fully code compliant system not only can disable the capability of the system to activate an alarm. But, in addition, the alarm notification appliances and critical life safety emergency control functions including atrium smoke control, stairwell pressurization, door unlocking, and HVAC shutdown can all be disabled as well. In some configurations, even off-premises alarm, trouble, and supervisory reporting functions can be disabled.

When an SLC is shorted, the results can be catastrophic in terms of loss of lives and property if a fire occurs.

The requirement in 23.6.1 has been introduced in the 2013 edition in order to attempt to solve the issue of continued operation of an SLC during a single fault condition. Depending on the type and location of a fault, the entire SLC or a portion of the SLC could be compromised; a wire-to-wire short on an SLC that is not equipped with short-circuit fault isolation will incapacitate the entire circuit, ceasing digital communication between the control unit and all addressable devices on the circuit.

This requirement does not intend to mandate that all fire alarm systems have Class A loops of 50 or fewer devices. The intent is to not permit a single fault on a pathway connected to the addressable devices to cause the loss of more than 50 addressable devices.

Fulfilling this requirement can be accomplished numerous ways, including, but not limited to, the following:

- Installing SLCs (Class A or B) with no more than 50 addressable devices per circuit

- Splitting an SLC with a module that permits SLCs to be split into multiple circuits and include isolators such that the circuit is made into smaller isolated Class A or Class B "legs" of a circuit with 50 or fewer addressable devices per circuit
- T-tapping a Class B signaling line circuit into a "star" configuration with isolator modules installed as the first device after each T-tap and keeping the smaller isolated Class B T-tapped "legs" of the circuit to 50 or fewer addressable devices per T-tap

This requirement applies to SLCs and the addressable devices that are connected to that SLC; it is not intended to apply to SLCs that interconnect fire alarm system control units and other equipment such as transponders, distributed amplifiers, and so forth.

Other concepts of limiting the quantity of addressable devices that would be lost from an SLC could include "SLC zoning" to break up an SLC into smaller pieces, thus reducing the quantity of devices that would be lost.

SLC zoning could be thought of in terms of, but not limited to, the following:

- Zone by floor, where an SLC zone would not span multiple floors
- Zone by floor area, where a large floor would be split into multiple SLC zones based on a maximum floor area size [e.g., 22,500 ft² (2090 m²) in area]
- Zone by fire barrier or smoke barrier compartment boundaries, where an SLC zone would not cross a fire or smoke barrier compartment boundary
- Zone by maximum length of circuit, where an SLC zone would not be longer than a predetermined length [e.g., 300 ft (91 m)]. Currently, there is no prescriptive requirement enforcing the concept of SLC zoning; however, it is a tool that could be used by system designers and incorporated into their everyday good engineering practices.

23.7 Performance of Notification Appliance Circuits (NACs)

The assignment of class designations to notification appliance circuits shall be based on their performance capabilities under abnormal (fault) conditions in accordance with the requirements for Class A, Class B, or Class X pathways specified in Chapter 12.

Section 23.7 requires that notification appliance circuits be Class A or Class B as described by Chapter 12. The circuits must also meet the performance requirements of 12.3.1 for Class A and 12.3.2 for Class B.

• 23.8 System Requirements

23.8.1 General.

23.8.1.1* Actuation Time. Actuation of alarm notification appliances or emergency voice communications, emergency control function interface devices, and annunciation at the protected premises shall occur within 10 seconds after the activation of an initiating device.

FAQ What time limit must be met for current fire alarm system alarm response?

The requirement in 23.8.1.1 is derived from the requirements found in 1-5.4.1.2 and 1-5.4.2.2 of the 1999 edition of the Code, which were added in the 1996 edition. The maximum time delay was changed from 90 seconds to 20 seconds for the 1999 Code because occupant notification and critical fire safety control functions, such as smoke control, elevator recall, and suppression system actuation, should not be delayed once a fire is detected. The 1999 edition required the time delay to be further reduced to a maximum of 10 seconds by January 1, 2002. This gradual reduction in the maximum time delay allowed manufacturers time to develop the technology to meet the new 10-second requirement. Only new systems installed after January 1, 2002, are required to meet the 10-second requirement. Existing systems using older control equipment might not meet this requirement and would be grandfathered under the Code in force when the system was originally installed.

A.23.8.1.1 Actuation of an initiating device is usually the instant at which a complete digital signal is achieved at the device, such as a contact closure. For smoke detectors or other automatic initiating devices, which can involve signal processing and analysis of the signature of fire phenomena, actuation means the instant when the signal analysis requirements are completed by the device or fire alarm control unit software.

A separate fire alarm control unit contemplates a network of fire alarm control units forming a single large system as defined in Section 23.8.

For some analog initiating devices, actuation is the moment that the fire alarm control unit interprets that the signal from an initiating device has exceeded the alarm threshold programmed into the fire alarm control unit.

For smoke detectors working on a system with alarm verification, where the verification function is performed in the fire alarm control unit, the moment of actuation of smoke detectors is sometimes determined by the fire alarm control unit.

It is not the intent of this paragraph to dictate the time frame for the local fire safety devices to complete their function, such as fan wind-down time, door closure time, or elevator travel time.

23.8.1.2* Presignal Feature.

A.23.8.1.2 A system provided with an alarm verification feature as permitted by 23.8.5.4.1 is not considered a presignal system, since the delay in the signal produced is 60 seconds or less and requires no human intervention.

23.8.1.2.1 Systems that have a presignal feature complying with 23.8.1.2 shall be permitted if approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

23.8.1.2.2 A presignal feature shall meet the following conditions:

(1) The initial fire alarm signals sound only in department offices, control rooms, fire brigade stations, or other constantly attended central locations.
(2) Where there is a connection to a remote location, the transmission of the fire alarm signal to the supervising station activates upon the initial alarm signal.
(3) Subsequent system operation is by either of the following means:
    (a) Human action that activates the general fire alarm
    (b) A feature that allows the control equipment to delay the general alarm by more than 1 minute after the start of the alarm processing

The remote location referred to in 23.8.1.2.2(2) is a supervising station or other location to which signals are transmitted. Presignal systems generally rely on human intervention to actuate the general alarm. Building or occupancy codes should be consulted to determine if the presignal feature is permitted. *NFPA 72* requires specific permission of the authority having jurisdiction to use the presignal feature, because this feature can delay the general alarm more than 1 minute. Paragraph 23.8.1.2.2 does not provide a maximum time delay with regard to resetting the system or actuating the general alarm (in contrast, positive alarm sequence fire alarm systems only permit a maximum of 180 seconds of delay after the initial 15-second delay to "acknowledge" the alarm signal on the control unit). Delaying the operation of the fire alarm system during a fire can have disastrous consequences. The presignal feature should be used only in very special situations where well-trained operators are on duty at all times. In many cases where a presignal feature is used, an immediate response to the fire area by a well-trained, fully equipped emergency response team is also provided. The following excerpt from NFPA *101*, Life Safety Code®, 2012 edition, is provided for reference.

> **9.6.3.3** Where permitted by Chapter 11 through Chapter 43, a presignal system shall be permitted where the initial fire alarm signal is automatically transmitted without delay to a municipal fire department, to a fire brigade (if provided), and to an on-site staff person trained to respond to a fire emergency. [***101:***9.6.3.3] [Presignal feature is referred to as "presignal system" in NFPA *101*.]

NFPA *101* permits a presignal system to be installed and permits the delay of automatic notification to occupants provided that the system automatically transmits the alarm to fire department personnel, to on-site fire brigade personnel, and to on-site personnel trained to investigate and respond.

If a presignal system is utilized in a building, combining the built-in delay with any other programmed fire alarm system initiating device delay is not advisable, such as the alarm verification feature (refer to 23.8.5.4.1); the actuation of multiple devices to initiate an alarm, often referred to as "cross-zoning" (refer to 23.8.5.4.3); or the positive alarm sequence (refer to 23.8.1.3). The intent of these Code sections is not to permit multiple or compounded delays to be programmed into the system thus further delaying occupant notification and fire department response.

23.8.1.3 Positive Alarm Sequence.

The positive alarm sequence addressed by 23.8.1.3 provides a timed delay of a general alarm signal in a building and at a supervising station. This delay gives a trained responder up to 3 minutes (i.e., 180 seconds) to investigate the cause of an alarm signal after acknowledging the initial alarm signal within 15 seconds of receipt. The time limits to acknowledge the alarm signal and reset the system are designed to help eliminate the total reliance on human intervention (as typical in presignal systems) to actuate the alarm, especially when personnel are not available to acknowledge, investigate, and reset the alarm. Building or occupancy codes should be consulted to determine if a positive alarm sequence is permitted; *NFPA 72* requires specific permission of the authority having jurisdiction to use a positive alarm sequence. The following excerpt from NFPA *101,* 2012 edition, is provided for reference.

> **9.6.3.4** Where permitted by Chapter 11 through Chapter 43, a positive alarm sequence shall be permitted, provided that it is in accordance with *NFPA 72, National Fire Alarm Code.* [***101:***9.6.3.4]

If a positive alarm sequence system is utilized in a building combining the built-in delay with any other programmed fire alarm system initiating device delay is not advisable, such as the alarm verification feature (refer to 23.8.5.4.1); the actuation of multiple devices to initiate an alarm, often referred to as "cross-zoning" (refer to 23.8.5.4.3); or the presignal feature (refer to 23.8.1.2). The intent of these Code sections is not to permit multiple or compounded delays to be programmed into the system thus further delaying occupant notification and fire department response.

Exhibit 23.1 illustrates the positive alarm sequence.

23.8.1.3.1 Systems that have positive alarm features complying with 23.8.1.3 shall be permitted if approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

23.8.1.3.1.1 The positive alarm sequence operation shall comply with the following:

(1) To initiate the positive alarm sequence operation, the signal from an automatic fire detection device selected for positive alarm sequence operation shall be acknowledged at the fire alarm control unit by trained personnel within 15 seconds of annunciation.

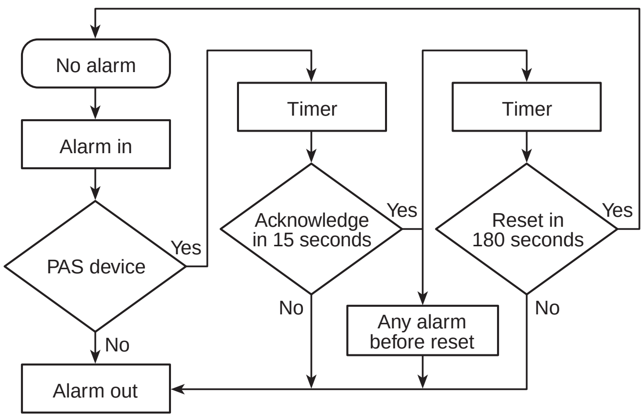


EXHIBIT 23.1

Positive Alarm Sequence (PAS) Flow Chart. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA)

(2) If the signal is not acknowledged within 15 seconds, notification signals in accordance with the building evacuation or relocation plan and remote signals shall be automatically and immediately activated.

(3) If the positive alarm sequence operation is initiated in accordance with 23.8.1.3.1.1(1), trained personnel shall have an alarm investigation phase of up to 180 seconds to evaluate the fire condition and reset the system.

(4) If the system is not reset during the alarm investigation phase, notification signals in accordance with the building evacuation or relocation plan and remote signals shall be automatically and immediately activated.

(5) If a second automatic fire detector selected for positive alarm sequence is actuated during the alarm investigation phase, notification signals in accordance with the building evacuation or relocation plan and remote signals shall be automatically and immediately activated.

(6)* If any other fire alarm initiating device is actuated, notification signals in accordance with the building evacuation or relocation plan and remote signals shall be automatically and immediately activated.

A.23.8.1.3.1.1(6) "Immediately activated" means there are no delays imposed by the system other than the processing of the signal in accordance with 23.8.1.1.

23.8.1.3.1.2* The system shall provide means for bypassing the positive alarm sequence.

A.23.8.1.3.1.2 The bypass means is intended to enable automatic or manual day, night, and weekend operation.

FAQ What is the purpose of the positive alarm sequence bypass means?

After acknowledgment of the alarm, actuation of the alarm functions is delayed for up to 180 seconds. The bypass provides a method for staff members to actuate the alarm as soon as they determine it is required, without needing to wait for the delay to expire. The positive alarm sequence bypass is typically located at the fire alarm system control unit or at a remote LCD annunciator, depending on where the trained personnel are required to be stationed based on the building evacuation or relocation plan.

As an alternative to actuating the bypass to initiate the alarm prior to the automatic delay expiring, the personnel conducting the investigation can manually actuate a manual fire alarm box, and the occupant notification appliances will operate immediately [refer to 23.8.1.3.1.1(6)]. In addition, the bypass means could be utilized to bypass the positive alarm sequence operation, thus enabling the fire alarm system to operate without delays (i.e., 15 seconds/180 seconds) associated with positive alarm sequence. Refer to A.23.8.1.3.1.2.

Not all manufacturers provide positive alarm sequence on their equipment. The system designer and the authority having jurisdiction should check the listing to ensure the feature is listed.

23.8.2* Fire Alarm Control Units.

A.23.8.2 This Code addresses field installations that interconnect two or more listed control units, possibly from different manufacturers, that together fulfill the requirements of this Code.

Such an arrangement should preserve the reliability, adequacy, and integrity of all alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals and interconnecting circuits intended to be in accordance with the provisions of this Code.

Where interconnected control units are in separate buildings, consideration should be given to protecting the interconnecting wiring from electrical and radio frequency interference.

The term *fire alarm control unit* is defined in 3.3.102 as "a component of the fire alarm system, provided with primary and secondary power sources, which receives signals from initiating devices or other fire alarm control units, and processes these signals to determine part or all of the required fire alarm system output function(s)." This equipment must comply with the requirements of 23.8.2 and be interconnected so that the system functions as a whole. The requirements of 23.8.2 cover the interconnection, monitoring, and compatibility of FACUs. The requirements apply to the interconnection of two or more FACUs regardless of whether the control units are from the same or different manufacturers.

23.8.2.1 Fire alarm systems shall be permitted to combine all detection, notification, and auxiliary functions in a single system or be a combination of component subsystems.

23.8.2.2 Except as permitted in 23.8.2.3, the fire alarm systems components shall be permitted to share control equipment or shall be able to operate as stand-alone subsystems, but, in any case, they shall be arranged to function as a single system.

Many reasons can be given for having multiple fire alarm subsystems and control units in a building. A building may need additional notification appliances and power supplies to conform to new requirements, such as those of the Americans with Disabilities Act and the Architectural Barriers Act (*ADA-ABA Guidelines*), and the existing fire alarm system cannot accommodate the changes. A lack of spare parts, manufacturer support, or simple economics may also make modifying or expanding an existing FACU or system configuration unfeasible. As a consequence, a building addition or upgrade might be designed with a new, separate FACU. The new unit must function as if it were part of the original building fire alarm system. In addition, some newer systems consist of two or more subsystems (control units) connected to a single- or multiple-master control unit(s). These newer systems must also be arranged to function as a single system. Also note that dedicated function FACUs and releasing service FACUs, defined in 3.3.102.2.1 and 3.3.102.2.2, respectively, fall under the scope of 23.8.2 and are required to be interconnected with the building's master FACU if a building fire alarm system exists or is being installed.

The intent of 23.8.2.2 is not to propose the installation of multiple small, interconnected FACUs to avoid installation of a single, larger FACU in a new fire alarm system installation. The intent of the Code is that the system designer use appropriately sized equipment designed to meet the site-specific needs of the facility. For some applications a single control unit may be the most appropriate design approach. In other situations, a distributed system using multiple interconnected control units may best meet the design objectives. Paragraph 23.8.2.2 of the Code simply details the requirement that all connected control units must function as a single fire alarm system.

23.8.2.3 Where the building is not served by a building fire alarm system, independent dedicated function fire alarm systems and/or releasing fire alarm systems shall not be required to be interconnected to function as a single system.

Connecting multiple dedicated function FACUs in the absence of a building fire alarm system serves little purpose since each dedicated function fire alarm system is designed to function as a stand-alone system to accomplish its assigned tasks.

23.8.2.4 All component subsystems shall be capable of simultaneous, full-load operation without degradation of the required overall system performance.

It is not acceptable to design a fire alarm system with multiple components, such as multiple FACUs, and to size individual components, such as circuits or batteries, based on the assumption that only a portion(s) of the system will be operating at any one time. For example, the amplifiers serving an in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system typically installed in a high-rise building must be designed to power all the speakers that it supports under full-load conditions, not just the speakers on the fire floor, the floor above, and the floor below.

23.8.2.5 The method of interconnection of fire alarm control units shall meet the monitoring requirements of Section 12.6 and *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Article 760, and shall be achieved by the following recognized means:

(1) Electrical contacts listed for the connected load
(2) Data communications over a signaling line circuit(s) dedicated to the fire alarm or shared with other premises operating systems
(3) Other listed methods

The Code recognizes that signaling line circuits are the predominant means for interconnecting multiple FACUs and other premises control and management systems, which is reflected in 23.8.2.5(2). The requirements in 23.8.2.6 address connections to other premises systems.

23.8.2.6 Where the signaling line circuit is shared by other premises operating systems, operation shall be in accordance with 23.8.4.

Where a signaling line circuit is shared by another premises operating system, it must comply with the requirements for combination systems in 23.8.4 in addition to the requirements of 23.8.2.6.1 and 23.8.2.6.2.

Fire alarm systems can be connected to or be part of an integrated building management system. Such systems may control energy management, heating, ventilation, air conditioning, security, fire alarm, mass notification, and other functions. The requirements are intended to ensure that when fire alarm system functions are part of a larger, integrated system or network, fire alarm service is not impaired by a malfunction of another system or network component. Fire alarm systems combined with the functions of other building systems must still meet all the requirements of a stand-alone fire alarm system, including performance, power supplies, and response times.

All signal control and transport equipment (routers and servers) must be listed for fire alarm service or comply with the conditions listed in 23.8.2.6.1(1) through 23.8.2.6.1(5). Paragraph 23.8.2.6.2 requires the use of a listed barrier gateway. Refer to the defined term *gateway* in 3.3.116.

23.8.2.6.1 All signal control and transport equipment (such as routers and servers) located in a critical fire alarm or emergency control function interface device signaling path shall be listed for fire alarm service, unless the following conditions are met:

(1) The equipment meets the performance requirements of 10.3.5.
(2) The equipment is provided with primary and secondary power and monitored for integrity as required in Section 10.6, 10.6.9, Section 10.19, and Section 12.6.
(3) All programming and configuration ensure a fire alarm system actuation time as required in 23.8.1.1.
(4) System bandwidth is monitored to confirm that all communications between equipment that is critical to the operation of the fire alarm system or emergency control function interface devices take place within 10 seconds; failure shall be indicated within 200 seconds.
(5) Failure of any equipment that is critical to the operation of the fire alarm system or emergency control function interface devices is indicated at the master fire alarm control unit within 200 seconds.

23.8.2.6.2 A listed barrier gateway, integral with or attached to each control unit or group of control units, as appropriate, shall be provided to prevent the other systems from interfering with or controlling the fire alarm system.

Paragraph 3.3.116 defines a gateway as "a device that is used in the transmission of serial data (digital or analog) from the fire alarm control unit to other building system control units, equipment, or networks and/or from other building system control units to the fire alarm control unit."

An example of utilizing a listed barrier gateway is the interconnection of the fire alarm system network to a building automation system network. Typically, building automation systems utilize a communications protocol, such as Modbus®, BACnet™, LonWorks™, EtherNet/IP, or some proprietary communication protocol like Metasys® by Johnson Controls, to communicate between control equipment, workstations, and other peripherals. It is often advantageous for the fire alarm system to provide information to the building management system in order to initiate some action upon receipt of an alarm signal. A listed barrier gateway provides that communication path between the two systems. On the fire alarm side of the gateway, the information passed is one way, not permitting control of the fire alarm system with regard to acknowledging of alarm signals, silencing of notification appliances, resetting the control unit from a building automation workstation (as an example); and not permitting programming changes from that same workstation. This information is supplemental annunciation only. The information passed from the fire alarm system might include the type of device that is active (i.e., smoke detector, waterflow switch, etc.), the device signal (i.e., alarm, supervisory, etc.), and the location of the device (i.e., floor, room, etc.). This information can be displayed on the building automation system annunciators and workstations, as well as initiate the building automation system to actuate some action, such as initiate start of exhaust fans.

23.8.2.7 Each interconnected fire alarm control unit shall be separately monitored for alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions.

FAQ If a remote FACU experiences a trouble condition, what type of signal should be indicated at the master FACU?

Each interconnected FACU must be monitored for alarm signals first, then each interconnected FACU must be monitored for supervisory conditions. This requirement means that if the satellite FACU interconnected to the master FACU experiences a trouble condition for any reason, that trouble condition reports to the master FACU as a supervisory condition, indicating the interconnected FACU is off-normal. Supervisory signals reported to the satellite FACU would also report to the master FACU as supervisory conditions.

The interconnection between the FACUs is monitored for integrity, and if that circuit experiences a fault condition, a trouble condition for that circuit (zone or point) is indicated at the master FACU. See also Section 10.7 for descriptions of the distinct signal requirements and the priority of the signals.

In addressable systems, this interconnection could be accomplished with three separate addressable monitor modules from the master FACU monitoring a separate alarm, supervisory, and trouble relay at the satellite FACU. Annunciation on the master FACU might resemble the following:

- Alarm on satellite FACU reports on the master FACU as an alarm signal and displays the message "Alarm Satellite FACU"
- Supervisory on satellite FACU reports on the master FACU as a supervisory signal and displays the message "Supervisory Satellite FACU"
- Trouble on satellite FACU reports on the master FACU as a trouble signal and displays the message "Trouble Satellite FACU"

23.8.2.8 Interconnected fire alarm control unit alarm signals shall be permitted to be monitored by zone or by combined common signals.

The protected premises may be a single building or a group of buildings, such as a campus setting that includes office, research, or educational buildings. In a campus setting where multiple buildings are considered to be the protected premises, each building may have an FACU that reports to a master FACU in one of the buildings. Due to renovations at different times, a single building may have multiple FACUs. A building may also have a master FACU serving the building along with FACUs that control specific emergency control functions, such as release of a special extinguishing system (dedicated function or releasing fire alarm system), as noted previously.

Where multiple FACUs are within the protected premises, the Code permits the designation of a main or master fire alarm panel for the building, with other FACUs reporting to the master FACU as if they were single initiating devices. For example, an FACU in a computer room that controls fire detection and actuation of a clean agent fire suppression system may report to the main building FACU as a single zone or component. In other words, when the computer room system has an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal, it would annunciate the appropriate signal on the main building FACU as "Computer Room FACU Alarm," "Computer Room FACU Supervisory," or "Computer Room FACU Trouble." Going to the computer room control unit would then be necessary to determine the specific alarm, supervisory, or trouble condition indicated on the computer room control unit. Important to note is that where zoning and annunciation are a concern or where signals are transmitted to a supervising station, the requirements of 10.18.5 and 26.2.6 apply and each building must be indicated separately for these functions.

23.8.2.9 Protected premises fire alarm control units shall be capable of being reset or silenced only from the fire alarm control unit at the protected premises, unless otherwise permitted by 23.8.2.10.

Remotely resetting fire alarm control equipment without first investigating the premises is a dangerous practice. A serious fire could be in progress that is not evident at the remote reset location. Delayed alarms are a contributing factor to many large loss-of-life and large property-loss fires. Paragraph 23.8.2.9 requires on-site restoration to normal of fire alarm systems. If a fire alarm system is in alarm or trouble, a technician should be required to investigate the cause of that alarm or trouble first and then reset the FACU. In most cases, the desire for remote reset capability is to accommodate a method of conveniently handling false alarms. A much better way to eliminate false or unwanted alarms is to properly design, install, and maintain the system.

23.8.2.10 Remote resetting and silencing of a fire alarm control unit from other than the protected premises shall be permitted with the approval of the authority having jurisdiction.

However, under very unusual circumstances, the capability to reset or silence the fire alarm system from a remote location may be necessary. Paragraph 23.8.2.10 permits this feature only when the authority having jurisdiction has been provided with the reasons for permitting remote reset and agrees with the reasons. Few situations would warrant remote reset capability, and the authority having jurisdiction should be thoroughly convinced that the remote silence or reset capability will not compromise immediate response to an alarm signal. Remotely resetting fire alarm control equipment without first investigating the premises is a dangerous practice. A serious fire could be in progress that is not evident at the remote reset location.

23.8.3 Protected Premises Fire Alarm Systems Interconnected with Dwelling Unit Fire Warning Equipment.

23.8.3.1 A protected premises fire alarm system shall be permitted to be interconnected to a household fire alarm system(s) for the purpose of activating the notification appliances connected to the household fire alarm system(s).

Where dwelling units, such as apartments or condominiums, are equipped with systems that comply with Chapter 29, the protected premises fire alarm system serving the apartment building as a whole may be used to actuate the notification appliances connected to the individual household fire alarm systems located in the dwelling units, as permitted by 23.8.3.1. Without this provision, the installation of both "building system" and "dwelling system" notification appliances might be required. Paragraph 23.8.3.1 permits notification appliances to be used as part of both the building fire alarm system and the household fire alarm system. Note that this provision applies to household fire alarm systems, defined in 3.3.105.2, and not to single- and multiple-station alarms.

23.8.3.2 The activation of dwelling unit smoke alarms shall only be permitted to be displayed at the protected premises control unit and annunciators as supervisory signals.

Paragraph 23.8.3.2 permits, but does not require, the display of alarm signals on the protected premises FACU. The dwelling smoke alarms are not required to actuate the building fire alarm system, and in most cases this would not be desirable or permitted, because every accidental alarm in an individual dwelling unit would cause actuation of the building fire alarm system. However, some building codes require the smoke alarms to be connected to the building fire alarm system and arranged to initiate a supervisory signal when actuated. Also refer to 23.8.3.5.

Single- and multiple-station smoke alarms are not part of a fire alarm system, and the interconnecting circuits of these alarms are not monitored for integrity in the same manner that system components are monitored. One means for connecting smoke alarms with a building fire alarm system is through the use of an auxiliary output module furnished separately from the individual smoke alarms. The auxiliary output module is typically interconnected in the smoke alarm circuit in the same way as the individual smoke alarms. The module usually provides a relay contact output that can be used to operate equipment such as visual notification appliances or be used for remote annunciation. The use of these modules is subject to any limitations stated in the manufacturer's published instructions and to the limits of the number of devices specified in 29.8.2.

23.8.3.3 If interconnected, an alarm condition at the protected premises fire alarm system shall cause the fire alarm notification appliance(s) within the family living unit of the dwelling unit fire warning system to become energized. The notification appliances shall remain energized until the protected premises fire alarm system is silenced or reset.

23.8.3.4 The interconnection circuit or path from the protected premises fire alarm system to the dwelling unit fire warning system shall be monitored for integrity by the protected premises fire alarm system in accordance with Section 12.6.

23.8.3.5 An alarm condition occurring at the dwelling unit fire warning system or the operation of any test switches provided as part of the dwelling unit fire warning equipment shall not cause an alarm condition at the protected premises fire alarm system.

23.8.4 Combination Systems.

A combination system, as defined in 3.3.105.1, is a fire alarm system in which components are used, in whole or in part, in common with a non–fire signaling system. Also refer to A.3.3.105.1.

23.8.4.1* Fire alarm systems shall be permitted to share components, equipment, circuitry, and installation wiring with non–fire alarm systems.

A.23.8.4.1 The provisions of 23.8.4.1 apply to types of equipment used in common for fire alarm systems, such as fire alarm, sprinkler supervisory, or guard's tour service, and for other systems, such as burglar alarm or coded paging systems, and to methods of circuit wiring common to both types of systems. The intent of connecting non-fire systems with the fire alarm system is often to cause the non-fire systems to react appropriately when signaled by the fire alarm system.

Virtually anything can be combined with a fire alarm system as long as it does not interfere with the operation of the fire alarm system. Combined features can include security functions, HVAC control, paging, lighting, and more. The *only* exception to this noninterference requirement is when a mass notification system either is installed as a stand-alone system interfaced with the fire alarm system or is integrated with the fire alarm system. (The mass notification system is permitted to override a fire alarm signal in accordance with 23.8.4.6 and Section 10.7.) Typically, only fire alarm system performance (and now mass notification system performance) is regulated by codes and standards because failure of other systems does not normally have an adverse impact on life safety in the building. New building network communications technologies such as BACnet™ and LONWorks™ have blurred the lines between fire alarm systems and other building systems.

FAQ What requirements apply when fire alarm signaling line circuits are shared with other systems?

As a minimum, where fire alarm system signaling line circuits are shared with other systems, the requirements of 23.8.2.6 and 23.8.4.3 apply and wiring for other systems must comply with the requirements of *NFPA 70*®, *National Electrical Code*® (*NEC*®). Special care must be taken to ensure that the function or malfunction of other systems does not interfere with the operation of the fire alarm system.

23.8.4.2 Operation of a non–fire system function(s) originating within a connected non-fire system shall not interfere with the required operation of the fire alarm system, unless otherwise permitted by this Code.

While fire alarm systems are permitted to share circuits with non–fire alarm systems or components, 23.8.4.2 requires the circuits to be arranged such that operation of the non–fire alarm system equipment or a non–fire alarm system component does not impair the operation of the fire alarm system. For example, actuation of a security device on a shared circuit must not impair operation of the fire alarm system. Extensive testing may be required to ensure that this requirement is met under all possible operating conditions and all possible combinations of events. In other words, on a shared circuit, fire alarm functions must take priority over operation of the other equipment or components on the circuit. The only exception to this requirement is where signals dealing with another life safety system, such as a mass notification system, might take priority over fire alarm signals, as addressed in 23.8.4.6 and Section 10.7.

• **23.8.4.3*** For non–fire alarm equipment listed to the performance requirements specified in 10.3.5, the requirements of 23.8.4.3.1 through 23.8.4.3.3 shall apply.

Requirements for non–fire alarm equipment used in a combination system are addressed in two parts. Equipment that is listed to the performance requirements of 10.3.5 is addressed in 23.8.4.3, and equipment that is not listed to the performance requirements of 10.3.5 is addressed in 23.8.4.4.

A.23.8.4.3 For systems such as carbon monoxide detection, fire extinguisher electronic monitoring device, emergency communication (mass notification), or intrusion, much of the benefit of a combination system comes from being able to use common wiring. If the equipment in the combination system is of equivalent quality to fire alarm equipment, and the system monitors the wiring and equipment in the same way as fire alarm equipment, then sharing of wiring is permitted. If the equipment is not of equivalent quality, isolation between the systems would be required.

23.8.4.3.1 The equipment shall be permitted to be attached to a fire alarm circuit, either among the fire alarm devices or as a branch or extension of the fire alarm pathways, when the following requirements are met:

(1) All the equipment and pathways shall meet the monitoring for integrity requirements of 10.6.9, Section 10.19, and Section 12.6.
(2) All the equipment and pathways shall be maintained by a single service organization.
(3) All the equipment and pathways shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of this Code.
(4) All the equipment shall be listed as compatible with the fire alarm equipment or the equipment shall have an interface listed as compatible with the fire alarm equipment.

For equipment that is not listed for fire alarm service, 23.8.4.3 requires that it be demonstrated that it is not possible for the connected equipment to adversely affect the operation of the fire alarm system under any circumstance. Maintenance operations or failure of systems connected to the fire alarm system could result in impairment of the fire alarm system. Equipment that is not required for the operation of the fire alarm system must not impair operation of the fire alarm system if it is removed or malfunctions.

In order to display more detailed information than may be available from the fire alarm system alone, users have been known to connect fire alarm systems to supplementary equipment (such as desktop computers and monitors) that are not listed for fire alarm use. In some installations, software or firmware changes or other repairs to the non–fire alarm equipment have delayed fire alarm signals or prevented their display altogether. Improperly interconnected systems can prevent one or more fire alarm system functions from operating as intended.

Where a non–fire alarm system component is listed as being compatible with fire alarm equipment, the listing agency investigates compatibility with a fire alarm system, as well as electrical characteristics and other factors, to ensure that the product is suitable for the purpose.

23.8.4.3.2 If the equipment is attached to the fire alarm system via separate pathways, then short circuits or open circuits in this equipment, or between this equipment and the fire alarm system pathways, shall not impede or impair the monitoring for integrity of the fire alarm system or prevent alarm, supervisory, or fire safety control signal transmissions.

23.8.4.3.3 Grounds in this equipment, or between this equipment and the fire alarm system pathways, shall be reported, annunciated, and corrected in the same manner as grounds in the rest of the fire alarm system.

23.8.4.4 For non-fire equipment not listed to the performance requirements specified in 10.3.5, the requirements of 23.8.4.4.1 through 23.8.4.4.3 shall apply.

23.8.4.4.1 Short circuits or open circuits in the equipment, or between the equipment and the fire alarm system pathways, shall not impede or impair the monitoring for integrity of the fire alarm system or prevent alarm, supervisory, or fire safety control signal transmissions.

Common wiring can include circuits supplying device power, initiating device circuits, signaling line circuits, or notification appliance circuits. A short, ground, or open circuit caused by the non–fire alarm equipment in the common wiring must not prevent the receipt of alarm, supervisory, or trouble signals or prevent the fire alarm system notification appliances from operating.

23.8.4.4.2 Grounds in this equipment, or between this equipment and the fire alarm system pathways, shall be reported, annunciated, and corrected in the same manner as grounds in the rest of the fire alarm system.

23.8.4.4.3 Removal, replacement, failure, maintenance procedures, or ground on this hardware, software, or circuits shall not impair the required operation of the fire alarm system.

23.8.4.5 Speakers used as alarm notification appliances on fire alarm systems shall also be permitted to be used for emergency communications systems when installed in accordance with Chapter 24.

Fire alarm speakers can be used for other emergency communications provided they are installed in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 24. Chapter 24 also permits the use of the speakers for general paging, music, and other nonemergency functions provided the requirements of 24.3.5.2 are satisfied. In the 2010 edition of the Code, all requirements for voice-capable systems were moved to Chapter 24.

23.8.4.6* In combination systems, fire alarm signals shall be distinctive, clearly recognizable, and shall be indicated as follows in descending order of priority, except where otherwise required by other governing laws, codes or standards, or by other parts of this Code:

(1) Signals associated with life safety
(2) Signals associated with property protection
(3) Trouble signals associated with life and/or property protection
(4) All other signals

A.23.8.4.6 Examples of signal classification are provided in Table A.23.8.4.6. This is not all-inclusive or prescriptive but is meant to illustrate a potential classification scheme. Actual schemes may vary depending upon the response plan and/or requirements of the authority having jurisdiction. Mass notification systems are allowed to take priority over the fire alarm audible notification message or signal. This is intended to allow the mass notification system to prioritize emergency signals on the basis of risk to building occupants. The designer should specify the desired operation, in particular, as to what should occur immediately after the mass notification message has completed.

TABLE A.23.8.4.6 *Examples of Signal Classification*

Life Safety	*Property Protection*	*Trouble*	*Other*
Fire alarm signals	Security signals	Battery fault	HVAC signals
Carbon monoxide alarm signals	Supervisory signals	AC power failure	Occupancy
Code blue signals	Access control	IDC faults	
Panic alarms		NAC faults	
Hazmat signals		SLC faults	
Severe weather warnings			
Flood alarms			
Mass notification signals			
Holdup alarm signals			

Exhibit 23.2 shows a combination system that includes mass notification system components.

FAQ

Must separate notification appliances always be used for non–fire functions?

The requirement in 23.8.4.6 does not necessarily mean that separate notification appliances are required. A single appliance may be used if it can provide different, distinctive signals and the fire alarm signal takes precedence over all other signals (with the exception of emergency signals from a mass notification system). Where speakers are used, the requirements of 23.8.4.5 must be observed. Note that visible notification appliances for fire alarm signaling only or to signal complete evacuation must be clear or nominal white in accordance with 18.5.3.4. The use of another color for other applications would require a separate appliance. See A.18.5.3.4 and 18.5.3.5.

This Code addresses the allowance for mass notifications systems to take priority over fire alarm signals. (See Section 10.7 and 24.4.3.14.) This recognizes that emergency situations such as terrorist attacks can be more of a priority than even a fire and that the fire alarm signal may need to be overridden by signals from the mass notification system. Table A.23.8.4.6 provides examples of how various types of signals should be prioritized for compliance with 23.8.4.6. System integration and event prioritization add extensively to the complexity of the system, and careful planning and coordination will be required to ensure that the system will properly respond to these situations.

Carbon monoxide alarm signals were added to Table A.23.8.4.6 and classified as life safety signals. Carbon monoxide alarm signals are specifically identified to coordinate with the change in NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment,* and subsequent changes to *NFPA 72* to differentiate carbon monoxide alarm signals from other signals.

23.8.4.7 If the authority having jurisdiction determines that the information being displayed or annunciated on a combination system is excessive and is causing confusion and delayed response to a fire emergency, the authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to require

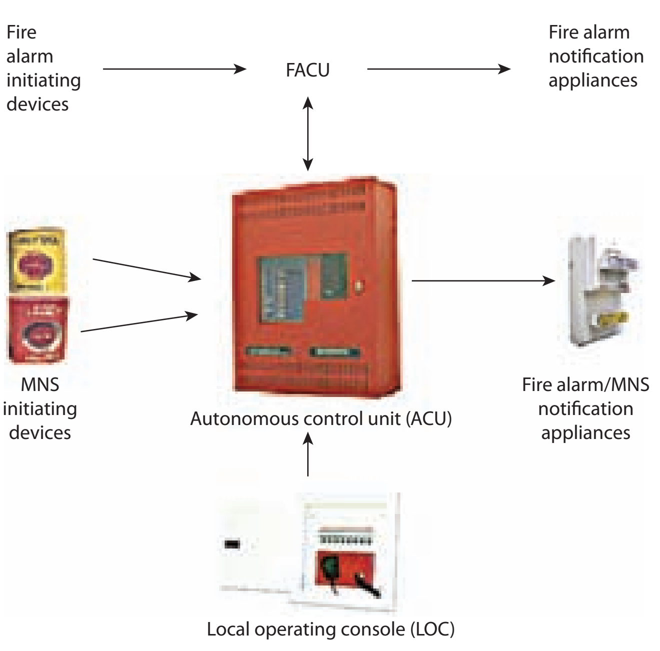


EXHIBIT 23.2
Combination Fire and Mass Notification System (MNS). (Source: Cooper Wheelock, Inc. dba Cooper Notification, Long Branch, NJ)

that the display or annunciation of information for the fire alarm system be separate from, and have priority in accordance with, 23.8.4.6, over information for the non–fire alarm systems.

Causing an operator to scroll through many non–fire alarm system events, such as door opening or closure signals, can result in a delay in identifying and responding to fire alarm signals. If fire alarm signals cannot be easily identified and displayed on a priority basis, the authority having jurisdiction may require a separate display for the fire alarm signals. Under the requirements for listing FACUs to ANSI/UL 864, *Standard for Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems,* systems are required to visually identify the zone of origin of the status change. The visual annunciation must be capable of displaying all zones that have a status change. However, if all status changes are not displayed simultaneously, the display must indicate the initial status change for the highest priority signal. An indication for each type (i.e., alarm, supervisory, trouble) of active non-displayed changes must be continuously visible during any off-normal condition, and the non-displayed status changes must be capable of being displayed by manual operation. In one recent case, when responding fire department personnel found no indication of fire where a manual fire alarm box had been actuated, the manual fire alarm box was reset, but the control unit remained in the alarm condition. Personnel then manually scrolled the alarm screen and found that a smoke detector in an office had alarmed and that a fire was in the office.

23.8.4.8* Signals from carbon monoxide detectors and carbon monoxide detection systems transmitted to a fire alarm system shall be indicated as a carbon monoxide alarm signal.

Exception: When in accordance with the building's response plan, evacuation plan, fire safety plan, or similar documentation, signals from carbon monoxide detectors and carbon monoxide detection systems transmitted to a fire alarm system shall be permitted to be supervisory signals.

A.23.8.4.8 See NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment*, for more information.

Paragraph 23.8.4.8 has been revised to coordinate with the changes in NFPA 720 to differentiate actuation of carbon monoxide detectors as carbon monoxide alarm signals.

NFPA 720 defines a carbon monoxide alarm signal as "a signal indicating a concentration of carbon monoxide at or above the alarm threshold that could pose a risk to the life safety of the occupants and that requires immediate action." NFPA 720 also defines a *supervisory signal* as "a signal indicating the need for action in connection with a pre-alarm condition, or in connection with the supervision of protected premises carbon monoxide safety functions or equipment, or the maintenance features of related systems."

The concern is that, if actuation of a carbon monoxide detector (monitored by a fire alarm system) is displayed as a supervisory signal, it might not receive the priority that is needed. Actuation of a carbon monoxide detector could indicate a life-threatening situation for occupants within the space with the need for immediate action. This is the reason for the differentiation in signal classification in NFPA 720. *NFPA 72* has been revised to coordinate with the change in signal classification.

The intent of the Code is not necessarily to require that carbon monoxide alarm signals initiate building-wide evacuation and occupant notification or transmit signals to the fire department or off-site to a supervising station; however, these responses might occur based on the building's response plan, the evacuation plan, the fire safety plan, or similar documentation.

If carbon monoxide detectors are connected to the fire alarm system, 23.8.4.8 requires the detector to initiate a carbon monoxide alarm. NFPA 720 generally requires occupant notification throughout the protected premises (see NFPA 720, 5.8.6.2) and requires carbon monoxide alarm signals to be a distinctive alarm signal pattern (see NFPA 720, 5.8.6.5).

An exception was added to 23.8.4.8 to permit carbon monoxide alarm signals to be displayed as supervisory signals on the fire alarm system display if in accordance with the building's response plan, evacuation plan, fire safety plan, or similar documentation.

Under all circumstances, response to carbon monoxide alarm signals should be in accordance with the building's response plan, evacuation plan, fire safety plan, or similar documentation and could include, but is not limited to, any one of the following:

- Immediate evacuation of occupants
- Immediate call to the fire department or other responding authorities
- Relocation of occupants to another portion of the building
- Investigation of the area identified and/or opening of all doors and windows to the outside in the area identified

23.8.4.8.1 Signals from carbon monoxide detectors and carbon monoxide detection systems transmitted to a fire alarm system shall be indicated as "Carbon Monoxide Alarm" on the fire alarm system control unit or annunciator.

23.8.4.8.2* Fire alarm system processing for and occupant response to carbon monoxide alarm signals shall be in accordance with the building's response plan, evacuation plan, fire safety plan, or similar documentation.

A.23.8.4.8.2 Response to carbon monoxide alarm signals could include, but not be limited to, any one of the following: immediate evacuation of occupants, immediate call to the fire department or other responding authorities, relocation of occupants to another portion of the building, investigation of the area identified, and/or opening of all doors and windows to the outside in the area identified.

23.8.4.9* Signals from a fire extinguisher electronic monitoring device or fire extinguisher monitoring system transmitted to a fire alarm system shall be permitted to be supervisory signals.

A.23.8.4.9 See NFPA 10, *Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers*, for more information on portable fire extinguishers.

Fire extinguisher electronic monitoring devices and systems are designed to monitor the presence of a fire extinguisher, obstructions in front of, and the pressure inside a portable fire extinguisher. The Code treats these devices and systems the same as other fire protection systems monitored by the fire alarm system. See Exhibit 23.3.

EXHIBIT 23.3

Wireless Fire Extinguisher Monitoring Device. (Source: Engauge, Inc., Rockland, MA)

23.8.5 Fire Alarm System Inputs.

The requirements of the Code exist not in a vacuum but rather within a framework that involves many other codes, standards, and jurisdictional documents that work together for the protection of life and property against the ravages of fire.

With this framework in mind, the types of inputs (and outputs) required for the fire alarm system are selected primarily to meet the requirements of a model building code; federal, state, or local ordinance; insurance company requirements; corporate policies; or other organizational policies (both private and public). To be clear, this framework can include the criteria used by the designer to meet the goals of the system owner. In the rare cases where the *National Fire and Signaling Alarm Code* requires certain inputs, they are usually related to supporting the reliability of the system or are based on requirements from other codes or standards.

23.8.5.1 General.

23.8.5.1.1 All initiating devices shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 17 and tested in accordance with Chapter 14.

The term *device* generally means input is provided to the system. Refer to the defined term *initiating device* in 3.3.132 along with specific types of initiating devices also defined in 3.3.132.

The phrase *listed for the intended application* was deleted from the paragraph in the 2007 edition because equipment listing is already addressed in Chapter 10. However, an important point to emphasize is that if a device is used in a low-temperature environment, a wet location, or in a harsh location such as an elevator pit (i.e., smoke detectors listed for the environment, refer to 21.3.8, A.21.3.8, and associated commentary), it must be listed not only for fire alarm system use but also for installation in that specific environment. Fire alarm system control units used for actuation of an extinguishing system must be specifically listed for releasing service. Ensuring that a device is listed is not sufficient. The device must be listed for the specific application, which is also referred to as *listed for the purpose.* Refer to 10.3.1 and its associated commentary.

23.8.5.1.2* Where connected to a supervising station, fire alarm systems employing automatic fire detectors or waterflow detection devices shall include a manual fire alarm box to initiate a signal to the supervising station.

Exception: Fire alarm systems dedicated to elevator recall control and supervisory service as permitted in Section 21.3.

Any fire alarm system that uses automatic fire detectors or sprinkler waterflow switches must be provided with at least one manual fire alarm box if the system is connected to a supervising station. This requirement applies to all types of systems except dedicated function systems installed to provide elevator recall control and supervisory service.

Paragraph 6.8.5.1.2 of the 2007 edition of *NFPA 72* contained the requirement: "This fire alarm box shall be located where required by the authority having jurisdiction." In the 2010 edition, this sentence was removed. The manual means for actuating the building fire alarm system is only intended for use by the system technician or the building owner and not building occupants as typical manual fire alarm boxes installed as part of a building fire alarm system would be used. Therefore, requiring the authority having jurisdiction to identify the location of the manual fire alarm box was removed. The manual fire alarm box should be located by the system designer where a technician or the building owner would have access to it (i.e., near the sprinkler riser or the fire alarm control unit).

A.23.8.5.1.2 The manual means required by 23.8.5.1.2 is intended to provide a backup means to manually activate the fire alarm system when the automatic fire detection system or waterflow devices are out of service due to maintenance or testing, or where human discovery of the fire precedes automatic sprinkler system or automatic detection system activation.

The manual fire alarm box required by 23.8.5.1.2 should be connected to a separate circuit that is not placed "on test" when the detection or sprinkler system is placed "on test." The manual means is only intended for use by the system technician or the building owner and should be located by the sprinkler riser or fire alarm control unit.

FAQ What is the reason the Code requires at least one manual fire alarm box?

Information and guidance have been added in A.23.8.5.1.2 to help users understand the purpose of requiring at least one manual fire alarm box. One reason is to allow an alarm to be transmitted if the automatic fire detectors or sprinkler system is out of service during repairs or during a test. This requirement presumes that a contingency plan exists to address a fire emergency during the out-of-service time or during a test. It also presumes that personnel within the facility and at the supervising station to which the premises is connected are aware of the plan and will acknowledge receipt of the alarm.

Although not required by the Code, locating manual fire alarm boxes electrically ahead of all other initiating devices, depending on the design of the circuit, ensures that the alarm signal will be initiated even if an open circuit condition occurs downstream of the manual fire alarm box. In addition, A.23.8.5.1.2 recommends placing the manual fire alarm box on a separate circuit that will not be placed "on test."

23.8.5.2 Fire Alarm Signal Initiation — Manual. Manual fire alarm signal initiation shall comply with the requirements of Section 17.14.

23.8.5.2.1 If signals from manual fire alarm boxes and other fire alarm initiating devices within a building are transmitted over the same signaling line circuit, there shall be no interference with manual fire alarm box signals when both types of initiating devices are operated at the same time.

The requirement in 23.8.5.2.1 applies only to signaling line circuits. The requirement does not apply to systems that use initiating device circuits, because those circuits do not distinguish which device initiated the alarm. The requirement originally addressed spring-wound, coded devices that transmitted a fixed number of rounds of code. Although circuits of this type are still in service in older facilities, few if any new circuits of this type are installed today. Two or more devices operating simultaneously could interfere with one another, resulting in the transmission of garbled signals. Paragraph 23.8.5.2.1 does not preclude the installation of manual fire alarm boxes on initiating device circuits with other initiating devices such as smoke detectors or heat detectors.

23.8.5.2.2 Provision of the shunt noninterfering method of operation shall be permitted for this performance.

The shunt noninterfering method of operation is one way to prevent the signals from publicly accessible alarm boxes from interfering with one another. This same system can be used where coded fire alarm systems are used as the protected premises fire alarm system. The operation of a shunt system is described in 27.6.3.2 and related annex material. As mentioned in the commentary following 23.8.5.2.1, while circuits of this type are still in service in various facilities, few if any new circuits of this type are installed today.

23.8.5.3 Fire Alarm Signal Initiation — Initiating Devices with Separate Power and Signaling Wiring.

23.8.5.3.1 Automatic fire alarm signal initiating devices that have integral trouble signal contacts shall be connected to the initiating device circuit so that a trouble condition within a device does not impair alarm transmission from any other initiating device.

Exception: Where the trouble condition is caused by electrical disconnection of the device or by removing the initiating device from its plug-in base.

If a device with integral trouble contacts is incorrectly connected to an initiating device circuit, disabling the initiating device circuit when the device experiences a trouble condition is possible.

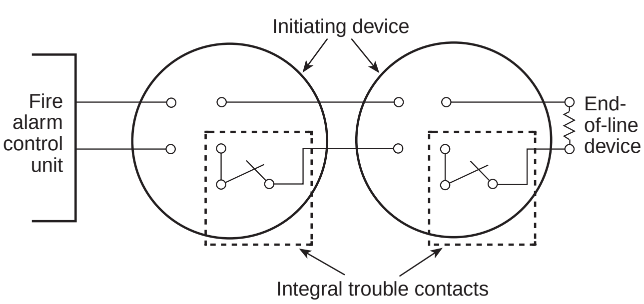
The initiating device circuit must first connect to all the alarm contacts of the initiating devices. Then, after the alarm contacts of the last initiating device, the circuit must route back through the trouble contacts. This places the trouble contacts beyond the alarm contacts of all the initiating devices. Exhibits 23.4 and 23.5 show the incorrect and correct methods of connection.

At one time, photoelectric smoke detectors used a tungsten filament lamp as a light source. The Code required the detector to monitor the integrity of the filament. An open filament would cause a relay within the detector to open a normally closed trouble contact. This contact was wired in series with the initiating device circuit. Few initiating devices, other than radiant energy–sensing fire detectors, have integral trouble contacts.

Disconnection or removal of any initiating device from a plug-in base opens the circuit and results in a circuit trouble signal. The exception to 23.8.5.3.1 recognizes this expected circuit trouble signal and exempts it from the requirement.

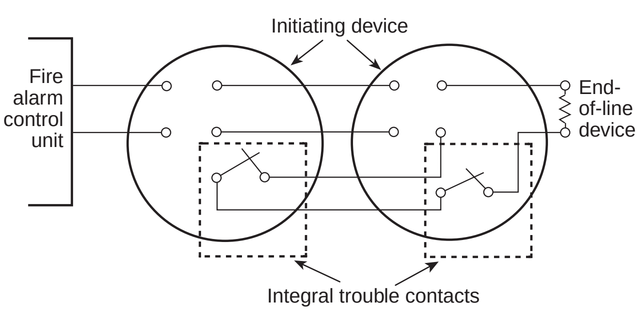
23.8.5.3.2* Automatic fire alarm signal initiating devices that use a nonintegral device to monitor the integrity of the power supply wiring to the individual initiating devices shall have the nonintegral device connected to the initiating device circuit so that a fault on the power supply wiring does not impair alarm transmission from any operational initiating device.

EXHIBIT 23.4



Incorrect Method of Connecting Integral Trouble Contacts. (Source: Hughes Associates, Inc., Warwick, RI)

EXHIBIT 23.5



Correct Method of Connecting Integral Trouble Contacts. (Source: Hughes Associates, Inc., Warwick, RI)

A.23.8.5.3.2 Where power is supplied separately to the individual initiating device(s), multiple initiating circuits are not prohibited from being monitored for integrity by a single power supervision device.

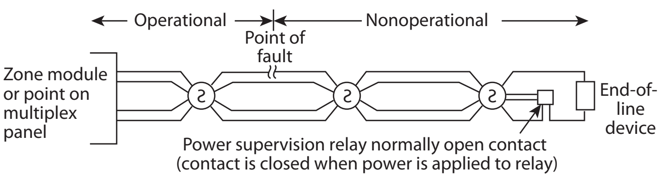
FAQ

How must the power circuit be arranged if the detection device receives power from an external power circuit?

Some detection devices receive their power from an external power circuit. Paragraph 23.8.5.3.2 requires that where detection devices receive their power from an external power circuit, the power circuit must be arranged such that its failure does not impair the operation of any other fire detectors. Exhibit 23.6 shows an example of how this monitoring should be accomplished.

EXHIBIT 23.6

Four-Wire Smoke Detectors Supervised for Absence of Operating Power by End-of-Line Power Supervision Relay.



23.8.5.4 Fire Alarm Signal Initiation — Detection Devices.

23.8.5.4.1* Systems equipped with alarm verification features shall be permitted under the following conditions:

(1) The alarm verification feature is not initially enabled, unless conditions or occupant activities that are expected to cause nuisance alarms are anticipated in the area that is protected by the smoke detectors. Enabling of the alarm verification feature shall be protected by password or limited access.
(2) A smoke detector that is continuously subjected to a smoke concentration above alarm threshold does not delay the system functions of Sections 10.7 through 10.16, 23.8.1.1, or 21.2.1 by more than 1 minute.
(3) Actuation of an alarm-initiating device other than a smoke detector causes the system functions of Sections 10.7 through 10.16, 23.8.1.1, or 21.2.1 without additional delay.
(4) The current status of the alarm verification feature is shown on the record of completion *[see Figure 7.8.2(a), item 4.3]*.

The alarm verification feature, defined in 3.3.16, is a feature that introduces a time period in which to confirm a valid signal with the objective of reducing unwanted alarms. The feature is permitted only for smoke detectors and not for use with heat detectors. Because smoke detectors manufactured today are far more stable and less prone to nuisance alarms than previous generations, the Code restricts the use of this feature to situations in which transient conditions or activities that would cause nuisance alarms are anticipated. The alarm verification feature for all smoke detectors in a system used to be a requirement found in some model building codes up to around the year 2000. Now the Code states that alarm verification is permitted if "the alarm verification feature is not initially enabled, unless conditions or occupant activities that are expected to cause nuisance alarms are anticipated in the area that is protected by the smoke detectors." On most systems, the alarm verification feature is not programmed from the onset; it is more likely that it would be enabled after a system is in place and has experienced nuisance alarms due to existing conditions or occupant activities in a specific area. If utilized, it is likely that not all smoke detectors on an installation will be programmed with this feature, only smoke detectors in select areas that are known to cause nuisance alarms.

Not all manufacturers are providing alarm verification on their equipment. The system designer and the authority having jurisdiction should check the listing to ensure the feature is listed.

The alarm verification feature should not be used to compensate for a poor design that places the wrong type of smoke detector in locations prone to unwanted alarms. The feature is also not intended to eliminate unwanted alarms resulting from failure to properly test and maintain smoke detectors. In some cases, the feature is automatically programmed into the fire alarm system control unit. The record of completion form [see Figure 7.8.2(a) through 7.8.2(f)] must show whether alarm verification is enabled. If the status of the alarm verification feature changes, the record of completion form must be updated after the reacceptance test.

If the alarm verification feature is utilized in a building, it is not advisable to combine the built-in delay with any other programmed fire alarm system initiating device delay such as the actuation of multiple devices to initiate an alarm, often referred to as "cross-zoning" (refer to 23.8.5.4.3); the presignal feature (refer to 23.8.1.2); or the positive alarm sequence feature (refer to 23.8.1.3). These Code requirements do not intend to permit multiple or compounded delays to be programmed into the system thus further delaying occupant notification and fire department response.

A.23.8.5.4.1 The alarm verification feature should not be used as a substitute for proper detector location/applications or regular system maintenance. Alarm verification features are intended to reduce the frequency of false alarms caused by transient conditions. They are not intended to compensate for design errors or lack of maintenance.

Alarm verification can be very useful in reducing false or unwanted alarms caused by transient conditions. This feature can reduce accidental false alarms caused by the casual spraying of aerosols into a smoke detector, a gust of wind blowing dust or contaminants into the detector, and similar situations. Verification does not reduce false alarms from conditions that remain relatively constant, such as high humidity, high air velocities, insect infestation, and where people maliciously and persistently initiate false alarms. Alarm verification should not be installed or programmed in a system that experiences false alarms without the specific cause(s) of the false alarms being determined.

Alarm verification is a specific operation and timing sequence of smoke detector/system operation. Verification must be listed as part of the control unit, device, or circuit card. Exhibit 23.7 illustrates the alarm verification timing sequence.

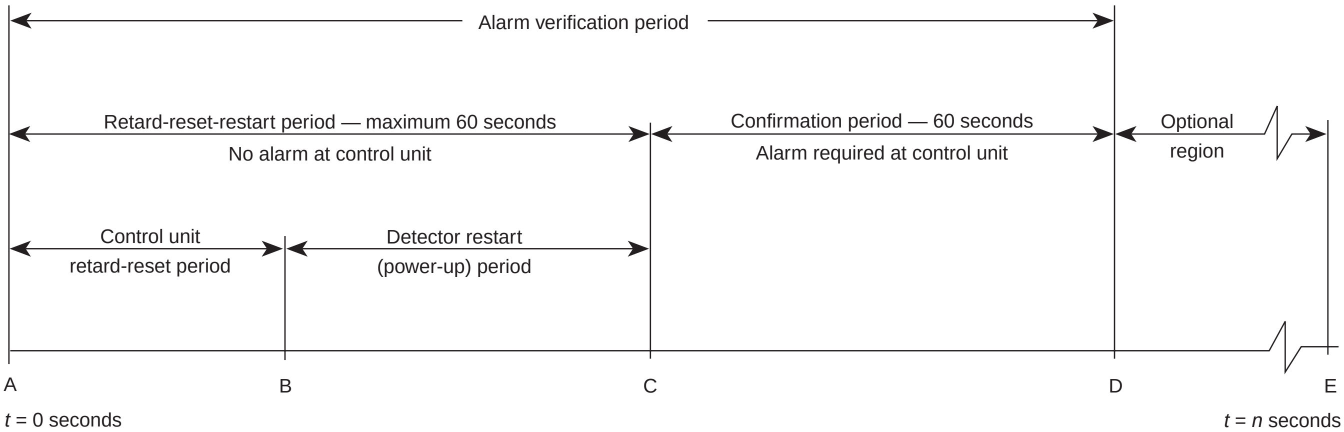
23.8.5.4.2 If automatic drift compensation of sensitivity for a fire detector is provided, the fire alarm control unit shall identify the affected detector when the limit of compensation is reached.

Outside sources, such as dust, dirt, or environmental changes, can affect the sensitivity of a smoke detector. Automatic drift compensation helps keep the detector within its original range of sensitivity. If the compensated value places the detector outside its listed window of sensitivity, the control unit indicates that maintenance is needed.

23.8.5.4.3 Systems that require the operation of two automatic detectors to initiate the alarm response shall be permitted, provided that the following conditions are satisfied:

(1) The systems are not prohibited by the authority having jurisdiction.
(2) At least two automatic detectors are in each protected space.
(3) The alarm verification feature is not used.

EXHIBIT 23.7



A — Smoke detector goes into alarm.

AB — Retard-reset period (control unit) — Control unit senses detector in alarm and retards (delays) alarm signal, usually by de-energizing power to the detector. Length of time varies with design.

BC — Restart period (detector power-up time) — Power to the detector is reapplied and time is allowed for detector to become operational for alarm. Time varies with detector design.

AC — Retard-reset-restart period — No alarm obtained from control unit. Maximum permissible time is 60 seconds.

CD — Confirmation period — Detector is operational for alarm at point C. If detector is still in alarm at point C, control unit will alarm. If detector is not in alarm, system returns to standby. If the detector re-alarms at anytime during the confirmation period, the control unit will alarm.

DE — Optional region — Either an alarm can occur at control unit or restart of the alarm verification cycle can occur.

AD — Alarm verification period — Consists of the retard-reset-restart and confirmation periods.

Alarm Verification Timing Diagram. (Source: Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL)

The configuration described in 23.8.5.4.3 can be called cross-zoning or priority matrix zoning. This configuration is most commonly used for the actuation of extinguishing systems. The potential for accidental discharge is minimized because actuation of more than one detector is required to initiate discharge of the extinguishing system. An important note is that, in addition to the conditions listed in 23.8.5.4.3, detector spacing must also comply with the requirements of 23.8.5.4.4 and 23.8.5.4.5.

If the actuation of multiple devices to initiate an alarm, often referred to as "cross-zoning," is utilized in a building, combining the built-in delay with any other programmed fire alarm system initiating device delay is not advisable, such as the alarm verification feature (refer to 23.8.5.4.1), the presignal feature (refer to 23.8.1.2), or the positive alarm sequence feature (refer to 23.8.1.3). These Code sections do not intend to permit multiple or compounded delays to be programmed into the system thus further delaying occupant notification and fire department response.

23.8.5.4.4 For systems that require the operation of two automatic detectors to initiate emergency control functions or to actuate fire extinguishing or suppression systems, the detectors shall be installed at the spacing determined in accordance with Chapter 17.

Up through the 1996 edition of *NFPA 72* there was a prescriptive requirement that in order to use systems that required the operation of two automatic detection devices to initiate the alarm response, the detector spacing in the area protected was not permitted to be any more than ½ the maximum area for the detector. This requirement was removed in the 1999 edition of *NFPA 72* and the designer was referred to Chapter 5 (now Chapter 17) for detector spacing.

For applications involving the initiation of emergency control functions or the actuation of extinguishing or suppression systems, detector spacing cannot exceed the limits determined in accordance with Chapter 17 (e.g., refer to 17.7.1.3 where performance-based designs are discussed). Although a requirement for reduced spacing is not specified in 23.8.5.4.4, some applications and designs might use detector spacing that would be significantly less than that required by Chapter 17, since actuation of two detectors is required for system discharge. Using a reduced spacing may speed actuation of the extinguishing system and may be required by the system designer to achieve a desired performance goal.

23.8.5.4.5 For systems that require the operation of two automatic detectors to actuate public mode notification, the detectors shall be installed at a linear spacing not more than 0.7 times the linear spacing determined in accordance with Chapter 17.

Applications that require the actuation of two detectors to actuate public mode notification are rare. This method should not be used to minimize unwanted or false alarms that are the result of the improper application of detectors or poor system design. In addition, for these applications, 23.8.5.4.5 requires detector spacing to be reduced. The linear spacing determined in accordance with Chapter 17 must be effectively reduced by at least 30 percent, increasing the number of detectors that would otherwise be needed.

23.8.5.4.6 Signal Initiation — Duct Smoke Detectors.

23.8.5.4.6.1 Where duct smoke detectors are required to be monitored and a building fire alarm system is installed, a duct detector activation signal shall meet the requirements of 21.7.4.

23.8.5.4.6.2 Where duct smoke detectors are connected to a protected premises fire alarm system, the operation of the power circuit shall meet the requirements of 23.4.2.2.

23.8.5.4.6.3* Where duct smoke detectors with separate power and signal wiring are installed and connected to a protected premises fire alarm system, they shall meet the requirements of 23.8.5.3.

A.23.8.5.4.6.3 Where a separate power source is provided for a duct smoke detector, consideration should be given to provide a secondary power source for the duct detector power source as a power failure to the duct detector will (or should) indicate a trouble condition on the fire panel. If the system is connected to an off-premises monitoring station, a trouble signal will be sent immediately upon power failure. This is in contrast to the intent and requirements to delay the off-premises reporting of primary power failures.

Refer to the commentary following A.21.7.2.

23.8.5.4.6.4 Where duct smoke detectors are not resettable from the protected premises fire alarm system, a listed alarm/supervisory indicator with an integral reset switch shall be provided in an accessible location.

23.8.5.5* Fire Alarm Signal Initiation — Sprinkler Systems.

A.23.8.5.5 This Code does not specifically require a waterflow alarm initiating device to be connected to the building fire alarm system. Connection to the building fire alarm system would be determined by the requirements established by the authority having jurisdiction. See A.1.2.4.

FAQ

Does *NFPA 72* require connection of a waterflow alarm–initiating device to a fire alarm system?

The requirement to have a fire alarm system input from a waterflow alarm–initiating device(s) is established by the requirements of other codes or sources within the framework described in the general discussion following 23.8.5. For example, where a *supervised* automatic sprinkler system is provided in accordance with the provisions of NFPA *101*, that system is required to transmit a waterflow alarm to a supervising station or the fire department (the fire department is a supervising station if it complies with remote station service) by means of a fire alarm system. Refer to Exhibit 23.8, which is an excerpt from NFPA *101*.

The detailed installation and performance requirements for the sprinkler system are contained in NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*. Included are requirements for waterflow alarms and a requirement for compliance with *NFPA 72* when alarm-initiating devices are connected as part of a fire alarm system. Refer to Exhibit 23.9, which is an excerpt from NFPA 13.

Again, the requirement for connection to a fire alarm system would be established from other sources such as NFPA *101* or the building code adopted by the jurisdiction and will depend on the type of occupancy involved. Even where not required by other codes or authorities, the design criteria used to meet the owner's goals may establish the need or desire for this input.

Examples of typical waterflow switches are shown in Exhibits 23.10 and 23.11.

23.8.5.5.1 Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards to be electronically monitored, waterflow alarm-initiating devices shall be connected to a dedicated function fire alarm control unit designated as "sprinkler waterflow and supervisory system" and permanently identified on the control unit and record drawings.

Exception: Where waterflow alarm-initiating devices are connected to a building fire alarm system, a dedicated function fire alarm control unit shall not be required.

Where other codes, standards, or authorities having jurisdiction require the supervision of automatic sprinkler systems, a dedicated function FACU is used. This requirement assumes that there is no building fire alarm system. The exception explains that the dedicated function FACU is required only if there is no building fire alarm system. The installation of a dedicated function FACU does not trigger a requirement for a building fire alarm system if one does not already exist.

23.8.5.5.2* The number of waterflow alarm-initiating devices permitted to be connected to a single initiating device circuit shall not exceed five.

A.23.8.5.5.2 Circuits connected to a signaling line circuit interface are initiating device circuits and are subject to these limitations.

The Code permits a maximum of five waterflow switches on a single initiating device circuit. Limiting the number of switches minimizes the area emergency responders must search to find the fire location. It also limits loss of fire detection to a manageable area, since in some cases the sprinklers and waterflow switches also serve as the building fire detection system.

Even the limit of five waterflow switches on a single initiating device circuit may be too many based on design considerations and site-specific conditions. NFPA 13 permits a single sprinkler system to protect up to 52,000 ft^2 (4831 m^2) per floor. Five waterflow switches on a single initiating device circuit would result in a common signal from an area of up to 260,000 ft^2 (24,155 m^2). Locating fire and operating sprinklers in a large, open manufacturing building might be easy for emergency responders, but the task is much more difficult in an office building or educational facility that is divided into many small rooms.

The number of waterflow switches permitted on a signaling line circuit is not limited, other than the limits imposed by the design of the equipment, because each waterflow alarm can be annunciated individually. Refer to the commentary following A.23.6.1. Refer to the defined terms *initiating device circuit* and *signaling line circuit* in 3.3.133 and 3.3.259 and the related commentary for an explanation of the differences between these two types of circuits.

Paragraph A.23.8.5.5.2 recognizes that a signaling line circuit interface may be used to connect waterflow alarm–initiating devices to a signaling line circuit and that the limit of five

9.7.2.2 Alarm Signal Transmission. Where supervision of automatic sprinkler systems is provided in accordance with another provision of this *Code*, waterflow alarms shall be transmitted to an approved, proprietary alarm-receiving facility, a remote station, a central station, or the fire department. Such connection shall be in accordance with 9.6.1.3.

EXHIBIT 23.8

Waterflow Alarm Signal Transmission. [Excerpt from NFPA 101, 2012 edition]

EXHIBIT 23.9

6.9 Waterflow Alarm Devices.

6.9.1 General. Waterflow alarm devices shall be listed for the service and so constructed and installed that any flow of water from a sprinkler system equal to or greater than that from a single automatic sprinkler of the smallest K-factor installed on the system will result in an audible alarm on the premises within 5 minutes after such flow begins and until such flow stops.

6.9.2 Waterflow Detecting Devices.

6.9.2.1 Wet Pipe Systems. The alarm apparatus for a wet pipe system shall consist of a listed alarm check valve or other listed waterflow-detecting alarm device with the necessary attachments required to give an alarm.

6.9.2.2 Dry Pipe Systems.

6.9.2.2.1 The alarm apparatus for a dry pipe system shall consist of listed alarm attachments to the dry pipe valve.

6.9.2.2.2 Where a dry pipe valve is located on the system side of an alarm valve, connection of the actuating device of the alarms for the dry pipe valve to the alarms on the wet pipe system shall be permitted.

6.9.2.3 Preaction and Deluge Systems. The alarm apparatus for deluge and preaction systems shall consist of alarms actuated independently by the detection system and the flow of water.

6.9.2.3.1 Deluge and preaction systems operated by pilot sprinklers shall not require an independent detection system alarm.

6.9.2.4* Paddle-Type Waterflow Devices. Paddle-type waterflow alarm indicators shall be installed in wet systems only.

A.6.9.2.4 The surge of water that occurs when the valve trips can seriously damage the device. Paddle-type waterflow devices are also permitted to be installed on wet systems that supply auxiliary dry pipe and/or preaction systems.

6.9.3 Attachments — General.

6.9.3.1* An alarm unit shall include a listed mechanical alarm, horn, or siren or a listed electric gong, bell, speaker, horn, or siren.

A.6.9.3.1 Audible alarms are normally located on the outside of the building. Listed electric gongs, bells, horns, or sirens inside the building, or a combination of such used inside and outside, are sometimes advisable.

Outside alarms might not be necessary where the sprinkler system is used as part of a central station, auxiliary, remote station, or proprietary signaling fire alarm system, utillizing listed audible inside alarm devices.

6.9.3.2* Outdoor water motor-operated or electrically operated bells shall be weatherproofed and guarded.

A.6.9.3.2 All alarm apparatus should be so located and installed that all parts are accessible for inspection, removal, and repair, and such apparatus should be substantially supported. The water motor gong bell mechanism should be protected from weather-related elements such as rain, snow, or ice. To the extent practicable, it should also be protected from other influencing factors such as birds or other small animals that might attempt to nest in such a device.

6.9.3.3 All piping to water motor-operated devices shall be galvanized steel, brass, copper, or other approved metallic corrosion-resistant material of not less than ¾ in. (20 mm) nominal pipe size.

6.9.3.4 Piping between the sprinkler system and a pressure-actuated alarm-initiating device shall be galvanized steel, brass, copper, or other approved metallic corrosion-resistant material of not less than ⅜ in. (10 mm) nominal pipe size.

6.9.4* Attachments — Electrically Operated.

A.6.9.4 Switches that will silence electric alarm-sounding devices by interruption of electric current are not desirable; however, if such means are provided, then the electric alarm-sounding device circuit should be arranged so that, when the sounding device is electrically silenced, that fact should be indicated by means of a conspicuous light located in the vicinity of the riser or alarm control panel. This light should remain in operation during the entire period of the electric circuit interruption.

6.9.4.1 Electrically operated alarm attachments forming part of an auxiliary, central station, local protective, proprietary, or remote station signaling system shall be installed in accordance with *NFPA 72, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*.

6.9.4.2 Sprinkler waterflow alarm systems that are not part of a required protective signaling system shall not be required to be supervised and shall be installed in accordance with *NFPA 70, National Electrical Code*, Article 760.

6.9.4.3 Outdoor electric alarm devices shall be listed for outdoor use.

6.9.5 Alarm Device Drains. Drains from alarm devices shall be so arranged that there will be no overflowing at the alarm apparatus, at domestic connections, or elsewhere with the sprinkler drains wide open and under system pressure. *(See 8.16.2.6.)*

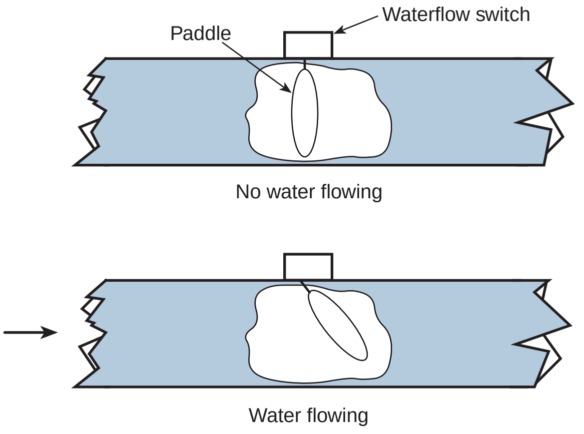
Waterflow Alarms. [Excerpt from NFPA 13, 2013 edition]

EXHIBIT 23.10

Vane-Type Waterflow Switch. (Source: Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC, St. Louis, MO)

EXHIBIT 23.11

Waterflow Switch Operation. (Source: FIREPRO Incorporated, Andover, MA)



devices also applies to any waterflow alarm–initiating devices connected to the interface. Refer to the defined term *signaling line circuit interface* in 3.3.137.1.1.

23.8.5.5.3 If a valve is installed in the connection between a sprinkler system and an initiating device, the valve shall be supervised in accordance with 17.16.1.

For the most part, NFPA 13 permits (but does not always require) the supervision of sprinkler system control valves by a fire alarm system. However, NFPA 13 is primarily concerned with the availability of the water supply to the sprinkler system. Fire alarm system initiating devices installed on sprinkler systems are installed for the purposes of alarm initiation or sprinkler system supervision. Not all fire alarm attachments are installed for water supply supervision, as covered by 8.16.1.1.2.1 of NFPA 13. Others may be provided to ensure the correct operation of the fire alarm system or to provide alarm signal initiation. It is understood that valves are in the piping to allow servicing and repairs of the initiating devices. The issue at hand is the security of the proper functionality of the fire alarm system initiating device. *NFPA 72* has the scope to require functionality from the initiating device to occupant notification, to include a supervising station signal transmission. It is possible that the closure of an isolation valve to an alarm initiating device that prevents initiation of a supervisory signal or an alarm signal constitutes a very serious risk. NFPA 13 does not address this issue, which is clearly under the scope of *NFPA 72.* Closure of these valves will render the initiating device inoperative and may result in the loss of occupant notification in a fire or operator notification that a suppression system is impaired. Therefore, fire alarm system supervision of these valves is imperative.

23.8.5.6* Supervisory Signal Initiation — Sprinkler Systems.

A.23.8.5.6 This Code does not specifically require supervisory signal initiating devices to be connected to the building fire alarm system. Connections to the building fire alarm system would be determined by the requirements established by the authority having jurisdiction. See A.1.2.4. Some systems utilize nonelectrical methods to supervise conditions of the system such as chains on sprinkler control valves.

Supervisory signals are not intended to provide indication of design, installation, or functional defects in the supervised systems or system components and are not a substitute for regular testing of those systems in accordance with the applicable standard. Supervised conditions should include, but not be limited to, the following:

(1) Control valves 1½ in. (38.1 mm) or larger

(2) Pressure, including dry pipe system air, pressure tank air, preaction system supervisory air, steam for flooding systems, and public water
(3) Water tanks, including water level and temperature
(4) Building temperature, including areas such as valve closet and fire pump house
(5) Electric fire pumps, including running (alarm or supervisory), power failure, and phase reversal
(6) Engine-driven fire pumps, including running (alarm or supervisory), failure to start, controller off "automatic," and trouble (e.g., low oil, high temperature, overspeed)
(7) Steam turbine fire pumps, including running (alarm or supervisory), steam pressure, and steam control valves

FAQ

Does *NFPA 72* require sprinkler system supervision?

The requirement for supervision of sprinkler system functions comes from other codes and standards, not directly from *NFPA 72*. For example, NFPA *101* requires that sprinkler systems in some occupancies be electrically supervised by the building fire alarm system. Other model building codes require that all sprinkler systems have their waterflow and valves electrically supervised. If there is no building fire alarm system, then a dedicated function fire alarm system would be installed to comply with the supervision and monitoring requirements. Refer to Exhibit 23.12, excerpted from NFPA *101*, which shows the general requirement for supervision and the minimum features to be monitored. Note that requirements of other codes and standards may be different.

Probably the most important fire suppression system feature monitored by the fire alarm system is the position of sprinkler and fire protection water supply control valves. NFPA 13 requires supervision of these control valves, but supervision by a fire alarm system is only one of the permitted choices. Exhibit 23.13, which is excerpted from NFPA 13, shows all the methods recognized by NFPA 13 for supervision of sprinkler control valves. Also refer to A.8.16.1.1.2 in NFPA 13 for extensive explanatory material addressing valve supervision. Note that some applications described in NFPA 13 (e.g., 11.2.2.5, 11.2.3.1.3, etc.) may require supervisory device electrical supervision. Although *NFPA 72* does not require the supervision of sprinkler control valves or other features essential for the operation of fire suppression systems, electrical supervision provides continuous information to facility management concerning the status of monitored fire protection and life safety systems.

Exhibit 23.14 shows examples of control valves. Exhibit 23.15 is an example of a supervisory switch, and Exhibit 23.16 is an example of a pressure switch for supervising suppression system pressure.

23.8.5.6.1 Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards to be electronically monitored, supervisory signal–initiating devices shall be connected to a dedicated function fire alarm control unit designated as "sprinkler waterflow and supervisory system" and permanently identified on the control unit and record drawings.

Exception: Where supervisory signal–initiating devices are connected to a building fire alarm system, a dedicated function fire alarm control unit shall not be required.

Where other codes, standards, or authorities having jurisdiction require the supervision of automatic sprinkler systems, a dedicated function FACU is used. This requirement assumes that there is no building fire alarm system. The exception explains that the dedicated function FACU is required only if there is no building fire alarm system. The installation of a dedicated function FACU does not trigger a requirement for a building fire alarm system.

23.8.5.6.2* The number of supervisory signal–initiating devices permitted to be connected to a single initiating device circuit shall not exceed 20.

EXHIBIT 23.12

9.7.2.1* Supervisory Signals. Where supervised automatic sprinkler systems are required by another section of this *Code*, supervisory attachments shall be installed and monitored for integrity in accordance with *NFPA 72, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, and a distinctive supervisory signal shall be provided to indicate a condition that would impair the satisfactory operation of the sprinkler system. Supervisory signals shall sound and shall be displayed either at a location within the protected building that is constantly attended by qualified personnel or at an approved, remotely located receiving facility.

A.9.7.2.1 *NFPA 72, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code,* provides details of standard practice in sprinkler supervision. Subject to the approval of the authority having jurisdiction, sprinkler supervision is also permitted to be provided by direct connection to municipal fire departments or, in the case of very large establishments, to a private-headquarters providing similar functions. *NFPA 72* covers such matters. System components and parameters that are required to be monitored should include, but should not be limited to, control valves, water tank levels and temperatures, tank pressure, and air pressure on dry-pipe valves.

Where municipal fire alarm systems are involved, reference should also be made to NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintnance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems.*

Supervisory Signals. [Excerpt from NFPA 101, 2012 edition]

EXHIBIT 23.13

8.16.1.1.2* Supervision.

8.16.1.1.2.1 Valves on connections to water supplies, sectional control and isolation valves, and other valves in supply pipes to sprinklers and other fixed water-based fire suppression systems shall be supervised by one of the following methods:

(1) Central station, proprietary, or remote station signaling service
(2) Local signaling service that will cause the sounding of an audible signal at a constantly attended point
(3) Valves locked in the correct position
(4) Valves located within fenced enclosures under the control of the owner, sealed in the open position, and inspected weekly as part of an approved procedure

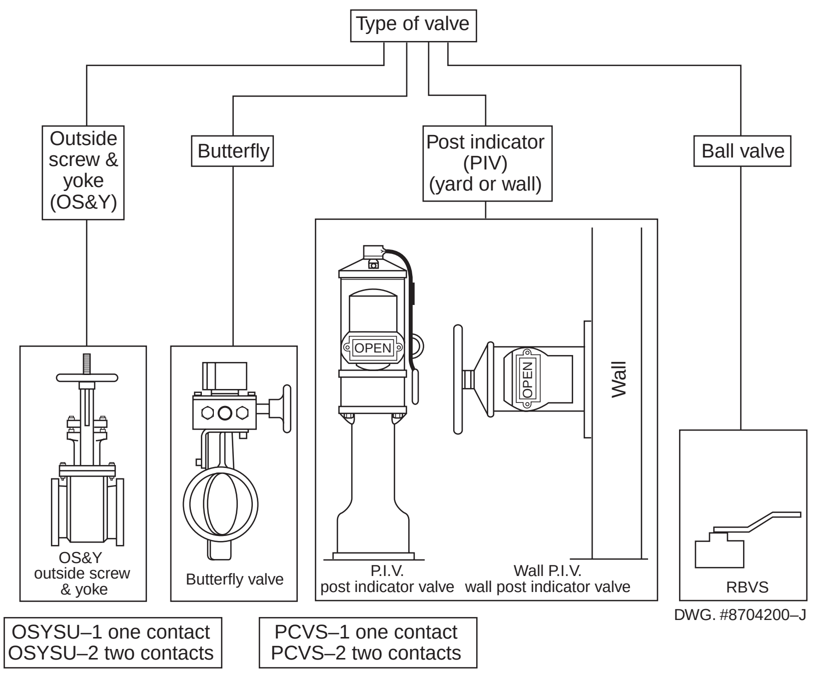
8.16.1.1.2.2 Floor control valves in high-rise buildings and valves controlling flow to sprinklers in circulating closed loop systems shall comply with 8.16.1.1.2.1(1) or 8.16.1.1.2.1(2).

8.16.1.1.2.3 The requirements of 8.16.1.1.2.1 shall not apply to underground gate valves with roadway boxes.

8.16.1.1.2.4 Where control valves are installed overhead, they shall be positioned so that the indicating feature is visible from the floor below.

Supervision. [Excerpt from NFPA 13, 2013 edition]

EXHIBIT 23.14



Sprinkler and Water Supply Control Valves That Can Be Supervised. (Source: Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC, St. Louis, MO)

EXHIBIT 23.15

Control Valve Supervisory Switch. (Source: Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC, St. Louis, MO)

A.23.8.5.6.2 Circuits connected to a signaling line circuit interface are initiating device circuits and are subject to these limitations.

The Code permits up to 20 supervisory signal–initiating devices on a single initiating device circuit because doing so does not degrade the reliability or operability of the fire alarm system. Site-specific needs and conditions might dictate that a circuit serves fewer devices. For example, if a facility has 20 sprinkler control valves each equipped with a supervisory switch, all the valve supervisory switches could be connected to the same initiating device circuit and still comply with the Code. However, if a supervisory signal were received, it would require that someone check every valve to find the one initiating the signal. Supervisory signal–initiating devices include valve supervisory switches, air pressure switches, building temperature switches, fire protection water tank level and temperature switches, and other devices that are designed to ensure that fire protection and life safety features are in service at the time of a fire. Refer to the defined terms *supervisory signal-initiating device* and *supervisory signal* in 3.3.132.5 and 3.3.257.9.

23.8.5.6.3 If a valve is installed in the connection between a sprinkler system and an initiating device, the valve shall be supervised in accordance with 17.16.1.

Refer to the commentary following 23.8.5.5.3.

EXHIBIT 23.16

High-Low-Pressure Supervisory Switch. (Source: Potter Electric Signal Company, LLC, St. Louis, MO)

23.8.5.7 Alarm Signal Initiation — Fire Suppression Systems Other Than Sprinklers.

23.8.5.7.1 Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards to be monitored and a building fire alarm system is installed, the actuation of a fire suppression system shall annunciate an alarm or supervisory condition at the building fire alarm control unit.

This paragraph does not explicitly require operation of an automatic fire suppression system (other than waterflow) to cause an alarm signal at the building fire alarm system control unit. Instead, 23.8.5.7.1 specifies that if the suppression system is required to be monitored and if a building fire alarm system is installed, the actuation of a fire suppression system is required to annunciate an alarm or supervisory condition at the building FACU. This requirement is a departure from earlier editions of the Code, which required an alarm condition from any suppression system to be transmitted to the building FACU. The authority having jurisdiction now has the flexibility to permit either an alarm or a supervisory signal to be sent to the building FACU, depending on the fire safety objectives of the suppression system. For example, the actuation of a suppression system on an industrial process where fires are a routine part of the operation could provide a supervisory condition to be transmitted rather than an alarm. Some printing operations may experience frequent fires that are quickly extinguished by a carbon dioxide fire suppression system without ensuing damage and without sounding a general alarm throughout the facility. It should be noted that the actuation of most gaseous suppression systems is performed through a releasing system FACU, a control unit that is required by 23.8.2.1 and 23.8.2.2 to be monitored by the building fire alarm system, if present. The need to monitor the suppression system is generally established by the requirements of other codes or sources within the framework described in the general discussion following 23.8.5. Documents such as NFPA *101* include requirements for these types of extinguishing systems to interface with the building fire alarm system. Refer to Exhibit 23.17, which is excerpted from NFPA *101*.

Automatic fire suppression systems other than sprinklers include systems such as low-, medium-, and high-expansion foams, carbon dioxide, dry chemical, wet chemical, and clean agents. Each of these systems has an NFPA standard that covers the design, installation, testing, and maintenance of the system. For example, NFPA 17, *Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems,* and NFPA 17A, *Standard for Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems,* specifically require that each of these types of systems connect to a fire alarm system, if one is present.

23.8.5.7.2 The integrity of each fire suppression system actuating device and its circuit shall comply with 12.6.1, 12.6.2, and other applicable NFPA standards.

EXHIBIT 23.17

Other Automatic Extinguishing Equipment. [Excerpt from NFPA 101, 2012 edition]

9.7.3 Other Automatic Extinguishing Equipment.

9.7.3.1 In any occupancy where the character of the fuel for fire is such that extinguishment or control of fire is accomplished by a type of automatic extinguishing system in lieu of an automatic sprinkler system, such system shall be installed in accordance with the appropriate standard, as determined in accordance with Table 9.7.3.1.

Table 9.7.3.1 Fire Suppression System Installation Standards

Fire Suppression Systems	Installation Standard
Low-, medium-, and high-expansion foam systems	NFPA 11, *Standard for Low-, Medium-, and High-Expansion Foam*
Carbon dioxide systems	NFPA 12, *Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems*
Halon 1301 systems	NFPA 12A, *Standard on Halon 1301 Fire Extinguishing Systems*
Water spray fixed systems	NFPA 15, *Standard for Water Spray Fixed Systems for Fire Protection*
Deluge foam-water sprinkler systems	NFPA 16, *Standard for the Installation of Foam-Water Sprinkler and Foam-Water Spray Systems*
Dry chemical systems	NFPA 17, *Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems*
Wet chemical systems	NFPA 17A, *Standard for Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems*
Water mist systems	NFPA 750, *Standard on Water Mist Fire Protection Systems*
Clean agent extinguishing systems	NFPA 2001, *Standard on Clean Agent Fire Extinguishing Systems*

9.7.3.2 If the extinguishing system is installed in lieu of a required, supervised automatic sprinkler system, the activation of the extinguishing system shall activate the building fire alarm system, where provided. The actuation of an extinguishing system that is not installed in lieu of a required, supervised automatic sprinkler system shall be indicated at the building fire alarm system, where provided.

The actuation circuit for the fire suppression system must be monitored for integrity the same as any other fire alarm circuit. Any fault conditions on the releasing service FACU must initiate a trouble signal on the releasing service FACU but will initiate a supervisory signal on the building fire alarm system control unit if one is present. Also refer to the requirements of 23.11.3 and 23.11.10.

23.8.5.7.3 If a valve is installed in the connection between a suppression system and an initiating device, the valve shall be supervised in accordance with 17.16.1.

23.8.5.8* Supervisory Signal Initiation — Fire Suppression Systems Other Than Sprinklers.

FAQ

Does *NFPA 72* require supervision of fire suppression systems other than sprinklers?

The requirement for fire alarm system inputs from supervisory signal–initiating devices is established by the requirements of other codes or sources within the framework described in the general discussion following 23.8.5. *NFPA 72* does not require this supervision.

A.23.8.5.8 See A.23.8.5.6.

23.8.5.8.1 Where required to be monitored and a building fire alarm system is installed, an off-normal condition of a fire suppression system shall annunciate a supervisory condition at the building fire alarm control unit.

Paragraph 23.8.5.8.1 specifies that if the suppression system is required by another code or standard to be monitored and if a building fire alarm system is installed, any off-normal condition is required to be transmitted as a supervisory signal to the building FACU. Refer to the commentary following 23.8.2.7.

23.8.5.8.2 Supervisory signals that latch in the off-normal state and require manual reset of the system to restore them to normal shall be permitted.

Supervisory signals usually restore automatically when the off-normal condition is restored to a normal state. In some cases, having supervisory signals "latch" in the off-normal position can be beneficial. This requires manual reset of the system after restoration of the off-normal condition. Paragraph 23.8.5.8.2 permits this arrangement.

23.8.5.8.3 If a valve is installed in the connection between a suppression system and an initiating device, the valve shall be supervised in accordance with 17.16.1.

23.8.5.9 Signal Initiation — Fire Pump.

The requirement for fire pumps to be monitored comes from other codes and standards. For example, NFPA *101* includes the monitoring of fire pump power supplies and running conditions as a part of the supervision requirements for automatic sprinklers. Refer to Exhibit 23.12. Note that requirements of other codes and standards may be different.

The installation requirements for fire pumps are contained in NFPA 20, *Standard for the Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection*. This standard requires certain functions to be monitored and signals to be sent to a constantly attended location. Refer to Exhibit 23.18, which is excerpted from NFPA 20. Note that NFPA 20 does not specifically require these conditions to be monitored by a fire alarm system, but a dedicated function or building fire alarm system could be used to accomplish this monitoring. Monitored signals could include fire pump running, fire pump ac power loss, fire pump phase reversal, and fire pump alternate power source.

23.8.5.9.1 Where fire pumps are required to be monitored and a building fire alarm system is installed, a pump running signal shall be permitted to be a supervisory or alarm signal.

Paragraph 23.8.5.9.1 makes it clear that a pump running signal monitored by a building fire alarm system can be either an alarm signal or a supervisory signal.

23.8.5.9.2 Where fire pumps are required to be monitored and a building fire alarm system is installed, signals other than pump running shall be supervisory signals.

In contrast to the pump running signal, 23.8.5.9.2 makes it clear that any other fire pump signal monitored by a building fire alarm system must be a supervisory signal.

23.8.5.10 Fire Alarm and Supervisory Signal Initiation — Releasing Fire Alarm Systems.

23.8.5.10.1 Releasing service fire alarm control units shall be connected to the protected premises fire alarm system.

EXHIBIT 23.18

Fire Pump Alarm and Signal Devices Remote from Controller. [Excerpt from NFPA 20, 2013 edition]

10.4.7* Fire Pump Alarm and Signal Devices Remote from Controller.

A.10.4.7 Where unusual conditions exist whereby pump operation is not certain, a "failed-to-operate" fire pump alarm is recommended. In order to supervise the power source for the fire pump alarm circuit, the controller can be arranged to start upon failure of the supervised alarm circuit power.

10.4.7.1 Where the pump room is not constantly attended, audible or visible signals powered by a source not exceeding 125 V shall be provided at a point of constant attendance.

10.4.7.2 These fire pump alarms and signals shall indicate the information in 10.4.7.2.1 through 10.4.7.2.4.

10.4.7.2.1 Pump or Motor Running. The signal shall actuate whenever the controller has operated into a motor-running condition. This signal circuit shall be energized by a separate reliable supervised power source or from the pump motor power, reduced to not more than 125 V.

10.4.7.2.2 Loss of Phase.

10.4.7.2.2.1 The fire pump alarm shall actuate whenever any phase at the line terminals of the motor contactor is lost.

10.4.7.2.2.2 All phases shall be monitored. Such monitoring shall detect loss of phase whether the motor is running or at rest.

10.4.7.2.2.3 When power is supplied from multiple power sources, monitoring of each power source for phase loss shall be permitted at any point electrically upstream of the line terminals of the contactor, provided all sources are monitored.

10.4.7.2.3 Phase Reversal. *(See 10.4.6.2.)* This fire pump alarm circuit shall be energized by a separate reliable supervised power source or from the pump motor power, reduced to not more than 125 V. The fire pump alarm shall actuate whenever the three-phase power at the line terminals of the motor contactor is reversed.

10.4.7.2.4 Controller Connected to Alternate Source. Where two sources of power are supplied to meet the requirements of 9.3.2, this signal shall indicate whenever the alternate source is the source supplying power to the controller. This signal circuit shall be energized by a separate, reliable, supervised power source, reduced to not more than 125 V.

23.8.5.10.2 Fire alarm and supervisory signals generated at the releasing service fire alarm control unit shall be annunciated at a protected premises fire alarm unit.

23.8.5.10.3 Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards, actuation of any suppression system connected to a releasing service fire alarm control unit shall be annunciated at the protected premises fire alarm control unit, even where the system actuation is by manual means or otherwise accomplished without actuation of the releasing service fire alarm control unit.

Subsection 23.11.1 requires FACUs used for automatic or manual activation of a fire suppression system to be listed for releasing service. The Code defines the term *releasing service fire alarm control unit* as a subdefinition of *protected premises (local) control unit*(refer to 3.3.102.2.2). The requirements in 23.8.5.10.1, 23.8.5.10.2, and 23.8.5.10.3 correlate with the requirements in 23.8.2.1, 23.8.2.2, and 23.11.10. In addition, 23.8.5.10.3 includes a requirement to annunciate the actuation of the suppression system at the protected premises FACU even where the actuation is not accomplished through the connected releasing service control unit.

Each input to the fire alarm system corresponding to the operation of an automatic fire suppression system should be configured as a separate zone or discrete point to allow identification of the system involved. For example, if a building is equipped with a clean agent suppression system in a computer room and a wet chemical system in the kitchen, each system should have separate signals.

23.8.5.10.4 If a valve is installed in the connection between a suppression system and an initiating device, the valve shall be supervised in accordance with Chapter 17.

Supervision of the valve in this case means monitoring the status of the valve and initiating a supervisory signal when the valve is moved to an off-normal (other than fully open) position. When the valve returns to its normal (fully open) position, the supervisory device initiates a restoration-to-normal signal.

Paragraph 23.8.5.10.4 requires supervision of any valve that if closed could prevent actuation of the alarm-initiating device. The alarm-initiating device is usually a pressure switch that actuates when the fire suppression system actuates. Exhibit 23.19 shows the proper method of providing an alarm-initiating device with no valves between the suppression system and the alarm-initiating device.

23.8.5.10.5 In facilities that are not required to install a protected premises fire alarm system, the alarm and supervisory devices shall be connected to the releasing service fire alarm control unit, and their actuation shall be annunciated at the releasing service control unit.

EXHIBIT 23.19

Alarm-Initiating Device with No Valves Between Suppression System and Alarm-Initiating Device. (Source: Hughes Associates, Inc., Cincinnati, OH)

This paragraph recognizes that suppression system alarm and supervisory devices need to be connected to an FACU. When a building FACU is not required, these devices need to be connected to the releasing service control unit.

23.8.5.11 Trouble Signal Initiation.

23.8.5.11.1 Automatic fire suppression system alarm–initiating devices and supervisory signal-initiating devices and their circuits shall be designed and installed so that they cannot be subject to tampering, opening, or removal without initiating a signal. This provision shall include junction boxes installed outside of buildings to facilitate access to the initiating device circuit.

Exception No. 1: Covers of junction boxes inside of buildings.

Exception No. 2: Tamper–resistant screws or other approved mechanical means shall be permitted for preventing access to junction boxes and device covers installed outside of buildings.

A junction box installed outside a building must be equipped with tamper-resistant screws or some other mechanical means preventing access to the junction box, or it must have a device to initiate a trouble signal when the box is opened, as required by 23.8.5.11.1. This precaution minimizes the possibility that unauthorized individuals can bypass the supervision of fire suppression systems by tampering with the wiring in junction boxes. Exception 1 exempts junction boxes within a building, because this area should be under the general supervision of the building owner or occupant and not subject to tampering by outsiders. Exception 2 exempts junction boxes installed outside the building if they are equipped with special screws or other means specifically designed to prevent removal and tampering.

23.8.5.11.2 The integrity of each fire suppression system actuating device and its circuit shall be supervised in accordance with 12.6.1 and 12.6.2 and with other applicable NFPA standards.

23.8.6 Fire Alarm System Notification Outputs.

23.8.6.1 Occupant Notification. Fire alarm systems provided for evacuation or relocation of occupants shall have one or more notification appliances listed for the purpose in each notification zone of the building and be so located that they have the characteristics described in Chapter 18 for public mode or private mode, as required.

FAQ

Is occupant notification required for every fire alarm system?

Occupant notification is not a required output action of every fire alarm system installed in accordance with this chapter. The requirement in 23.8.6.1 applies only where a function of the fire alarm system is to provide notification to building occupants. The requirements for occupant notification and whether it is public mode, private mode, or coded notification come from the local building code, the *Life Safety Code*, or the system designer (where required to meet the performance goals of a nonrequired system). When a function of the protected premises fire alarm system is to notify the occupants, Chapter 18 requirements for public mode signaling must be followed.

23.8.6.2* Notification Appliances in Exit Stair Enclosures, Exit Passageways, and Elevator Cars. Notification appliances shall not be required in exit stair enclosures, exit passageways, and elevator cars in accordance with 23.8.6.2.1 through 23.8.6.2.4.

In 23.8.6.2, exit stairs, exit passageways, and elevators are exempt from the requirements for installation of audible and visible notification appliances used to signal evacuation. Some of the allowances addressed here are not necessarily new and may already be provided to some extent by other codes and standards. For example, NFPA *101* already permits the exclusion of the general evacuation alarm in exit stair enclosures and in elevator cars.

The general purpose of a fire alarm system is to notify occupants of the need to evacuate and to get them to move to enclosed exits where they are protected and can exit the building. Once occupants have entered an exit stair enclosure or an exit passageway, there is no need to continue notification. If occupants are in an exit stairwell or exit passageway when the fire alarm system is actuated, they will hear and see the fire alarm notification appliances as soon as they open the stairwell door to a floor of the building. Likewise, occupants in an exit passageway are already in a protected enclosure that will lead them to the building exterior or to a horizontal exit to an adjacent building. Note that these requirements apply to evacuation signals.

Speakers may still be required in stair enclosures in some buildings to facilitate communication by the fireground commander with those occupants in the stair enclosures. In buildings that contain an in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system, stairwell enclosures will commonly be included as manual paging zones.

A.23.8.6.2 The general purpose of the fire alarm audible and visual notification appliances is to alert occupants that there is a fire condition and for occupants to exit from the building.

Once the occupants are in the exit enclosures, high noise levels and light intensity from notification appliances could cause confusion and impede egress. There could be conditions that warrant the installation of notification appliances in exit passageways, but careful analysis is necessary to avoid impeding exiting from the building.

23.8.6.2.1 Visible signals shall not be required in exit stair enclosures and exit passageways.

Flashing strobe lights installed in stairwells could cause visual orientation problems as people are attempting to navigate the stairs during evacuation. Also, as explained in the commentary for 23.8.6.2, continuing notification for occupants who have already entered the means of egress is not generally necessary.

23.8.6.2.2 Visible signals shall not be required in elevator cars.

A visible notification appliance installed in an elevator car does not serve to make the occupants safer. Once occupants are in the elevator car, they cannot take any action to exit the building until the car stops at an elevator lobby in the building. Once the elevator stops at a floor, the occupants will see the visual notification appliances operating on that floor and can take appropriate action.

23.8.6.2.3 The evacuation signal shall not be required to operate in exit stair enclosures and exit passageways.

Once occupants have entered an exit enclosure, they do not need to continually hear the audible alarm signal. The reverberation of the evacuation signal in a closed, masonry stairwell can create an environment in which the sound pressure level within the enclosure can be so uncomfortable as to cause the occupants to exit the enclosure to get away from the noise. This effect is exactly the opposite desired for a fire alarm system. The Code also recognizes that situations may occur in which notification appliances within exit enclosures might be desirable. Such situations include fire-rated corridors that serve as exit enclosures in a health care occupancy.

23.8.6.2.4 The evacuation signal shall not be required to operate in elevator cars.

An audible fire alarm signal in an elevator car does not serve to make the occupants safer. Occupants are not in a position to take any action to evacuate the building until the elevator stops at a specific floor. When the doors open at a floor, the occupants will hear the alarm signal on that floor and can take appropriate action.

23.8.6.3 Notification Zones.

23.8.6.3.1 Notification zones shall be consistent with the emergency response or evacuation plan for the protected premises.

The best fire detection and alarm technology alone does not ensure an adequate level of fire safety in a building. A building evacuation or relocation plan is needed for every building to properly establish notification zones. This plan must be custom developed based on the site-specific needs of the facility, site-specific conditions, and the established fire safety objectives. The establishment of notification zones without a fully developed building evacuation or relocation plan is not possible. The *Life Safety Code* includes requirements for evacuation and relocation plans and fire drills for many occupancies. These requirements must be incorporated within the plan for the building.

23.8.6.3.2 The boundaries of notification zones shall be coincident with building outer walls, building fire or smoke compartment boundaries, floor separations, or other fire safety subdivisions.

FAQ What is a notification zone?

The term *notification zone* is defined in 3.3.320.2 as "a discrete area of a building, bounded by building outer walls, fire or smoke compartment boundaries, floor separations, or other fire safety subdivisions, in which occupants are intended to receive common notification." The boundaries described in 23.8.6.3.2 further define the term. A notification zone can contain multiple notification appliance circuits, but all notification appliances within a notification zone must actuate simultaneously.

23.8.6.4 Circuits for Addressable Notification Appliances.

23.8.6.4.1 Circuit configuration for addressable notification appliances shall comply with the applicable performance requirements for notification zones.

23.8.6.4.2 Where there are addressable notification appliances on a signaling line circuit that serves different notification zones, a single open, short-circuit, or ground on that signaling line circuit shall not affect operation of more than one notification zone.

Paragraph 23.8.6.4.2 requires that addressable signaling line circuits be arranged such that a single fault condition on the circuit does not disrupt the operation of notification appliances in more than one notification zone.

23.8.6.4.3 Riser conductors installed in accordance with 24.4.2.8.5.3 that are monitored for integrity shall not be required to operate in accordance with 23.8.6.4.2.

23.9 In-Building Fire Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications

23.9.1 In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications shall meet the requirements of Chapter 24.

Beginning with the 2010 edition of the Code, the requirements for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications (formerly called emergency voice/alarm communications) have been covered in Chapter 24. Subsection 23.9.1 refers users of the Code to Chapter 24 for the applicable requirements.

23.9.2 All live voice communications systems shall meet the requirements of Chapter 24.

23.9.3 Two-Way Communication Service. Two-way communication service shall meet the requirements of Chapter 24.

Two-way communication service within a building provides a reliable method for fire fighters and other emergency response personnel to communicate with each other during the course of an emergency. The Code recognizes two means: two-way in-building wired emergency communications systems (telephones) and two-way radio communications enhancement systems. The requirements for these systems are covered in Chapter 24.

23.10 Fire Alarm Systems Using Tone

23.10.1 The requirements of Section 23.10 shall apply to tone and visible notification appliance circuits.

23.10.2* Fire alarm systems used for partial evacuation and relocation shall be designed and installed such that attack by fire within an evacuation signaling zone shall not impair control and operation of the notification appliances outside the evacuation signaling zone. Performance features provided to ensure survivability shall be described and technical justification provided in the documentation submitted to the authority having jurisdiction with the evaluation required in 23.4.3.1.

A.23.10.2 One or more of the following means might be considered acceptable to provide a level of survivability consistent with the intent of this requirement:

(1) Installing a fire alarm system in a fully sprinklered building in accordance with NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*
(2) Routing notification appliance circuits separately
(3) Using short-circuit fault-tolerant signaling line circuits for controlling evacuation signals

The requirement for notification appliances to operate in those evacuation signaling zones that are not attacked by fire will also require that circuits and equipment that are common to more than one evacuation signaling zone be designed and installed such that the fire will not disable them. For instance, a signaling line circuit used to control notification appliances in multiple evacuation signaling zones should be properly designed and installed so that one fire would not impair the signaling line circuit, rendering the notification appliances serving more than one evacuation signaling zone inoperative. Power supply requirements of Chapter 10 apply to these systems. The secondary power supply requirements of that chapter meet the intent of these survivability requirements.

FAQ

What is required for wiring or communication paths to ensure compliance with 23.10.2?

Subsection 23.10.2 requires that the circuits, wiring, or communication paths to each evacuation signaling zone be arranged such that damage to those "paths" in one evacuation signaling zone will not impair communication to any other evacuation signaling zone. For example,

EXHIBIT 23.20

Wet Chemical Kitchen Hood and Duct Cylinder with Control Head. (Source: Kidde Fire Systems, Ashland, MA)

assume that each floor in a high-rise building is an evacuation signaling zone. A circuit that feeds the notification appliances on the fifth floor of a building must be arranged such that damage to that circuit does not affect communication to any other floor above or below. An evaluation based on the path performance as required by governing laws, codes, standards, and a site-specific engineering analysis is required to be followed (refer to 23.4.3.1).

23.10.3 Speakers that transmit tone signals shall be permitted to be used as fire alarm notification appliances.

23.11 Suppression System Actuation

See Exhibit 23.20 for an example of one type of suppression system — a wet chemical kitchen hood and duct cylinder with control head.

23.11.1 Releasing service fire alarm control units used for automatic or manual activation of a fire suppression system shall be listed for releasing service.

23.11.2 Releasing devices for suppression systems shall be listed for use with releasing service control units.

The requirement of 23.11.2 applies to releasing devices for any suppression system.

23.11.3 Each releasing device (e.g., solenoid, relay) shall be monitored for integrity (supervised) in accordance with applicable NFPA standards.

23.11.4 The installation wiring shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with the requirements of Section 12.6.

23.11.5 Releasing service fire alarm systems used for fire suppression–releasing service shall be provided with a disconnect switch to allow the system to be tested without actuating the fire suppression systems.

23.11.5.1 Operation of a disconnect switch or a disable function shall cause a supervisory signal at the releasing service fire alarm control unit.

23.11.5.2 The disconnect shall be a physical switch and not be accomplished by using software.

FAQ What means must be used to ensure that the suppression system will not be inadvertently actuated?

The requirements of 23.11.5 are extremely important. Very often, the contractor testing the fire alarm system is not an expert in the operation of fire suppression systems. The supervised disconnect switch allows the fire alarm system contractor to perform maintenance or tests on the fire alarm system without inadvertently actuating the suppression system. See Exhibit 23.21. The Code clarifies that the required disconnect switch must be a physical switch and cannot be simulated by software. Operation of the switch must provide a supervisory signal at the building fire alarm system control unit. This requirement minimizes the possibility of leaving the fire suppression system impaired after the testing of the fire alarm system is complete. Also refer to the testing requirements for releasing systems in 14.2.6.

23.11.5.3 Software disconnects, even if activated by dedicated buttons or key switches, shall not be permitted as a method to secure a suppression system from inadvertent discharge.

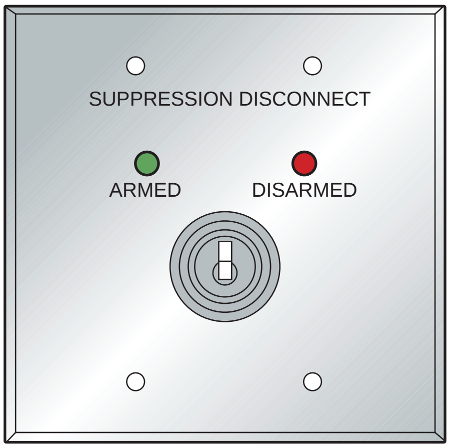


EXHIBIT 23.21

Suppression System Disconnect Switch. (Source: Fike Corporation, Blue Springs, MO)

23.11.6 Sequence of operation shall be consistent with the applicable suppression system standards.

The exact operating sequence of a fire suppression system depends on the type of system, the application, and site-specific conditions. The Code does not address the specific sequence of operation of any type of fire suppression system. The appropriate NFPA standard for the particular fire suppression system should be consulted.

23.11.7* Each space protected by an automatic fire suppression system actuated by the fire alarm system shall contain one or more automatic fire detectors installed in accordance with Chapter 17.

A.23.11.7 Automatic fire suppression systems referred to in 23.11.7 include, but are not limited to, preaction and deluge sprinkler systems, carbon dioxide systems, Halon systems, and dry chemical systems.

23.11.8 Suppression systems or groups of systems shall be controlled by a single releasing service fire alarm control unit that monitors the associated initiating device(s), actuates the associated releasing device(s), and controls the associated agent release notification appliances.

Unless the conditions of 23.11.9 have been met, a single control unit must be used to control suppression systems. This requirement prohibits an arrangement where the control unit used to actuate the suppression system is listed for releasing service, but it receives its signal to actuate from another FACU that is not listed for releasing service and that monitors the associated alarm-initiating devices. Several instances have occurred in which inadvertent system discharges resulted from multi-tier releasing arrangements. Inadvertent discharges occurred during normal system testing and maintenance and occasionally because of system wiring faults unrelated to the required operation of the releasing system.

Although the use of multiple control units is prohibited (unless 23.11.9 applies), the Code requires that the premises FACU monitor the suppression system control unit, if one is present. The interconnection of a fire suppression system control unit with a protected premises FACU must comply with the requirements of 23.8.2. The premises FACU must not affect the operation of the suppression system. Also refer to the requirements for releasing service control units in 23.8.5.10.

23.11.9 If the configuration of multiple control units is listed for releasing device service, and if a trouble condition or manual disconnect on either control unit causes a trouble or supervisory signal, the initiating device on one control unit shall be permitted to actuate releasing devices on another control unit in lieu of 23.11.8.

23.11.10 If the releasing service fire alarm control unit is located in a protected premises having a separate fire alarm system, it shall be monitored for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals, but shall not be dependent on or affected by the operation or failure of the protected premises fire alarm system.

23.11.11 Releasing fire alarm systems performing suppression system releasing functions shall be installed in such a manner that they are effectively protected from damage caused by activation of the suppression system(s) they control.

The control unit must be sealed or enclosed in a cabinet designed to prevent entry of the extinguishing agent, or the control unit must be located outside the discharge area of the fire suppression system.

23.12 Off-Premises Signals

23.12.1 Systems requiring transmission of signals to continuously attended locations providing supervising station service (e.g., central station, proprietary supervising station, remote supervising station) shall also comply with the applicable requirements of Chapter 26.

23.12.2 Relays or modules providing transmission of trouble signals to a supervising station shall be arranged to provide fail-safe operation.

23.12.3 Means provided to transmit trouble signals to supervising stations shall be arranged so as to transmit a trouble signal to the supervising station for any trouble condition received at the protected premises control unit, including loss of primary or secondary power.

23.12.4* It shall be permitted to provide supplementary transmission of real-time data from the fire system to off-premises equipment.

A.23.12.4 Off-site logging of fire alarm data can be useful to preserve information in the face of fire or building failure to facilitate accurate reconstruction of the event. It can also be beneficial to send data off-premises to incident command personnel to enhance situational awareness and response decisions and to maintain safe and efficient operations.

23.12.4.1 Transmission of real-time data off-premises shall not affect the operation or response of the fire alarm control unit.

23.12.4.2 Any data transmitted shall be consistent with the data generated by the system.

23.13 Guard's Tour Supervisory Service

Guard's tour supervisory service may be used to provide fire protection and security surveillance during times when the building or portions of the building are unoccupied. Guard's tour supervisory services designed to continually report the performance of a guard may be found in connection with protected premises fire alarm systems using off-premises reporting to central or proprietary supervising stations. If a guard fails to complete a prescribed round, a runner is dispatched to the building. Failure of a guard to complete a round could be due to illness, injury, or other emergency condition. See NFPA 601, *Standard for Security Services in Fire Loss Prevention*, for additional information on guard patrol tours.

23.13.1 Guard's tour reporting stations shall be listed for the application.

23.13.2 The number of guard's tour reporting stations, their locations, and the route to be followed by the guard for operating the stations shall be approved for the particular installation in accordance with NFPA 601, *Standard for Security Services in Fire Loss Prevention*.

23.13.3 A permanent record indicating every time each signal-transmitting station is operated shall be made at a protected premises fire alarm control unit.

23.13.4 Where intermediate stations that do not transmit a signal are employed in conjunction with signal-transmitting stations, distinctive signals shall be transmitted at the beginning and end of each tour of a guard.

23.13.5 A signal-transmitting station shall be provided at intervals not exceeding 10 intermediate stations.

23.13.6 Intermediate stations that do not transmit a signal shall be capable of operation only in a fixed sequence.

23.14 Suppressed (Exception Reporting) Signal System

This guard's tour arrangement is somewhat more flexible than supervised tours. The advantages of this system are easier installation, because each station does not have to be connected to the circuit, and reduced signal traffic, because each station does not transmit a signal. The usual arrangement is to have the guard transmit a signal at the start of the tour and another signal at the completion of the tour. These signals must be received within a specific timeframe, or the system initiates a supervisory signal indicating that the guard is delinquent in completing the round.

23.14.1 The suppressed signal system shall comply with the provisions of 23.13.2.

23.14.2 The system shall transmit a start signal to the signal-receiving location.

23.14.3 The start signal shall be initiated by the guard at the start of continuous tour rounds.

23.14.4 The system shall automatically transmit a delinquency signal within 15 minutes after the predetermined actuation time if the guard fails to actuate a tour station as scheduled.

23.14.5 A finish signal shall be transmitted within a predetermined interval after the guard's completion of each tour of the premises.

23.14.6 For periods of over 24 hours during which tours are continuously conducted, a start signal shall be transmitted at least every 24 hours.

23.14.7 The start, delinquency, and finish signals shall be recorded at the signal-receiving location.

23.15 Protected Premises Emergency Control Functions

In the 2010 edition of the Code, all the requirements for protected premises emergency control functions (previously, fire safety functions) were relocated to Chapter 21. Chapter 23 refers users of the Code to the applicable sections in Chapter 21.

23.15.1 Emergency Elevator Operations. Emergency elevator operations shall meet the requirements of Sections 21.3, 21.4, 21.5, and 21.6.

23.15.2 HVAC Systems. HVAC systems shall meet the requirements of Section 21.7.

23.15.3 Door Release Service. Door release service shall meet the requirements of Section 21.8.

23.15.4 Electrically Locked Doors. Door-unlocking devices shall meet the requirements of Section 21.9.

23.15.5 Exit Marking Audible Notification Systems. Exit marking audible notification systems shall meet the requirements of Section 21.10.

23.16* Special Requirements for Low-Power Radio (Wireless) Systems

A.23.16 The term *wireless* has been replaced with the term *low-power radio* to eliminate potential confusion with other transmission media such as optical fiber cables.

Low-power radio devices are required to comply with the applicable *low-power* requirements of Title 47, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 15.

Listed low-power wireless fire alarm systems must meet the same basic requirements as any other fire alarm system. However, the special requirements provided in Section 23.16 modify the basic requirements of the Code.

Listed low-power wireless fire alarm systems have numerous applications. Historic buildings where wire or cable installation will damage the building or affect the historic significance of the property have used wireless fire alarm systems successfully. Industrial buildings that use corrosive materials that can affect the integrity of the wiring used to interconnect a fire alarm system may benefit from low-power wireless systems. Likewise, any buildings that are remote from the main facility can also be well served by a low-power wireless fire alarm system. See Exhibits 23.22, 23.23, and 23.24 for examples of low-power wireless fire alarm systems.

23.16.1* Listing Requirements. Compliance with Section 23.16 shall require the use of low-power radio equipment specifically listed for the purpose.

A.23.16.1 Equipment listed solely for dwelling unit use would not comply with this requirement.

23.16.2 Power Supplies. A primary battery (dry cell) shall be permitted to be used as the sole power source of a low-power radio transmitter where all of the following conditions are met:

(1) Each transmitter shall serve only one device and shall be individually identified at the receiver/fire alarm control unit.
(2) The battery shall be capable of operating the low-power radio transmitter for not less than 1 year before the battery depletion threshold is reached.
(3) A battery depletion signal shall be transmitted before the battery has been depleted to a level below that required to support alarm transmission after 7 additional days of nonalarm operation. This signal shall be distinctive from alarm, supervisory, tamper, and trouble signals; shall visibly identify the affected low-power radio transmitter; and, when silenced, shall automatically re-sound at least once every 4 hours.
(4) Catastrophic (open or short) battery failure shall cause a trouble signal identifying the affected low-power radio transmitter at its receiver/fire alarm control unit. When silenced, the trouble signal shall automatically re-sound at least once every 4 hours.
(5) Any mode of failure of a primary battery in a low-power radio transmitter shall not affect any other low-power radio transmitter.

23.16.3 Alarm Signals.

23.16.3.1* When actuated, each low-power radio transmitter shall automatically transmit an alarm signal.

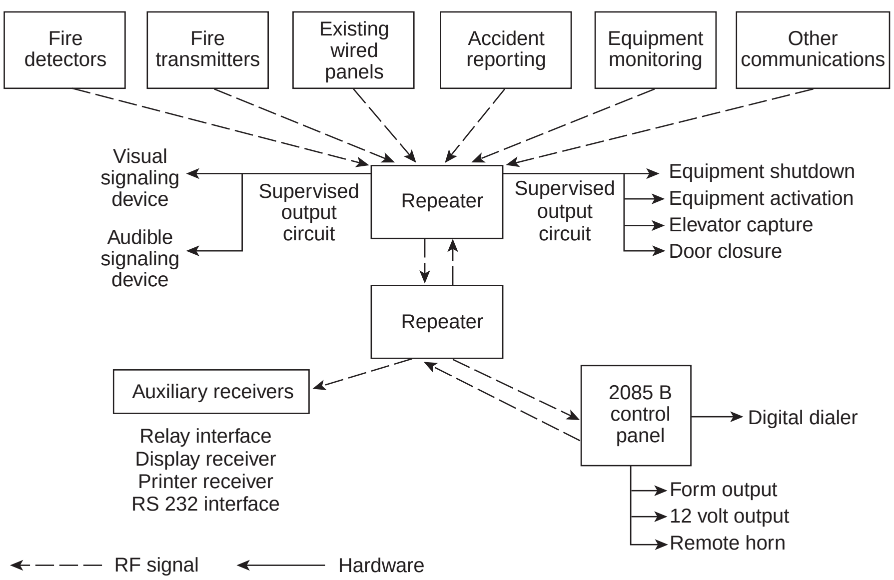
EXHIBIT 23.22

Low-Power Wireless System. (Source: Honeywell Security & Custom Electronics, Syosset, NY)

EXHIBIT 23.23

Low-Power Wireless Combination System Control Unit. (Source: CWSI, LLC, Sunrise, FL)

EXHIBIT 23.24



Combination System Including Low-Power Radio (Wireless) Fire Alarm System with Other Non-Fire Equipment. (Source: CWSI, LLC, Sunrise, FL)

A.23.16.3.1 This requirement is not intended to preclude verification and local test intervals prior to alarm transmission.

23.16.3.2 Each low-power radio transmitter shall automatically repeat alarm transmission at intervals not exceeding 60 seconds until the initiating device is returned to its nonalarm condition.

23.16.3.3 Fire alarm signals shall have priority over all other signals.

23.16.3.4 The maximum allowable response delay from activation of an initiating device to receipt and display by the receiver/fire alarm control unit shall be 10 seconds.

23.16.3.5* A fire alarm signal from a low-power radio transmitter shall latch at its receiver/fire alarm control unit until manually reset and shall identify the particular initiating device in alarm.

A.23.16.3.5 Trouble and supervisory signals are not required to latch. Self-restoring trouble and supervisory signals are acceptable.

23.16.4 Monitoring for Integrity.

23.16.4.1 The low-power radio transmitter shall be specifically listed as using a transmission method that is highly resistant to misinterpretation of simultaneous transmissions and to interference (e.g., impulse noise and adjacent channel interference).

23.16.4.2 The occurrence of any single fault that disables transmission between any low-power radio transmitter and the receiver/fire alarm control unit shall cause a latching trouble signal within 200 seconds.

Exception: Until the expiration date for this exception of June 30, 2013, the time period for a low-power radio transmitter with only a single, connected alarm-initiating device shall be permitted to be increased to four times the minimum time interval permitted for a 1-second transmission up to the following:

(1) 4 hours maximum for a transmitter serving a single initiating device
(2) 4 hours maximum for a retransmission device (repeater), where disabling of the repeater or its transmission does not prevent the receipt of signals at the receiver/fire alarm control unit from any initiating device transmitter.

23.16.4.3 A single fault on the signaling channel shall not cause an alarm signal.

23.16.4.4 The periodic transmission required to comply with 23.16.4.2 from a low-power radio transmitter shall ensure successful alarm transmission capability.

23.16.4.5 Removal of a low-power radio transmitter from its installed location shall cause immediate transmission of a distinctive supervisory signal that indicates its removal and individually identifies the affected device.

23.16.4.6 Reception of any unwanted (interfering) transmission by a retransmission device (repeater) or by the main receiver/control unit, for a continuous period of 20 seconds or more, shall cause an audible and visible trouble indication at the main receiver/control unit. This indication shall identify the specific trouble condition as an interfering signal.

23.16.5 Output Signals from Receiver/Control. When the receiver/control is used to actuate remote appliances, such as notification appliances and relays, by wireless means, the remote appliances shall meet the following requirements:

(1) Power supplies shall comply with Chapter 10 or the requirements of 23.16.2.
(2) All monitoring for integrity requirements of Chapter 10, Chapter 12, Chapter 23, or 23.16.4 shall apply.

(3) The maximum allowable response delay from activation of an initiating device to activation of required alarm functions shall be 10 seconds.
(4) Each receiver/control shall automatically repeat alarm transmission at intervals not exceeding 60 seconds or until confirmation that the output appliance has received the alarm signal.
(5) The appliances shall continue to operate (latch-in) until manually reset at the receiver/control.

References Cited in Commentary

Americans with Disabilities Act and Architectural Barriers Act Accessibility Guidelines, published in the *Federal Register,* U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC, July 23, 2004, and amended August 5, 2005.

ANSI/UL 864, *Standard for Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems,* Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL, 2003, revised 2011.

NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*, 2013 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 17, *Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems*, 2009 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 17A, *Standard for Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems*, 2009 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 20, *Standard for the Installation of Stationary Pumps for Fire Protection*, 2013 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code®*, 2011 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA *101®*, *Life Safety Code®*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 601, *Standard for Security Services in Fire Loss Prevention*, 2010 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

CHAPTER 24

Emergency Communications Systems (ECS)

Chapter 24 was a new chapter in the 2010 edition of the Code. The requirements for the installation and performance of emergency communications systems (ECSs) for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems (EVACSs) and other communications systems are covered in this chapter.

In the 2007 edition of the Code, the requirements for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems were located in Chapter 6. In the 2010 edition, the requirements were moved to Chapter 24 and, in some cases, were modified. Most of the requirements for other forms of ECSs in this chapter have been updated or added in the 2013 edition of the Code. The guidance for mass notification systems (MNSs) found in Annex E of the 2007 edition was moved to this chapter in the 2010 edition and reworded as requirements or has been added to Annex A as explanatory information. New material has been added to the 2013 edition with regards to documentation, emergency command centers, and risk analysis requirements. Additionally, the requirements for MNSs have been correlated and updated with the requirements established by the U.S. Department of Defense in the publication *Design and O&M: Mass Notification Systems* (UFC 4-021-01).

The following list is a summary of significant changes to the chapter on emergency communications systems (ECS) in the 2013 edition:

- References throughout to new Chapter 7 for documentation requirements that must be satisfied for one-way and two-way emergency communications systems and MNSs as well as new requirements for risk analysis and evaluation documentation
- New 24.3.2 requiring posted microphone use instructions
- Revised 24.3.10 introducing the new ANSI/UL standard, ANSI/UL 2572, *Standard for Mass Notification Systems*
- Relocated and expanded risk analysis section
- New criteria in 24.4.1 on message development and the need for message templates and test messages
- Revised requirements in 24.4.2.2.2.2 and 24.4.3.3.2 regarding acoustically distinguishable spaces (ADS)
- Clarified requirements in 24.4.2.5.7 for system operation upon release of the microphone
- New requirement in 24.4.3.5.3 for written sequence of operation for an in-building MNS and delivery of the site-specific software to the owner
- Revised 24.4.3.14 with significant changes relative to voice message priority for in-building MNS
- Requirements pertaining to telephone appliances previously located in 18.8.2 of the 2010 edition relocated to 24.5.1.16 and unchanged
- The character/symbol and viewing distance requirements for textual visible appliances relocated from Chapter 24 to 18.9.4
- Revised criterion in 24.4.3.13 for visible indication at LOCs

- New 24.6.1.1 addressing the requirements for an MNS emergency command center (ECC)

The arrangement of the sections containing the requirements for the ECSs presented in this chapter is shown in Figure A.24.3.7.

24.1 Application

24.1.1 The application, installation, and performance of emergency communications systems and their components shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

24.1.2* The requirements of this chapter shall apply to emergency communications systems within buildings and outdoor areas.

A.24.1.2 An emergency communications system could target the general building, area, space, campus, or region.

24.1.3 The requirements of Chapters 7, 10, 12, 17, 18, 21, 23, 26, and 27 shall also apply unless they are in conflict with this chapter.

24.1.4 Inspection, testing, and maintenance shall be performed in accordance with testing frequencies and methods in Chapter 14.

24.1.5 The requirements of this chapter shall not apply to Chapter 29 unless specifically indicated.

Rarely, if ever, would a one- or two-family dwelling have a communications system as described in this chapter. However, should an owner decide to install some form of ECS in a dwelling, the designer should follow the requirements herein.

24.2 Purpose

24.2.1 The systems covered under Chapter 24 are for the protection of life by indicating the existence of an emergency situation and communicating information necessary to facilitate an appropriate response and action.

FAQ Do the requirements of Chapter 24 for ECSs apply only to in-building applications?

As can be seen from the types of systems described in Figure A.24.3.7, this chapter provides requirements for more than just in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems. An event such as a terrorist attack, an on-campus shooter, or a natural disaster would necessitate clear and on-time communication from those in authority to the occupants of the building or outside areas or via a distributed recipient mass notification system (DRMNS) directly to the people, wherever they may be during the emergency.

24.2.2 This chapter establishes minimum required levels of performance, reliability, and quality of installation for emergency communications systems but does not establish the only methods by which these requirements are to be achieved.

The Code and this chapter do not require an owner to install an ECS. In fact, unlike traditional fire alarm devices, appliances, and other equipment that have historically been required by NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®, and other model codes, MNSs are not typically required by these documents. Essentially any MNS for all commercial enterprises will be owner-driven. However, once the decision has been made to install a system, all the applicable requirements of the Code must be followed for the design, documentation, installation, testing, and maintenance.

24.2.3 An emergency communications system is intended to communicate information about emergencies including, but not limited to, fire, human-caused events (accidental and intentional), other dangerous situations, accidents, and natural disasters.

In order for the ECS to communicate information properly, it must reproduce the desired messages so that the intended listeners will both hear and understand the message. The information provided must be relevant and provide enough time for the occupants to take the correct action. An ECS should be more than just a technological solution — it should include a structured and rigorously tested procedural/management component to be effective. This management component includes the establishment of an emergency response plan and training all occupants in the building or on-site to respond as required by the emergency response plan. It should be recognized that simply providing information does not guarantee immediate and appropriate response from the target population.

FAQ What information should an effective emergency message contain?

Research shows that the message is one of the most important factors in determining the effectiveness of a warning system and that the message must provide the following content:

- Information on the hazard and danger
- Guidance on what people should do
- Description of the risk or hazard location
- Idea of when they need to act
- Name of the warning source (who is giving it)

Warning style is also crucial in that it must be specific, consistent, certain, clear, and accurate. See also the requirements located in 24.4.1 through 24.4.4.

24.3 General

24.3.1* Intelligible Voice Messages. Emergency communications systems shall be capable of the reproduction of prerecorded, synthesized, or live (e.g., microphone, telephone handset, and radio) messages with voice intelligibility in accordance with Chapter 18.

Many designers, installers, and authorities having jurisdiction have struggled to meet the requirements concerning intelligible voice messages contained in earlier editions of the Code. Most sound system professionals agree that a majority of their sound and communications systems are designed as described in A.24.3.1. The important issue in meeting this requirement is to have a basic understanding of sound and communications principles. Designers and installers should understand the importance of a good distribution of speakers rather than a higher power output of a few speakers.

A.24.3.1 In certain situations, it is important to provide a distributed sound level with minimal sound intensity variations to achieve an intelligible voice message. This differs from past fire alarm design practice that used fewer notification appliances, but with each having greater sound pressure output levels. Non-emergency system design practice is to use more speakers and less sound intensity from each speaker. Besides improving intelligibility of the message, this approach minimizes annoyance to building occupants from the system and lessens the likelihood of tampering with the system by occupants because of speakers being too loud. In other applications, such as outdoor signaling where reverberation is not a problem, intelligibility can be achieved by using fewer appliances or clusters of appliances covering larger areas.

Intelligibility is a complex function of the source audio, the acoustic response of the architectural features and materials of the immediate vicinity, and the dynamics created by the room's occupants. Refer to Annex D for more information on speech intelligibility and how it is predicted. Spacing speakers closely can be an intelligibility-enhancing technique but can occasionally lead to opposite results when improperly designed. There are several techniques using directionality features that do not use closely spaced speakers but rather use the room/space acoustic response in their favor.

Based upon a detailed risk analysis and emergency response plan, certain recorded or live mass notification voice messages could take priority over fire alarm messages and signals. If the fire alarm system is in the alarm mode when recorded voice message or audible signals are sounding, and the mass notification system is actuated with a signal of higher priority, it should temporarily cause deactivation of all fire alarm-initiated audible and visible notification appliances during the time period required to transmit the mass notification emergency message.

24.3.2 Microphone Use.

24.3.2.1* All users of systems that have microphones for live voice announcements shall be provided with posted instructions for using the microphone.

A.24.3.2.1 Users who speak too softly, too loudly, or who hold a microphone too close, too far, or at an incorrect angle can introduce distortion or cause reduced intelligibility of the spoken message. The characteristics of the system microphone are important ergonomic factors that affect voice intelligibility. Some microphones need to be held close to the mouth, perhaps an inch or less. Others need to be three or four inches away. How is the user to know what's ideal? A simple diagram next to the microphone can help. Some microphones are very directional and must be held flat in front of the speaker's mouth. These microphones are useful in small command centers, since they are less likely to pick up conversations off to the sides. On the other hand, microphones with a wider polar sensitivity are more forgiving for a user to hold comfortably while moving and doing other tasks. Their downside is that they will pick up extraneous noise in poorly designed command centers introduced into the microphone.

Improper microphone use will have a very negative effect on the intelligibility of the message that the microphone user is trying to send. In addition to ensuring the proper microphone for the job, the owner should train the system users in correct microphone usage.

24.3.3* Required Emergency Communications Systems. An emergency communications system shall be installed in occupancies where required by the authority having jurisdiction or by other applicable governing laws, codes, or standards.

A.24.3.3 The requirements found in *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Article 708, should be considered for emergency communications systems that are installed in vital infrastructure facilities classified as a designated critical operations area (DCOA). This includes facilities that, if destroyed or incapacitated, would disrupt national security, the economy, public health or safety and where enhanced electrical infrastructure for continuity of operation has been deemed necessary by governmental authority.

If the facility where the ECS is required per 24.3.3 is classified as a designated critical operations area (DCOA), then additional electrical requirements apply. Article 708 of *NFPA 70*®, *National Electrical Code*® (*NEC*®), covers critical operations power systems (COPS).

24.3.4* Nonrequired (Voluntary) Emergency Communications Systems.

FAQ When is an ECS installation considered nonrequired (voluntary)?

An installation of an ECS is voluntary when the owner decides that a system is needed to meet the fire safety or emergency response plan for the occupancy. Although there is no building code or NFPA *101* requirement for the system, the designer and the installer of an ECS must understand the owner's goals and objectives and the system's intended use.

A.24.3.4 The features for a nonrequired system should be established by the system designer on the basis of the goals and objectives intended by the system owner.

24.3.4.1 Nonrequired emergency communications systems and components shall meet the requirements of this chapter.

With the exception of a standard public address system, the ECSs described in this chapter have an impact on the life safety of the occupants in the protected building. Therefore, regardless of whether an ECS is required by a building code or by the *Life Safety Code*, it is imperative that the design and installation of the ECS be made in accordance with the requirements herein. Although the system may be installed voluntarily, the designer or installer does not have permission to install an unreliable or non-Code-compliant ECS.

24.3.4.2 Nonrequired emergency communications systems and components shall be identified on the record drawings.

Even though the ECS system may not be required by a code, if a system is designed and installed in a building, the record drawings ("as-built" drawings) must show the installation as if it were a required system.

24.3.5 Ancillary Functions.

24.3.5.1 Ancillary functions shall not impair the required operation of the emergency communications system.

The intent of the Code is to allow an ECS to be used on a regular basis for nonemergency purposes so that an owner is not required to install multiple systems. However, the Code requires that these nonemergency uses, such as paging or public address, do not interfere with the performance of any emergency function of the ECS.

24.3.5.2* Loudspeakers used for emergency communications system functions also providing ancillary functions shall meet the conditions of either 24.3.5.2(1) or (2):

Note the use of "either/or" in the requirement. An in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system may be used not only for other emergencies but also for nonemergency uses such as background music or public address. However, the intent of the Code is to ensure that the speakers and circuits are not compromised because of this non–fire alarm use. A Code user would pick one or the other of the methods to comply with the Code. The Code still requires monitoring the system's integrity as outlined in Chapters 10 and 12. However, the authority having jurisdiction may accept a performance-based alternative for the monitoring requirements (for example, constant daily use of the system).

(1) The fire command center or the emergency command center as applicable shall be constantly attended by trained personnel, and selective paging is permitted by the authority having jurisdiction.
(2) All of the following conditions shall be met:
 (a) The loudspeakers and associated audio equipment are installed or located with safeguards to resist tampering or misadjustment of those components essential for intended emergency notification.
 (b) The monitoring integrity requirements of 10.6.9 and Sections 10.19 and 12.6 continue to be met while the system is used for non-emergency purposes.

Speaker systems are available that incorporate volume controls and components that allow occupants to lower or turn off the speakers in an area or office. These systems are also designed to allow the speakers to operate at their required power output when the fire alarm system is actuated. This safeguard is now available to meet the requirements of 24.3.5.2(2)(a) and 24.4.3.15.2. See Exhibit 24.4 for an example of this component. This operation could also be controlled through software. The requirement for monitoring the integrity of the device would be for the wiring to the device and not the device as it will or could be turned off.

A.24.3.5.2 Dedicated in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems are not required to monitor the integrity of the notification appliance circuits while active for emergency purposes. However, these circuits have to be monitored for integrity while active for non-emergency purposes. The building operator, system designer, and authority having jurisdiction should be aware that, in some situations, such a system could be subject to deliberate tampering. Tampering is usually attempted to reduce the output of a sound system that is in constant use, such as background music or a paging system, and that could be a source of annoyance to employees.

The likelihood of tampering can be reduced through proper consideration of loudspeaker accessibility and system operation.

Access can be reduced through the use of hidden or nonadjustable transformer taps (which can reduce playback levels), use of vandal-resistant listed loudspeakers, and placement in areas that are difficult to access, such as high ceilings (any ceiling higher than could be reached by standing on a desk or chair). Non-emergency operation of the system should always consider that an audio system that annoys an employee potentially reduces employee productivity and can also annoy the public in a commercial environment. Most motivations for tampering can be eliminated through appropriate use of the system and employee discipline. Access to amplification equipment and controls should be limited to those authorized to make adjustments to such equipment. It is common practice to install such equipment in a manner that allows adjustment of non-emergency audio signal levels while defaulting to a fixed, preset level of playback when operating in emergency mode. Under extreme circumstances, certain zones of a protected area might require a dedicated in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications zone.

24.3.5.3 Ancillary functions shall be inspected and tested annually to verify they will not impair the operation of the fire alarm system or the mass notification system.

In the 2013 edition, ancillary functions are now required to be tested to ensure that they do not impair the ECS.

24.3.6 Pathway Survivability.

24.3.6.1 Pathway survivability levels shall be as described in Section 12.4.

Pathway survivability levels are under the purview of the Technical Committee on Protected Premises Fire Alarm Systems. Chapter 12 requirements are referenced based on the need for the ECS to continue functioning during a fire.

24.3.6.2 Other component survivability shall comply with the provisions of 24.4.2.8.5.6.

24.3.6.3* The pathway survivability requirements in 24.3.6.4 through 24.3.6.12 shall apply to notification and communications circuits and other circuits necessary to ensure the continued operation of the emergency communications system.

A.24.3.6.3 This section is not meant to preclude a performance-based pathway survivability approach. As with most performance-based approaches, documentation should be provided by the designer and maintained with system documentation for the life of the system. Written documentation of the approval from the authority having jurisdiction should also be maintained. A performance-based approach to pathway survivability could be equivalent to, less stringent than, or more stringent than the prescriptive approach in 24.3.6. Often a performance-based approach will result from a risk analysis.

This section is also not meant to preclude less stringent pathway survivability requirements supported by a risk analysis for those unique occupancies that employ voice alarm/emergency communication systems for relocation or partial evacuation as part of their fire safety plan where relocation or partial evacuation could be readily superseded by total evacuation and where buildings are of a type other than Type I or Type II (222) construction where the pathway survivability performance requirement does not need to be for two hours. Examples include low rise education and day care occupancies, nursing homes, ambulatory health care occupancies, hotel and dormitory occupancies, and residential board and care occupancies.

24.3.6.4 In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems shall comply with 24.3.6.4.1 or 24.3.6.4.2.

24.3.6.4.1 For systems employing relocation or partial evacuation, a Level 2 or Level 3 pathway survivability shall be required.

Each level of pathway survivability offers options for the designer and the installer to meet the survivability requirements. Some Code users have mistakenly assumed that if a circuit is in conduit, it is survivable. Wire or cable in a raceway such as conduit is certainly mechanically protected, but it is not survivable from the impact of fire. Subsection 23.10.2 states in part that "fire alarm systems used for partial evacuation and relocation shall be designed and installed such that attack by fire within an evacuation signaling zone shall not impair control and operation of the notification appliances outside the evacuation signaling zone." This is the performance description of survivability. Designers, authorities having jurisdiction, and installers should also ensure that circuits controlling notification appliance circuits and equipment that are common to more than one evacuation signaling zone are designed and installed such that fire will not disable them. Paragraph 24.3.6.4.1 offers two options for survivability that are essentially equal, with the exception that survivability Level 3 has the additional requirement for complete sprinkler system protection in the building in accordance with NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*.

24.3.6.4.2 For systems that do not employ relocation or partial evacuation, a Level 0, Level 1, Level 2, or Level 3 pathway survivability shall be required.

The prudent designer or installer must understand the owner's goals and objectives for the ECS and perform a risk analysis as needed to determine the level of survivability that should be used.

24.3.6.4.3 Refer to Annex F for previous nomenclature and cross reference.

24.3.6.5 Pathway survivability levels for in-building mass notification systems shall be determined by the risk analysis.

FAQ

What are the survivability requirements where an MNS is also used as an in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system?

In-building MNSs may or may not be required to have pathway survivability depending on the results of the risk analysis. However, if the MNS is integrated with the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system, then the survivability requirements must be as defined in 24.3.6.

24.3.6.6 Pathway survivability levels for wide area mass notification systems shall be determined by the risk analysis.

24.3.6.7 Two-way in-building wired emergency communications systems shall have a pathway survivability of Level 2 or Level 3.

Two-way in-building wired ECSs, formerly called fire fighters' telephones or fire warden telephones, are generally used during fire conditions. Therefore, the circuits connecting the telephones to the main control must be survivable.

24.3.6.8 Two-way radio communications enhancement systems shall comply with 24.3.6.8.1 through 24.3.6.8.4.

24.3.6.8.1* Where a two-way radio communications enhancement system is used in lieu of a two-way in-building wired emergency communications system, it shall have a pathway survivability of Level 1, Level 2, or Level 3.

Exception: Where leaky feeder cable is utilized as the antenna, it shall not be required to be installed in metal raceway.

A.24.3.6.8.1 Extensive searches and discussions with cable manufacturers have not been able to identify a source of listed 2-hour-rated coaxial or fiber cables. Listed fire-rated 75 ohm coaxial cables for security cameras exist but are not adaptable to distributed antenna systems operating at much higher radio frequencies. Coaxial cable with characteristics similar to low loss 50 ohm, ½ in. (13 mm) diameter, coaxial cables are available in plenum and riser ratings. Past installations have used these plenum and riser rated coaxial cables prior to this Code.

The fiber component of fiber-optic cables melts at temperatures well below the 1825°F (996°C) test specification for listed 2-hour cable.

Using 2-hour-rated cable enclosures throughout each floor of most structures is impractical, especially when added to existing structures.

In order for a two-way radio communications enhancement system to be considered equal to and as reliable as the two-way in-building wired ECSs, the pathway survivability must be ensured. For example, a typical bi-directional amplified (BDA) system uses "leaky" coaxial cable to allow the fire fighter radios to operate anywhere in the building. This cable cannot survive an attack by fire, so there is no guarantee that the fire department radio system will work throughout the building during the fire suppression and rescue efforts. Even if a standard coaxial cable is used for individual floor electronic antennae, survivability cannot be guaranteed because, as of the 2013 edition of the Code, there are no 2-hour rated coaxial cables on the market. If the BDA systems is preferred by the authority having jurisdiction, then a Level 1 survivability could be used as permitted in 24.3.6.8.1.

24.3.6.8.1.1 The feeder and riser coaxial cables shall be rated as plenum cables.

24.3.6.8.1.2 The feeder coaxial cables shall be connected to the riser coaxial cable using hybrid coupler devices of a value determined by the overall design.

24.3.6.8.2 Where a two-way radio communications enhancement system is used in lieu of a two-way in-building wired emergency communications system, the design of the system shall be approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

Some designers and installers assume that the authority having jurisdiction for the two-way radio communications enhancement system is the same as the authority having jurisdiction for the fire alarm system design review and approval. In fact, the authority having jurisdiction for the two-way radio communications enhancement system might be the fire department radio communications chief. The designer or installer must determine who the authority having jurisdiction is or if there may be more than one authority for this particular system.

24.3.6.8.3* Riser coaxial cables shall be rated as riser cables and routed through a 2-hour-rated enclosure.

A.24.3.6.8.3 Examples of 2-hour-rated enclosures could include stairwells and elevator hoistways for first responders–use elevators.

24.3.6.8.4 The connection between the riser and feeder coaxial cables shall be made within the 2-hour-rated enclosure, and passage of the feeder cable in and out of the 2-hour-rated enclosure shall be firestopped to 2-hour ratings.

24.3.6.9* Area of refuge (area of rescue assistance) emergency communications systems shall comply with 24.3.6.9.1 and 24.3.6.9.2.

A.24.3.6.9 Although in some instances areas of refuge (areas of rescue assistance) might be installed in buildings that use general evacuation and not relocation/partial evacuation, it is still crucial that people awaiting assistance can communicate with emergency responders to facilitate their evacuation. Thus, their evacuation time might be prolonged, and therefore the emergency communications systems should be capable of operating reliably during a fire incident.

24.3.6.9.1 Area of refuge emergency communications systems shall have a pathway survivability of Level 2 or Level 3.

The area of refuge concept was established to provide a location for building occupants who cannot traverse the stairs without assistance to assemble and await assistance or instructions by the first responders. Therefore, the circuits connecting the area of refuge communications system to the fire command center must be designed to withstand the attack of fire during the time that the occupants await assistance.

24.3.6.9.2 Circuits intended to transmit off-premises shall have a pathway survivability of Level 0, Level 1, Level 2, or Level 3.

In almost every fire in the United States where a large loss of life or property has occurred, one of the major factors leading to the large loss was delayed notification to the fire department.

Designers, installers, and authorities having jurisdiction should review the circuit and pathways connecting to the off-premises transmission component of the fire alarm system to determine what level of survivability is desired or needed for a reliable connection.

24.3.6.10 Elevator emergency communications systems shall have a pathway survivability of Level 0, Level 1, Level 2, or Level 3.

24.3.6.11 Central command station emergency communications systems shall have pathway survivability as determined by the risk analysis.

24.3.6.12 All other emergency communications system circuits shall have pathway survivability as determined by the risk analysis.

The prudent designer or installer must be sure to understand the owner's goals and objectives for the systems and circuits described in 24.3.6.9.2, 24.3.6.10, 24.3.6.11, and 24.3.6.12 and perform a risk analysis as needed to determine what level of survivability should be used.

24.3.7* System Classification. Emergency communications systems (ECS) shall consist of two classifications of systems, one-way and two-way.

A.24.3.7 One-way emergency communications systems are intended to broadcast information, in an emergency, to personnel in one or more specified indoor or outdoor areas. It is intended that emergency messages be conveyed either by audible or visible textual means or both. This section does not apply to bells, horns, or other sounders and lights, except where used in conjunction with the desired operation of emergency messages and signaling.

Two-way emergency communications systems are divided into two categories, those systems that are anticipated to be used by building occupants and those systems that are to be used by fire fighters, police, and other emergency services personnel. Two-way emergency communications systems are used both to exchange information and to communicate information, such as, but not limited to, instructions, acknowledgement of receipt of messages, condition of local environment, and condition of persons, and to give assurance that help is on its way.

NFPA 72 contains requirements that can impact the application of emergency communications systems. For instance, coordination of the functions of an emergency communications system with other systems that communicate audibly and/or visibly [such as fire alarm systems, security systems, public address (PA) systems] is essential in order to provide effective communication in an emergency situation. Conflicting or competing signals or messages from different systems could be very confusing to occupants and have a negative impact on the intended occupant response. Where independent systems using audible and/or visible notification are present, the emergency communications system needs to interface with those systems to effect related control actions such as deactivating both audible and visible notification appliances. The use of a single integrated combination system might offer both economic and technical advantages. In any case, coordination between system functions is essential. The coordination of emergency communications systems with other systems should be considered part of the risk analysis for the emergency communications system. *(See Figure A.24.3.7.)*

Additional documents such as NEMA Standard SB 40, *Communications Systems for Life Safety in Schools*, can also be used as supplemental resources to provide help with risk assessment and application considerations.

Combining or integrating in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems with other communications systems such as mass notification, public address, and paging is permitted by the Code. The technology is available to ensure that fire alarm or priority mass notification messages (as determined by the risk analysis) will take precedence over any other

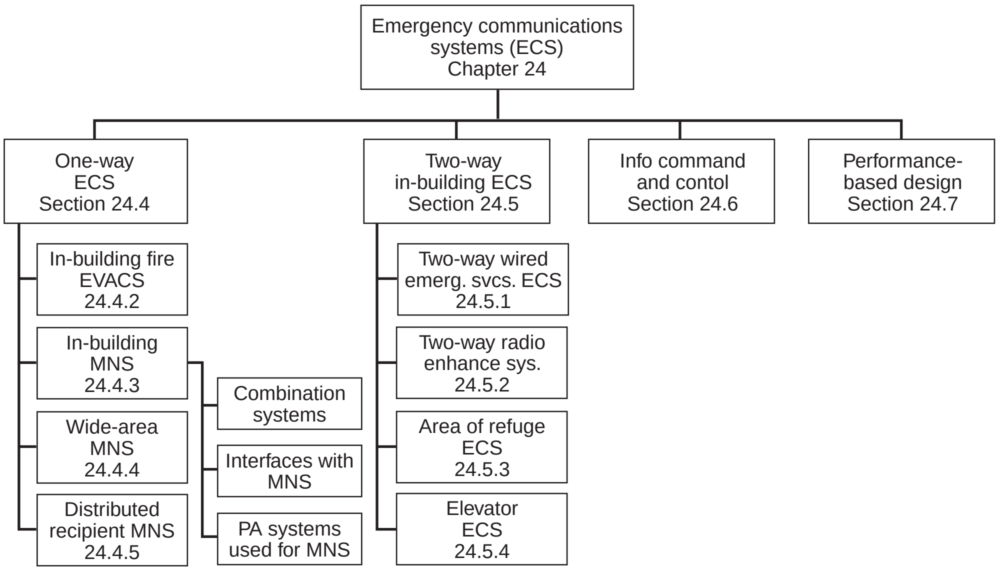


FIGURE A.24.3.7 *Emergency Communications Systems.*

announcement, such as paging from a telephone system or other public address system. Using one speaker system with a combination of other communications systems that incorporates all the requirements of the Code is financially beneficial to the owner.

24.3.8* Mass Notification Layers. Emergency communications used for mass notification shall be categorized into layers and take into consideration type of audience and reach as follows:

(1) Layer 1 relates to means of notification of occupants by systems/equipment installed inside a building and controlled only by authorized users (in-building ECS)
(2) Layer 2 relates to means of notification of occupants on the exterior of a building and controlled only by authorized users (wide-area MNS)
(3) Layer 3 relates to means of notification of personnel through individual measures (distributed recipient MNS)
(4) Layer 4 relates to means of notification of personnel by public measures (broadcast radio, television, and so forth)

A.24.3.8 The layers can be used in combination. In all cases, the system design needs to follow the risk analysis and be integrated into the emergency response plan. Research has shown that more than one layer has been used to be effective. Multiple layers provide an extra level of notification (a safety net). The overall MNS application is likely to exploit a number of public and individual systems or components that combine to produce a reliable and robust solution to achieve emergency notification objectives.

Layer 1 could consist of elements such as the following:

(1) Emergency voice/alarm communications systems (EVACS)
(2) One-way voice communication systems (PA)
(3) Two-way voice communication systems
(4) Visible notification appliances
(5) Textual/digital signage/displays

Layer 2 could consist of elements such as the following:

(1) Wide-area outdoor mass notification systems (MNS)
(2) High power speaker arrays (HPSA)

Layer 3 could consist of elements such as the following:

(1) Short message service (SMS)
(2) Email
(3) Computer pop-ups
(4) Smartphone applications (Apps)
(5) Reverse 911/automated dialing

Layer 4 could consist of elements such as the following:

(1) Radio broadcast (satellite, AM/FM)
(2) Television broadcast (satellite, digital)
(3) Location specific messages/notifications
(4) Weather radios
(5) Social networks

Also see *Optimizing Fire Alarm Notification for High Risk Groups* research project.

The designer of an MNS should meet with the stakeholders for the system and review the risk analysis to determine the appropriate layer or layers of MNS needed to meet the stakeholder's needs. In almost every case, a Level 1 layer will be combined with one of the other layers.

24.3.9* Design. Design documents in accordance with Section 7.3 shall be prepared prior to installation of any new system.

A.24.3.9 The design documents might include, but are not limited to, shop drawings, input/output matrix, battery calculations, notification appliance voltage drop calculations for strobes and speakers, and product data sheets.

The 2013 Code has a new Chapter 7 for all documentation requirements. Section 7.3 relates to design documentation.

24.3.9.1 Systems that are altered shall have design documents prepared applicable to the portions of the system that are altered.

System alterations can take place at any time. The Code now requires that the portions of a system that are altered must have the appropriate documentation.

24.3.9.2 Documents shall be revised as necessary following installation to represent as-built conditions and include record drawings.

24.3.10 Listing. Control units installed as part of a mass notification system shall be in compliance with this Code and applicable standards such as ANSI/UL 864, *Standard for Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems,* or ANSI/UL 2017, *Standard for General-Purpose Signaling Devices and Systems*, or ANSI/UL 2572, *Mass Notification Systems*.

The Code requires that MNS stand-alone systems meet the applicable standards such as new ANSI/UL 2572.

24.3.11* Risk Analysis for Mass Notification Systems.

FAQ What are some of the basic issues that must be addressed by the MNS risk analysis?

Emergency planning requires a detailed risk analysis (vulnerability and failure analysis), which includes an evaluation of the risk to the asset; probability of occurrence and frequency of loss; and the loss effect.

Risk mitigation includes dissemination of information, which is the role an MNS plays in an emergency. Subsection 24.3.11 provides guidance.

Exhibit 24.1 illustrates the extent of an MNS.

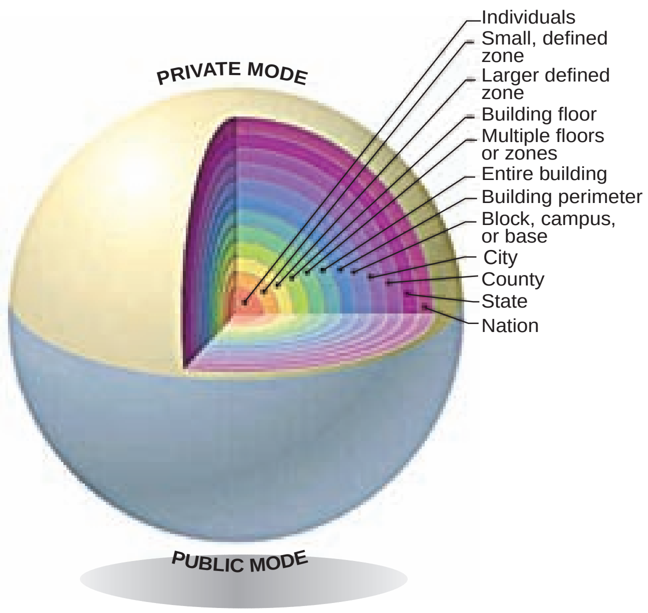


EXHIBIT 24.1
Extent of Mass Notification System (MNS).

A.24.3.11 There are many credible risk assessment methodologies that can be utilized and/or referenced in conducting the risk assessment required in 24.3.11, some of which are listed as follows:

(1) *CARVER — Target Analysis and Vulnerability Assessment Methodology*, Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Defense (see Field Manual 34–36, Special Operation Forces Intelligence and Electronics Warfare Operation, Sept. 30, 1991), www.defense.gov
(2) *General Security Risk Assessment Guidelines*. Alexandria, VA: American Society for Industrial Security International, www.asisonline.org
(3) *NFPA 1600, Standard on Disaster/Emergency Management and Business Continuity Programs*, Quincy, MA: National Fire Protection Association, www.nfpa.org
(4) NFPA 730, *Guide for Premises Security*, Quincy, MA: National Fire Protection Association, www.nfpa.org
(5) *Responsible Care Code*, Washington, DC: American Chemistry Council, www.americanchemistry.com
(6) *Risk and Resilience Management of Water & Wastewater Systems*, Denver, CO: American Water Works Association, www.awwa.org

(7) *VAMCAP® Vulnerability Assessment Methodology for Critical Asset Protection*, Wilmington, DE: SafePlace Corporation, www.safeplace.com
(8) *Vulnerability Assessment Methodologies*, Albuquerque, NM: Sandia National Laboratories, www.sandia.gov

Refer to A.7.8.2 and Figure A.7.8.2(g) for a risk analysis checklist.

24.3.11.1* Each application of a mass notification system shall be specific to the nature and anticipated risks of each facility for which it is designed.

A.24.3.11.1 Although this chapter outlines some specific criteria and/or limitations, each application should be based on recognized performance-based design practices and the emergency response plan developed for the specific facility.

Here are the general categories of questions that might be presented to the senior manager responsible for mass notification decisions. The actual questions for each project must be tailored to the area, the building, the campus, and the culture of the user organization. Following is a brief description of potential content within the mass notification event questions:

(1) What is the type of emergency event — that is, is it fire, security, safety, health, environmental, geological, meteorological, utility service disruption, or another type of event?
(2) What is the urgency of the emergency event — that is, does it represent immediate danger, has it already occurred, is it expected to occur soon, is it expected to occur in the future, or is its occurrence unknown?
(3) What is the anticipated or expected severity of the emergency event that is, how will it impact our facility and its functions, is it expected to be extreme, severe, etc.?
(4) What is the certainty of the emergency event that is, is it happening now, is it very likely to occur, is it likely to occur, is it possible that it will occur in the future, is it unlikely to occur, or is its occurrence unknown?
(5) What is the location of the event, or from what direction is the emergency event approaching — that is, has it or will it be approaching from the north, south, east, or west?
(6) What zone or areas should receive the emergency message(s) — that is, is it a floor of a building, multiple floors of a building, the entire building, multiple buildings, a campus of buildings, an entire town or city, an entire state, an entire region of states, or an entire country?
(7) What is the validity of the emergency event — that is, has the emergency event been investigated and/or confirmed?
(8) What instructions should we send to our personnel — that is, should they evacuate the facility, should they shelter-in-place, should they shelter-in-place at a special location, should they proceed to a safe haven area, and other action oriented items?
(9) Are there any special instructions, procedures, or special tasks that we need to remind personnel about or to accomplish — that is, close your office door, open your office door, stay away from windows, do not use elevators, and other information relating to personnel actions?

The questions suggested in items (1) through (9) are offered for consideration, and not all of them might be appropriate for every mass notification system installation. It is important to remember that when an emergency event occurs, the response must be immediate and deliberate. Therefore, there is no time for indecision. So the questions selected to reside in the emergency messaging decision tree illustrated in items (1) through (9) must be straightforward and as simple as possible. They must also be tailored to the specific organization, culture, site, and unique requirements of each local environment.

24.3.11.2 The designer shall consider both fire and non-fire emergencies when determining risk tolerances for survivability for the mass notification system.

24.3.11.3 Performance-based design and the risk analysis shall be applied in accordance with Section 24.7.

24.3.11.4 The risk analysis shall consider the number of persons, type of occupancy, and perceived peril to occupants.

24.3.11.5 The analysis shall be based on the maximum occupant load calculation for every occupiable room, building, area, space, campus, or region is expected to contain.

24.3.11.6 Occupancy characteristics shall comply with 24.3.11.6.1 and 24.3.11.6.2.

24.3.11.6.1 The risk analysis shall consider characteristics of the buildings, areas, spaces, campuses or regions, equipment, and operations that are not inherent in the design specifications.

24.3.11.6.2 Those elements that are not inherent in the design specifications, but that affect occupant behavior or the rate of hazard development, shall be explicitly identified and included in the risk analysis.

24.3.11.7 The risk analysis shall consider the following types of potential events, which are not all-inclusive but reflect the general categories that shall be considered in the risk analysis:

(1) Natural hazards — Geological events
(2) Natural hazards — Meteorological events
(3) Natural hazards — Biological events
(4) Human caused — Accidental events
(5) Human caused — Intentional events
(6) Technological — Caused events

24.3.11.8 The risk analysis shall include a review of the extent to which occupants and personnel are notified, based on the anticipated event (potential hazard).

24.3.11.9 The risk analysis shall be used as the basis for development of the ECS provisions of the facility emergency response plan.

The risk analysis section has been relocated and expanded for the 2013 edition to assist the user in developing basic risk analysis techniques. These paragraphs do not represent the total and only approach to risk analysis, but they do give direction to the user and the authority having jurisdiction to ensure the minimum requirements in a risk analysis are covered.

24.3.12* Emergency Response Plan Elements. A well-defined emergency response plan shall be developed in accordance with *NFPA 1600*, *Standard on Disaster/Emergency Management and Business Continuity Programs*, and NFPA 1620, *Standard for Pre-Incident Planning*, as part of the design and implementation of a mass notification system.

A.24.3.12 The emergency response plan should include, but not be limited to, the following elements:

(1) Emergency response team structure
(2) Emergency response procedures, as follows:
  (a) Building system related emergencies
  (b) Human-related emergencies
  (c) Terrorism-related emergencies
  (d) Weather-related emergencies
(3) Emergency response equipment and operations
(4) Emergency response notification, as follows:
  (a) Emergency message content

(b) Emergency notification approval process
(c) Emergency notification initiation process
(5) Emergency response training and drills, as follows:
(a) Classroom training
(b) Table-top training
(c) Live drills

The references to *NFPA 1600®, Standard on Disaster/Emergency Management and Business Continuity Programs,* and NFPA 1620, *Standard for Pre-Incident Planning,* serve to assist the user of this Code to better understand the requirements and elements of an effective emergency response plan. Paragraph A.24.3.12 touches on a few of the more common elements to be considered.

24.4 One-Way Emergency Communications Systems

24.4.1 General.

24.4.1.1* Messages shall be developed for each scenario developed in the emergency response plan.

A.24.4.1.1 The fundamental structure of the prerecorded or live messages is critical for providing information and instructions that are intelligible. Prerecorded messages created in a controlled environment are considerably more intelligible than live messages and should be developed and provided to handle as many of the probable emergencies that a particular facility will encounter.

The voice instructions (live or prerecorded) should be preceded by a tone to get attention and prepare the target audience for voice instructions. This tone should be differentiated for specific emergencies, based on the standards for that facility. The actual voice message (live or pre-recorded) should be delivered in a well-enunciated, clear, calm, and deliberate manner, using respectful language. Focus the message on the action to be taken and minimize wasting words on the cause. For the voice itself, best results will vary, depending on the specific location — for example, in outdoor applications, it has been shown that a male voice will provide better intelligibility, as the naturally lower frequency of the male voice travels better. Inversely, in an interior application, where the background ambient noise is typically in the same lower frequencies, a female voice tends to penetrate better, as it is more distinct from the ambient. Messages should be constructed using 2-second to 3-second bursts of information and brief periods of quiet between the bursts of information. This methodology facilitates better processing of information by the brain and minimizes the negative effects of reverberation and echo.

Generally, the emergency message should consist of an alert tone of 1 second to 3 seconds, followed by a voice message that is repeated at least three times. The alert tone can be used in between repeats of the voice message.

For live instructions, it is critical that the message be delivered in a clear and calm manner. When possible, the following procedure is recommended:

(1) Think about what information must be delivered in the live announcement, keep it brief, and write down the message
(2) Read the message out loud for a practice round in a clear and projecting voice
(3) When you are ready to announce, key the microphone and read the message at least three times
(4) When possible, use an alert tone, such as a Code 3, 1000 Hz signal preceding the message, and then announce over the live microphone
(5) Repeat the message a few times more as the emergency warrants

24.4.1.2* A message template shall be developed for each message required in 24.4.1.1.

A.24.4.1.2 A well-crafted, evidence-based message (incentive to response) with content that includes the following:

(1) What: Guidance on what people should do
(2) When: An idea of when they need to act
(3) Where: Description of the location of the risk of hazard (who should be taking action and who should not be)
(4) Why: Information on the hazard and danger/consequences
(5) Who: The name of the source of the warning (who is giving it)

Warning style is also crucial and should be specific, consistent, certain, clear, and accurate with attention paid to the frequency — the more it is repeated, the better.

24.4.1.3 For an evacuation message, a tone in accordance with 18.4.2 shall be used with a minimum of two cycles preceding and following the voice message.

24.4.1.4 Test messages shall clearly state the phrase "This is a test."

The NFPA Fire Protection Research Foundation has assisted the technical committee with research performed by Kuligowski, et al., to better understand the requirements of clear, concise messaging.

24.4.2* In-Building Fire Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications Systems (EVACS). Subsection 24.4.2 shall be used in the design and application of in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications for fire alarm systems.

In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems are usually found in high-rise and large area buildings, where evacuation of the entire building on every alarm is not practical or desirable. An in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system is more than a fire alarm system that uses a voice message to initiate evacuation of the building. The system is designed to assist emergency response personnel in managing the movement of both building occupants and fire fighters during a fire or other emergency.

FAQ What systems must comply with the requirements of Section 24.4?

The definition of *in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems* provided in 3.3.87.1.2 reads: "Dedicated manual or automatic equipment for originating and distributing voice instructions, as well as alert and evacuation signals pertaining to a fire emergency, to the occupants of a building." This definition does not exclude systems used to automatically and simultaneously notify all occupants to evacuate the premises. Any system using voice messaging must meet the requirements of Section 24.4, although not all systems are required to have all the features described in Section 24.4. For example, the requirements of 24.4.2.8 are not intended to apply where voice messages are used to simultaneously notify all building occupants to evacuate. Exhibit 24.2 illustrates an in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system.

A.24.4.2 Where used, recorded voice messages for fire emergency alarm systems should be prepared in accordance with this Code by persons who are experienced with the operation of building fire emergency alarm systems and are knowledgeable of the building's construction, layout, and fire protection plan, including evacuation procedures. The proposed voice messages should be approved by the authority having jurisdiction prior to being implemented. Persons who record the messages for fire emergency alarm systems should be able to read and

EXHIBIT 24.2

In-Building Fire Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications System. (Source: SimplexGrinnell, Westminster, MA)

speak the language used for the message clearly, concisely, and without an accent that would have an adverse affect on intelligibility.

It is not the intention that in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications service be limited to English-speaking populations. Emergency messages should be provided in the language of the predominant building population. If there is a possibility of isolated groups that do not speak the predominant language, multilingual messages should be provided. It is expected that small groups of transients unfamiliar with the predominant language will be picked up in the traffic flow in the event of an emergency and are not likely to be in an isolated situation.

24.4.2.1 Automatic Response. The in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system shall be used to provide an automatic response to the receipt of a signal indicative of a fire alarm or other emergency.

The sequence of operation and actual voice messages will be different for each building, but the fire alarm system must automatically actuate the emergency voice/alarm sequence unless the conditions of either 24.4.2.1.1 or 24.4.2.1.2 apply.

24.4.2.1.1 When the monitoring location is constantly attended by trained operators, and operator acknowledgment of receipt of a fire alarm or other emergency signal is received within 30 seconds, automatic response shall not be required.

This paragraph exempts the system from the automatic actuation required in 24.4.2.1 if the system is continuously attended by trained operators. This arrangement is often the case for an in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system installed in a large building. The intent is that the operators be fully trained and competent and have the authority to initiate appropriate action based on the fire safety plan for the facility.

24.4.2.1.2 If acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction, the system shall permit the application of an automatic evacuation signal to one or more evacuation signaling zones and, at the same time, shall permit manual voice paging to the other evacuation signaling zones selectively or in any combination.

With the permission of the authority having jurisdiction, the system can be arranged to provide manual voice paging to some evacuation signaling zones while providing automatic evacuation signals to other zones. The arrangement(s) allowed will depend in large part on the building's evacuation plan. This can be helpful during an emergency by allowing an authorized individual to make announcements relative to the emergency on floors (such as in a high-rise) unaffected by the emergency. Such announcements may be advising those who have not evacuated about the status of the incident and information regarding the need, or not, of the future evacuation of their floors.

24.4.2.2 Voice Evacuation Messages.

24.4.2.2.1 Unless otherwise permitted by 24.4.2.8, evacuation messages shall be preceded and followed by a minimum of two cycles of the emergency evacuation signal specified in 18.4.2.

FAQ Is the standard evacuation signal required to precede an evacuation message?

The operating sequence for voice messages intended to initiate evacuation is two cycles of the standard evacuation signal (tone) followed by the voice message with evacuation instructions followed by two more cycles of the evacuation signal. The sequence is typically repeated three to five times followed by continuous sounding of the evacuation signal.

24.4.2.2.2 Voice messages shall comply with the requirements of 24.3.1.

24.4.2.2.2.1 The following requirements shall be met for layout and design:

(1) The loudspeaker layout of the system shall be designed to ensure intelligibility and audibility.
(2) Intelligibility shall first be determined by ensuring that all areas in the building have the required level of audibility.

Speakers should not be located near the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system control equipment. If they are located too near the microphone, audio feedback will distort the manual page message by the fire commander using the microphone. The same design concept applies to locations where fire fighters' telephones are located. Speakers required in these areas should be arranged to ensure that the sound pressure levels of the nearby speakers do not preclude the effective use of the fire fighters' telephones.

24.4.2.2.2.2* System design shall incorporate designation of acoustically distinguishable spaces (ADS) within the occupiable areas as required in Chapter 18.

A.24.4.2.2.2.2 Generally speaking, in a standard building configuration with normal ceiling height [8 ft to 12 ft (2.4 m to 3.7 m)], normal ceiling construction (e.g., drop acoustical ceiling tiles), standard wall configurations, and finishes and carpeted floors, ceiling-mounted speakers should be installed in all normally occupiable spaces and in corridors spaced at a maximum of twice the ceiling height or as determined by a commercially available computer acoustical/speaker modeling program. Where wall-mounted speakers are used, manufacturer recommendations should be reviewed and/or computer modeling should be employed. One of the goals of speaker placement is to provide the shortest practical distance from the source (speaker) to the recipient (person hearing the signal). In many applications, a combination of wall- and ceiling-mounted speakers might be required. The audibility and intelligibility of the speakers can be impacted by the tap/setting at which the speaker is connected and should meet the audibility requirements of the Code while still having the message intelligible. Connecting to a high setting to meet the audibility requirements of the code could distort the intelligibility of the signal.

In an ADS that is a non-acoustically challenging area, designing for audibility will typically result in an intelligible system provided minimum speaker guidelines are followed. Areas typically considered to be non-acoustically challenging include traditional office environments, hotel guest rooms, dwelling units, and spaces with carpeting and furnishings.

Special attention must be given to acoustically challenging ADSs. Such areas might incorporate appreciable hard surfaces (e.g., glass, marble, tile, metal, etc) or appreciably high ceilings (e.g., atriums, multiple ceiling heights). These conditions will require more stringent design guidelines to ensure intelligibility (e.g., a closer than normal speaker spacing with lower taps). This can help reduce the effect of excessive reverberation and result in better intelligibility. In extreme cases there could be areas where intelligibility is not attainable, but this can be acceptable if there is an ADS within 30 ft (9.1 m) where the intelligibility of the system is deemed adequate.

In an ADS where the ambient noise level exceeds 85 dB it is acknowledged that intelligibility might not be attainable and an alternate means of notification is required.

Design guidance is provided in the NEMA Standards Publication SB 50-2008, *Emergency Communications Audio Intelligibility Applications Guide*.

It is imperative that the designer understand the importance of ensuring that the correct number of speakers be located throughout the building. In the past, fire alarm system designers did not use enough speakers in their designs to ensure both audibility and intelligibility. In standard 10 ft to 12 ft (3.0 m to 3.7 m) ceiling height environments, a good rule of thumb is to install speakers in every occupied space and at intervals of twice the ceiling height. Of course, the ambient noise level of the areas served by the speakers must be considered to ensure that the sound pressure levels of the speakers are at the correct levels for both audibility and intelligibility of the speaker system.

24.4.2.2.2.3 Audibility shall be required in all areas in accordance with Chapter 18.

• **24.4.2.3 Positive Alarm Sequence.** In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems shall be permitted to use positive alarm sequence complying with 23.8.1.3.

Positive alarm sequence essentially delays notification to the occupants, allowing time for security or authorized personnel to investigate and confirm the fire condition. The use of positive alarm sequence also requires the permission of the authority having jurisdiction. For a more detailed discussion of this concept, refer to the commentary following 23.8.1.3.

24.4.2.4 Tones. The tone preceding any message shall comply with 24.4.2.4.1 through 24.4.2.4.4.

24.4.2.4.1 The tone preceding any message shall be permitted to be a part of the voice message or to be transmitted automatically from a separate tone generator.

Depending on the goals and objectives of the owner and whether or not the in-building fire emergency alarm voice/communications system is to be used as a paging system or combined as an MNS, the tone may need to be separated from the voice message.

24.4.2.4.2* Except as specified in 24.4.2.4.3, in occupancies where sleeping accommodations are provided and the voice message is intended to communicate information to those who could be asleep, a low-frequency tone that complies with 18.4.5 shall be used.

A.24.4.2.4.2 The intent of this low frequency tone is to accommodate those with mild to severe hearing loss. See also 18.4.5, A.18.4.5.1, and A.29.3.8.2. The effective date listed in Chapter 18 for using a low frequency signal has not been allowed in 24.4.2.4 because voice systems are easily adapted to comply, whereas the requirements of 18.4.5 also apply to stand-alone tone signaling appliances.

Research has shown that the low frequency tone is an important addition to awaken sleeping individuals. Using it as a tone to precede voice messages is to help ensure that the entire message will be heard after the individual is awakened by the tone.

24.4.2.4.3* In areas where sleeping accommodation are provided, but the voice communication system is used to communicate to occupants who are awake, the low-frequency tone shall not be required.

A.24.4.2.4.3 Sleeping accommodations are provided in occupancies such as healthcare, detention and correction, and other occupancies where it would not be necessary to utilize a low frequency tone that awakens those sleeping. For example, in a hospital, the voice message is used to notify staff members who are already awake. The staff will then respond to the appropriate location in the hospital to carry out their duties that could include awakening and relocating patients who could be in danger. In addition, fire drills are required to be conducted on a regular basis and providing a low frequency tone could unnecessarily awaken patients, which would be detrimental to their care.

24.4.2.4.4 Audible signal tones for alert or evacuation shall meet the audibility requirements of either 18.4.3 (public mode audible requirements), 18.4.4 (private mode audible requirements), 18.4.5.1 and 18.4.5.2 (sleeping area requirements), or 18.4.6 (narrow band tone signaling for exceeding masked thresholds), as applicable.

24.4.2.5 Controls.

FAQ What term is used in 24.4.2.5 instead of the term *fire command center* or *emergency command center*?

Previous editions of the Code included a subsection entitled "Fire Command Center." For the 2010 edition of the Code, the technical committee selected the term *controls* instead of *fire command center* to avoid implying the requirement for a separate room(s) and to avoid the use of terminology that might conflict with the usage of the term in other codes and standards. The building or life safety codes in force within a jurisdiction normally dictate the location of the fire command center where these controls will be located. Although Section 24.4 now uses the term *controls*, the term *fire command center* is still defined in 3.3.106 and used in other locations in the Code. Users should be aware that the committee's intent in the selection of a different term was not to change the concept of the functions historically associated with the term *fire command center*.

The Code also now defines the *emergency communications system – emergency command center* in 3.3.89 as "The room(s) or area(s) staffed during any emergency event by assigned emergency management staff. The room or area contains system communications and control equipment serving one or more buildings where responsible authorities receive information from premises sources or systems or from (higher level) regional or national sources or systems and then disseminate appropriate information to individuals, a building, multiple buildings, outside campus areas, or a combination of these in accordance with the emergency response plan established for the premises. The room or area contains the controls and indicators from which the ECS systems located in the room or area can be manually controlled as required by the emergency response plan and the emergency management coordinator."

24.4.2.5.1* Controls for the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system shall be at a location approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

A.24.4.2.5.1 The choice of the location(s) for the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications control equipment should also take into consideration the ability of the fire alarm system to operate and function during any probable single event. Although NFPA 72 does not regulate either building construction or contents, system designers should consider the potential for an event that could damage the equipment, including remotely located control devices, to disable the system or a portion thereof. Where practical, it is prudent to minimize unnecessary fire exposures of fire alarm control equipment through the use of fire-rated construction or enclosures, by limiting adjacent combustibles and ignition sources, or other appropriate means.

The controls for the system should be located where required by the authority having jurisdiction. Factors in selecting the location include ease of access during an emergency, adequate space for the incident command staff, and protection from the effects of smoke and fire during an incident. The system will likely be used for emergencies other than fires, so care should be exercised to ensure that the location of the controls is appropriate for dealing with other types of emergencies as well. For example, in a tornado-prone area, locating the controls in a room on an exterior wall with windows would not be wise.

24.4.2.5.2 Controls shall be located or secured to allow access only by trained and authorized personnel.

The intent of 24.4.2.5.2 is to prevent unauthorized individuals from accessing the controls. Only those personnel who are trained and authorized should be permitted access to the operating controls. This requirement does not preclude the provision of remote equipment with voice capability located in areas other than the main control equipment.

24.4.2.5.3 Operating controls shall be clearly identified.

FAQ What is a good way to ensure that operating controls are clearly marked?

The best way to ensure that the purpose of operating controls is clear to the fire department is to ask the fire department how they want the controls marked. A marking that may be perfectly clear to a designer who is intimate with every system detail may mean nothing to a fire officer responding to the building. Because the controls are for fire department use, they should be labeled as designated by the fire department. Also refer to the requirements of Section 18.11 and the guidance of A.18.11.

24.4.2.5.4 If there are multiple in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications control locations, only one shall be in control at any given time.

The intent of 24.4.2.5.4 and 24.4.2.5.5 is to control how many messages can be issued at one time. If multiple control locations and multiple people are attempting to transmit emergency messages, confusion could result. These requirements are in place to avoid potentially confusing or conflicting message announcements.

24.4.2.5.5 The location having control of the system shall be identified by a visible indication at that location.

24.4.2.5.6 Manual controls shall be arranged to provide visible indication of the on/off status for their associated evacuation signaling zone.

24.4.2.5.7 If live voice instructions are provided, they shall perform as follows:

(1) Override previously initiated signals to the selected notification zone(s).
(2) Have priority over any subsequent automatically initiated signals to the selected notification zone(s).
(3) If a previously initiated recorded message is interrupted by live voice instructions, upon releasing of the microphone, the previously initiated recorded messages to the selected notification zones shall not resume playing automatically unless required by the emergency response plan.

Once the fire department personnel arrive, they must have the capability to override all previously initiated recorded voice instructions and provide to the building occupants up-to-date information and instructions specific to the emergency and current conditions.

In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems can be effective by calming occupants in areas remote from the fire and by directing others toward safety. Fire department and other emergency personnel who will be operating the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system during an emergency must be thoroughly familiar with the system and its operation. This familiarity requires effective initial and follow-up training. Actual on-site drills may be required to fully understand the operation and use of the system.

Item (3) was added in the 2013 edition to further enforce the intent of maintaining clarity of messages. The manual message will possibly obviate the need for the automatic message or conflict with its instruction because the emergency responders have more current information.

24.4.2.6 Loudspeakers.

24.4.2.6.1* Loudspeakers and their enclosures shall be installed in accordance with Chapter 18.

A.24.4.2.6.1 Speakers located in the vicinity of the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications control equipment should be arranged so they do not cause audio feedback when the system microphone is used. Speakers installed in the area of two-way telephone stations should be arranged so that the sound pressure level emitted does not preclude the effective use of the two-way telephone system. Circuits for speakers and telephones should be separated, shielded, or otherwise arranged to prevent audio cross-talk between circuits.

Attention must be paid to the layout of the speakers to ensure that the proper number is installed to achieve both audibility and intelligibility. See A.24.4.2.2.2.2 and the commentary following A.24.4.2.2.2.2.

24.4.2.6.2 Loudspeakers used as alarm notification appliances on fire alarm systems shall also be permitted to be used for mass notification.

24.4.2.7 Priority.

24.4.2.7.1* Notification appliances required to provide special suppression predischarge notification shall not be overridden by other systems.

A.24.4.2.7.1 Special suppression systems that are delivered through a total flooding or localized application include, but are not limited to, carbon dioxide, clean agents, halons, and other extinguishing agents. Special suppression systems require audible and visible warning alarms to provide personnel the opportunity to evacuate or to alert personnel not to enter the area of discharge that could be hazardous to life. A special suppression system discharge can be a life-threatening hazard for personnel who are not notified and, therefore, fail to react to the pre-discharge alarm. In such cases, pre-discharge and discharge alarms should be independent of the fire alarm speakers that are used as part of the mass notification system. A special suppression system discharge could pose a greater threat to personnel that are located in the protected area, or that could enter the protected area, if the local signals were to be overridden and they did not receive the appropriate warning.

24.4.2.7.2 Priority of mass notification messages over fire alarm evacuation shall be permitted when evaluated by the stakeholders through a risk analysis in accordance with 24.3.11.

24.4.2.7.3 When the fire alarm system has been activated, and mass notification has been given priority over the fire alarm system, a distinctive audible and visible indication shall be provided at the building fire alarm control unit to indicate MNS is active.

Providing a distinctive audible and visible indication establishes clear requirements for indication of an MNS activation taking control over the fire alarm system.

24.4.2.7.4 It shall not be required to transmit this condition to a supervising station.

24.4.2.7.5 The fire alarm system shall not automatically override emergency mass notification messages.

24.4.2.8* Relocation and Partial Evacuation. The requirements of 24.4.2.8 shall apply only to systems used for relocation or partial evacuation during a fire condition.

Fire alarm systems designed for partial or selective evacuation and relocation of building occupants must have a degree of survivability to maintain communication with occupants who remain in the building during a fire. Total evacuation of a high-rise building or large area manufacturing facility may not be practical. An in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system can be used to provide instructions to specific areas of the building. In a high-rise building, the floor on which an alarm originates, the floor above, and the floor below may receive a message to evacuate the building. Other floors may be told to await further instructions. The system must be able to remain in service to maintain communication with the occupants remaining in the building.

A.24.4.2.8 When a fire or other emergency occurs in a building, the usual goal is to evacuate the occupants or relocate them so that they are not exposed to hazardous conditions. The exception occurs in occupancies using stay-in-place/defend-in-place (SIP/DIP)[1] strategies. It might also be necessary to alert and provide information to trained staff responsible for assisting evacuation or relocation. Figure A.24.4.2.8 shows several key steps in a person's reaction and decision-making process [2].

Occupants rarely panic in fire situations [3,4]. The behavior that they adopt is based on the information they have, the perceived threat, and the decisions they make. The entire decision path is full of thought and decisions on the part of the occupant, all of which take time before leading to the development of adaptive behavior. In hindsight, the actions of many occupants in real fires are sometimes less than optimal. However, their decisions might have been the best choices given the information they had. Fire alarm systems that only use audible tones and/or flashing strobe lights impart only one bit of information: fire alarm. It has long been recognized that environments having complex egress situations or high hazard potentials require occupant notification systems that provide more than one bit of information [5]. To

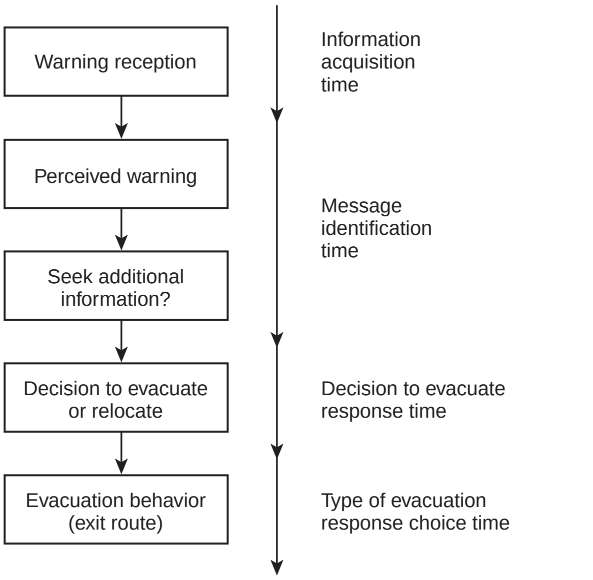


FIGURE A.24.4.2.8 *Key Steps in Person's Reaction.*

reduce the response time of the occupants and to effect the desired behavior, the message should contain several key elements [3,6].

The key elements include the following:

(1) Tell occupants what has happened and where
(2) Tell occupants what they should do
(3) Tell occupants why they should do it

There does not seem to be any research that has tested actual message content to determine the best way to inform occupants. The problem is that each building and each fire is unique. Messaging is further complicated by the need to give different information to different people, depending on their location relative to the fire, their training, and their physical/mental capabilities.

Messages should use positive language and avoid negative instructions that could be misinterpreted due to unintelligible communications. For example, if you want people to leave an area, say so: "A fire has been reported in the area. For your safety, use the stairs to evacuate the area immediately." A bad example is: "The signal tone you have just heard indicated a report of an emergency. If your floor evacuation signal sounds after this message, do not use the elevator, walk to the nearest stairway and leave the floor. While the report is being verified, occupants on other floors should await further instructions." This message is too long, ambiguous, and subject to misunderstanding if not heard clearly. The word "not" might not be heard clearly, or it might be heard to apply to the entire remaining sentence. Similarly, care should be used in selecting and clearly enunciating words such as "fifth" and "sixth," which can sound the same if the system and environment lead to low intelligibility.

See A.24.4.1.1 for more information on methodology for improved message content, structure, and intelligibility. Refer to Annex D for more information on speech intelligibility and how it is predicted.

Content of the message should be predicated on the building fire safety plan, the nature of the building and its occupants, the design of the fire alarm system, and testing of the occupant reaction to the message. Caution is advised that the fire alarm system operation and message actuation might be initiated by a manual pull station or detector remote from the fire.

[1] Schifiliti, R. P., "To Leave or Not to Leave — That is the Question!", National Fire Protection Association, World Fire Safety Congress & Exposition, May 16, 2000, Denver, CO.

[2] Ramachandran, G., "Informative Fire Warning Systems," *Fire Technology*, vol. 47, no. 1, February 1991, National Fire Protection Association, 66–81.
[3] J., Bryan, "Psychological Variables That May Affect Fire Alarm Design," *Fire Protection Engineering*, Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Issue No. 11, Fall 2001.
[4] Proulx, G., "Cool Under Fire," *Fire Protection Engineering*, Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Issue No. 16, Fall 2002.
[5] General Services Administration, Proceedings of the Reconvened International Conference on Fire Safety in High Rise Buildings, Washington, D.C., October 1971.
[6] Proulx, G., "Strategies for Ensuring Appropriate Occupant Response to Fire Alarm Signals," National Research Council of Canada, Ottawa, Ontario, *Construction Technology Update*, No. 43, 1–6, December 2000.

24.4.2.8.1 New systems employing relocation or partial evacuation shall require documentation in accordance with Sections 7.3, 7.4, and 7.5 in addition to the minimum documentation requirements of Sections 7.2 and 24.8.

24.4.2.8.2 Systems shall be provided with manual voice transmission capabilities selectively to one or more zones or on an all-call basis.

24.4.2.8.3 Under a fire condition, where the system is used to transmit relocation instructions or other fire emergency non-evacuation messages, a 1-second to 3-second alert tone followed by a message (or messages where multi-channel capability is used) shall be provided.

It is important that the alert tone not be used when transmitting non-fire messages to the building occupants. The intent of the Code is to allow the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems to be used with other communications systems, such as telephone paging and public address systems. An alert tone is not needed when the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system is used to transmit nonfire and nonemergency messages.

24.4.2.8.3.1 The sequence [the alert tone followed by the message(s)] shall be repeated at least three times to inform and direct occupants in the evacuation signaling zone where the alarm initiation originated, as well as other evacuation signaling zones in accordance with the building fire safety plan.

The alert tone is required only for an in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system and only when the plan calls for evacuation.

24.4.2.8.3.2 Approved alternative fire alarm notification schemes shall be permitted so long as the occupants are effectively notified and are provided instructions in a timely and safe manner in accordance with the building fire safety plan.

24.4.2.8.4 Where provided, loudspeakers in each enclosed stairway, each exit passageway, and each group of elevator cars within a common hoistway shall be connected to separate notification zones for manual paging only.

Paragraph 24.4.2.8.4 requires speakers on a separate notification zone in stairwells only if speakers are required in stairwells by the local building code, *Life Safety Code*, or project specifications. A masonry stairwell is a difficult environment to get intelligible reproduction of a voice message. Usually, people who are in the stairwell when the system is actuated are already on their way out of the building and do not need additional instructions. If they exit the stairwell on a particular floor, they will hear the voice message with instructions for the occupants of that particular floor. Although providing speakers in stairwells may be beneficial under certain circumstances, for example, in a high-rise building, where it might be necessary to provide voice instructions to occupants evacuating through the stairwells, only rarely is it necessary. Emergency personnel may need to provide updated instructions to occupants who may be in the stairwell for an extended period of time during a prolonged emergency, particularly in very tall buildings where evacuation may take more than an hour. Refer to 23.8.6.2 for notification appliance allowances in stairwells.

24.4.2.8.4.1 The evacuation signal shall not operate in elevator cars, exit stair enclosures, and exit passageways.

When occupants are in these areas, they are already evacuating or they will encounter people evacuating.

24.4.2.8.4.2 Manually activated speakers shall be permitted in exit stair enclosures and exit passageways in buildings that have emergency voice/alarm communications systems in accordance with 24.4.2.

24.4.2.8.5 The requirements of 24.4.2.8.5 shall apply to both audible (tone and voice) and visible notification appliance circuits.

24.4.2.8.5.1* Fire alarm systems used for partial evacuation and relocation shall be designed and installed such that attack by fire within an evacuation signaling zone does not impair control and operation of the notification appliances outside the evacuation signaling zone.

Paragraph 24.4.2.8.5.1 requires that the circuits, wiring, or communications paths to each evacuation signaling zone be arranged such that damage to those "paths" in one evacuation signaling zone will not impair communications to any other evacuation signaling zone. For example, assume that each floor in a high-rise building is an evacuation signaling zone. A circuit that feeds the notification appliances on the fifth floor of the building must be arranged such that damage to that circuit does not affect communications to any other floor above or below.

Survivability requirements are intended to minimize the possibility of a fire causing damage to the notification appliance riser cables within the fire area that would interrupt communications to areas outside the fire area. For example, circuits that serve individual floors in a multifloor building or individual areas in a large area building may be routed through areas where they could be exposed to fire before they reach another floor or area they serve. Fire-rated construction, a fire-rated circuit integrity cable, fire-rated cable system, or other approved protection minimizes the potential of early damage to circuits that serve areas outside the immediate fire area. Survivability is not intended to maintain every device, appliance, and circuit in service for the duration of the fire. However, if amplifiers are distributed in such a fashion as to serve multiple floors (speaker circuits), the amplifiers and their interconnection to the circuits supplied by those amplifiers must meet the survivability requirements. Alternating speaker circuits on each floor does not provide compliance with the survivability requirements of the Code. Specific fire alarm devices and components on the fire floor can be compromised by direct fire exposure. Fire alarm system components are not designed to withstand direct attack by fire. The intent of the survivability requirements is to prevent damage to notification appliance circuits and equipment serving other areas of the building, which might pass through or be located in the fire area.

Although 24.4.2.8.5.1 is contained as a subparagraph of 24.4.2, prudence would suggest that the requirements of 24.4.2.8.5.1 should be used for any system used for partial evacuation, selective evacuation, or relocation of occupants. Some facilities such as hospitals use coded signals to indicate the location of and response to a fire emergency. The intent is to have survivability requirements apply to both voice and non-voice systems used to partially or selectively evacuate or relocate the building occupants by floor or zone.

A.24.4.2.8.5.1 Along with the pathway survivability requirements, one or more of the following means could be considered acceptable to provide a level of survivability consistent with the intent of this requirement:

(1) Routing notification appliance circuits separately

Routing circuits separately is not to be confused with using what is popularly called "A – B" circuits — that is, alternately connecting speakers serving the same space or corridor on two separate circuits installed in the same space or raceway.

(2) Using short-circuit, fault-tolerant signaling line circuits for controlling evacuation signals

The requirement for notification appliances to operate in those evacuation signaling zones that are not attacked by fire will also require that circuits and equipment that are common to more than one evacuation signaling zone be designed and installed such that the fire will not disable them. For instance, a signaling line circuit used to control notification appliances in multiple evacuation signaling zones should be properly designed and installed so that one fire would not impair the signaling line circuit, rendering the notification appliances serving more than one evacuation signaling zone inoperative.

24.4.2.8.5.2 Performance features provided to ensure operational reliability under adverse conditions shall be described and technical justification provided in the documentation submitted to the authority having jurisdiction with the analysis required in 23.4.3.1.

Adverse conditions other than a fire could occur where continued operation of the communications system would be imperative. These conditions are identified by consulting with the owner and performing a risk analysis. The results of the risk analysis are required to be documented and presented to the authority having jurisdiction.

24.4.2.8.5.3* All circuits necessary for the operation of the notification appliances shall be protected until they enter the evacuation signaling zone that they serve by the protection provided by the pathway survivability level required in 24.3.6.4.1 or by performance alternatives approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

Paragraph 24.4.2.8.5.3 reinforces the idea that the system must be designed and installed in a manner that minimizes the potential for fire exposure in a single evacuation zone from interrupting communications to other evacuation zones. Using one of the methods listed in Chapter 12, as required in 24.3.6.4.1, provides a minimum degree of protection for the circuit to meet the survivability requirements.

All fire alarm system wiring installations must conform to the requirements of the *NEC*. The *NEC* provides general wiring methods and requirements in Chapter 1 through Chapter 4. Article 760, Fire Alarm Systems, contained in Chapter 7, supplements and modifies the requirements of Chapter 1 through Chapter 4 specifically for fire alarm systems. The wiring methods permitted in Article 760 include the use of Chapter 3 wiring methods as well as the use of specific types of non-power-limited and power-limited cables. The wiring method used must be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions, any listing limitations, and the requirements of Article 760.

The authority having jurisdiction may approve other methods of providing the protection intended by 24.4.2.8.5.3. This might be a combination of installation methods and protection by the building structure. Technical justification must be provided by the designer to support the survivability design.

The intent of the Code is to ensure communications during a fire to occupants on the non-fire floors. Designers, installers, and authorities having jurisdiction should ensure that all circuits necessary for the operation of the notification appliances (including speakers and strobes) are survivable regardless of how the circuits are connected and installed.

A.24.4.2.8.5.3 Paragraph 24.4.2.8.5.3 requires the protection of circuits as they pass through fire areas other than the one served. The purpose of this is to delay possible damage to the circuits from fires in areas other than those served by the circuits and to increase the likelihood that circuits serving areas remote from the original fire will have the opportunity to be actuated and serve their purpose. Note that the protection requirement would also apply to a signaling line circuit that extends from a master fire alarm control unit to another remote fire alarm control unit where notification appliance circuits might originate.

24.4.2.8.5.4 Where the separation of in-building fire emergency voice/alarm control equipment locations results in the portions of the system controlled by one location being dependent upon the control equipment in other locations, the circuits between the dependent controls shall be protected against attack by fire by the protection provided by the pathway survivability level required in 24.3.6.4.1 or by performance alternatives approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

Where control equipment for in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications is in multiple locations, damage to the interconnecting wiring can affect operability of the control equipment in one location or another. Protection of these circuits is required in a fashion similar to that specified for notification appliance circuits in 24.3.6.4.1 and 24.3.6.4.2.

Paragraph 24.4.2.8.5.4 in conjunction with 24.4.2.8.5.6 closes the loop on circuits and equipment that need to be survivable against an attack by fire. The ultimate goal of the Code is to ensure that all circuits and equipment affecting the ability to communicate above and below the fire floor during the fire meet the survivability requirements.

24.4.2.8.5.5 Protection of circuits between redundant control equipment locations that are not mutually dependent shall not be required.

24.4.2.8.5.6 Where the separation of the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm control equipment occurs as in 24.4.2.8.5.4, and where the circuits are run through junction boxes, terminal cabinets or control equipment, such as system control units, power supplies and amplifiers, and where cable integrity is not maintained, these components shall, in addition to the pathway survivability required by 24.3.6.4.1, be protected by using one of the following methods:

(1) A 2-hour fire rated enclosure
(2) A 2-hour fire rated room
(3) Other equivalent means to provide a 2-hour fire resistance rating approved by the authority having jurisdiction

This paragraph, in conjunction with the requirement in 24.4.2.8.5.4, ensures that everything connecting the pathways and circuits or equipment necessary to operate the notification appliances will meet the requirements of survivability and maintain the communications system's operational capability as described in 24.4.2.8.5.1.

24.4.2.8.5.7 Paragraphs 24.4.2.8 through 24.4.2.8.5.6 shall not automatically apply when relocation or partial evacuation is of a non-fire emergency unless identified and required by a risk analysis.

24.4.2.9 Evacuation Signal Zoning.

24.4.2.9.1* Undivided fire or smoke areas shall not be divided into multiple evacuation signaling zones.

A.24.4.2.9.1 Paragraph 24.4.2.9.1 does not prohibit the provision of multiple notification appliance circuits within an evacuation signaling zone.

The division of a single fire or smoke area into more than one evacuation signaling zone is not practical. If a fire threatens one part of the zone, then the entire zone should be evacuated.

24.4.2.9.2 If multiple notification appliance circuits are provided within a single evacuation signaling zone, all of the notification appliances within the zone shall be arranged to activate or deactivate simultaneously, either automatically or by actuation of a common manual control.

24.4.2.9.3 Where there are different notification appliance circuits within an evacuation signaling zone that perform separate functions, such as presignal and general alarm signals, and pre-discharge and discharge signals, they shall not be required to activate or deactivate simultaneously.

The term *evacuation signaling zone,* which is defined in 3.3.320.1, is "an area consisting of one or more notification zones where signals are actuated simultaneously." Signaling to a single evacuation signaling zone may need to be accomplished through the use of more than one notification appliance circuit. In this situation, all the notification appliance circuits serving the evacuation signaling zone must be arranged to act simultaneously, as required by 24.4.2.9.3.

The boundaries of the evacuation signaling zone are a function of the building fire safety subdivisions and the building emergency evacuation plan. The Code also uses other "zone" terminology, such as the term *notification zone,* which is defined in 3.3.320.2 as "a discrete area of a building, bounded by building outer walls, fire or smoke compartment boundaries, floor separations, or other fire safety subdivisions, in which occupants are intended to receive common notification." Notification zones are addressed in 23.8.6.3 and associated commentary.

24.4.3* In-Building Mass Notification Systems. The requirements of 24.4.3 shall apply to mass notification systems installed in buildings or structures for the purpose of notifying and instructing occupants in an emergency.

A.24.4.3 This section covers the application, installation, location, performance, and maintenance of mass notification systems used for emergency purposes.

An in-building mass notification system is considered to be a system used to provide information and instructions to people in a building(s) or other space using intelligible voice communications and including visible signals, text, graphics, tactile, or other communication methods.

Mass notification systems can consist of fully independent systems with minimal or no interface with the building fire alarm system, systems that report trouble and supervisory signals through the fire alarm system, systems that share audible and visible notification circuits and appliances with the fire alarm system, or combination mass notification and fire alarm systems.

Combining or integrating in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems with other communications systems such as mass notification, public address, and paging is permitted by the Code. A fire alarm interface is illustrated in Exhibit 24.3. The technology is available to ensure that fire alarm or priority mass notification messages (as determined by a risk analysis) will take precedence over any other announcement, such as paging from a telephone system or other public address system. Using one speaker system that is a combination of other communications systems and that incorporates all the requirements of the Code is financially beneficial to the owner. Not only could design, installation, and ongoing life cycle costs be reduced, but regular use of the system for normal paging functions provides an end-to-end test of the audible notification components and circuits. Occupants familiar with use of the system for normal paging are also more likely to be comfortable and proficient using the system during an emergency.

EXHIBIT 24.3

Fire Alarm Interface. (Source: Siemens Building Technologies, Inc., Florham Park, NJ)

24.4.3.1* General Performance. The performance, selection, installation, operation, and use of a mass notification system shall comply with the requirements of 24.4.3.

A.24.4.3.1 Although some minimum criteria are outlined for a particular feature, the feature might not be applicable for every project.

The information and instructions delivered by a mass notification system could be initiated manually by an operator or automatically by sensors or other systems and might be delivered to the target audience using prerecorded messages or live messages, or both, tailored to the situation and the audience.

Each mass notification system could be different, depending on the anticipated threat and the level of protection intended. As an example, a particular project might not require secure radio transmissions. As such, criteria for such would not apply. However, if the authority having jurisdiction or design professional has specified secure radio transmissions, the minimum applicable criteria within this document would be required. Deviation from these minimum criteria would require approval of the stakeholders.

Mass notification systems can consist of fully independent systems with minimal or no interface with the building fire alarm system, systems that report trouble and supervisory signals through the fire alarm system, systems that share audible and visible notification circuits and appliances with the fire alarm system, or combination mass notification and fire alarm systems.

Fire alarm signals must take precedence except where mass notification messages as determined by the risk analysis are deemed to be a higher priority than fire. One example would be a terrorist event; another example is a shooter in the building.

24.4.3.1.1 Interconnection of protected premises emergency control functions with the mass notification systems shall comply with Chapter 21.

24.4.3.1.2 An in-building mass notification system shall include one or more of the following components:

(1) Autonomous control unit (ACU)
(2) Local operating console (LOC)
(3) Fire alarm control interface
(4) Notification appliance network
(5) Initiating devices
(6)* Interface to other systems and alerting sources

A.24.4.3.1.2(6) Other systems could include wide-area mass notification, distributed recipient mass notification, and regional and national alerting.

FAQ Which mass notification communications methods could be utilized effectively?

It is recommended that the MNS include two forms of communication — one from Layer 1 and a secondary method from one of the other layers described in the commentary following 24.4.2. Relying on just one method in an emergency could result in a relatively large portion of the targeted population not receiving the message. The overall solution is to exploit a number of Layer 1 and secondary layer systems that combine to produce a reliable and robust design that meets the owner's goals and objectives. See 24.3.8.

24.4.3.1.3 All mass notification system notification appliances that receive their power from a signaling line circuit of a mass notification system control unit shall be listed for use with the control unit.

24.4.3.1.4 Mass notification system components shall be installed, tested, and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and this Code.

24.4.3.1.5 In-building emergency mass notification operation shall be permitted to be initiated by manual or automatic means.

24.4.3.1.6 Mass notification system activation shall initiate recorded messages or live voice and visible notification.

24.4.3.1.7 The priority level of recorded messages shall be determined by the emergency response plan.

The priority levels will be based on an evaluation of a number of issues, including occupancy, impact on individual security, danger to life, danger to the community, or danger and impact on the nation. These priorities will also be used to determine whether any mass notification message should take precedence over a fire alarm message, as stated in 24.4.3.1.8.

24.4.3.1.8 Only recorded messages determined by the emergency response plan to be of higher priority than fire alarm activation shall be permitted to override the fire alarm notification and initiate the mass notification priority indicator.

24.4.3.1.9 Activation of any other recorded message shall not interfere with the operation of fire alarm notification.

An example of this situation would be when a periodic timed general announcement as may occur in an airport is not allowed to override fire alarm messages and tones during a fire alarm condition.

24.4.3.1.10 Initiation of live voice announcements from microphones on the fire alarm system at an ACU, and at an LOC, shall not automatically place the fire alarm system in a mass notification priority mode.

24.4.3.1.11 Combination of mass notification with fire alarm systems shall be permitted and shall meet the requirements of 23.8.4.

Combining or integrating in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems with other communications systems such as mass notification, public address, and paging is now permitted by the Code. Fire alarm signals must take precedence except where mass notification messages as determined by the risk analysis are deemed to be a higher priority than fire. In addition to reduced design, installation, and ongoing life cycle costs, regular use of the system for normal paging functions provides an end-to-end test of the audible notification components and circuits. Occupants familiar with use of the system for normal paging are also more likely to be comfortable and proficient in use of the system during an emergency.

24.4.3.2 System Operation.

24.4.3.2.1* Authorized personnel shall be permitted to control message initiation over the mass notification system.

A.24.4.3.2.1 Authorized personnel could include building occupants who can readily access and originate messages in emergency situations. Depending on the individual facility, use of the mass notification system to originate non-emergency messages could also be permitted. The selection of authorized personnel should be based on a risk assessment and the building emergency response plan.

24.4.3.2.2* Where required by the emergency response plan, the mass notification system shall provide the capability for authorized personnel to remotely activate live and prerecorded emergency messages.

A.24.4.3.2.2 Authorized personnel could effect message initiation over the mass notification system from either a emergency command center or a secondary (backup) control station(s). In cases where clusters of facilities within the same geographical region exist, one or more regional control stations could effect message initiation. The mass notification system could permit activation of messages originated by mobile sentries and roving patrols using wireless activation devices. Since it is common practice to allow mass notification systems to be utilized for "nonemergency" messages, the emergency command center should incorporate a clearly marked and easy to operate means to distinguish between emergency and non-emergency use. Comprehensive training and a fail-safe default to the emergency mode of operation should be employed to ensure that no actual emergency message gets transmitted as a non-emergency broadcast.

Mass notification system operation is essentially driven by the emergency response plan. The Code recognizes this and advises caution in A.24.4.3.2.2 to ensure that nonemergency messages are distinguishable and that the staff in the emergency command center understand the importance of defining the messages clearly as emergency and nonemergency types.

24.4.3.2.3* Operating controls shall be clearly identified.

A.24.4.3.2.3 As a general practice, the number of message selection switches included as part of the operating controls should be limited, so that authorized personnel can utilize the system with only minimal familiarity. This, of course, could be a different matter on an industrial or college campus where trained individuals are likely to be very familiar with the operation and use of the system. In that case, more selection switches could be beneficial.

24.4.3.2.4 If there are multiple control locations, only one shall be in control at any given time.

24.4.3.2.5* Any ACU shall provide a control status of all interconnected LOCs.

A.24.4.3.2.5 It is recognized that there can be benefit for users at the ACU to identify which specific location is currently in control. This can be indicated through visual means or through an audible location code. This can be especially useful for emergency responders utilizing the ACU to know which remote location is in control. If incorporated into a system, such features can be enabled or disabled by authorized personnel or as directed through the risk analysis.

The issue addressed in A.24.4.3.2.5 applies to the fact that in most scenarios, there will be a primary and back-up emergency command center. It may be part of the emergency response plan to staff both centers during an incident, and therefore it is important to be able to identify which ACU is in control and when control needs to be transferred.

24.4.3.2.6 If there are multiple control locations, a visible indication shall be provided at all other control locations indicating that another control location is in use.

It is necessary to know if another location has been activated to avoid two locations attempting to transmit messages that may conflict or be confusing to the listeners.

24.4.3.2.7 Manual controls shall be arranged to provide visible indication of the on/off status for their associated notification zone.

24.4.3.2.8 If live voice instructions are provided, they shall perform as follows:

(1) Override previously initiated signals to the selected notification zone(s).
(2) Have priority over any subsequent automatically initiated signals to the selected zone(s).

24.4.3.2.9 A manual means shall be provided at each mass notification system control location to permit the mass notification system to relinquish control of the fire alarm system.

The purpose of this requirement is to not allow an intruder or terrorist who may be inside the building to actuate the fire alarm system and disable the MNS.

24.4.3.2.10* During the period after the mass notification system has seized control of the audible and visible notification appliances, but before the mass notification system relinquishes control, the mass notification system shall activate the audible and visible notification appliances at least once every 30 seconds.

A.24.4.3.2.10 During emergencies, building occupants should periodically receive an audible clue that the emergency notification given by the mass notification system is still in effect. This also can help building occupants and emergency response personnel recognize that the mass notification system is overriding fire alarm notification appliances. The audible signal could consist of a simple signal such as a chirp of sufficient duration to be recognized by the usual building occupants and, typically, by occupants who are not hearing disabled.

During an emergency, especially when occupants are directed to defend in place and not evacuate the building, constant reassurance that the incident is still active or under investigation is important feedback. Thirty seconds is the maximum time to indicate that those in charge are still in control and investigating or handling the incident.

24.4.3.3 Coverage.

24.4.3.3.1* The mass notification system shall provide for live voice and prerecorded localized messaging within a protected individual building, areas surrounding the building, and other outdoor designated areas.

A.24.4.3.3.1 The mass notification system could permit activation of messages originated by mobile sentries and roving patrols using wireless activation devices.

24.4.3.3.2 System design shall incorporate designation of acoustically distinguishable spaces (ADS) within any occupiable areas as required in Chapter 18.

Acoustically distinguishable spaces are defined in 3.3.6 as "an emergency communications system notification zone, or subdivision thereof, that might be an enclosed or otherwise physically defined space, or that might be distinguished from other spaces because of different acoustical, environmental, or use characteristics, such as reverberation time and ambient sound pressure level." This concept is to help ensure that the designer accounts for all spaces in a building where the message could be received and therefore helps to ensure audibility and intelligibility in each of the ADSs.

24.4.3.3.3 Notification zones shall be established on the basis of a risk analysis.

24.4.3.3.4* If the mass notification system serves more than one building, it shall be capable of providing separate messages to one individual building or to multiple buildings at any given time.

A.24.4.3.3.4 Generally, each separate building should be provided with a separate in-building mass notification system; however, some facilities (such as a campus-type high school with multiple separate buildings) might be more effectively served by a single in-building mass notification system. Alternately, a risk analysis could determine that a wide-area mass notification system provides the optimal capability for mass notification.

24.4.3.4 Loudspeaker Circuits.

24.4.3.4.1* Loudspeaker circuits used for mass notification that are not fire alarm circuits shall be exempt from the monitoring requirements of this Code, provided that alternate methods of achieving comparable reliability are accepted by the authority having jurisdiction.

A.24.4.3.4.1 Alternate methods that achieve the desired statistical availability could be deemed acceptable in lieu of monitoring the integrity of circuits, signaling channels, or communication pathways where consistent with the risk analysis and emergency response plan.

24.4.3.4.2 Survivability for loudspeaker circuits used for mass notification shall be determined by the risk analysis for the building.

24.4.3.5 Documentation. Mass notification systems shall require documentation in accordance with Sections 7.3, 7.4, and 7.5 in addition to the minimum documentation requirements of Sections 7.2 and 24.8.

Chapter 7 contains the minimum documentation requirements for all systems in Section 7.1 and Section 7.2. The requirements outlined in Section 7.3, Section 7.4, and Section 7.5 must be specifically referenced in order for these requirements to apply. As 24.4.3.5 specifically references these sections, the provisions of these apply to in-building mass notification systems. Section 24.8 is also invoked in 24.4.3.5 and has more detailed requirements for documentation. The Code user should employ the more restrictive of the requirements in any situation in which there may appear to be a conflict. The technical committee is ensuring that the MNS is well documented and matches the emergency response plan's operational requirements.

24.4.3.5.1* Security. Security for mass notification systems documentation shall be determined by the stakeholders in accordance with 7.7.3.

A.24.4.3.5.1 It is recognized that there are circumstances in which the security and protection of system documents could require measures other than as prescribed in 24.4.3.5. Where such conditions have been identified, the stakeholders should clearly identify what and how system documents should be maintained to satisfy the integrity of this section.

It may be very important to secure documents for both the building and the MNS design and operation to ensure that the information could not be used in a plot against the occupants of a building. The MNS will play a key role in the response to an incident, and measures should be taken to avoid the system from being impaired by unauthorized people.

24.4.3.5.2 Record of Completion.

24.4.3.5.2.1* A record of completion shall be required in accordance with Chapter 7 for documentation of the mass notification system.

A.24.4.3.5.2.1 A customized form developed around the particular system that contains applicable information might be used. The form should not contain information or items that are not applicable to the particular system.

24.4.3.5.2.2 All systems that are modified after the initial installation shall have the original, or latest overall system, record of completion revised or attached to show all changes from the original information and shall be identified with a revision date.

24.4.3.5.3 Required Documentation. Every system shall include the following documentation, which shall be delivered to the owner or the owner's representative upon final acceptance of the system:

(1) Owner's manual including a complete set of operations and maintenance manuals, manufacturer's published instructions, and product data sheets covering all system equipment
(2) Record and as-built drawings
(3) Written sequence of operation
(4) One current copy of the record of completion form, updated to reflect all system additions or modifications
(5) For software-based systems, a record copy of the system-specific software
(6) Copy of the site-specific software stored on-site in nonvolatile, nonerasable, nonrewritable memory
(7) Emergency response plan, with operational management procedures defined for management and activation of the system
(8) Risk analysis, when provided

Items (3), (6), and (8) are new to the 2013 edition of the Code. As can be seen from the increased requirements, both in Chapter 24 and Chapter 7, the technical committee is stressing the need for clear and comprehensive documentation. This issue has been reported in the past as needing emphasis, and the technical committee has expanded the requirements accordingly.

24.4.3.5.4 Risk Analysis Documentation. Document accessibility shall be in accordance with 7.7.2 and 24.4.3.5.4.

24.4.3.5.4.1 When a risk analysis is required to be prepared, such as for a mass notification system, findings of the risk assessment shall be documented.

24.4.3.5.4.2 When identified by the stakeholders, security and protection of the risk analysis shall be in accordance with 24.4.3.5.1.

In the 2013 edition of the Code, the technical committee has strengthened many of the risk analysis requirements and guidance to help the user better understand what part the risk analysis plays in the development of an MNS design and how it should operate. Paragraphs 24.4.3.5.4, 24.4.3.5.4.1, and 24.4.3.5.4.2 close the loop on the documentation requirements for the risk analysis.

24.4.3.5.5 Document Accessibility.

24.4.3.5.5.1 An as-built plans cabinet shall be provided to house the documentation required in 24.4.3.5.3.

24.4.3.5.5.2 The cabinet shall be sized so that it can neatly contain all necessary documentation, including future inspection and service reports.

24.4.3.5.5.3 Mass notification system and fire alarm system as-built plans and other related documentation shall be permitted to be maintained together, including the appearance of both systems on the same drawings.

All the documentation required in 24.4.3.5 helps ensure long-term reliability by recording the information necessary for proper maintenance of the MNS.

24.4.3.6 Impairments. The requirements of Section 10.21 shall be applicable when a mass notification system is impaired.

FAQ

How should an MNS impairment be handled?

The impairment of an MNS should be treated with the same importance as impairments to a fire alarm system. Both systems affect life safety.

24.4.3.7 Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance Requirements. Mass notification systems shall be inspected, tested, and maintained in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and the inspection, testing, and maintenance requirements of Chapter 14.

24.4.3.8* System Response Priorities. Priority levels shall be established on the basis of the risk analysis.

A.24.4.3.8 The risk analysis should identify what emergency situations will take priority over the fire alarm evacuation signal. Should a tornado warning for the area take priority over an active fire in the building? Should a breach of security at the campus entry gate take priority over an active fire in the building? If a manual fire alarm pull box has been activated, it might be a terrorist action to have people leave the building and walk into an exterior threat. In such a case, mass notification input is intended to override the fire alarm evacuation signals to redirect the occupants based on the conditions.

The risk analysis is required to be approved by the authority having jurisdiction, which will also be required to approve any message determined in the analysis to be a higher priority than the fire alarm signal.

24.4.3.9 Initiation Indication. The source of system activation shall be visibly and audibly indicated at the emergency command center and at the building control unit, unless otherwise required by the emergency response plan.

24.4.3.10 Initiating Devices.

24.4.3.10.1 Devices connected to a mass notification system for the purpose of initiating an automatic response to an emergency shall be evaluated based on the emergency response plan.

24.4.3.10.2* All mass notification initiating devices shall be listed for their intended purpose.

A.24.4.3.10.2 Devices such as gas or chemical sensors and detectors, weather alert signals, or other such signals can be desirable to connect to the mass notification system to provide a faster response to emergency conditions.

24.4.3.10.3 Where no listed device exists for the detection required by the emergency response plan, nonlisted devices shall be permitted to be used if their failure will not impair the operation of the mass notification system.

24.4.3.10.4 Non-fire emergency manual actuating stations (boxes) shall be listed to ANSI/UL 2017, *Standard for General Purpose Signaling Devices and Systems*.

24.4.3.10.5 Non-fire emergency manual actuating boxes shall have tactile markings, be of a contrasting color to manual fire alarm boxes on the protected premises, and not be red.

24.4.3.10.6 Non-fire emergency manual actuating boxes shall be installed similarly to manual fire alarm boxes in accordance with the requirements of 17.14.3, 17.14.5, and 17.14.8.2.

24.4.3.11* Secure Access of Fire Alarm/Mass Notification System Interface. Access to, and physical protection of, the fire alarm/mass notification system interface shall be determined by the risk analysis and as defined in the emergency response plan.

A.24.4.3.11 Refer to 24.4.3.2 for requirements related to operation of the system by authorized personnel. It is recognized that, based on the risk analysis, control equipment and circuits could need different levels of protection for different facilities. Access to the fire alarm/mass notification interface should be consistent with the action outlined in the emergency response plan. It could have been prior practice in some jurisdictions to locate the fire alarm control unit in the main lobby of a facility. However, it might not be appropriate to locate the mass notification system autonomous control unit within the lobby if the general public would have access to deactivate mass notification system components. Based on the risk analysis, it could be appropriate to locate the autonomous control unit within a secured room while providing local operating consoles for use by other authorized personnel.

24.4.3.12 Autonomous Control Unit (ACU).

24.4.3.12.1 Where provided, the building ACU shall monitor and control the notification appliance network.

24.4.3.12.2 Building occupants meeting the requirements of 24.4.3.2.1 shall be permitted to initiate communications from the ACU.

24.4.3.12.3 Unless otherwise identified in the emergency response plan, actions taken at the building ACU shall take precedence over actions taken at any remote location, including the LOC, or inputs from a wide-area mass notification system.

Authorized personnel located at the building will know better and faster what conditions are developing at the building and will be expected to provide more current and accurate information through the MNS.

24.4.3.12.4 When there are multiple ACUs controlling the same notification appliance network, only one shall be in control at any given time.

24.4.3.12.5 When the ACU is integrated with the building fire alarm control unit to form one combined system that performs both functions, the system shall meet the standby power requirements of this chapter.

24.4.3.12.6 When a combined system is installed with an ACU and fire alarm control unit and placed in separate equipment enclosures, the ACU and fire alarm control unit shall be interfaced as required by this chapter.

24.4.3.12.7 When the ACU is part of a stand-alone mass notification system and no fire alarm system exists, the ACU shall meet the requirements of this chapter.

24.4.3.13 Local Operating Console (LOC).

24.4.3.13.1* Building occupants meeting the authorized personnel requirement of 24.4.3.2.1 shall be permitted to initiate communications from the LOC.

A.24.4.3.13.1 Mass notification systems can include a system local operating console(s) for authorized occupants to readily access and originate messages in emergency and non-emergency situations. The quantity and location(s) of an LOC(s) should be determined by the risk analysis and the facilities emergency response plan.

24.4.3.13.2 The use of lock wire seals or break-glass-type enclosures to house the operating consoles for the system, or equivalent protection against unauthorized use, shall be permitted.

24.4.3.13.3 Operating controls shall be clearly identified.

24.4.3.13.4 If there are multiple control locations, only one shall be in control at any given time.

24.4.3.13.5 The location having control of the system shall be identified by a visible indication at that location.

24.4.3.13.6 If live voice instructions are provided, they shall override previously initiated signals to the selected notification zone(s) and shall have priority over any subsequent automatically initiated signals to the selected zone(s).

24.4.3.13.7 Upon initiation of an emergency message, a visible indication shall be provided to the user that the LOC is connected to the audio network.

24.4.3.13.8 Manual controls shall be permitted to provide visible indication of the on/off status for their associated notification zone.

24.4.3.13.9 The emergency message shall be an all-call basis unless otherwise permitted by 24.4.3.13.10.

24.4.3.13.10 Selective notification zone paging shall be permitted only if the LOC has manual controls with visible indication of the on/off status for each associated notification zone.

24.4.3.14 Voice Message Priority.

24.4.3.14.1* The priority of mass notification messages shall be established using the emergency response plan.

A.24.4.3.14.1 The following is an example scheme for message prioritization, from highest (1) to lowest (5), for consideration during the risk analysis:

(1) Live voice messages from personnel in the building should be the highest priority. If systems provide control locations that are usable by nonauthorized personnel, these controls should be disabled or overridden during emergency operations.
(2) Automatic fire alarm messages/other high priority messages as determined by risk analysis criteria.
(3) External messages originated by a wide-area mass notification system.
(4) Message priority for emergency conditions such as severe weather warnings, gas leaks, chemical spills, and other hazardous conditions should be determined by risk analysis criteria and defined in the emergency response plan.
(5) Non-emergency messages, such as general announcements and time function signaling (work breaks, class change, etc.), should have the lowest priority.

24.4.3.14.2 The local building mass notification system shall have the ability to override the fire alarm system with live voice or manual activation of a higher priority message, but only where that message and operation are approved under the emergency response plan.

24.4.3.14.3 All other messages shall also be prioritized by using the emergency response plan.

24.4.3.14.4 When identified by the emergency response plan, messages from the mass notification system shall be permitted to take priority over fire alarm messages and signals.

The intent of the Code is to determine which signals and messages that will be used in the MNS will take precedence based on the risk analysis, and when the stakeholders agree that the incident in question should be a higher priority, then the priorities are established and followed in the emergency response plan. The balance of the requirements found in 24.4.3.14 provide specific guidance when determining that an MNS message may be a higher priority than a fire alarm signal. The Code user should also understand that one of the stakeholders who should be involved in this priority decision making is the authority having jurisdiction.

24.4.3.14.5 If the fire alarm system is in the alarm mode and a recorded voice message is playing, or the audible signals are sounding, and then the mass notification system is actuated, it shall cause deactivation of all fire alarm–initiated audible and visible notification.

24.4.3.14.6 After the mass notification system relinquishes control, the following shall occur:

(1) Without an active fire alarm signal, the fire alarm system shall automatically restore to normal operation.
(2)* With an active fire alarm signal, the fire alarm system shall operate based on the emergency response plan.

A.24.4.3.14.6(2) Unless the risk analysis determines otherwise, the fire alarm system should always be automatically returned to normal functionality. If the fire alarm system is automatically returned to normal functionality, the building emergency response plan should state that no user intervention is required. When manual intervention is required to return the fire alarm system to normal, specific instructions should be in place in the emergency response plan explaining how the fire alarm system notification appliances should be reactivated. These instructions should be located at the fire alarm and mass notification control units. Individuals responsible for manually returning the fire alarm system to normal should be properly trained in the procedure.

24.4.3.14.7 Overriding of fire alarm audible and visible notification signals shall cause an audible and distinctive visible indication at each affected fire alarm control unit to indicate the MNS is active.

24.4.3.14.8 The fire alarm signal deactivation function shall be permitted to occur only when both the fire alarm system is in an alarm condition and notification is being given by the mass notification system.

24.4.3.14.9 When the fire alarm notification is overridden as permitted in 24.4.3.14.8, all other features of the fire alarm system shall remain unaffected.

24.4.3.15 Volume Control.

24.4.3.15.1 Local controls shall be permitted to adjust volume levels of ancillary functions.

24.4.3.15.2 Upon activation of an emergency signal, the system shall override any local volume setting to deliver at a preset volume setting that has been established through testing and acceptance of sound level and speech intelligibility as required by this Code.

EXHIBIT 24.4

Speaker Volume Control. (Source: Atlas Sound, Ennis, TX)

FAQ Can a speaker be provided with a control that allows occupants to lower the volume?

Speaker systems are available that incorporate volume controls and components that allow occupants to lower or turn off the speakers in their area or office. These systems are also designed to allow the speakers to operate at their required power output when the fire alarm system is actuated. The volume control depicted in Exhibit 24.4 would be overridden by the fire alarm system actuation. This safeguard is now available to meet the requirements of 24.3.5.2(2)(a) and 24.4.3.15.2.

24.4.3.16 Visible Notification.

Unfortunately, strobe use in MNSs do not provide enough information for the hearing impaired to take appropriate action. Textual graphic or video displays can be used to serve this purpose. See the commentary following 24.4.3.18.2.

A visual notification appliance commands attention, but a textual visible appliance can provide more specific information. See Exhibit 24.5.

EXHIBIT 24.5

Textual Visible Appliance Giving Specific Exiting Instructions.

24.4.3.16.1 Where audible notification is provided, mass notification systems shall also provide visible notification information to serve the hearing impaired and for high-noise areas.

24.4.3.16.2 The visible notification required by 24.4.3.16.1 shall be accomplished using strobes.

24.4.3.16.3 In addition to the strobes required by 24.4.3.16.1, textual, graphic, or video displays shall be permitted.

24.4.3.16.4 Transmission of visible notification and messages shall be simultaneous to audible notification and messages.

24.4.3.17 Visible Appliances.

24.4.3.17.1 Where strobes are used as visible appliances, they shall meet the requirements of 24.4.3.17.2 through 24.4.3.17.10.

24.4.3.17.2 Visible notification appliances shall be of a sufficient quantity and intensity and located so as to meet the intent of the design and be in compliance with Section 18.5.

24.4.3.17.3 Strobes used in combination systems where the same strobe is used for both mass notification and fire notification shall comply with the following:

(1) Be clear or nominal white, meeting the listing requirements of ANSI/UL 1971, *Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired*
(2) Have no marking or be marked with the word "ALERT" stamped or imprinted on the appliance
(3) Be visible to the public

Exhibit 24.6 shows a visible notification appliance with amber lens labeled "ALERT."

The amber strobe is required by at least two Department of Defense organizations; however, the application of amber strobes may conflict with other strobe-alerting appliances in some industrial settings. When a conflict arises, an analysis should be conducted, and a review

EXHIBIT 24.6

Visible Notification Appliance with Amber Lens. (Source: SimplexGrinnell, Westminster, MA)

EXHIBIT 24.7

Combination Fire/Alert Visible Notification Appliance. (Source: SimplexGrinnell, Westminster, MA)

of the options, with technical justification, should be made with the authority having jurisdiction. As an example, a designer might select a combination fire/alert visible notification appliance as shown in Exhibit 24.7. Also refer to 18.3.3.2. The color of the strobe refers to the lens color and not the housing. If a color such as amber is used, the strobe must comply with ANSI/UL 1638, *Standard for Visual Signaling Appliances – Private Mode Emergency and General Utility Signaling* (see 24.4.3.17.8). Combination strobes, one for fire and one for MNS, can either be integrated as shown in Exhibit 24.7 or installed next to each other in compliance with the installation requirements of Chapter 18.

24.4.3.17.4 In situations where existing notification appliances previously used exclusively for fire alarm applications, and are marked with the word "FIRE," and are to be used for other emergency notification purposes, field modification to the marking shall be permitted, provided that it is accomplished by one of the following methods:

(1) Replacement of the manufacturer's approved escutcheon or trim plate
(2) Covering of, or removal of, the word "FIRE" using a manufacturer's approved method
(3) Installation of a permanent sign directly adjacent or below the notification appliance indicating that it is multipurpose and will operate for fire and other emergency conditions

24.4.3.17.5 Strobes with colored lenses shall be marked with the listed effective intensity using the lens color installed.

24.4.3.17.6 The spacing of colored strobes shall be in accordance with public mode spacing requirements of Section 18.5 using the effective intensity as the basis for spacing.

24.4.3.17.7 Where strobes are used solely for mass notification, the word "ALERT" shall be stamped or imprinted on the appliance and be visible to the public.

24.4.3.17.8 Where colored strobes are used solely for mass notification, they shall be listed to an applicable standard such as ANSI/UL 1638, *Visual Signaling Appliances — Private Mode Emergency and General Utility Signaling*.

24.4.3.17.9 Strobe appliances listed to ANSI/UL 1971, *Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired*, shall be considered as meeting the intent of this Code.

Exception: Color lens strobes shall meet the requirements of 24.4.3.17.8.

24.4.3.17.10 Strobes used for mass notification shall meet the synchronization requirements of Section 18.5.

24.4.3.18* Textual and Graphical Visible Appliances.

The occupants of a building where text, graphic, and video displays are used for mass notification expect to get useful information from those displays so that they can act quickly and intelligently on the information provided. A textual visible appliance is depicted in Exhibit 24.8.

A.24.4.3.18 Care in location and placement is critical to the survivability of the textual visible appliance and maximizing its effectiveness. Locate the textual visible appliance away from direct sunlight or direct local area lighting. Avoid locating the textual visible appliance near heating and air-conditioning ducts.

24.4.3.18.1 Textual and graphical visible notification appliances shall be permitted to be used for primary or supplemental notification.

24.4.3.18.2 Textual and graphical visible notification shall be considered to be primary notification where it is the only method used to convey emergency mass notification information to the general public or to specific individuals.

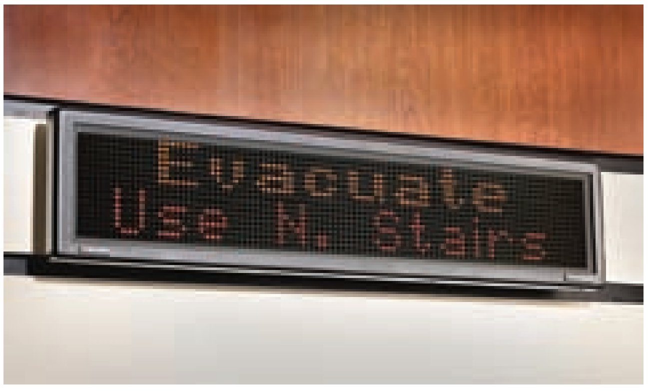


EXHIBIT 24.8
Textual Visible Appliance Directing Evacuation via North Exit. (Source: SimplexGrinnell, Westminster, MA)

In many cases, textual visible appliances provide accurate and actionable crisis communications information. Using textual visible appliances in place of all strobes in a system would prove to be costly. Most owners and designers opt for a mix of both visible strobes and textual visible appliances as part of a comprehensive mass notification strategy. For example, using strobes with printed signs located next to them to instruct hearing-impaired occupants to move to a location where textual visible appliances have been installed could be a viable strategy for mass notification.

24.4.3.18.3 Primary and supplemental textual and graphical visible appliances shall meet the requirements of Chapter 18.

24.4.3.18.4 Textual and graphical visible appliances other than a main control unit shall be permitted to not have a dedicated primary circuit as required by Chapter 10, but shall meet all other requirements for the monitoring of primary power and all requirements for secondary power.

This paragraph affirms that the reliability of power is required but not from a dedicated circuit.

24.4.3.18.5 Textual and graphical visible appliances shall be permitted to be used for nonemergency purposes.

24.4.3.18.6 Emergency textual and graphical messages shall override nonemergency textual and graphical messages.

24.4.3.18.7 Supplemental textual and graphical visible appliances that are not monitored for integrity or loss of communication by a control unit shall be provided with visual status indicators, including loss of communication or loss of power, that are clearly visible on the appliance.

24.4.3.19 Tactile Notification Appliances. Where tactile notification appliances are provided for emergency notification, they shall meet the requirements of Section 18.10.

24.4.3.20* Video Alerting. Video display systems that provide alerts and messages to video appliances shall be permitted to be used to supplement mass notification.

Video information displays (VIDs) at an airport describing flight arrival and departure schedules can be used to supplement other visible and textual visible appliances.

A.24.4.3.20 The video display can be a video appliance used to facilitate mass notification. Information displayed could be video, graphic, text, or audio. Information can be transmitted over a video distribution network, MATV, or CATV system. These messages can be standardized or customized for specific applications or situations. Dynamic text elements can be derived from secure data or updated in real time, either locally or remotely. Messages can be controlled by authorities to update and alter content with manual overrides from authorized security, police, and so forth to ensure up-to-date and real-time information. The same can be accomplished with remote control from an emergency command center. Examples of interfaces used for real-time control include USB, Ethernet, RS-232, and GPI.

24.4.3.21 Supplemental Notification. Supplemental notification shall be permitted to provide additional information or more detailed instructions than those transmitted by the primary notification means.

24.4.3.22 Interfaces. Any abnormal condition that would prevent reliable emergency operation of any interfaced system shall be annunciated both audibly and visibly as a trouble signal at the affected control location.

24.4.3.22.1 Fire Alarm Control Interface (FACI).

24.4.3.22.1.1 Where a fire alarm system is installed covering all or part of the same building or other area as the mass notification system, an interface shall be provided between the systems for operational coordination purposes.

24.4.3.22.1.2 A listed barrier gateway in accordance with 10.3.1, integral with, or attached to, each control unit or group of control units, as appropriate, shall be provided to prevent the other systems from interfering with or controlling the fire alarm system.

24.4.3.22.1.3* The fire alarm control interface shall coordinate signals to and from each system to accomplish the following:

(1) Indicate the failure at the system control unit that will be impaired
(2) Provide an audible and distinctive visible indication at the affected FACU(s) to indicate the MNS is active.
(3) Cause the fire alarm system to deactivate all audible and visible notification appliances whose operation could interfere with the intelligibility of the mass notification message or that will deliver conflicting information to occupants
(4) Not permit the fire alarm system to turn off audible and visible notification appliances for special suppression pre-discharge notification required by 24.4.2.7.1
(5) Where required by the emergency response plan or by other governing laws, codes, or standards, or by other parts of this Code, or by the authority having jurisdiction, provide for a supervisory signal to a supervising station with a response as directed by the emergency response plan that is indicative of the mass notification system overriding the fire alarm system notification appliances during simultaneous fire and mass notification events

According to 24.4.2.7.4, the transmission of a signal to the supervising station indicating that the MNS has overridden the fire alarm system is not required. Transmitting a mass notification message over a fire alarm signal, in all probability, would confuse the operator located at the remote supervising station, who will already be processing the original fire alarm condition. However, if the emergency response plan provides for appropriate action by the supervising station when the operator receives the override signal — and that plan has been approved by the authority having jurisdiction — then a variance to the Code requirement of 24.4.2.7.4 must be developed and recorded in the system documentation.

A.24.4.3.22.1.3 Where automatic transmission is required to a supervisory station, it should be performed in accordance with the emergency response plan. The purpose for disabling or overriding the fire alarm system notification appliances during simultaneous fire and mass notification events is so that occupants will not receive conflicting messages and fail to respond correctly. Fire alarm notification that should be overridden during a mass notification system activation could include audible notification appliances, visible notification appliances, textual notification appliances, and video notification appliances.

24.4.3.22.1.4 If the fire alarm control interface is used to broadcast nonemergency messages, music, or other signals over the fire alarm notification appliance circuits, the operation shall meet the requirements of 24.4.3.15 and 23.8.4.

Broadcasting nonemergency messages, music, or other signals over the fire alarm notification appliance circuits might prompt occupants to attempt to disable the speakers. Paragraph 24.4.3.15.1 provides the requirements to allow this operation through speaker systems that incorporate volume controls and components that allow occupants to lower or turn off the speakers in their area or office. These controls are designed so that the speakers operate at their required power output when the fire alarm system is actuated. This safeguard is now available to meet the requirements of 24.3.5.2(2)(a), 24.4.3.15.2, and 24.4.3.22.1.4.

24.4.3.22.2 Interfaces to Emergency Control Functions. The mass notification system shall be permitted to provide emergency control functions in accordance with Chapter 21 as required by the emergency response plan and as permitted by the authority having jurisdiction.

24.4.3.22.2.1 When mass notifications systems are controlling building life safety systems, the mass notifications systems equipment shall be listed for ANSI/UL 864, *Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems*.

24.4.3.22.3 Interfaces with Wide-Area Mass Notification Systems.

24.4.3.22.3.1* Individual building mass notification systems shall be permitted to interface with wide-area mass notification systems.

A.24.4.3.22.3.1 As part of the risk analysis and emergency response plan, consideration should be given to future interfacing in-building mass notification systems with a wide-area mass notification system if it does not presently exist. In-building mass notification systems should be designed to allow future interface with a wide-area mass notification system.

24.4.3.22.3.2 The in-building mass notification system shall not be activated or controlled by a wide-area mass notification system, unless the wide-area mass notification system also meets the design and performance requirements of this chapter or has been deemed to be acceptable by the risk analysis and the authority having jurisdiction.

24.4.3.23 Combination Emergency Communications Systems.

24.4.3.23.1* When the mass notification system is integrated with the building fire alarm control unit to form one combined system that performs both functions, the system shall comply with this chapter.

Combining or integrating in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications systems with other communications systems such as mass notification, public address, and paging is permitted by the Code. The technology is available to ensure that fire alarm or priority mass notification messages (as determined by the risk analysis) will take precedence over any other announcement, such as paging from a telephone system or other public address system. Using one speaker system that is a combination of other communications systems and that incorporates all the requirements of the Code is financially beneficial to the owner. Not only would design, installation, and ongoing life cycle costs be reduced, but regular system use for normal paging functions provides an end-to-end test of the audible notification components and circuits. Occupants familiar with system use for normal paging are also more likely to be comfortable and proficient using the system during an emergency.

A.24.4.3.23.1 A combined system can include an autonomous control unit and fire alarm control unit supplied from different manufacturers or placed in separate equipment enclosures; however, the autonomous control unit and fire alarm control unit should be integrated in their controls and performance to meet the requirements of this Code.

24.4.3.23.2 All components that affect the operation of the fire alarm system shall be listed for fire alarm use and shall be in compliance with applicable standards such as ANSI/UL 864, *Standard for Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems*.

24.4.3.24 Public Address (PA) Systems Used for Emergency Communications.

24.4.3.24.1 The voice communications or public address system that is to be used for mass notification shall be evaluated by the emergency communications system designer, as defined in Chapter 10, to determine applicability and compliance.

24.4.3.24.2 Evaluation documentation in accordance with 7.3.9 shall be provided by the emergency communications system designer attesting to the fact that the public address system has been evaluated and meets the performance requirements of Chapter 24 and the emergency response plan.

24.4.3.25 Public Address (PA) System Interface with Facility Fire Alarm System.

24.4.3.25.1 When a public address system is used to deliver mass notification messages, the public address system shall provide (either internally as a design feature or with an approved or listed external controller) for a signal to control the facility's fire alarm system for the purpose of deactivating the fire alarm audible and visible notification appliances in accordance with 24.4.3.22.1.

The requirements contained in 24.4.3.25.1 and 24.4.3.25.2 ensure that if a public address system is planned for mass notification use, it is interfaced appropriately with the fire alarm system to cause deactivation of the fire alarm system notification appliances (assuming they are separate from the public address system speakers). This deactivation will occur only when the risk analysis has determined under what circumstances the mass notification message should override the fire alarm signal.

24.4.3.25.2 All of the following features shall be provided in, or added to, the public address system:

(1) Emergency messages must have priority over non-emergency messages.
(2) All individual or zone speaker volume controls must default to the emergency sound level when used for an emergency mass notification message.
(3) When monitoring of circuit integrity is provided by the public address system, monitoring must continue, even if local loudspeaker volume controls are placed in the "off" position.
(4) The required visible notification appliance network (i.e., strobes and textual signs) must be provided where required.

24.4.4* Wide-Area Mass Notification Systems.

A.24.4.4 Wide-area mass notification systems are generally installed to provide real-time information to outdoor areas. These systems are normally provided with, and operated from, two or more emergency command centers. Communications between emergency command centers and in-building mass notification systems is provided. Communications between the emergency command centers and regional or national command systems could also be provided. Wide-area mass notification systems are often those such as campus giant voice systems, military base public address systems, civil defense warning systems, large outdoor visible displays, and so forth.

24.4.4.1 Voice Messages.

24.4.4.1.1 Voice messages shall comply with the requirements of 24.3.1.

24.4.4.1.2 Where required by the emergency response plan, multiple languages shall be permitted to be used.

24.4.4.1.3 Where required by the emergency response plan, specific warning tones shall be provided.

24.4.4.2* Password Protection. Wide-area mass notification systems shall have multiple levels of password protection access control, including levels for system administrators, system operators, maintainers, supervisors, and executives, or other means to limit access to system controls shall be provided based on the emergency response plan.

A.24.4.4.2 A commonly used method of protecting against unauthorized changes using multiple levels of password protection can be described as follows (in ascending levels of access):

(1) *Access Level 1*. Access by persons who have a general responsibility for safety supervision, and who might be expected to investigate and initially respond to an alarm or trouble signal.
(2) *Access Level 2*. Access by persons who have a specific responsibility for safety, and who are trained to operate the control unit.
(3) *Access Level 3*. Access by persons who are trained and authorized to take control over a given area of a site to allow local paging, which might be different from that of another area. Note: This might require a higher form of access to the local control.
(4) *Access Level 4*. Access by persons that serve in a system adminstrator capacity and are authorized to make changes to the system and its associated software.

24.4.4.3* External Connections. Wide-area mass notification systems shall be permitted to connect to regional mass notification systems and public emergency alarm reporting systems as defined in this Code, and public reporting systems as defined in NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems*.

A.24.4.4.3 A wide-area mass notification system could have the capability to communicate with other notification systems on the site, such as the telephone alerting system, paging system, cell phone, pager, PDA activation, e-Blast, message scrolling, reverse 911, fax transmission, and highway advisory radio and sign control system (used for dynamic control of radio information and traffic signs for emergency information and traffic management).

As indicated in A.24.4.4.3, a wide-area mass notification system may also have the capability to communicate with other notification systems. Exhibit 24.9 is an example of a message display that might be used as part of such a system.

24.4.4.4 Wide-Area Mass Notification System Components.

24.4.4.4.1 Emergency Command Center. Refer to Section 24.6 for requirements of an emergency command center.

24.4.4.4.2* High Power Speaker Array (HPSA). When required by the risk analysis, high power speaker arrays (HPSAs) shall be provided, installed, and maintained.

A.24.4.4.4.2 High power speaker arrays should be designed with directional characteristics that will minimize the distortion of voice signals by interface from other zones and will

EXHIBIT 24.9

Wall-Mounted Message Display with Integral LEDs and Sounder. (Source: Alertus Technologies, LLC, Beltsville, MD)

minimize the transmission of voice or tone signals into environmentally sensitive areas or off the site.

24.4.4.4.2.1 The HPSA shall be arranged in such a manner to provide intelligible voice and audible tone communications.

(A) When multiple HPSAs are used, they shall be arranged in physical or virtual notification zones so that each notification zone can be individually controlled by the emergency command center.

(B)* HPSAs shall be designed to maintain the intelligibility of voice signals within the notification zone in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 18.

A.24.4.4.4.2.1(B) Refer to Annex D for more information on speech intelligibility and how it is predicted.

Normal weather conditions should be specified as appropriate for the geographic location.

In outdoor areas, such as in industrial areas with many multi-story buildings, the maximum distance of personnel from an outdoor speaker often has to be significantly reduced to retain acceptable intelligibility of the voice message. Speakers that provide directional capability should be used. These can be mounted on building exteriors if the speakers do not radiate unacceptable levels of sound into the building on which they are mounted.

At some sites, it could be necessary to control the amount of sound that propagates in undesirable directions, such as into civilian communities adjacent to the site boundaries or into wildlife areas with protected or endangered animal species. Additionally, in some areas, it might be necessary to mount wide-area mass notification speakers on the side of a building while simultaneously preventing an unacceptable increase in that building's interior noise levels.

24.4.4.4.2.2 Secondary power for HPSAs used for wide-area mass notification systems shall have sufficient capacity to operate the unit for a minimum of 7 days in standby, followed by 60 minutes of operation at full load.

24.4.4.4.2.3 An HPSA shall have the capability to provide voice communications and tones as determined by the emergency response plan.

24.4.4.4.2.4* An HPSA shall operate in the environment in which it is located, considering such factors as temperature, humidity, wind, dust, vibration, and other environmental factors.

A.24.4.4.4.2.4 At a minimum, the high power speaker array controller should be located above known high water level during historic floods. In northern states, the high power speaker array should be located above known snow levels. When selecting high power speaker arrays, care should be taken to ensure the equipment is rated to operate between the high and low temperature range and other anticipated environmental conditions for the geographical location of installation. The system designer should inquire about this information as part of the risk analysis.

24.4.4.4.3 High Power Speaker Array Enclosures.

24.4.4.4.3.1 Enclosures for HPSAs shall be of the NEMA 4 or 4X type.

24.4.4.4.3.2 HPSA enclosures shall have intrusion detection that signals the emergency command center.

(A) The signal shall be initiated whenever the door of the enclosure is in the open position.
(B) The transmitted signal shall be a latching supervisory signal.

24.4.4.4.4 High Power Speaker Array Mounting.

Exhibit 24.10 illustrates a high power speaker array.

Exhibit 24.11 depicts a mounted high power speaker array.

High power speaker arrays can use round or rectangular speakers. See Exhibit 24.12 for an example of round speakers installed on a column.

EXHIBIT 24.10

High Power Speaker Array. (Source: Cooper Wheelock, Inc. dba Cooper Notification, Long Branch, NJ)

24.4.4.4.4.1 HPSAs shall be mounted at a minimum mounting height that is based on the rated output of the array.

24.4.4.4.4.2* HPSAs shall be installed at a height and orientation to prevent hearing damage to anyone in the immediate vicinity of the speakers.

A.24.4.4.4.4.2 High power speaker arrays should be mounted not to exceed the OSHA and FEMA Publication CPG-17 for occupational noise exposure limits or an absolute limit of 123 C-weighted decibels (dBC) as referenced in FEMA to anyone in the immediate vicinity of the speakers.

24.4.4.4.4.3 All external conductors (conductors passing outside of the HPSA equipment cabinet) shall be provided with surge suppression to minimize potential equipment damage from lightning strikes.

24.4.4.4.5 High Power Speaker Array Noise Consideration. HPSA notification zones shall not be used to provide mass notification inside any structures.

24.4.4.4.6* High Power Speaker Array Structural Loads, Wind, and Seismic Design. HPSAs and their supporting structures shall meet the structural, wind, and seismic loads as identified in the risk analysis.

A.24.4.4.4.6 High power speaker arrays and their supporting structures should have a minimum design wind speed of 100 miles/hr [161 km/hr (86.8 kn)]. The supporting structure should be sized to accommodate the static and dynamic loads produced by the sound systems and all attachments. Seismic loads are generally site specific.

24.4.4.4.7 Textual Visible Appliances. Textual visible appliances shall meet the requirements of Section 18.9 and 24.4.3.18.

24.4.4.4.7.1 After loss of primary power, textual visible appliances shall have sufficient secondary power to operate for a minimum of 2 hours of continuous display time during an emergency event.

24.4.4.4.7.2 Scrolling message boards shall be provided with means to control the scrolling rate.

EXHIBIT 24.11

Mounted High Power Speaker Array. (Source: Cooper Wheelock, Inc. dba Cooper Notification, Long Branch, NJ)

EXHIBIT 24.12

High Power Speaker Array with Round Speakers.

24.4.4.4.8 In-Building Mass Notification Systems. The in-building mass notification system shall meet the requirements of 24.4.3.

This requirement reminds the Code user that all in-building MNSs must first comply with 24.4.3. When interfaced with wide-area MNSs as described in the next requirement, they should seamlessly work together.

24.4.4.4.9 Interfaces with Wide-Area Mass Notification Systems. Interfaces between wide-area mass notification systems and in-building mass notification systems, other alert and notification systems, regional mass notification systems, and off-site interfaces shall have a standard interface method (such as an audio line-level output and multiple relay contacts) or supply the necessary communications protocols to provide interoperability and a secure communications link.

24.4.4.4.9.1 The interface shall be such that the primary function of both systems shall not be compromised.

24.4.4.4.9.2 The interface shall be monitored for integrity in accordance with 10.6.9 and Sections 10.19 and 12.6, so that an abnormal condition that could prevent reliable system operation is audibly and visibly annunciated as a trouble signal at both systems' control units.

24.4.4.4.10 Control Hierarchy. There shall be a predefined control hierarchy between the wide-area mass notification system, the in-building mass notification system, and the regional mass notification system for information flow from the remote control center, as well as information from specific locations.

This predefined control hierarchy should be developed through a review of the goals and objectives of the owner and the risk analysis approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

24.4.4.4.11 Communications Links.

24.4.4.4.11.1 The wide-area mass notification system, including communications links, shall minimize the potential for interference from jamming, spoofing, hacking, eavesdropping, or other malicious acts.

24.4.4.4.11.2 The wide-area mass notification system shall have a primary and redundant communications link with minimal functional and spatial interconnection with each other.

24.4.4.4.11.3 Wide-area and in-building mass notification systems equipment and interface methods connecting to, or utilizing, public emergency alarm reporting systems and associated communications infrastructure shall be electrically and operationally compatible so as not to interfere with the public emergency alarm reporting systems.

24.4.5* Distributed Recipient Mass Notification Systems (DRMNSs).

A.24.4.5 Distributed recipient mass notification systems are enterprise-class systems for the management of, and mass distribution of, emergency notification messages within buildings, throughout installations, across entire geographical regions, or throughout a worldwide military command. Using distributed recipient mass notification systems, designated system operators would be able to rapidly and reliably inform appropriate personnel of homeland security levels (including chemical, biological, radiological, and nuclear threats; hazardous weather conditions; and many other critical events), possibly with near real-time response capability.

A distributed recipient mass notification system is meant to communicate to a wide range of targeted individuals and groups. These systems might use mass dialing systems, including reverse 911, email, SMS, or other directed communications methods to broadcast information. They might also use wired or wireless networks for one- or two-way communications and/or control between a building or area and an emergency services organization (information, command, and control).

Distributed recipient mass notification systems could be capable of centrally tracking, in real time, all alerting activities for each individual recipient, including sending, receiving, and responding to alerts, and be able to generate reports based on tracked information.

Distributed recipient mass notification systems could incorporate a predefined library of signals and messaging appropriate for, but not limited to, the following:

(1) Presidential alert message
(2) Homeland security levels
(3) Terrorism threats, watches, or warnings
(4) Evacuation routes
(5) Emergency directives
(6) Personnel recall requirements
(7) Federal, DOD, police, fire, or locally /installation-specific warning and notification requirements
(8) Amber alerts

The distributed recipient mass notification system could be capable of monitoring emergency notifications from multiple data sources [Commercial Mobile Alert System (CMAS), National Weather Service, Emergency Managers Weather Information Network (EMWIN), Naval Meteorology and Oceanography (METOC), and others as determined locally] and automatically sending out notifications to designated facilities and personnel based on predefined rules.

A mass notification system could also be capable of reaching out to all online personnel by leveraging a highly secure, redundant, Web-based IP network architecture to manage the entire mass notification process. Agencies and organizations can create role-based uses such as operators, administrators, and recipients, based on their access rights across multiple facilities, campuses, and installations. System rules could be established to determine operator permissions and actions such as creating and activating scenarios, as well as the extent and geography of alerts and delivery systems and devices that should be used. Such a Web-based mass notification system would employ an open, standards-based architecture. The system could be integrated with existing user directories to support organizational hierarchy and emergency response groups. It could be structured to allow emergency criteria–based targeting of emergency alerts.

Additionally, this annex material provides information on ongoing development of system requirements for net-centric alerting systems (NCAS) that will be based on IP technologies. This annex is not mandatory, but is provided to stimulate development of suitable requirements and standards. Consequently, user suggestions and feedback on this annex are highly encouraged and requested. Methods to ensure reliability and robustness in off-normal or emergency conditions are of particular concern. The required amount of and method for isolating alerting functions from normal, non-alerting system functions needs development.

NCAS leverage the IP network infrastructure to instantly reach those personnel who have access to nearly any IP-connected devices [such as pop-up alerts on personal computers (PC), text messages to personal data assistants (PDA) and cellular telephones, electronic mail to IP-capable cellular telephones, and voice messages to voiceover-IP (VoIP) telephones and PCs]. Additionally, NCAS could be used to activate, through a single interface, other (IP based and non-IP based) alerting systems, such as wide-area alerting systems and traditional dial-up telephone alerting systems.

NCAS can be installed independently or at a central location. In a centrally managed NCAS configuration, personnel and facilities in the regional operations center's particular area of coverage could be alerted instantly by events, either from any individual installation, or centrally from the regional operations center. Using management tools, designated operators from each installation in the region could log in via a web browser and have complete access to their own portion of the NCAS. The regional operations center would retain the ability to centrally monitor and manage all portions of the system, including supervisory and trouble conditions of the different system components and integrated components.

The NCAS would incorporate a Web-based management and alert activation application through which all operators and administrators could gain access to the system's capabilities, based on the users' permissions and the defined access policy. Such a management application would incorporate management of the alert activation flow through all delivery methods, as well as end-user management, operators' permission and access, tracking and reporting, and all administrative aspects of the system.

Distributed recipient mass notification systems could interface and interoperate with other types of mass notification capabilities, including wide-area and in-building mass notification systems. During emergencies, systems operators should not need to send notifications using multiple alerting systems. The distributed recipient mass notification system, particularly NCAS, might be able to provide the capability to integrate user interfaces and consolidate access to multiple mass notification and alerting systems.

24.4.5.1* Overview. Distributed recipient mass notification system (DRMNS) alerting shall not be used in lieu of required audible and visible alerting mass notification systems but shall be integrated with mass notification systems whenever possible.

A.24.4.5.1 Distributed recipient mass notification systems could enable the management of the notification flow, including users' management, groups targeting, operators' permissions, access policies, predefined emergency scenarios, and response tracking and reporting.

24.4.5.2* Targeted Recipients. The DRMNS shall be capable of sending alert messages to target recipients.

A.24.4.5.2 Distributed recipient mass notification systems could be capable of sending alert messages in a prioritized method to target recipients according to the following:

(1) Hierarchical organizational structure (as would be imported from an active directory)
(2) Organizational roles
(3) Specific distribution lists [e.g., hazardous materials (HAZMAT) response teams]
(4) Specific distribution (e.g., hearing impaired or others with impairments that warrant prioritized notification)
(5) Dynamic groups created through on-the-fly queries of the user directory
(6) Geographical locations (e.g., entire bases, zones within bases)
(7) IP addresses (required for targeting devices in specific physical locations)

24.4.5.2.1* DRMNS shall provide means of populating and updating distributed recipients' data.

A.24.4.5.2.1 Distributed recipient mass notification systems should provide mechanisms to update user and targeting data; for example, user data import, integration with personnel directories, and self-user registration.

24.4.5.3* Network Security Compliance. DRMNSs shall be installed behind the appropriate internet system firewalls to protect the integrity of the network.

A.24.4.5.3 Distributed recipient mass notification systems could use a Web-based user interface, support locally designated standard network ports and protocols, and provide open interfaces to support interoperability, such as eXtensible markup language (XML) and common alerting protocol (CAP) based emergency messages. *(See OASIS Standard CAP-V1.2, OASIS Common Alerting Protocol version 1.2.)*

24.4.5.4 Network Architecture. The network shall be provided with net-centric architecture that fully supports local designated standards and security requirements.

24.4.5.5* Delivery Methods. The DRMNS shall be capable of sending alert messages to end-users (recipients) via multiple delivery methods.

A.24.4.5.5 Distributed recipient mass notification systems would be capable of sending alert messages to end-users (recipients) via multiple delivery methods, including the following:

(1) Audio-visual network alerts to desktops and laptops via desktop pop-up
(2) Text alerts to mobile phones and pagers
(3) Text alerts to electronic mail (e-mail) clients
(4) Audio alerts to phones
(5) Audio alerts to existing wide-area or building voice and or mass notification systems
(6) Network alerts to any other IP-connected devices via standard XML and CAP protocols

The system could be extendable to support additional delivery methods in the future as this technology develops.

24.4.5.6* Backup Distributed Recipient Mass Notification Systems. DRMNS used to send emergency messages shall be provided with a backup configuration to facilitate distribution of messages.

A.24.4.5.6 A distributed recipient mass notification system could support multiple server and multiple site configurations to achieve a "hot standby" failover configuration (i.e., no down time in case of failure in a single server), as well as to support higher load scenarios (e.g., more users). This could be accomplished with premises-based systems or hosted configurations.

Backup configuration can either be a net-centric system architecture located behind internet firewalls or hosted off-site, outside the owner's internet firewall utilizing a hosted software and hardware configuration operated and maintained by DRMNS provider(s), or incorporate features of both configurations.

DRMNS is a layer of MNS that is becoming both popular and useful for transmitting emergency information to large groups of people regardless of their location at the time of the incident. As can be seen by the requirement in 24.4.5 and the Annex A material, DRMNS is a very flexible and reliable method of emergency alerting.

24.5 Two-Way, In-Building Emergency Communications Systems

Two-way communications service within a building provides a reliable method for fire fighters and other emergency response personnel to communicate with each other during the course of an emergency. The Code recognizes two means: two-way telephones and two-way, in-building radio communications enhancement systems.

24.5.1* Two-Way, In-Building Wired Emergency Services Communications Systems.

Two-way telephone communications service is normally provided because fire department handheld radios may be ineffective in buildings with a great deal of structural steel or when the amount of radio traffic is heavy. The authority having jurisdiction may waive this requirement if the handheld radios used by the fire department work effectively in the specific building in question. Refer to 24.5.2 for two-way, in-building radio communications enhancement systems. See Exhibits 24.13 and 24.14 for examples of two-way telephone communications.

EXHIBIT 24.13

Fire Emergency Phone/Cabinet Assembly.

EXHIBIT 24.14

Two-Way Telephone Communications Service in Use.

A.24.5.1 Two-way, in-building emergency services communications systems are used by fire fighters, police, and other emergency services personnel. This does not preclude equipment outside of the protected premises.

24.5.1.1 Two-way telephone communications equipment shall be listed for two-way telephone communications service and installed in accordance with 24.5.1.

24.5.1.2 Two-way telephone communications service, if provided, shall be for use by the fire service and collocated with the in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications equipment.

24.5.1.3 Monitoring of the integrity of two-way telephone communications circuits shall be in accordance with 10.19.2.

24.5.1.4 Additional uses shall be permitted to include signaling and communications for a building fire warden organization and signaling and communications for reporting a fire and other emergencies (e.g., voice call box service, signaling, and communications for guard's tour service).

24.5.1.5 Variation of equipment and system operation provided to facilitate additional use of the two-way telephone communications service shall not adversely affect performance when used by the fire service.

24.5.1.6* Two-way telephone communications service shall be capable of permitting the simultaneous operation of any five telephone stations in a common talk mode.

A.24.5.1.6 Consideration should be given to the type of telephone handset that fire fighters use in areas where high ambient noise levels exist or areas where high noise levels could exist during a fire condition. Push-to-talk handsets, handsets that contain directional microphones, or handsets that contain other suitable noise-canceling features, can be used.

Speakers required in the areas where fire fighters' telephones are located should be arranged to ensure that the sound pressure levels of the nearby speakers do not preclude the effective use of the fire fighters' telephones.

24.5.1.7 A notification signal at the control equipment, distinctive from any other alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal, shall indicate the off-hook condition of a calling telephone circuit. If a selective talk telephone communications service is supplied, a distinctive visible indicator shall be furnished for each selectable circuit, so that all circuits with telephones off-hook are continuously and visibly indicated.

24.5.1.8 A means for silencing the audible call-in signal sounding appliance shall be permitted, provided that it is key-operated or located in a locked cabinet, or provided with protection to prevent use by unauthorized persons. The means shall operate a visible indicator and sound a trouble signal whenever the means is in the silence position and no telephone circuits are in an off-hook condition.

Methods for silencing the audible call-in signal include switches, touch pads, and touch screens.

24.5.1.9 If a selective talk system is used, means as specified in 24.5.1.8 shall be permitted, provided that subsequent telephone circuits going off-hook operate the distinctive off-hook signal.

24.5.1.10 Two-way telephone systems with common talk mode (i.e., a conference or party line circuit) shall be permitted.

24.5.1.11 In buildings provided with a two-way telephone communications system, at least one telephone station or jack shall be provided at the following locations:

(1) Each floor level
(2) Each notification zone
(3) Each elevator cab
(4) Elevator lobbies
(5) Elevator machine room(s)
(6) Emergency and standby power room(s)
(7) Fire pump room(s)

Fire pumps should be attended any time they run, particularly during a fire. The phone in the pump room or pump house allows continuous communication between the incident commander and the pump room in the event the fire pump experiences trouble or the pump room must be evacuated.

(8) Area(s) of refuge
(9) Each floor level inside an enclosed exit stair(s)
(10) Other room(s) or area(s) as required by the authority having jurisdiction

24.5.1.12 If the two-way telephone system is intended to be used by fire wardens in addition to the fire service, the minimum requirement shall be a selective talk system, where phones are selected from the control location.

24.5.1.13 Telephone circuits shall be selectable from the control location either individually or, if approved by the authority having jurisdiction, by floor or stairwell.

24.5.1.14 If the control equipment provided does not indicate the location of the caller (common talk systems), each telephone station or telephone jack shall be clearly and permanently labeled to allow the caller to identify his or her location to the control center by voice.

24.5.1.15 If telephone jacks are provided, two or more portable handsets, as determined by the authority having jurisdiction, shall be stored at each control center for use by emergency responders.

FAQ How many portable handsets should be provided?

The number of portable handsets provided should be determined based on discussions with the authority having jurisdiction. The layout of the building, manual fire suppression strategy, rescue concerns, and other factors should be considered. The location of the portable handsets should also be given careful consideration. The portable handsets should be easily and quickly accessible to arriving fire fighters.

24.5.1.16 Telephone appliances shall be in accordance with EIA Tr 41.3, *Telephones*.

The requirements of 24.5.1.16 were previously located in 18.8.2 of the 2010 edition and remain unchanged. The Electronic Industries Alliance (EIA) standard helps to ensure the quality and technical suitability of a telephone handset. EIA Tr 41.3, *Telephones*, specified in 24.5.1.16, is available from the Electronic Industries Alliance, 2500 Wilson Blvd., Arlington, VA 22201-3834, *www.eia.org*.

24.5.1.17 Wall-mounted telephone appliances or related jacks shall be not less than 36 in. (910 mm) and not more than 66 in. (1.68 m) above floor level with clear access to the appliance that is at least 30 in. (760 mm) wide.

This paragraph provides the minimum and maximum mounting heights of telephone appliances and jacks to ensure ease of use by the fire fighters and the public when applicable.

24.5.1.18 If accessible to the general public, one telephone appliance per location shall be not more than 48 in. (1.22 m) above floor level.

The term *accessible* in the context of 24.5.1.18 means "available to and intended to be used by the general public." This includes use by floor or section fire wardens who might be required to communicate with the building emergency command center by means of the fire alarm system telephones.

This requirement allows the use of the telephone for communication to the emergency command center by anyone who may be confined to a wheelchair.

24.5.1.19* All circuits necessary for the operation of two-way telephone communications systems shall be installed in accordance with the pathway survivability requirements in 24.3.6.7.

This paragraph helps to ensure that the fire fighters' telephones will continue to work as the fire fighters are fighting the fire.

A.24.5.1.19 Two-way, in-building wired emergency services communications systems are intended to provide emergency service personnel and designated building occupants with a supervised, reliable communication system that is completely independent of other in-building communication systems. The survivability of two-way, in-building wired emergency services communications systems is paramount as they are intended for use during and throughout the duration of a fire or other emergency event. This kind of functionality requires that measures are taken to ensure that the system is designed, installed, and maintained in such a manner that they can survive and function under extreme conditions.

24.5.2* Two-Way Radio Communications Enhancement Systems.

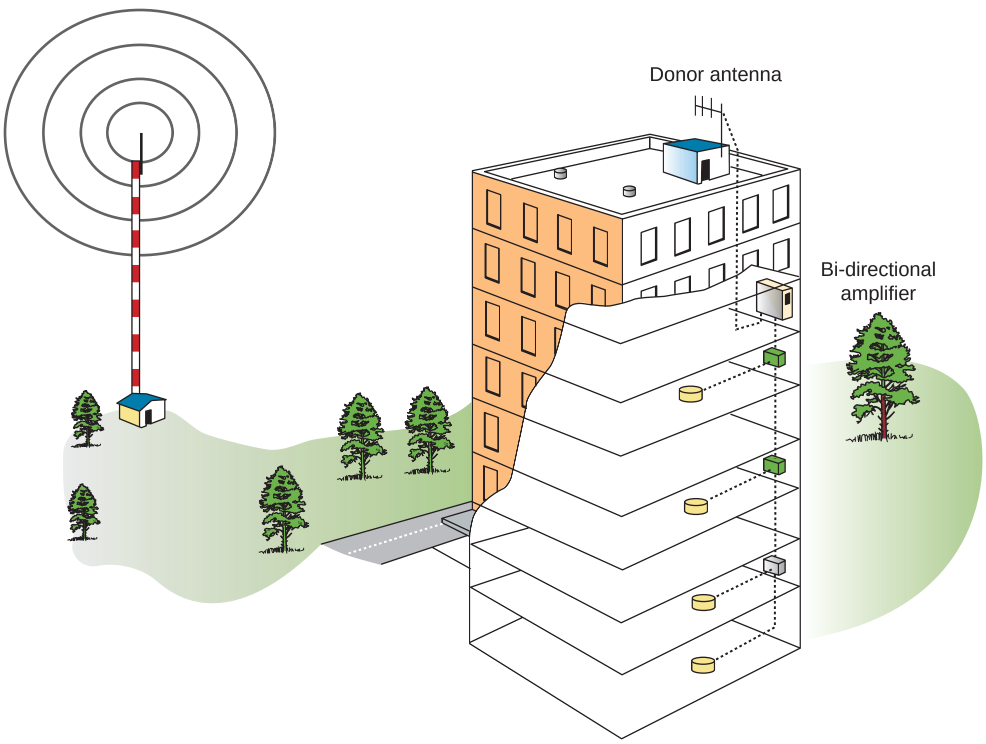
Fire department radio systems may not operate properly where concrete and steel construction interfere with radio traffic. One means of enhancing fire department radio communications within a building is the installation of antennae and repeaters at strategic locations, typically called *bi-directional amplifier systems*. This method is often preferred by fire departments because it allows them to use their normal radio equipment and communications procedures within the building. See Exhibits 24.15 and 24.16 for examples of two-way, in-building radio communications enhancement systems.

A.24.5.2 The use of radio communication enhancement systems has become prevalent throughout the country.

Safety features and flexibilities of radio systems include:

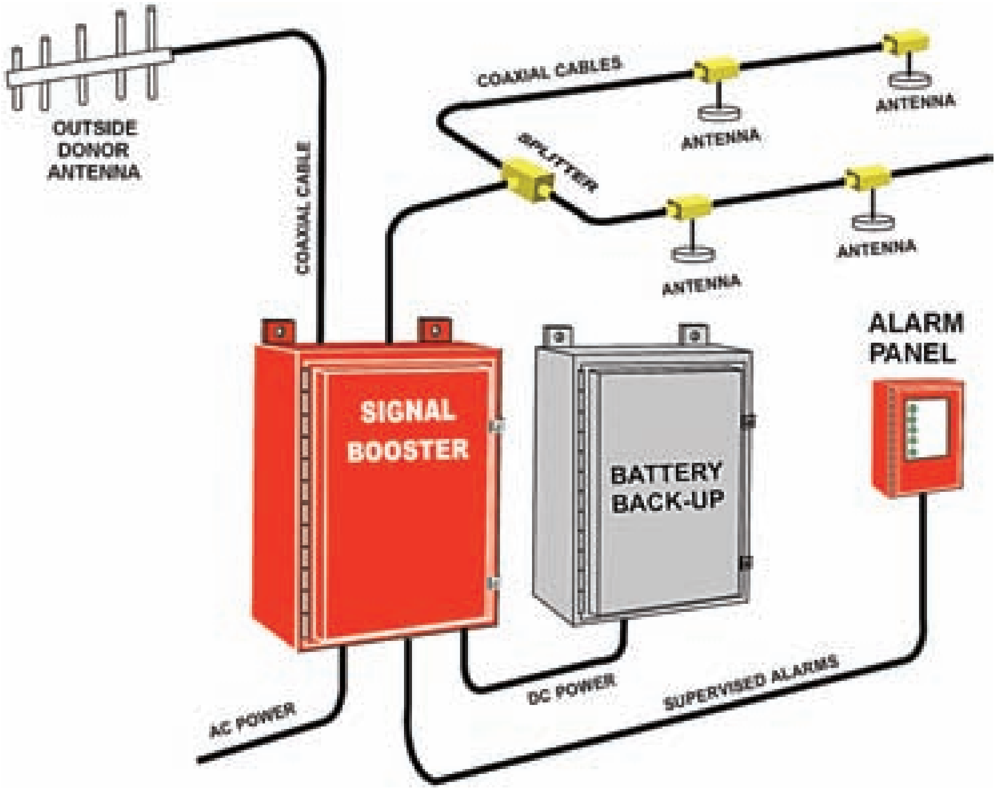
(1) Allowing full building coverage to facilitate communications from any point within the building, in case access to the telephone jack is compromised.
(2) Allowing communications to be conducted between emergency responders in the field to allow quicker dissemination of safety and emergency information.
(3) Each emergency responder typically will carry an individual radio, allowing for each individual to provide information or request assistance individually, which can be important if members of crews separate from each other during an incident.
(4) Radio systems allow for "fire fighter down" emergency calls in case of injury, where, by pushing a single button, a call is placed to a central location to initiate a roll call in order to determine the emergency responder who has been injured and requires assistance.

EXHIBIT 24.15



Bi-Directional Amplifier System. (Source: Copyright © Jack Daniel Company, Victorville, CA)

EXHIBIT 24.16



Bi-Directional Amplifier System Floor Layout. (Source: Copyright © Jack Daniel Company, Victorville, CA)

(5) Radio systems can employ an emergency call where, by pushing a single button, an emergency responder call jump to the next radio given system access to allow wide-range communication of a superseding emergency, such as building structure failure, failure of a fire pump or standpipe system, or other emergency that could cause a change in operational strategies.

24.5.2.1 General.

24.5.2.1.1 Non-Interference. No amplification system capable of operating on frequencies or causing interference on frequencies assigned to the jurisdiction by the FCC shall be installed without prior coordination and approval of the authority having jurisdiction. The building manager/owner shall suspend and correct other equipment installations that degrade the performance of the public safety radio system or public safety radio enhancement system.

24.5.2.1.2 Approval and Permit. Plans shall be submitted for approval prior to installation. At the conclusion of successful acceptance testing, a renewable permit shall be issued for the public safety radio enhancement system where required by the authority having jurisdiction.

Some designers and installers assume that the authority having jurisdiction for the two-way radio communications enhancement system is the same as the authority having jurisdiction for the fire alarm system design review and approval. In fact, the authority having jurisdiction for the two-way radio communications enhancement system might be the fire department radio communications chief. The designer or installer must determine who is the authority having jurisdiction or if the particular system may have more than one authority.

Designers and installers should be aware that only a person authorized in writing by the agency holding the FCC license may sign documents affecting radio systems under *FCC Code of Federal Regulations,* Title 47, Subpart F Section 1.917. In public safety, this person is normally the director of communications for the jurisdiction. The designer or installer can determine who the responsible individual for the jurisdiction is by also visiting the FCC Universal License System (ULS) at *wireless.fcc.gov/uls/index.htm* by entering a call sign or agency name (jurisdiction) and researching who is the licensed individual or contact person. Based on the formats normally used in the ULS, for example, the jurisdictional name may be listed as "Boston, City of" or "Santa Clara, County of." Because of the potential for radio interference, it is important that the public safety answering point (PSAP) and jurisdictional communications director be made aware of the BDA systems and their location.

Also important is to understand that these systems are independent from the fire alarm system and, therefore, may require a different supplier who is a communications specialist. In many cases, a field strength test will need to be made to ensure the antenna system design is correct. In some remote areas, a BDA may not be the right choice and a simple repeater will be necessary. Designers are cautioned to not treat this system as a fire alarm system but should also remember that if not installed and tested properly, this system could delay the building occupancy permit. The only interconnect to the fire department is the monitoring of the BDA controls. The extensive testing requirements for these systems are outlined in Chapter 14. These systems can be tested independently from the fire alarm system and will often require representatives of the fire department's radio communications department to be present for the test.

24.5.2.2 Radio Coverage. Radio coverage shall be provided throughout the building as a percentage of floor area as specified in 24.5.2.2.1 through 24.5.2.2.3.

24.5.2.2.1 Critical Areas. Critical areas, such as the fire command center(s), the fire pump room(s), exit stairs, exit passageways, elevator lobbies, standpipe cabinets, sprinkler sectional valve locations, and other areas deemed critical by the authority having jurisdiction, shall be provided with 99 percent floor area radio coverage.

24.5.2.2.2 General Building Areas. General building areas shall be provided with 90 percent floor area radio coverage.

24.5.2.2.3 Amplification Components. Buildings and structures that cannot support the required level of radio coverage shall be equipped with a radiating cable system or a distributed antenna system (DAS) with FCC-certified signal boosters, or both, or with a system that is otherwise approved, in order to achieve the required adequate radio coverage.

24.5.2.3 Signal Strength.

24.5.2.3.1 Inbound. A minimum inbound signal strength of −95 dBm, or other signal strength as required by the authority having jurisdiction, shall be provided throughout the coverage area.

24.5.2.3.2 Outbound. A minimum outbound signal strength of −95 dBm at the donor site, or other signal strength as required by the authority having jurisdiction, shall be provided from the coverage area.

24.5.2.3.3 Isolation. If a donor antenna exists, isolation shall be maintained between the donor antenna and all inside antennas and shall be a minimum of 15 dB above the signal booster gain under all operating conditions.

24.5.2.4* System Radio Frequencies. The public safety radio enhancement system shall be capable of transmitting all public safety radio frequencies assigned to the jurisdiction and be capable of using any modulation technology.

A.24.5.2.4 Modulation technologies include analog and digital modulation.

It is important that interoperability be developed and maintained when implementing analog and digital two-way radio systems. The simplest means to gaining a measure of interoperability with analog two-way radio systems is programming into a radio existing, operational channels from agencies that are adjacent to each other geographically and that operate in the same public safety frequency band. To gain interoperability with digital two-way radio systems, systems and devices that are (APCO) Project 25 (P25) compatible can be used. Project 25 is a standard for the manufacturing of interpretable digital two-way wireless communications systems and devices. A P25 radio system provides interoperability, because it incorporates a common air interface and a multi-band excitation vocoder that converts speech into a digital bit stream. P25 defines standard modes of radio operation to enable multi-vendor interoperability such as trunking, encryption, over-the-air rekeying, and so forth. Formally, P25 specifications are defined in the ANSI/TIA/EIA 102 suite of standards. All homeland security funding promotes interoperable communications and recommends adherence to open architecture technologies and P25 standards.

24.5.2.4.1 List of Assigned Frequencies. The authority having jurisdiction shall maintain a list of all inbound/outbound frequency pairs for distribution to system designers.

24.5.2.4.2* Frequency Changes. Systems shall be capable of upgrade, to allow for instances where the jurisdiction changes or adds system frequencies, in order to maintain radio system coverage as originally designed.

A.24.5.2.4.2 There is currently an ongoing national effort to eliminate current interference issues between cellular carriers and public safety bands in the 800 MHz band. This effort could revise the actual frequencies for public agencies within this band. The public safety radio enhancement system design should be capable of being changed to accommodate updated frequencies in order to allow maintenance of the minimum system design criteria.

24.5.2.5 System Components.

24.5.2.5.1 Component Approval. Components utilized in the installation of the public safety radio enhancement system, such as repeaters, transmitters, receivers, signal boosters, cabling, and fiber-distributed antenna systems, shall be approved and shall be compatible with the public safety radio system.

24.5.2.5.2 Component Enclosures. All repeater, transmitter, receiver, signal booster components, and battery system components shall be contained in a NEMA 4- or 4X-type enclosure(s).

24.5.2.5.3 External Filters. Permanent external filters and attachments shall not be permitted.

24.5.2.5.4 Signal Booster Components. If used, signal boosters shall meet the following requirements, as well as any other requirements determined by the authority having jurisdiction:

(1)* Signal boosters shall have FCC certification prior to installation.
(2) All signal boosters shall be compatible with both analog and digital communications simultaneously at the time of installation. The authority having jurisdiction shall provide the maximum acceptable propagation delay standard.

A.24.5.2.5.4(1) All repeaters, transmitters, receivers, and signal boosters should be installed and operated in a manner consistent with Title 47, CFR. Within these regulations is a mandatory requirement that repeaters, transmitters, and signal boosters have Federal

Communications Commission (FCC) "certification." Receivers do not normally have a FCC certification requirement but must comply with other applicable FCC regulations. FCC certification is a formal procedure that verifies the equipment meets certain minimum FCC technical specifications. Each brand and model type is issued a distinct FCC certification number. Use of repeaters, transmitters, or signal boosters that do not have an existing FCC-issued certification is a violation of federal law, and users are subject to fine and/or imprisonment. A label displaying the exact FCC certification number must be placed in a visible place on the equipment itself.

FCC certification verification can be obtained from any FCC office or online (https://fjallfoss.fcc.gov/oetcf/eas/reports/genericsearch.cfm).

24.5.2.5.5 Power Supplies. At least two independent and reliable power supplies shall be provided for all repeater, transmitter, receiver, and signal booster components, one primary and one secondary.

24.5.2.5.5.1 Primary Power Source. The primary power source shall be supplied from a dedicated branch circuit and comply with 10.6.5.1.

24.5.2.5.5.2* Secondary Power Source. The secondary power source shall consist of one of the following:

(1) A storage battery dedicated to the system with at least 12 hours of 100 percent system operation capacity and arranged in accordance with 10.6.10.
(2) An automatic-starting, engine-driven generator serving the dedicated branch circuit or the system with at least 12 hours of 100 percent system operation capacity and storage batteries dedicated to the system with at least 2 hours of 100 percent system operation capacity and arranged in accordance with 10.6.11.3.

A.24.5.2.5.5.2 The battery requirement of 12 hours for the public safety radio enhancement system is purposely longer than the 5-minute performance requirement for general evacuation and the 15-minute performance requirement for emergency voice/alarm communication systems. This is due to the primary mission of these systems, where the fire alarm system's primary mission is to assist fire detection and occupant egress, and the public safety radio enhancement system's primary mission is to assist fire department operations, which might take longer than occupant egress.

24.5.2.5.5.3 Monitoring Integrity of Power Supplies. Monitoring the integrity of power supplies shall be in accordance with 10.6.9.

24.5.2.6 System Monitoring.

24.5.2.6.1 Fire Alarm System. The public safety radio communications enhancement system shall include automatic supervisory and trouble signals for malfunctions of the signal booster(s) and power supply(ies) that are annunciated by the fire alarm system and comply with the following:

(1) The integrity of the circuit monitoring signal booster(s) and power supply(ies) shall comply with 10.6.9 and Section 12.6.
(2) System and signal booster supervisory signals shall include the following:
    (a) Antenna malfunction
    (b) Signal booster failure
    (c) Low-battery capacity indication when 70 percent of the 12-hour operating capacity has been depleted.
(3) Power supply signals shall include the following for each signal booster:
    (a) Loss of normal ac power
    (b) Failure of battery charger

FAQ

Is the two-way radio communications enhancement system required to be monitored and annunciated by the fire alarm system?

As the Code permits two-way radio communications enhancement systems to replace the supervised two-way, in-building wired emergency services communications systems, it is imperative that an equivalent level of supervision be used and that the owners know when this important system has a malfunction. For this reason, 24.5.2.6.1 requires the supervision and monitoring of the important operational components of the two-way radio communications enhancement system.

24.5.2.6.2* Dedicated Panel. A dedicated monitoring panel shall be provided within the fire command center to annunciate the status of all signal booster locations. The monitoring panel shall provide visual and labeled indication of the following for each signal booster:

(1) Normal ac power
(2) Signal booster trouble
(3) Loss of normal ac power
(4) Failure of battery charger
(5) Low-battery capacity

A.24.5.2.6.2 Due to the longer backup battery requirement for the public safety radio communications enhancement system, it is recognized that the fire alarm system might not be available to provide monitoring of radio system signals, including low-battery signals. Therefore, redundant status annunciation is required to provide local signals to the incident commander or his/her designee at the fire command center.

24.5.2.7 Technical Criteria. The authority having jurisdiction shall maintain a document of technical information specific to its requirements, which shall contain, as a minimum, the following:

(1) Frequencies required
(2) Location and effective radiated power (ERP) of radio sites used by the public safety radio enhancement system
(3) Maximum propagation delay (in microseconds)
(4) List of specifically approved system components
(5) Other supporting technical information necessary to direct system design

24.5.3* Area of Refuge (Area of Rescue Assistance) Emergency Communications Systems.

A.24.5.3 "Areas of refuge" or "areas of rescue assistance" are areas that have direct access to an exit, where people who are unable to use stairs can remain temporarily in safety to await further instructions or assistance during emergency evacuation or other emergency situation. It is, therefore, important that a method to communicate between that remote location and a central control point where appropriate action for assistance can be initiated.

24.5.3.1* Where required by the building code in force, an area of rescue assistance two-way emergency communications system shall be installed in accordance with 24.5.3.

A.24.5.3.1 Generally, the building code or engineer specification will provide the specifics on the required locations of the remote area of refuge (area of rescue assistance) stations, as well as the central control point. Requirements found in 24.5.3 should be coordinated with the requirements of the building code in force.

24.5.3.2 The area of refuge (rescue assistance) emergency communications system shall be comprised of remotely located area of refuge stations and a central control point.

24.5.3.3 The remote area of refuge stations and the central control point shall communicate with each other.

The *Life Safety Code* defines the term *area of refuge* as "an area that is either (1) a story in a building where the building is protected throughout by an approved, supervised automatic sprinkler system and has not less than two accessible rooms or spaces separated from each other by smoke-resisting partitions; or (2) a space located in a path of travel leading to a public way that is protected from the effects of fire, either by means of separation from other spaces in the same building or by virtue of location, thereby permitting a delay in egress travel from any level." The term *accessible area of refuge* is defined as "an area of refuge that complies with the accessible route requirements of ICC/ANSI A117.1, *American National Standard for Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities*."

An area of refuge has a temporary use during egress and generally serves as a staging area that provides relative safety to its occupants while potential emergencies are assessed, decisions are made, and mitigating activities are begun.

The *Life Safety Code* recognizes any floor in a building protected throughout by an approved, supervised automatic sprinkler system as an area of refuge. Because of the obvious importance of the area of refuge during a fire incident, circuits connecting the area of refuge communications system to the fire command center must be designed to withstand the attack of fire during the time that the occupants await assistance. Refer to the requirements of 24.3.6.9.1. It is also important to ensure that speakers required in the areas where remote area of refuge stations are located should be arranged to ensure that the sound pressure levels of the nearby speakers do not preclude the effective use of the refuge stations.

24.5.3.4* If the central control point is not constantly attended, it shall have a timed automatic communications capability to connect with a constantly attended monitoring location acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction where responsible personnel can initiate the appropriate response.

A.24.5.3.4 In order to ensure a timely response to a call for assistance, the call is to be forwarded to a constantly attended approved location, such as a supervising station, 911 communications center, or other monitoring location.

24.5.3.5 The physical location of the central control point shall be as designated by the building code in force or the authority having jurisdiction.

24.5.3.6 The area of refuge station shall provide for hands-free, two-way communication, provide an audible and visible signal to indicate communication has occurred and indicate to the receiver the location sending the signal.

24.5.3.7 Instructions for the use of the two-way communications system, instructions for summoning assistance via the two-way communications system, and written identification, included in braille, of the location shall be posted adjacent to the two-way communications system.

24.5.4 Elevator Emergency Communications Systems.

24.5.4.1 Elevator two-way emergency communications systems shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*.

Section 2.27.1.1 of ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators,* requires elevator communications systems as described in the following partial excerpt. There is no requirement for pathway survivability as provided in 24.3.6.10; however, if the elevator is going to be used for emergency occupant controlled evacuation in accordance with the *Life Safety Code*, one should consider ensuring all power and communications are served using survivable methods.

2.27.1.1 Emergency Communications

2.27.1.1.1 A two-way communications means between the car and a location staffed by authorized personnel shall be provided.

2.27.1.1.2

(a) Two-way communications shall be directed to a location(s) staffed by authorized personnel who can take appropriate action.
(b) If the call is not acknowledged [2.27.1.1.3(c)] within 45 s, the call shall be automatically directed to an alternate on- or off-site location.

When the elevator traverses more than 60 ft (18 m), ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators,* requires a two-way communications system as follows:

2.27.1.1.4 Where the elevator rise is 18 m (60 ft) or more, a two-way voice communication means within the building accessible to emergency personnel shall be provided and comply with the following requirements:

(a) The means shall enable emergency personnel within the building to establish two-way voice communications to each car individually. Two-way voice communication shall be established without any intentional delay and shall not require intervention by a person within the car. The means shall override communications to outside of the building.
(b) Two-way voice communications, once established, shall be disconnected only when emergency personnel outside the car terminates the call.
(c) Once the two-way voice communication has been established, the visual indication [see 2.27.1.1.3(c)] within the car shall illuminate. The visual indication shall be extinguished when the two-way communication is terminated.
(d) Operating instructions shall be incorporated with or adjacent to the two-way voice communication outside the car. Instructions shall conform to 2.27.7.3.

24.5.4.2 Communication shall be provided for the lobbies where the elevators are used for occupant-controlled evacuation.

24.6* Information, Command, and Control

The requirements of Section 24.6 shall apply to the communications methods and equipment used to receive and transmit information between premises sources or premises systems and the emergency command center(s).

A.24.6 An emergency communications system information, command, and control is intended to include wired or wireless networks for one- or two-way communications and/or control between a building or area and an emergency command center and could include an emergency services organization or public alarm reporting system. In a very basic configuration, a system and the receiving facility could be a supervising station system. However, there can be more complex systems that allow control of building systems and communication to building occupants from a remote location, including a municipal or other public alarm reporting command center or possibly even from a mobile command vehicle using secure communications.

24.6.1* Emergency Command Center for Emergency Communications Systems.

A.24.6.1 For the purposes of this chapter, an emergency command center is considered to be a mass notification system facility(s), with communications and control equipment serving more than one building, where responsible authorities receive information from premises sources or systems, or from (higher level) regional or national sources or systems, and then

EXHIBIT 24.17
Emergency Communications Control Unit (ECCU). (Source: Cooper Wheelock, Inc. dba Cooper Notification, Long Branch, NJ)

disseminate appropriate information to a building, multiple buildings, outside campus areas, municipalities, or a combination of these in accordance with the emergency response plan established for the premises. A mass notification system could include at least one emergency command center with optional secondary/alternate emergency command centers.

Exhibit 24.17 depicts an emergency communications control unit (ECCU) in a manned emergency command center.

24.6.1.1* The location and accessibility of the emergency command center shall be determined by the risk analysis and approved by the emergency management coordinator.

A.24.6.1.1 The location of the emergency command center should be coordinated with the first responders. The primary emergency command center should be located at the command post, emergency operations center, or some such similar location. A redundant emergency command center, if required, should be located at a physically separate location, such as a police station, fire station, or similar facility.

Generally, the primary emergency command center should be housed in a building or portion of a building separated from the rest of the facility and having a 2-hour fire-resistive-rated separation.

The mass notification system might require activation of messages originated by mobile sentries and roving patrols using wireless activation devices. In cases where clusters of facilities within the same geographical region exist, one or more regional control stations might also exercise control.

This paragraph is new to the 2013 Code and addresses the requirements for an MNS emergency command center (ECC). The command center for communications will usually reside within the emergency operations center for the facility.

24.6.1.2 The emergency command center shall contain the following:

(1) The in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system equipment including:
  (a) Fire alarm system controls
  (b) Fire alarm system annunciator
  (c) In-building fire emergency voice/alarm communications system controls
(2) Area of refuge (area of rescue assistance) emergency communications systems equipment

(3) Elevator emergency communications systems equipment
(4) Distributed recipient MNS control stations where provided
(5) Tables and chairs to accommodate emergency management staff
(6) Other equipment/information deemed necessary by the facility emergency response plan such as:
    (a) Displays indicating the location of the elevators and whether they are operational
    (b) Status indicators and controls for air-handling systems
    (c) Fire fighter's control panel for smoke control systems
    (d) Fire department communications unit
    (e) Controls for unlocking stairway doors simultaneously
    (f) Security systems
    (g) Emergency and standby power status indicators
    (h) Telephone for emergency use with controlled access to the public telephone system
    (i) Schematic building plans indicating the typical floor plan and detailing the building core, means of egress, fire protection systems, security systems, fire-fighting equipment, and fire department access
    (j) Generator supervision devices, manual start, and transfer features
    (k) Other monitoring, control, information display, and management systems associated with operation of the ECC

The list provided is certainly not all-inclusive and should be evaluated based on the stakeholder needs and the facility's risk analysis and emergency response plan.

24.6.1.3 The level of security at the emergency command center shall be defined in the emergency response plan.

The security vulnerability analysis (SVA) for the facility should also incorporate the ECC. In fact, the security of the ECC needs to be robust from incursions by any person or outside force to ensure continued operations during and after the incident.

24.6.1.4* Staffing.

A.24.6.1.4 The emergency command center should be staffed by qualified personnel who would monitor the system and take action appropriate to the emergency response plan established for the specific premises.

24.6.1.4.1 Emergency command center personnel requirements shall be defined in the documentation in the emergency response plan.

24.6.1.4.2* Individuals expected to operate an emergency communications system shall be properly trained in the purpose, functions, procedures, and anticipated actions of such systems.

A.24.6.1.4.2 It is imperative that individuals expected to initiate or deliver emergency messages be properly trained in the expected operations. Individuals must be familiar with the equipment, its location, and functions if they will be expected to react properly in an emergency. In an emergency situation. people only react according to instinct or habit. If the individual has not had proper and repeated training over the emergency expectations, they could lack the proper instinct or habit.

Reading an employee manual is generally not an effective means of training for an emergency. To be effective, training must be reinforced with multiple means such as text, audio, visual, and, most importantly, hands-on experience. Regular drills allowing for delivery of live messages indicating an emergency condition is important. Many people have a very difficult time communicating clearly and effectively in an emergency situation when they are excited or fearful. If live messages are to be effective, they must be short, to the point, and in a calm tone conveying exactly what is expected. Screaming into the microphone, for instance, would not be appropriate. Actual message content will depend on the emergency response plan in place for the respective business and the response to an unfolding event. Situations such as an intruder in a building have become more common today and, as such, should be considered and planned for.

The importance of training cannot be overemphasized, and the owner should be encouraged to conduct training on a regular basis. As stated in A.24.6.1.4.2, one cannot expect a person to read a document (such as an employee manual) and be considered as a trained individual ready for any emergency. The risk analysis and the emergency response plan will often dictate both the needs and the extent of training needed.

24.6.1.5 The emergency command center shall be capable of receiving voice messages by telephone or radio and transmitting via equipment at the emergency command center.

24.6.1.6 The emergency command center operator shall have the ability to monitor inputs/sensors and control output devices automatically, manually, or automatically with operator override.

24.6.2 Emergency Communications Control Unit (ECCU).

24.6.2.1 An emergency communications control unit (ECCU), where identified by the risk analysis, and defined in the emergency response plan, shall be provided at each emergency command center.

24.6.2.2 The system operator shall be able to send live voice signals or activate prerecorded voice messages, tones, and other signals.

24.6.2.3 The signals shall be selectable to individual buildings; zones of buildings; individual outdoor speaker arrays; zones of outdoor speaker arrays; or a building, multiple buildings, outside areas, or a combination of these, in accordance with the emergency response plan established for the premises.

24.6.2.4 The central control emergency communications control unit shall automatically or manually assign priorities to all transmitted signals.

24.6.2.5 Multiple Emergency Communications Control Units.

24.6.2.5.1 In wide-area mass notification systems, the emergency command center shall have a primary emergency communications control unit.

24.6.2.5.2 Multiple emergency communications control units shall be permitted.

24.6.3* Signals. Where identified by the risk analysis and defined in the emergency response plan, the emergency communications control unit shall be permitted to automatically or manually send different messages or signals to different locations.

A.24.6.3 Different messages or signals could be prerecorded or live voice, tones, and so forth.

24.6.4 Power Supply.

24.6.4.1 All control units shall meet the requirements of Section 10.6.

24.6.4.2 The power supply for the emergency command center shall include an uninterrupted power source with capacity sufficient to support the emergency response plan established for the specific premises.

24.6.5 Transmission. Signals shall be capable of being automatically or manually transmitted to a regional or national emergency response center or to other nearby facilities that have a need to be alerted of the emergency.

24.6.6* Other Systems. The emergency command center shall be capable of interfacing with and controlling other notification systems, such as telephone dialers, tone alert systems, computer network alerting systems, pagers, facsimile machines, textual devices, and other visual control signs, as determined by the emergency response plan.

A.24.6.6 Text notification via wireless devices and desktop computer notification could be an effective means for delivering mass notification messages to multiple recipient groups. Supplementary wireless text messaging could be effective in reaching remote personnel. Desktop notification is particularly effective when more complex information must be conveyed, and it can be a cost-effective interim solution prior to, but not in lieu of, installing an in-building mass notification system.

24.6.7 Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance. Inspection, testing, and maintenance shall be performed on a periodic basis, as described in Chapter 14, to verify and ensure proper system operation and readiness.

24.7* Performance-Based Design of Mass Notification Systems

The requirements of Section 24.7 shall apply to mass notification systems designed to recognize performance-based practices.

A.24.7 The risk analysis forms the basis for the emergency response plan.

Ensuring accurate information dissemination to the right people, at the right place, and at the right time is essential to the mitigation of threat actions and consequences. Trained personnel are charged with making such decisions in real time. Quite often, the instructions provided to personnel in affected areas pertain to acting in specific defensive ways so as not to expose them to danger. A typical example is the case of a chemical or biological agent attack wherein the right response is to relocate to secure areas within the building while sealing doors and windows and shutting down air intakes, rather than to leave the building and be exposed to the attacking agent.

In cases of bomb threats, where specific information is available, directions for evacuation are to be given; these directions require more specificity than simply the instruction "Evacuate the building." In most cases, the evacuation route might depend on threat intelligence and is likely to be different from that specified in an emergency response plan. Most people can tell where the fire comes from but do not always know where the bomb is. Automatic evacuation of a building, a common procedure in cases of a fire, is to be avoided, since it might expose personnel to even greater danger.

One of the reasons for implementing a mass notification system is the threat of terrorism. Terrorism attacks tend to be well organized and are often planned with details to inflict the widest degree of damage that is possible. The mass notification system must be designed to withstand various attack scenarios and survive even if some damage has already occurred.

Each design of a mass notification system should be specific to the nature and anticipated risks of each facility for which it is designed. Although this chapter outlines some specific criteria and/or limitations, each design should be based on recognized performance-based design practices.

The mass notification system should take into account various considerations, such as those indicated in this chapter. The particular design might or might not incorporate these provisions.

Considerations for developing a mass notification system are as follows:

(1) Specific design for the facility
(2) Account for anticipated risks

(3) Use of live and/or prerecorded messaging
(4) Interfacing with other building emergency communications systems
(5) Interfacing with wide-area notification systems
(6) Ability to control the HVAC and access control systems
(7) Access to system components
(8) Survivability of the system
(9) Communication link redundancy and security
(10) Redundancy and security of the emergency command center
(11) Ability to customize and add to prerecorded message library
(12) Messages should be tailored to the situation and audience
(13) Scripted messages for live voice messages
(14) Proper training of individuals that operate the system

24.7.1 Goals and Objectives. The performance-based design shall meet the following goals and objectives:

(1) The risk analysis, design criteria, design brief, system performance, and testing criteria are developed in accordance with this section.
(2) The system disseminates information to the target audience in an accurate and timely manner.
(3) The design and performance criteria are specific to the nature and anticipated risks of each location.
(4) The system is capable of withstanding various scenarios and survives even if some damage has already occurred.
(5) Message initiation can be effected by all responding entities responsible for the safety and security of occupants.

24.7.2* Qualifications. The performance-based design and risk analysis shall be prepared by a design professional certified or approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

A.24.7.2 The design professional(s) as part of the design team should be experienced in multiple areas considered essential for conducting the risk analysis and performance design based on the scope and size of the project. Areas of experience can include, but are not limited to:

(1) Applying recognized performance-based design concepts,
(2) Conducting hazard and operability studies
(3) Technical aspects of fire alarm system design
(4) Technical aspects of emergency communication systems
(5) Security risks and/or terrorist threats
(6) Building code requirements and limitations with respect to egress
(7) Human response to emergency conditions
(8) Development of emergency response plans
(9) Other qualifications relative to the needs of the user/risk

The design professional(s) will often be a part of the engineering design team preparing project documents and specifications. However, the design professional can work for or be obtained by a qualified installation company. The design professional should be bound by professional licensing guidelines to ensure that the risk analysis is conducted in an objective manner based on user needs and not based on product or employment.

24.7.3 Independent Review. The authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to require an approved, independent third party to review the proposed design brief and provide an evaluation of the design to the authority having jurisdiction.

24.7.4 Final Determination. The authority having jurisdiction shall make the final determination as to whether the performance objectives have been met.

24.7.5 Maintenance of Design Features. The design features required for the system to continue to meet the performance goals and objectives of this Code shall be maintained for the life of the building.

24.7.6 Performance Criteria.

24.7.6.1 General. All designs shall meet the goals and objectives specified in 24.7.1 and shall be considered equivalent, provided that the performance criterion in 24.7.6.2 is met, the design team concurs with the design, and the risk analysis considers the following factors:

(1) Number of persons to be notified
(2) Occupancy characteristics
(3) Anticipated threat
(4) Staff capabilities
(5) Coordination with the emergency response plan

24.7.6.2 Performance Criterion. The performance criterion shall include timely and accurate notification of all persons within the boundaries of the mass notification system in a medium to which they can respond when given directions by responding entities.

24.7.6.3* Design Team. The design team shall be comprised of the design professional, the owner or owner's representative, representatives of the authority having jurisdiction, and representatives of the responding entities.

A.24.7.6.3 Communication and coordination between and among the various members of the design team is an important element to achieving the goals for performance of the system.

24.7.6.4 Risk Analysis. The design of the mass notification system shall be based upon a risk analysis prepared in accordance with 24.3.11 specific to the nature and anticipated risks of each facility for which it is designed.

24.7.6.5 Operational Status and System Effectiveness. The performance of the system shall reflect the documented performance and reliability of the components of those systems or features, unless design specifications are incorporated to modify the expected performance.

24.7.6.5.1 The inclusion of trained employees as part of the mass notification system shall be identified and documented.

24.7.6.5.2 Emergency Response Personnel. The design shall consider the characteristics or other conditions related to the availability, speed of response, effectiveness, roles, and other characteristics of emergency response personnel.

24.7.6.6* Design Brief. The design of the mass notification system shall include the preparation of a design brief that is prepared utilizing recognized performance-based design practices.

A.24.7.6.6 The *Guide to Performance Based Design*, published by the Society of Fire Protection Engineers, provides guidance on the elements of a design brief.

24.7.6.6.1 Design specifications and briefs used in the performance-based design shall be clearly stated and shown to be realistic and sustainable.

24.7.6.6.2 Specific testing requirements that are necessary to maintain reliable performance shall be stated in the design brief.

24.8 Documentation

24.8.1 New Systems. Documentation requirements for new emergency communications systems shall comply with Sections 7.3 through 7.8 in addition to the minimum requirements of Section 7.2.

24.8.2* Existing Systems. The documentation that shall be provided for all additions or alterations to existing emergency communications systems shall be at the direction of the authority having jurisdiction.

A.24.8.2 The minimum documentation requirements of 24.8.1 should be used as a guide to include sufficient documentation depending on the size and complexity of the additions or modifications.

24.8.3 Owner's Manual. For new emergency communications systems, an owner's manual shall be provided and shall contain the following documentation:

(1) Detailed narrative description of the system inputs, evacuation signaling, ancillary functions, annunciation, intended sequence of operations, expansion capability, application considerations, and limitations
(2) Written sequence of operation for the system including an operational input/output matrix
(3) Operator instructions for basic system operations, including alarm acknowledgment, system reset, interpretation of system output (LEDs, CRT display, and printout), operation of manual evacuation signaling and ancillary function controls, and change of printer paper
(4) Detailed description of routine maintenance and testing as required and recommended and as would be provided under a maintenance contract, including testing and maintenance instructions for each type of device installed, which includes the following:
    (a) Listing of the individual system components that require periodic testing and maintenance
    (b) Step-by-step instructions detailing the requisite testing and maintenance procedures, and the intervals at which these procedures shall be performed, for each type of device installed
    (c) Schedule that correlates the testing and maintenance procedures that are required by this section
(5) Service directory, including a list of names and telephone numbers of those who provide service for the system

References Cited in Commentary

ANSI/ASME A17.1a/CSA B44a, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators,* 2010, American National Standards Institute, Inc., New York, NY.

ANSI/UL 2572, *Standard for Mass Notification Systems,* 2011, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL.

ANSI/UL 1638, *Standard for Visual Signaling Appliances – Private Mode Emergency and General Utility Signaling,* 2001, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL.

EIA Tr 41.3, *Telephones*, Electronic Industries Alliance, Arlington, VA, *www.eia.org*.

FCC Code of Federal Regulations, Title 47, Subpart F, Section 1.917, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC.

ICC/ANSI A117.1, *American National Standard for Accessible and Usable Buildings and Facilities,* 2009, International Code Council, Falls Church, VA.

Kuligowski, Erica D., Gwynne, Steven M. V., Butler, Kathryn M., Hoskins, Bryan L., and Sandler, Carolyn R., *Developing Emergency Communication Strategies for Buildings, NIST Technical Note 177,* National Institute of Standards and Technology, Gaithersburg, MD, 2012.
NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*, 2013 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.
NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code®*, 2011 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.
NFPA *101®*, *Life Safety Code®*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.
NFPA 1600®, *Standard on Disaster/Emergency Management and Business Continuity Programs*, 2010 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.
NFPA 1620, *Standard for Pre-Incident Planning,* 2010 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.
United Facilities Criteria (UFC) 4-021-01, *Design and O&M: Mass Notification Systems,* 9 April 2008, U.S. Department of Defense, Washington, DC.

Reserved Chapter

In the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72*®, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, Chapter 25 is reserved for future use.

CHAPTER

26

Supervising Station Alarm Systems

Chapter 26 presents the requirements for three supervising station services: central station, proprietary station, and remote station. It also presents the requirements for various transmission technologies.

The Technical Committee on Supervising Station Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems has made several minor editorial changes to the text of Chapter 26. These changes amplify, clarify, or simplify the text without substantially modifying the intent of the requirements.

In addition to these minor changes, the technical committee has made a few significant changes. The following list is a summary of significant changes to the chapter on supervising station alarm systems in the 2013 edition:

- New 26.2.2 and 26.2.3 allowance for verification of alarm signals before retransmission to the communications center to reduce unnecessary responses to nuisance alarms
- New 26.2.5 requiring reporting of all restoral signals to the supervising station
- New 26.2.8 allowances for signal processing equipment installed in controlled environments
- Revised 26.6.3 clarifying application of requirements for performance-based and prescriptive-based technologies
- Revised 26.6.3.1.5 and 26.6.3.1.6 updating path supervision when one or multiple paths are used
- Revised 26.6.3.1.15 updating secondary power requirements for shared on-premises communications equipment
- Changes to 26.6.3.2 requirements for DACS to reduce all 24-hour test intervals to 6 hours, and to permit one connection to the public switched telephone network (PSTN), requiring an alternate technology for the secondary path
- Deletion of the communications methods section on digital alarm radio systems (DARS), because the technology has been superseded by modern wireless IP networks and has no existing or anticipated uses
- New A.26.6.2.3 and A.26.6.3.1 describing the communications cloud and listing examples of technologies meeting the performance-based requirements of 26.6.3.1

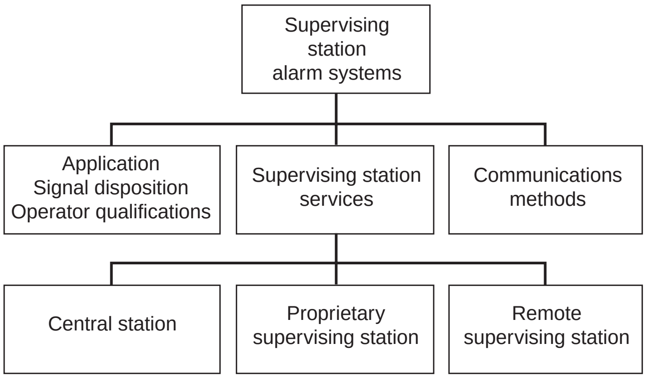
26.1* Application

The performance, installation, and operation of alarm systems at a continuously attended supervising station and between the protected premises and the continuously attended supervising station shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

Chapter 26 of the Code covers the requirements for the connection of a protected premises fire alarm system to and monitoring by a continuously attended supervising station. The chapter also covers the installation of supervising station transmitters at the protected premises where those transmitters connect to alarm and supervisory initiating devices. Such an installation often occurs where the particular protected premises does not require notification appliances but does require that initiating devices transmit signals to a supervising station. This supervising station may be either a central station, a proprietary supervising station, or a remote supervising station. See Exhibit 26.1 for an illustration of the organization of Chapter 26.

EXHIBIT 26.1

Organization of Chapter 26. (Source: Dean K. Wilson, P.E., Erie, PA)



A.26.1 Table A.26.1 provides a tool for users of the Code to easily and systematically look up requirements for protected premises, central station service, remote supervising station, and proprietary supervising station alarm systems.

TABLE A.26.1 *Alarm System Performance Criteria*

Attribute	*Protected Premises Fire Alarm System*	*Central Station Service Alarm System*	*Remote Supervising Station Alarm System*	*Proprietary Supervising Station Alarm System*
Applicability	All fire alarm systems	Supervising station service provided by a prime contractor. There is a subscriber *(26.3.2, 26.3.3, and 26.3.4)*.	Where central station service is neither required nor elected, properties under various ownership monitored by a remote supervising station *(26.5.1.1 and 26.5.1.2)*	Supervising station monitoring contiguous or noncontiguous properties under one ownership and responsible to the owner of the protected property *(26.4.2.1 and 26.4.2.2)*
Listing	Equipment listed for the use intended *(10.3)*	Equipment listed for the use intended *(10.3)*. Compliance documentation *(26.3.4)*.	Equipment listed for use intended *(10.3)*	Equipment listed for use intended *(10.3)*
Design	According to Code by experienced persons *(10.5.1)*	According to Code by experienced persons *(10.5.1)*	According to Code by experienced persons *(10.5.1)*	According to Code by experienced persons *(10.5.1)*
Compatibility	Detector devices pulling power from initiating or signaling circuits listed for control unit *(10.3.3)*	Detector devices pulling power from initiating or signaling circuits listed for control unit *(10.3.3)*	Detector devices pulling power from initiating or signaling circuits listed for control unit *(10.3.3)*	Detector devices pulling power from initiating or signaling circuits listed for control unit *(10.3.3)*

TABLE A.26.1 *Continued*

Attribute	***Protected Premises Fire Alarm System***	***Central Station Service Alarm System***	***Remote Supervising Station Alarm System***	***Proprietary Supervising Station Alarm System***
Performance and limitations	85% and 110% of the nameplate rated input voltage, 32°F (0°C) and 120°F (49°C) ambient temperature, 85% relative humidity at 85°F (29.4°C) *(10.3.5)*	85% and 110% of the nameplate rated input voltage, 32°F (0°C) and 120°F (49°C) ambient temperature, 85% relative humidity at 85°F (29.4°C) *(10.3.5)*	85% and 110% of the nameplate rated input voltage, 32°F (0°C) and 120°F (49°C) ambient temperature, 85% relative humidity at 85°F (29.4°C) *(10.3.5)*	85% and 110% of the nameplate rated input voltage, 32°F (0°C) and 120°F (49°C) ambient temperature, 85% relative humidity at 85°F (29.4°C) *(10.3.5)*
Documentation	Authority having jurisdiction notified of new or changed specifications, wiring diagrams, battery calculations, floor plans. Statement from contractor that system meets manufacturer's published instructions and NFPA requirements *(7.5.2)*. Record of completion *(7.5.6).* Results of evaluation required in 23.4.3.3.	Authority having jurisdiction notified of new or changed specifications, wiring diagrams, battery calculations, floor plans. Statement from contractor that system meets manufacturer's published instructions and NFPA requirements *(7.5.2)*. Record of completion *(7.5.6).* Results of evaluation required in 23.4.3.3.	Authority having jurisdiction notified of new or changed specifications, wiring diagrams, battery calculations, floor plans. Statement from contractor that system meets manufacturer's published instructions and NFPA requirements *(7.5.2)*. Record of completion *(7.5.6).* Results of evaluation required in 23.4.3.3.	Authority having jurisdiction notified of new or changed specifications, wiring diagrams, battery calculations, floor plans. Statement from contractor that system meets manufacturer's published instructions and NFPA requirements *(7.5.2)*. Record of completion *(7.5.6).* Results of evaluation required in 23.4.3.3.
Supervising station facilities	None	UL 827-compliant for the supervising station and any subsidiary station *(26.3.5.1 and 26.3.5.2)*	Communications centers or other location acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction *(26.5.3)*	Fire-resistive, detached building or cut-off room not near or exposed to hazards. Access restricted, NFPA 10, 26-hour emergency lighting *(26.4.3).*
Testing and maintenance	Chapter 14	Chapter 14. Pass code must be provided to place system into test mode *(26.3.8.5.6).*	Chapter 14	Chapter 14
Runner service	No	Yes Alarm — arrive at the protected premises within 2 hours where equipment needs to be reset. Guard's tour — 30 minutes. Supervisory — 2 hours. Trouble — 4 hours. *(26.3.8)*	No	Yes Alarm — arrive at the protected premises within 2 hours where equipment needs to be reset. Guard's tour — 30 minutes. Supervisory— 2 hours. Trouble — 4 hours. *(26.4.6.6)*
Operations and management requirements	None	Prime contractor provides all elements of central station service under a variety of contractual arrangements *(26.3.2)*	None	Supervising station is under same ownership and management responsibility as premises being supervised

(*continues*)

TABLE A.26.1 Continued

Attribute	*Protected Premises Fire Alarm System*	*Central Station Service Alarm System*	*Remote Supervising Station Alarm System*	*Proprietary Supervising Station Alarm System*
Staff	None	Minimum of two persons on duty at supervising station. Operation and supervision primary task *(26.3.7).*	Minimum of two persons on duty at supervising station at all times. Other duties permitted per the authority having jurisdiction *(26.5.5).*	Two operators of which one may be the runner. When runner is not in attendance at station, time between contact not to exceed 15 minutes. Primary duties are monitoring alarms and operations of station *(26.4.5).*
Monitor supervisory signals	Control unit and command center *(10.14.1 and 10.14.2)*	Control unit, command center, and central station *(10.14.1 and 10.14.2)*	Control unit, command center, and remote supervising station *(10.14.1 and 10.14.2)*	Control unit, command center, and proprietary supervising station *(10.14.1 and 10.14.2)*
Retransmission of signals	None	Alarm to public service communications center and subscriber. Supervisory, trouble, and guard service to designated personnel *(26.3.8).*	Alarm to public service communications center when monitored privately. Supervisory and trouble signals to owner's designated representative *(26.5.6).*	Alarm to public service communications center and plant brigade. Supervisory, trouble, and guard service to designated personnel *(26.4.6.6).*
Retransmission time	None	Alarm — immediate. Supervisory — immediate. Guard's tour supervisory — without unreasonable delay. Trouble — immediate. *(26.3.8)*	Alarm — immediate. Supervisory — immediate. Trouble — immediate. *(26.5.6)*	Alarm — immediate. Supervisory — immediate. Guard's tour supervisory — at once. Trouble — immediate. *(26.4.6.6)*
Records	Current year and 1 year after *(7.7.1)*	Complete records of all signals received must be retained for at least 1 year. Reports provided of signals received to authority having jurisdiction in a form it finds acceptable *(10.3.9).*	At least 1 year *(26.5.7.1).*	Complete records of all signals received shall be retained for at least 1 year. Reports provided of signals received to authority having jurisdiction in a form it finds acceptable *(26.4.7).*

Table A.26.1 compares the various performance characteristics of different types of facility alarm systems.

26.1.1* Where any system regulated by this Code sends signals to a supervising station, the entire system shall become a supervising station alarm system.

FAQ

When an alarm system at a protected premises transmits a signal to a supervising station, what designation does the system take?

Once an alarm system connects to a supervising station, the entire alarm system becomes a supervising station alarm system. Prior to the combination of all NFPA signaling standards into the *National Fire Alarm Code* in 1993, users and authorities having jurisdiction could classify each type of system by virtue of a separate and distinct signaling standard. After the combination, the defining of system types installed in a protected building became somewhat less clear. Some users and some authorities having jurisdiction thought that only the part of the system that actually connected to or interfaced with the supervising station comprised the supervising station alarm system. Subsection 26.1.1 clarifies that once any alarm system regulated by this Code connects to a supervising station, the *entire system* becomes a supervising station alarm system.

A.26.1.1 Supervising station alarm systems include the equipment at the protected premises as well as the equipment at the supervising station itself. While the operational requirements relating to the signals sent off-premises fall under the scope of Chapter 26, the requirements of Chapter 23 also apply. For example, for protected premises fire alarm systems, refer to Figure A.26.1.1.

The example in Figure A.26.1.1 correlates requirements between the chapter on protected premises fire alarm systems and the chapter on supervising station alarm systems. The figure clearly illustrates that all the components and subsystems in either arrangement constitute a supervising station alarm system.

Figure A.26.1.1 specifically shows the responsibility of each of the two chapters for the two common arrangements of fire alarm systems transmitting from a protected premises to a supervising station. In the first arrangement, the fire alarm system master control unit connects to a supervising station transmitter at the protected premises that, in turn, transmits either to an off-site supervising station or to a supervising station located at some other location on the same site. In the second arrangement, the fire alarm system master control unit is co-located with the supervising station at the protected premises.

26.1.2 The requirements of Chapters 7, 10, 12, 14, and 23 shall also apply unless they are in conflict with this chapter.

26.1.3 The requirements of this chapter shall not apply to Chapter 29 unless otherwise noted.

Subsections 26.1.2 and 26.1.3 set the parameters for the other portions of the Code that apply to supervising station alarm systems. In 26.1.2, the requirements of Chapters 7, 10, 12, 14, and 23 apply unless they conflict with the requirements of Chapter 26. In 26.1.3, the requirements of Chapter 26 apply only to household fire alarm systems as directed by Chapter 29. The requirements of Chapter 26 apply to commercial and industrial facilities where an owner or authority having jurisdiction requires a significantly higher level of service than would be necessary for a dwelling unit.

26.2 General

26.2.1* Alarm Signal Disposition. Except as permitted by 26.2.2 and 29.7.9.2, all fire alarm signals received by a supervising station shall be immediately retransmitted to the communications center.

While this subsection continues to emphasize the importance of taking action when a supervising station receives fire alarm signals from a protected building, additional text in the 2013 edition permits screening alarm signals to minimize responses to false alarms under the specific set of circumstances described in 26.2.2 and 26.2.3. A specific exception to the requirement to immediately retransmit fire alarm signals already existed for household fire alarm systems (see 29.7.9.2) and was carried forward in the current Code.

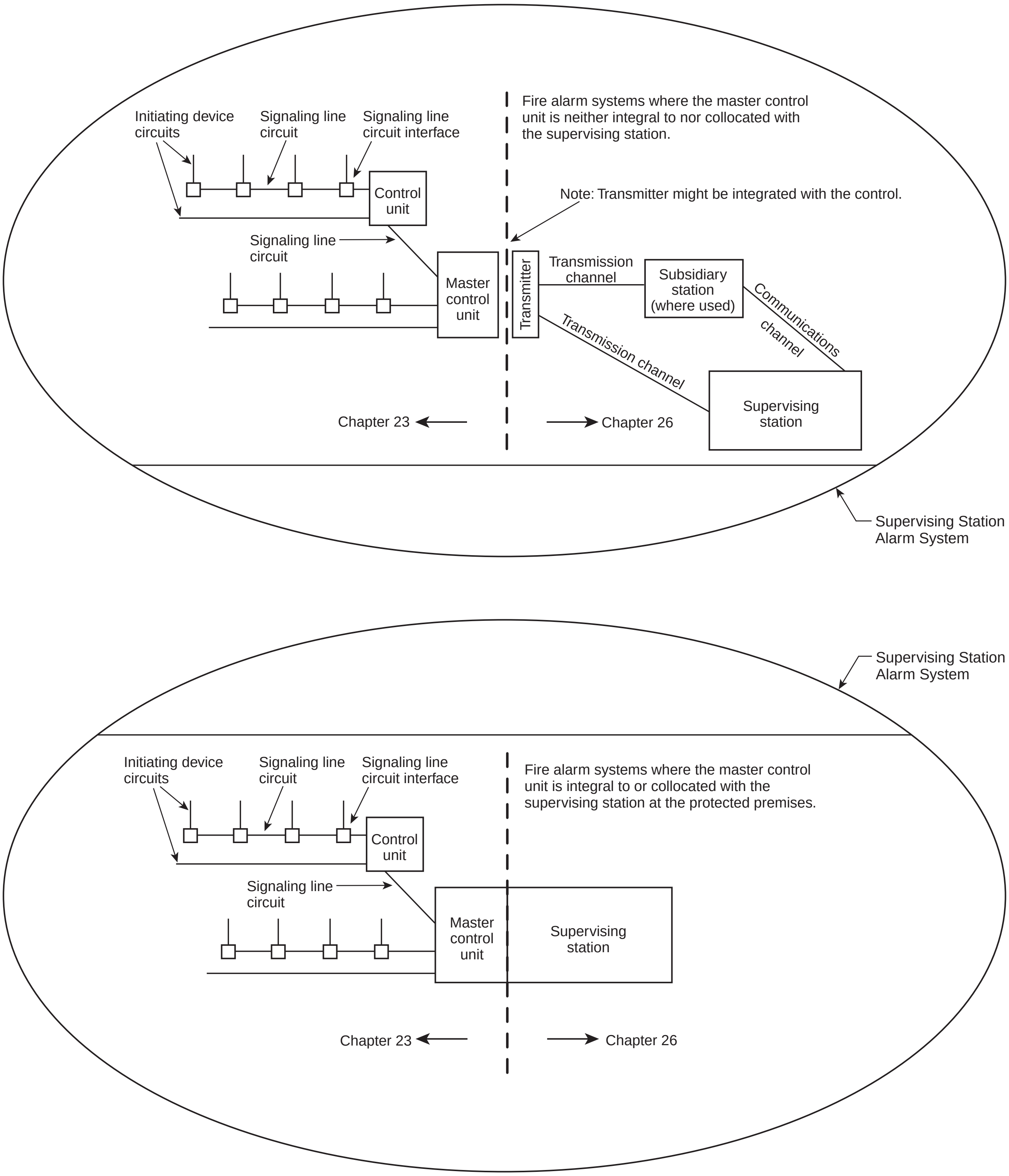


FIGURE A.26.1.1 Supervising Station Alarm System.

A.26.2.1 The term *immediately* in this context is intended to mean "without unreasonable delay." Routine handling should take a maximum of 90 seconds from receipt of an alarm signal.

This explanatory annex material parallels the text of A.26.3.8.1.2(1). This text was added to the beginning of the chapter so that it applies to all types of supervising stations.

26.2.2 Alarm Signal Preverification.

As indicated in 26.2.2, when a supervising station is directed by the responsible fire department to verify fire alarm signals before retransmitting them to the communications center, the supervising station is required instead to immediately notify the communications center that an unverified alarm signal has been received and verification is currently being attempted. The communications center may choose to use this early warning to alert first responders to prepare for dispatch should the fire alarm be subsequently verified.

26.2.2.1 Where alarm signal verification is required by the responsible fire department, the supervising station shall immediately notify the communications center that a fire alarm signal has been received and verification is in process.

26.2.2.2 Verification shall meet the requirements of 26.2.3.

26.2.3 Alarm Signal Verification.

26.2.3.1 For applications other than those addressed under the scope of 29.7.9.2, supervising station personnel shall attempt to verify alarm signals prior to reporting them to the communication center where all the following conditions exist:

(1)* Alarm signal verification is required by the responsible fire department for a specific protected premises.
(2) Documentation of the requirement for alarm signal verification is provided by the responsible fire department to the supervising station and the protected premises.
(3) If the requirement for verification changes, the responsible fire department shall notify the supervising station and the protected premises.
(4)* The verification process does not take longer than 90 seconds from the time the alarm signal is received at the supervising station until the time that retransmission of the verified alarm signal is initiated.
(5) Verification of the alarm signal is received only from authorized personnel within the protected premises.
(6)* Verified alarm signals are immediately retransmitted to the communications center and include information that the signal was verified at the protected premises to be an emergency.
(7)* Alarm signals where verification is not conclusive are immediately retransmitted to the communications center.
(8) Alarm signals that are verified as nuisance alarms are not dispatched and are handled in accordance with 26.2.3.2.

A.26.2.3.1(1) It is recognized that individual fire departments will have preference on whether verification is used in certain occupancies based on many variables such as department-specific staffing or response protocols, occupancy staffing, and occupancy risk. This section allows the fire authority to specifically select those occupancies where verification is allowed.

A.26.2.3.1(4) The 90-second allowance for a supervising station to call the protected premise to verify the validity of the received alarm signal is independent from the time allowed for the supervising station to initiate the retransmission to the communications center.

A.26.2.3.1(6) It is important to notify the communications center that an alarm signal was verified and that fire conditions exist at the protected premises or that some other type of an emergency exists. Fire departments typically have a substantially larger response for confirmed structure fires.

A.26.2.3.1(7) If an alarm signal cannot be reliably confirmed as a nuisance alarm, then it should be immediately retransmitted. This might include situations where no contact is made within the premises, or where the persons within the premises cannot verify the source of the alarm within the allowable 90 seconds, or other related scenarios.

26.2.3.2* Alarm signals not reported to the communications center shall be reported to the responsible fire department in a manner and at a frequency specified by the responsible fire department.

A.26.2.3.2 When verification of a fire alarm signal results in a signal not being reported to the communications center, it is important that fire department personnel be made aware of the alarm and the reason for nondispatch so that problematic systems can be identified.

Since actual alarm signals will be reported to the communications center whether they are verified or not, the purpose of verification is to identify nuisance alarms in order to reduce unnecessary dispatches. To prevent the serious consequences and potential liabilities of failing to report an actual emergency to the communications center due to faulty verification, these requirements prescribe a strict verification protocol. In fact, no verification is permitted at all unless requested in writing by the responsible fire authority on a premises-by-premises basis. Where permitted, one or more persons from the protected premises must be prearranged as authorized to provide verification. When an alarm signal is received, verification will only be accepted from those personnel and only if they are currently within the protected premises.

26.2.4 Alarm Signal Content. Where required by the enforcing authority, governing laws, codes, or standards, alarm signals transmitted to a supervising station shall be by addressable device or zone identification.

New to the 2013 edition, this subsection defers to another authority's requirement for alarm signals to include detailed information about the alarm, either at the initiating device level for addressable systems or at the zone level for conventional systems. This requirement does not apply to trouble or supervisory signals.

26.2.5 Restoral Signals.

26.2.5.1 All supervising station fire alarm systems shall be programmed to report restoral signals to the supervising station of all alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals upon restoration of the activation.

Other parts of Chapter 26 include requirements for the restoration of activated systems, including notification, response, and the reporting of extended outages. This new 2013 requirement for the transmission of restoral signals is a prerequisite for the supervising stations to meet those other requirements.

26.2.5.2* Effective January 1, 2014, any signal received by the supervising station that has not restored to normal condition within 24 hours of initial receipt shall be redisplayed to an operator as a nonrestored signal and shall be reported to the subscriber.

Exception: This provision shall not apply to scheduled impairments.

A.26.2.5.2 Scheduled impairments include interruptions caused by construction or building damage. In addition, natural disasters can result in long-term system impairments that are not intended to require 24-hour reminders.

This new requirement in the 2013 edition addresses problem systems. It calls for redisplay of nonrestored signals to cause the supervising station operator to remind the premises owner to take timely corrective action and not let systems remain in a silenced trouble state indefinitely. The exception and annex material make it clear that planned building construction for renovations or prolonged repairs due to natural disasters do not require this reminder.

26.2.6 Multiple Buildings. For multiple building premises, the requirements of 10.18.5.3 shall apply to the alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals transmitted to the supervising station.

This subsection was relocated from Section 26.6, Communications Methods for Supervising Station Alarm Systems. It requires identification of the separate buildings for supervising station systems serving more than one building.

26.2.7* Change of Service.

A.26.2.7 Changing where signals go from an existing to a new or different supervising station facility is sometimes done simply by changing a call-forward phone number. Or, within a supervising station, a new receiving computer and software can be constructed and lines changed over. Often, the account data are manually entered into the new system. Sometimes the data are transferred electronically. Errors can be made, causing the supervising station to get undefined alarms or incorrect account data, resulting in incorrect response by the supervising station. When such changes are made, the only viable way to ensure correct operation is to conduct an end-to-end test.

26.2.7.1 Supervising station customers or clients and the authority having jurisdiction shall be notified in writing within 30 days of any scheduled change in service that results in signals from the client's property being handled by a different supervising station.

FAQ Why is the notification of changes in service for supervising station customers important?

These requirements emphasize the importance of notifying the customer of changes to the service provided by a supervising station. Such changes often occur when one supervising station buys the client accounts of another supervising station. Commonly, instead of visiting each customer's protected building to reprogram the supervising station transmitter, the supervising station will call-forward the receiving telephone line (number) to a new receiving telephone line (number). This action may make the change in receiving location completely transparent to the customer. To maintain the effective integrity of the quality of the service provided, the customer must know whenever changes occur.

26.2.7.2 Where the supervising station provides the required testing and where service changes covered by 26.2.7.1 occur, the supervising station shall test all zones, points, and signals from each affected property in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 14.

26.2.7.3 Where the supervising station does not provide the required testing and where service changes covered by 26.2.7.1 occur, the supervising station shall notify the prime contractor of the need to test all zones, points, and signals from each affected property in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 14.

26.2.7.4 The supervising station shall notify the authority having jurisdiction prior to terminating service.

26.2.8 Supervising Station Signal Processing Equipment. Signal processing equipment located at the supervising station listed to ANSI/UL 60950, *Information Technology Equipment — Part 1: General Requirements*, and used for computer-aided alarm and supervisory signal processing shall not be required to comply with 10.3.5 provided it is installed and operated conforming to ANSI/UL 1981, *Central Station Automation Systems*, within an environment that is maintained at a level within the temperature, humidity, and voltage rating range of the equipment, and the equipment manufacturer's published instructions are available for examination.

This new subsection in the 2013 edition of the Code relieves listed signal processing equipment located at the supervising station such as routers, switches, modems, and personal computers from having to operate under the conditions of extended temperature, humidity, and voltage variations specified in 10.3.5 if the environment in which they are operating is controlled to limit the temperature, humidity, and voltage variations as prescribed in ANSI/UL1981, *Standard for Central Station Automation Systems,* to levels within the manufacturer's marked ratings.

26.2.9 Qualification of Supervising Station Operators. Supervising station operators shall be qualified in accordance with the requirements of 10.5.4.

This requirement, added in the 2010 edition of the Code, specifies the qualifications and competence of the operators at the supervising station. It makes specific reference to the requirements in 10.5.4, which include the following:

- All operators in the supervising station must demonstrate competence in all tasks required of them by means of one or more of the following:
  - Be certified by the manufacturer of the receiving system or equipment or the alarm-monitoring automation system
  - Be certified by an organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction
  - Be licensed or certified by a state or local authority
  - Have other training or certification approved by the authority having jurisdiction
- All operators in the supervising station must present evidence of qualifications and/or certification when requested by the authority having jurisdiction.
- A license or qualification listing must be current in accordance with the requirements of the issuing authority or organization.
- Operator trainees must be under the direct supervision of a qualified operator until each becomes personally qualified.

26.3 Central Station Service Alarm Systems

Alarm systems used to provide central station service shall comply with the general requirements and the use requirements of Section 26.3.

26.3.1 System Scope. Alarm systems for central station service shall include the central station physical plant, exterior communications channels, subsidiary stations, and alarm and signaling equipment located at the protected premises.

Central station alarm systems offer service that integrates the overall protection design of a facility.

Protection, at both the most complex and the simplest facilities, must include a carefully developed strategy. A holistic approach usually proves best. This approach emphasizes the organic or functional relationship between parts and the whole. In other words, a holistic approach to protection asserts that the effectiveness of the strategy depends on a series of interconnected and interrelated protection features. These features must function as a complete entity. They cannot work effectively when applied only as individual components.

Some of these features, such as automatic sprinkler systems, fire extinguishers, and special hazard fire extinguishing or suppression systems, provide active physical protection. Other features, such as fire walls, fire barriers, fire doors, and other construction features, provide passive protection. Still other features, such as the central station alarm system, provide supervision and feedback by sensing conditions and reporting those conditions. Last, some features provide management control of the human response to fire or other emergency conditions. Every element is critical. Leaving out an element significantly reduces the overall effectiveness of the protection for the facility.

When selecting the elements to include, the design professional must begin by conducting a needs assessment to determine the overall site-specific protection goals for the facility. The designer must analyze and define goals for life safety, property protection, mission continuity, heritage preservation, and environmental protection.

Once the designer, working with the property owner and other stakeholders, has defined the goals, he or she must determine the objectives of each element of the overall protection system. For example, if the occupants of a building cannot move freely on their own to escape a fire or other emergency condition, a central station alarm system can summon aid. This aid could come from the public fire department, from a private emergency response team, or from some other appropriately trained and equipped emergency responders.

At a facility with complex property protection issues, the protection must provide a means of preserving the value that the physical property represents. The overall system must meet objectives that provide the necessary level of protection.

Finally, the design professional must choose some way to oversee or manage the interrelationship between the individual elements of facility protection. The design professional must choose the tool that management will use to help ensure that the protection systems will work as intended.

A fire alarm system installed throughout a facility and connected to a supervising station operated by a listed central station operating company provides one of the most effective tools for managing the protection at a facility. For example, property insurance companies have long required high-value industrial and commercial facilities to have at least one of the following: continuous occupancy in all areas of the facility, recorded guard patrol tours in all unoccupied areas, or a complete central station alarm system.

See Exhibit 26.2 for an example of a central station and Exhibit 26.3 for methods of contracting central station service.

26.3.2* Service Scope. Section 26.3 shall apply to central station service, which consists of the following elements:

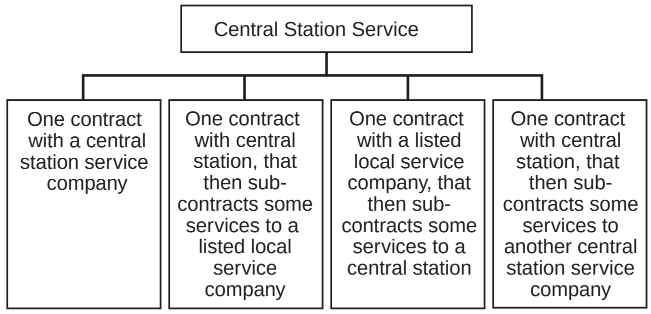
(1) Installation of alarm transmitters
(2) Alarm, guard, supervisory, and trouble signal monitoring
(3) Retransmission
(4) Associated record keeping and reporting
(5) Testing and maintenance
(6) Runner service

A.26.3.2 There are related types of contract service that often are provided from, or controlled by, a central station but that are neither anticipated by, nor consistent with, the provisions of

EXHIBIT 26.2

Central Station with Display in Background Indicating Signal Traffic and Availability to Process Incoming Signals. (Source: SimplexGrinnell, Westminster, MA)

EXHIBIT 26.3



Subscriber Contracts for Central Station Services.

26.3.2. Although 26.3.2 does not preclude such arrangements, a central station company is expected to recognize, provide for, and preserve the reliability, adequacy, and integrity of those supervisory and alarm services intended to be in accordance with the provisions of 26.3.2.

26.3.3 Contract Requirements. The central station service elements shall be provided under contract to a subscriber by one of the following:

(1) A listed central station that provides all of the elements of central station service with its own facilities and personnel.
(2) A listed central station that provides, as a minimum, the signal monitoring, retransmission, and associated record keeping and reporting with its own facilities and personnel and shall be permitted to subcontract all or any part of the installation, testing, and maintenance and runner service.
(3) A listed alarm service–local company that provides the installation, testing, and maintenance with its own facilities and personnel and that subcontracts the monitoring, retransmission, and associated record keeping and reporting to a listed central station with the required runner service provided by the listed alarm service–local company with its own personnel or the listed central station with its own personnel.
(4) A listed central station that provides the installation, testing, and maintenance with its own facilities and personnel and that subcontracts the monitoring, retransmission, and associated record keeping and reporting to another listed central station with the required runner service provided by either central station.

Central station service consists of six distinct elements: (1) installation, (2) testing and maintenance, and (3) runner service, all at the protected premises; and, at the supervising station, (4) monitoring of signals from the protected premises, (5) retransmission of signals, and (6) record keeping. Chapter 26 recognizes the following four ways of providing central station service:

1. A listed central station can provide all six elements.
2. A listed central station can provide the three elements at the supervising station and subcontract one or more of the three elements at the protected premises.

3. A listed alarm service–local company can provide the installation, testing, and maintenance at the protected premises and subcontract the supervising station duties to a listed central station. Either the listed alarm service–local company or the listed central station would provide the runner service.
4. A central station can provide the three elements at the protected premises and subcontract the three elements at the supervising station to another listed central station. Either listed central station would provide the runner service.

Typically, the listed central station provides the three elements at the supervising station and subcontracts one or more of the elements at the protected premises. Most commonly, the central station subcontracts part of the installation. A typical situation where subcontracting might occur includes those facilities where a sprinkler system installer, acting as a subcontractor of the listed central station operating company, installs the fire alarm and supervisory initiating devices on the sprinkler system at a protected premises.

FAQ What important distinctions are involved when true central station service is provided?

Many fire alarm system installers connect protected premises fire alarm systems to a location remote from the protected premises that monitors signals. Relatively few such arrangements meet the requirements of 26.3.2 and should not be called *central station service.* (See 26.3.4.5.) Only service that incorporates all six elements of central station service provided by listed alarm service providers that design, specify, install, test, maintain, and use the system in accordance with the requirements of 26.3.2 should be called *central station service.*

Central station alarm systems that comply with the Code offer seven important advantages over other types of alarm systems because of their unique requirements:

1. The Code requires the central station operating company to obtain listing by a testing laboratory acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. The Code, in order to meet the requirements of the *Manual of Style for NFPA Technical Committee Documents,* makes a significant effort to use generic language when making reference to the work done by a testing laboratory. The Code strives to avoid any appearance of recommending or preferring any particular testing laboratory over any other testing laboratory. Conducting laboratory tests of alarm systems and providing the results to a wide range of authorities having jurisdiction has inherent complexity. From a practical standpoint of usage, the marketplace considerations in each country have effectively limited the testing laboratories to a very small number of principal national laboratories. For example, in the United States, the vast majority of the authorities having jurisdiction accept the alarm system laboratory testing and listing of either Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL) or FM Approvals (FM).
2. The Code requires tight control over the manner in which a central station operating company provides service.
3. The Code requires the central station operating company to conspicuously indicate that the installation complies with the Code.
4. The Code requires the central station operating company to automatically record signals received from a protected premises.
5. The Code carefully states the procedures for handling the various types of signals.
6. The Code spells out the manner in which central station operating companies may use the various transmission technologies to receive signals from a protected premises.
7. The Code requires tight control over who conducts the testing and maintenance of the system.

In examining each of these advantages, the design professional will recognize that the significant challenge to life safety, the high value of the property, the critical nature of the mission, the importance of preserving heritage, or the crucial necessity of protecting the environment drives these requirements. Although every protected property could benefit from having central station service, not every property can justify the additional cost. Thus, owners normally purchase central station service only when the protection goals or the specific requirements of an authority having jurisdiction demand it.

To ensure the baseline level of quality for a central station alarm system, the Code requires a testing laboratory acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction to list both the equipment and the operating company providing the service. (See the definition of the term *listed* in 3.2.5.)

From the outset, in 10.3.1, the Code requires that alarm system service providers use only listed equipment. The listing process involves not only testing the equipment to make certain it performs properly but also inspecting the production of listed equipment to make certain the manufacturer has not changed the product after the laboratory tested it.

Listing can apply to a material or a service, which is important to note when considering the third distinct advantage of central station service. As previously stated, most authorities having jurisdiction accept the services of one or both of the UL and FM testing laboratories. Both laboratories rely on the requirements of the Code to guide their testing requirements. In addition, each laboratory has developed a performance standard for central station service — ANSI/UL 827, *Standard for Central-Station Alarm Services*, and FM Approval Standard 3011, *Central Station Service for Fire Alarms and Protective Equipment Supervision*. Representatives of the laboratory visit each central station operating company to review records of signals and to audit the personnel performing operations and service. The representatives verify the construction of the physical central station and check the equipment and the power supplies.

Both UL and FM also provide for the listing of alarm service–local companies. UL does so under the category "Protective Signaling Services-Local, Auxiliary, Remote Station, and Proprietary (UUJS)." FM offers listing under the category "Fire Alarm Service Local Company (FIRE)."

UL publishes the results of the listing process annually in the *UL Fire Protection Equipment Directory*. FM publishes the results of its listing process annually in the FM Global *Approval Guide*. Public and private authorities having jurisdiction can use these publications to determine whether a central station operating company has obtained listing.

26.3.4* Indication of Central Station Service. The prime contractor shall conspicuously indicate that the alarm system providing service at a protected premises complies with all the requirements of this Code through the use of a systematic follow-up program under the control of the organization that has listed the prime contractor.

A.26.3.4 The terms *certificated* and *placarded*, which appeared in previous editions of *NFPA 72*, were considered by some to be too specific to two listing organizations and were replaced with more generic wording. The concept of providing documentation to indicate ongoing compliance of an installed system continues to be reflected by the current language.

FAQ Does having a systematic follow-up program mean that every central station alarm system will be inspected under the program provisions?

To help ensure the inherent higher level of protection that a central station alarm system provides, 26.3.4 requires the prime contractor to indicate that the entire alarm system meets the requirements of the Code through the use of a systematic follow-up program under the control of the organization that listed the prime contractor.

This requirement does not intend that the organization providing the systematic follow-up service will actually inspect every central station alarm system. Nor does it mean that when the organization providing the systematic follow-up service does inspect a central station alarm system, it will inspect every aspect of that system. However, by providing a systematic follow-up program under the control of the organization that listed the prime contractor, the prime contractor makes provision for a potential additional level of oversight.

The requirement in 26.3.4 tends to promote and encourage installation, testing, and maintenance procedures that will help ensure the overall quality of the central station alarm system. Further, the conspicuous indication that the installation complies with all the requirements of the Code helps promote a much more determined effort to implement the requirements of the Code than might otherwise occur.

The prime contractor must conspicuously post within a stated distance of the main control unit documentation issued by the organization that listed the prime contractor.

By intent, the Code does not provide details of the process by which the listing organization provides follow-up service or issues the required documentation to the listed prime contractor. Rather, the Code leaves these details up to the procedures and practices of the listing organization.

Exhibits 26.4 through 26.6 illustrate typical documentation as issued by two organizations that list prime contractors providing central station service.

26.3.4.1 Documentation indicating Code compliance of the alarm system shall be issued by the organization that has listed the prime contractor.

26.3.4.2 The documentation shall include, at a minimum, the following information:

(1) Name of the prime contractor involved with the ongoing Code compliance of the central station service
(2)* Full description of the alarm system as installed
(3) Issue and expiration dates of the documentation
(4) Name, address, and contact information of the organization issuing the document
(5) Identification of the authority(ies) having jurisdiction for the central station service installation

A.26.3.4.2(2) The record of completion *(see Chapter 10)* can be used to fulfill this requirement.

26.3.4.3 The documentation shall be physically posted within 3 ft (1 m) of the control unit, and copies of the documentation shall be made available to the authority(ies) having jurisdiction upon request.

26.3.4.4 A central repository of issued documentation, accessible to the authority having jurisdiction, shall be maintained by the organization that has listed the prime contractor.

26.3.4.5* Alarm system service that does not comply with all the requirements of Section 26.3 shall not be designated as central station service.

A.26.3.4.5 It is the prime contractor's responsibility to remove all compliance markings (certification markings or placards) when a service contract goes into effect that conflicts in any way with the requirements of 26.3.4.

26.3.4.6* For the purpose of Section 26.3, the subscriber shall notify the prime contractor, in writing, of the identity of the authority(ies) having jurisdiction.

A.26.3.4.6 The prime contractor should be aware of statutes, public agency regulations, or certifications regarding alarm systems that might be binding on the subscriber. The prime contractor should identify for the subscriber which agencies could be an authority having

EXHIBIT 26.4

Underwriters Laboratories Inc.®

Northbrook, IL Santa Clara, CA
Melville, NY Research Triangle Park, NC

A not-for-profit organization dedicated to public safety and committed to quality service

File No S1234 CCN: UUFX
Service Center No: 1
Expires: 01/01/2011
Issued: 01/01/2006

CENTRAL STATION - FIRE
FIRE ALARM SYSTEM CERTIFICATE

(NFPA 72)

THIS CERTIFIES that the Alarm Service Company is included by Underwriters Laboratories Inc. (UL) in its Directory as qualified to use the UL Listing Mark in connection with the certificated Alarm System. This Certificate is the Alarm Service Company's representation that the Alarm System including all connecting wiring and equipment has been installed and will be maintained in compliance with requirements established by UL. This Certificate does not apply in any way to the installation of any additional signaling systems, such as fire, smoke, waterflow, burglary, holdup, medical emergency, or otherwise, that may be connected to or installed along with the Certificated Alarm System.

LIMITATION OF LIABILITY: Underwriters Laboratories Inc. makes no representations or warranties, express or implied, that the Alarm System will prevent any loss by fire, smoke, water damage, burglary, hold-up or otherwise,or that the Alarm System will in all cases provide the protection for which it is installed or intended. UL may at times conduct inspections of the Alarm Service Company including inspections of representative installations made by it. UL does not assume or undertake to discharge any liability of the Alarm Service Company or any other party. UL is not an insurer and assumes no liability which may result directly or indirectly from inspection of the equipment, failure of the equipment, failure to conduct inspections, incorrect certification, nonconformity with requirements, failure to discover nonconformity with requirements, cancellation of the Certificate or withdrawal of the Alarm Service Company from inclusion in UL's Directory prior to the expiration date appearing on this Certificate.

OPERATIONAL REQUIREMENTS: The Alarm Service Company bears the responsibility for the correctness of the installation,maintenance of the system documentation; periodic system inspection and testing, maintaining and providing any necessary repairs. All operations and maintenance shall be conducted in the manner prescribed by the NFPA standard referenced. All required service is to be provided for in an appropriate contract. System documentation is defined to include any "As Built Drawings", the records of any "Acceptance Testing", and the records of all periodic system testing and maintenance.

SYSTEM DESCRIPTION: This system is installed and operated in accordance with standard NFPA 72,2002 edition.

Area Covered: BUILDING
Authority Having Jurisdiction: ANY CITY FD
Responding Fire Department: ANY CITY FD

SYSTEM DEVIATIONS FROM REFERENCED NFPA STANDARDS
2 PULL STATIONS ARE MORE THAN 5 FEET FROM DOOR DUE TO GLASS WALL

Protected Property:
ANY BUILDING
123 OAK STREET
ANY CITY, IL 01234

Alarm Service Company:
AN ALARM COMPANY
912 MAIN STREET
ANY CITY IL 01234

SN : FC12345678

Alarm Service Company's Representative

Date

© 1999 UL

Documentation for Central Station Systems: Fire Alarm System Certificate. (Source: Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL)

jurisdiction and, if possible, advise the subscriber of any requirements or approvals being mandated by these agencies.

The subscriber has the responsibility for notifying the prime contractor of those private organizations that are being designated as an authority having jurisdiction. The subscriber also has the responsibility to notify the prime contractor of changes in the authority

EXHIBIT 26.5

Underwriters Laboratories Inc.

CENTRAL STATION - FIRE
FIRE ALARM SYSTEM CERTIFICATE DESCRIPTION

For Certificate Serial No: FC12345678

Protected Property:
ANY BUILDING
123 OAK STREET
ANY CITY, IL 01234

Alarm Service Company:
AN ALARM COMPANY
512 MAIN STREET
ANY CITY IL 01234

System Description

SYSTEM DEVIATIONS FROM REFERENCED NFPA STANDARDS

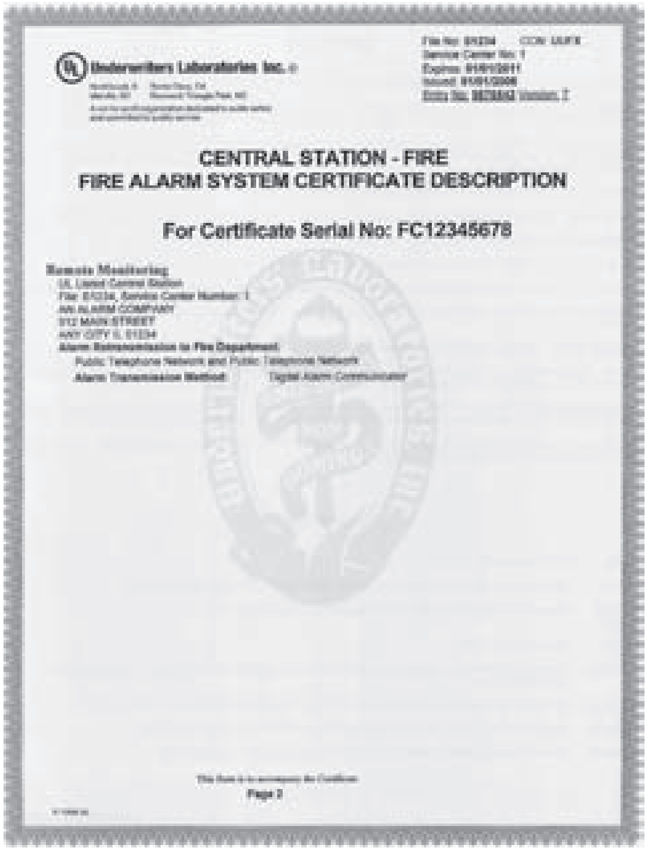
Automatic Fire Detection and Alarm Service

Sprinkler System Waterflow Alarm and Supervisory Service

Manual Fire Alarm and Guard's Tour Supervisory Service

Alarm Notification and Annunciation Devices

Control and Transmitter Unit



Underwriters Laboratories Inc.

CENTRAL STATION - FIRE
FIRE ALARM SYSTEM CERTIFICATE DESCRIPTION

For Certificate Serial No: FC12345678

Documentation for Central Station Systems: Fire Alarm System Certificate Description. (Source: Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL)

having jurisdiction, such as where there is a change in insurance companies. Although the responsibility is primarily the subscriber's, the prime contractor should also take responsibility for seeking out these private authority(ies) having jurisdiction through the subscriber. The prime contractor is responsible for maintaining current records on the authority(ies) having jurisdiction for each protected premises.

The most prevalent public agency involved as an authority having jurisdiction with regard to alarm systems is the local fire department or fire prevention bureau. These are normally city or county agencies with statutory authority, and their approval of alarm system installations might be required. At the state level, the fire marshal's office is most likely to serve as the public regulatory agency.

The most prevalent private organizations involved as authorities having jurisdiction are insurance companies. Others include insurance rating bureaus, insurance brokers and agents, and private consultants. It is important to note that these organizations have no statutory authority and become authorities having jurisdiction only when designated by the subscriber.

With both public and private concerns to satisfy, it is not uncommon to find multiple authorities having jurisdiction involved with a particular protected premises. It is necessary to identify all authorities having jurisdiction in order to obtain all the necessary approvals for a central station alarm system installation.

EXHIBIT 26.6

Documentation for Central Station Systems: Placard. (Source: FM Global Property Loss Prevention Data Sheet 5-40, Fire Alarm Systems. © 2006 FM Global. Reprinted with permission. All rights reserved.)


FIRE DEPARTMENT WILL RESPOND

TO ALARM SIGNALS UNLESS TELEPHONE NUMBER

____

CALLED BEFORE TESTS OF THIS SYSTEM ARE MADE

ALARM SERVICE BY: ____________________

TELEPHONE NUMBER: ____________________

SUPERVISING (CENTRAL) STATION: ____________________

TELEPHONE NUMBER: ____________________

CENTRAL STATION SERVICE PLACARD

This fire protection signaling system installation, all equipment and wiring plus the maintenance, testing and supervision thereof are in accordance with the central station Approval requirements of FM Approval Standard No. 3011.

FM APPROVED

PLACARD IDENTIFICATION: ____________________

EXPIRATION DATE: ____________________

PRIME CONTRACTOR:

The subscriber and the prime contractor must identify all the authorities having jurisdiction involved at the protected premises. Although this responsibility rests primarily with the subscriber, the subscriber would normally know only the private authorities having jurisdiction. From experience gained by working in a particular jurisdiction, the prime contractor would most often know any additional public authorities having jurisdiction. Thus, a joint effort most effectively resolves this important requirement.

26.3.4.7 The authority(ies) having jurisdiction identified in 26.3.4.2(5) shall be notified of expiration or cancellation by the organization that has listed the prime contractor.

26.3.4.8 The subscriber shall surrender expired or canceled documentation to the prime contractor within 30 days of the termination date.

Over the life of a central station system, someone might make a change that results in the expiration or cancellation of contracted service. In turn, that expiration or cancellation would invalidate the designation "central station service." In such a case, the organization that listed the prime contractor must notify the authority having jurisdiction, as required in 26.3.4.7.

Further, the subscriber must return the expired or cancelled documentation to the prime contractor within 30 days of the termination date.

The authority having jurisdiction should rigorously enforce this requirement, which will ensure that only those systems meeting and maintaining all the Code requirements for central station service will have this designation.

26.3.5 Facilities.

26.3.5.1 The central station building or that portion of a building occupied by a central station shall conform to the construction, fire protection, restricted access, emergency lighting, and power facilities requirements of the latest edition of ANSI/UL 827, *Standard for Central-Station Alarm Services*.

ANSI/UL 827 details protection features that help to maintain the integrity and continuity of the physical central station. In 26.3.3, the Code requires that a qualified testing laboratory acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction must list the central station and examine the protection features required by ANSI/UL 827 for compliance.

26.3.5.2 Subsidiary station buildings or those portions of buildings occupied by subsidiary stations shall conform to the construction, fire protection, restricted access, emergency lighting, and power facilities requirements of the latest edition of ANSI/UL 827, *Standard for Central-Station Alarm Services*.

The term a *subsidiary station* is defined in 3.3.282 as a normally unattended facility located remotely from the central station and linked to the central station by a communications channel. A central station may receive signals from many subscribers in a particular geographic area through one or more subsidiary stations.

FAQ What do the requirements in 26.3.5.2 serve to ensure?

The requirements detailed in 26.3.5.2 and those that follow in 26.3.5.2.1 through 26.3.5.2.8 reflect the fact that, under normal operating conditions, no one staffs a subsidiary station. Usually, a subsidiary station serves a particular geographic area. The subsidiary station concentrates signals from many protected premises and transmits those concentrated signals to a supervising station. A malfunction at a subsidiary station can substantially impair the successful transmission of signals from the properties it serves. Thus, these requirements help ensure the overall operational reliability of the subsidiary station. They also help ensure the integrity of the transmission path between the subsidiary station and the supervising station.

26.3.5.2.1 All intrusion, fire, power, and environmental control systems for subsidiary station buildings shall be monitored by the central station in accordance with 26.3.5.

One way the central station staff manages the integrity of the subsidiary station is by monitoring certain critical building systems of the subsidiary station at the central station. This action helps to ensure the operational continuity of the subsidiary station.

26.3.5.2.2 The subsidiary facility shall be inspected at least monthly by central station personnel for the purpose of verifying the operation of all supervised equipment, all telephones, all battery conditions, and all fluid levels of batteries and generators.

The central station staff also manages the integrity of the subsidiary station by inspecting it monthly. Not simply a stop-by visit, this thorough inspection verifies the continuity of the equipment, systems, and communications channels installed at the subsidiary station.

26.3.5.2.3 In the event of the failure of equipment at the subsidiary station or the communications channel to the central station, a backup shall be operational within 90 seconds.

26.3.5.2.4 With respect to 26.3.5.2.3, restoration of a failed unit shall be accomplished within 5 days.

The subsidiary station must have backup equipment, which in the event of a failure the central station must be able to place into operation within 90 seconds. A technician must repair or replace defective equipment within 5 days.

26.3.5.2.5 Each communications channel shall be continuously supervised between the subsidiary station and the central station.

The equipment connected to each communications channel between the subsidiary station and the central station must continuously monitor for channel integrity. In most cases, the equipment uses some form of continuous multiplex transmission technology. Today, many central stations communicate with their subsidiary stations using high speed, large bandwidth data transmission equipment, such as T1 or T3 network technology.

26.3.5.2.6 When the communications channel between the subsidiary station and the supervising station fails, the communications shall be switched to an alternate path. Public switched telephone network facilities shall be used only as an alternate path.

In addition to a highly reliable, primary communications channel, an alternate communications channel must provide redundancy in case of a failure to the primary channel. The central station may use "dial up, make good" service provided by the public telephone utility for the alternate communications channel. If the dedicated primary communications channel between the central station and the subsidiary station fails, "dial up, make good" service allows the central station to access a substitute communications channel using the normal voice telephone network. Use of this substitute communications channel provides an emergency communications path until technicians can restore the primary communications channel. The central station initiates the "dial up, make good" service to re-establish the data communications between the subsidiary station and the central station.

26.3.5.2.7 In the subsidiary station, there shall be a communications path, such as a cellular telephone, that is independent of the telephone cable between the subsidiary station and the serving wire center.

This requirement ensures that service personnel can establish communication with the central station upon arrival at a totally impaired subsidiary station.

26.3.5.2.8 A plan of action to provide for restoration of services specified by this Code shall exist for each subsidiary station.

(A) This plan shall provide for restoration of services within 4 hours of any impairment that causes loss of signals from the subsidiary station to the central station.

(B) An exercise to demonstrate the adequacy of the plan shall be conducted at least annually.

The central station must formulate a written plan for restoring service from a subsidiary station. This plan must encompass all services not already covered by 26.3.5.2.3. Such restoration must occur within 4 hours as required by 26.3.5.2.8(A). Commonly, the organization listing a central station that uses one or more subsidiary stations will review such a plan as a part of the listing process.

As with all emergency plans, the central station must test the plan's accuracy and validity. By performing the annual exercise as required by 26.3.5.2.8(B), the implementing personnel have an opportunity to become thoroughly familiar with the procedure. Such an exercise also helps keep the plan up-to-date and discloses changes at either the subsidiary station or the central station that may affect the plan's integrity.

26.3.6 Equipment.

26.3.6.1 The central station and all subsidiary stations shall be equipped so as to receive and record all signals in accordance with 26.6.4.

26.3.6.2 Circuit-adjusting means for emergency operation shall be permitted to be automatic or to be provided through manual operation upon receipt of a trouble signal.

Paragraph 26.3.6.2 permits specially trained central station operators (see 26.2.9 and 26.3.7 for personnel requirements) to manually operate circuit-adjusting means. Central station equipment may also automatically operate circuit-adjusting means.

26.3.6.3 Computer-aided alarm and supervisory signal–processing hardware and software shall be listed for the purpose.

The organization listing the central station must also specifically list any computer-aided alarm and supervisory signal–processing hardware and software for central station service. This requirement helps ensure the operational integrity of the signal handling at the central station.

Virtually all modern central stations use software to process signals. Typically, a series of listed digital alarm communicator receivers (DACRs) connect to incoming telephone lines from the public switched telephone network. In some cases, specially designed DACRs might also connect to incoming data links to the Internet. These DACRs initially receive all signals from subscriber premises. A terminal data connection from each receiver using standard computer protocols transfers information concerning each incoming signal to redundant PC-based servers listed for central station service. Special listed software within the servers processes the information and displays it on computer workstations at each operator's desk. The software provides display priority for various types of signals. The software also provides detailed subscriber information, including the telephone numbers of the appropriate fire and police departments and the subscriber's representatives.

This arrangement of listed hardware and software significantly automates the processing of signals. It allows a smaller number of operators to handle a larger volume of signal traffic with a great deal of efficiency and effectiveness.

Some central stations that handle a very large volume of signal traffic have invested in data management architecture that includes off-site redundant servers. This level of redundancy helps ensure the continuity of operations during times of hardware or software failure or routine hardware or software maintenance.

26.3.6.4 Power supplies shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 10.

26.3.6.5 Transmission means shall comply with the requirements of Section 26.6.

26.3.6.6* Two independent means shall be provided to retransmit an alarm signal to the designated communications center.

A.26.3.6.6 Two telephone lines (numbers) at the central station connected to the public switched telephone network, each having its own telephone instrument connected, and two telephone lines (numbers) available at the communications center to which a central station operator can retransmit an alarm meet the intent of this requirement.

26.3.6.6.1 The use of a universal emergency number, such as the 911 public safety answering point, shall not meet the intent of this Code for the principal means of retransmission.

26.3.6.6.2 If the principal means of retransmission is not equipped to allow the communications center to acknowledge receipt of each alarm report, both means shall be used to retransmit.

26.3.6.6.3 The retransmission means shall be tested in accordance with Chapter 14.

26.3.6.6.4 The retransmission signal and the time and date of retransmission shall be recorded at the central station.

In 26.3.2, the Code states that the third of the six elements of central station service includes retransmitting emergency signals to the appropriate communications center. The central station must have a reasonably secure means to retransmit signals.

FAQ What is the most common means of retransmitting emergency signals?

In most cases, the central station will use the public switched telephone network to dial the 7-digit or 10-digit reporting number assigned to the communications center. The Code states in 26.3.6.6.1 that the central station may not use 9-1-1 as the principal means of retransmission. This requirement exists because (1) the central station may not be located in the same community as the protected premises and will have no way to dial 9-1-1 for a location in a different geographical area; (2) a public service answering point (PSAP) staffed with civilian personnel who are not a part of the public emergency responders answer most 9-1-1 and enhanced 9-1-1 emergency telephone calls; and (3) the vast majority of 9-1-1 calls concern non-fire emergencies. Complying with this requirement helps to avoid the bottleneck that sometimes occurs at the PSAP.

The provision of 26.3.6.6.4 requires the central station to record the actual telephone call to the communications center. This recording, along with records of signals received at the central station, often helps investigators reconstruct the sequence of events that occurred during a major fire. Paragraph 26.3.6.6.4 does not mandate the central station to record the time and date automatically. However, when computer-based automation systems manage the receipt and processing of signals, including the retransmission signal, the central station can and should automatically record the time and date of the retransmission.

26.3.7 Personnel.

26.3.7.1 The central station shall have not less than two qualified operators on duty at the central station at all times to ensure disposition of signals in accordance with the requirements of 26.3.8.

26.3.7.2 Operation and supervision shall be the primary functions of the operators, and no other interest or activity shall take precedence over the protective service.

The central station must have two qualified operators on duty at all times (see 26.3.7.1). By mandating the presence of two operators, the Code maximizes the likelihood that at all times at least one operator will be fully alert to receive and process incoming signals. The Code also requires that the operators have no other duties that would distract them from the prompt, effective handling of signals.

Realistically, the volume of signal traffic determines the number of operators on duty. Over the past 20 years, central station operating companies of all sizes have consistently consolidated the number of central station locations. Various innovations in communications technology have eliminated the need for the location of the central station to closely match the proximity of the subscribers. Today, a single central station can serve thousands, even tens of thousands, of subscribers. The organizations that list the central station must keep a careful watch on the ratio of operators to signal traffic to ensure the prompt handling of emergency signals.

26.3.8 Disposition of Signals.

26.3.8.1 Alarm Signals.

26.3.8.1.1 Alarm signals initiated by manual fire alarm boxes, automatic fire detectors, waterflow from the automatic sprinkler system, or actuation of other fire suppression system(s) or equipment shall be treated as fire alarms.

26.3.8.1.2 The central station shall perform the following actions:

(1)* Retransmit the alarm to the communications center in accordance with 26.2.1.
(2) Dispatch a runner or technician to the protected premises to arrive within 2 hours after receipt of a signal if equipment needs to be manually reset by the prime contractor. Except where prohibited by the authority having jurisdiction, the runner or technician shall be permitted to be recalled prior to arrival at the premises if a qualified representative of the subscriber at the premises can provide the necessary resetting of the equipment and is able to place the system back in operating condition.
(3) Immediately notify the subscriber.
(4) Provide notice to the subscriber or authority having jurisdiction, or both, if required.

Exception: If the alarm signal results from a prearranged test, the actions specified by 26.3.8.1.2(1) and (3) shall not be required.

A.26.3.8.1.2(1) The term *immediately* in this context is intended to mean "without unreasonable delay." Routine handling should take a maximum of 90 seconds from receipt of an alarm signal by the central station until the initiation of retransmission to the communications center.

The central station operators should perform the actions required in 26.3.8.1.2 in the order in which they appear in the Code. This order reflects intended levels of urgency and the priority of activities.

A central station must give highest priority to the prompt handling and retransmission of fire alarm signals. Under the most adverse circumstances — for example, where a digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT) takes the maximum number of permitted attempts before it connects with the central station — it may have already taken up to 15 minutes to complete the transmission of a signal from the protected premises to the central station. [See 26.6.3.2.1.3(B) and 26.6.3.2.1.3(C).]

Note that new to the 2013 edition, the Code permits the operator to verify whether the alarm signal comes from the scene of a real emergency in accordance with 26.2.1 before retransmitting the signal.

The runner or technician in 26.3.8.1.2(2) needs to respond only when the prime contractor must manually reset equipment at the protected premises. For some central station alarm systems, the authority having jurisdiction may permit the subscriber or some other trained individual to reset the equipment. In such a case, the prime contractor would not need to reset the system, and a runner would not need to respond.

To comply with 26.3.8.1.2(3), the central station will usually notify the subscriber by means of a telephone call. In most cases, this constitutes the quickest available method of notification.

The word *notice,* in the context of 26.3.8.1.2(4), means "written notice." Written notice to the subscriber and the authority having jurisdiction should follow a format useful to each recipient. The subscriber can use such notice to document system operations, as required by 7.7.1. The authority having jurisdiction can use the notice to help document response to system operations at the location.

26.3.8.2 Guard's Tour Supervisory Signal.

26.3.8.2.1 Upon failure to receive a guard's tour supervisory signal within a 15-minute maximum grace period, the central station shall perform the following actions:

(1) Communicate without unreasonable delay with personnel at the protected premises
(2) Dispatch a runner to the protected premises to arrive within 30 minutes of the delinquency if communications cannot be established
(3) Report all delinquencies to the subscriber or authority having jurisdiction, or both, if required

In 26.3.8.2.1(2), if the central station cannot promptly contact personnel at the protected premises, then a runner should be dispatched to investigate why the guard missed a signal. Once dispatched, the runner must arrive at the protected premises within 30 minutes. This timeframe means the runner may actually arrive 45 minutes after the guard missed the signal. Even so, in actual cases, a responding runner has found the guard injured or ill and, by summoning medical assistance, has saved the guard's life.

26.3.8.2.2 Failure of the guard to follow a prescribed route in transmitting signals shall be handled as a delinquency.

Guard's tour supervision by a central station mandates a compulsory tour arrangement. The central station can provide this service in a number of ways. The central station could monitor every reporting station along a route. Alternatively, the central station could monitor only a few of the stations along a route. In this case, the guard would have to sequentially operate each station in the route, including those that do not transmit signals. Typically, the stations will not operate unless the guard has first operated the previous station in the route. But in either case, the guard must follow a prescribed route, proceeding from station to station in a fixed sequence. A delinquency is incurred if the guard fails to follow the prescribed route, as stated in 26.3.8.2.2.

Central station operating companies report that very few contracts to provide guard's tour service remain in effect. In those cases where a heightened level of oversight of guard's tours seems prudent, central station guard's tour supervision provides such a heightened level.

26.3.8.3* Supervisory Signals. Upon receipt of a supervisory signal from a sprinkler system, other fire suppression system(s), or other equipment, the central station shall perform the following actions:

(1)* Communicate immediately with the persons designated by the subscriber and notify the fire department or law enforcement agency, or both, when required by the authority having jurisdiction
(2) Dispatch a runner or maintenance person to arrive within 2 hours to investigate unless the supervisory signal is cleared in accordance with a scheduled procedure determined by 26.3.8.3(1)
(3) Notify the authority having jurisdiction when sprinkler systems or other fire suppression systems or equipment have been wholly or partially out of service for 8 hours

(4) When service has been restored, provide notice, if required, to the subscriber or the authority having jurisdiction, or both, as to the nature of the signal, the time of occurrence, and the restoration of service when equipment has been out of service for 8 hours or more

Exception: If the supervisory signal results from a prearranged test, the actions specified by 26.3.8.3(1), (3), and (4) shall not be required.

A.26.3.8.3 It is anticipated that the central station will first attempt to notify designated personnel at the protected premises. When such notification cannot be made, it might be appropriate to notify law enforcement or the fire department, or both. For example, if a valve supervisory signal is received where protected premises are not occupied, it is appropriate to notify the police.

A.26.3.8.3(1) The term *immediately* in this context is intended to mean "without unreasonable delay." Routine handling should take a maximum of 4 minutes from receipt of a supervisory signal by the central station until the initiation of communications with a person(s) designated by the subscriber.

Supervisory signals may indicate that something or someone has impaired a vital protection system, so the central station must handle supervisory signals promptly and accurately. Central station supervisory service can materially assist the owner, occupants, or management of a facility in overseeing the operational readiness of automatic fire extinguishing or suppression systems. The service can also help oversee the operation of critical premises emergency control (fire safety) functions.

FAQ What is the typical course of action upon receipt of a supervisory signal?

A runner or a technician needs to respond only when the central station operator cannot resolve restoration of the supervisory signal to normal by contacting designated personnel as required by 26.3.8.3(1). Typically, upon receipt of a supervisory signal, a central station operator will telephone the premises. If there is no answer, then the operator will telephone the individuals on a calling list provided by the subscriber. If the operator cannot reach someone on the calling list who will promptly respond to investigate and resolve the supervisory off-normal signal, then the operator must dispatch a runner. When dispatched, the runner must arrive at the protected premises within 2 hours.

26.3.8.4 Trouble Signals. Upon receipt of trouble signals or other signals pertaining solely to matters of equipment maintenance of the alarm systems, the central station shall perform the following actions:

(1)* Communicate immediately with persons designated by the subscriber
(2) Dispatch personnel to arrive within 4 hours to initiate maintenance, if necessary
(3) When the interruption is more than 8 hours, provide notice to the subscriber and the fire department if so required by the authority having jurisdiction as to the nature of the interruption, the time of occurrence, and the restoration of service

The central station must handle trouble signals promptly and accurately. Trouble signals indicate that the alarm system, the transmitter, or the communications path is wholly or partly out of service. The central station operator plays a key role in the initial troubleshooting of a system outage. The degree to which the operator has received training to properly interpret the exact nature of the trouble signal can materially assist in getting the system back in service as quickly as possible.

The personnel, dispatched to arrive within 4 hours, must initiate repairs. This requirement generally means that a technician, rather than a runner, must respond. The Code anticipates that the responding technician will have the necessary tools, test equipment, and spare parts to make the needed repairs as quickly as possible. Those training the technicians must place emphasis on the time-critical nature of this type of troubleshooting and repair activity. The Code anticipates that the technician will make every effort to minimize the length of the impairment to the fire alarm system.

A.26.3.8.4(1) The term *immediately* in this context is intended to mean "without unreasonable delay." Routine handling should take a maximum of 4 minutes from receipt of a trouble signal by the central station until initiation of the investigation by telephone.

26.3.8.5 Test Signals.

26.3.8.5.1 All test signals received shall be recorded to indicate date, time, and type.

26.3.8.5.2 Test signals initiated by the subscriber, including those for the benefit of an authority having jurisdiction, shall be acknowledged by central station personnel whenever the subscriber or authority inquires.

26.3.8.5.3* Any test signal not received by the central station shall be investigated immediately, and action shall be taken to reestablish system integrity.

A.26.3.8.5.3 The term *immediately* in this context is intended to mean "without unreasonable delay." Routine handling should take a maximum of 4 minutes from receipt of a trouble signal by the central station until initiation of the investigation by telephone.

The central station must handle test signals immediately; the Code recommends doing so within 4 minutes. Test signals help to ensure that the alarm system continues to function properly. The central station must cooperate with any authority having jurisdiction that inquires regarding test signals. If a subscriber initiates a test signal, then calls the central station and determines that the central station did not receive the signal, the central station should treat this occurrence as a trouble signal and follow the procedures outlined in 26.3.8.4. The central station should dispatch a service technician to arrive within 4 hours to begin repairs.

26.3.8.5.4 The central station shall dispatch personnel to arrive within 2 hours if protected premises equipment needs to be manually reset after testing.

26.3.8.5.5 The prime contractor shall provide each of its representatives and each alarm system user with a unique personal identification code.

26.3.8.5.6 In order to authorize the placing of an alarm system into test status, a representative of the prime contractor or an alarm system user shall first provide the central station with his or her personal identification code.

The prime contractor issues each of its representatives and each alarm system user with a unique personal identification code (see 26.3.8.5.5) and requires its use (see 26.3.8.5.6) in order to carefully control those who may place the system into a test mode.

Some systems permit the central station representative or alarm system user to enter the personal identification code on a key pad at the protected premises. Other systems require the individual to provide the personal identification code by using a telephone to dial a special number and then enter the code on the telephone's touch-tone key pad. Still other systems require that the code be given verbally to a central station operator in a telephone call to the central station.

This requirement helps to maintain the security and operational integrity of the alarm system. Without this precaution, the central station has no way of verifying that the person placing the alarm system into test status has authorization to do so.

26.3.9 Record Keeping and Reporting.

26.3.9.1 Complete records of all signals received shall be retained for at least 1 year.

26.3.9.2 Testing and maintenance records shall be retained as required by 14.6.3.

26.3.9.3 The central station shall make arrangements to furnish reports of signals received to the authority having jurisdiction in a manner approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

It is important for the central station to keep accurate and complete records of signals received. See the requirements of 7.7.1, Section 14.6, and especially 14.6.3 for information on retaining testing and maintenance records.

When an authority having jurisdiction requests reports from a central station, the central station must provide the reports in a useful and usable form. In many cases, authorities having jurisdiction can use information from central station records to reconstruct events leading up to and following an emergency or other incident.

FAQ How are the reports of signals received commonly used?

When a fire does occur, the record of signals received at the central station assists investigators tremendously. The date-stamped and time-stamped automatic record of signals received at the central station helps investigators develop a step-by-step sequence of events for the fire. Investigators can piece together the direction of fire and smoke travel based on patterns described by which initiating devices operated at which particular points in the fire development timeline. Sometimes the control unit at the protected premises has a memory that records system functions and operations in an accessible log. A technician can access this log by means of a laptop computer. Comparing the record from the control unit at the protected premises with the record of signals received at the central station can further clarify details regarding the fire development.

An authority having jurisdiction may also want to receive a report from the central station in order to verify the frequency and duration of impairments to supervised fire extinguishing or fire suppression systems at a protected premises. In addition, an authority having jurisdiction may want to receive a report simply to verify various operational aspects of the central station service at a specific protected premises.

A central station must respond to the request for a report from an authority having jurisdiction. Failure to provide such a report in a timely fashion can result in an authority having jurisdiction withdrawing the approval of the service provided by the delinquent central station.

26.3.10 Testing and Maintenance. Testing and maintenance for central station service shall be performed in accordance with Chapter 14.

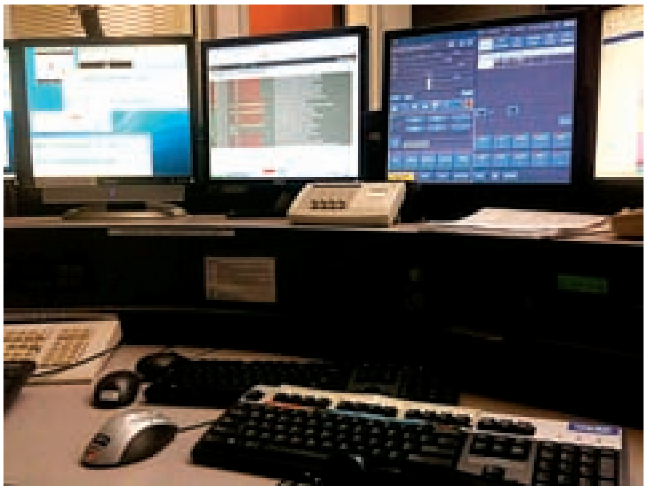
26.4 Proprietary Supervising Station Alarm Systems

26.4.1 Application. Supervising facilities of proprietary alarm systems shall comply with the operating procedures of Section 26.4. The facilities, equipment, personnel, operation, testing, and maintenance of the proprietary supervising station shall also comply with Section 26.4.

The management of a facility protected by a proprietary supervising station alarm system often uses that system to oversee the built-in fire extinguishing or fire suppression systems at that facility. The proprietary supervising station alarm system may also oversee certain facility emergency control (fire safety) functions. Used as a management tool, the proprietary alarm system can help ensure that these fire protection systems and functions remain in service. See Exhibit 26.7 for an example of a proprietary supervising station.

EXHIBIT 26.7

Proprietary Supervising Station. (Source: DFW International Airport)



26.4.2 General.

26.4.2.1 Proprietary supervising stations shall be operated by trained, competent personnel in constant attendance who are responsible to the owner of the protected property.

26.4.2.2 The protected property shall be either a contiguous property or noncontiguous properties under one ownership.

From a single proprietary supervising station, an owner can oversee the protection features at one or more properties. These properties might contiguously occupy a single piece of land or might occupy noncontiguous portions of land (see 3.3.207 for the definitions of the terms *contiguous property* and *noncontiguous property*). The Code does not limit the geographic distance that might exist between noncontiguous properties. This permits an owner to oversee protection features at geographically diverse locations from a single proprietary supervising station.

26.4.2.3 If a protected premises control unit is integral to or colocated with the supervising station equipment, the requirements of Section 26.6 shall not apply.

•

Paragraph 26.4.2.3 recognizes that in some cases the proprietary alarm system may have a master fire alarm control unit, as defined in 3.3.102.1, co-located in the proprietary supervising station. (See Figure A.26.1.1.) Where this situation occurs, the transmission technology requirements described in Section 26.6 do not apply. Rather, the system would use initiating device circuits and signaling line circuits, as described in Chapter 23, to transmit signals to the master fire alarm control unit co-located in the proprietary supervising station. Section 26.4 provides the requirements for all other aspects of such a proprietary alarm system.

26.4.3 Facilities.

26.4.3.1* The proprietary supervising station shall be located in either of the following:

(1) Fire-resistive, detached building
(2) A fire-resistive room protected from the hazardous parts of the building

A.26.4.3.1 Consideration should be given to providing the following features for a proprietary supervising station location:

(1) Fire resistive construction meeting the requirements of adopted building codes

FAQ

What does the Code intend by the descriptions "fire-resistive, detached building" and "fire-resistive room"?

The requirements of 26.4.3.1 help to maintain a high degree of physical integrity for the proprietary supervising station. The Code intends a "fire-resistive, detached building" to describe a building constructed of materials that meet the adopted building code's designation for "fire-resistive construction." This construction, in conjunction with sufficient detachment, should protect the building from any hazardous processes or hazardous areas of the facility. In some cases, locating the proprietary supervising station in a segregated area within a fire-resistive guard house at the entrance to the property would provide a location sufficiently detached from facility hazards. In selecting this location, the owner of the facility would have to provide protection against any damage that a runaway vehicle might cause. Surrounding the guard house with strong concrete barriers in the direction of vehicle traffic would provide appropriate protection.

Similarly, the owner could house the proprietary supervision station in a "fire-resistive room" protected by the nature of its construction from any hazardous processes or hazardous areas of the facility.

In addition, A.26.4.3.1 recommends that the building or room housing the proprietary supervising station have a separate air handling system isolated from common building systems. This will help protect the proprietary supervising station from the incursion of smoke and heat during a fire in the other portions of the facility.

(2) Air handling systems isolated from common building systems

26.4.3.2 Access to the proprietary supervising station shall be restricted to those persons directly concerned with the implementation and direction of emergency action and procedure.

The proprietary supervising station must not become a congregating place for guards, emergency response team members, or other facility personnel. The presence of such persons could interfere with the operators and distract them from giving proper attention to signal traffic. If management locates the proprietary supervising station within a guard house where guards admit vehicles and personnel to the premises, management should provide some means of segregation to separate the operators of the proprietary supervising station from other incidental employees. Such segregation will help to ensure that operators can effectively and efficiently handle the signal traffic without distraction.

26.4.3.3 The proprietary supervising station, as well as remotely located power rooms for batteries or engine-driven generators, shall be provided with portable fire extinguishers that comply with the requirements of NFPA 10, *Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers*.

Personnel in a proprietary supervising station must have the means to handle a small fire in the supervising station or in the power rooms for batteries or engine-driven generators.

Management should refer to the requirements of NFPA 600, *Standard on Industrial Fire Brigades*. These requirements ensure that management properly organizes and trains personnel to safely use the fire extinguishers provided.

26.4.3.4 The emergency lighting system shall comply with the requirements of 26.4.3.4.1 through 26.4.3.4.3.

26.4.3.4.1 The proprietary supervising station shall be provided with an automatic emergency lighting system.

26.4.3.4.2 The emergency source shall be independent of the primary lighting source.

26.4.3.4.3 In the event of a loss of the primary lighting for the supervising station, the emergency lighting system shall provide illumination for a period of not less than 26 hours to permit the operators to carry on operations and shall be tested in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 14.

26.4.3.5 If 25 or more protected buildings or premises are connected to a subsidiary station, both of the following shall be provided at the subsidiary station:

(1) Automatic means for receiving and recording signals under emergency staffing conditions
(2) A telephone

The term *subsidiary station* is defined in 3.3.282 as a normally unattended facility located remotely from the proprietary supervising station and linked to the proprietary supervising station by a communications channel. A proprietary supervising station may receive signals from many buildings on a very large premises or from several noncontiguous premises through one or more subsidiary stations. Where 25 or more protected buildings or protected premises transmit through a subsidiary station, management must equip that subsidiary station so that it can be staffed by operators in an emergency. For example, if the signaling path between the subsidiary station and the proprietary supervising station fails, operators will travel to the subsidiary station, staff it, and operate it independently of the proprietary supervising station. See Exhibit 26.8 for an illustration of a proprietary supervisory station that uses subsidiary stations.

26.4.4 Equipment.

26.4.4.1 Signal-Receiving Equipment.

26.4.4.1.1 Signal-receiving equipment in a proprietary supervising station shall comply with 26.4.4.

26.4.4.1.2 Provision shall be made to designate the building in which a signal originates.

26.4.4.1.3 The floor, section, or other subdivision of the building in which a signal originates shall be designated at the proprietary supervising station or at the building that is protected.

Exception: Where the area, height, or special conditions of occupancy make detailed designation unessential as approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

To effectively manage the built-in fire protection features of the protected premises, the Code requires that the signals received by the proprietary supervising station contain sufficient detail to allow operators to quickly and accurately locate the source of the signals. Graphic annunciators, video displays, and addressable systems installed at the protected premises will meet this requirement. If the nature of the protected property eliminates the need for such detail, the authority having jurisdiction may waive the requirement.

EXHIBIT 26.8

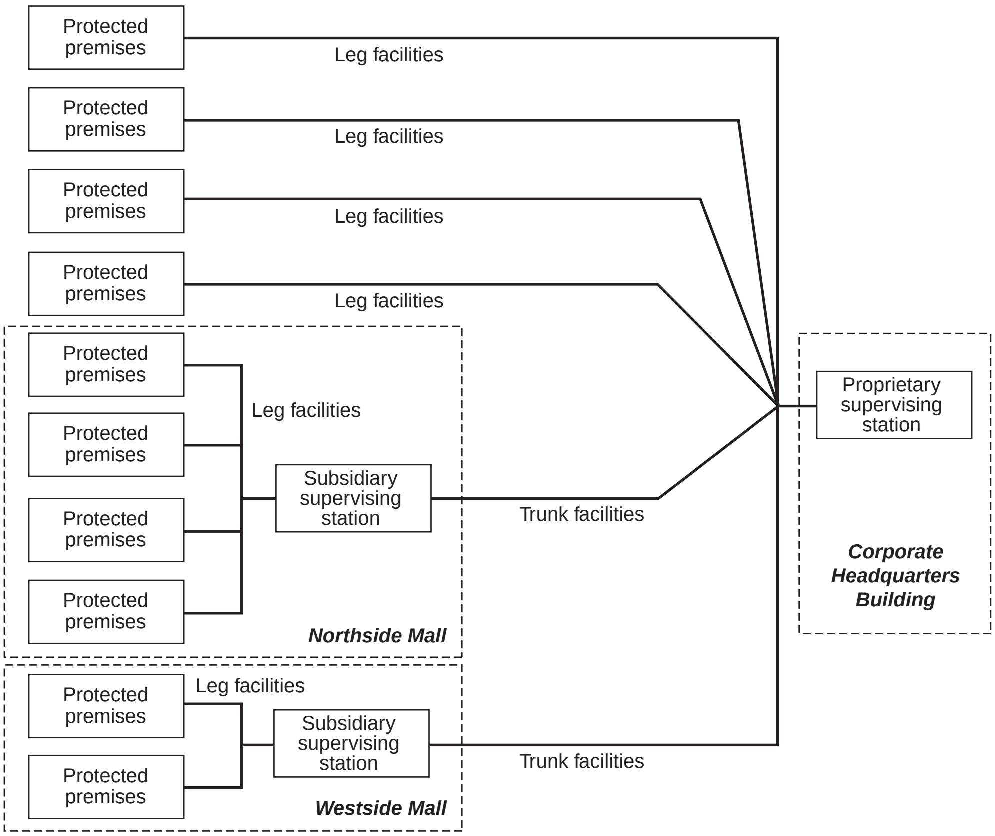


Diagram of Proprietary Supervising Station Facility with Noncontiguous Properties under Single Ownership Connecting Through Subsidiary Supervising Stations. (Source: Dean K. Wilson, P.E., Erie, PA)

26.4.4.1.4 Designation, as required by 26.4.4.1.2 and 26.4.4.1.3, shall use private-mode notification appliances approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

26.4.4.2 Signal-Alerting Equipment.

26.4.4.2.1 The proprietary supervising station shall have, in addition to a recording device, two different means for alerting the operator when each signal is received that indicates a change of state of any connected initiating device circuit.

Paragraph 26.4.4.2.1 requires two means of notifying the operators of the receipt of a signal. This requirement relates to the one in 26.4.5.5 that requires operators to have no other duties that would impair their ability to process signals from the proprietary supervising station alarm system. By implication, the Code, in 26.4.5.4, accepts that the operators in the supervising station may attend to other duties, as long as those duties do not interfere with the operation of the protective service. The two means of notification required by 26.4.4.2.1 help make certain the operators properly attend to the incoming signals.

26.4.4.2.1.1 One of these means shall be an audible signal, which shall persist until manually acknowledged.

26.4.4.2.1.2 Means shall include the receipt of alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals, including signals indicating restoration.

26.4.4.2.1.3 If means is provided in the proprietary supervising station to identify the type of signal received, a common audible indicating appliance shall be permitted to be used for alarm, supervisory, and trouble indication.

Sections 10.10 and 26.6.4 require distinctive signals for alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals. Paragraph 26.4.4.2.1.3 correlates with 10.10.4 to permit a common audible notification appliance in the supervising station, as long as other means readily identify the type of signal.

26.4.4.2.1.4 At a proprietary supervising station, an audible trouble signal shall be permitted to be silenced, provided that the act of silencing does not prevent the signal from operating immediately upon receipt of a subsequent trouble signal.

26.4.4.2.2 All signals required to be received by the proprietary supervising station that show a change in status shall be automatically and permanently recorded, including time and date of occurrence, in a form that expedites operator interpretation in accordance with any one of the means detailed in 26.4.4.2.2.1 through 26.4.4.2.2.4.

26.4.4.2.2.1 If a visual display is used that automatically provides change of status information for each required signal, including type and location of occurrence, any form of automatic permanent visual record shall be permitted.

(A) The recorded information shall include the content described in 26.4.4.2.2.

(B) The visual display shall show status information content at all times and be distinctly different after the operator has manually acknowledged each signal.

(C) Acknowledgment shall produce recorded information indicating the time and date of acknowledgment.

Paragraph 26.4.4.2.2.1 describes an annunciator that continuously shows the status of every point in the system that generates a signal. At a glance, the operator can literally see the status of every point. With this type of visual display, the proprietary supervising station system may use any type of permanent visual record. Such systems most often use a logging-type printer, which keeps a running list of signals received as a back-up to the visual display. The printed information will not necessarily have a format that would allow an operator to easily locate information, but it does provide a running summary of signals as they occur with respect to the date and time each signal was received.

26.4.4.2.2.2 If a visual display is not provided, required signal content information shall be automatically recorded on duplicate, permanent visual recording instruments.

FAQ What is required when a visual display is not provided?

When the proprietary supervising station system does not provide a visual display, such a system must use two printers. Where a proprietary supervising station receives signals from systems other than an alarm system, these printers will assist the operators in giving priority to signals from the alarm system. One printer will record all signals that the system receives. The other printer will record only alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals. Both printers must format the output to allow the operator to easily read, interpret, and act upon the information provided.

26.4.4.2.2.3 One recording instrument shall be used for recording all incoming signals, while the other shall be used for required alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals only.

(A) Failure to acknowledge a signal shall not prevent subsequent signals from recording.
(B) Restoration of the signal to its prior condition shall be recorded.

26.4.4.2.2.4 In the event that a system combines the use of a sequential visual display and recorded permanent visual presentation, the required signal content information shall be displayed and recorded.

(A) The visual information component shall be retained either on the display until manually acknowledged or repeated at intervals not greater than 5 seconds, for durations of 2 seconds each, until manually acknowledged.
(B) Each new displayed status change shall be accompanied by an audible indication that persists until manual acknowledgment of the signal is performed.

26.4.4.3* Redisplay of Status. A means shall be provided for the operator to redisplay the status of required signal-initiating inputs that have been acknowledged but not yet restored.

A.26.4.4.3 Proprietary station procedures should include periodic review of nonrestored signals. One method for such a review could be by the use of equipment that would automatically redisplay the information.

The requirements in 26.4.4.3 apply to a visual display unit that presents one or more lines of information at a time but does not simultaneously display the status of all points covered by the proprietary supervising station system. The operator must scroll through the display after having acknowledged each signal. To help the operator give proper precedence to alarm signals, either the signals must appear on a separate display or the system must give them priority status on a common display. The system must still provide a permanent visual record, but the Code does not specify the type of printer. Such a system most often uses a logging-type printer, as described in the commentary following 26.4.4.2.2.1(C).

When operators use a system that visually displays a limited number of signals at one time, they must not forget about signals that await restoration. In the flurry of activity surrounding subsequent incoming signals, an operator could easily lose track of previously received signals that indicated an off-normal status change. Such signals must restore to normal in order to indicate that the off-normal condition has been resolved. As discussed in A.26.4.4.3, an operational procedure can prompt operators to periodically scroll through the list of signals, or the system itself can cause the redisplay of nonrestored signals.

26.4.4.3.1 If the system retains the signal on the visual display until manually acknowledged, subsequent recorded presentations shall not be inhibited upon failure to acknowledge.

26.4.4.3.2 Alarm signals shall be segregated on a separate visual display in this configuration.

Exception: Alarm signals shall not be required to be segregated on a separate display if given priority status on the common visual display.

26.4.4.4 Display Rate. To facilitate the prompt receipt of alarm signals from systems handling other types of signals that are able to produce multiple simultaneous status changes, the requirements of either of the following shall be met:

(1) Record simultaneous status changes at a rate not slower than either a quantity of 50 or 10 percent of the total number of initiating device circuits connected, within 90 seconds, whichever number is smaller, without loss of any signal
(2) Display or record alarm signals at a rate not slower than one every 10 seconds, regardless of the rate or number of status changes occurring, without loss of any signals

The requirements of 26.4.4.4 help to ensure the prompt receipt of alarm signals when a proprietary supervising station system receives other types of signals and uses technology that permits the processing and display of multiple status changes at the same time. Paragraph 26.4.4.4 substitutes for and takes precedence over the general requirements for all communications methods contained in 26.6.3.1.12. Paragraph 26.4.4.4 applies similar requirements to other transmission technologies where a proprietary supervising station alarm system uses those technologies.

26.4.4.5 Trouble Signals. Trouble signals and their restoration shall be automatically indicated and recorded at the proprietary supervising station.

The requirements of 10.15.1 and 10.15.8 also directly relate to the requirement in 26.4.4.5. The proprietary supervising station alarm system must indicate trouble signals and their restoration to normal both audibly and visibly at the proprietary supervising station within 200 seconds.

26.4.4.5.1 The recorded information for the occurrence of any trouble condition of signaling line circuit, leg facility, or trunk facility that prevents receipt of alarm signals at the proprietary supervising station shall be such that the operator is able to determine the presence of the trouble condition.

26.4.4.5.2 Trouble conditions in a leg facility shall not affect or delay receipt of signals at the proprietary supervising station from other leg facilities on the same trunk facility.

The requirement of 26.4.4.5.2 in effect mandates that the transmission technology preserves the signals from other leg facilities when one leg facility experiences trouble. Management of a facility proposing to install a proprietary supervising station alarm system would have to analyze each proposed transmission technology to determine if it could meet the requirements of 26.4.4.5.2. For example, in the past if management had chosen to use an active multiplex transmission technology — now considered a "legacy" technology — compliance with the requirement of 26.4.4.5.2 would have dictated that the system meet the requirements for what was then called a Type 1 or Type 2 active multiplex system. Both of these technologies used a "closed window bridge" that effectively isolated each leg facility on a trunk from each other. A Type 3 active multiplex system could not have met this requirement because it used an "open window bridge," in which all the leg facilities on a trunk were subject to potential failure from a fault on a single leg.

26.4.5 Personnel.

26.4.5.1 The proprietary supervising station shall have at least two qualified operators on duty at all times. One of the two operators shall be permitted to be a runner.

Exception: If the means for transmitting alarms to the fire department is automatic, at least one operator shall be on duty at all times.

The allowance provided by the exception to 26.4.5.1 does not relieve other requirements of the Code, such as those of 26.4.6.6 concerning the dispatch of personnel to the protected premises.

26.4.5.2 When the runner is not in attendance at the proprietary supervising station, the runner shall establish two-way communications with the station at intervals not exceeding 15 minutes, unless otherwise permitted by 26.4.5.3.

26.4.5.3 Where two or more operators are on duty in the supervising station, a runner physically in attendance at a noncontiguous protected premises and immediately available via telephone or other approved means of communication shall not be required to maintain two-way communications at 15-minute intervals if that runner is not responsible for another protected premises.

The allowance of 26.4.5.3 recognizes that facility management may have stationed a trained runner at a noncontiguous protected premises. For example, management may have stationed a runner at the reception desk at another facility it owns where that facility is not located on the same physical property as the one implied in 26.4.5.2. Where the runner has principal responsibility only for the noncontiguous premises to which he or she is assigned and remains immediately available by some reliable means of communications, the requirement to establish two-way communications at 15-minute intervals serves no real purpose. In addition, where a facility consists of multiple noncontiguous properties, the frequent communications between each stationed runner and the operators at the proprietary supervising station could hinder either the runner or the operators from performing more important duties.

26.4.5.4 The primary duties of the operator(s) shall be to monitor signals, operate the system, and take such action as shall be required by the authority having jurisdiction.

26.4.5.5 The operator(s) shall not be assigned any additional duties that would take precedence over the primary duties.

FAQ Does 26.4.5.5 prohibit operators from performing other duties?

Although the operators are not prohibited from performing other duties, as noted in 26.4.5.5, the Code expects the operators to have no duties that would distract them from the prompt, effective handling of signals.

26.4.6 Operations.

26.4.6.1 Communications and Transmission Channels.

26.4.6.1.1 All communications and transmission channels between the proprietary supervising station and the protected premises control unit shall be operated manually or automatically once every 24 hours to verify operation.

26.4.6.1.2 If a communications or transmission channel fails to operate, the operator shall immediately notify the person(s) identified by the owner or authority having jurisdiction.

26.4.6.2 Operator Controls.

26.4.6.2.1 All operator controls at the proprietary supervising station(s) designated by the authority having jurisdiction shall be operated at each change of shift.

26.4.6.2.2 If operator controls fail, the operator shall immediately notify the person(s) identified by the owner or authority having jurisdiction.

The requirements of 26.4.6.1 through 26.4.6.2.2 help to ensure the proper and continued operational readiness of the proprietary supervising station.

26.4.6.3 Retransmission. Indication of a fire shall be promptly retransmitted to the communications center or other locations accepted by the authority having jurisdiction, indicating the building or group of buildings from which the alarm has been received.

26.4.6.4* Retransmission Means. The means of retransmission shall be accepted by the authority having jurisdiction and shall be in accordance with 26.3.6.6, 26.5.4.4, or Chapter 27.

Exception: Secondary power supply capacity shall be as required in Chapter 10.

A.26.4.6.4 It is the intent of this Code that the operator within the proprietary supervising station should have a secure means of immediately retransmitting any signal indicative of a fire to the public fire department communications center. Automatic retransmission using an approved method installed in accordance with Sections 26.3 through 26.5, and Chapter 27 is the best method for proper retransmission. However, a manual means can be permitted to be used, consisting of either a manual connection following the requirements of Section 26.3, Section 26.5, and Chapter 27, or, for proprietary supervising stations serving only contiguous properties, a means in the form of a municipal fire alarm box installed within 50 ft (15 m) of the proprietary supervising station in accordance with Chapter 27 can be permitted.

26.4.6.5* Coded Retransmission. Retransmission by coded signals shall be confirmed by two-way voice communications indicating the nature of the alarm.

A.26.4.6.5 Regardless of the type of retransmission facility used, telephone communications between the proprietary supervising station and the fire department should be available at all times and should not depend on a switchboard operator.

Paragraph 26.4.6.4 requires that the proprietary supervising station retransmit signals to the communications center by means of one of the following:

1. An automatic or manual connection using a connection to a central station alarm system
2. An automatic or manual connection using a connection to a remote supervising station alarm system
3. A manual or automatic connection to a public emergency alarm reporting system

In the third case, the retransmission from a proprietary supervising station system serving a contiguous property could consist of the operator manually actuating a municipal alarm box. The retransmission could also consist of an auxiliary alarm system that meets the requirements of 27.6.3.2.

Paragraph 26.4.6.5 requires two-way voice confirmation of a coded retransmission signal. This confirmation would most likely occur when an operator at the supervising station contacts the communications center by telephone.

Paragraph 26.4.6.4 does not contain a specific provision that would allow an operator at the proprietary supervising station to use a telephone as the sole means to report an alarm signal to the communications center. However, 26.4.6.5 requires the availability of a telephone. It seems reasonable that if an authority having jurisdiction is willing to permit the use of a telephone call as the sole means of retransmission, the authority having jurisdiction could make an exception to the explicit requirements of 26.4.6.4.

Management should provide the proprietary supervising station with a connection to the public switched telephone network that does not require the operator of a private branch exchange (PBX) switchboard to manually intervene to obtain access to the network. In fact, management should provide a direct connection to the network that completely bypasses any PBX, whether that PBX uses manual or automatic switching. This direct connection to the public switched telephone network will allow operators in the proprietary supervising station to make a telephone call, even if the PBX fails.

26.4.6.6 Dispositions of Signals.

26.4.6.6.1 Alarms. Upon receipt of an alarm signal, the proprietary supervising station operator shall initiate action to perform the following:

(1) Notify the fire department, the emergency response team, and such other parties as the authority having jurisdiction requires in accordance with 26.2.1
(2) Dispatch a runner or technician to the alarm location to arrive within 2 hours after receipt of a signal
(3) Restore the system as soon as possible after disposition of the cause of the alarm signal

26.4.6.6.2 Guard's Tour Supervisory Signal. If a guard's tour supervisory signal is not received from a guard within a 15-minute maximum grace period, or if a guard fails to follow a prescribed route in transmitting the signals (where a prescribed route has been established), the proprietary supervising station operator shall initiate action to perform the following:

(1) Communicate at once with the protected areas or premises by telephone, radio, calling back over the system circuit, or other means accepted by the authority having jurisdiction
(2) Dispatch a runner to arrive within 30 minutes to investigate the delinquency if communications with the guard cannot be promptly established

26.4.6.6.3 Supervisory Signals. Upon receipt of sprinkler system and other supervisory signals, the proprietary supervising station operator shall initiate action to perform the following, if required:

(1) Communicate immediately with the designated person(s) to ascertain the reason for the signal
(2) Dispatch personnel to arrive within 2 hours to investigate, unless supervisory conditions are promptly restored
(3) Notify the fire department if required by the authority having jurisdiction
(4) Notify the authority having jurisdiction when sprinkler systems are wholly or partially out of service for 8 hours or more
(5) Provide written notice to the authority having jurisdiction as to the nature of the signal, time of occurrence, and restoration of service when equipment has been out of service for 8 hours or more

26.4.6.6.4 Trouble Signals. Upon receipt of trouble signals or other signals pertaining solely to matters of equipment maintenance of the alarm system, the proprietary supervising station operator shall initiate action to perform the following, if required:

(1) Communicate immediately with the designated person(s) to ascertain reason for the signal
(2) Dispatch personnel to arrive within 4 hours to initiate maintenance, if necessary
(3) Notify the fire department if required by the authority having jurisdiction
(4) Notify the authority having jurisdiction when interruption of service exists for 4 hours or more
(5) When equipment has been out of service for 8 hours or more, provide written notice to the authority having jurisdiction as to the nature of the signal, time of occurrence, and restoration of service

FAQ

What are the notable differences in the requirements for the disposition of signals between a central station and a proprietary station?

The requirements in 26.4.6.6.1 through 26.4.6.6.4 almost match those in 26.3.8 for central station alarm systems with the following notable differences:

1. Upon receipt of an alarm signal, the proprietary supervising station must always dispatch a runner.
2. If required by the authority having jurisdiction, the proprietary supervising station must notify the fire department upon receipt of a supervisory signal or a trouble signal. This notification will alert the fire department to impaired protection.
3. The proprietary supervising station must notify the authority having jurisdiction if an interruption to service producing a trouble signal persists for 4 hours.

26.4.7 Record Keeping and Reporting.

26.4.7.1 Complete records of all signals received shall be retained for at least 1 year.

26.4.7.2 Testing and maintenance records shall be retained as required by 14.6.3.

26.4.7.3 The proprietary supervising station shall make arrangements to furnish reports of signals received to the authority having jurisdiction in a form the authority will accept.

Whenever an authority having jurisdiction requests reports from a proprietary supervising station, the supervising station must provide the reports in a useful and usable form. Paragraph 26.4.7.3 gives the authority having jurisdiction a requirement in the Code to cite should a property owner refuse to disclose information regarding signals received at the proprietary supervising station.

26.4.8 Testing and Maintenance. Testing and maintenance of proprietary alarm systems shall be performed in accordance with Chapter 14.

26.5 Remote Supervising Station Alarm Systems

26.5.1 Application and General.

26.5.1.1 Section 26.5 shall apply where central station service is neither required nor elected.

An authority having jurisdiction may require a remote supervising station alarm system where the desired level of protection does not warrant the level of protection offered by a central station alarm system. Similarly, the facility management may choose to provide a remote supervising station alarm system when management does not believe it needs the level of protection offered by a central station alarm system or a proprietary supervising station alarm system.

When the requirements for a remote supervising station alarm system first appeared in the Code in 1961, they provided a means of transmitting alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals from a somewhat remotely located protected premises to the nearest communications center. In most of those cases, the municipality did not have a public emergency alarm reporting system. And, due to the limitations of the transmission technologies employed at that time, no vendor could provide central station service to such a remotely located facility.

Sometimes the municipality did not even have a constantly attended communications center. Rather, officials relied on a multiple-location emergency telephone system. When an individual placed a telephone call to the seven-digit emergency reporting number, telephones in several locations throughout the community rang. These locations included local businesses as well as the homes of the fire chief and other fire officers. A switch at each telephone could actuate sirens throughout the community or transmit signals to radio receivers or pagers that would summon volunteer fire fighters. (Even today, some less built-up areas use this method to handle public reports of an emergency.)

In such communities, officials had to find an alternative location to receive signals from remote supervising station alarm systems. Often, officials chose a local 24-hour telephone answering service — normally used by doctors, dentists, and people from other trades — to receive the remote supervising station alarm signals. In some cases, the officials chose a gasoline service station or local restaurant that remained open around the clock to receive the signals.

In more recent times, some alarm system installers who chose not to provide listed central station service set up monitoring centers to receive remote supervising station alarm signals.

In turn, some listed central station operating companies began to provide equipment in their central stations that would meet the requirements for remote supervising station alarm systems in order to legitimately receive such signals. Some municipalities have partnered to create regional emergency communications centers to dispatch fire, police, and emergency medical services. These centers may have equipment to receive signals from remote supervising station alarm systems.

26.5.1.2 The installation, maintenance, testing, and use of a remote supervising station alarm system that serves properties under various ownership from a remote supervising station shall comply with the requirements of Section 26.5.

Some authorities having jurisdiction have interpreted 26.5.1.2 to mean that the requirements of Section 26.5 apply only to those cases where a remote supervising station system serves properties under various ownerships. In so doing, those authorities having jurisdiction have refused to accept the use of hardware and software listed for use in providing a remote station supervising station system at a single facility under one ownership. Instead, those authorities having jurisdiction have required the facility to use hardware and software listed for a proprietary supervising station system.

The intent of 26.5.1.2, however, does not specifically forbid the application of the requirements in Section 26.5 to a remote station supervising station alarm system serving single or multiple facilities under one ownership. At the same time, the requirements in 26.5.1.4 make it clear that alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals must transmit to a location remote from the protected premises.

In analyzing whether a particular type of supervising station system will appropriately serve a facility, the authorities having jurisdiction should carefully examine the protection goals of the owner as well as the protection goals for the jurisdictions they represent. Obviously, an authority having jurisdiction should not encourage an owner to choose one particular supervising station system simply to avoid having to meet the more stringent requirements of another, more appropriate system.

Exhibit 26.9 illustrates a communications center equipped to receive signals as a remote supervising station in accordance with 26.5.3.1.1.

EXHIBIT 26.9
Public Emergency Services Communications Center Equipped to Receive Signals as Remote Station Supervising Station. (Source: Naperville, IL, Police Department)

26.5.1.3 Remote supervising station physical facilities, equipment, operating personnel, response, retransmission, signals, reports, and testing shall comply with the minimum requirements of Section 26.5.

26.5.1.4 Remote supervising station alarm systems shall provide an automatic audible and visible indication of alarm, supervisory, and trouble conditions at a location remote from the protected premises.

Without the requirement of 26.5.1.4, trouble conditions involving the primary power supply for the alarm system at a protected premises that connects to a remote supervising station might go unrecognized for periods that could extend beyond the 24-hour capacity of the secondary power supply at the protected premises.

26.5.1.5 Section 26.5 shall not require the use of audible or visible notification appliances other than those required at the remote supervising station. If it is desired to provide alarm evacuation signals in the protected premises, the alarm signals, circuits, and controls shall comply with the provisions of Chapters 18 and 23 in addition to the provisions of Section 26.5.

Paragraph 26.5.1.5 emphasizes that Chapter 26 does not address specific requirements for evacuation notification at the protected premises. Chapters 18 and 23 address these requirements.

When property protection, mission continuity, heritage preservation, or environmental protection has been chosen as the predominant protection goal for a facility, the owner of the protected premises might purchase an alarm system that does not itself provide evacuation notification to the occupants. In such a case, the owner likely will rely on some other system to notify the occupants of the need to evacuate the premises. Historically, many such systems are connected to various remote station supervising stations in order to summon emergency responders at the time of an emergency. On occasion, some authorities having jurisdiction would insist that the Code required audible and visible notification appliances at the protected premises for such systems. Paragraph 26.5.1.5 clarifies that this portion of the Code does not mandate notification appliances at a protected premises. Refer to Section 23.3 for the requirement to document the features required for a protected premises fire alarm system.

26.5.1.6 The loading capacities of the remote supervising station equipment for any approved method of transmission shall be as designated in Section 26.6.

Remote station fire alarm systems have the full range of transmission technologies available. However, those technologies must meet the requirements of Section 26.6.

26.5.2 Indication of Remote Station Service. Owners utilizing remote station alarm systems shall provide annual documentation to the authority having jurisdiction identifying the party responsible for the inspection, testing, and maintenance requirements of Chapter 14. This documentation shall take one of the following forms:

(1)* Affidavit attesting to the responsibilities and qualifications of the parties performing the inspection, testing, and maintenance and accepting responsibility of compliance with Chapter 14 and signed by a representative of the service provider
(2) Documentation indicating code compliance of the remote station alarm system issued by the organization that listed the service provider
(3) Other documentation acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction

Beginning with the 2010 edition, the requirements in 26.5.2 help ensure the integrity of the remote supervising station system throughout its life cycle. Every year, the owner of the protected premises must provide written documentation to the authority having jurisdiction that identifies the person or organization responsible for the inspection, testing, and maintenance of the remote supervising station system. The requirements in this subsection offer three alternatives: (1) an affidavit attesting to the competency of the person or organization performing the services and signed by a representative of the service provider; (2) a document from the testing laboratory that listed the service provider; or (3) some other form of documentation acceptable to the authorities having jurisdiction.

The second option permissively supports the listing of protective signaling service companies by the testing laboratories. Such listing includes specific follow-up procedures by the laboratories similar to those described in 26.3.4 for central station service.

A.26.5.2(1) Chapter 14 permits the building owner or his designated representative to perform these services if they are qualified. In this situation, the documentation could be a declaration of qualification signed by the building owner. Multiple service providers are permitted.

26.5.3* Facilities.

A.26.5.3 As a minimum, the room or rooms containing the remote supervising station equipment should have a 1-hour fire rating, and the entire structure should be protected by an alarm system complying with Chapter 23.

26.5.3.1 Alarm systems utilizing remote supervising station connections shall transmit alarm and supervisory signals to a facility meeting the requirements of either 26.5.3.1.1, 26.5.3.1.2, or 26.5.3.1.3.

Some authorities having jurisdiction have interpreted 26.5.3.1 as requiring that both alarm and supervisory signals must transmit to a *single* facility that meets the requirements of 26.5.3.1.1, 26.5.3.1.2, or 26.5.3.1.3. Whether the technical committee intended the phrase "a facility" to mean "a single facility" remains unclear. Paragraph 26.5.1.4 requires the transmission of alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals to a location remote from the protected premises. In addition, 26.5.3.2 seems to imply that alarm and supervisory signals normally transmit to the same location.

The argument could be made that having all the signals transmit to the same remote supervising station gives the operators a better understanding of what may be occurring at a facility. However, some remote supervising stations may refuse to accept supervisory or trouble signals from a particular protected premises. In such a case, the facility should seek approval from the authority having jurisdiction to transmit those signals to another suitable remote supervising station.

Paragraphs 26.5.3.1.1, 26.5.3.1.2, and 26.5.3.1.3 offer three general categories of suitable locations for the remote supervising station.

26.5.3.1.1 Alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals shall be permitted to be received at a communications center that complies with the requirements of NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems*.

26.5.3.1.2 Alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals shall be permitted to be received at the fire station or at the governmental agency that has public responsibility for taking prescribed action to ensure response upon receipt of a alarm signal.

26.5.3.1.3* Where permitted by the authority having jurisdiction, alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals shall be permitted to be received at an alternate location approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

A.26.5.3.1.3 A listed central station might be considered an acceptable alternate location for receipt of fire alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals.

FAQ

Can a listed central station also provide remote supervising station service?

The authority having jurisdiction may accept any suitable location as the remote supervising station. For example, an authority having jurisdiction could permit a listed central station to receive these signals. Accepting the use of a listed central station to receive such signals would constitute "remote supervising station service," but not "central station service." In such a case, the equipment at the protected premises and at the central station must meet the requirements for remote supervising station alarm systems. According to the requirements of 10.3.1, the equipment must be specifically listed for use as part of a remote supervising station alarm system.

26.5.3.2* Trouble signals shall be permitted to be received at an approved location that has personnel on duty who are trained to recognize the type of signal received and to take prescribed action. The location shall be permitted to be other than that at which alarm and supervisory signals are received.

A.26.5.3.2 A listed central station might be considered an acceptable alternate location for receipt of trouble signals.

Paragraph 26.5.1.4 requires the transmission of trouble signals to a constantly attended location. This location may be the same location that receives alarm and supervisory signals, or it may be a separate location. This paragraph tends to support the claim by some authorities having jurisdiction that alarm and supervisory signals must transmit to the same location. See the commentary following 26.5.3.1.

26.5.3.3 If locations other than the communications center are used for the receipt of signals, access to receiving equipment shall be restricted in accordance with the requirements of the authority having jurisdiction.

NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems,* covers the requirements for access to and security of the communications center. Refer to the defined term *communications center* in 3.3.53. The requirement of 26.5.3.3 helps to ensure the security and operational integrity of the remote supervising station receiving equipment installed at locations other than the public communications center.

26.5.4 Equipment.

26.5.4.1 Signal-receiving equipment shall indicate receipt of each signal both audibly and visibly.

26.5.4.1.1 Audible signals shall meet the requirements of Chapter 18 for the private operating mode.

The requirements for private mode audible signaling are in 18.4.4.

26.5.4.1.2 Means for silencing alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals shall be provided and shall be arranged so that subsequent signals shall re-sound.

Silencing one signal must not prevent a subsequent signal from causing the audible notification appliance to sound. This reinforces the requirements contained in Sections 10.13, 10.14.7, and 10.15.10.

26.5.4.1.3 A trouble signal shall be received when the system or any portion of the system at the protected premises is placed in a bypass or test mode.

The requirement in 26.5.4.1.3 prevents the use of any type of a so-called "silent disconnect switch" at the protected premises. A facility might use such a switch to prevent the transmission of signals to the remote supervising station during maintenance on the alarm system or on a fire protection system connected to the alarm system. However, operation of any disconnect switch must produce a trouble signal at the remote supervising station.

26.5.4.1.4 An audible and visible indication shall be provided upon restoration of the system after receipt of any signal.

The Code does not permit the indication of the remote supervising station system restoration to normal by the mere extinguishing of a lamp. The audible notification appliance at the remote supervising station must also sound. The extinguishing of a lamp or other visible indicator, such as a light-emitting diode (LED), could still give the visible indication.

Some larger remote supervising station systems make provision for the operators to manually mark the illuminated visible indicators, usually with a circular plastic "donut." When the audible appliance signals a change in status, the operator can look at all the marked visible indicators and quickly determine which one has been extinguished, thus indicating a restoration to normal.

Note that the requirements of 26.6.4.3(2) still apply and require each change of state to be recorded. Refer also to 26.5.7.3 and the associated commentary.

26.5.4.1.5 If visible means are provided in the remote supervising station to identify the type of signal received, a common audible notification appliance shall be permitted to be used.

26.5.4.2 Power supplies shall comply with the requirements of Chapter 10.

A major change took place in the 2002 edition of the Code that included a revision to the duration of the secondary power. In previous editions, remote supervising station fire alarm systems had to have 60 hours of secondary power. Paragraphs 10.6.1, 10.6.7.2.1(3), and 10.6.7.4 specify 24 hours of secondary power under quiescent load (nonalarm condition).

26.5.4.3 Transmission means shall comply with the requirements of Section 26.6.

Remote supervising station fire alarm systems have the full range of transmission technologies given in Section 26.6, as long as they also meet any special requirements of Section 26.5.

26.5.4.4 Retransmission of an alarm signal, if required, shall be by one of the following methods, which appear in descending order of preference as follows:

(1) A dedicated circuit that is independent of any switched telephone network. This circuit shall be permitted to be used for voice or data communications.
(2) A one-way (outgoing only) telephone at the remote supervising station that utilizes the public-switched telephone network. This telephone shall be used primarily for voice transmission of alarms to a telephone at the communications center that cannot be used for outgoing calls.
(3) A private radio system using the fire department frequency, where permitted by the fire department.
(4) Other methods accepted by the authority having jurisdiction.

FAQ

When is retransmission of an alarm signal not required?

The requirements of 26.5.4.4 must correlate with the requirements of 26.5.6.1. If the remote supervising station alarm system signals transmit from the protected premises to the communications center and that center serves as the remote supervising station, then obviously retransmission of the alarm signals will not be necessary. Retransmission of alarm signals will become necessary only when a location other than the communications center serves as the remote supervising station.

When retransmission becomes necessary, the vast majority of remote supervising stations will use a retransmission method that complies with the requirements of 26.5.4.4(2). Special programming at the public telephone utility switch will block incoming telephone calls to the number assigned to the retransmission telephone. This arrangement allows operators at the remote supervising station to make outgoing calls on this telephone line (number), but not to receive incoming calls. This prevents the line (number) from being tied up by incoming calls.

26.5.5 Personnel.

26.5.5.1 The remote supervising station shall have not less than two qualified operators on duty at the remote supervising station at all times to ensure disposition of signals in accordance with the requirements of 26.5.6.

26.5.5.2 Duties pertaining to other than operation of the remote supervising station receiving and transmitting equipment shall be permitted, subject to the approval of the authority having jurisdiction.

The authority having jurisdiction may permit operators at the remote supervising station to perform duties not related to the system operation. However, the Code limits the extent to which those other duties may interfere with proper signal handling.

26.5.6 Operations.

26.5.6.1 If the remote supervising station is at a location other than the communications center, alarm signals shall be retransmitted to the communications center in accordance with 26.2.1.

The requirement for "immediate retransmission" was changed in the 2013 edition of the Code to just "retransmission" in accordance with 26.2.1, which permits for alarm signal verification.

26.5.6.2 Upon receipt of an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal by the remote supervising station, the operator on duty shall be responsible for immediately notifying the owner or the owner's designated representative, and where required, the authority having jurisdiction.

The text in previous editions of the Code limited the requirements of 26.5.6.2 to those cases where the signals transmit to a location other than the communications center. In the 2013 edition, the Code makes no such distinction.

When any remote supervising station receives a signal, the Code requires the operator to promptly contact designated representatives to help ensure that the owner of the protected premises will take appropriate action as soon as possible. In addition, the authority having jurisdiction must be contacted if required by the enforcing jurisdiction.

26.5.6.3 All operator controls at the remote supervising station shall be operated at the beginning of each shift or change in personnel, and the status of all alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals shall be noted and recorded.

The requirements of 26.5.6.3 provide for the operational continuity of the remote supervising station. By exercising operating controls at shift change or when the on-duty personnel changes, operators can more quickly identify potential failures of equipment and initiate action to summon a technician to make necessary repairs.

This paragraph also requires operators to note and record the status of alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals. The record helps ensure continuity of handling of those signals, which is particularly important when a signal that indicates a supervisory off-normal condition or a trouble condition persists across a change in personnel. Operators going off-shift can brief incoming operators as to what action has been taken and what responding actions they anticipate as a result of the action taken.

26.5.7 Record Keeping and Reporting.

26.5.7.1 A permanent record of the time, date, and location of all signals and restorations received and the action taken shall be maintained for at least 1 year and shall be able to be provided to the authority having jurisdiction.

26.5.7.2 Testing and maintenance records shall be retained as required in 14.6.3.

26.5.7.3 Records shall be permitted to be created by manual means.

Unlike central station and proprietary alarm systems that keep records automatically, the Code does not require remote supervising station alarm systems to provide an automatic permanent visible record of signals received. Most often, as permitted by 26.5.7.3, operators in the remote supervising station maintain a manual log book that contains the required records. In some cases, operators maintain the log book by making manual data entries into a computer database. Paragraph 26.5.7.3 effectively serves as an exception to the requirements contained in 26.6.4.3(2).

26.5.8 Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance.

26.5.8.1 Inspection, testing, and maintenance for remote supervising stations shall be performed in accordance with Chapter 14.

26.5.8.2 Where required, inspection, testing, and maintenance reports shall be submitted to the authority having jurisdiction in a form acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

It is important that the authority having jurisdiction knows when fire alarm systems are being inspected and tested. For central station service and proprietary station fire alarm systems, this notification was already required. Paragraph 26.5.8.2 was added in the 2013 edition of the Code to require remote station systems to be subject to similar reporting procedures.

26.6 Communications Methods for Supervising Station Alarm Systems

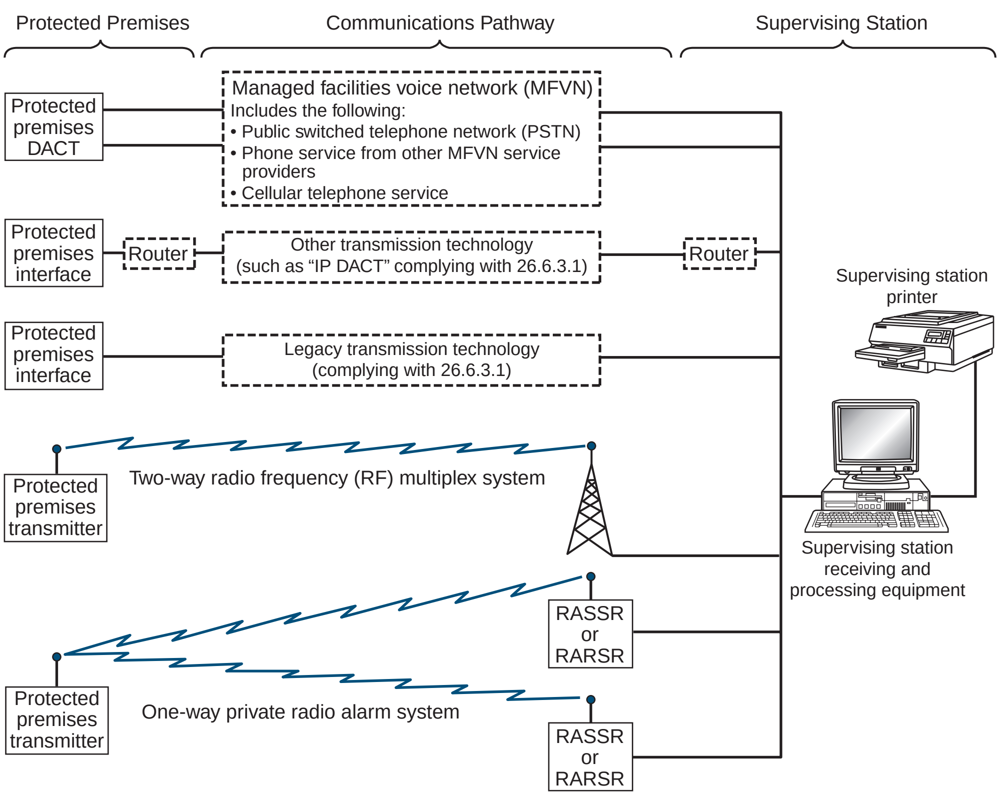
Exhibit 26.10 illustrates the communications methods addressed by the Code. Five communications methods are addressed in the Code. The first communications method is a digital alarm communicator system (DACS), addressed in 26.6.3.2, which uses a DACT at the protected premises. The second method is a more general category of performance-based communications methods, addressed in 26.6.3.1, which uses what was formerly called "other technology" such as an "IP DACT" at the protected premises. The third method is the category known as legacy transmission technologies, which are no longer being installed, which are addressed conceptually in 26.6.3.1 and in specific sections of previous editions of the Code that were deleted in the 2010 edition. The fourth and fifth communications methods are two types of radio systems, addressed in 26.6.3.3, that use radio transmitters at the protected premises. All these communications methods are addressed in more detail in subsequent commentary.

26.6.1* Application.

A.26.6.1 Refer to Table A.26.6.1 for communications methods.

Table A.26.6.1 was revised by a tentative interim amendment (TIA).

EXHIBIT 26.10



Communications Methods for Supervising Station Alarm Systems.

TABLE A.26.6.1 *Communications Methods for Supervising Stations*

Criteria	***Performance-Based Technologies 26.6.3.1***	***Digital Alarm Communicator Systems 26.6.3.2***	***Two-Way Radio Frequency (RF) Multiplex Systems 26.6.3.3.1***	***One-Way Private Radio Alarm Systems 26.6.3.3.2***
FCC approval when applicable	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes
Conform to *NFPA 70, National Electrical Code*	Yes	Yes	Yes	Yes

TABLE A.26.6.1 Continued

Criteria	*Performance-Based Technologies 26.6.3.1*	*Digital Alarm Communicator Systems 26.6.3.2*	*Two-Way Radio Frequency (RF) Multiplex Systems 26.6.3.3.1*	*One-Way Private Radio Alarm Systems 26.6.3.3.2*
Monitoring for integrity of the transmission and communications channel	Monitor for integrity	Both the premises unit and the system unit monitor for integrity in a manner approved for the means of transmission employed. A single signal received on each incoming DACR line once every 6 hours.	Systems are periodically polled for end-to-end communications integrity.	Test signal from every transmitter once every 24 hours
Annunciate, at the supervising station, the degradation and restoration of the transmission or communications channel	Within 60 minutes for a single communication path and within 6 hours for multiple communication paths	Within 4 minutes using alternate phone line to report the trouble	Not exceed 90 seconds from the time of the actual failure	Only monitor the quality of signal received and indicate if the signal falls below minimum signal quality specified in Code
Redundant communication path where a portion of the transmission or communications channel cannot be monitored for integrity		Employ a combination of two separate transmission channels alternately tested at intervals not exceeding 6 hours	Redundant path not required — supervising station always indicates a communications failure	Minimum of two independent RF paths must be simultaneously employed
Interval testing of the backup path(s)		When two phone lines are used, test alternately every 6 hours. Testing for other back-up technologies, see 26.6.3.2.1.4(B).	Backup path not required	No requirement, because the quality of the signal is continuously monitored
Annunciation of communication failure or ability to communicate at the protected premises	Systems where the transmitter at the local premises unit detects a communication failure, the premises unit will annunciate the failure within 200 seconds of the failure	Indication of failure at premises due to line failure or failure to communicate after from 5 to 10 dialing attempts	Not required — always annunciated at the supervising station that initiates corrective action	Monitor the interconnection of the premises unit elements of transmitting equipment, and indicate a failure at the premises or transmit a trouble signal to the supervising station.
Time to restore signal-receiving, processing, display, and recording equipment	Where duplicate equipment not provided, spare hardware required so a repair can be effected within 30 minutes.	Spare digital alarm communicator receivers required for switchover to backup receiver in 30 seconds. One backup system unit for every five system units.	Where duplicate equipment not provided, spare hardware required so a repair can be effected within 30 minutes	Where duplicate equipment not provided, spare hardware required so a repair can be effected within 30 minutes
Loading capacities for system units and transmission and communications channels	512 independent alarm systems on a system unit with no backup. Unlimited if you can switch to a backup in 30 seconds.	See 26.6.3.2.2.2(C) for the maximum number of transmitters on a hunt group in a system unit	512 buildings and premises on a system unit with no backup. Unlimited if you can switch to a backup in 30 seconds.	512 buildings and premises on a system unit with no backup. Unlimited if you can switch to a backup in 30 seconds.

(*continues*)

TABLE A.26.6.1 Continued

Criteria	*Performance-Based Technologies 26.6.3.1*	*Digital Alarm Communicator Systems 26.6.3.2*	*Two-Way Radio Frequency (RF) Multiplex Systems 26.6.3.3.1*	*One-Way Private Radio Alarm Systems 26.6.3.3.2*
End-to-end communication time for an alarm	90 seconds from initiation of alarm until displayed to the operator and recorded on a medium from which the information can be retrieved	Off-hook to on-hook not to exceed 90 seconds per attempt. 10 attempts maximum. 900 seconds maximum for all attempts.	90 seconds from initiation until it is recorded	90% probability to receive an alarm in 90 seconds, 99% probability in 180 seconds, 99.999% probability in 450 seconds
Record and display rate of subsequent alarms at supervising station	Not slower than one every 10 additional seconds	Not addressed	When any number of subsequent alarms come in, record at a rate not slower than one every additional 10 seconds	When any number of subsequent alarms come in, record at a rate not slower than one every additional 10 seconds
Signal error detection and correction	Signal repetition, parity check, or some equivalent means of error detection and correction must be used.	Signal repetition, digital parity check, or some equivalent means of signal verification must be used.	Not addressed	Not addressed
Path sequence priority	No need for prioritization of paths. The requirement is that both paths are equivalent.	The first transmission attempt uses the primary channel.	Not addressed	Not addressed
Carrier diversity		Where long distance service (including WATS) is used, the second telephone number must be provided by a different long distance service provider where there are multiple providers.	Not addressed	Not addressed
Throughput probability		Demonstrate 90% probability of a system unit immediately answering a call or follow the loading Table 16.6.3.2.2.2(C). One-way radio backup demonstrates 90% probability of transmission.	Not addressed	90% probability to receive an alarm in 90 seconds, 99% probability in 180 seconds, 99.999% in probability 450 seconds
Unique premises identifier	If a transmitter shares a transmission or communication channel with other transmitters, it must have a unique transmitter identifier.	Yes	Yes	Yes

TABLE A.26.6.1 *Continued*

Criteria	*Performance-Based Technologies 26.6.3.1*	*Digital Alarm Communicator Systems 26.6.3.2*	*Two-Way Radio Frequency (RF) Multiplex Systems 26.6.3.3.1*	*One-Way Private Radio Alarm Systems 26.6.3.3.2*
Unique flaws	From time to time, there may be unique flaws in a communication system. Unique requirements must be written for these unique flaws.	If call forwarding is used to communicate to the supervising station, verify the integrity of this feature every 4 hours.	None addressed	None addressed
Signal priority	If the communication methodology is shared with any other usage, all alarm transmissions must preempt and take precedence over any other usage. Alarm signals take precedence over supervisory signals.	Chapter 1 on fundamentals requires that alarm signals take priority over supervisory signals unless there is sufficient repetition of the alarm signal to prevent the loss of an alarm signal.	Chapter 1 on fundamentals requires that alarm signals take priority over supervisory signals unless there is sufficient repetition of the alarm signal to prevent the loss of an alarm signal.	Chapter 1 on fundamentals requires that alarm signals take priority over supervisory signals unless there is sufficient repetition of the alarm signal to prevent the loss of an alarm signal.
Sharing communications equipment on premises	If the transmitter is sharing on-premises communications equipment, the shared equipment must be listed for the purpose (otherwise the transmitter must be installed ahead of the unlisted equipment).	Disconnect outgoing or incoming telephone call and prevent its use for outgoing telephone calls until signal transmission has been completed.	Not addressed	Not addressed

The Code makes a full range of listed transmission technologies available to all the supervising station services (see 26.6.2.2). This range of transmission technologies gives designers maximum flexibility in choosing the transmission technology most appropriate for a particular application.

Specific reference to certain long-standing technologies were removed from the Code in the 2010 edition in recognition of the significant reduction in their actual use. The Code has noted these technologies and refers to them as "legacy" technologies in A.26.6.3.1. These legacy technologies include the following:

1. Active multiplex system, including systems using derived local channels
2. McCulloh systems
3. Directly connected, noncoded systems
4. Private microwave radio systems

Where existing systems continue to use these legacy technologies, their use remains acceptable since these systems still meet the performance-based requirements of 26.6.3.1.

In addition to performance-based requirements found in 26.6.3.1, the Code provides specific requirements for the following technologies:

1. Digital alarm communicator systems (see 26.6.3.2)
2. Radio systems (see 26.6.3.3)
   a. Two-way radio frequency (RF) multiplex systems (see 26.6.3.3.1)
   b. One-way private radio alarm systems (see 26.6.3.3.2)

The Code has no direct jurisdiction over public utilities such as telephone service provided by public telephone utility companies over the public switched telephone network.

In 1964, a "signaling summit" meeting was held to determine which organizations would take on the responsibility for ensuring the life-cycle quality assurance of central station systems. Representatives from Underwriters Laboratories Inc., the National Board of Fire Underwriters, and major insurance companies, including Factory Insurance Association and Factory Mutual Engineering Corporation, attended this meeting. Many of those representatives also served on the NFPA Technical Correlating Committee on Signaling Systems responsible for the NFPA alarm and signaling systems standards. Among the decisions made at that meeting was acceptance of the inherent reliability of the private line (PL) circuits provided by the public switched telephone network. Most central station operating companies leased PL circuits from the public telephone company utility to provide a signal pathway between various protected premises and the central station.

Representatives of the Bell Laboratories division of the American Telephone & Telegraph Company (AT&T) had earlier submitted detailed documentation in the form of standards known as "tariffs" that described the methods of ensuring operational integrity of the public switched telephone network and the PL circuits that used the cable plant of that system. These tariffs included requirements that provided for extensive standby (backup) power supplies at the telephone company wire centers to ensure the availability of independent power to operate all circuits and equipment for a period of at least 72 hours.

Based on this extensive documentation, the representatives at the signaling summit agreed that the NFPA standards did not need to address any requirements for the signaling pathways inside the public switched telephone network, provided that the various telephone companies adhered to the current tariffs and provided that the listed signaling equipment would electrically supervise the integrity of the signaling connection (pathway). AT&T further agreed to apply to the NFPA for admission as a member of the appropriate signaling systems standards technical committee.

In the late 1970s, manufacturers first proposed that the Technical Committee of Signaling Systems for Central Station Service recognize and write requirements for the inclusion of the use of DACSs in NFPA 71, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Signaling Systems for Central Station Service*. The technical committee received documentation and heard testimony from the AT&T representative on the technical committee. The representative outlined the current scope of the applicable tariffs and described in detail the statistical analysis methods that Bell Laboratories used to determine the operational reliability of the public switched telephone network. Based on that testimony, the technical committee voted in favor of requirements to permit the use of DACSs, providing that the equipment monitored the voltage on the circuit extending from the nearest telephone company wire center to the protected premises.

This technology required the use of so-called "loop start" telephone pairs. The public telephone utility company typically provided loop start pairs for use in single line service drops to residences or businesses using only one or two telephone lines (numbers). When a business needed multiple telephone lines (numbers), the public telephone utility company typically provided "ground start" pairs to conserve standby battery power at their wire centers. (See the commentary following A.26.6.3.2.1.1.)

The Committee further determined that a test of the DACS from each protected premises every 24 hours would give a level of transmission integrity equivalent to that used by radio master fire alarm boxes as then stated in NFPA 1221.

In 1982, Judge Harold Greene of the U.S. District Court in Washington, DC, issued a momentous decision [552 F.Supp. 131 (DDC 1982)] in *United States v. AT&T.* The consent decree filed in this case resulted in the breakup of the telephone "empire" of AT&T into seven Regional Bell Holding Companies. Many changes in operations and technology grew out of this decision, including a change in the rigorous enforcement of the implementation standards behind various operational tariffs.

Over time, various public telephone utility companies began to implement technology to provide service using the public switched telephone network without regard for a consistently long period of standby power. In some cases, the provision of voltage on loop start telephone pairs no longer originated from a telephone company wire center. Instead, localized concentrator units placed in the field provided power to the loop start telephone pairs. Initially, some of these field-located concentrators had no standby power whatsoever. When some authorities having jurisdiction discovered this fact, they began to refuse to accept supervising station alarm systems using such telephone pairs. In response, the public telephone utility companies began to provide some standby power for field-located equipment. Most of the time, the standby power consisted of only 8 hours of continuous power following the loss of primary power.

Today, customers can purchase telephone service from a variety of service providers; however, a state's public utility authority might not regulate all these providers. For example, some companies that provide cable television services now also provide telephone service. In many locales, the cable television provider has a local contract to do business with a local governmental agency. The cable company is not treated as a utility company and is not regulated by the state public utility authority.

The Code continues to require 24 hours of standby power for fire alarm systems. Owners and authorities having jurisdiction should keep this requirement in mind when selecting a particular transmission technology. The careful addition of an alternate signaling pathway may offer a prudent solution.

26.6.1.1 The methods of communications between the protected premises and the supervising station shall comply with the requirements in Section 26.6. These requirements shall include the following:

(1) Transmitter located at the protected premises
(2) Transmission channel between the protected premises and the supervising station or subsidiary station
(3) If used, any subsidiary station and its communications channel
(4) Signal receiving, processing, display, and recording equipment at the supervising station

Exception: Transmission channels owned by, and under the control of, the protected premises owner that are not facilities leased from a supplier of communications service capabilities, such as video cable, telephone, or other communications services that are also offered to other customers.

26.6.1.2 The minimum signaling requirement shall be an alarm signal, trouble signal, and supervisory signal, where used.

26.6.2 General.

26.6.2.1 Master Control Unit. If the protected premises master control unit is neither integral to nor colocated with the supervising station, the communications methods of Section 26.6 shall be used to connect the protected premises to either a subsidiary station, if used, or a supervising station for central station service in accordance with Section 26.3, proprietary station in accordance with Section 26.4, or remote station in accordance with Section 26.5.

26.6.2.2* Alternate Methods. Nothing in Chapter 26 shall be interpreted as prohibiting the use of listed equipment using alternate communications methods that provide a level of reliability and supervision consistent with the requirements of Chapter 10 and the intended level of protection.

A.26.6.2.2 It is not the intent of Section 26.6 to limit the use of listed equipment using alternate communications methods, provided these methods demonstrate performance characteristics that are equal to or superior to those technologies described in Section 26.6. Such demonstration of equivalency is to be evidenced by the equipment using the alternate communications methods meeting all the requirements of Chapter 10, including those that deal with such factors as reliability, monitoring for integrity, and listing. It is further expected that suitable proposals stating the requirements for such technology will be submitted for inclusion in subsequent editions of this Code.

FAQ What was the first transmission technology used by supervising station systems?

Over the years, as it encompassed new transmission technologies, the Code most often compared new technologies to the performance capabilities of the McCulloh system, which was the first transmission technology used by supervising station systems. This comparison allowed an intermixing of certain operational requirements among the various technologies. Therefore, 26.6.2.2 becomes a caveat to make certain that when applying a particular transmission technology, authorities having jurisdiction, system designers, installers, and users do not ignore critical operational requirements that appear in Chapter 10 as well as those that appear in Section 26.6.

In the 1999 edition of the Code, the technical committee introduced a separate section of Chapter 26 titled "Other Transmission Technologies." This section provided a generic set of performance requirements that would allow the use of any new transmission technology that demonstrated it could meet certain critical operational requirements. The technical committee intended this section to address the advent of different new technologies, such as packet switched networks.

In the 2010 edition of the Code, the technical committee moved the vast majority of the performance requirements from the section on other transmission technologies to 26.6.3.1. The relocation of the performance requirements to the beginning of 26.6.3, Communication Methods, underscores the importance of that section for evaluating any new technologies. In the 2013 edition, the section has been appropriately renamed Performance-Based Technologies.

The last sentence of A.26.6.2.2 contains important guidance: "It is further expected that suitable proposals for stating the requirements for such technology will be submitted for inclusion in subsequent editions of this Code." The Code recognizes that from time to time manufacturers will introduce new transmission technologies. Paragraphs 26.6.2.2 and 26.6.3.1 through 26.6.3.1.16 include provisions that manufacturers should consider in developing new technology to meet the intent of the Code. However, as manufacturers develop new technologies, they should take advantage of the NFPA standards-making process and submit appropriate new requirements for consideration by the technical committee.

• **26.6.2.3* Equipment.**

A.26.6.2.3 The communications cloud is created by multiple telephone lines and multiple paths on the Internet. Under these circumstances, the requirements of Chapters 10 and 14, as required by 26.1.2, do not apply to devices comprising the communications cloud.

26.6.2.3.1 Alarm system equipment and installations shall comply with Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and regulations, as applicable, concerning the following:

(1) Electromagnetic radiation
(2) Use of radio frequencies

(3) Connection to the public switched telephone network of telephone equipment, systems, and protection apparatus

Paragraph 26.6.2.3.1 recognizes that the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) has jurisdiction over the installation requirements for certain communications equipment used to transmit signals from a protected premises to a supervising station. Circumstances can occur in which the FCC requirements supersede a requirement of this Code. For example, in certain portions of the regulated radio spectrum, FCC regulations may limit the amount of time a transmitter may operate continuously. Likewise, FCC regulations may limit the number of times within a prescribed time period that a radio transmitter may operate, such as a certain number of times per hour. These requirements can limit the way in which such technologies are used for transmitting signals from a protected premises.

The FCC also has jurisdiction over the engineering practices and services offered by providers of telephone service to subscribers using managed facilities-based voice networks (MFVNs). Refer to the defined terms of *managed facilities-based voice network* and *public switched telephone network* in 3.3.152 and 3.3.290.2, respectively.

26.6.2.3.2 Radio receiving equipment shall be installed in compliance with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Article 810.

When a particular supervising station transmission technology uses equipment that transmits an RF signal, that equipment, in particular its antenna, must be installed in compliance with the appropriate articles of *NFPA 70®*, *National Electrical Code®*. As stated, in part, in Section 810.1 of *NFPA 70*: "This article covers antenna systems for radio and television receiving equipment, amateur and citizen band radio transmitting and receiving equipment, and certain features of transmitter safety. This article covers antennas such as wire-strung type, multi-element, vertical rod, and dish and also covers the wiring and cabling that connects them to equipment."

26.6.2.3.3 The external antennas of all radio transmitting and receiving equipment shall be protected in order to minimize the possibility of damage by static discharge or lightning.

26.6.2.4 Dual Control.

26.6.2.4.1 Dual control, if required, shall provide for redundancy in the form of a standby circuit or other alternate means of transmitting signals over the primary trunk portion of a transmission channel.

26.6.2.4.2 The same method of signal transmission shall be permitted to be used over separate routes, or alternate methods of signal transmission shall be permitted to be used.

26.6.2.4.3 Public switched telephone network facilities shall be used only as an alternate method of transmitting signals.

FAQ "Dual control" applies to what communications method?

Dual control, though retained in the current edition of the Code, actually applies only to legacy systems using active multiplex transmission technology. Paragraph 26.6.2.4 describes a feature provided for a Class I active multiplex system. An authority having jurisdiction or a fire alarm system designer could also specify this feature as an option for other active multiplex systems.

Although dual control does not provide full redundancy for every trunk and leg, it does offer an option that an authority having jurisdiction or a system designer can choose to help ensure the receipt of signals during interruptions to each primary trunk extending from the supervising station. Most often, technology called "DataPhone Select-A-Station (DSAS)," offered by the public telephone utility company, provides this redundancy. When the primary trunk fails, this technology allows the supervising station to establish an alternate transmission path by automatically or manually dialing into the PSTN and establishing an alternate path for the signals that would normally transmit over the primary trunk. Telephone technicians sometimes refer to this arrangement as "dial up, make good."

26.6.2.4.4 If using facilities leased from a telephone company, that portion of the primary trunk facility between the supervising station and its serving wire center shall not be required to comply with the separate routing requirement of the primary trunk facility. Dual control, if used, shall require supervision as follows:

(1) Dedicated facilities that are able to be used on a full-time basis, and whose use is limited to signaling purposes as defined in this Code, shall be exercised at least once every hour.
  Paragraphs 26.6.2.4.4(2) and 26.6.3.2.2.2(F) were revised by a tentative interim amendment (TIA).
(2) Public switched telephone network facilities shall be exercised at least once every 6 hours.

To ensure that the dual control system can use the alternate path when needed, operators must exercise the alternate path for each primary trunk. Operators must exercise each dedicated alternate path once each hour. They must exercise each alternate path provided as part of the PSTN at least once each day.

26.6.3 Communications Methods. The communications methods used to transmit signals to supervising stations shall meet the requirements of 26.6.3.1 for performance-based technologies, or 26.6.3.2 or 26.6.3.3 for prescriptive-based technologies.

26.6.3.1* Performance-Based Technologies.

A.26.6.3.1 Certain legacy technologies (active multiplex, McCulloh, directly connected noncoded and private microwave) have been removed from the text of the document. Existing systems utilizing these technologies are acceptable, because all these technologies also comply with the general provisions of 26.6.3.1.

The object of 26.6.3.1 is not to give details of specific technologies but rather give basic operating parameters of the transmission supervison rates of technologies. The following list represents examples of current technologies that can be configured to meet the requirements and the intent of 26.6.3.1:

(1) Transmitters using IP (Internet Protocol)
(2) IP transmission over the public open Internet or over private IP facilities maintained by an organization for its own use
(3) Transmitters using various (non-dialup) digital cellular technology

Wired IP Transmission. There are two types of wired IP transmission devices. One where the IP network is connected directly to the fire alarm control unit (integrated IP or native IP). The second uses an intermediary module that can include the following:

(1) IP dialer capture module
(2) IP data capture module (such as RS-232, keypad bus, RS-485)
(3) Relay contact monitoring module

Devices referred to as "IP dialer capture modules" (an IP communicator used with a DACT) are transmission devices that connect to the DACT output of the fire alarm control unit and convert the output data stream to IP (Internet protocol). As such, they are considered to use IP technology in their connection to the IP network. Therefore they should be treated in this Code under the requirements of 26.6.3.1, performanced-based technologies, and not under the requirements of 26.6.3.2, digital alarm communicator systems.

Digital Cellular. To accommodate an increase in the demand for mobile wireless communications as well as introducing new services over that same network, wireless voice communications no longer utilizes dedicated connections to pass voice band frequencies. Current ubiquities methods such as 2G and 3G have established a new and different environment to operate. In place of the voice band, the voice conversation is converted into a stream of bits and packaged within data packets that conform to messaging protocols, packets are addressed to a destination point, delivered into the network, received by the destination point, and are converted back into an intelligible voice-grade message. The message exchange through this wireless data network is done through well known defined protocols such as "Global System for Mobile" communications (GSM) for voice communications as well as Code Division Multiple Access (CDMA) for both voice and data and General Packet Radio Service (GPRS) mobile data services. These protocols have been developed to operate in an optimal way for the intended application. For example, GSM is used to efficiently establish voice-grade connections that deliver an appropriate level of intelligible voice quality, but might not be good enough to pass tones that represent data. Data transmission is better served by GPRS and CDMA where a connection into the wireless network is always available without having to "dial," and large amounts of data can be efficiently transmitted. However the data passed using GPRS or CDMA is not that of coded tones such as DTMF (Contact ID), but is computer type messages similar to IP.

When using digital cellular, a DACT might or might not be used.

For example, the digital cellular device might be used to backup the DACT or, if properly supervised, be used as a stand-alone device. If used, the DACT is connected to a digital cellular radio device that connects to the cellular network by means of an antenna. The digital cellular radio device is constantly connecting to the wireless network and is always ready to attempt to transmit to a destination address without having to "dial" a number. The radio device recognizes that the alarm panel is attempting to place a call by the DACT's "off-hook" signaling. The radio device accepts the DACT tone signaling, converts it into a packeted data stream, and sends the packets into the wireless network for delivery to a pre-assigned destination address.

The technical committee relocated almost all the requirements that are in 26.6.3.1 from 8.6.4, "Other Transmission Technologies," contained in the 2007 edition of the Code. Paragraphs 26.6.3.1.1 through 26.6.3.1.16 provide performance-based requirements for transmission methods used by supervising station systems. Specific requirements to be followed for digital alarm communicator systems and for radio systems are provided in 26.6.3.2 and 26.6.3.3, respectively.

As explained in the commentary following A.26.6.1 and this commentary, the technical committee removed the following legacy technologies from the Code:

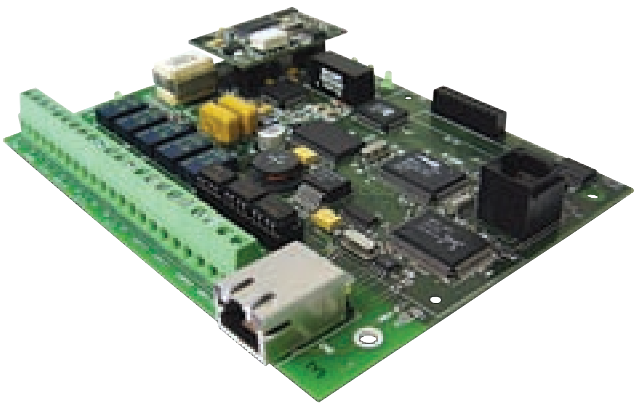
1. Active multiplex system, including systems using derived local channels
2. McCulloh systems
3. Directly connected, noncoded systems
4. Private microwave radio systems

Where existing systems continue to use these legacy technologies, their use remains acceptable since these systems still meet the performance-based requirements of 26.6.3.1.

In addition, as new technologies develop, the requirements of 26.6.3.1.1 through 26.6.3.1.16 will provide users of the Code a way to assess the acceptability and equivalency of those new technologies.

Exhibit 26.11 shows the circuit board for an internet protocol (IP) DACT. This equipment transmits data across a packet switched network using IP. The term *IP DACT* should not be confused with the traditional DACT, which is addressed in 26.6.3.2. The IP DACT shown in Exhibit 26.10 is a version that connects to a traditional DACT using inputs from two telephone lines. It should be noted that for DACTs installed in accordance with the requirements of the 2013 edition of the Code, only a single telephone line can be used unless special circumstances apply. See 26.6.3.2.1.4(A). Another illustration of equipment that falls under the requirements of 26.6.3.1 is shown in Exhibit 26.12.

EXHIBIT 26.11



Listed IP DACT That Connects Protected Premises to Supervising Station via Internet. It concentrates signals from two loop start telephone circuits into packet switched network in compliance with 26.6.3.1. (Source: Silent Knight by Honeywell, Maple Grove, MN)

EXHIBIT 26.12

Listed Supervising Station Computer and Three Models of Subscriber Premises Units: One for Contact Monitoring, One for Dialer Capture, and One for Serial Port Monitoring. (Source: Keltron Corporation, Waltham, MA)

26.6.3.1.1 Conformance. Communications methods operating on principles different from specific methods covered by this chapter shall be permitted to be installed if they conform to the performance requirements of this section and to all other applicable requirements of this Code.

26.6.3.1.2 Federal Communications Commission. Alarm system equipment and installations shall comply with the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) rules and regulations, as applicable, concerning electromagnetic radiation, use of radio frequencies, and connections to the public switched telephone network of telephone equipment, systems, and protection apparatus.

The Code recognizes that the FCC has jurisdiction over certain aspects of communications technology. While 26.6.3.1.2 specifically mentions the public switched telephone network, in fact the FCC has some jurisdiction over all providers of telephone service, including, but not limited to, broadband service providers, cable service providers, and other service providers.

26.6.3.1.3 *NFPA 70, National Electrical Code.* Equipment shall be installed in compliance with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*.

26.6.3.1.4 Communications Integrity. Provision shall be made to monitor the integrity of the transmission technology and its communications path.

26.6.3.1.5 Single Communications Path. Unless prohibited by the enforcing authority, governing laws, codes, or standards, a single transmission path shall be permitted, and the path shall be supervised at an interval of not more than 60 minutes. A failure of the path shall be annunciated at the supervising station within not more than 60 minutes. The failure to complete a signal transmission shall be annunciated at the protected premises in accordance with Section 10.15.

26.6.3.1.6 Multiple Communications Paths. If multiple transmission paths are used, the following requirements shall be met:

(1) Each path shall be supervised within not more than 6 hours.
(2) The failure of any path of a multipath system shall be annunciated at the supervising station within not more than 6 hours.
(3) The failure to complete a signal transmission shall be annunciated at the protected premises in accordance with Section 10.15.

26.6.3.1.7* Single Technology. A single technology shall be permitted to be used to create the multiple paths provided the requirements of 26.6.3.1.6(1) through 26.6.3.1.6(3).

A.26.6.3.1.7 When considering a fire alarm system utilizing a single communication path to the supervising station, consideration should be given to the risk exposure that results from the loss of that path for any period of time and for any reason. Some of these outages can be regular and predicable and others transitory.

Monitoring communications pathways is important. In fact, it is at the heart of the requirements that determine the operational reliability of the various transmission technologies.

Paragraph 26.6.3.1.5 requires notification of failure of a single transmission pathway within 60 minutes. In the 2010 edition of the Code, it was within 5 minutes. As experience was gained using IP pathways such as the Internet over the last few years, it became apparent that ISPs periodically shut down their access for routine maintenance for up to 20 minutes or more. After much discussion, the technical committee decided to extend the permitted failure notification to 60 minutes in order to avoid nuisance trouble reports due to this regularly scheduled maintenance by the ISPs.

Paragraph 26.6.3.1.6 requires systems using two or more communications pathways to monitor the integrity of each path in order to detect failures within 6 hours. It is important to note that the two pathways are not required to use different technologies. See 26.6.3.1.7. At the protected premises, failure to complete any signal transmission must be annunciated within 200 seconds as prescribed in Section 10.15, but up to 6 hours are allowed to transmit that communications failure over the remaining pathway to the supervising station for annunciation. The technical committee reduced the 24-hour requirement of the previous edition of the Code to 6 hours in the 2013 edition, recognizing that standby power provided by most service providers consists of 8 hours of continuous power or less. Refer to the commentary following A.26.6.1.

26.6.3.1.8 Spare System Unit Equipment. An inventory of spare equipment shall be maintained at the supervising station such that any failed piece of equipment can be replaced and the systems unit restored to full operation within 30 minutes of failure.

Not only must the supervising station maintain spare equipment, operators at the supervising station must be able to place the spare equipment into service within 30 minutes of unit failure. This requirement dictates a careful design of the supervising station to allow a relatively quick change out of failed equipment.

26.6.3.1.9 Loading Capacity of System Unit.

26.6.3.1.9.1 The maximum number of independent fire alarm systems connected to a single system unit shall be limited to 512.

26.6.3.1.9.2 If duplicate spare system units are maintained at the supervising station and switchover can be achieved in 30 seconds, then the system capacity shall be permitted to be unlimited.

The loading capacity of a system unit directly relates to the ability of that system to process and display signal traffic on a timely basis. The requirements of 26.6.3.1.9.1 and 26.6.3.1.9.2 set a baseline level of loading to ensure the system's ability to perform in an emergency with high signal traffic.

26.6.3.1.10 End-to-End Communication Time for Alarm. The maximum duration between the initiation of an alarm signal at the protected premises, transmission of the signal, and subsequent display and recording of the alarm signal at the supervising station shall not exceed 90 seconds.

The 90-second time limit was introduced into the Code in the late 1960s, when active multiplex technology was first recognized. At the time that the operational details of the first multiplex system were presented to the technical committee, the particular unit scanned all connected transponders every 90 seconds. After a great deal of discussion as to whether a 90-second interrogation and response cycle presented a suitable substitute for continuous electrical supervision of the communications pathway, the technical committee adopted the 90-second value and placed that value into various relevant requirements. Thus, the 90-second requirement became the standard end-to-end alarm communications time for all subsequent communications technologies.

During the early 1970s, a manufacturer submitted a proposal to the technical committee to modify the requirements to permit a time-division multiplex system that actually took 300 seconds to scan all connected transponders. The system operated by sending a reset pulse to the transponders. The system then "listened" for a status change report from each transponder during a specifically assigned timeframe consisting of either the first second or the second second of each 3-second time interval. During the third second of each 3-second time interval, the system "listened" for an alarm status change report from any connected transponder. Thus, an alarm signal could reach the multiplex receiving unit in either of two ways: during its assigned reporting second or during the third "all-alarm-status-change-reporting" second.

The technical committee eventually accepted this arrangement as meeting the intent of alarm receipt in 90 seconds. However, after considerable discussion, the technical committee decided not to accept the 300-second scan time for nonalarm status changes. Rather, the technical committee set the limit on receipt of a trouble signal as 200 seconds.

26.6.3.1.11 Unique Identifier. If a transmitter shares a transmission or communications channel with other transmitters, it shall have a unique transmitter identifier.

26.6.3.1.12 Recording and Display Rate of Subsequent Alarms. Recording and display of alarms at the supervising station shall be at a rate no slower than one complete signal every 10 seconds.

The time limit of 10 seconds sets a baseline level for the recording and display of incoming signals. This timeframe has its roots not only in the processing speed of the equipment but also takes into account the ability of an operator to perceive the nature of the signal and mentally filter the information contained in the incoming signal and what it intends to convey. However, the timeframe does not take into consideration the time it may take the operator to decide what to do about the signal nor the time it would take the operator to take the prescribed action.

26.6.3.1.13 Signal Error Detection and Correction.

26.6.3.1.13.1 Communication of alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals shall be in accordance with this section to prevent degradation of the signal in transit, which in turn would result in either of the following:

(1) Failure of the signal to be displayed and recorded at the supervising station
(2) Incorrect corrupted signal displayed and recorded at the supervising station

26.6.3.1.13.2 Reliability of the signal shall be achieved by any of the following:

(1) Signal repetition — multiple transmissions repeating the same signal
(2) Parity check — a mathematically check sum algorithm of a digital message that verifies correlation between transmitted and received message
(3) An equivalent means to 26.6.3.1.13.2(1) or 26.6.3.1.13.2(2) that provides a certainty of 99.99 percent that the received message is identical to the transmitted message

The requirements in 26.6.3.1.13.1 and 26.6.3.1.13.2 provide a baseline level of performance to help ensure that the transmission technology delivers clear and consistent signal information from the protected premises. The intent of the requirements is to offer guidance to the manufacturer using a new technology by explaining how existing technologies have achieved the objective. At the same time, 26.6.3.1.13.2(3) carefully permits alternative means of achieving the objective within a critical level of statistical certainty (99.99 percent).

26.6.3.1.14* Sharing Communications Equipment On-Premises. If the fire alarm transmitter is sharing on-premises communications equipment, the shared equipment shall be listed as communications or information technology equipment.

A.26.6.3.1.14 Most communications equipment is not specifically listed for fire alarm applications, but is listed in accordance with applicable product standard for general communications equipment and is acceptable.

The requirement for listing in 26.6.3.1.14 intends to support the requirement of 10.3.1. Paragraph A.26.6.3.1.14 helps clarify that the technical committee recognizes that, in most cases, shared communications equipment will not bear a specific listing for alarm service. Rather, the shared equipment will bear a listing for communications equipment. An example of this would be a router, switch, or other piece of data communications equipment through which alarm system data might pass.

In general, to determine whether a piece of equipment should have a specific listing for alarm service, ask the question: "Does this equipment translate or change the alarm system data in any way, or does it merely pass the alarm system data through and onto other parts of the communications pathway?" If the equipment changes or translates the data in some way, then the nature of the change or translation should be investigated to determine whether the equipment could adversely affect the transmission of the alarm data. Such investigation should help determine whether the particular piece of equipment should bear a specific listing for alarm service use.

26.6.3.1.15* Secondary Power.

A.26.6.3.1.15 This requirement is to ensure that communications equipment will operate for the same period of time on secondary power as the alarm control unit.

26.6.3.1.15.1 Premises Equipment. Secondary power capacity for all equipment necessary for the transmission of alarm, supervisory, trouble, and other signals located at the protected premises shall be as follows:

(1) Fire alarm transmitters not requiring shared on-premises communications equipment shall comply with 10.6.7.

(2) If the fire alarm transmitter is sharing on-premises communications equipment, the shared equipment shall have a secondary power capacity of 24 hours.

Exception: Secondary power capacity for shared equipment shall be permitted to have a capacity of 8 hours where acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction and where a risk analysis is performed to ensure acceptable availability is provided.

26.6.3.1.15.2 Supervising Station. Secondary power capacity for all equipment necessary for reception of alarm, supervisory, trouble, and other signals located at the supervising station shall comply with 10.6.7.

It is important to note that the requirement in 26.6.3.1.15 for 24 hours of standby power according to 10.6.7 applies to the equipment at the supervising station in 26.6.3.1.15.2, and the equipment at the protected premises in 26.6.3.1.15.1, including shared on-premises equipment such as equipment installed by the provider of the communications pathway. The requirement does not specifically apply to off-premises equipment in the communications pathway supplied by the provider of the communications pathway.

The exception to 26.6.3.1.15.1(2) allows the authority having jurisdiction to permit 8 hours of standby power for shared on-premises equipment on a case-by-case basis where a risk analysis is performed. The potential for longer power outages at specific locations — such as a protected premises or, to a lesser extent, a supervising station — statistically exceeds the likelihood of longer power outages over a wider area that might affect field-located communications pathway equipment. The standby power to the signaling pathway should be robust enough to permit the prompt transmission of a loss of power trouble signal. Then, with the longer (24 hours) standby power for the fire alarm equipment, that equipment will continue to provide a level of fire alarm protective service.

26.6.3.1.16 Unique Flaws Not Covered by This Code. If a communications technology has a unique flaw that could result in the failure to communicate a signal, the implementation of that technology for alarm signaling shall compensate for that flaw so as to eliminate the risk of missing an alarm signal.

This requirement reminds manufacturers to carefully investigate any new technology they may be considering. They must identify any unique flaws and compensate for those flaws accordingly.

26.6.3.2 Digital Alarm Communicator Systems.

26.6.3.2.1 Digital Alarm Communicator Transmitter (DACT).

26.6.3.2.1.1* Public Switched Network. A DACT shall be connected to the public switched telephone network upstream of any private telephone system at the protected premises.

(A) The connections to the public switched telephone network shall be under the control of the subscriber for whom service is being provided by the supervising station alarm system.

(B) Special attention shall be required to ensure that this connection is made only to a loop start telephone circuit and not to a ground start telephone circuit.

A.26.6.3.2.1.1 Special care should be used when connecting a DACT to a digital service such as DSL or ADSL. Filters or other special equipment might be needed to communicate reliably.

Throughout this section, the Code makes reference to the PSTN. See 3.3.290.2 for the definition of the term *public switched telephone network.* In the 2010 edition, the Code revised the definition of PSTN to take a broader view of what has traditionally constituted a PSTN and to embrace the service provided through the use of managed facilities-based voice networks (MFVN), as defined in 3.3.152.

The Code has long presumed a level of reliability of the PSTN that may no longer exist. For example, 40 years ago, nearly 100 percent of all telephone circuits extended from a telephone utility company wire center directly to a subscribers' premises. The telephone company wire center typically had standby power supplies that would supply power for at least 72 hours upon loss of primary power. Today, the PSTN serves many locales through field-located equipment that may typically have only 8 hours of standby power. Thus, the anticipated level of reliability of the traditional PSTN has devolved as the telephone utility companies have introduced new "pair sharing" technologies.

A number of other service providers, including, but not limited to, broadband service providers, cable service providers, and other service providers, have joined the public telephone company utility in providing telephone service to subscribers. The majority of these service providers use MFVNs to provide a subscriber with a telephone circuit that has the operational equivalency of the traditional PSTN. In many areas of the United States, the public telephone utility company itself provides the PSTN using an MFVN.

Not all alternative telephone service providers use MFVNs. Some providers use methods that might not have the same rigorous standards and practices as the methods employed by an MFVN. For example, some deployments of voice over internet protocol (VOIP) systems have been reported to not consistently provide a level of service reliability equivalent to that of the traditional PSTN or an MFVN.

Any time a facility changes telephone service providers, best practice would dictate that a qualified person test the alarm system to make certain it can successfully transmit signals to the supervising station.

The DACT connects to the PSTN, so that it can seize the line to which it is connected. This seizure disconnects any private telephone equipment beyond the DACT's point of connection and gives the DACT control over the line at all times. Connection to a dedicated telephone line is not required, but the connection must be to a loop start telephone line (circuit). This permits the DACT to monitor the continuity of the line from the protected premises to the first piece of telephone utility equipment.

On a loop start telephone line, the public telephone utility continuously supplies voltage, normally 48 vdc, from the telephone utility wire center or from field-located pair sharing terminal equipment where the individual line originates. A connected DACT can monitor the integrity of the connected line by reading this constant voltage. The vast majority of residential telephone connections use loop start lines.

In contrast, almost all business telephone connections, particularly those employing PBX connections, use ground start lines. To obtain dial tone and operating power on a ground start line, the user equipment momentarily connects one side of the line to earth ground. Because the public telephone utility does not supply voltage to an idle ground start line, the DACT cannot use the presence of voltage to monitor the integrity of the ground start line, as it can with a loop start line.

Functionally, a DACT can signal over a ground start line and frequently does so when used as part of a burglar alarm system. However, the DACT can only monitor a loop start line for integrity.

Each DACT must connect to its own loop start telephone line and an accepted alternate transmission technology in accordance with 26.6.3.2.1.4(A). Use of the same telephone line for several DACTs in a campus-style arrangement is not acceptable.

26.6.3.2.1.2 Signal Verification. All information exchanged between the DACT at the protected premises and the digital alarm communicator receiver (DACR) at the supervising or subsidiary station shall be by digital code or some other approved means. Signal repetition, digital parity check, or some other approved means of signal verification shall be used.

The functional requirements of 26.6.3.2.1.2 rule out the use of an analog voice tape dialer or digital voice dialer to transmit fire alarm signals. Such a device dials a predetermined telephone number and then plays a voice message such as, "There is a fire at 402 Spruce Street." Over the years, officials have reported many cases where a voice tape dialer has malfunctioned and endlessly repeated its message, tying up a vital emergency telephone line in a communications center. The Code strictly forbids the use of analog or digital voice tape dialers.

The Code also requires the DACT and the digital alarm communicator receiver (DACR) to use some method to verify the transmission of digital data.

26.6.3.2.1.3* Requirements for DACTs.

(A) A DACT shall be configured so that, when it is required to transmit a signal to the supervising station, it shall seize the telephone line (going off-hook) at the protected premises and disconnect an outgoing or incoming telephone call and prevent use of the telephone line for outgoing telephone calls until signal transmission has been completed. A DACT shall not be connected to a party line telephone facility.

(B) A DACT shall have the means to satisfactorily obtain a dial tone, dial the number(s) of the DACR, obtain verification that the DACR is able to receive signals, transmit the signal, and receive acknowledgment that the DACR has accepted that signal. In no event shall the time from going off-hook to on-hook exceed 90 seconds per attempt.

Paragraph 26.6.3.2.1.3(B) describes the normal sequence of operation for a DACT. Upon initiation of an alarm, supervisory, or trouble signal, the DACT seizes the line, obtains a dial tone, dials the number of the DACR, receives a "handshake" signal from the DACR, transmits its data, receives an acknowledgment signal — sometimes called the *kiss-off signal* — from the DACR, and hangs up. Each attempt of this calling and verification sequence must take no longer than 90 seconds to complete.

Under typical circumstances, the successful transmission of a signal should occur on the first attempt well within the 90-second period allowed. However, under the most adverse conditions, more than one attempt may be needed for a successful transmission. See 26.6.3.2.1.3(C), its related annex material, and commentary.

(C)* A DACT shall have means to reset and retry if the first attempt to complete a signal transmission sequence is unsuccessful. A failure to complete connection shall not prevent subsequent attempts to transmit an alarm where such alarm is generated from any other initiating device circuit or signaling line circuit, or both. Additional attempts shall be made until the signal transmission sequence has been completed, up to a minimum of 5 and a maximum of 10 attempts.

FAQ

What is the reason that the Code limits the number of attempts to 10?

The DACT, as described in 26.6.3.2.1.3(C), must make at least 5 attempts to complete the sequence. However, the DACT must not make more than 10 attempts, so that a malfunctioning DACT does not tie up one of the lines connected to the DACR by making an unlimited number of repeated calls.

Under the most adverse circumstances, in which the DACT finally completes a transmission on the last, or tenth, attempt, at a maximum of 90 seconds per attempt [see 26.6.3.2.1.3(B)], nearly 900 seconds, or 15 minutes, could have elapsed.

(D) If the maximum number of attempts to complete the sequence is reached, an indication of the failure shall be made at the premises.

A.26.6.3.2.1.3 To give the DACT the ability to disconnect an incoming call to the protected premises, telephone service should be of the type that provides for timed-release disconnect. In some telephone systems (step-by-step offices), timed-release disconnect is not provided.

To ensure reliability for transmission of fire alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals, 26.6.3.2.1.3 and its related annex recommendation give the DACT exclusive control over the telephone line to which it is connected.

A.26.6.3.2.1.3(C) A DACT can be programmed to originate calls to the DACR telephone lines (numbers) in any alternating sequence. The sequence can consist of single or multiple calls to one DACR telephone line (number), followed by transmissions on the alternate path or any combination thereof that is consistent with the minimum/maximum attempt requirements in 26.6.3.2.1.3(C).

26.6.3.2.1.4 Transmission Channels.

(A) A system employing a DACT shall employ one telephone line (number). In addition, one of the following transmission means shall be employed:
(1) One-way private radio alarm system
(2) Two-way RF multiplex system
(3) Transmission means complying with 26.6.3.1

Exception: Where access to two technologies in the preceding list is not available at the protected premises, with the approval of the authority having jurisdiction, a telephone line (number) shall be permitted to be used as the second transmission means. Each DACT shall be programmed to call a second DACR line (number) when the signal transmission sequence to the first called line (number) is unsuccessful. The DACT shall be capable of selecting the operable means of transmission in the event of failure of the other means. Where two telephone lines (numbers) are used, it shall be permitted to test each telephone line (number) at alternating 6-hour intervals.

The purpose of 26.6.3.2.1.4 is to provide the DACT with two reasonably reliable means of connecting to the DACR. Note that the Code has no jurisdiction over utility-provided services such as telephone services. Thus, the Code must rely on the traditionally accepted inherent reliability of all such utility-provided services. See also the commentary following A.26.6.3.2.1.1.

Recognizing that the presumed reliability of the PSTN, both traditional and MFVN based, has significantly decreased, the 2013 edition of the Code no longer allows the use of a second telephone line (number) as the second transmission means for a DACT. Several of the other choices in the previous edition of the Code for the second transmission means were also removed, either because they are no longer available or were never actually used, such as derived local channel, integrated services digital network (ISDN), and private microwave radio. The traditional cellular telephone service that had to dial a number is also no longer allowed. However, digital cellular radio utilizing ubiquitous 2G and 3G wireless networks is capable of meeting the performance-based requirements of 26.6.3.1.

The distinction between a DACS that meets the requirements of 26.6.3.2 and a system using performance-based technology that meets the requirements of 26.6.3.1 is particularly important for authorities having jurisdiction to understand. In many cases, this second system employs a listed DACT connecting to a listed module (sometimes called an IP DACT) that transmits as a packet switched network through an IP broadband data connection to the Internet. (See the commentary following Section 26.6.) Both systems appear to use DACTs, but each must comply with distinct requirements of the applicable section of the Code. The requirements of 26.6.3.2 do not need to be applied to systems addressed under the requirements of 26.6.3.1 even though they may employ a listed module interfacing with a listed DACT. The equipment manufacturer's published instructions are required to be followed in these situations, in addition to the requirements of 26.6.3.1.

Since the introduction of provisions for "Other Transmission Technologies" in the 1999 edition of the Code, a significant migration to this type of a system began. (The "Other Transmission Technologies" requirements were moved to 26.6.3.1 in the 2010 edition of the Code.) Industry spokespeople have estimated that this migration will continue until the vast majority of DACTs use IP broadband data communications technology or a yet-to-be-developed equivalent.

(B) The following requirements shall apply to all combinations listed in 26.6.3.2.1.4(A):

(1) The means for supervising each channel shall be in a manner approved for the method means of transmission employed.
(2) The interval for testing each channel shall not exceed 6 hours.

Note the additional testing and reporting requirements in 26.6.3.2.1.5(7) for call forwarded lines. In addition, it should be noted that previous editions of the Code included an exception that permitted testing to occur on alternate channels. This exception has been deleted in the 2013 edition since it was associated with the use of two telephone lines, which is now generally not permitted. See 26.6.3.2.1.4(A) and related exception.

(3) The failure of either channel shall send a trouble signal on the other channel within 4 minutes.

As important as monitoring the integrity of the transmission means is, avoiding nuisance trouble signals is equally important. The permissible 4-minute delay in transmitting a trouble signal in 26.6.3.2.1.4(B)(3) allows for momentary, or even somewhat longer, interruptions in the transmission path, such as might occur during a storm.

(4) When one transmission channel has failed, all status change signals shall be sent over the other channel.
(5) The primary channel shall be capable of delivering an indication to the DACT that the message has been received by the supervising station.

A one-way radio alarm system transmits only from a protected premises to a supervising station and has no means of receiving a signal at the protected premises from the supervising station. For this reason, the requirement in 26.6.3.2.1.4(B)(5) would not be able to be met. Thus, the one-way radio alarm system cannot serve as the primary transmission means.

(6)* The first attempt to send a status change signal shall use the primary channel.

Exception: Where the primary channel is known to have failed.

(7) Simultaneous transmission over both channels shall be permitted.
(8) Failure of telephone lines (numbers) shall be annunciated locally.

A.26.6.3.2.1.4(B)(6) Where two telephone lines (numbers) are used, care should be taken to assign the primary DACT telephone line (number) to a nonessential telephone line (number) at the protected premises so that the primary line used in the premises is not unnecessarily interrupted.

New to the 2013 edition of the Code, two telephone lines (numbers) are only permitted by the exception to 26.6.3.2.1.4(A) with the approval of the authority having jurisdiction.

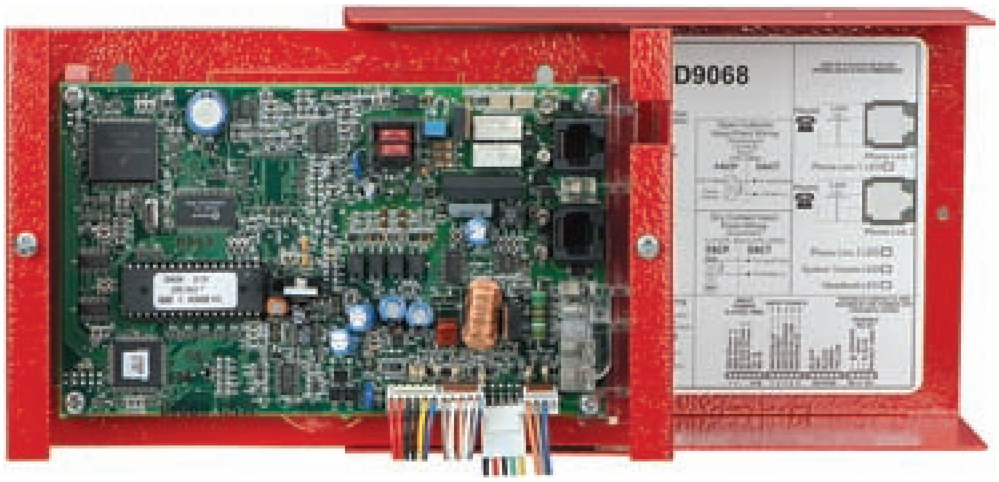
26.6.3.2.1.5 DACT Transmission Means. The following requirements shall apply to all digital alarm communications transmitters:

(1) A DACT shall be connected to two separate means of transmission at the protected premises.

(2) The DACT shall be capable of selecting the operable means of transmission in the event of failure of the other means.

If the DACT detects that one of the two transmission means has failed (loss of voltage on a wire line for example), the DACT must switch to the other operable means. The DACT must also transmit a trouble signal over the other communications means. See Exhibit 26.13 for typical connection methods to a DACT. Note that in this exhibit two telephone lines are used, which would only be permitted for existing systems or for new systems where the exception following 26.6.3.2.1.4 is used.

EXHIBIT 26.13



DACT Showing Two Phone Line Connections. (Source: Bosch Security Systems, Inc., Fairport, NY)

(3) The primary means of transmission shall be a telephone line (number) connected to the public switched network.
(4)* The first transmission attempt shall utilize the primary means of transmission.
(5) Each DACT shall be programmed to call a second receiver when the signal transmission sequence to the first called line (number) is unsuccessful.
(6) Each transmission means shall automatically initiate and complete a test signal transmission sequence to its associated receiver at least once every 6 hours. A successful signal transmission sequence of any other type, within the same 6-hour period, shall fulfill the requirement to verify the integrity of the reporting system, provided that signal processing is automated so that 6-hour delinquencies are individually acknowledged by supervising station personnel.

FAQ How often must a DACT initiate a signal?

A DACT must initiate a signal using each transmission means at least once every 6 hours to verify the end-to-end integrity of the DACS [see 26.6.3.2.1.5(6)]. If the receiving or processing equipment at the supervising station has sufficient intelligence to automatically keep track of signal traffic, any incoming signal from a particular DACT may serve to satisfy this requirement, as long as the receiver receives one signal for each transmission means during every 6-hour period. Also see the commentary following 26.6.3.2.1.4(B)(2).

(7)* If a DACT is programmed to call a telephone line (number) that is call forwarded to the line (number) of the DACR, a means shall be implemented to verify the integrity of the call forwarding feature every 4 hours.

A.26.6.3.2.1.5(4) Where two telephone lines (numbers) are used, care should be taken to assign the primary DACT telephone line (number) to a nonessential telephone line (number) at the protected premises so that the primary line used in the premises is not unnecessarily interrupted.

New to the 2013 edition of the Code, two telephone lines (numbers) are only permitted by the exception to 26.6.3.2.1.4(A) with the approval of the authority having jurisdiction.

The term *nonessential* in A.26.6.3.2.1.5(4) does not mean "seldom used." Rather, it means a telephone line that likely would not be used during an emergency. When a DACT must transmit a signal, it seizes the telephone line and disconnects any telephone subsets downstream of the DACT. Thus, a telephone line that would be needed during an emergency should not be connected to a DACT as the primary means of transmission.

On the other hand, it is preferable to connect a DACT to a telephone line that has some usage during a normal day. That way, a user of the telephone line likely would detect and then report any trouble on that line. If a telephone line is assigned exclusively to a DACT, detection and reporting of trouble on the line would occur only during an attempted transmission of the 6-hour test signal.

A.26.6.3.2.1.5(7) Because call forwarding requires equipment at a telephone company central office that could occasionally interrupt the call forwarding feature, a signal should be initiated whereby the integrity of the forwarded telephone line (number) that is being called by DACTs is verified every 4 hours. This can be accomplished by a single DACT, either in service or used solely for verification, that automatically initiates and completes a transmission sequence to its associated DACR every 4 hours. A successful signal transmission sequence of any other type within the same 4-hour period should be considered sufficient to fulfill this requirement.

Call forwarding should not be confused with WATS or 800 service. The latter, differentiated from the former by dialing the 800 prefix, is a dedicated service used mainly for its toll-free feature; all calls are preprogrammed to terminate at a fixed telephone line (number) or to a dedicated line.

Occasionally, a supervising station will maintain one or more telephone numbers in a local calling area that the telephone equipment will call forward to another number connected to the DACR. When the supervising station employs this practice, the station must verify the integrity of the call forward instruction every 4 hours to satisfy the requirement of 26.6.3.2.1.5(7). With the 24-hour test requirement of previous editions of the Code, the supervising station could accomplish this by having the service technicians coordinate the programming of the automatic daily test signal from six of the DACTs in the service area that used the call forwarded number. This arrangement allowed one of the six DACTs to initiate its test signal every 4 hours during a 24-hour period. With the 6-hour test requirement new to the 2013 edition, it requires only two of the DACTs in the service area using the call forwarded number to schedule their test signal transmissions 4 hours apart.

When a supervising station takes over the subscribers from another supervising station, common practice uses call forwarding to prevent having to reprogram new telephone numbers into the DACT at each protected premises. A series of acquisitions can create the situation in which a subscriber's DACT dials a telephone number that may be call forwarded several times before reaching the current supervising station. The requirement to verify the call forwarding every 4 hours helps ensure continuity of service.

26.6.3.2.2 Digital Alarm Communicator Receiver (DACR).

26.6.3.2.2.1 Equipment.

(A) Spare DACRs shall be provided in the supervising or subsidiary station. The spare DACRs shall be on line or able to be switched into the place of a failed unit within 30 seconds after detection of failure.

The mere presence of a spare DACR does not by itself satisfy the requirements of 26.6.3.2.2.1(A). The spare unit must either be continuously on line or be capable of being switched into place within 30 seconds of the failure. To meet the switching requirement in 26.6.3.2.2.1(A), someone must provide adequate written instructions and train the personnel on duty in the supervising station to accomplish the switchover. Preferably, the connections to the unit should terminate in a manner that permits rapid, error-free reconnection to the spare unit. For example, multiple telephone line connections could terminate in a single plug and jack assembly that would permit rapid disconnection and rapid reconnection to the second unit.

(B) One spare DACR shall be permitted to serve as a backup for up to five DACRs in use.

(C) The number of incoming telephone lines to a DACR shall be limited to eight lines, unless the signal-receiving, processing, display, and recording equipment at the supervising or subsidiary station is duplicated and a switchover is able to be accomplished in less than 30 seconds with no loss of signal during this period, in which case the number of incoming lines to the unit shall be permitted to be unlimited.

Under most circumstances, the Code allows a maximum of eight incoming lines to connect to a single DACR. This limit helps to prevent overloading a DACR's ability to receive and process signals promptly. However, some fully automated supervising station facilities may provide completely duplicate equipment arranged to complete a switchover within 30 seconds of detection of a failure with no loss of signals. In most cases, to accomplish this switchover, the supervising station provides a "hot" standby. A hot standby simultaneously receives all of the same signals received by the primary unit for which it provides standby coverage. If the primary unit fails, the standby unit simply takes over in place of the primary.

In a few cases in which a supervising station receives thousands of signals from a wide geographic area, the supervising station operating company has provided fully operational duplicate receiving and processing equipment at two remote locations. All signals are received at both locations. Failure of the equipment at either location is totally transparent to the receipt and processing of incoming signals. No signals are ever lost. The economics of this level of redundancy depends significantly on a very large number of subscribers being served by the supervising station.

26.6.3.2.2.2 Transmission Channels.

(A)* The DACR equipment at the supervising or subsidiary station shall be connected to a minimum of two separate incoming telephone lines (numbers). The lines (numbers) shall have the following characteristics:

(1) If the lines (numbers) are in a single hunt group, they shall be individually accessible; otherwise, separate hunt groups shall be required.
(2) The lines (numbers) shall be used for no other purpose than receiving signals from a DACT.
(3) The lines (numbers) shall be unlisted.

(B) The failure of any telephone line (number) connected to a DACR due to loss of line voltage shall be annunciated visually and audibly in the supervising station.

FAQ

How is monitoring for integrity accomplished for telephone lines connected to a DACR?

The DACR must connect to loop start telephone lines with voltage normally present. The DACR will monitor this voltage to ensure an operable line, extending from the supervising station to the first public telephone utility wire center or first public telephone utility field-located pair sharing terminal equipment.

On a loop start telephone line, the public telephone utility continuously supplies voltage from the telephone utility wire center where the line originates. A connected DACR can monitor the integrity of the connected line by reading this constant voltage. The vast majority of residential telephone connections use loop start lines.

In contrast, almost all business telephone connections, particularly those employing PBX connections, use ground start lines. To obtain dial tone and operating power on a ground start line, the user equipment momentarily connects one side of the line to earth ground. Because the public telephone utility does not supply voltage to an idle ground start line, the DACR cannot use the presence of voltage to monitor the integrity of the ground start line, as it can with a loop start line.

Functionally, a DACR can receive signals over a ground start line. However, the DACR can only monitor a loop start line for integrity. See 26.6.3.2.1.1(B).

The same issues discussed in the commentary following A.26.6.1 and A.26.6.3.2.1.1, relating to the provider of telephone service, apply to the supervising station.

(C)* The loading capacity for a hunt group shall be in accordance with Table 26.6.3.2.2.2(C) or be capable of demonstrating a 90 percent probability of immediately answering an incoming call.

(1) Table 26.6.3.2.2.2(C) shall be based on an average distribution of calls and an average connected time of 30 seconds for a message.

(2) The loading figures in Table 26.6.3.2.2.2(C) shall presume that the lines are in a hunt group (i.e., DACT is able to access any line not in use).

(3) A single-line DACR shall not be allowed for any of the configurations shown in Table 26.6.3.2.2.2(C).

TABLE 26.6.3.2.2.2(c) *Loading Capacities for Hunt Groups*

System Loading at the Supervising Station	*Number of Lines in Hunt Group* 1	2	3	4	5–8
With DACR lines processed in parallel					
Number of initiating circuits	NA	5,000	10,000	20,000	20,000
Number of DACTs	NA	500	1,500	3,000	3,000
With DACR lines processed serially (put on hold, then answered one at a time)					
Number of initiating circuits	NA	3,000	5,000	6,000	6,000
Number of DACTs	NA	300	800	1,000	1,000

NA: Not allowed.

(D) Each supervised burglar alarm (open/close) or each suppressed guard's tour transmitter shall reduce the allowable DACTs as follows:

(1) Up to a four-line hunt group, by 10

(2) Up to a five-line hunt group, by 7

(3) Up to a six-line hunt group, by 6
(4) Up to a seven-line hunt group, by 5
(5) Up to an eight-line hunt group, by 4

(E) Each guard's tour transmitter shall reduce the allowable DACTs as follows:
(1) Up to a four-line hunt group, by 30
(2) Up to a five-line hunt group, by 21
(3) Up to a six-line hunt group, by 18
(4) Up to a seven-line hunt group, by 15
(5) Up to an eight-line hunt group, by 12

(F)* A signal shall be received on each individual incoming DACR line at least once every 6 hours.

(G) The failure to receive a test signal from the protected premises shall be treated as a trouble signal.

The requirements of 26.6.3.2.2.2(G) relate to those contained in 26.6.3.2.1.5(6). At least once every 6 hours, each DACT must initiate a signal to verify the end-to-end integrity of the DACS for each of the transmission means used. If the receiving or processing equipment at the supervising station has sufficient intelligence to automatically keep track of signal traffic, any incoming signal from a particular DACT may serve to satisfy this requirement, as long as the receiver receives one signal for each transmission means during every 6-hour period. In addition, the manufacturer of the particular DACT must have designed this feature into the unit so that the unit knows it has successfully transmitted the signals within the 6-hour period following the previous test signals. Also refer to the commentary following 26.6.3.2.1.4(B)(2).

FAQ What is the purpose of the 6-hour test signals?

The 6-hour test signals serve to verify the end-to-end functioning of the system. The test signals monitor the integrity of the system and guard against the loss of the telephone line and the second transmission means connected to the DACT. The signals may also detect the malfunctioning of an entire hunt group at the DACR. In large supervising stations, the computer-based automation system often oversees the test signals. Small supervising stations might use a manual logging system to keep track of the test signals.

A.26.6.3.2.2.2(A) The timed-release disconnect considerations as outlined in A.26.6.3.2.1.3 apply to the telephone lines (numbers) connected to a DACR at the supervising station.

It might be necessary to consult with appropriate telephone service personnel to ensure that numbers assigned to the DACR can be individually accessed even where they are connected in rotary (a hunt group).

Paragraph A.26.6.3.2.2.2(C)(1)(d) was revised and A.26.6.3.2.2.2(F) was deleted by a tentative interim amendment (TIA).

The hunt groups provided by some older public telephone utility central office equipment may have the potential for locking onto a defective line, an action that would disable all lines in the hunt group. The requirements contained in 26.6.3.2.2.2(A) help to ensure that the design of the DACS receiving network has as high a degree of reliability as practically possible.

A.26.6.3.2.2.2(C) In determining system loading, Table 26.6.3.2.2.2(C) can be used, or it should be demonstrated that there is a 90 percent probability of incoming line availability. Table 26.6.3.2.2.2(C) is based on an average distribution of calls and an average connected time of 30 seconds per message. Therefore, where it is proposed to use Table 26.6.3.2.2.2(C) to determine system loading, if any factors are disclosed that could extend DACR connect time so as to increase the average connect time, the alternate method of determining system loading should be used. Higher (or possibly lower) loadings might be appropriate in some applications.

(1) Some factors that could increase (or decrease) the capacity of a hunt group follow:
   (a) Shorter (or longer) average message transmission time can influence hunt group capacity.
   (b) The use of audio monitoring (listen-in) slow-scan video or other similar equipment can significantly increase the connected time for a signal and reduce effective hunt group capacity.
   (c) The clustering of active burglar alarm signals can generate high peak loads at certain hours.
   (d) Inappropriate scheduling of 6-hour test signals can generate excessive peak loads.
(2) Demonstration of a 90 percent probability of incoming line availability can be accomplished by the following in-service monitoring of line activity:
   (a) Incoming lines are assigned to telephone hunt groups. When a DACT calls the main number of a hunt group, it can connect to any currently available line in that hunt group.
   (b) The receiver continuously monitors the "available" status of each line. A line is available when it is waiting for an incoming call. A line is unavailable for any of the following reasons:
      i. Currently processing a call
      ii. Line in trouble
      iii. Audio monitoring (listen-in) in progress
      iv. Any other condition that makes the line input unable to accept calls
   (c) The receiver monitors the "available" status of the hunt group. A hunt group is available when any line in it is available.
   (d) A message is emitted by the receiver when a hunt group is unavailable for more than 1 minute out of 10 minutes. This message references the hunt group and the degree of overload.

•

The loading of a DACR helps to determine the overall reliability of a DACS. System designers have two options to determine loading capacity: (1) using Table 26.6.3.2.2.2(C) or (2) ensuring 90 percent probability of a call being immediately answered. Larger capacity supervising stations that employ a computer-based automation system to oversee the handling of signals normally use the second option. Such a system can monitor traffic and report the probability of a call being immediately answered by means of an automatic and real-time–generated report.

As loading increases with the addition of new customers, management of the supervising station may refer to the statistical analysis contained in that automatic report. They can use the details to determine when they must add equipment or take other action to maintain the necessary immediate answering capability.

26.6.3.3 Radio Systems.

26.6.3.3.1 Two-Way Radio Frequency (RF) Multiplex Systems.

A two-way RF multiplex system in 26.6.3.3.1 consists of a traditional multiplex fire alarm system that uses a licensed two-way radio system to receive interrogation signals from the supervising station to the protected premises and to transmit signals from the protected premises to the supervising station. Essentially, the multiplex-based interrogation and response fire alarm system operates transparently over the radio portion of the system.

These systems must use licensed two-way radio because of the restrictions that current FCC regulations place on the number of times in a 1-hour period that an unlicensed radio transmitter may transmit information. In addition, the FCC has set aside a portion of the radio spectrum for use by radio telemetry applications. The use of licensed radio to transmit fire alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals falls within the definition of radio telemetry.

The Code states requirements for two-way RF multiplex systems that are essentially identical to those requirements that the Code stated for legacy active multiplex systems in previous editions.

26.6.3.3.1.1 Maximum Operating Time. The maximum end-to-end operating time parameters allowed for a two-way RF multiplex system shall be as follows:

(1) The maximum allowable time lapse from the initiation of a single alarm signal until it is recorded at the supervising station shall not exceed 90 seconds. When any number of subsequent alarm signals occur at any rate, they shall be recorded at a rate no slower than one every additional 10 seconds.

The requirements of 26.6.3.3.1.1(1) ensure that two-way RF multiplex systems will complete an interrogation and response sequence for each protected premises interface transceiver (transmitter/receiver) at least every 90 seconds. Any change of status that would indicate a fire alarm condition would transmit within this timeframe.

As an alternative, the system may provide some other means to ensure alarm receipt within the specified time period. For example, a designer could devise equipment that immediately transmits alarm signals from any two-way RF multiplex interface transceiver at the protected premises, regardless of what point the system has reached in its normal 90-second interrogation and response sequence.

(2) The maximum allowable time lapse from the occurrence of an adverse condition in any transmission channel until recording of the adverse condition is started shall not exceed 200 seconds for Type 4 and Type 5 systems. The requirements of 26.6.3.3.1.4 shall apply.

Paragraph 26.6.3.3.1.1(2) also ensures that, as a part of the interrogation and response sequence for each protected premises, any change of status that would indicate an adverse condition would transmit within a timeframe of at least every 200 seconds for both Type 4 and Type 5 two-way RF multiplex systems.

(3) In addition to the maximum operating time allowed for alarm signals, the requirements of one of the following shall be met:
   (a) A system unit that has more than 500 initiating device circuits shall be able to record not less than 50 simultaneous status changes within 90 seconds.
   (b) A system unit that has fewer than 500 initiating device circuits shall be able to record not less than 10 percent of the total number of simultaneous status changes within 90 seconds.

The requirements in 26.6.3.3.1.1 ensure that the portion of the two-way RF multiplex system that processes and records status changes can do so with sufficient speed to handle a reasonable volume of signal traffic, based on the system's signal capacity.

26.6.3.3.1.2 Supervisory and Control Functions. Facilities shall be provided at the supervising station for the following supervisory and control functions of the supervising or subsidiary station and the repeater station radio transmitting and receiving equipment, which shall be accomplished via a supervised circuit where the radio equipment is remotely located from the system unit:

(1) RF transmitter in use (radiating)
(2) Failure of ac power supplying the radio equipment
(3) RF receiver malfunction
(4) Indication of automatic switchover
(5) Independent deactivation of either RF transmitter controlled from the supervising station

The supervisory functions described in 26.6.3.3.1.2 help to ensure continuity of signal transmission between the protected premises and the supervising station.

26.6.3.3.1.3 Transmission Channel.

(A) The RF multiplex transmission channel shall terminate in an RF transmitter/receiver at the protected premises and in a system unit at the supervising or subsidiary station.

(B) Operation of the transmission channel shall conform to the requirements of this Code whether channels are private facilities, such as microwave, or leased facilities furnished by a communications utility company. If private signal transmission facilities are used, the equipment necessary to transmit signals shall also comply with requirements for duplicate equipment or replacement of critical components, as described in 26.6.4.2.

FAQ

What is the purpose of the requirements of 26.6.3.3.1.3(B)?

The requirements in 26.6.3.3.1.3(B) help ensure that the system complies with the requirements of the Code, even if the facilities are leased from a communications utility company. The paragraph further ensures continuity of operations by requiring either redundant critical assemblies or replacement with on-premises spares. Either action must restore service within 30 minutes. (See 26.6.3.1.8 and 26.6.4.2.)

26.6.3.3.1.4* Categories. Two-way RF multiplex systems shall be divided into Type 4 or Type 5 classifications based on their ability to perform under adverse conditions.

(A) A Type 4 system shall have two or more control sites configured as follows:
- (1) Each site shall have an RF receiver interconnected to the supervising or subsidiary station by a separate channel.
- (2) The RF transmitter/receiver located at the protected premises shall be within transmission range of at least two RF receiving sites.
- (3) The system shall contain two RF transmitters that are one of the following:
  - (a) Located at one site with the capability of interrogating all of the RF transmitters/receivers on the premises
  - (b) Dispersed with all of the RF transmitters/receivers on the premises having the capability to be interrogated by two different RF transmitters
- (4) Each RF transmitter shall maintain a status that allows immediate use at all times. Facilities shall be provided in the supervising or subsidiary station to operate any off-line RF transmitter at least once every 8 hours.
- (5) Any failure of one of the RF receivers shall in no way interfere with the operation of the system from the other RF receiver. Failure of any receiver shall be annunciated at the supervising station.
- (6) A physically separate channel shall be required between each RF transmitter or RF receiver site, or both, and the system unit.

(B) A Type 5 system shall have a single control site configured as follows:
(1) A minimum of one RF receiving site
(2) A minimum of one RF transmitting site

A.26.6.3.3.1.4 The intent of the plurality of control sites is to safeguard against damage caused by lightning and to minimize the effect of interference on the receipt of signals. The control sites can be co-located.

With a two-way RF multiplex system, each protected premises has its own RF transceiver (transmitter/receiver) unit. The requirements for a Type 4 system essentially create a two-way RF multiplex system that has redundancy of critical components. A Type 4 two-way RF multiplex system must have a plurality of control sites. Each site contains an RF transceiver (transmitter/receiver) unit. An authority having jurisdiction or a system designer, expecting a high volume of traffic or unusual transient radio frequency propagation problems, would use such a system.

The requirements for a Type 5 system provide for a minimum level of system integrity that would offer adequate service for most normal applications.

26.6.3.3.1.5 Loading Capacities.

(A) The loading capacities of two-way RF multiplex systems shall be based on the overall reliability of the signal receiving, processing, display, and recording equipment at the supervising or subsidiary station and the capability to transmit signals during adverse conditions of the transmission channels.

(B) Allowable loading capacities shall comply with Table 26.6.3.3.1.5(B).

TABLE 26.6.3.3.1.5(b) *Loading Capacities for Two-Way RF Multiplex Systems*

	System Type	
Trunks	***Type 4***	***Type 5***
Maximum number of alarm service initiating device circuits per primary trunk facility	5,120	1,280
Maximum number of leg facilities for alarm service per primary trunk facility	512	128
Maximum number of leg facilities for all types of alarm service per secondary trunk facility*	128	128
Maximum number of all types of initiating device circuits per primary trunk facility in any combination	10,240	2,560
Maximum number of leg facilities for types of alarm service per primary trunk facility in any combination*	1,024	256
System Units at the Supervising Station		
Maximum number of all types of initiating device circuits per system unit*	10,240	10,240
Maximum number of protected buildings and premises per system unit	512	512
Maximum number of alarm service initiating device circuits per system	5,120	5,120
Systems Emitting from Subsidiary Station†	—	—

*Includes every initiating device circuit (e.g., waterflow, alarm, supervisory, guard, burglary, hold-up).
†Same as system units at the supervising station.

The loading of a two-way RF multiplex system depends on the capability of the type of system. Because a Type 4 system has a redundant transceiver (transmitter/receiver) exerting control over the interrogation and response sequence between the protected premises and the supervising station, it has the greatest permitted system loading. A Type 5 system does not have redundant transceivers in control of the system, so it has a more limited trunk capacity.

(C) The capacity of a system unit shall be permitted to be unlimited if the signal-receiving, processing, display, and recording equipment are duplicated at the supervising station and a switchover is able to be accomplished in not more than 30 seconds, with no loss of signals during this period.

The requirements of 26.6.3.3.1.5(C) modify the lower half of Table 26.6.3.3.1.5(B). However, to meet these requirements, a two-way RF multiplex system would have to employ complete redundancy of all critical components and complete a switchover in 30 seconds with no loss of signals.

Systems that meet these requirements generally process all incoming signals in tandem, that is, both the main unit and the standby unit process incoming signals at all times. When the main unit fails, the standby unit continues to function normally. Operators would actually change over only those incidental peripheral devices that have no required redundancy.

26.6.3.3.1.6 Adverse Conditions.

(A) The occurrence of an adverse condition on the transmission channel between a protected premises and the supervising station that prevents the transmission of any status change signal shall be automatically indicated and recorded at the supervising station. This indication and record shall identify the affected portions of the system so that the supervising station operator will be able to determine the location of the adverse condition by trunk or leg facility, or both.

Interrogation and response transmission, back and forth along the communications path, monitors the integrity of two-way RF multiplex transmission technology. The satisfactory exchange of data ensures that all trunks and legs remain operational. If the system does not successfully complete an interrogation and response sequence, an unsuccessful sequence can indicate the possible failure of a trunk or a leg. In such a case, 26.6.3.3.1.6(A) requires the system to notify the supervising station and provide sufficient detail to allow prompt troubleshooting and repair of the trunk or leg. This adverse condition must be indicated as a trouble signal as required by 10.15.1.

(B) For two-way RF multiplex systems that are part of a central station alarm system, restoration of service to the affected portions of the system shall be automatically recorded. When service is restored, the first status change of any initiating device circuit, any initiating device directly connected to a signaling line circuit, or any combination thereof that occurred at any of the affected premises during the service interruption also shall be recorded.

Two-way RF multiplex systems that serve a central station fire alarm system not only must automatically record restoration of interrupted service but must also report the first status change on any connected initiating device circuit or any connected initiating device. This reporting requirement means that for each connected initiating device circuit or any connected initiating device, the equipment at the protected premises must retain the signal during a transmission interruption and, upon restoration of the transmission path, report the first status change that occurred during the transmission interruption.

26.6.3.3.2* One-Way Private Radio Alarm Systems.

One-way private radio alarm systems in 26.6.3.3.2 contemplate the use of a single radio alarm transmitter (RAT) at a protected premises that transmits fire alarm, supervisory, and trouble signals from the protected premises to at least two radio alarm repeater station receivers (RARSRs). These RARSRs likely would be located in different geographic locations. Usually, they would be part of a network of multiple RARSRs located at widely diverse geographic locations throughout a city, county, or other political subdivision. This network of RARSRs would connect through a suitable transmission path to the radio alarm supervising station receiver (RASSR).

As this one-way radio system does not have interrogation and response capability, the use of either multiple RARSRs or multiple RASSRs would increase the likelihood that the single transmitter would successfully transmit a signal that could be received by the supervising station. In creating the network of RARSRs or RASSRs, engineers probably would conduct radio propagation studies to determine factors likely to influence the reception of signals from transmitters at various protected premises.

To create the requirements for an RF transmission system that does not have an interrogation and response sequence to monitor the integrity of the transmission of signals between the protected premises and the supervising station, the Technical Committee on Supervising Station Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems borrowed heavily from the requirements for DACSs.

Exhibit 26.14 shows one-way private radio alarm system equipment.

EXHIBIT 26.14

One-Way Private Radio Alarm System Equipment. (Source: Keltron Corporation, Waltham, MA)

A.26.6.3.3.2 Originally the concept of one-way private radio was codified for a one-way system requiring at least two receiving towers or repeaters. Other similar systems have been developed that use this basic principle. Among them is the concept of the "mesh network" where a premises transmitter can access multiple nearby transmitters.

It is difficult to reliably test redundant paths on a mesh radio network without significant impact on the system and considerable efforts of time and personnel.

A remedy is to have the mesh network system equipment generate a report at the protected premises or supervising station showing redundant pathways. Additionally, the mesh system equipment at the protected premises and at the supervising station periodically determine the number of viable redundant paths and generate a trouble signal whenever the number falls below two paths, as is required by 26.6.3.3.2.

The "mesh network" differs from the traditional one-way radio system in that it does not depend on two or more dedicated repeating station towers installed at fixed locations throughout a coverage area. Instead the RATs at each protected premises serve the repeater function themselves. Since each RAT must be capable of receiving signals in order to retransmit them, a signal acknowledgment is also possible and is commonly used to improve the efficient use of available bandwidth. Also, transmitted power levels can often be reduced, since a RAT need only be heard by several of its nearest neighbors instead of a typically more distant receiving tower. This reduces interference of signals when two or more RATs attempt to transmit simultaneously.

An alarm signal from a protected premises RAT is transmitted first to every neighboring RAT in range. The signal then proceeds in "hops" from neighbor to neighbor until reaching the supervising station. An efficient mesh, therefore, depends on a sufficient density of neighboring protected premises subscribing to the same network. Once built out, the mesh architecture provides a potentially enormous number of redundant paths, which will change dynamically as subscribers are added or removed, but the network will be "self-healing" and always able to find multiple redundant paths to the RASSR.

26.6.3.3.2.1 Independent Receivers.

FAQ What type of network is most commonly used for a one-way private radio alarm system?

The requirements in 26.6.3.3.2.1 for a one-way private radio alarm system allow the use of either a private system operated by a single alarm service provider or a multi-user system operated by a one-way radio network provider. Most systems communicate through a multi-user network.

Paragraph 26.6.3.3.2.1(C) also permits a RAT to transmit directly to a single RASSR as long as the RAT has the capability of receiving an acknowledgment that the RASSR has received the transmitted signal. Such an arrangement, of course, belies the title "one-way," since communication would in fact take place in two directions, or "two ways."

(A) The requirements of 26.6.3.3.2 for a radio alarm repeater station receiver (RARSR) shall be satisfied if the signals from each radio alarm transmitter (RAT) are received and supervised, in accordance with Chapter 26, by at least two independently powered, independently operating, and separately located RARSRs or radio alarm supervising station receivers (RASSRs), or by one of each.
(B) At least two separate paths shall be provided from a RAT to the ultimate RASSR.
(C) Only one path to the RASSR shall be required to be utilized in the event alarms can be transmitted from a RAT to the RASSR and the RAT has the ability to receive a positive acknowledgment that the RASSR has received the signal.

26.6.3.3.2.2* Maximum Operating Time. The end-to-end operating time parameters allowed for a one-way radio alarm system shall be as follows:

(1) There shall be a 90 percent probability that the time between the initiation of a single alarm signal until it is recorded at the supervising station will not exceed 90 seconds.
(2) There shall be a 99 percent probability that the time between the initiation of a single alarm signal until it is recorded at the supervising station will not exceed 180 seconds.
(3) There shall be a 99.999 percent probability that the time between the initiation of a single alarm signal until it is recorded at the supervising station will not exceed 7.5 minutes (450 seconds), at which time the RAT shall cease transmitting. When any number of subsequent alarm signals occurs at any rate, they shall be recorded at an average rate no slower than one every additional 10 seconds.
(4) In addition to the maximum operating time allowed for alarm signals, the system shall be able to record not less than 12 simultaneous status changes within 90 seconds at the supervising station.
(5) The system shall be supervised to ensure that at least two independent RARSRs or one RARSR and one independent RASSR are receiving signals for each RAT during each 24-hour period.

A.26.6.3.3.2.2 It is intended that each RAT communicate with two or more independently located RARSRs. The location of such RARSRs should be such that they do not share common facilities.

NOTE: All probability calculations required for the purposes of Chapter 17 should be made in accordance with established communications procedures, should assume the maximum channel loading parameters specified, and should further assume that 25 RATs are actively in alarm and are being received by each RARSR.

As one-way private radio alarm systems do not have an interrogation and response sequence to verify the operating capability of the communications channel and all equipment associated with it, the system must rely on other means to achieve an acceptable level of operational integrity. The probabilities specified in 26.6.3.3.2.2(1), 26.6.3.3.2.2(2), and 26.6.3.3.2.2(3) help to ensure that level of integrity. In order to show compliance with the specified probabilities, the manufacturers of private radio alarm system equipment will perform a statistical analysis of system operation under conditions of maximum channel loading to derive the signal throughput probabilities mathematically.

In a true "one-way" system where the RAT is not capable of receiving an acknowledgement of receipt of the transmitted signal, in order to achieve the required probability of successful reception, a RAT will typically transmit the signal multiple times. The signal repetition may continue for an extended period of time not exceeding 7.5 minutes (450 seconds) according to 26.6.3.3.2.2(3).

In a "mesh network" type system, the RAT is typically capable of receiving an acknowledgement of signal reception, and it will cease transmission as soon as an acknowledgement is received from any of its nearest neighbor RATs acting as RARSRs, which will then propagate the signal to the supervising station RASSR.

26.6.3.3.2.3 Supervision. Equipment shall be provided at the supervising station for the supervisory and control functions of the supervising or subsidiary station and for the repeater station radio transmitting and receiving equipment. This shall be accomplished via a supervised circuit where the radio equipment is remotely located from the system unit and the conditions of 26.6.3.3.2.3(A) through 26.6.3.3.2.3(D) are met.

(A) The following conditions shall be supervised at the supervising station:
(1) Failure of ac power supplying the radio equipment
(2) Malfunction of RF receiver
(3) Indication of automatic switchover, if applicable

(B) Interconnections between elements of transmitting equipment, including any antennas, shall be supervised either to cause an indication of failure at the protected premises or to transmit a trouble signal to the supervising station.

(C) If elements of transmitting equipment are physically separated, the wiring or cabling between them shall be protected by conduit.

(D) Personnel shall be dispatched to arrive within 12 hours to initiate maintenance after detection of primary power failure.

The specified supervisory functions of 26.6.3.3.2.3(A), the requirements of 26.6.3.3.2.3(B), and the installation requirements of 26.6.3.3.2.3(C) help to ensure the continuity of signal transmission between the protected premises and the supervising station. Paragraphs 26.6.3.3.2.3(B) and 26.6.3.3.2.3(C) address two serious points of potential failure. Either the loss of the antenna or the loss of connection between the transmitter and the antenna would impair transmission.

In some systems, the transmitter connects directly to the antenna. In others, the installer locates the antenna at a point in the building more advantageous for successful transmission of a signal. The requirement in 26.6.3.3.2.3(B) helps ensure that a trouble signal resulting from the loss of the antenna or its connection will annunciate at least locally. The installation requirement in 26.6.3.3.2.3(C) further requires mechanical protection. An installer would achieve this protection by installing the conductors between the transmitter and the remote antenna in conduit.

26.6.3.3.2.4 Transmission Channels. Transmission channels shall comply with 26.6.3.3.2.4(A) through 26.6.3.3.2.4(F).

(A) The one-way RF transmission channel shall originate with a RAT at the protected premises and shall terminate at the RF receiving system of an RARSR or RASSR capable of receiving transmissions from such transmitting devices.

(B) A receiving network transmission channel shall terminate at an RARSR at one end and with either another RARSR or an RASSR at the other end.

The requirements in 26.6.3.3.2.4(B) permit the overall system architecture necessary to develop a network suitably robust to handle a large number of RATs. The network interconnections can use multiple RARSRs that, in turn, repeat the received signals to other RARSRs until the signals ultimately reach a RASSR.

Along each segment of the transmission path, at least two RARSRs must always receive the signal.

(C) Operation of receiving network transmission channels shall conform to the requirements of this Code whether channels are private facilities, such as microwave, or leased facilities furnished by a communications utility company.

The requirement in 26.6.3.3.2.4(C) intends to ensure that the system will comply with the Code, even if the installer leases facilities from a communications utility company or some other one-way radio network service provider.

(D) If private signal transmission facilities are used, the equipment necessary to transmit signals shall also comply with requirements for duplicate equipment or replacement of critical components as described in 26.6.4.2.

The requirements in 26.6.3.3.2.4(D) intend to further ensure continuity of operations by requiring either redundant critical assemblies or an arrangement such that technicians can replace critical assemblies with on-premises spares and restore service within 30 minutes.

(E) The system shall provide information that indicates the quality of the received signal for each RARSR supervising each RAT in accordance with 26.6.3.3.2 and shall provide information at the supervising station when such signal quality falls below the minimum signal quality levels set forth in 26.6.3.3.2.

The system must monitor the quality of the transmitted signal, including the various operating time parameters specified in 26.6.3.3.2.2.

FAQ

What is one method used to achieve compliance with 26.6.3.3.2.4(E)?

To accomplish the requirement of 26.6.3.3.2.4(E), one design provides each RAT with an internal clock. Each transmitted signal includes the time of first transmission and the current time, along with the alarm, supervisory, or trouble data. A software program connected to the RASSR can use the time information from each received signal to calculate a statistical analysis that verifies compliance with the time probability parameters of 26.6.3.3.2.2.

(F) Each RAT shall be installed in such a manner so as to provide a signal quality over at least two independent one-way RF transmission channels, of the minimum quality level specified, that satisfies the performance requirements in 26.6.2.3 and 26.6.4.

26.6.3.3.2.5 System Categories. One-way radio alarm systems shall be divided into two categories on the basis of the following number of RASSRs present in the system:

(1) A Type 6 system shall have one RASSR and at least two RARSRs.
(2) A Type 7 system shall have more than one RASSR and at least two RARSRs.
(3) In a Type 7 system, when more than one RARSR is out of service and, as a result, any RATs are no longer being supervised, the affected supervising station shall be notified.
(4) In a Type 6 system, when any RARSR is out of service, a trouble signal shall be annunciated at the supervising station.

A Type 6 one-way private radio alarm system serves a single supervising station. A Type 7 one-way private radio alarm system serves more than one supervising station. A multi-user one-way radio network used to connect one or more protected premises to a supervising station most closely fits the Type 7 system description.

26.6.3.3.2.6 Loading Capacities. The loading capacities of one-way radio alarm systems shall be based on the overall reliability of the signal-receiving, processing, display, and recording equipment at the supervising or subsidiary station and the capability to transmit signals during adverse conditions of the transmission channels. Loading capacities shall comply with 26.6.3.3.2.6(A) and 26.6.3.3.2.6(B).

(A) Allowable loading capacities shall be in accordance with Table 26.6.3.3.2.6(A), except as modified by the following:

(1) Each guard's tour transmitter shall reduce the allowable RATs by 15.
(2) Each two-way protected premises radio transmitter shall reduce the allowable RATs by two.
(3) Each supervised burglar alarm (open/close) or each suppressed guard's tour transmitter shall reduce the allowable RATs by five.

TABLE 26.6.3.3.2.6(a) *Loading Capacities of One-Way Radio Alarm Systems*

	System Type	
Radio Alarm Repeater Station Receiver (RARSR)	***Type 6***	***Type 7***
Maximum number of fire alarm service initiating device circuits per RARSR	5,120	5,120
Maximum number of RATs for fire	512	512
Maximum number of all types of initiating device circuits per RARSR in any combination*	10,240	10,240
Maximum number of RATs for all types of fire alarm service per RARSR in any combination*	1,024	1,024
System Units at the Supervising Station		
Maximum number of all types of initiating device circuits per system unit*	10,240	10,240
Maximum number of fire-protected buildings and premises per system unit	512	512
Maximum number of fire alarm service initiating device circuits per system unit	5,120	5,120

*Includes every initiating device circuit (e.g., waterflow, fire alarm, supervisory, guard, burglary, hold-up).

(B) If the signal-receiving, processing, display, and recording equipment is duplicated at the supervising station and a switchover is able to be accomplished in not more than 30 seconds, with no loss of signals during this period, the capacity of a system unit shall be permitted to be unlimited.

Paragraph 26.6.3.3.2.6(B) modifies the requirements for system units at the supervising station given in Table 26.6.3.3.2.6(A). However, to meet these requirements, a one-way private radio alarm system would have to employ complete redundancy of all critical components and complete a switchover in 30 seconds with no loss of signals.

Systems that meet these requirements generally process all incoming signals in tandem, that is, both the main unit and the standby unit process incoming signals at all times. When the main unit fails, the standby unit continues to function normally. Operators would actually change over only those incidental peripheral devices that have no required redundancy.

26.6.3.3.2.7 Adverse Conditions. The system shall be supervised to ensure that at least two independent radio alarm repeater station receivers (RARSRs) are receiving signals for each radio alarm transmitter (RAT) during each 24-hour period.

(A) The occurrence of a failure to receive a signal by either RARSR shall be automatically indicated and recorded at the supervising station.
(B) The indication shall identify which RARSR failed to receive such supervisory signals.
(C) Received test signals shall not be required to be indicated at the supervising station.

The satisfactory receipt of at least one transmission every 24 hours by at least two independent radio alarm repeater station receivers (RARSRs) monitors the integrity of one-way radio transmission technology. If receivers do not receive such a signal, then 26.6.3.3.2.7(A) requires the system to notify the supervising station. This adverse condition must be indicated as a trouble signal as required by 10.15.1.

26.6.4 Display and Recording Requirements for All Transmission Technologies.

FAQ

What does 26.6.4 specify?

Subsection 26.6.4 specifies the content and nature of the display and recording of signals received at a supervising station. The requirements take into account a reasonable quantity of signal traffic. They also consider certain ergonomic necessities for interfacing electronically reproduced signals with one or more human operators.

26.6.4.1* Any status changes, including the initiation or restoration to normal of a trouble condition, that occur in an initiating device or in any interconnecting circuits or equipment, including the local protected premises controls from the location of the initiating device(s) to the supervising station, shall be presented in a form to expedite prompt operator interpretation. Status change signals shall provide the following information:

(1) Identification of the type of signal to show whether it is an alarm, supervisory, delinquency, or trouble signal
(2) Identification of the signal to differentiate between an initiation of an alarm, a supervisory, a delinquency, or a trouble signal and a clearing from one or more of these conditions
(3) Identification of the site of origin of each status change signal
(4)* Identification of specific types of signals that dictate a different response

A.26.6.4.1 The signal information can be permitted to be provided in coded form. Records can be permitted to be used to interpret these codes.

A.26.6.4.1(4) Any signal that would dictate a different response, such as carbon monoxide alarms or mass notification alarms, should be individually identifiable so the appropriate response to the event can be initiated. There are more types of alarms and other signals that are being received at supervising stations and that require different responses by supervising station operators. These signals could be other than fire, but still life safety in nature, and must be uniquely identified because their signal is indicative of a different response.

26.6.4.2* If duplicate equipment for signal receiving, processing, display, and recording is not provided, the installed equipment shall be designed so that any critical assembly is able to be replaced from on-premises spares and the system is able to be restored to service within 30 minutes. A critical assembly shall be an assembly in which a malfunction prevents the receipt and interpretation of signals by the supervising station operator.

Exception: Proprietary station systems.

A.26.6.4.2 In order to expedite repairs, it is recommended that spare modules, such as printed circuit boards, displays, or printers, be stocked at the supervising station.

The requirements in 26.6.4.2 ensure that a technician will promptly repair any malfunction in a critical assembly, as defined in this paragraph. The technician may repair the defective assembly or, more often, replace the defective assembly with an on-premises spare. Any assembly too complex for a technician to readily repair requires a duplicate. Note that the exception limits the application of 26.6.4.2 to central station and remote supervising station alarm systems.

26.6.4.3* Any method of recording and display or indication of change of status signals shall be permitted, provided that all of the following conditions are met:

(1) Each change of status signal requiring action to be taken by the operator shall result in an audible signal and not less than two independent methods of identifying the type, condition, and location of the status change.
(2) Each change of status signal shall be automatically recorded. The record shall provide the type of signal, condition, and location, as required by 26.6.4.1, in addition to the time and date the signal was received.
(3) Failure of an operator to acknowledge or act upon a change of status signal shall not prevent subsequent alarm signals from being received, indicated or displayed, and recorded.
(4) Change of status signals requiring action to be taken by the operator shall be displayed or indicated in a manner that clearly differentiates them from those that have been acted upon and acknowledged.
(5) Each incoming signal to a DACR shall cause an audible signal that persists until manually acknowledged.

Exception: Test signals required by 26.6.3.2.1.5(6) received at a DACR.

A.26.6.4.3 For all forms of transmission, the maximum time to process an alarm signal should be 90 seconds. The maximum time to process a supervisory signal should be 4 minutes. The time to process an alarm or supervisory signal is defined as that time measured from receipt of a signal until retransmission or subscriber contact is initiated.

When the level of traffic in a supervising station system reaches a magnitude such that delayed response is possible, even if the loading tables or loading formulas of this Code are not exceeded, it is envisioned that it will be necessary to employ an enhanced method of processing.

For example, in a system where a single DACR instrument provided with fire and burglar alarm service is connected to multiple telephone lines, it is conceivable that, during certain periods of the day, fire alarm signals could be delayed by the security signaling traffic, such as opening and closing signals. Such an enhanced system would perform as follows, upon receipt of a signal:

(1) Automatically process the signals, differentiating between those that require immediate response by supervising station personnel and those that need only be logged
(2) Automatically provide relevant subscriber information to assist supervising station personnel in their response
(3) Maintain a timed, unalterable log of the signals received and the response of supervising station personnel to such signals

26.6.5 Testing and Maintenance Requirements for All Transmission Technologies. Testing and maintenance of communications methods shall be in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 14.

References Cited in Commentary

ANSI/UL 827, *Standard for Central-Station Alarm Services*, 2008 edition, American National Standards Institute, Inc., New York, NY.

ANSI /UL 1981, *Standard for Central Station Automation Systems*, 2003, American National Standards Institute, Inc., New York, NY.

Approval Guide, FM Global, Norwood, MA, published annually.
FM Approval Standard 3011, *Central Station Service for Fire Alarms and Protective Equipment Supervision*, April 1999, FM Global, Norwood, MA.
Manual of Style for NFPA Technical Committee Documents, 2004 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.
NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code®*, 2011 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.
NFPA 71, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Signaling Systems for Central Station Service* (incorporated into NFPA 70 in 1993), National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.
NFPA 600, *Standard on Industrial Fire Brigades*, 2010 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.
NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems*, 2013 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.
UL Fire Protection Equipment Directory, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL, published annually.

CHAPTER

27

Public Emergency Alarm Reporting Systems

Chapter 27 covers the configuration, performance, installation, and operation of all public emergency alarm reporting systems and auxiliary alarm systems. Throughout the text, in keeping with the broader scope of the overall Code, the technical committee has continued to keep the wording more suitably generic to permit and encourage the use of these systems for all types of emergency alarms.

The following list is a summary of significant changes to the chapter on public emergency alarm reporting systems in the 2013 edition:

- Revised 27.1.1 clarifying the various system applications that are covered by this chapter
- New 27.4.3.3 prohibiting the use of unlicensed radio frequencies on wireless networks
- Revised 27.4.3.5 clarifying wireless network capacity for the number of alarm boxes on a single radio frequency
- New 27.6.3.1.3 describing the wiring requirements between the auxiliary alarm system and the auxiliary alarm box or master alarm box
- Revised 27.6.3.2.2.1 clarifying the types of auxiliary alarm systems

Exhibit 27.1 shows the typical installation of a public emergency alarm reporting system located at a major office building complex.

Exhibit 27.2 shows the installation of a public emergency alarm reporting system box that is privately owned and located on a large college campus.

EXHIBIT 27.1

Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System Box 1896.

EXHIBIT 27.2

Privately Owned Public Emergency Alarm Reporting System Box. (Source: Jeffrey G. Knight, Superintendent of Fire Alarm & Communications, Newton Fire Department, Newton, MA)

27.1 Application

27.1.1 The provisions of this chapter apply to the proper configuration, performance, installation, and operation of public emergency alarm reporting systems and auxiliary alarm systems. Public emergency alarm reporting systems shall consist of alarm boxes and alarm processing equipment that communicate on a wired or wireless network(s), one-way or two-way, meeting the requirements of this chapter. This shall include systems that use a communications infrastructure that is publicly owned, operated, and controlled or where public emergency alarm reporting systems and equipment are used in other applications.

The key to understanding this chapter rests with the last sentence in 27.1.1. The systems described in this chapter use a communications infrastructure owned, operated, and controlled by a public agency or where public emergency alarm reporting systems and equipment are used in other applications.

Originally, the contents of this chapter, along with the requirements that now reside in NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems*, appeared first as part of a general NFPA signaling standard. Later, the NFPA Standards Council divided the requirements into a public fire communications standard under the designation of NFPA 73 (not to be confused with the current NFPA 73, which has nothing to do with alarm systems). In the early 1970s, NFPA began to consolidate all fire service–related standards using standard numbers 1000 and above. At that time, NFPA 73 became NFPA 1221.

In July of 1990, the NFPA Standards Council disbanded all the then-existing signaling systems technical committees and reconstituted the NFPA signaling systems project to create a single, unified national fire alarm code. At that time, the Standards Council directed that the municipal emergency reporting boxes, their related communications pathways, and the auxiliary alarm systems portions of NFPA 1221 be transferred to the new signaling project and become a chapter in the new *NFPA 72, National Fire Alarm Code*.

Chapter 27 provides requirements for publicly accessible alarm boxes installed throughout a community that connect to a receiving location that meets the requirements of NFPA 1221 using communications pathways owned, operated, and controlled by a public authority, such as a municipal government. It also provides the same requirements where these systems and equipment are owned and used in other applications, such as college campuses, hospitals, and industrial complexes. Such boxes permit members of the public to transmit a request for emergency response from the public authority or from campus police, facility security, safety departments, and similar entities when systems are not owned by a public authority. In the simplest arrangement, these boxes transmit a signal indicating the need for response to a fire. In other, more complex arrangements, alarm boxes transmit distinct signals indicating the need for a variety of different types of emergency response, such as fire, police, emergency medical, or even vehicle repair services on limited access highways.

This chapter also provides requirements for special alarm boxes, known as master (alarm) boxes, that provide an interface between a protected premises alarm system and the public emergency alarm reporting system. Signals from the protected premises transmit to the communications center through the public emergency alarm reporting system. When such a connection is made, the entire alarm system becomes designated as an auxiliary alarm system. (See 27.1.8.)

27.1.2 The installation and use of public emergency alarm reporting systems and auxiliary alarm systems shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

Chapter 27 addresses public emergency alarm reporting systems and auxiliary alarm systems that connect an alarm system at a protected premises to a public emergency alarm reporting system. Public emergency alarm reporting systems are also known as municipal emergency (fire) alarm systems. Paragraph 3.3.215 defines the term *public emergency alarm reporting system* as "a system of alarm-initiating devices, transmitting and receiving equipment, and communication infrastructure (other than a public telephone network) used to communicate with the communications center to provide any combination of manual or auxiliary alarm service." The term *communications center,* defined in 3.3.53, houses the central operating part of the public emergency alarm reporting system. (See Exhibit 27.3.) Larger municipalities usually locate the communications center at a facility specially designed for the purpose.

Smaller communities often locate the communications center at the fire station, police station, sheriff's office, or even a private agency that has contracted with one or more

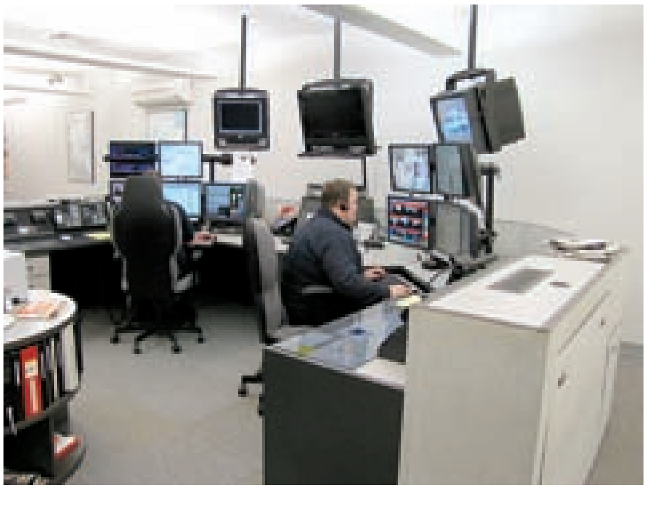


EXHIBIT 27.3

Communications Center. (Source: Lakes Region Mutual Fire Aid, Laconia, NH; photo by Debbie Kardaseski) municipalities to provide public emergency communications services. Rarely, a small community that has a high-value property, such as a large hospital complex or college campus, may provide a public emergency alarm reporting system in order to hasten the dispatch of emergency responders to alarm signals from the buildings at the high-value property.

NFPA 1221 addresses the facilities and operations of communications centers, while *NFPA 72* addresses the alarm systems used for signaling to the communications center.

The term *auxiliary alarm system* is defined in 3.3.215.1 as "a protected premises fire alarm system or other emergency system at the protected premises and the system used to connect the protected premises system to a public emergency alarm reporting system for transmitting an alarm to the communications center." Where permitted by the authority having jurisdiction, fire alarm systems at a protected premises can connect to the public emergency alarm reporting system as a means of transmitting alarm signals to the communications center. The method of connecting the building alarm system to a public emergency alarm reporting system will depend on the type of public reporting system.

FAQ What two methods does the Code offer for connecting a building alarm system to a communications center that uses a wired network?

Where the public emergency alarm reporting system uses alarm boxes connected to a wired network, the Code offers two methods to connect a building fire alarm system: a *local energy type auxiliary alarm system*, defined in 3.3.215.1.1, and a *shunt-type auxiliary alarm system*, defined in 3.3.215.1.2.

Boxes using a wireless network or boxes using a telephone (series) wired network require a local energy auxiliary connection.

27.1.3 The requirements of this chapter shall apply to systems and equipment for the transmission and reception of alarm and other emergency signals, including those from auxiliary alarm systems, connected to the public emergency alarm reporting system.

27.1.4 The requirements of Chapters 10 and 14 shall also apply unless they are in conflict with this chapter.

27.1.5 Only those requirements from Chapter 7 that are required by Chapter 14 shall apply.

27.1.6 The requirements of this chapter shall not apply to Chapter 29 unless otherwise noted.

27.1.7 The application of public emergency alarm reporting systems and auxiliary alarm systems to provide defined reporting functions from or within private premises shall be permitted where approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

Historically, the requirements of Chapter 27 have permitted the transmission of only fire alarm signals or trouble signals relating to the reporting system itself to the communications center. An exception exists in the permissive requirements of 27.2.2.

A municipality, or other governmental or private entity, that controls and uses public emergency alarm reporting systems and auxiliary alarm systems may exercise its right as an authority having jurisdiction and permit the transmission of supervisory or trouble signals from buildings. This can be achieved by using a wireless network or wired network multizone electronic master or auxiliary boxes that provide for the transmission of multiple data points from each box.

27.1.8* Where a protected premises fire alarm system or other emergency system at the protected premises has its signals sent to a communications center via public emergency alarm reporting system, the protected premises system shall become an auxiliary alarm system.

A.27.1.8 Auxiliary alarm systems include the equipment at the protected premises as well as the equipment connecting it to the public emergency alarm reporting system. While the operational requirements relating to the signals sent off-premises fall under the scope of Chapter 27, the requirements of Chapter 23 also apply.

27.2 General Fundamentals

27.2.1* Public emergency alarm reporting systems shall be designed, installed, operated, and maintained in accordance with this chapter to provide reliable transmission and receipt of alarms in a manner acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

A.27.2.1 When choosing from available options to implement a public emergency alarm reporting system, the operating agency should consider which of the choices would facilitate the maximum reliability of the system, where such a choice is not cost prohibitive.

27.2.2 A public emergency alarm reporting system, as described herein, shall be permitted to be used for the transmission of other signals or calls of a public emergency nature, provided that such transmission does not interfere with the transmission and receipt of fire alarms.

Subsection 27.2.2 permits a public emergency alarm reporting system to transmit other signals of a public emergency nature, such as a request for emergency medical response or police response. The Code permits these transmissions as long as they do not interfere with the transmission of fire alarm signals. In most cases where a system will transmit multiple signals from a municipal box, it will use either a wireless network, multi-zone electronic or a telephone (series) type box.

Today, wireless and wired network systems frequently offer the option of transmitting several distinct data points from a single box. The system operator may assign these data points to other emergency response functions. Some of these functions include medical and terrorist alerts from buildings and travelers assistance functions to summon aid in the case of various emergencies on limited-access highways. A telephone (series) reporting system allows a person using the telephone handset to request various kinds of assistance from the operator at the communications center.

27.2.3* All devices shall be designed to function satisfactorily under the climatic and environmental conditions to which they could be exposed.

A.27.2.3 Consideration should be given to the fact that devices could be installed in areas that are exposed to higher or lower temperatures, moisture, or other environmental conditions that could be more severe than ambient conditions found in a typical building. As an example, equipment could be installed inside a building in a boiler room, basement, attic, and so forth, where temperatures actually exceed ambient conditions outside the building. It is recommended that the authority having jurisdiction consider all possible installation locations and environmental conditions and that the equipment selected be designed to operate within the most extreme conditions to which it could be exposed.

27.2.3.1 All devices shall be identified as suitable for the location and conditions for which they are installed.

27.2.4 All circuits, paths, and equipment necessary for the receipt of signals from a protected premises shall be monitored for integrity.

27.3 Management and Maintenance

27.3.1 All systems shall be under the control of a designated jurisdictional employee.

27.3.2 Maintenance by an organization or person other than from the jurisdiction or an employee of the jurisdiction shall be by written contract, guaranteeing performance acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction.

27.3.3 Where maintenance is provided by an organization or person(s) other than the jurisdiction or its employees, complete written records of the installation, maintenance, test, and extension of the system shall be forwarded to the designated employee in a time period and manner approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

Subsections 27.1.4 and 27.3.6.1 require those operating public emergency alarm reporting systems to test and maintain the systems in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 14. Subsection 27.3.1 indicates that a single employee must have responsibility for controlling the system. In many communities, this individual has the title fire alarm superintendent, superintendent of fire alarms, deputy chief of communications, director of signals, or other similar title. Sometimes, this individual has responsibility for both the public emergency alarm reporting system and the traffic signals in a community.

The International Municipal Signal Association (IMSA) serves as the professional membership association for those individuals responsible for overseeing and operating public emergency alarm reporting systems. IMSA provides certification programs, technical literature, and other professional services to assist in the continuing education and professional development of such individuals. IMSA can be reached at P.O. Box 539, Newark, NY 14513, or at *www.imsasafety.org*.

FAQ What is required when maintenance is performed by an organization outside the jurisdiction responsible for the system?

Where the jurisdiction does not have adequate staff or knowledge of the system to perform testing and maintenance, 27.3.2 and 27.3.3 permit a written contract with a maintenance organization. The organization performing these services must provide written records to the designated employee in a time and manner approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

27.3.4 All equipment shall be installed in locations accessible to the authority having jurisdiction for the purpose of maintenance and inspection.

27.3.5 Records of wired public emergency alarm reporting system circuits shall include all of the following:

(1) Outline plans showing terminals and box sequence
(2) Diagrams of applicable office wiring
(3) List of materials used, including trade name, manufacturer, and year of purchase or installation

Proper plans, material specification sheets, and diagrams allow for ease of repair, maintenance, and testing of the system. The requirements of 27.3.5 supplement the requirements of 7.7.1 and Section 14.6.

27.3.6 Public emergency alarm reporting systems as defined in this chapter shall, in their entirety, be subject to a complete operational acceptance test upon completion of system installation.

27.3.6.1 The test(s) required by 27.3.6 shall be made in accordance with the requirements of the authority having jurisdiction; however, in no case shall the operational functions tested be less than those stipulated in Chapter 14.

27.3.6.2 Operational acceptance tests shall be performed on any alarm-reporting devices, as covered in this chapter, that are installed or modified subsequent to the test required by 27.3.6.

Chapter 14 contains the requirements for testing and maintaining public emergency alarm reporting systems. Chapter 27 requires a complete acceptance test for all public emergency alarm reporting systems, as is required for any other fire alarm system.

27.3.7 Personnel Qualification.

27.3.7.1 System Designer.

27.3.7.1.1 Public emergency alarm reporting system plans and specifications shall be developed in accordance with this Code by persons who are qualified in the proper design, application, installation, and testing of public emergency alarm reporting systems.

27.3.7.1.2 The system design documents shall include the name and contact information of the system designer.

27.3.7.2 System Installer. Installation personnel shall be qualified in the installation, inspection, and testing of public emergency alarm reporting systems.

27.3.7.3 Service Personnel. Service personnel shall be qualified in the service, inspection, maintenance, and testing of public emergency alarm reporting systems.

27.3.7.4 Qualification.

27.3.7.4.1 Personnel shall demonstrate qualification by being trained and certified in public emergency alarm reporting system design, installation, or service (as appropriate) by one or more of the following:

(1) Certified by the manufacturer of the system or equipment
(2)* Certified by an organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction
(3) Licensed or certified by a state or local authority

A.27.3.7.4.1(2) An example of an organization providing public emergency alarm reporting system certification is the International Municipal Signal Association. Note that this reference is for information purposes only. Information concerning the product or service has been provided by the manufacturer or other outside sources, and the information concerning the product or service has not been independently verified, nor has the product or service been endorsed or certified by NFPA or any of its technical committees.

27.3.7.4.2 Evidence of qualifications and/or certification shall be provided when requested by the authority having jurisdiction. A license or qualification listing shall be current in accordance with the requirements of the issuing authority or organization.

Subsection 27.3.7 provides a list of qualifications for persons designing, installing, and servicing public emergency alarm reporting systems. The paragraphs in 27.3.7 emphasize the importance of individuals having qualifications specific to public emergency alarm reporting systems. Since these systems are designed to provide a high degree of reliability and use a wide range of communications formats and pathways, specialized knowledge in the proper installation and maintenance techniques is extremely important.

27.4 Communications Methods

In the 2013 edition of the Code, the technical committee has refined the text in Section 27.4 to clarify the general requirements for wired and wireless networks used for public emergency alarm reporting systems. Fundamentally, this section acts somewhat like a road map pointing the Code user to other relevant sections that contain more detailed requirements for the various components that make up a public emergency alarm reporting system.

27.4.1 Application.

27.4.1.1 A public emergency alarm reporting system shall include wired or wireless network(s), for one-way signaling or two-way command and control communications between alarm boxes, alarm processing equipment, and the communications center.

27.4.1.2 A public emergency alarm reporting system shall be permitted to be used with emergency communications systems covered under Chapter 24.

The permissive requirements in 27.4.1.2 allow the provider of a public emergency alarm reporting system to use the system in conjunction with an emergency communications system covered under Chapter 24, allowing the smooth integration of both systems.

27.4.2 Wired Network(s). The terms *wired network* and *public cable plant* shall be considered the same and interchangeable throughout this chapter.

27.4.2.1 All wired networks or public cable plants shall meet the requirements of Section 27.7.

27.4.2.1.1 Fiber-optic cabling shall be considered an acceptable transmission medium, provided that the cabling and installation comply with the requirements of Section 27.7 and the conversion equipment used to interface to the fiber-optic signal complies with all applicable requirements of Chapter 27.

27.4.2.2 Alarm processing equipment at the communications center shall meet the requirements of 27.5.2 and 27.5.4.

27.4.2.3 Alarm processing equipment at a remote communications center shall meet the requirements of 27.4.2.2 and 27.5.3.

Exhibit 27.4 shows an example of alarm processing equipment.

27.4.2.4 Alarm boxes shall meet one of the following requirements:

(1) Publicly accessible boxes shall meet the requirements of 27.6.1 through 27.6.2 and 27.6.5.
(2) Auxiliary boxes shall meet the requirements of 27.6.1, 27.6.3, and 27.6.5.
(3) Master boxes shall meet the requirements of 27.6.1 through 27.6.3 and 27.6.5.

27.4.3 Wireless Network(s). The terms *wireless network* and *radio system* shall be considered the same and interchangeable throughout this chapter.

27.4.3.1 All wireless networks shall meet the requirements of 27.4.3.2 through 27.4.3.5.

27.4.3.2 In addition to the requirements of this Code, all wireless equipment shall be designed and operated in compliance with all applicable rules and regulations of the Federal

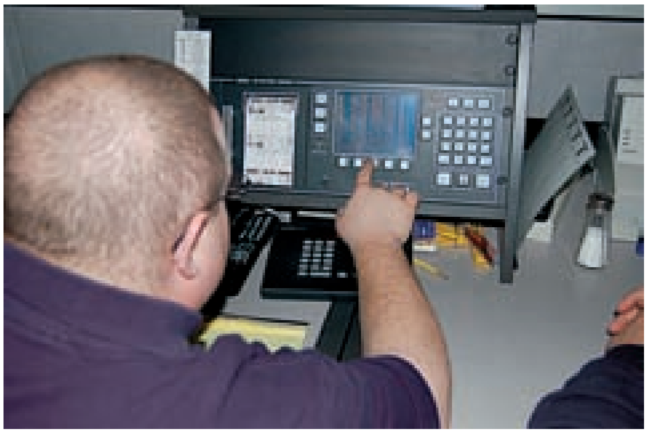


EXHIBIT 27.4

Wired Network Receiving Equipment. (Source: Lakes Region Mutual Fire Aid, Laconia, NH; photo by Debbie Kardaseski)

Communications Commission (FCC) or, where required, the National Telecommunications and Information Administration (NTIA).

Publicly accessible wireless network boxes operate on a designated frequency assigned by the Federal Communications Commission (FCC). When actuated, wireless network boxes send a data burst that contains information on the status of the specific box. This data burst may contain one or more signals and permits wireless network boxes to transmit signals relating to more than simply fire alarm signals. (See the commentary following 27.1.7 and 27.2.2.)

27.4.3.3* Unlicensed radio frequencies shall not be permitted.

A.27.4.3.3 Nonfederal radio frequencies are licensed by the Federal Communications Commission. Federal radio frequencies are assigned by the NTIA. Most frequencies available for FCC licensing require frequency coordination in order to limit interference from other users. Authorities having jurisdiction should use licensed, coordinated radio frequencies for wireless networks in order to minimize interference.

Outside of the United States similar regulatory bodies provide coordination and licensing such as Industry Canada.

27.4.3.4 Fire alarm signals, other emergency alarm signals, and monitoring for integrity signals shall be permitted on the same radio frequency, dedicated for that purpose.

27.4.3.5 The wireless network capacity for the number of alarm boxes permitted on a single radio frequency shall comply with one of the following:

(1) For networks that use one-way transmission in which the individual alarm box automatically initiates the required message *(see 27.5.5.3.3)* using circuitry integral to the alarm box, not more than 500 alarm boxes are permitted on a single radio frequency.
(2) For networks that use a two-way concept in which interrogation signals *(see 27.5.5.3.3)* are transmitted to the individual alarm boxes from the communications center on the same radio frequency used for receipt of alarms, not more than 250 alarm boxes are permitted on a single radio frequency.

(3) For networks that use a two-way concept where interrogation signals are transmitted on a radio frequency that differs from that used for receipt of alarms, not more than 500 alarm boxes are permitted on a single radio frequency.

27.4.3.6 Alarm processing equipment at the communications center shall meet the requirements of 27.5.2 and 27.5.5.

27.4.3.7 Alarm processing equipment at a remote communications center shall meet the requirements of 27.4.3.6 and 27.5.3.

27.4.3.8 Alarm boxes shall meet one of the following requirements:

(1) Publicly accessible boxes shall meet the requirements of 27.6.1 through 27.6.2 and 27.6.6.
(2) Auxiliary boxes shall meet the requirements of 27.6.1, 27.6.3, and 27.6.6.
(3) Master boxes shall meet the requirements of 27.6.1 through 27.6.3 and 27.6.6.

27.5 Alarm Processing Equipment

The alarm processing equipment required to receive and control the public emergency alarm reporting system shall be installed in the communications center or remote communications center used by emergency response agencies as defined in NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems*.

27.5.1 General. The requirements of 27.5.2 shall apply to all processing equipment, wired or wireless, for a public emergency alarm reporting network.

27.5.2 Alarm Processing Equipment at Communications Center.

Meeting the requirements of Section 27.5 ensures that the communications center will receive the signals transmitted over the public emergency alarm reporting system and will automatically record them in a manner that provides a permanent visual record of the signals. At the same time, an audible notification appliance will alert the operators to incoming signals.

The signal received in the communications center indicates the exact location of its origin. This indication comes from a unique number assigned to each public emergency alarm reporting box. An operator views an alphanumeric display on the receiving equipment or a computer-aided dispatching system that provides the exact location of the received alarm. In systems where only the box number appears, a manual reference chart is used and the operator then translates the box number to an exact location. NFPA 1221 covers the requirements for computer-aided dispatching systems.

27.5.2.1 Type A and Type B Systems.

27.5.2.1.1 Alarm systems shall be Type A or Type B.

27.5.2.1.2 A Type A system shall be provided where the number of all alarms required to be retransmitted exceeds 2500 per year.

27.5.2.1.3 Where a Type A system is required, the automatic electronic retransmission of incoming alarms shall be permitted, provided that both of the following conditions are met:

(1) Approved facilities are provided for the automatic receipt, storage, retrieval, and retransmission of alarms in the order received.

(2) The operator(s) of the dispatch facility has the capability to immediately override the automatic retransmission and revert to manual retransmission.

In a Type A system, the operator(s) at the communications center receives signals from the public emergency alarm reporting system. The operator(s) then manually and selectively retransmits these signals to only the emergency response stations designated to respond to the location of each particular signal.

In a Type B system, equipment at the communications center automatically retransmits the received signals to all emergency response stations and other locations connected to the system.

Where signaling traffic exceeds 2500 alarms per year, 27.5.2.1.2 requires the use of a Type A system. The intent of this requirement is to limit the number of signals retransmitted to each emergency response station, particularly where an individual emergency response station would not need to respond to a specific alarm signal.

27.5.2.2 Visual Recording Devices.

27.5.2.2.1 Alarms from alarm boxes shall be automatically received and recorded at the communications center.

27.5.2.2.2 A device for producing a permanent graphic recording of all alarm, supervisory, trouble, and test signals received or retransmitted, or both, shall be provided at each communications center for each alarm circuit and tie circuit.

27.5.2.2.3 Reserve recording devices shall be provided in accordance with 27.5.2.2.3.1 and 27.5.2.2.3.2.

27.5.2.2.3.1 Where each circuit is served by a dedicated recording device, the number of reserve recording devices required on-site shall be equal to at least 5 percent of the circuits in service and in no case less than one device.

27.5.2.2.3.2 Where two or more circuits are served by a common recording device, a reserve recording device shall be provided on-site for each circuit connected to a common recorder.

FAQ What two cases does the Code address for reserve recording devices?

The subject of reserve recording devices often causes some confusion. The Code deals with two specific cases. In the first case, covered by the requirements of 27.5.2.2.3.1, each circuit has a dedicated recording device. The receiving location must have an additional number of reserve recording devices equal to at least 5 percent of the total number of receiving circuits or no less than one reserve recording device.

In the second case, covered by the requirements of 27.5.2.2.3.2, a common recording device serves multiple receiving circuits. Each recording device has multiple "channels," one for each circuit. Paragraph 27.5.2.2.3.2 requires a reserve recording device on-site for each circuit connected to a common recorder.

For example, a large northeastern city has over 120 circuits serving 2500 boxes. These circuits connect to 7 recording devices, each of which can handle up to 20 circuits. The city maintains 20 reserve individual circuit recording devices, or one reserve device for each circuit connected to a common recorder. The switchboard in the communications center allows the 20 circuits from any single failed common recording device to connect to those 20 reserve individual circuit recording devices.

27.5.2.2.4 In a Type B wired system, one such recording device shall be installed in each emergency response facility, and at least one shall be installed in the communications center.

27.5.2.2.5 A permanent visual record and an audible signal shall be required to indicate the receipt of an alarm. The permanent record shall indicate the exact location from which the alarm is being transmitted.

27.5.2.2.6 The audible signal device shall be permitted to be common to two or more box circuits and arranged so that the emergency alarm operator is able to manually silence the signal temporarily by a self-restoring switch.

27.5.2.2.7 Facilities shall be provided that automatically record the date and time of receipt of each alarm.

Exception: Only the time shall be required to be automatically recorded for voice recordings.

27.5.2.3 System Integrity.

27.5.2.3.1 Wired circuits upon which transmission and receipt of alarms depend shall be constantly monitored for integrity to provide prompt warning of conditions adversely affecting reliability.

27.5.2.3.2 The power supplied to all required circuits and devices of the system shall be constantly monitored for integrity.

Paragraphs 27.5.2.3.1 and 27.5.2.3.2 provide requirements for monitoring the integrity of system wiring and power supplies. Rather than detailing the specific kinds of faults that might impair the operation of the system, these requirements cover all conditions that would adversely affect reliability. Similar requirements exist in 10.6.9.

27.5.2.4 Trouble Signals.

27.5.2.4.1 Trouble signals shall be indicated where there is a trained and competent person on duty at all times.

27.5.2.4.2 Trouble signals shall be distinct from alarm signals and shall be indicated by a visual and audible signal.

27.5.2.4.3 The audible signal shall be permitted to be common to more than one circuit that is monitored for integrity.

27.5.2.4.4 A switch for silencing the audible trouble signal shall be permitted, provided that the visual signal remains operating until the silencing switch is restored to its normal position.

27.5.2.4.5 The audible signal shall be responsive to faults on any other circuits that occur prior to restoration of the silencing switch to its normal position.

The paragraphs under 27.5.2.4 provide requirements for trouble signals and trouble signal appliance silencing. Similar requirements exist in Section 10.15. Trouble signals must alert the operator to problems with the circuits or power supplies. An operator may silence an audible trouble signal appliance only if a visible indication remains. Once silenced, the audible trouble signal must resound if faults occur on other circuits.

27.5.2.5 Power Supply.

27.5.2.5.1 Each box circuit or wireless receiving system shall be powered by one of the following:

(1)* Form 4A, which is an inverter, powered from a common rectifier, receiving power by a single source of alternating current with a floating storage battery having a 24-hour standby capacity
(2)* Form 4B, which is an inverter, powered from a common rectifier, receiving power from two sources of alternating current with a floating storage battery having a 4-hour standby capacity
(3)* Form 4C, which is a rectifier, converter, or motor generator receiving power from two sources of alternating current with transfer facilities to apply power from the secondary source to the system within 30 seconds

For convenience, the Code identifies three specific types of power supplies for public emergency alarm reporting systems: Form 4A, Form 4B, and Form 4C. Figures A.27.5.2.5.1(1), A.27.5.2.5.1(2), and A.27.5.2.5.1(3) provide graphic descriptions of these supplies. Technically, the Form 4C power supply does not require two generators. However, NFPA 1221 permits the use of two generators. This allowance may explain the origin of the graphic shown in Figure A.27.5.2.5.1(3). The equipment must accomplish a transfer between the primary source and the other source of alternating current within 30 seconds.

A.27.5.2.5.1(1) Figure A.27.5.2.5.1(1) illustrates a Form 4A arrangement.

A.27.5.2.5.1(2) Figure A.27.5.2.5.1(2) illustrates a Form 4B arrangement.

A.27.5.2.5.1(3) Figure A.27.5.2.5.1(3) illustrates a Form 4C arrangement. Refer to NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems*.

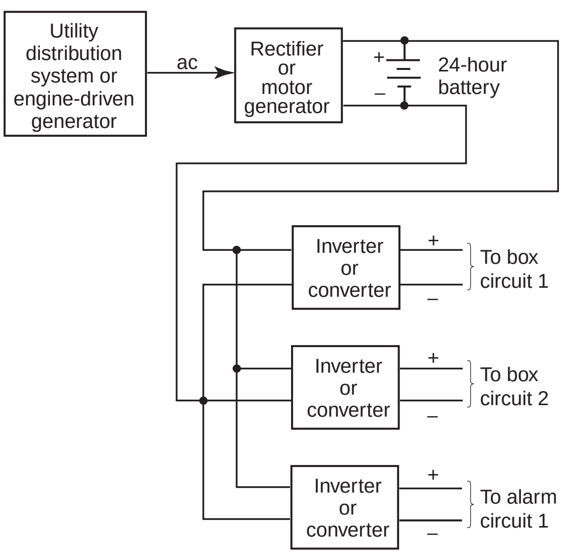


FIGURE A.27.5.2.5.1(1) *Form 4A.*

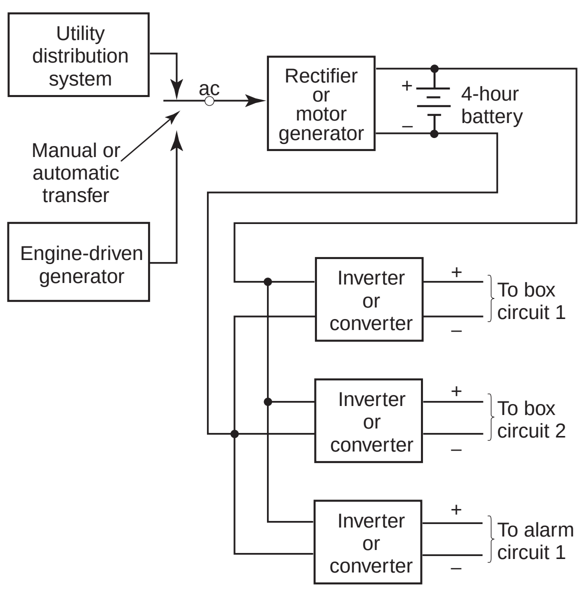


FIGURE A.27.5.2.5.1(2) *Form 4B.*

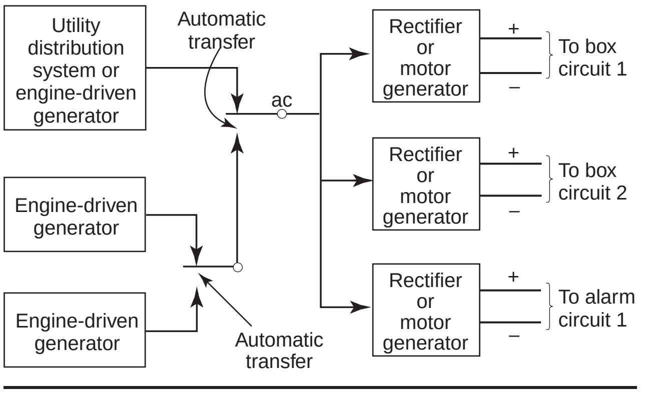


FIGURE A.27.5.2.5.1(3) *Form 4C.*

27.5.2.5.2 Form 4A and Form 4B shall be permitted to distribute the system load between two or more common rectifiers and batteries.

27.5.2.5.3 The capacity of batteries, motor generators, rectifiers, or other permitted power supplies shall exceed the calculated load of all connected circuits, so that circuits developing grounds or crosses with other circuits each shall be able to be supplied by an independent source to the extent required by 27.5.2.5.1.

27.5.2.5.4 Provision shall be made to connect any circuit to any battery, generator, or rectifier, or other permitted power supply.

The requirements in 27.5.2.5.4 ensure maximum reliability for the public emergency alarm reporting system. When one power supply fails, the circuits it normally serves must receive power from other power supplies until technicians repair the failed power supply.

27.5.2.5.5 Individual circuits supplied from common leads shall be protected by the installation of enclosed fuses located at the point where the circuit conductors receive their supply.

27.5.2.5.6 Local circuits at communications centers shall be supplied in accordance with 27.5.2.5.6.1 and 27.5.2.5.6.2.

27.5.2.5.6.1 The source of power for local circuits required to operate the essential features of the system shall be monitored for integrity.

The system must monitor the integrity of the power for circuits and equipment within the communications center. The loss of this power must cause a trouble signal. See 27.5.2.3.1, 27.5.2.3.2, and the commentary following 27.5.2.3.2 for additional requirements and information related to system integrity.

27.5.2.5.6.2 Local circuits at communications centers shall be permitted to be connected to the same power source as box circuits, wireless receiving system circuits, or a separate power source.

27.5.2.5.7 Visual and audible means to indicate a 15 percent or greater reduction of normal power supply (rated voltage) shall be provided.

When power for the public emergency alarm reporting system or for local circuits at the communications center drops 15 percent or more below the normal rated voltage, such a reduction must initiate a trouble signal.

27.5.2.5.8 Where the electrical service/capacity of the equipment required under Section 4.7 of NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems*, satisfies the needs of equipment in this chapter, such equipment shall not be required to be duplicated.

FAQ

What are the power supply requirements of NFPA 1221?

NFPA 1221 has specific power supply requirements. The design of the system must supply two sources of power: a connection to a utility distribution system and a connection to an engine-driven generator. As an alternative, the design of the system may rely upon power supplied by two engine-driven generators. One unit supplies normal power, and the other unit serves as a standby. If these required sources meet the requirements of 27.5.2.5.1, then 27.5.2.5.8 permits the use of such a source without the need for duplication.

27.5.2.6 Rectifiers, Converters, Inverters, and Motor Generators.

27.5.2.6.1 Rectifiers shall be supplied from the secondary of an isolating transformer.

27.5.2.6.1.1 The primary of the isolating transformer shall be connected to a circuit not exceeding 250 volts.

27.5.2.6.2 Complete spare units or spare parts shall be in reserve.

27.5.2.6.3 One spare rectifier shall be provided for every 10 operating rectifiers on a system. No system shall have less than one spare.

27.5.2.6.4 Leads from rectifiers or motor generators, with a float-charged battery, shall be protected by fuses rated at a minimum of 1 ampere and a maximum of 200 percent of connected load at nominal circuit voltage. Where not provided with a float-charged battery, the fuses shall be rated at a minimum of 3 amperes.

The requirements in 27.5.2.6.4 provide for the sizing of fuse-type overcurrent protection devices. The intent of these requirements is to provide circuits with sufficient protection without making the protective fuses overly sensitive. Too frequent operation of the fuses would tend to reduce the overall reliability of the public emergency alarm reporting system.

27.5.2.7 Engine-Driven Generators. The installation of engine-driven generator sets shall conform to the provisions of NFPA 37, *Standard for the Installation and Use of Stationary Combustion Engines and Gas Turbines*; NFPA 110, *Standard for Emergency and Standby Power Systems*; and NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems*.

To maintain reliability, the system must ensure the continuity of supplied power. Compliance with the requirements of the NFPA standards identified in 27.5.2.7 helps ensure such continuity.

27.5.2.8 Float-Charged Batteries.

To maintain reliability, the system must ensure the continuity of supplied power. The requirements in 27.5.2.8 help ensure such continuity.

27.5.2.8.1 Float-charged batteries shall be of the storage type. Primary batteries (dry cells) shall not be used. Lead-acid batteries shall be in jars of glass or other identified or approved transparent materials; other types of batteries shall be in containers identified or approved for the purpose.

27.5.2.8.2 Float-charged batteries shall be above building grade level.

27.5.2.8.3 Float-charged batteries shall be located on the same floor of the building as the operating equipment.

Paragraph 27.5.2.8.3 requires the municipality or government agency or other controlling entity to locate storage batteries on the same floor or level as the operating equipment for the public emergency alarm reporting system.

27.5.2.8.4 Float-charged batteries shall be accessible for maintenance and inspection.

27.5.2.8.5 Float-charged batteries shall be installed in accordance with Article 480 of *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*.

27.5.2.8.6 Batteries shall be mounted to provide effective insulation from the ground or working platform and from other batteries. Mounting equipment shall be listed and identified for the location. It shall be permissible for the authority having jurisdiction to waive this requirement to allow the use of alternative mounting equipment where it is assured that equivalent objectives can be achieved.

27.5.2.8.7 Battery mounting shall be protected against deterioration and shall provide stability, especially in geographic areas subject to seismic disturbance.

27.5.2.9 Equipment Fire Protection. Where applicable, electronic computer/data processing equipment shall be protected in accordance with NFPA 75, *Standard for the Fire Protection of Information Technology Equipment*.

The requirement of 27.5.2.9 recognizes that modern communications centers use equipment quite similar to that found at any computer or data processing facility. Logic, therefore, requires the same level of fire protection for this critical equipment as industrial or commercial facilities provide for other such computer or data processing equipment. NFPA 75, *Standard for the Protection of Information Technology Equipment,* provides requirements for such protection.

27.5.3 Alarm Processing Equipment at a Remote Communications Center.

Where the alarm-receiving equipment is located at a location other than where the box circuit protection, controls, and power supplies are located, the requirements of 27.5.3.1 through 27.5.3.8, in addition to all of the requirements of Section 27.5, shall apply.

FAQ What is one reason why a municipality might establish a remote communications center?

Subsection 27.5.3 provides requirements for those circumstances where the municipality, government agency, or other controlling entity has located the communications center at a location remote from the location of the control equipment for the public emergency alarm reporting system. This circumstance might occur when the municipality or government agency has moved the communications center to combine its service with other emergency dispatching, such as police or emergency medical services. The intent of this subsection is to ensure that all of the requirements of 27.5.3 are met when main alarm receiving, power supply, and control equipment is not located at the communications center.

27.5.3.1 All equipment used to provide the primary and remote receiving facilities shall be listed for its intended use and shall be installed in accordance with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*.

27.5.3.2 The monitoring for integrity of all box circuits shall be provided with a visual and audible means to indicate a 20 percent or greater reduction or increase in the normal current in any box alarm circuit. The visual means shall identify the exact circuit affected.

27.5.3.3 Monitoring for integrity of all power supplies shall be provided with visual and audible means to indicate a loss of primary or standby power supplies at both the communications center and remote communications center.

27.5.3.4 A minimum of two separate means of interconnection shall be provided between the communications center and remote communications center receiving equipment. This interconnection shall be dedicated and shall not be used for any other purpose.

27.5.3.5 Where data transmission or multiplexing equipment is used that is not an integral part of the alarm-receiving equipment, a visual and audible means shall be provided to monitor the integrity of the external equipment. This shall include monitoring all primary and standby power supplies as well as the transmission of data.

A particular system design may employ data transmission technology, using either time division or frequency division multiplexing, to connect remote receiving locations to the communications center. Paragraph 27.5.3.5 requires the monitoring of the integrity of this transmission method.

Exhibit 27.5 shows an example of media conversion transmission equipment.

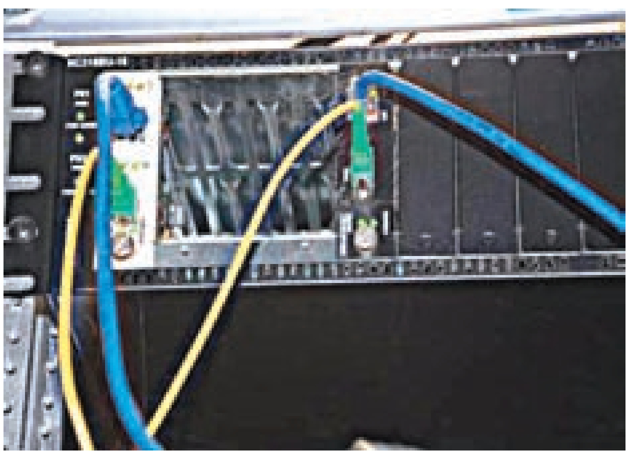


EXHIBIT 27.5

Media Conversion Transmission Equipment. (Source: Jeffrey G. Knight, Superintendent of Fire Alarm & Communications, Newton Fire Department, Newton, MA)

27.5.3.6 Power shall be provided in accordance with 27.5.2.5.

27.5.3.7 The use of an uninterruptible power supply (UPS) to comply with standby power requirements shall not be permitted.

27.5.3.8 Tie circuits shall be provided in accordance with 27.5.3.8.1 through 27.5.3.8.3.

27.5.3.8.1 A separate tie circuit shall be provided from the communications center to each subsidiary communications center.

27.5.3.8.2 The tie circuit between the communications center and the subsidiary communications center shall not be used for any other purpose.

27.5.3.8.3 In a Type B wired system, where all boxes in the system are of the succession type, it shall be permitted to use the tie circuit as a dispatch circuit to the extent permitted by NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems*.

Remote receiving locations use tie circuits, which connect the communications center with the original terminal location of the public emergency alarm reporting system.

Tie circuits can also connect the communications center with a subsidiary communications center. For example, in a large municipality, a subsidiary communications center concentrates signals from a particular neighborhood or geographic area before transmitting them to the communications center.

In some cities where several political subdivisions have their own communications center (e.g., New York City), the system might use tie circuits to interconnect the centers. This interconnection allows the centers to handle signals from all the boroughs, even if one of the communications centers suffers a temporary impairment.

27.5.4 Wired Network Systems.

Subsection 27.5.4 establishes requirements for public emergency alarm reporting systems using a wired network.

27.5.4.1 System Arrangement and Operation.

27.5.4.1.1 For a Type B system, the effectiveness of noninterference and succession functions between box circuits shall be no less than between boxes in any one circuit.

In a Type B (coded) wired system, the system repeats signals from one box circuit or alarm circuit onto the other box and alarm circuits. The repetition of these signals causes other boxes connected to the system to sense a busy circuit and wait for a clear circuit before transmitting. This approach provides for the proper functioning of the noninterfering and successive features of the "three-fold" (coded) wired alarm boxes.

27.5.4.1.2 A metallic box open circuit condition shall cause a warning signal in all other circuits, and, thereafter, the circuit(s) not in the open circuit condition shall be automatically restored to operative condition.

With regard to 27.5.4.1.2, when an open fault occurs on a box or alarm circuit, the repeater equipment must repeat only one tap or blow onto all other circuits. The equipment must then restore the circuits to a closed circuit condition, so that boxes on the circuits do not see the open on one circuit as an open circuit condition on all other circuits. The single tap or blow repeated to all circuits of a Type B system provides a warning or trouble signal. This signal indicates that one of the circuits in the system has an open fault.

27.5.4.1.3 Box circuits shall be sufficient in number and laid out so that the areas that would be left without box protection in case of disruption of a circuit do not exceed those covered by 20 properly spaced boxes where all or any part of the circuit is of aerial open-wire, or by 30 properly spaced boxes where the circuit is entirely in underground or messenger-supported cable.

The requirements of 27.5.4.1.3 are intended to limit the extent of the loss of service to any given area of a municipality should an outage occur in a box circuit. This provision effectively limits the "number of eggs in one basket."

The actual area covered by any box circuit will depend on the topography of the particular municipality. It will also depend on whether the box circuit covers a residential area or a nonresidential area.

Paragraph 27.6.2.1.6 leaves the decision regarding box locations up to the authority having jurisdiction. Guidance in A.27.6.2.1.6 suggests that a person should not have to travel more than one block or 500 ft (150 m) to reach a box in a nonresidential area or two blocks or 800 ft (240 m) in a residential area.

27.5.4.1.4 Where all boxes on any individual circuit and associated equipment are designed and installed to provide for receipt of alarms through the ground in the event of a break in the circuit, the circuit shall be permitted to serve twice the number of aerial open-wire and cable circuits, respectively, as are specified in 27.5.4.1.3.

In most (coded) wired systems, when an actuated alarm box senses that the circuit has an open fault, it idles for one round, connects the box to earth ground, and then transmits four rounds of its identifying signal. Sensing an open circuit, the receiving equipment at the communications center also connects itself to earth ground. This conditioning of the circuit allows the box to transmit its signal through earth ground.

FAQ What number of boxes does the Code permit if all boxes have the ability to transmit through earth ground?

If two open faults occur on the circuit, the boxes isolated between the faults cannot transmit a signal. When all boxes have this ability to transmit through earth ground in the case of an open fault on the circuit, the circuit can serve double the number of boxes that it might serve where the boxes do not have this capability. With this feature provided, an aerial open-wire circuit can serve an area equal to that covered by up to 40 properly spaced boxes, and an underground or messenger-supported circuit can serve an area equal to that covered by up to 60 properly spaced boxes.

27.5.4.1.5 The installation of additional boxes in an area served by the number of boxes spaced as indicated in 27.5.4.1.1 through 27.5.4.1.4 shall not constitute geographical overloading of a circuit.

The key phrase to understanding the requirement in 27.5.4.1.5 is "shall not constitute." The intent of this requirement is that, if technicians install additional boxes in a particular geographical area and connect them to a circuit that already serves properly spaced boxes installed in that geographical area, these additional boxes do not constitute an overload on the circuit. This provision allows the addition of boxes to serve particular hazards within a geographical area without the need to add any additional circuits.

27.5.4.1.6 Sounding devices for signals shall be provided for box circuits.

27.5.4.1.6.1 A common sounding device for more than one circuit shall be permitted to be used in a Type A system and shall be installed at the communications center.

27.5.4.1.6.2 In a Type B system, a sounding device shall be installed in each emergency response facility at the same location as the recording device for that circuit, unless installed at the communications center, where a common sounding device shall be permitted.

27.5.4.2 Constant-Current (100 milliampere) Systems. Constant-current systems shall comply with the requirements of 27.5.4.2.1 through 27.5.4.2.6.

27.5.4.2.1 Means shall be provided for manually regulating the current in box circuits so that the operating current is maintained within 10 percent of normal throughout changes in external circuit resistance from 20 percent above normal to 50 percent below normal.

27.5.4.2.2 The voltage supplied to maintain normal line current on box circuits shall not exceed 150 volts, measured under no-load conditions, and shall be such that the line current cannot be reduced below the approved operating value by the simultaneous operation of four boxes.

27.5.4.2.3 Visual and audible means to indicate a 20 percent or greater reduction in the normal current in any alarm circuit shall be provided.

27.5.4.2.4 All devices connected in series with any alarm circuit shall function when the alarm circuit current is reduced to 70 percent of normal.

27.5.4.2.5 Meters shall be provided to indicate the current in any box circuit and the voltage of any power source. Meters used in common for two or more circuits shall be provided with cut-in devices designed to reduce the probability of cross-connecting circuits.

27.5.4.2.6 Necessary switches, testing, and signal transmitting and receiving devices shall be provided to allow the isolation, control, and test of each circuit up to at least 10 percent of the total number of box and dispatch circuits, but never less than two circuits.

The (coded) wired public emergency alarm reporting system operates at a constant current of nominally 100 mA. The requirements of 27.5.4.2 and its subparagraphs regulate and maintain the current, limit the voltage, provide a visual indication of current reduction, and provide meters to allow operators to measure current. These features all ensure that such a system maintains a high level of operational integrity.

Paragraph 27.5.4.2.6 provides a "spare parts on hand" requirement. The communications center must maintain sufficient spare parts — necessary switches and testing, signal transmitting, and signal receiving devices — to properly isolate, control, or test up to 10 percent of the total number of box and dispatch circuits. For example, if a system has 40 box and 8 dispatch circuits, the communications center would need to maintain at least 5 sets of spare parts. For systems with a smaller number of box and dispatch circuits, in no case should the communications center maintain fewer spare parts than those needed to properly isolate, control, or test at least two circuits.

Exhibit 27.6 illustrates a Form 4 control center.

EXHIBIT 27.6

Form 4 Control Equipment. (Source: Jeffrey G. Knight, Superintendent of Fire Alarm & Communications, Newton Fire Department, Newton, MA)

27.5.4.3 Grounded Common-Current Systems. Where common-current source systems are grounded, the requirements of 27.5.4.3.1 and 27.5.4.3.2 shall apply.

27.5.4.3.1 Where common-current source systems are grounded, the resistance of the ground shall not exceed 10 percent of resistance of any connected circuit and shall be located at one side of the battery.

27.5.4.3.2 Visual and audible indicating devices shall be provided for each box and dispatch circuit to give immediate warning of ground leakage current that will have a detrimental effect on circuit operation.

The requirements of 27.5.4.3 and its subparagraphs apply only to older constant-current systems that used Form 2 power supplies. The Code no longer recognizes this type of power supply. Some of these Form 2 power supplies had one side of the battery connected to earth ground to facilitate ground return signaling in the case of an open fault on a box circuit. The more modern Form 4 power supply operates above ground under normal operating conditions. The Form 4 power supply connects to earth ground to permit ground return signaling only when the equipment at the communications center detects an open fault on a box circuit.

Table 14.4.3.2 describes tests essential to ensuring the integrity of the constant-current (coded) wired public emergency alarm reporting system. Foreign grounds on a metallic box or dispatch circuit can render a portion of the circuit inoperable. For that reason, operators at the communications center must give attention to testing procedures that will result in the prompt discovery of excess voltage or current to ground.

27.5.4.4 Telephone (Series) Reporting Systems.

•

Sometimes installers for a municipality add components to all or a portion of an existing (coded) wired reporting system to give that system the capability of transmitting and receiving voice alarm signals. In these cases, the telephone (series) reporting system uses the same cable plant as the (coded) wired system. In other cases, a municipality may choose to install a new telephone (series) reporting system or completely replace a (coded) wired system with a new telephone (series) reporting system. These systems follow the same installation requirements in Section 27.7 as do (coded) wired systems. See 27.6.5.1 regarding the requirement to comply with Section 27.7.

27.5.4.4.1 A permanent visual recording device installed in the communications center shall be provided to record all incoming box signals.

FAQ What does the permanent visual recording device record?

The permanent visual recording device noted in 27.5.4.4.1 records the date, time, and box number but not the content of the voice message. See 27.5.4.4.5 and associated commentary regarding voice transmissions.

27.5.4.4.2 A spare recording device shall be provided for five or more box circuits.

27.5.4.4.3 A second visual means of identifying the calling box shall be provided.

27.5.4.4.4 Audible signals shall indicate all incoming calls from box circuits.

27.5.4.4.5 All voice transmissions from boxes for emergencies shall be recorded with the capability of instant playback.

Specially designed audio recording equipment not only provides an audio log of signal content from the boxes but also allows an operator to instantly recycle to the beginning of each message. In this way, operators at the communications center can review unclear messages.

Many communications centers use a common recording system to record all incoming emergency voice communications. This system may include messages from telephone (series) reporting systems, 9-1-1 emergency telephone calls, other public telephone calls, and two-way radio traffic. Modern multichannel, computer-controlled digital recording systems can easily handle many channels of recorded information and give the operators instant access to play back all or any portion of a recorded conversation.

27.5.4.4.6 A voice-recording facility shall be provided for each operator handling incoming alarms to eliminate the possibility of interference.

27.5.4.4.7 Box circuits shall be sufficient in number and laid out so that the areas that would be left without box protection in case of disruption of a circuit do not exceed those covered by 20 properly spaced boxes where all or any part of the circuit is of aerial open-wire, or 30 properly spaced boxes where the circuit is entirely in underground or messenger-supported cable.

The requirements of 27.5.4.4.7 are intended to limit the extent of the loss of service to any given area of a municipality should an outage occur in a box circuit. This requirement effectively limits the "number of eggs in one basket."

The actual area covered by any box circuit will depend on the topography of the particular municipality. It will also depend on whether the box circuit covers a residential area or a nonresidential area.

Paragraph 27.6.2.1.6 leaves the decision regarding box locations up to the authority having jurisdiction. Guidance in A.27.6.2.1.6 suggests that a person should not have to travel more than one block or 500 ft (150 m) to reach a box in a nonresidential area or two blocks or 800 ft (240 m) in a residential area.

27.5.4.4.8 Where all boxes on any individual circuit and associated equipment are designed and installed to provide for receipt of alarms through the ground in the event of a break in the circuit, the circuit shall be permitted to serve twice the number of aerial open-wire and cable circuits, respectively, as is specified in 27.5.4.4.7.

In some telephone (series) reporting systems, when an actuated alarm box senses that the circuit has an open fault, the system connects the box to earth ground to establish a voice transmission path. Sensing an open circuit, the receiving equipment at the communications center also connects itself to earth ground. This conditioning of the circuit allows the box to transmit its voice signal through earth ground.

If two open faults occur on the circuit, the boxes isolated between the faults cannot transmit a signal. When all telephone (series) boxes have this ability to transmit through earth ground in the case of an open fault on the circuit, the circuit can serve double the number of boxes that it might serve where the boxes do not have this capability. With this feature provided, an aerial open-wire circuit can serve an area equal to that covered by up to 40 properly spaced boxes, and an underground or messenger-supported circuit can serve an area equal to that covered by up to 60 properly spaced boxes.

27.5.4.4.9 The installation of additional boxes in an area served by the number of boxes spaced as indicated in 27.5.4.4.7 shall not constitute geographical overloading of a circuit.

As with 27.5.4.1.5, "shall not constitute" is the key phrase to understanding the requirement in 27.5.4.4.9. The intent of this requirement is that if technicians install additional boxes in a particular geographical area and connect them to a circuit that already serves properly spaced boxes installed in that geographical area, these additional boxes do not constitute an overload on the circuit. This provision allows the addition of boxes to serve particular hazards within a geographical area without the need to add additional circuits.

27.5.5 Wireless Network.

27.5.5.1 System Arrangement and Operation.

27.5.5.1.1 Type A systems shall comply with 27.5.5.1.1.1 through 27.5.5.1.1.6.

27.5.5.1.1.1* Two separate receiving networks shall be required for each frequency. Each network shall include the following:

(1) Antenna
(2) RF receiver
(3) Signaling processing equipment
(4) Time/date alarm printer
(5) Audible alerting device
(6) Power supply

A.27.5.5.1.1.1 Figure A.27.5.5.1.1.1 illustrates a Type A receiving network.

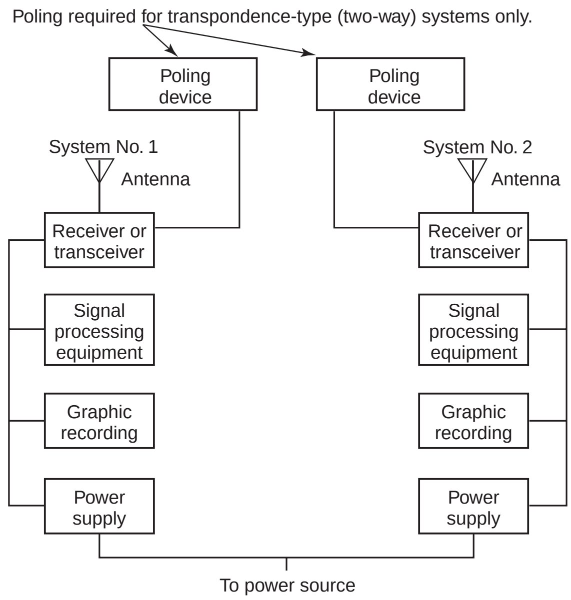


FIGURE A.27.5.5.1.1.1 *Type A System Receiving Networks.*

Redundant equipment increases the overall reliability of the wireless network public emergency alarm reporting system. Due to the heavier signaling traffic anticipated with a Type A system, 27.5.5.1.1.1 requires redundant receiving equipment. Most wireless network reporting systems operate as one-way radio systems. However, if a public emergency alarm reporting system employs a two-way system, then the polling device shown in Figure A.27.5.5.1.1.1 would request a test signal from each radio box at least once every 24 hours.

27.5.5.1.1.2 Both receiving networks shall be installed at the communications center.

27.5.5.1.1.3 The failure of one receiving network shall not interfere with the other receiving network's ability to receive messages from boxes.

27.5.5.1.1.4 Where the system configuration is such that a polling device is incorporated into the receiving network to allow remote or selective initiation of box tests, a separate device shall be included in each of the two required receiving networks.

FAQ How often do the polling devices typically request a test signal from each two-way radio box?

Most wireless network reporting systems operate as one-way radio systems. However, some wireless network systems provide for an interrogation and response sequence initiated from the communications center. This interrogation and response sequence monitors the integrity of the radio channel signaling pathway. Typically, the polling device would request a test signal from each two-way radio box at least once every 24 hours.

27.5.5.1.1.5 The polling devices shall be configured for automatic cycle initiation in their primary operating mode, shall be capable of continuous self-monitoring, and shall be integrated into the network(s) to provide automatic switchover and operational continuity in the event of failure of either device.

27.5.5.1.1.6 Test signals from boxes shall not be required to include the date as part of their permanent recording, provided that the date is automatically printed on the recording tape at the beginning of each calendar day.

27.5.5.1.2 Type B systems shall comply with 27.5.5.1.2.1 and 27.5.5.1.2.2.

27.5.5.1.2.1 For each frequency used, a single, complete receiving network shall be permitted in each emergency response facility, provided that the communications center conforms to 27.5.5.1.1.1 through 27.5.5.1.1.3. Where the jurisdiction maintains two or more alarm reception points in operation, one receiving network shall be permitted to be at each alarm reception point.

27.5.5.1.2.2 Where alarm signals are transmitted to an emergency response facility from the communications center using the wireless-type receiving equipment in the emergency response facility to receive and record the alarm message, a second receiving network conforming to 27.5.5.1.2.1 shall be provided at each emergency response facility, and that receiving network shall employ a frequency other than that used for the receipt of box messages.

Paragraphs 27.5.5.1.2.1 and 27.5.5.1.2.2 contain requirements for various configurations of Type B wireless network public emergency alarm reporting systems. Some configurations have each emergency response station simultaneously receive the transmission from any box in the system. Others receive the box signals at the communications center and automatically repeat the signals to the fire stations.

27.5.5.1.3 A device for producing a permanent graphic recording of all alarm, supervisory, trouble, and test signals received or retransmitted, or both, shall be provided at the communications center.

27.5.5.1.4* Where box message signals to the communications center or acknowledgment of message receipt signals from the communications center to the box are repeated, associated repeating facilities shall conform to the requirements of 27.5.5.1.1.1(1), (2), (3), and (6) and include two separate transmitters.

A.27.5.5.1.4 Figure A.27.5.5.1.4 illustrates the separate functional requirements and power source requirements for systems that function with wireless network repeater systems in accordance with 27.5.5.1.4.

27.5.5.2 Power. Power shall be provided in accordance with 27.5.2.5.

27.5.5.3 Monitoring for Integrity.

27.5.5.3.1 All wireless box systems shall provide constant monitoring of each radio frequency in use. Both an audible and a visual indication of any sustained signal in excess of a 15-second duration shall be provided for each receiving system at the communications center.

An open fault or ground fault on a (coded) wired public emergency alarm reporting system interferes with the transmission of signals. Similarly, the sustained transmission of a radio carrier signal can interfere with the transmission of signals from the boxes on a wireless network public emergency alarm reporting system. Paragraph 27.5.5.3.1 requires the detection of such a sustained carrier signal and the audible and visible annunciation of such an occurrence.

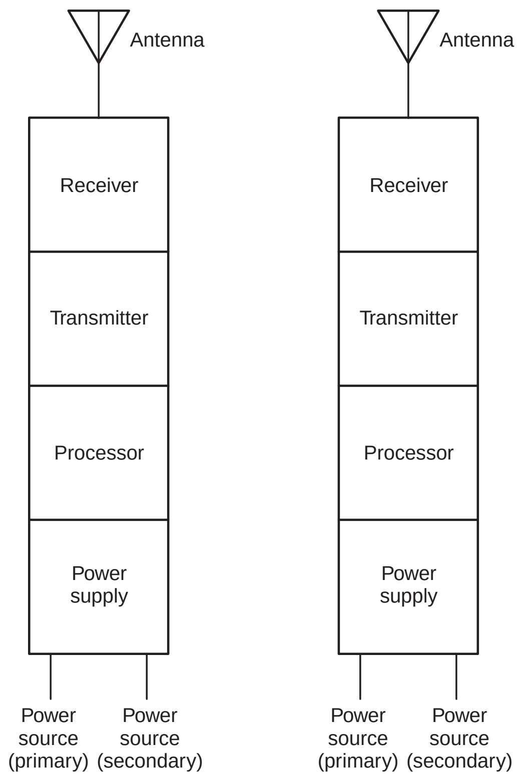


FIGURE A.27.5.5.1.4 *Repeater Wireless Network/System.*

27.5.5.3.2 The power supplied to all required circuits and devices of the system shall be monitored for integrity.

27.5.5.3.3* Each wireless box shall automatically transmit a test message at least once in each 24-hour period.

A.27.5.5.3.3 See A.27.6.6.2.

The 24-hour test signal safeguards against the catastrophic failure of any single alarm box and its antenna.

27.5.5.3.4 Receiving equipment associated with wireless-type systems, including any related repeater(s), shall be tested at least hourly. The receipt of test messages that do not exceed 60-minute intervals shall meet this requirement.

The hourly test signal safeguards against the catastrophic failure of the wireless network receiving equipment and its antenna.

27.5.5.3.5 Radio repeaters upon which receipt of alarms depend shall be provided with dual receivers, transmitters, and power supplies. Failure of the primary receiver, transmitter, or power supply shall cause an automatic switchover to the secondary receiver, transmitter, or power supply.

Exception: Manual switchover shall be permitted, provided that it is completed within 30 seconds.

Wireless network public emergency alarm reporting systems serving areas where radio propagation requires the use of repeaters make the integrity of the repeaters an important issue. Paragraph 27.5.5.3.5 requires redundant equipment to help ensure the continued operation of this critical equipment. The requirement prefers the automatic switchover from primary equipment to secondary equipment. The exception permits manual switchover when accomplished within 30 seconds of the primary equipment failure.

27.5.5.3.6 Trouble signals shall actuate a sounding device located where there is always a trained, competent person on duty.

27.5.5.3.7 Trouble signals shall be distinct from alarm signals and shall be indicated by a visual and audible signal.

27.5.5.3.7.1 The audible signal shall be permitted to be common to two or more monitored circuits.

27.5.5.3.7.2 A switch for silencing the audible trouble signal shall be permitted where the visual signal remains operating until the silencing switch is restored to its normal position.

27.5.5.3.8 The audible signal shall be responsive to subsequent faults in other monitored functions prior to restoration of the silencing switch.

27.5.5.4 Physical Protection of Transmission Line. The antenna transmission line between the transmitter and the antenna shall be installed in rigid metal, intermediate metal conduit, or electrical metallic tubing in accordance with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*.

Paragraph 27.5.5.4 requires physical protection for the cable connecting the wireless network public emergency alarm reporting system boxes (transmitters) to their respective antennas. Section 810, Part II Receiving Equipment — Antenna Systems, of *NFPA 70*®, *National Electrical Code*®, covers the installation requirements of such antennas.

27.6 Alarm Boxes

27.6.1* General. The requirements of 27.6.1.1 through 27.6.1.6 shall apply to all alarm boxes.

A.27.6.1 There are three types of alarm boxes covered under Chapter 27. They are the publicly accessible box, auxiliary box, and master box.

(1) The publicly accessible box has a manual control that can be operated by the public. This type of alarm box is typically located outside on a pole or building and was previously called a street box. The box type was renamed because it is not necessarily located on or near a street.
(2) An auxiliary box is part of an auxiliary alarm system and can be automatically activated either by initiating devices in limited applications or by a protected premises alarm system (Chapter 23). An auxiliary box can be located inside or outside a building.
(3) The master box is a combination box that can be manually operated (publicly accessible) and automatically activated by the auxiliary alarm system (auxiliary box). The master box is typically located outside on a pole or building.

27.6.1.1 Concurrent operation of at least four boxes shall not result in the loss of an alarm.

To meet the requirement of 27.6.1.1, each box installed on a wired network circuit must sense that another box has begun to transmit a signal over the common box circuit. The first box withholds transmitting its signal until it senses a clear circuit, and then it transmits the signal. Manufacturers describe this box design as noninterfering and successive.

Boxes installed on a wireless network meet the requirements of 27.6.1.1 by the fact that the transmission from each box is accomplished in a very short period of time and repeated sufficiently to ensure that signals from four concurrently operated boxes will be received without interference.

Telephone (series) boxes installed on a wired network rely on the operator receiving the calls to manage those cases where multiple users attempt to talk to the operator at the same time.

27.6.1.2 Boxes and associated equipment, when in an abnormal condition, shall not disable the public emergency alarm reporting system circuit.

Locating publicly accessible alarm boxes along public streets and thoroughfares subjects them to possible damage from a variety of sources, including vandals, vehicular accidents, and street repair and maintenance operations. When a box is damaged, the remainder of the system must continue to operate normally.

27.6.1.3 Boxes shall be designed so that recycling does not occur when a box-actuating device is held in the actuating position and shall be ready to accept a new signal as soon as the actuating device is released.

The requirement in 27.6.1.3 ensures that if a person in the panic of an emergency continues to hold the box actuating lever in the actuated position, the box will not recycle. This feature prevents a box from tying up the circuit. Exhibit 27.7 shows a typical publicly accessible alarm box.

27.6.1.4* Boxes, when actuated, shall give a visible or audible indication to the user that the box is operating or that the signal has been transmitted to the communications center.

EXHIBIT 27.7

Publicly Accessible Alarm Box. (Source: Gamewell-FCI, Northford, CT)

A.27.6.1.4 If the operating mechanism of a box creates sufficient sound to be heard by the user, the requirements are satisfied.

FAQ How is the requirement of 27.6.1.4 typically accomplished?

Most wired network boxes provide an audible indication of actuation from the noise created by the mechanism that drives the mechanical code wheel. Telephone (series) boxes indicate actuation by means of a sound generated in the handset or speaker. Publicly accessible wireless network boxes usually provide a visible means to indicate actuation.

27.6.1.5 Box cases and parts that are accessible to the public shall be permitted to be of nonconductive material.

27.6.1.6 Box cases and parts that are accessible to the public and that are constructed of conductive materials shall be installed in accordance with the requirements of *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Articles 250 and 760.

27.6.2* Publicly Accessible Alarm Boxes.

A.27.6.2 Publicly accessible alarm boxes were commonly referred to as "street boxes" in previous editions of the Code. Applications of these boxes are no longer limited to street locations.

27.6.2.1 Fundamental Requirements. The requirements of 27.6.2.1.1 through 27.6.2.1.11 shall apply to all publicly accessible alarm boxes.

27.6.2.1.1 Means for actuation of alarms by the public shall be located where they are visible, unobstructed, and readily accessible.

27.6.2.1.2 The box housing shall protect the internal components and shall be identified for the location installed.

27.6.2.1.3 Doors on boxes shall remain operable under adverse climatic conditions, including icing and salt spray.

27.6.2.1.4 Boxes shall be recognizable as such and shall have instructions for use plainly marked on their exterior surfaces.

27.6.2.1.5 Boxes shall be securely mounted on poles, pedestals, or structural surfaces as directed by the authority having jurisdiction.

27.6.2.1.6* The location of publicly accessible boxes shall be designated by the authority having jurisdiction.

A.27.6.2.1.6 Where the intent is for complete coverage, it should not be necessary to travel in excess of one block or 500 ft (150 m) to reach a box. In residential areas, it should not be necessary to travel in excess of two blocks or 800 ft (240 m) to reach a box.

In most cases, the municipal fire officials or the emergency management officials serve as the authority having jurisdiction.

27.6.2.1.7 Schools, hospitals, nursing homes, and places of public assembly shall have a box located at the main entrance, as directed by the authority having jurisdiction.

27.6.2.1.8 Boxes shall be conspicuously visible and be highlighted with a distinctive color.

27.6.2.1.9 All publicly accessible boxes mounted on support poles shall be identified by a wide band of distinctive colors or signs placed 8 ft (2.44 m) above the ground and visible from all directions wherever possible.

27.6.2.1.10* Location-designating lights of distinctive color, visible for at least 1500 ft (460 m) in all directions, shall be installed over boxes. The street light nearest the box, where equipped with a distinctively colored light, shall meet this requirement.

The requirements of 27.6.2.1.8, 27.6.2.1.9, and 27.6.2.1.10 provide for a means of identifying the location of publicly accessible alarm boxes. The use of a distinctive color for the box itself in conjunction with the banding of support poles and the provision of identifying lamps all help ensure that citizens seeking emergency aid can promptly locate a box.

A.27.6.2.1.10 The current supply for designating lights at boxes should be secured at lamp locations from the local electric utility company.

Alternating-current power can be permitted to be superimposed on metallic fire alarm circuits for supplying designating lamps or for control or actuation of equipment devices for fire alarm or other emergency signals, provided that the following conditions exist:

(1) Voltage between any wire and ground or between one wire and any other wire of the system does not exceed 150 volts, and the total resultant current in any line circuit does not exceed ¼ ampere.

(2) Components such as coupling capacitors, transformers, chokes, or coils are rated for 600-volt working voltage and have a breakdown voltage of at least twice the working voltage plus 1000 volts.
(3) There is no interference with fire alarm service under any conditions.

27.6.2.1.11 Where boxes are installed inside a structure, the installation shall comply with 27.6.2.1.11.1 and 27.6.2.1.11.2.

27.6.2.1.11.1 The box shall be placed as close as is practicable to the point of entrance of the circuit.

27.6.2.1.11.2 The exterior wire shall be installed in rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit in accordance with Chapter 3 of *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*.

Exception: Schedule 80 rigid nonmetallic conduit shall be permitted for underground installations, provided that all elbows used are rigid or intermediate metal conduit.

Paragraph 27.6.2.1.11.2 includes specific installation details drawn from *NFPA 70*. The requirements of this paragraph are intended to help maintain the integrity of any exterior wire connecting to a box installed inside a structure.

27.6.3 Auxiliary Alarm Box.

See definitions for the terms *auxiliary box* in 3.3.12.1, *master alarm box* in 3.3.12.4, and *publicly accessible alarm box* in 3.3.12.5. Exhibits 27.8 and 27.9 show different views of master boxes.

EXHIBIT 27.8

Auxiliary Master Box.

EXHIBIT 27.9

Inside View of Master Box. (Source: R. B. Allen Co., North Hampton, NH)

27.6.3.1 Fundamental Requirements. The requirements of 27.6.3.1.1 through 27.6.3.1.6 shall apply to all auxiliary alarm boxes.

27.6.3.1.1 The authority having jurisdiction shall designate the location of the auxiliary box.

27.6.3.1.2 All exterior wire and cable shall be installed in rigid metal conduit or intermediate metal conduit in accordance with Chapter 3 of *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*.

Exception: Schedule 80 rigid nonmetallic conduit shall be permitted for underground installations, provided that all elbows used are rigid or intermediate metal conduit.

27.6.3.1.3* Wiring between the auxiliary alarm system and the auxiliary alarm box or master alarm box shall meet the requirements of pathway survivability Level 2 *(see 12.4.3)*.

Paragraph 27.6.3.1.3 has been added in the 2013 edition to provide for a high level of system integrity and survivability during a fire condition within the protected premises building between the auxiliary alarm system and the auxiliary alarm box or master alarm box. This requirement mandates the use of survivable pathway methods as specified in 12.4.3, such as the use of 2-hour fire-rated circuit integrity (CI) cable(s) or a 2-hour fire-rated enclosure or protected area.

A.27.6.3.1.3 Figure A.27.6.3.1.3 shows the interconnecting wiring that is intended to meet Level 2 survivability.

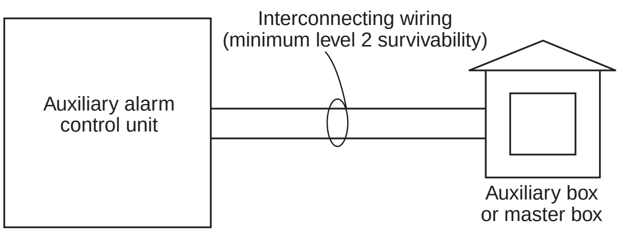


FIGURE A.27.6.3.1.3 *Interconnecting Wiring from Auxiliary Alarm System to Auxiliary Box or Master Box.*

27.6.3.1.4 Where installed outside a structure, the requirements of 27.6.2.1.2 and 27.6.2.1.5 shall apply.

27.6.3.1.5 Where the auxiliary box is a wired box, the requirements of Section 27.7 shall apply.

27.6.3.1.6 Where the auxiliary box is a wireless box, the requirements of 27.6.6 shall apply.

27.6.3.2 Auxiliary Alarm Systems.

FAQ

What is the function of an auxiliary alarm system?

For a definition of the term *auxiliary alarm system*, see 3.3.215.1. Auxiliary alarm systems connect a building alarm system to the communications center using the public emergency alarm reporting system. If a community does not have a public emergency alarm reporting system, it obviously cannot have an auxiliary alarm system connection. (See the commentary following 27.6.3.2.3.9.)

Due to the continued reduction of the number of municipalities and government agencies that have a public emergency alarm reporting system, the number of auxiliary alarm systems has also decreased.

27.6.3.2.1 Application. The equipment and circuits necessary to connect a protected premises to a public emergency alarm reporting system shall comply with the requirements of 27.6.3.2.

27.6.3.2.1.1 The requirements of Chapter 10, in addition to those of Chapters 14 and 17, shall apply to auxiliary alarm systems unless they conflict with the requirements of 27.6.3.2.

27.6.3.2.1.2 Where permitted by the authority having jurisdiction, the use of systems described in Chapter 27 shall be permitted to provide defined reporting functions from or within private premises.

27.6.3.2.1.3 The requirements of Section 27.7 shall also apply to wired auxiliary alarm systems.

27.6.3.2.2 Types of Systems.

The detailed requirements of 27.6.3.2.2.1(1) and 27.6.3.2.2.1(2) describe the two types of auxiliary systems: local energy and shunt. (See definitions for each type of system in 3.3.215.1.1 and 3.3.215.1.2.) Most authorities having jurisdiction consider the shunt system less desirable.

In the local energy system, power from the fire alarm control unit at the protected premises energizes an actuating mechanism inside the auxiliary box to cause the auxiliary box to transmit a fire alarm signal. The fire alarm control unit at the protected premises monitors the integrity of the interconnecting wiring between the fire alarm control unit and the auxiliary box.

In the shunt-type system, a coil winding of the auxiliary box actuating mechanism diverts operating power from the municipal emergency (fire) alarm circuit and causes it to flow current into the protected premises building through a closed electrical loop. Manual fire alarm boxes or sprinkler waterflow initiating devices, with normally closed contacts, connect in series to this shunt loop. Actuation of the manual fire alarm box or waterflow switch will open the shunt loop. This opening causes the municipal emergency alarm circuit power to actuate the mechanism that trips the auxiliary box.

Throughout the requirements in 27.6.3, the additional items for shunt-type systems are intended to overcome some of the potential problems associated with their use. For example, an open fault on the shunt circuit due to a broken wire will cause the auxiliary box to actuate. A foreign ground on the shunt circuit will appear as a ground on the municipal emergency alarm circuit. Because multiple grounds on the municipal circuit can cause the system to malfunction, and because the municipal authorities may not always have easy access to the shunt circuit within a building, detection and clearing of foreign grounds on the shunt circuit become vital but usually are difficult.

Further, an open fault on the municipal emergency alarm circuit will prevent the shunt circuit from actuating the auxiliary box because the open fault has effectively disconnected the operating power. With an open circuit, even though someone may manually pull the auxiliary box and the box will transmit using the "three-fold" arrangement through earth ground, the shunt loop in the building will have no operating power to actuate the auxiliary box. This condition will remain until technicians locate and repair the open fault on the municipal circuit.

27.6.3.2.2.1 Auxiliary alarm systems shall be one of the following types:

(1)* Local energy type
  (a) Local energy systems shall be permitted to be of the coded or noncoded type.
  (b) Power supply sources for local energy systems shall conform to Chapter 10.

(c) Transmitter trouble signals shall be indicated at the control unit and the building fire command center in accordance with 10.15.7.

(2)* Shunt type

(a) Shunt systems shall be noncoded with respect to any remote electrical tripping or actuating devices.

(b) All conductors of the shunt circuit shall be installed in accordance with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Article 344, for rigid metal conduit, or Article 358, for electrical metallic tubing.

(c) Both sides of the shunt circuit shall be in the same conduit.

(d) Where a shunt loop is used, it shall not exceed a length of 750 ft (230 m) and shall be in conduit.

(e) Conductors of the shunt circuits shall not be smaller than 14 AWG and shall be insulated as prescribed in *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Article 310.

(f) The power for shunt-type systems shall be provided by the public emergency alarm reporting system.

(g)* A local system made to an auxiliary alarm system by the addition of a relay whose coil is energized by a local power supply and whose normally closed contacts trip a shunt-type master box shall not be permitted.

A.27.6.3.2.2.1(1) The local energy-type system *[see Figure A.27.6.3.2.2.1(1)(a) and Figure A.27.6.3.2.2.1(1)(b)]* is electrically isolated from the public emergency alarm reporting system and has its own power supply. The tripping of the transmitting device does not depend on the current in the system. In a wired circuit, receipt of the alarm by the communications center when the circuit is accidentally opened depends on the design of the transmitting device and the associated communications center equipment (i.e., whether or not the system is designed to receive alarms through manual or automatic ground operational facilities). In a radio box–type system, receipt of the alarm by the communications center depends on the proper operation of the radio transmitting and receiving equipment.

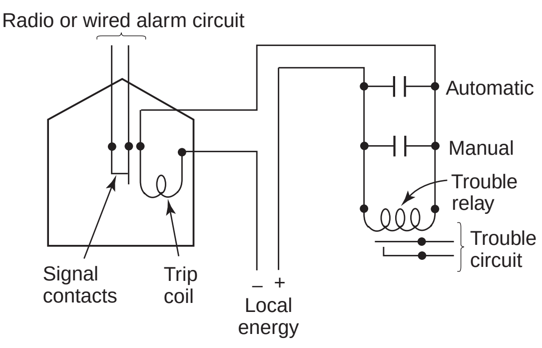


FIGURE A.27.6.3.2.2.1(1)(a) *Local Energy-Type Auxiliary Alarm System — Radio or Wired.*

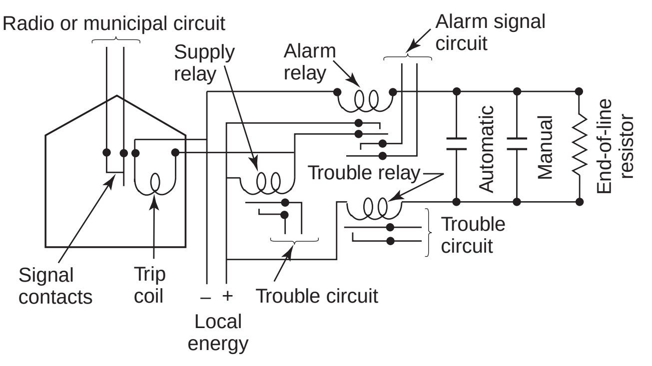


FIGURE A.27.6.3.2.2.1(1)(b) *Local Energy-Type Auxiliary Alarm System with Supply and Alarm Relay — Radio or Wired.*

A.27.6.3.2.2.1(2) The shunt-type system *[see Figure A.27.6.3.2.2.1(2)(a) and Figure A.27.6.3.2.2.1(2)(b)]* is electrically connected to, and is an integral part of, the public emergency alarm reporting system. A ground fault on the auxiliary circuit is a fault on the public emergency alarm reporting system circuit, and an accidental opening of the auxiliary circuit sends a needless (or false) alarm to the communications center. An open circuit in the transmitting device trip coil is not indicated either at the protected property or at the communications center. Also, if an initiating device is operated, an alarm is not transmitted, but an open circuit indication is given at the communications center. If a public emergency alarm reporting system circuit is open when a connected shunt-type system is operated, the transmitting device does not trip until the public emergency alarm reporting system circuit returns to normal, at which time the alarm is transmitted, unless the auxiliary circuit is first returned to a normal condition.

Additional design restrictions for shunt-type systems are found in laws or ordinances.

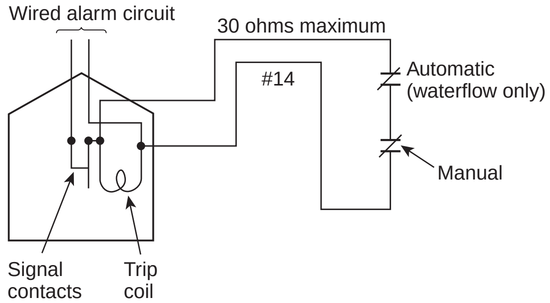


FIGURE A.27.6.3.2.2.1(2)(a) Shunt-Type Auxiliary Alarm System (Permitted).

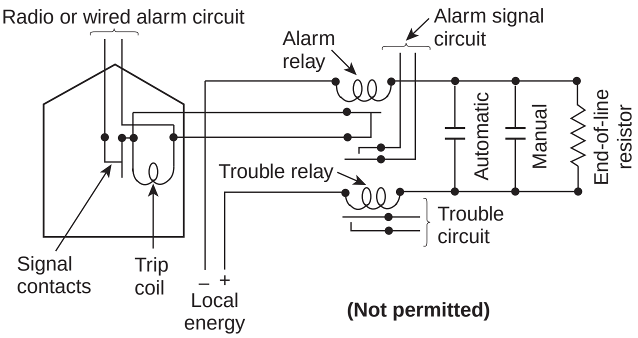


FIGURE A.27.6.3.2.2.1(2)(b) Shunt-Type Auxiliary Alarm System (Not Permitted).

A.27.6.3.2.2.1(2)(g) See Figure A.27.6.3.2.2.1(2)(b).

27.6.3.2.2.2 The interface of the two types of auxiliary alarm systems with the three types of public emergency alarm reporting systems shall be in accordance with Table 27.6.3.2.2.2.

TABLE 27.6.3.2.2.2 *Application of Public Emergency Alarm Reporting Systems with Auxiliary Alarm Systems*

Reporting Systems	*Local Energy Type*	*Shunt Type*
Wired	Yes	Yes
Wireless	Yes	No
Telephone series	Yes	No

27.6.3.2.2.3 The application of the two types of auxiliary alarm systems shall be limited to the initiating devices specified in Table 27.6.3.2.2.3.

TABLE 27.6.3.2.2.3 *Application of Initiating Devices with Auxiliary Alarm Systems*

Initiating Devices	*Local Energy Type*	*Shunt Type*
Manually actuated alarm-initiating device	Yes	Yes
Waterflow or actuation of the fire extinguishing system(s) or suppression system(s)	Yes	Yes
Automatic detection devices	Yes	No

27.6.3.2.3 System Arrangement and Operation.

27.6.3.2.3.1 Shunt-type auxiliary alarm systems shall be arranged so that one auxiliary transmitter does not serve more than 100,000 ft^2 (9290 m^2) total area.

Exception: Where otherwise permitted by the authority having jurisdiction.

27.6.3.2.3.2 A separate auxiliary transmitter shall be provided for each building, or where permitted by the authority having jurisdiction, for each group of buildings of single ownership or occupancy.

27.6.3.2.3.3 The same box shall be permitted to be used as a public emergency alarm reporting system box and as a transmitting device for an auxiliary alarm system where permitted by the authority having jurisdiction, provided that the box is located at the outside of the entrance to the protected property.

27.6.3.2.3.4 Where 27.6.3.2.3.3 is applied, the authority having jurisdiction shall be permitted to require the box to be equipped with a signal light to differentiate between automatic and manual operation, unless local outside alarms at the protected property serve the same purpose.

27.6.3.2.3.5 The transmitting device shall be located as required by the authority having jurisdiction.

27.6.3.2.3.6 The system shall be designed and arranged so that a single fault on the auxiliary alarm system shall not jeopardize operation of the public emergency alarm reporting system and shall not, in case of a single fault on either the auxiliary or public emergency alarm reporting system, transmit a false alarm on either system.

Exception: Shunt systems complying with 27.6.3.2.2.1(2).

27.6.3.2.3.7 A means that is available only to the agency responsible for maintaining the public emergency alarm reporting system shall be provided for disconnecting the auxiliary loop to the connected property.

FAQ What method is often used to satisfy the requirements of 27.6.3.2.3.7?

If an installer makes a connection to the public emergency alarm reporting system in accordance with the requirements of 27.6.3, 27.6.3.2.3.7 requires that the installer provide a means to disconnect the protected premises connection. Only the authority having jurisdiction over the public emergency alarm reporting system can have access to this disconnecting means. Locating the disconnecting means inside a locked auxiliary box will satisfy this requirement.

Some large municipalities do issue a special license or permit for contractors that allows them to have keys that will access the auxiliary boxes. This permit allows the contractor to disconnect the protected premises connection during testing and maintenance of the fire alarm system at the protected premises.

27.6.3.2.3.8 Notification shall be given to the designated representative of the property when the auxiliary box is not in service.

27.6.3.2.3.9 An auxiliary alarm system shall be used only in connection with a public emergency alarm reporting system that is approved for the service. A system approved by the authority having jurisdiction shall meet this requirement.

In reference to 27.6.3.2.3.9, if a community has not provided a public emergency alarm reporting system, no auxiliary alarm system can exist. An auxiliary alarm system depends on the public emergency alarm reporting system to transmit signals from the protected premises to the communications center.

27.6.3.2.3.10 Permission for the connection of an auxiliary alarm system to a public emergency alarm reporting system, and acceptance of the type of auxiliary transmitter and its actuating mechanism, circuits, and components connected thereto, shall be obtained from the authority having jurisdiction.

27.6.3.2.3.11 Paragraph 27.6.3.2 shall not require the use of audible alarm signals other than those necessary to operate the auxiliary alarm system. Where it is desired to provide evacuation signals in the protected property, the notification appliances, circuits, and controls shall comply with the provisions of Chapter 23 in addition to the provisions of 27.6.3.2.

By itself, an auxiliary alarm system does not include the components necessary to notify occupants in a building of the need to evacuate or relocate to areas of refuge within the building. If the authority having jurisdiction requires such notification, then the authority having jurisdiction will need to require the building owner to install a protected premises fire alarm system with initiating devices and notification appliances in accordance with Chapters 1, 7, 10, 12, 14, 17, 18, and 23.

At one time, some manufacturers of auxiliary alarm systems offered a means for building evacuation notification. They did so by imposing an alternating current to operate audible alarm notification appliances on the direct current manual fire alarm–initiating device circuit of a shunt-type master alarm box. This arrangement no longer meets the requirements of the Code.

27.6.3.2.3.12 Where an auxiliary alarm system is in an alarm condition that has been acknowledged, deactivated, or bypassed, subsequent actuation of initiating devices on other initiating device circuits or subsequent actuation of addressable initiating devices on signaling line circuits shall cause an alarm signal to be transmitted to the communications center.

Paragraph 27.6.3.2.3.12 requires that subsequent alarms be transmitted to the communications center. Alarms that have been acknowledged or silenced should not retransmit when a new alarm has been initiated. Only the new alarm should transmit a signal to the communications center. Old or original alarms should only retransmit after they have been reset or restored to a normal condition on the auxiliary alarm system.

27.6.3.2.3.13 Where an auxiliary transmitter is located within a private premises, it shall be installed in accordance with 27.6.2.1.11 and 27.7.2.

27.6.3.2.3.14 Where data communications between a microprocessor-based control unit and an auxiliary alarm system are utilized, they shall comply with all of the requirements in 27.6.3.2.3.14(A) through 27.6.3.2.3.14(C):

(A) The monitoring for integrity shall include communications test messages transmitted between the control unit and the auxiliary alarm system.

(B) The communications test message shall be initiated by either the control unit or the auxiliary alarm system and shall require a response from the corresponding unit, and the following shall apply:

 (1) An invalid response or no response from the control unit or the auxiliary alarm system shall be recognized as a communications failure.

(2) A communications failure shall initiate a specific communications failure trouble message, which shall be transmitted from the auxiliary alarm system and shall be automatically indicated within 200 seconds at the communications center.

(3) A trouble condition in 27.6.3.2.3.14(B)(2) shall activate an audible and distinctive visual signal at the auxiliary box indicating a communications failure.

(4) A trouble condition shall be indicated at the control unit and the building fire command center in accordance with 10.15.7.

(C) Where a separate device is required to interface the control unit to the auxiliary alarm system, all communication paths shall be monitored for integrity and shall comply with 27.6.3.2.3.14.

Paragraph 27.6.3.2.3.14 provides additional requirements for the use of data communications between a microprocessor–based protected premises fire alarm control unit and an auxiliary alarm system. The intent of these requirements is to maintain the integrity of the communications pathway, to provide a means of monitoring the interconnecting communications pathway for integrity, and to ensure the overall reliability.

27.6.4 Master Alarm Boxes. Master alarm boxes shall comply with the requirements of 27.6.2 and 27.6.3.

27.6.5 Wired Network Boxes. The requirements of Section 27.7 shall apply to wired network boxes.

Publicly accessible wired network boxes initiate a coded signal from an actuated box by interrupting the current flow through a metallic circuit with telegraphic impulses. Most wired network boxes operate by means of a spring-wound mechanical clock-like movement that drives a code wheel. Teeth on the code wheel open and close the circuit in accordance with a predetermined pattern. The mechanism drives the code wheel to make at least four revolutions, sending the coded signal four times. In addition to mechanical boxes, electronic wired network boxes are available. These boxes have all of the features and functionality of mechanical boxes, but the telegraphic impulses are produced electronically rather than by opening and closing contacts.

Exhibit 27.10 shows an electronic auxiliary master box.

EXHIBIT 27.10

Electronic Auxiliary Master Box. (Source: Jeffrey G. Knight, Superintendent of Fire Alarm & Communications, Newton Fire Department, Newton, MA)

27.6.5.1 Telephone Boxes. The requirements of Section 27.7 shall also apply to telephone boxes.

Over the years, public emergency alarm reporting systems have employed two types of publicly accessible telephone boxes. The first type uses an existing (coded) wired system cable plant to connect telephone boxes to the communications center. This connection permits the municipality or government agency to retrofit some or all of the wired network boxes for two-way voice communications. Some of these units used telephone handsets. Other designs of this same type use a hands-free-type speaker installed under a heavy protective grill. This first type of telephone box, commonly referred to as a telephone (series) reporting system, connects the boxes to the cable plant electrically in series, in the same fashion as wired network boxes. One manufacturer also produces a wired network box with a telephone handset in the bottom portion of the box. Coding for these boxes is generally accomplished by using a dual tone audio encoder. Once the box is decoded at the communications center, the box number or an alphanumeric message with the box location information is displayed.

The second type of telephone box, which is no longer available, was provided by the public telephone utility company and leased to the municipality or government agency. This system included special equipment that would print out a box numerical designation at the communications center. This printout gave the operator at the communications center the location of the box, even if no one spoke to the operator through the handset. This system, commonly referred to as a telephone (parallel) system, connected the boxes in parallel on circuits extending between each box and the communications center.

The 1999 edition of the Code removed the references to the telephone (parallel) system because the public telephone utility companies no longer offer new installations of these systems. However, some municipalities continue to use these telephone (parallel) systems. Obviously, these municipalities will do so only as long as their public telephone utility continues to maintain this legacy service.

27.6.5.1.1 Where a handset is used, the caps on the transmitter and receiver shall be secured to reduce the probability of the telephone box being disabled due to vandalism.

27.6.5.1.2 Telephone boxes shall be designed to allow the communications center operator to determine whether or not the telephone box has been restored to normal condition after use.

27.6.6 Wireless Network Boxes.

Publicly accessible wireless network boxes operate on a designated frequency assigned by the FCC. When actuated, wireless network boxes send a data burst that contains information on the status of the specific box. This data burst can contain one or more signals and permits wireless network boxes to transmit signals relating to more than simply fire alarm signals. (See the commentary following 27.1.7 and 27.2.2.)

27.6.6.1 In addition to the requirements of this Code, wireless boxes shall be designed and operated in compliance with all applicable rules and regulations of the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) or, where required by other governing laws, the National Telecommunications and Information Administration (NTIA).

27.6.6.2* Each wireless box shall automatically transmit a test message at least once in each 24-hour period.

A.27.6.6.2 The transmission of an actual emergency-related message, initiated at the same time it is preselected for a test message, and, in turn, preempts said test message, must satisfy the intent of 27.6.6.2.

With regard to 27.6.6.2, a daily test timer initiates a signal from the box at least once each day. This signal ensures that the box remains in an operable condition and serves as a means of monitoring the integrity of the box, its antenna, and its transmission channel.

27.6.6.3 Wireless network boxes shall be capable of transmitting no less than three specific signals to the communications center, in addition to the box number, with priority as follows:

(1) Alarm
(2) Tamper
(3) Test

27.6.6.4 Wireless boxes shall transmit to the communications center with priority as follows:

(1) No less than two repetitions for "alarm"
(2) No less than one repetition for "tamper"
(3) No less than one repetition for "test"

27.6.6.5 Where wireless network boxes transmit more than one alarm signal, in addition to those in 27.6.6.3, each such signal shall be individually identifiable.

27.6.6.6 Where wireless network boxes transmit more than one alarm signal, they shall be designed to prevent the loss of supplemental or concurrently actuated signals.

27.6.6.7* Where wireless network boxes transmit more than one alarm signal, the priority of each alarm shall be as assigned by the authority having jurisdiction.

A.27.6.6.7 Examples of priority levels as follows:

(1) Priority 1 — fire
(2) Priority 2 — ECS
(3) Priority 3 — medical
(4) Priority 4 — supervisory
(5) Priority 5 — monitored for integrity signals
(6) Priority 6 — tamper
(7) Priority 7 — test

Additionally, within each signal category, additional priorities can be required such as Fire 1, Fire 2, Fire 3, and so forth.

27.6.6.8 An actuating device held or locked in the activating position shall not prevent the activation and transmission of other signals.

27.6.6.9 The primary power source for wireless boxes shall be permitted to be from one or more of the following, as approved by the authority having jurisdiction:

(1) Utility distribution system
(2) Solar photovoltaic power system
(3) User power
(4) Self-powered, using either an integral battery or other stored energy source

FAQ How many options are available for primary power?

Paragraph 27.6.6.9 makes provision for four discrete power sources for wireless network boxes. The requirements in 27.6.6.10 through 27.6.6.13.3 provide details for each power source.

None of the requirements would prevent a designer of wireless network boxes from using these sources in combination to provide enhanced system operability.

27.6.6.10 Boxes powered by a utility distribution system shall comply with 27.6.6.10.1 through 27.6.6.10.6.

27.6.6.10.1 Boxes shall have an integral standby, sealed, rechargeable battery that is capable of powering box functions for at least 60 hours in the event of primary power failure. Transfer to standby battery power shall be automatic and without interruption to box operation.

27.6.6.10.2 A local trouble indication shall activate upon primary power failure.

27.6.6.10.3 Boxes operating from primary power shall be capable of operation with a dead or disconnected battery.

27.6.6.10.4 A battery charger shall be provided in compliance with 10.6.10.3, except as modified in 27.6.6.10.

27.6.6.10.5 When the primary power has failed, boxes shall transmit a power failure message to the communications center as part of subsequent test messages until primary power is restored.

27.6.6.10.6 A low-battery message shall be transmitted to the communications center where the remaining battery standby time is less than 54 hours.

27.6.6.11 Boxes powered by a solar photovoltaic system shall comply with 27.6.6.11.1 through 27.6.6.11.5.

27.6.6.11.1 Solar photovoltaic power systems shall provide box operation for not less than 6 months.

27.6.6.11.2 Solar photovoltaic power systems shall be monitored for integrity.

27.6.6.11.3 The battery shall have power to sustain operation for a minimum period of 15 days without recharging.

27.6.6.11.4 The box shall transmit a trouble message to the communications center when the charger has failed for more than 24 hours. This message shall be part of all subsequent transmissions.

27.6.6.11.5 Where the remaining battery standby duration is less than 10 days, a low-battery message shall be transmitted to the communications center.

27.6.6.12 User-powered boxes shall have an automatic self-test feature.

User-powered boxes can store additional power each time a user actuates the box beyond that needed to transmit the immediate signal. This stored power can then operate the daily test feature. In other cases, a user-powered box may have one of the other power sources to supply power for the daily test feature.

27.6.6.13 Self-powered boxes shall comply with 27.6.6.13.1 through 27.6.6.13.3.

27.6.6.13.1 Self-powered boxes shall operate for a period of not less than 6 months.

27.6.6.13.2 Self-powered boxes shall transmit a low-power warning message to the communications center for at least 15 days prior to the time the power source will fail to operate the box. This message shall be part of all subsequent transmissions.

27.6.6.13.3 Use of a charger to extend the life of a self-powered box shall be permitted where the charger does not interfere with box operation. The box shall be capable of operation for not less than 6 months with the charger disconnected.

27.7 Public Cable Plant

Metallic and fiber-optic cabling systems and interconnections between alarm transmission equipment and alarm-receiving equipment shall comply with the requirements of Section 27.7.

27.7.1 Requirements for Metallic and Fiber-Optic Systems — Metallic and Fiber-Optic Interconnections.

27.7.1.1 Circuit Conductors and Fiber-Optic Strands.

27.7.1.1.1 Exterior metallic, fiber-optic cable and wire shall conform to International Municipal Signal Association (IMSA) specifications or an approved equivalent.

Exception: Where circuit conductors or fiber-optic strands are provided by a public utility on a lease basis, IMSA specifications shall not apply.

IMSA publishes wire and cable specifications for use in the installation of public emergency alarm reporting systems. IMSA can be reached at P.O. Box 539, Newark, NY 14513, or at *www.imsasafety.org*.

Some jurisdictions lease conductors for their (coded) wired or telephone (series) public emergency alarm reporting systems from utilities, such as a local telephone company or local television cable company, rather than install and maintain their own conductors. When conductors are leased, the provider determines the specifications for the conductors in the same fashion they determine the specifications for their normal communications conductors. The exception indicates that in such a case the requirements of 27.7.1.1.1 do not apply.

27.7.1.1.2 Where a public box is installed inside a building, the circuit from the point of entrance to the public box shall be installed in rigid metal conduit, intermediate metal conduit, or electrical metallic tubing in accordance with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*.

Exception: This requirement shall not apply to wireless box systems.

FAQ What is the purpose of the requirement in 27.7.1.1.2?

The intent of 27.7.1.1.2 is to limit the exposure of the public emergency alarm reporting system circuit to mechanical damage within a building. If an installer runs the emergency alarm reporting circuit extensively throughout the building, mechanical damage might occur to the circuit concurrent with the transmission of an alarm signal and defeat the protection afforded by the alarm system.

Although not specifically covered by 27.7.1.1.2, a fire might also burn through a portion of the public emergency alarm reporting system circuit before the system transmits an alarm signal. The installation of the circuit in conduit or raceway alone would not prevent a fire from damaging the circuit. Though not required by 27.7.1.1.2, an installer could use a cable type listed for fire survivability to further protect the circuit against possible fire damage. See Section 12.4 for the requirements for pathway survivability. Also see 27.7.2.1.2 for other physical protection requirements.

27.7.1.1.3 Wires and fiber-optic strands shall be terminated so as to prevent breaking from vibration or stress.

27.7.1.1.4 Circuit conductors and fiber-optic cables on terminal racks shall be identified and isolated from conductors of other systems wherever possible and shall be protected from mechanical injury.

27.7.1.2 Cables. The requirements of 27.7.1.2 shall apply to 27.7.1.3 through 27.7.1.6.

27.7.1.2.1 Exterior metallic and fiber-optic cable and wire shall conform to IMSA specifications or an approved equivalent.

27.7.1.2.2 Overhead, underground, or direct burial cables shall be specifically approved for the purpose.

One way of satisfying the requirement of 27.7.1.2.2 is by using IMSA specification–type wire and cable as required in 27.7.1.1.1. Cables installed underground inside mechanical protection are required to have conductors suitable for wet locations. Cables installed underground without other mechanical protection are required to have conductors suitable for direct burial.

27.7.1.2.3 Metallic and fiber-optic cables used in interior installations shall comply with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, and shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's installation instructions and practices.

27.7.1.2.4 Conductors and/or fiber-optic strands used to transmit signals of other systems that are under the control of a governmental agency shall be permitted to be contained within the same multi-conductor cable as conductors and/or fiber-optic strands used to transmit signals of public emergency alarm reporting systems.

Occasionally, municipalities that maintain their own governmental service telephone system, centralized traffic control, or monitoring systems run the wiring or optical fiber strands for those services in the same cable as the public emergency alarm reporting system.

27.7.1.2.5 By special permission as defined in *NFPA 70*, cables not under the control of a governmental agency shall be permitted to contain conductors and/or fiber-optic strands used to transmit signals of a public emergency alarm reporting System.

27.7.1.2.6 Signaling wire and fiber-optic cables containing metallic protection or strength members shall comply with 27.7.1.2.6.1 and 27.7.1.2.6.2.

27.7.1.2.6.1 Signaling wires supplied by a power source having a voltage and/or current rating sufficient to introduce a hazard shall be installed in accordance with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Article 760, Part II.

See *NFPA 70*, Articles 760 and 800, for protection requirements.

27.7.1.2.6.2 Fiber-optic cables containing metallic protection or strength members shall be grounded and protected in accordance with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*.

See *NFPA 70*, Article 770, for protection requirements.

27.7.1.2.7 All metallic cables, with all taps and splices made, shall be tested for insulation resistance when installed but before connection to terminals. Such tests shall indicate an insulation resistance of at least 200 megohms per mile between any one conductor and all other conductors, the sheath, and the ground.

Paragraph 27.7.1.2.7 requires installers to test cables and splices with a megohm meter to ensure the dielectric strength of the insulation (see Exhibit 27.11). Installers must conduct this test before they connect any devices or appliances to the cable plant.

27.7.1.3 Underground Cables.

To maintain the overall operational integrity of a public emergency alarm reporting system, the requirements of 27.7.1.3 are intended to protect underground metallic and optical fiber cables from exposure to potential mechanical injury.

27.7.1.3.1 Underground metallic and fiber-optic cables in duct or direct burial shall be permitted to be brought aboveground only at locations approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

27.7.1.3.1.1 Protection from physical damage or heat incidental to fires in adjacent buildings shall be provided.

27.7.1.3.2 Only fiber-optic and power-limited cables and conductors shall be permitted to be located in duct systems and manholes that contain power-limited public emergency alarm reporting system conductors.

27.7.1.3.3 Where located in duct systems or manholes that contain power circuit conductors over 250 volts to ground, metallic and fiber-optic emergency alarm cables shall be located as far as possible from such power cables and shall be separated from them by a noncombustible barrier or other means approved by the authority having jurisdiction to protect the emergency alarm cables from physical damage.

27.7.1.3.4 All cables installed in manholes shall be racked and marked for identification.

27.7.1.3.5 Raceways or ducts entering buildings from underground duct systems shall be effectively sealed with an identified sealing compound or other means acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction to prevent the entrance of moisture or gases from the underground duct system.

27.7.1.3.6 All cable joints shall be located in manholes, emergency response facilities, or other accessible locations acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction where equivalent protection is provided to minimize physical damage to the cable.

27.7.1.3.6.1 Cable joints shall be made to provide and maintain conductivity, optical continuity for fiber-optic cable, insulation, and protection at least equal to that afforded by the cables that are joined.

27.7.1.3.6.2 Open cable ends shall be sealed against moisture.

27.7.1.3.7 Direct-burial cable, without enclosure in ducts, shall be laid in grass plots, under sidewalks, or in other places where the ground is not likely to be opened for other underground construction.

27.7.1.3.7.1 Where splices are made, such splices shall be accessible for inspection and tests.

27.7.1.3.7.2 Such cables shall be buried at least 18 in. (500 mm) deep and, where crossing streets or other areas likely to be opened for other underground construction, shall be in duct or conduit.

27.7.1.4 Aerial Construction.

FAQ What is the primary purpose of 27.7.1.4 and 27.7.1.5?

To maintain the overall operational integrity of a public emergency alarm reporting system, the requirements of 27.7.1.4 and 27.7.1.5 are intended to protect aerial cables and leads down poles to reduce the risk of mechanical injury and electrical failure.

EXHIBIT 27.11

Megohm Meter Used for Insulation Testing of Installed Wiring. (Source: Megger®, Dallas, TX)

27.7.1.4.1 Cables containing conductors and/or fiber-optic strands used to transmit signals of public emergency alarm reporting systems shall be located below all other cables and conductors, except those used for communications purposes.

ANSI/IEEE C2, *National Electrical Safety Code* (*NESC*), contains requirements for the relative position of public emergency alarm reporting system wiring with respect to other aerial supported wiring on utility poles. (See 27.7.2.1.1 for specific reference to the requirements of ANSI/IEEE C2.)

27.7.1.4.1.1 Precautions shall be provided where passing through trees, under bridges, over railroads, and at other places where subject to physical damage.

27.7.1.4.1.2 Conductors and cables for public emergency alarm reporting system use shall not be attached to a crossarm that carries electric light and power conductors.

Exception: Power conductors for public emergency alarm reporting system use, operating at 250 volts or less, shall be permitted to share the crossarm with the conductors and cables and shall be tagged.

27.7.1.4.2 Aerial cable shall be supported by messenger wire of approved tensile strength or shall conform to one of the following:

(1) IMSA specifications as a self-supporting cable assembly or an approved equivalent
(2) Fiber-optic cable with integral supporting means or all-dielectric self-supporting (ADSS) type

27.7.1.4.3 Single wire shall meet IMSA specifications and shall not be smaller than No. 10 Roebling gauge if of galvanized iron or steel; 10 AWG if of hard-drawn copper; 12 AWG if of approved copper-covered steel; or 6 AWG if of aluminum. Span lengths shall not exceed the manufacturer's recommendations.

27.7.1.4.4 Wires to buildings shall contact only intended supports and shall enter through an approved weatherhead or sleeves slanting upward and inward. Drip loops shall be formed on wires outside of buildings.

27.7.1.5 Leads Down Poles.

27.7.1.5.1 Leads down poles shall be protected from physical damage. Any metallic covering shall form a continuous conducting path to ground. Installation, in all cases, shall prevent water from entering the conduit or box.

27.7.1.5.2 Leads to boxes shall have 600-volt insulation listed or approved for wet locations, as defined in *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*.

27.7.1.6 Wiring Inside Buildings.

To maintain the overall operational integrity of a public emergency alarm reporting system, the intent of the requirements of 27.7.1.6 is to protect wiring inside a building. This protection limits the risk of mechanical injury or electrical failure. The requirements also ensure that the wiring does not contribute to fire spread in a building.

27.7.1.6.1 At the communications center, all conductors, cables, and fiber-optic cables shall extend as directly as possible to the operations center in conduits, ducts, shafts, raceways, or overhead racks and troughs listed or identified as suitable to provide protection against physical damage.

27.7.1.6.2* Where installed in buildings, conductors and fiber-optic cables shall be installed in any of the following wiring methods:

(1) Electrical metallic tubing
(2) Intermediate metal conduit
(3) Rigid metal conduit

Exception: Rigid nonmetallic conduit shall be permitted where approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

A.27.7.1.6.2 There could be environmental conditions that neccessitate the use of rigid nonmetallic conduit.

27.7.1.6.3 Conductors and fiber-optic cables shall have an approved insulation. The insulation or other outer covering shall be flame-retardant and moisture resistant.

27.7.1.6.4 Conductors and fiber-optic cables shall be installed as far as possible without splices or joints. Splices or joints shall be permitted only in listed junction or terminal boxes.

27.7.1.6.4.1 Enclosures containing public emergency alarm reporting system circuits shall be provided with red covers or doors. The words "public emergency alarm reporting system circuit" shall be clearly marked on all terminal and junction locations to prevent unintentional interference.

27.7.1.6.4.2 Wire and fiber-optic terminals, terminal boxes, splices, and joints shall conform to *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*.

27.7.1.6.5 Metallic and fiber-optic cables and wiring exposed to a hazard shall be protected in an approved manner.

27.7.1.6.6 Metallic and fiber-optic cable terminals and cross-connecting facilities shall be located in or adjacent to the operations room.

27.7.1.6.7 Where signal conductors, non-dielectric fiber-optic cables, and electric light and power wires are run in the same shaft, they shall be separated by at least 2 in. (51 mm), or either system shall be encased in a noncombustible enclosure.

27.7.2 Signal Transmission and Receiving Circuits. Signal transmission and receiving circuits shall comply with the requirements of 27.7.2.1 and 27.7.2.2.

27.7.2.1 General.

27.7.2.1.1 ANSI/IEEE C2, *National Electrical Safety Code*, shall be used as a guide for the installation of outdoor circuitry.

Public and private electric company utilities, public and private telephone utilities, and public and private community antenna television company utilities use ANSI/IEEE C2. A committee from the IEEE (Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers) developed the *NESC* to describe the placement and spacing of outdoor aerial cable installations. The *NESC* ensures the safe operation of the associated systems.

27.7.2.1.2 Installation shall provide for the following:

(1) Continuity of service
(2) Protection from mechanical damage
(3) Disablement from heat that is incidental to fire
(4) Damage by floods, corrosive vapors, or other causes

27.7.2.1.3 Open local circuits within single buildings shall be permitted in accordance with Chapter 23.

The requirements of Chapter 23 apply to protected premises fire alarm system circuits that do not serve as a part of the public emergency alarm reporting system.

27.7.2.1.4 All circuits shall be routed so as to allow tracing of circuits for trouble.

27.7.2.1.5 Circuits shall not pass over, under, through, or be attached to buildings or property not owned by or under the control of the authority having jurisdiction or the agency responsible for maintaining the system.

Exception: Where the circuit is terminated at a public emergency alarm reporting system initiating device on the premises and where a means, approved by the authority having jurisdiction, is provided to disconnect the circuit from the building or property.

Paragraph 27.7.2.1.5 requires installers to discontinue a previous practice. At one time, installers strung the circuits for many of the original public emergency alarm reporting systems from building to building throughout a city in various East Coast municipalities. Engineers soon learned that fires in those buildings would damage the circuits, thereby placing the operational integrity of the public emergency alarm reporting system in jeopardy.

The exception to 27.7.2.1.5 permits the circuit to terminate at a public emergency alarm reporting system initiating device on the protected premises. However, a means must exist to disconnect the circuit from the building. This disconnecting means allows isolation of the device inside the protected premises in the event of a fault on the conductors that run through the protected premises. See 27.6.3.2.3.7 regarding the disconnecting means for auxiliary alarm systems.

27.7.2.2 Interior Box Circuits.

27.7.2.2.1 A means accessible only to the authority having jurisdiction or the agency responsible for maintaining the public emergency alarm reporting systems shall be provided to disconnect all circuit conductors inside a building or other structure.

FAQ Who is permitted to have access to the disconnecting means for an auxiliary circuit?

If an installer makes a connection to the public emergency alarm reporting system in accordance with the requirements of 27.6.3, 27.7.2.2.1 requires — similar to the requirements of 27.6.3.2.3.7 — that the installer provide a means to disconnect the protected premises connection. Only the authority having jurisdiction over the public emergency alarm reporting system can have access to this disconnecting means. Locating the disconnecting means inside a locked auxiliary box will satisfy this requirement.

Some large municipalities do issue a special license or permit for contractors that allows them to have keys that will access the auxiliary boxes. This permit allows the contractor to disconnect the protected premises connection during testing and maintenance of the alarm system at the protected premises.

27.7.2.2.2 Definite notification shall be given to the designated building representative when the interior box(es) is out of service.

27.7.3* Circuit Protection.

A.27.7.3 All requirements for circuit protection do not apply to coded radio reporting systems. These systems do not use metallic circuits.

Circuit protection, addressed in 27.7.3, limits equipment damage caused when an incident applies transient currents to the circuits of the public emergency alarm reporting system. Lightning is one source of such transient currents.

Article 800 of *NFPA 70* covers protection of communications circuits, including the installation of surge suppressors and lightning arresters.

27.7.3.1 The protective devices shall be located close to or be combined with the cable terminals.

27.7.3.2 Surge arresters designed and approved for the purpose shall be installed at a location accessible to qualified persons and shall be marked with the name of the manufacturer and model designation.

27.7.3.3 All surge arresters shall be connected to a ground in accordance with *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*.

27.7.3.4 All fuses, fuseholders, and adapters shall be plainly marked with their ampere rating. All fuses rated over 2 amperes shall be of the enclosed type.

27.7.3.5 Circuit protection required at the communications center shall be provided in every building that houses communications center equipment.

27.7.3.6 Each metallic conductor entering an emergency response facility from partially or entirely aerial lines shall be protected by a lightning arrester.

27.7.3.7 All metallic conductors entering the communications center shall be protected by the following devices, in the order named, starting from the exterior circuit:

(1) Fuse rated at 3 amperes minimum to 7 amperes maximum and not less than 2000 volts
(2) Surge arrester(s)
(3) Fuse or circuit breaker rated at ½ ampere

27.7.3.8 In regard to 27.7.3.7, the ½-ampere protection on the tie circuits shall be omitted at subsidiary communications centers.

27.7.3.9 At junction points of open aerial metallic conductors and metallic cable, each conductor shall be protected by a surge arrester(s) of the weatherproof type. A connection shall also be between the surge arrester ground, any metallic sheath, and the messenger wire.

27.7.3.10 Aerial open-wire and nonmessenger-supported, two-conductor cable circuits shall be protected by a surge arrester(s) at intervals not to exceed 2000 ft (610 m).

27.7.3.11 Where used for aerial construction, surge arresters, other than of the air-gap or self-restoring type, shall not be installed in public emergency alarm reporting circuits.

27.7.3.12 All protective devices used for aerial construction shall be accessible for maintenance and inspection.

27.8 Emergency Communications Systems (ECS)

27.8.1* ECS shall be permitted to be connected to public emergency alarm reporting systems.

A.27.8.1 The public emergency alarm reporting system infrastructure could be used to facilitate the operation of wide area signaling, as is currently being done for emergency notification to the public in some communities and as has been done in the past for civil defense notification.

27.8.2 ECS equipment and interface methods connecting to or utilizing public emergency alarm reporting systems shall be electrically and operationally compatible so as not to interfere with the public emergency alarm reporting systems.

References Cited in Commentary

ANSI/IEEE C2, *National Electrical Safety Code*, 2007 edition as amended, Institute of Electrical and Electronics Engineers, New York, NY.

NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code®*, 2011 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 75, *Standard for the Protection of Information Technology Equipment*, 2013 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems*, 2013 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

Reserved Chapter

In the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72®*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, Chapter 28 is reserved for future use.

Single- and Multiple-Station Alarms and Household Fire Alarm Systems

CHAPTER 29

Chapter 29 covers the performance, installation, and use of all single- and multiple-station alarms and household fire alarm systems — in essence, all fire warning equipment. The definition of the term *fire warning equipment* in 3.3.109, which was added in the 2002 edition, is "any detector, alarm, device, or material related to single- and multiple-station alarms or household fire alarm systems." This definition helps to clarify the intent of the requirements in Chapter 29.

In the 2002 edition, the scope of this chapter was changed from one limited to fire warning equipment specifically in dwelling units to one that covers fire warning equipment independent of the occupancy. This new scope is reflected in the chapter title and in 29.1.1. Historically, reference to the requirements for smoke alarms in *NFPA 72®*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, from building codes and from NFPA *101®*, *Life Safety Code®*, has not been limited to dwelling unit applications; the "household" chapter has been used as a source for the installation of smoke alarms, regardless of occupancy.

The definition of the term *household fire alarm system* in 3.3.105.2, which was revised in 2002, is intended to clarify that the term refers to equipment that uses a fire alarm control unit to process signals and produce alarm (warning) signals to occupants. As a part of this clarification, the difference between a smoke detector and a smoke alarm is important to understand — a *smoke detector* is part of a fire alarm system, whereas a *smoke alarm* includes the detection and warning components all in one unit and does not require a control unit for power and supervision.

The following list is a summary of significant changes to the chapter on single- and multiple-station alarms and household fire alarm systems in the 2013 edition:

- Deleted the requirement in 29.3.8.1 for the low frequency alarm signal to be "a square wave or provide equivalent awakening ability" because the concept of equivalent was not enforceable and the signal wave form requirements are stipulated by listing organizations
- Revised 29.3.8.2 requirements for visual and tactile notification to apply to people with moderately severe as well as profound hearing loss
- Changed smoke and heat alarm secondary power source requirements in 29.6.1(1) from 24 hours to 7 days
- New 29.7.3 establishing an effective date of January 1, 2019, for nuisance source resistance testing for smoke alarms and smoke detectors used in household fire alarm systems
- New 29.7.7.7.1 and 29.7.7.7.2 clarifying the permitted connection of smoke alarms to system control equipment and the requirement that these alarms initiate an alarm signal within the dwelling unit
- New 29.7.7.7.3 clarifying the permitted connection of a sprinkler waterflow alarm initiating device to smoke alarms or a household fire alarm system to activate an alarm signal
- New 29.7.9.1.3 and 29.7.9.1.4 requiring only a single communication technology and path for all technologies, as required for DACTs, and requiring that a failure of the communications path must be annunciated at the remote monitoring location and protected premises within 7 days

- New 29.7.9.4 requiring two simultaneous or sequential operations to activate a keypad fire alarm signal
- New 29.8.3.4(5) establishing an effective date of January 1, 2016, for a new requirement that smoke alarms and smoke detectors used between 6 ft (1.8 m) and 20 ft (6.1 m) of a cooking appliance be listed for common cooking nuisance source resistance
- Modified 29.8.3.4(6) to allow devices listed for installation in close proximity of bathroom doors to be permitted within the 36 in. (910 mm) exclusion distance
- References to revised Chapter 14 requirements so that single- and multiple-station alarms, regardless of use, are not mandated to be sensitivity tested

29.1 Application

29.1.1* The performance, selection, installation, operation, and use of single- and multiple-station alarms and household fire alarm systems shall comply with the requirements of this chapter.

A.29.1.1 Chapter 29 does not attempt to cover all equipment, methods, and requirements that might be necessary or advantageous for the protection of lives and property from fire.

NFPA 72 is a "minimum code." This chapter provides a number of requirements related to single- and multiple-station alarms and household fire alarm systems that are deemed to be the practical and necessary minimum for average conditions at the present state of the art.

Currently Available Smoke Alarm Technology. The technologies used in currently available smoke alarms include ionization smoke detection and photoelectric detection. These detection types are defined in 3.3.269.2 and 3.3.269.4 and are further explained in A.3.3.269.2 and A.3.3.269.4. Ionization smoke detection is more responsive to invisible particles produced by most flaming fires. Photoelectric smoke detection is more responsive to the visible particles produced by most smoldering fire. Residential smoke alarms and commercial smoke detectors are currently available with either ionization technology or photoelectric technology or a combination of both technologies. The use of both technologies generally offers the advantage of providing a faster response to both flaming and smoldering fires, and is recommended for those who desire a higher level of protection than the minimum requirements of this Code.

Fatal home fires involving smoldering fires and flaming fires occur at night and during the day. It is not possible to reliably predict what type of fire will occur or at what hour of the day it will occur. Therefore, the preference of one technology over the other on the basis of the expectation of a particular type of fire (predominately smoldering or flaming) is not a sound basis for selection. While the current consensus of experts suggests that neither technology offers an advantage when the fire type is not known, there is a consensus that there would be a benefit to having both technologies since the type of fire cannot be predicted.

Based on recent analysis of the full scale fire tests documented by the National Institute of Standards and Technology in Report TN 1455-1-2008, *Performance of Home Smoke Alarms, Analysis of the Response of Several Available Technologies in Residential Fire Settings*, the minimum provisions of the Code using either technology are considered to provide an adequate level of protection for most individuals who are not intimate with the fire and are capable of self rescue. This would include occupants in the room of fire origin for both flaming and smoldering fires who escape through the normal path of egress. Protection beyond the minimum provisions of the Code using both technologies should be considered for situations involving individuals who are not capable of self rescue or who might need additional time for escape. These situations might include families where extra time is needed to awaken or assist others.

While it is true that ionization detection technology is more susceptible to nuisance alarms due to cooking, the use of this technology should not be dismissed, particularly where the additional protection of both technologies is suggested. In addition, there is no substantial evidence that suggests that either technology is more susceptible to nuisance alarms from bathroom steam. Provisions and guidance have been added to 29.8.3.4 to help minimize nuisance alarms from both sources. This is important since smoke alarms that are disabled due to frequent nuisance alarms offer no protection whatsoever. A higher level of protection would be afforded by using both technologies in all locations required by this Code with additional locations in other rooms of the dwelling. In considering this, pending the availability of smoke alarms specifically designed for nuisance alarm immunity, additional locations within 20 ft of a cooking appliance should be minimized, especially for smoke alarms using ionization technology.

While these considerations reflect the consensus of experts based on currently available test data that allows analysis of tenability along with alarm response, full scale fire testing and nuisance alarm testing of current technologies has continued and analysis of this data will also continue. In addition, new technologies are being considered with the prospect of enhanced detection response along with a higher immunity to nuisance activations. The work of the industry and the NFPA technical committee responsible for smoke alarm provisions will be ongoing.

Except for installations near cooking appliances, the requirements of *NFPA 72* do not specify the type – ionization or photoelectric – of smoke alarm to be used. An ionization smoke alarm is generally more responsive to flaming fires, and a photoelectric smoke alarm is generally more responsive to smoldering fires. Both types of alarms have improved home fire safety.

The requirements in *NFPA 72* for smoke alarms assume average conditions and are considered adequate for most individuals who are not intimate with the fire and who are capable of self-rescue. A full complement of smoke alarms is assumed to be installed in accordance with the requirements of Section 29.5. Additional protection, using both ionization and photoelectric smoke alarms (separately or in combination), should be considered for situations in which individuals either are not capable of self-rescue or might need additional time for escape (including families for whom extra time is needed to awaken or assist others). For those not capable of self-rescue and who cannot rely on immediate assistance, additional protection (potentially including the use of automatic sprinklers) should be considered. Refer to A.29.3.3 for additional guidance.

When additional smoke alarms are being installed, the impact of additional nuisance alarms needs to be considered. Refer to 29.8.3.4(4) for restrictions on the installation of smoke alarms relative to cooking appliances.

29.1.2* Smoke and heat alarms shall be installed in all occupancies where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards.

A.29.1.2 An example of the applicable code within the NFPA set of codes and standards is NFPA *101*, *Life Safety Code*. Other codes such as local building codes are other examples to be considered.

The requirements of Chapter 29 are intended to apply to installations in the following new and existing locations:

(1) One- and two-family dwelling units
(2) Sleeping rooms of lodging and rooming houses
(3) Individual dwelling units of apartment buildings
(4) Guest rooms, sleeping rooms, and living areas within guest suites of hotels and dormitories
(5) Day-care homes
(6) Residential board and care facilities
(7) Other locations where applicable laws codes or standards specify a requirement for the installation of smoke alarms

As noted earlier, Chapter 29 deals specifically with single- and multiple-station alarms and household fire alarm systems, regardless of the occupancy. Generally, this equipment will be used in residential occupancies as required by applicable laws, codes, or standards. Although the list in A.29.1.2 identifies applications commonly addressed by applicable laws, codes, or standards, these sources may identify other applications for which the rules of Chapter 29 would be appropriate. The applications and locations addressed in this chapter are not intended to cover requirements for common or tenantless areas, such as apartment building lobbies or hallways. Requirements for those other applications and locations are contained in the balance of this Code.

29.1.3 The requirements of Chapters 10, 12, 14, 17, 18, 21, 23, 24, 26, and 27 shall not apply unless otherwise noted.

The requirements of Chapter 1, the references in Chapter 2, and the definitions in Chapter 3 apply throughout the Code, including Chapter 29.

Since the 2002 edition, all testing and maintenance requirements are located in Chapter 14. Chapter 29 specifically requires compliance with Chapter 14; see Section 29.10.

29.1.4* The requirements of this chapter shall not apply to installations in manufactured homes.

A.29.1.4 Installations in manufactured homes are under the jurisdiction of The Department of Housing and Urban Development (HUD). The rules for installation are addressed in the Federal Manufactured Housing Construction Safety Standards (available at http://www.hud.gov/offices/hsg/sfh/mhs/mhshome.cfm).

29.1.5 This chapter shall apply to the life safety of occupants and not to the protection of property.

In the United States, residential occupancies lead all other types of occupancies as the site of fire-related deaths. As indicated in 29.1.5 and Section 29.2, the fire-warning equipment addressed by this chapter is intended to provide warning to occupants but is not intended to provide property protection or to extinguish the fire. The occupants are responsible for following their emergency exit plan when the alarm signal sounds. Paragraphs A.29.1.1, A.29.2, A.29.4.1, and A.29.4.2 describe fire-warning equipment capabilities, home fire statistics, recommendations for fire safety and life safety, a more detailed explanation of an escape plan, and special provisions for people with disabilities.

Additional safety equipment such as residential fire sprinklers can provide additional escape time and can limit damage to the premises.

29.2* Purpose

Fire-warning equipment for residential occupancies shall provide a reliable means to notify the occupants of the presence of a threatening fire and the need to escape to a place of safety before such escape might be impeded by untenable conditions in the normal path of egress.

An effective fire-warning system depends on the proper installation, use, and maintenance of equipment. The locations and requirements specified in Chapter 29 reflect a level of protection determined by consensus agreement. In many cases, additional protection may be desirable to provide a higher degree of protection. Recommendations for additional equipment and other guidance can be found in A.29.1.1, A.29.3.3, A.29.5.1, A.29.7.4.2, and A.29.8.3.

A.29.2 *Fire Danger in the Home.* In 2005, fire was the third leading cause of unintentional injury deaths in the home, and the sixth leading cause of unintentional injury deaths overall (*Injury Facts*, 2007 edition, National Safety Council).

Eighty-four (84.4) percent of the fire fatalities in 2007 resulted from residential fires — 68.5 percent resulted from fires in one- and two-family dwellings, including manufactured homes, 15.0 percent were caused by apartment fires, and 0.9 percent resulted from fires in other residential occupancies ("Fire Loss in the United States during 2007," Michael J. Karter, NFPA Fire Analysis and Research Division).

Approximately half (53 percent) of the home (dwellings and apartments) fire fatalities resulted from fires reported between 11:00 p.m. and 7:00 a.m., the common sleeping hours ("Home Structure Fires," Marty Ahrens, NFPA Fire Analysis and Research Division, February 2007).

Over three-quarters (76.9 percent) of all reported fire injuries occurred in the home, with more than one-half (54.6 percent) in one- and two-family dwellings (including manufactured housing), and more than one-fifth (22.3 percent) in apartments ("Fire Loss in the United States during 2007," Michael J. Karter, NFPA Fire Analysis and Research Division).

It is estimated that each household will experience three (usually unreported) fires per decade and two fires serious enough to report to a fire department per lifetime ("A Few Fire Facts at the Household Level," NFPA Fire Analysis Division, *Fire Journal*, May 1986).

Fire Safety in the Home. NFPA 72 is intended to provide reasonable fire safety for persons in family living units. Reasonable fire safety can be produced through the following three-point program:

(1) Minimizing fire hazards
(2) Providing fire-warning equipment
(3) Having and practicing an escape plan

Minimizing Fire Hazards. This Code cannot protect all persons at all times. For instance, the application of this Code might not provide protection against the following three traditional fatal fire scenarios:

(1) Smoking in bed
(2) Leaving children home alone
(3) Cleaning with flammable liquids, such as gasoline

However, Chapter 29 can lead to reasonable safety from fire when the three-point program is observed.

Fire-Warning Equipment. There are two types of fire to which household fire-warning equipment needs to respond. One is a rapidly developing, high-heat fire. The other is a slow, smoldering fire. Either can produce smoke and toxic gases.

Family Escape Plan. There often is very little time between the detection of a fire and the time it becomes deadly. This interval can be as little as 1 or 2 minutes. Thus, this Code requires detection means to give a family some advance warning of the development of conditions that become dangerous to life within a short period of time. Such warning, however, could be wasted unless the family has planned in advance for rapid exit from their residence. Therefore, in addition to the fire-warning equipment, this Code assumes that the residents have developed and practiced an exit plan.

Planning and practicing for fire conditions with a focus on rapid exit from the residence are important. Drills should be held so that all family members know the action to be taken. Each person should plan for the possibility that exit out of a bedroom window could be necessary. An exit out of the residence without the need to open a bedroom door is essential.

Household fires are especially dangerous at night when the occupants are asleep. Fires produce smoke and deadly gases that can overcome occupants while they are asleep. Furthermore, dense smoke reduces visibility. Most fire casualties are victims of smoke and gas inhalation rather than burns. To warn against a fire, Chapter 29 provides smoke detector (alarm) requirements in accordance with 29.5.1, and the associated annex recommends heat or smoke detectors (alarms) in all other major areas.

29.3 Basic Requirements

29.3.1 All devices, combinations of devices, and equipment to be installed in conformity with this chapter shall be approved or listed for the purposes for which they are intended.

The term *approved* means acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. Further explanation can be found in A.3.2.1. The term *listed* is defined in 3.2.5 and refers to products or services that have been evaluated by an organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction. The listing organization does not approve equipment or services — only the authority having jurisdiction can approve equipment or services. Subsection 29.3.1 requires equipment to be either approved or listed. If equipment is not labeled or listed, the authority having jurisdiction can still approve the equipment if it is shown that the requirements of the Code have been met. Also refer to Section 1.5 for the rules governing equivalence.

29.3.2 Fire-warning equipment shall be installed in accordance with the listing and manufacturer's published instructions.

29.3.3* The installation of smoke alarms or fire alarm systems, or combinations of these, shall comply with the requirements of this chapter and shall satisfy the minimum requirements for number and location of smoke alarms or smoke detectors by one of the following arrangements:

(1) The required minimum number and location of smoke detection devices shall be satisfied (independently) through the installation of smoke alarms. The installation of additional smoke alarms shall be permitted. The installation of additional system-based smoke detectors, including partial or complete duplication of the smoke alarms satisfying the required minimum, shall be permitted.
(2) The required minimum number and location of smoke detection devices shall be satisfied (independently) through the installation of system smoke detectors. The installation of additional smoke detectors shall be permitted. The installation of additional smoke alarms, including partial or complete duplication of the smoke detectors satisfying the required minimum, shall be permitted.

A.29.3.3 This Code establishes minimum standards for the use of fire-warning equipment. The use of additional alarms or detectors over and above the minimum standard is encouraged. The use of additional devices can result in a combination of equipment (e.g., a combination of single- and multiple-station alarms or a combination of smoke alarms or smoke detectors that are part of a security/fire system and existing multiple-station alarms). Though a combination is allowed, one type of equipment must independently meet the requirements of the Code. Compliance with the requirements of the Code cannot rely on the combination of the following fire-warning equipment:

(1) Single-station alarms
(2) Multiple-station alarms
(3) Household fire alarm system (includes a security/fire system with smoke alarms or smoke detectors)

It is encouraged that the highest level of protection be used where possible. For example, if multiple-station alarms are added to an occupancy with compliant single-station alarms, the multiple-station alarms should be installed to replace all of the single-station alarms. Similarly, if a monitored household fire alarm system is added to a house that has compliant multiple-station alarms, monitored smoke alarms or smoke detectors should be installed to replace the multiple-station alarms or be installed to provide the same required coverage.

The responsiveness of ionization- and photoelectric-type smoke alarms depends on a number of factors, including the type of fire (smoldering, flaming), the chemistry of materials involved in the fire, and the properties of the resulting smoke. Several fire safety organizations recommend that a consumer utilize both ionization and photoelectric technologies in their home smoke alarm systems to permit the longest potential escape times for nonspecific fire situations. This will not preclude the development of new technology with equivalent performance.

FAQ Does the Code permit the use of both smoke alarms and smoke detectors?

The text of 29.3.3 and A.29.3.3 clarifies the acceptable use of combinations of equipment (i.e., single-station alarms, multiple-station alarms, and system detectors). The minimum siting requirements must be met independently either by smoke alarms or by a household fire alarm system. As an example, if multiple-station smoke alarms exist in a dwelling unit and fully satisfy the number, location, and installation requirements of the Code, and the homeowner then has a combination fire and burglar alarm system installed, system smoke detectors can be added to the home in new locations without duplication of the smoke alarm locations. The system detectors would be required to meet the installation rules of the Code in all other respects. Although this arrangement is permitted by the Code, the homeowner should be made aware of the importance of the role of the existing smoke alarms and of maintaining both the new system and the existing smoke alarms. In addition, where off-site monitoring is provided, the homeowner should be made aware that the smoke alarms will not normally transmit the alarm to the monitoring station. Smoke alarm replacement is required every 10 years specifically for smoke alarms in one- and two-family dwellings in accordance with 14.4.8, and in general for smoke alarms in any application in accordance with most manufacturers' published instructions. Therefore, in this scenario, replacement of existing smoke alarms with new system smoke detectors may be an advantage in the long term.

29.3.4 Supplementary functions, including the extension of an alarm beyond the residential occupancy, shall be permitted and shall not interfere with the performance requirements of this chapter.

The supplementary functions described in 29.3.4 can include connection to a remote supervising station, to a central station, or to another remote monitoring location. See 29.7.9 and Chapter 26 for information regarding supervising station connection requirements. Also refer to Section 29.9 for other optional functions permitted by the Code and to 29.7.7 for requirements for combination systems.

29.3.5* Fire-warning equipment to be installed in residential occupancies shall produce the audible emergency evacuation signal described in ANSI S3.41, *American National Standard Emergency Evacuation Signal*, whenever the intended response is to evacuate the building.

A.29.3.5 The use of the distinctive three-pulse temporal pattern fire alarm evacuation signal has been recommended by this Code since 1979. It has since been adopted as both an American National Standard (ANSI S3.41, *American National Standard Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal*) and an International Standard (ISO 8201, *Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal*).

Copies of both of these standards are available from either of the following:

(1) The web at asastore.aip.org
(2) Standards Publication Fulfillment, P.O., Box 1020, Sewickly, PA 15143-9998, Tel. 412-741-1979

For information about the Acoustical Society of America, or for how and why the three-pulse temporal pattern signal was chosen as the international standard evacuation signal, contact Standards Secretariat, Acoustical Society of America, 35 Pinelawn Road, Suite 114E, Melville, NY 11747, Tel. 531-490-0215, Email: asastds@aip.org.

The standard fire alarm evacuation signal is a three-pulse temporal pattern using any appropriate sound. The pattern consists of the following in this order:

(1) An "on" phase lasting 0.5 second ±10 percent.
(2) An "off" phase lasting 0.5 second ±10 percent for three successive "on" periods.
(3) An "off" phase lasting 1.5 seconds ±10 percent *[see Figure A.29.3.5(a) and Figure A.29.3.5(b)]*. The signal should be repeated for a period appropriate for the purposes of evacuation of the building, but for not less than 180 seconds. A single-stroke bell or chime sounded at "on" intervals lasting 1 second ±10 percent, with a 2-second ±10 percent "off" interval after each third "on" stroke, is permitted *[see Figure A.29.3.5(c)]*.

The minimum repetition time is permitted to be manually interrupted.

29.3.5.1 The audible emergency evacuation signal shall be permitted to be used for other devices as long as the desired response is immediate evacuation.

29.3.5.2* Fire-warning equipment producing the audible emergency evacuation signal shall be permitted to incorporate voice notification under either or both of the following conditions:

(1) Where the voice message is contained completely within the 1.5-second pause period of the audible emergency evacuation signal
(2) Where the voice message complies with 29.3.5.2(2)(a) and (b) as follows:
   (a) The voice message is first preceded by a minimum of eight cycles of the audible emergency evacuation signal.
   (b) The voice message periodically interrupts the signal for no longer than 10 seconds, followed by a minimum of two cycles of the audible emergency evacuation signal between each voice message. The initial eight-cycle period shall not be required to be repeated.

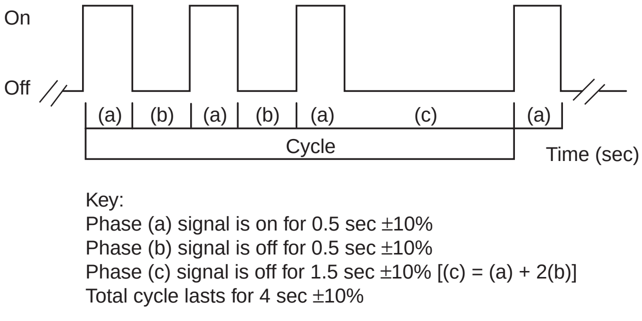


FIGURE A.29.3.5(a) *Temporal Pattern Parameters.*

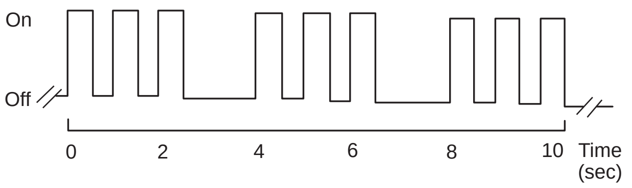


FIGURE A.29.3.5(b) *Temporal Pattern Imposed on Signaling Appliances That Emit Continuous Signal While Energized.*

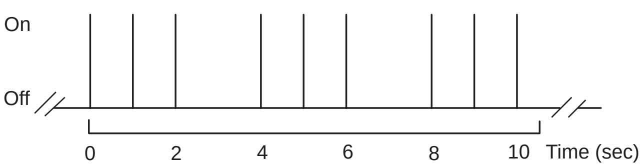


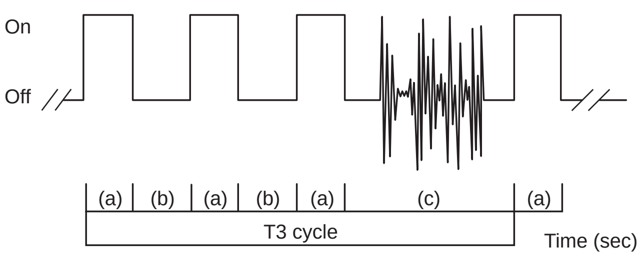
FIGURE A.29.3.5(c) *Temporal Pattern Imposed on Single-Stroke Bell or Chime.*

A.29.3.5.2 It is recommended that the voice notification message be intelligible, audible, and appropriate for the hazard. Care should be taken to avoid excessive silence during the message. Figure A.29.3.5.2(a) through Figure A.29.3.5.2(c) provide examples of acceptable combinations of the emergency evacuation signal and voice messages.

Upon review of technical literature and research during the 2007 cycle, the Technical Committee on Single- and Multiple-Station Alarms and Household Fire Alarm Systems concluded that the use of voice notification may provide benefit to certain portions of the population, particularly children. However, the limited studies are not fully clear as to what characteristics of the voice signal result in improved waking effectiveness; the same effect might be achieved with non-voice signals, such as multifrequency signals (see the commentary following 29.3.8). Therefore, the Code was revised in the 2007 edition to allow the limited use of voice notification in conjunction with the audible emergency evacuation signal. The limiting conditions ensure that the majority of the population will be effectively awakened by the audible emergency evacuation signal before the voice message begins [Bruck, 2001; Bruck, 2005; Duncan, 1999]. The specified conditions allow for both 1.5- and 10-second voice messages in accordance with ANSI S3.41, *American National Standard Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal.*

Alarm initiation — eight T3 cycles minimum.								Two T3 cycles minimum — repeat as desired.		
T3 cycle	T3 cycle	T3 cycle	T3 cycle	T3 cycle	T3 cycle	T3 cycle	T3 cycle	Voice — 10-sec maximum	T3 cycle	T3 cycle
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)		(1)	(2)

FIGURE A.29.3.5.2(a) Temporal Pattern Parameters with 10-Second Voice Allowance.



Key:
Phase (a) signal is on for 0.5 sec ±10%
Phase (b) signal is off for 0.5 sec ±10%
Phase (c) signal is off for 1.5 sec ±10% [(c) = (a) + 2(b)]
Phase (c) signal can incorporate voice notification.
Total cycle lasts for 4 sec ±10%

FIGURE A.29.3.5.2(b) Temporal Pattern Parameters with 1.5-Second Voice Allowance.

Alarm initiation — eight T3 cycles minimum. Optional voice allowed in any T3 cycle.								Two T3 cycles minimum — repeat as desired.		
T3 cycle with voice	T3 cycle with voice	T3 cycle with voice	T3 cycle with voice	T3 cycle with voice	T3 cycle with voice	T3 cycle with voice	T3 cycle with voice	Voice — 10-sec maximum	T3 cycle with voice	T3 cycle with voice
(1)	(2)	(3)	(4)	(5)	(6)	(7)	(8)		(1)	(2)

FIGURE A.29.3.5.2(c) Temporal Pattern Parameters with 10-Second Voice Allowance.

29.3.6 All audible fire alarm signals installed shall meet the performance requirements of 18.4.3, 18.4.5.1, 18.4.5.2, and 29.3.8.

FAQ

What performance requirements for audibility must be met when smoke alarms or notification appliances are installed?

To ensure that smoke alarms or notification appliances can be heard by occupants inside closed sleeping areas, the sound pressure level (SPL) must be measured with bedroom doors shut and in conditions as similar as possible to those conditions normally occurring in the home at night. For example, if air conditioning units or humidifiers are used routinely in a home, those appliances should be operating when the measurements are made. Chapter 18 requires the warning signal to have a minimum level that satisfies the greatest of the following three conditions:

1. At least 15 decibels (dB) above the average ambient SPL
2. At least 5 dB above the maximum SPL that lasts 1 minute or longer
3. A level of at least 75 dBA

All measurements must be made in the bedroom at pillow level using the A-weighted scale (dBA) of an SPL meter adjusted to the time-weighted characteristic F (FAST) scale as described in Table 14.4.3.2, item 22(a). Refer to the defined term *average ambient sound level* in 3.3.29.

Listed smoke alarms are tested to meet a minimum SPL of 85 dBA at 10 ft (3.0 m). Many devices will produce levels of 90 dBA or higher. Because not all actual environmental conditions can be anticipated in standardized testing, on-site testing of installed smoke or heat alarms is recommended, particularly for applications with high ambient noise levels or a room construction that may adversely affect the alarm signal. Because the smoke alarm is installed in rooms and areas that can have an effect on audibility, the audibility requirements of Chapter 18 are recommended for review in addition to the requirements in this chapter.

A study published by the Consumer Product Safety Commission (CPSC) examined sound levels from smoke alarms in several residential dwellings [Lee, 2005]. The results indicate that smoke alarms located within bedrooms would provide the required sound levels. Smoke alarms located outside bedrooms, however, may not provide the required sound level of 75 dBA within the bedroom at pillow level, particularly if the door is closed. For this reason, the Code requires "interconnected" alarms throughout the dwelling, including bedrooms (see 29.5.2.1.1 and associated commentary).

Note that in the 2010 edition, Chapter 29 inadvertently referred to 18.4.5, which included a new requirement that all notification appliances provided for sleeping areas produce a low frequency alarm signal. (See the commentary following 29.5.2.1.2.) The intended requirements for the use of low frequency alarm signals are provided in 29.3.8.1, which only requires low frequency for specific levels of hearing loss.

29.3.7* When visible appliances are provided, they shall meet the requirements of Section 18.5. Since hearing deficits are often not apparent, the responsibility for advising the appropriate person(s) of the existence of this deficit shall be that of the party with hearing loss.

Subsection 29.3.7 directs users to Section 18.5 for requirements to be followed when visible appliances are used. It also states that those with hearing loss are responsible to advise the appropriate people, such as hotel personnel or landlords, of the hearing deficit so that appropriate notification equipment can be provided. Subsection 29.3.8 provides further details of the required equipment for people with different levels of hearing loss.

A.29.3.7 Low frequency or tactile notification appliances such as bed shakers have been shown to be effective in waking those with normal hearing to profound hearing loss [CSE NIH report, 2005; Bruck and Thomas, 2009; Bruck, Thomas, and Ball, NFPA RF report, 2007].

29.3.8 Notification appliances provided in sleeping rooms and guest rooms for those with hearing loss shall comply with 29.3.8.1 and 29.3.8.2, as applicable.

Subsection 29.3.8 addresses the notification requirements in sleeping rooms and guest rooms for people with different levels of hearing loss. Based on the testing to date regarding waking effectiveness of alarm signals, two degrees of hearing loss are denoted as needing different types of alarm signals. Paragraph 29.3.8.1 discusses the requirements for those with mild to severe hearing loss (sometimes described as "hard of hearing"), and 29.3.8.2 discusses the requirements for those with moderately severe to profound hearing loss (sometimes described as "deaf"). The term *hearing loss* is defined in 3.3.122 and further explained in A.3.3.122. The terms *mild to severe, moderately severe,* and *profound* refer to the minimum decibel level at which a person will perceive sound. The material in A.3.3.122 includes a listing of the decibel thresholds corresponding to mild, moderate, moderately severe, severe, and profound hearing loss. As noted in 29.3.7, persons with hearing loss are responsible to inform the appropriate person(s) of the existence and type of their hearing loss.

29.3.8.1* Mild to Severe Hearing Loss. Notification appliances provided for those with mild to severe hearing loss shall comply with the following:

(1) An audible notification appliance producing a low frequency alarm signal shall be installed in the following situations:
  (a) Where required by governing laws, codes, or standards for people with hearing loss
  (b) Where provided voluntarily for those with hearing loss

(2)* The low frequency alarm signal output shall comply with the following:
  (a) The waveform shall have a fundamental frequency of 520 Hz ±10 percent.
  (b) The minimum sound level at the pillow shall be 75 dBA, or 15 dB above the average ambient sound level, or 5 dB above the maximum sound level having a duration of at least 60 seconds, whichever is greater.

Based on sleep studies to assess the waking effectiveness of different types of alarm signals, a low frequency square wave alarm signal with a fundamental frequency of 520 Hz has been shown to provide improved awakening for people with mild to severe hearing loss [Bruck and Thomas, 2008] compared to typical alarms from high frequency piezoelectric sounders used in most smoke alarms. Visible alarm signals, such as strobes, have also been shown to not be very effective at waking people with mild to severe hearing loss [Thomas and Bruck, 2008; Ashley and Du Bois, 2004]. As for all alarm signals, the effectiveness of the installed notification for the specific occupants should be tested by the occupants, if possible.

The low frequency square wave alarm signal can be provided by the sounder within a smoke alarm or by a separate notification appliance. Exhibit 29.1 shows an example of a notification appliance that uses a low frequency square wave to alert those with hearing loss; the appliance is activated by the sound from a traditional smoke alarm. This particular appliance also includes a supplementary bed shaker.

EXHIBIT 29.1

Low Frequency Notification Appliance. (Source: Lifetone Technology, Inc., Oklahoma City, OK)

A.29.3.8.1 As an example, governing laws, codes, or standards might require a certain number of accommodations be equipped for those with hearing loss or other disability.

A.29.3.8.1(2) It is not the intent of this section to preclude devices that have been demonstrated through peer-reviewed research to awaken occupants with hearing loss as effectively as those using the frequency and amplitude specified in this section.

29.3.8.2* Moderately Severe to Profound Hearing Loss. Visible notification appliances in accordance with the requirements of 18.5.5.7 and tactile notification appliances in accordance with the requirements of Section 18.10 shall be required for those with moderately severe to profound hearing loss in the following situations:

(1)* Where required by governing laws, codes, or standards for people with hearing loss
(2) Where provided voluntarily for those with hearing loss

The use of visible notification appliances (strobes) has been shown to be more effective for the deaf population than for those with mild to severe hearing loss. In addition, the low frequency signals specified in 29.3.8.1 are not adequate for those with moderately severe to profound hearing loss. Note that the requirement was clarified in the 2013 edition to apply to "moderately severe to profound hearing loss" compared to only "profound hearing loss" as specified in the 2010 edition. Therefore, due to the deficiencies with audible signals for this population, 29.3.8.2 requires the use of both visible notification appliances and tactile notification appliances per the requirements of Chapter 18. Tactile appliances can be effective for waking sleeping occupants. However, visible appliances are also needed because people might not always be in contact with the signal from tactile notification appliances. (Refer to A.29.3.8.2 for further insight into the performance of tactile appliances.) For those who are awake, visible appliances enhance the ability of the system or equipment to alert them of a fire condition. Section 18.5 addresses requirements for visible signaling. The minimum illumination levels required for rooms in general are based on achieving a level of 0.0375 lumens/ft^2 (0.4036 lumens/m^2). However, Chapter 18 requires a higher intensity for sleeping areas. See Section 18.5 for requirements on visible notification appliances and 18.5.5.7 for requirements specific to sleeping areas.

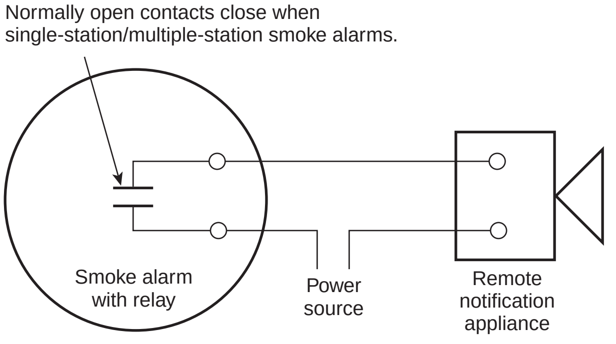
Early studies of persons who are deaf indicated that a 110 cd visible notification appliance, installed at least 24 in. (610 mm) below the ceiling, generally provides sufficient light intensity to awaken a sleeping deaf person. A 177 cd appliance is required where mounted within 24 in. (610 mm) of the ceiling because during a fire the light signal may be attenuated by the smoke layer. See Exhibit 29.2 and Exhibit 29.3 for examples of smoke alarms with integral and remote notification appliances.

A.29.3.8.2 Tactile notification appliances such as bed shakers have been shown to be effective in waking those with normal hearing to profound hearing loss [Ashley et al., 2005, UL 1971, 1991]. Tactile signaling has been studied and found to be an effective way to alert and notify

EXHIBIT 29.2

Smoke Alarm with Integral Notification Appliance for Hearing Impaired. (Source: Gentex Corporation, Zeeland, MI)

EXHIBIT 29.3



Single-Station Smoke Alarm with Remote Notification Appliance. (Source: Hughes Associates, Inc., Warwick, RI) sleeping persons. However, there are many variables that have not been tested that might affect the reliability of their performance. Some of the appliance variables include the mass of the appliance, frequency of vibration, and the throw or displacement of the vibrating mass. Occupant variables that might affect the reporting of test results and the effectiveness of the appliance include the person's age, how long a person has lived with their hearing loss, and what sleep stage the person is experiencing when the appliance operates. The type of mattress might also have an effect of the performance of certain tactile appliances. Mattress variables can include thickness, firmness, memory foam, pillow tops, water beds, air beds, and motion isolation mattresses. Users of tactile appliances should be cautioned to test how well they might sense the effect of the appliance.

The Code requires both strobes and tactile appliances. Strobes can awaken sleeping persons, provide verification that there is a fire alarm condition, and serve to alert persons when they are not in contact with a tactile appliance.

A.29.3.8.2(1) As an example, governing laws, codes, or standards might require a certain number of accommodations be equipped for those with hearing loss or other disability.

29.3.9 Signals from notification appliances shall not be required to be synchronized.

29.4 Assumptions

29.4.1* Occupants. The requirements of this chapter shall assume that occupants are not intimate with the ignition and are capable of self-rescue.

A.29.4.1 Working smoke alarms cut the risk of dying in reported home structure fires in half. Victims who are intimate with the fire or are incapable of taking action to escape might not benefit from the early warning. For these people, other strategies such as protection in-place or assisted escape or rescue would be necessary.

29.4.2* Escape Route.

A.29.4.2 *Family Escape Plan.* There often is very little time between the detection of a fire and the time it becomes deadly. This interval can be as little as 1 or 2 minutes. Thus, this Code requires detection means to give a family some advance warning of the development of conditions that become dangerous to life within a short period of time. Such warning, however, could be wasted unless the family has planned in advance for rapid exit from their residence. Therefore, in addition to the fire-warning equipment, this Code requires exit plan information to be furnished.

Planning and practicing for fire conditions with a focus on rapid exit from the residence are important. Drills should be held so that all family members know the action to be taken. Each person should plan for the possibility that exit out of a bedroom window could be necessary. An exit out of the residence without the need to open a bedroom door is essential.

Special Provisions for the Disabled. For special circumstances where the life safety of an occupant(s) depends on prompt rescue by others, the fire-warning equipment should include means of prompt automatic notification to those who are to be depended on for rescue.

As noted in A.29.4.1, some occupants will not be able to self-rescue even when they are warned early enough. These people may not be able to respond appropriately because they are too old, too young, or physically or mentally impaired. Therefore, it is important for occupants to have an understanding of what actions to take and a plan for able-bodied occupants to assist those who require help to escape. Such a plan is particularly true for very young children, who likely will not awaken to a traditional alarm. Sleep studies have shown that the majority of children, particularly those under the age of 10, will not awaken to a traditional alarm signal even at a sound level of 89 dBA at the pillow [Bruck, 1999; Bruck and Bliss, 2000]. This sound level is approximately the peak expected for smoke alarms either in the bedroom or outside the room if the door is open. A recent study by the Consumer Products Safety Commission found sound levels in bedrooms from a smoke alarm operating in an adjacent hallway ranged from 85 to 96 dBA with the door open [Lee, 2005]. One smoke alarm operating in one of the bedrooms produced sound levels at the pillow of approximately 90 dBA. Besides the very young, others may be at risk due to physical or mental disabilities or from being impaired by medication, alcohol, or drugs. Research programs suggest that low frequency alarm signals as required in 29.3.8.1 also may have some benefit for children as well as individuals impaired by alcohol.

Where additional time is needed to assist others who require help to escape, consideration should be given to the use of both ionization and photoelectric smoke alarms as well as to the installation of smoke alarms in locations in addition to those required by 29.5.1. Refer to A.29.1.1 and A.29.3.3 for further discussion on the performance of current smoke alarm technology.

29.4.2.1 The requirements of this chapter shall assume that the occupants have an escape plan.

29.4.2.2 An escape route shall be assumed to be available to occupants and to be unobstructed prior to the event of the fire.

29.4.2.3* The escape route shall be along the normal path of egress for the occupancy.

A.29.4.2.3 The normal path of egress does not include windows or other means of escape.

29.4.3* Equipment. The performance of fire-warning equipment discussed in this chapter shall depend on such equipment being properly selected, installed, operated, tested, and maintained in accordance with the provisions of this Code and with the manufacturer's published instructions provided with the equipment.

A.29.4.3 Assumptions — equipment is as follows:

(1) Maintenance. Good fire protection requires that the equipment be maintained periodically. If the system owner or responsible party is unable to perform the required maintenance, a maintenance agreement should be considered.
(2) Reliability of fire alarm systems. Fire alarm systems located in dwelling units and having all of the following features are considered to have a functional reliability of 95 percent:
    (a) Utilizes a control unit
    (b) Has at least two independent sources of operating power
    (c) Monitors all initiating and notification circuits for integrity
    (d) Transmits alarm signals to a constantly attended, remote monitoring location
    (e) Is tested regularly by the homeowner and at least every 3 years by a qualified service technician
(3) Reliability of fire alarm systems without remote monitoring or with wireless transmission. Fire alarm systems for dwelling units with all of the preceding features except (d) or systems that use low-power wireless transmission from initiating devices within the dwelling units are considered to have a functional reliability of 90 percent.
(4) Reliability of other systems. Fire alarm systems for dwelling units comprised of interconnected smoke alarms where the interconnecting means is monitored for integrity are considered to have a functional reliability of 88 percent. If the interconnecting means is not supervised or the alarms are not interconnected, such systems are considered to have a functional reliability of 85 percent.

FAQ

What are the periodic testing requirements for household fire alarm systems and smoke alarms?

Periodic testing of equipment is vital to ensure that it is functioning properly. Chapter 14 covers the testing and maintenance of all fire-warning equipment and requires service personnel to be qualified and experienced in the inspection, testing, and maintenance of fire alarm systems. The Code specifically requires that household fire alarm systems be tested at least annually by a qualified service technician. System owners need to arrange for a maintenance contract with a qualified service organization to ensure that testing and maintenance are performed properly. The Code requires smoke alarms to be inspected and tested in accordance with manufacturer's published instructions at least monthly. If owners are unable to perform proper smoke alarm maintenance, they should consider an appropriate maintenance contract. All the manufacturer's published instructions need to be retained by the owner for reference during testing and maintenance. Additional testing provisions are specified in Table 14.4.3.2, item 17(g).

29.5 Detection and Notification

The use of fire alarm system smoke detectors and notification appliances shall be permitted to meet the fire-warning requirements for smoke alarms specified in 29.5.1.

The siting requirements of Section 29.5 are generally specified in terms of smoke alarms. However, the Code allows the use of a complete household fire alarm system that contains system-type smoke detectors connected to a listed fire alarm system control unit along with other devices, such as heat detectors and alarm notification appliances. Refer to the introductory commentary for this chapter regarding the difference between smoke alarms and smoke detectors. Whether smoke alarms or a household fire alarm system is used, the installation must comply with the requirements of 29.3.3. Accordingly, the minimum siting requirements (number and location) of 29.5.1 must be independently satisfied either by the use of smoke alarms or by the use of fire alarm system–connected smoke detectors. The mixing of smoke alarms and smoke detectors to satisfy the minimum siting requirements is not permitted. Thus, a fire alarm system could be used in place of the single- and multiple-station smoke alarms specified throughout Section 29.5. Or, if single-station or multiple-station alarms are intended to independently satisfy the minimum siting requirements in Section 29.5, then a household fire alarm/security system could be used to provide additional detectors and a higher level of protection. See also the related commentary following A.29.3.3.

In addition, a listed commercial (not household) fire alarm system installed in accordance with the requirements of Chapter 29 would be an acceptable alternative to a system of single- and multiple-station alarms or a household fire alarm system as described in this chapter.

29.5.1* Required Detection.

A.29.5.1 All hostile fires in dwelling units generate smoke and heat. However, the results of full-scale experiments conducted over the last several decades in the United States, using typical fires in dwelling units, indicate that detectable quantities of smoke precede detectable levels of heat in nearly all cases (NBS GCR 75-51, *Detector Sensitivity and Siting Requirements for Dwellings*, 1975; NBS GCR 77-82, *Detector Sensitivity and Siting Requirements for Dwellings Phase 2*, 1977; and NIST Technical Note 1455-1, *Performance of Home Smoke Detectors Analysis of the Response of Several Available Technologies in a Residential Setting*, 2007). In addition, slowly developing, smoldering fires can produce smoke and toxic gases without a significant increase in the room's temperature. Again, the results of experiments indicate that detectable quantities of smoke precede the development of hazardous thermal atmospheres in nearly all cases.

For the preceding reasons, the required protection in this Code utilizes smoke alarms as the primary life safety equipment for providing a reasonable level of protection against fire.

The installation of additional alarms of either the smoke or heat type should result in a higher degree of protection. Adding alarms to rooms that are normally closed off from the required alarms increases the escape time because the fire does not need to build to the higher level necessary to force smoke out of the closed room to the required alarms. As a consequence, it is recommended that the householder consider the installation of additional fire protection devices. However, it should be understood that Chapter 29 does not require additional smoke alarms over and above those called for in 29.5.1. Refer to Figure A.29.5.1(a) through Figure A.29.5.1(d) where required smoke alarms are shown.

Where to Locate the Required Smoke Alarms. Fifty-three percent of home fire deaths were reported between 11:00 p.m. and 7:00 a.m. Persons in sleeping areas can be threatened by fires in the remainder of the unit; therefore, smoke alarms are best located in each bedroom and between the bedroom areas and the rest of the unit as shown in Figure A.29.5.1(b). In dwelling units with more than one bedroom area or with bedrooms on more than one floor, more than one smoke alarm is required, as shown in Figure A.29.5.1(c).

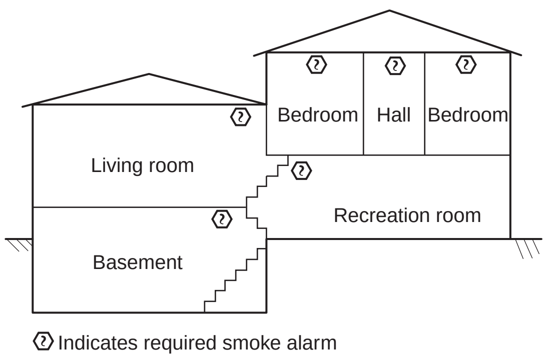


FIGURE A.29.5.1(a) *Split Level Arrangement.*

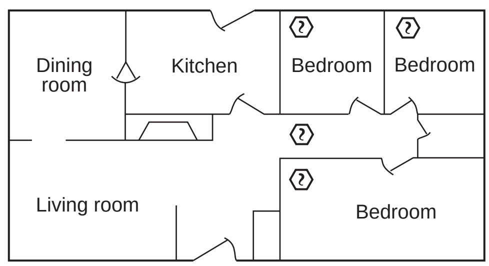


FIGURE A.29.5.1(b) *Smoke Alarm Should Be Located Between Sleeping Area and Rest of Dwelling Unit, as Well as in Each Bedroom.*

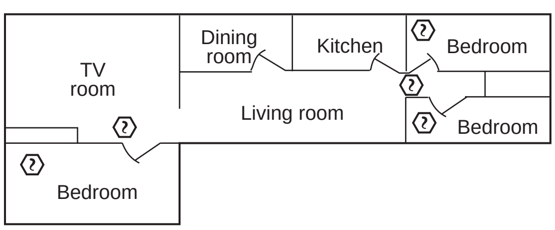


FIGURE A.29.5.1(c) *In Dwelling Units with More Than One Sleeping Area, Smoke Alarm Should Be Provided to Protect Each Sleeping Area in Addition to Smoke Alarms Required in Bedrooms.*

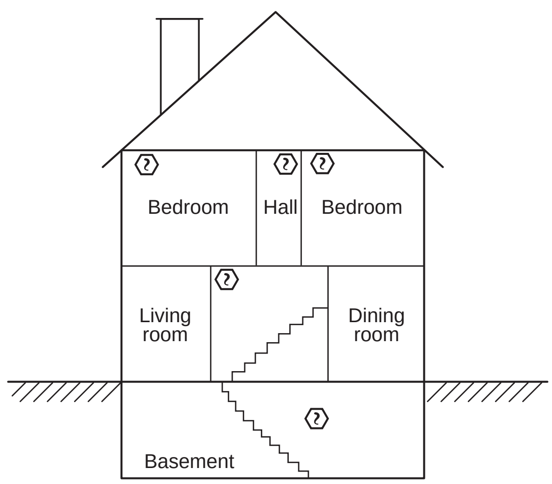


FIGURE A.29.5.1(d) *Smoke Alarm Should Be Located on Each Level in Addition to Each Bedroom.*

In addition to smoke alarms outside of the sleeping areas and in each bedroom, Chapter 29 requires the installation of a smoke alarm on each additional level of the dwelling unit, including the basement. These installations are shown in Figure A.29.5.1(d). The living area smoke alarm should be installed in the living room or near the stairway to the upper level, or in both locations. The basement smoke alarm should be installed in close proximity to the stairway leading to the floor above. Where installed on an open-joisted ceiling, the smoke alarm should be placed on the bottom of the joists. The smoke alarm should be positioned relative to the stairway so as to intercept smoke coming from a fire in the basement before the smoke enters the stairway.

Are More Smoke Alarms Desirable? The required number of smoke alarms might not provide reliable early warning protection for those areas separated by a door from the areas protected by the required smoke alarms. For this reason, the use of additional smoke alarms for those areas for increased protection is recommended. The additional areas include dining room, furnace room, utility room, and hallways not protected by the required smoke alarms. The installation of smoke alarms in kitchens, attics (finished or unfinished), or garages is not normally recommended, because these locations occasionally experience conditions that can result in improper operation.

29.5.1.1* Where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards for a specific type of occupancy, approved single- and multiple-station smoke alarms shall be installed as follows:

(1)* In all sleeping rooms and guest rooms
(2)* Outside of each separate dwelling unit sleeping area, within 21 ft (6.4 m) of any door to a sleeping room, with the distance measured along a path of travel
(3) On every level of a dwelling unit, including basements
(4) On every level of a residential board and care occupancy (small facility), including basements and excluding crawl spaces and unfinished attics
(5)* In the living area(s) of a guest suite

FAQ

Where is the requirement to have smoke detection established?

The detection requirements noted in 29.5.1.1 begin with the phrase "where required by other governing laws, codes, or standards for a specific type of occupancy." The statutory requirement to have smoke detection within a specified occupancy usually is contained within a building or occupancy code that is adopted by the enforcing jurisdiction. The rules specified by these codes may vary from those specified in 29.5.1. The enforcing jurisdiction should be consulted to determine if any differences exist and to determine the specific requirements for the application. If the specified code requires that smoke alarms be installed per *NFPA 72*, the requirements of 29.5.1 apply unless specifically exempted.

The 2007 Code included a number of changes to promote the use of additional interconnected smoke alarms throughout dwellings and to address new technology issues. In past editions, the requirement for the installation of smoke alarms in bedrooms was restricted to new construction. The Code was changed to require a uniform set of installation requirements regardless of occupancy age. The recommendation for all construction has always been that smoke alarms be located in bedrooms as well as outside each separate sleeping area and on each level of a dwelling unit. Recent studies have further reinforced the benefit of having interconnected smoke alarms in bedrooms. The anticipation is that model building and life safety codes as well as local ordinances will eventually mandate that existing construction structures meet the new requirements when a property is sold or when significant renovations are made.

(6) In the living area(s) of a residential board and care occupancy (small facility)

A.29.5.1.1 Occupancies where smoke alarms are typically required include residential, residential board and care, or day-care home. The term *residential occupancy* is defined in 3.3.243 and includes one- and two-family dwellings; lodging or rooming houses; hotels, motels, and dormitories; and apartment buildings. The term *residential board and care occupancy* is defined in 3.3.242 and includes both small and large facilities. NFPA *101*, *Life Safety Code*, specifies a small facility to be one with sleeping accommodations for not more than 16 residents. The term *day-care home*, defined in 3.3.60, is a specific category of day-care occupancy. It should be noted that applicable laws, codes, or standards might include conditions that could impact the applicability of these requirements. The local authority should be consulted for specific details.

A.29.5.1.1(1) The term *sleeping room* applies to several occupancies including: one- and two-family dwellings; lodging or rooming houses; hotels, motels, and dormitories; apartment buildings; residential board and care facilities; and day-care homes. The term *guest room*, defined in 3.3.120, is an accommodation that includes sleeping facilities. It applies in the context of hotel and dormitory occupancies.

A.29.5.1.1(2) The term *dwelling unit* is defined in 3.3.81 and applies to one- and two-family dwellings and dwelling units of apartment buildings (including condominiums).

A.29.5.1.1(5) The term *guest suite* is defined in 3.3.121, and the term *living area* is defined in 3.3.143.

29.5.1.2 Where the area addressed in 29.5.1.1(2) is separated from the adjacent living areas by a door, a smoke alarm shall be installed in the area between the door and the sleeping rooms, and additional alarms shall be installed on the living area side of the door as specified by 29.5.1.1 and 29.5.1.3.

This requirement addresses circumstances in which a door separates the area outside the sleeping rooms from the rest of the living area, as may occur if there is a door to a hallway leading to the bedrooms. In such a case, a smoke alarm must be on both sides of the door, consistent with the other siting requirements, so that people in rooms on both sides of the door will be warned in a timely manner of a fire developing on the opposing side.

29.5.1.3 In addition to the requirements of 29.5.1.1(1) through (3), where the interior floor area for a given level of a dwelling unit, excluding garage areas, is greater than 1000 ft^2 (93 m^2), smoke alarms shall be installed per 29.5.1.3.1 and 29.5.1.3.2.

29.5.1.3.1* All points on the ceiling shall have a smoke alarm within a distance of 30 ft (9.1 m) travel distance or shall have an equivalent of one smoke alarm per 500 ft^2 (46 m^2) of floor area. One smoke alarm per 500 ft^2 (46 m^2) is evaluated by dividing the total interior square footage of floor area per level by 500 ft^2 (46 m^2).

A.29.5.1.3.1 The requirements do not preclude the installation of smoke alarms on walls in accordance with 29.8.3.3. Some building configurations, such as division of rooms and open foyers or great rooms, dictate that alarms be located so that they do not cover distinctly separate 500 ft^2 (46 m^2) areas but rather provide overlapping coverage relative to this spacing requirement.

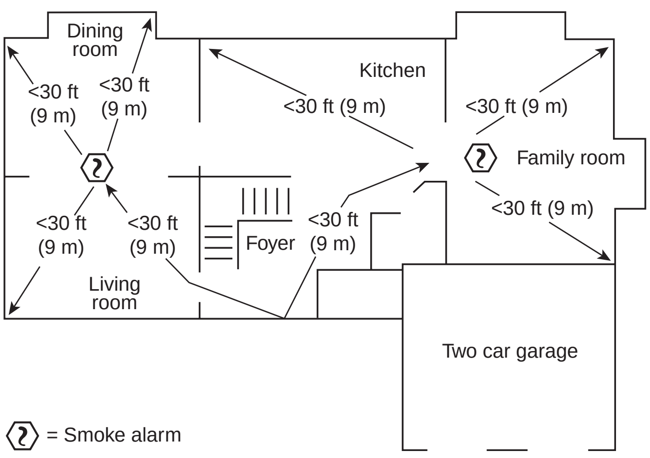
29.5.1.3.2 Where dwelling units include great rooms or vaulted/cathedral ceilings extending over multiple floors, smoke alarms located on the upper floor that are intended to protect the aforementioned area shall be permitted to be considered as part of the lower floor(s) protection scheme used to meet the requirements of 29.5.1.3.1.

The requirement introduced in 29.5.1.3 addresses the need for additional smoke alarms in larger dwellings. The average home size in the United States has increased considerably over the last 30 years, particularly in the last 13 years. For example, the average floor area of a new one-family house was 1695 ft² (158 m²) in 1974, 2100 ft² (195 m²) in 1994, and 2349 ft² (218 m²) in 2004. Homes greater than 3000 and 4000 ft² (279 and 372 m²) are not uncommon in many areas of the country. The new requirement generally does not change the number of smoke alarms for floors with bedrooms beyond those already required in the Code. However, for large dwellings, the requirements tend to lead to the use of additional smoke alarms on floors that are required to have only one alarm per the current Code.

On any level of a dwelling with an interior floor area that exceeds 1000 ft² (93 m²), excluding garage areas, the new spacing requirements dictate the placement of smoke alarms to meet either of two criteria: (1) All points on a ceiling (or vertical wall locations) have a smoke alarm within a distance of 30 ft (9.1 m) in travel distance, or (2) there is at least one smoke alarm for every 500 ft² (46 m²) of floor area. Exhibit 29.4 shows an example of the first criterion. For an example of the second criterion, if the floor area shown in Exhibit 29.5 is 1400 ft² (130 m²), then three smoke alarms would be required [1400 ft² (130 m²) divided by 500 ft² (46 m²) is 2.8, which rounded up is 3]. Two alarms would not be sufficient, since 2 times 500 ft² (46 m²) is less than the 1400 ft² (130 m²) floor area. Exhibit 29.5 shows possible locations for meeting the 500 ft² (46 m²) requirement. Although the Code allows the coverage areas for the smoke alarms to overlap, consideration should be given to strategically positioning smoke alarms in separate areas and rooms on the floor to maximize the early warning potential of the smoke alarms to detect fire anywhere on that level of the dwelling.

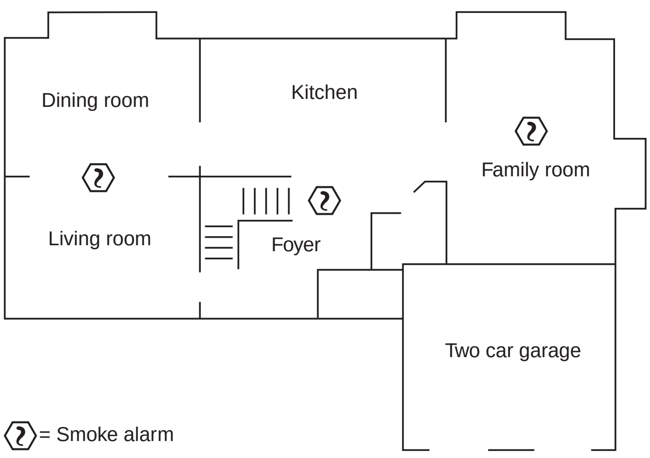
As shown in Exhibit 29.6, 29.5.1.3.2 specifically permits a smoke alarm to satisfy the required number of smoke alarms for more than one floor if that smoke alarm is located to protect the ceiling area over a multi-floor space, such as a two-floor great room. For example, the house shown in Exhibit 29.6 has a first floor with 1852 ft² (172 m²) and a second floor with 1300 ft² (121 m²). Based on the criterion of one or more smoke alarms for every 500 ft² (46 m²), four smoke alarms would be required on the first floor and three would be required on the second floor. However, for the second floor, the requirements in 29.5.1.1 require a smoke alarm in every bedroom and one outside each sleeping area within 21 ft (6.4 m) of any bedroom door. These requirements result in six smoke alarms being required on the second floor, as shown

EXHIBIT 29.4



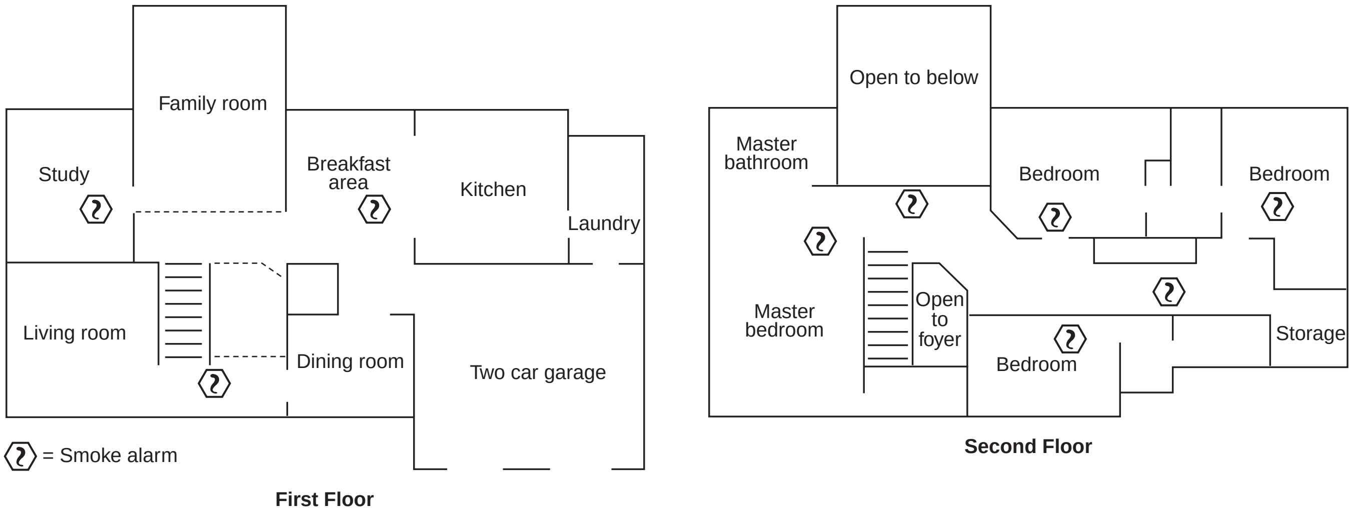
Example of 30 ft (9 m) Spacing Criterion for Dwellings with Interior Floor Areas Greater Than 1000 ft² (93 m²). (Source: Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

EXHIBIT 29.5



Example of Spacing Criterion of One or More Smoke Alarms for Every 500 ft² (46 m²) of Interior Floor Area on Every Floor Greater Than 1000 ft² (93 m²). (Source: Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

EXHIBIT 29.6



Example of Smoke Alarm Requirements for Large House with Multifloor Spaces as Addressed in 29.5.1.3.2. (Source: Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

in Exhibit 29.6. Per 29.5.1.3.2, the second floor smoke alarm that is positioned over the open walkway to the master bedroom also satisfies one of the four smoke alarms required on the first floor since the vaulted ceiling of the family room is open to the second floor.

29.5.2 Required Occupant Notification.

29.5.2.1 Fire-warning equipment used to provide required or optional detection shall produce audible fire alarm signals that comply with 29.5.2.1.1 or 29.5.2.1.2.

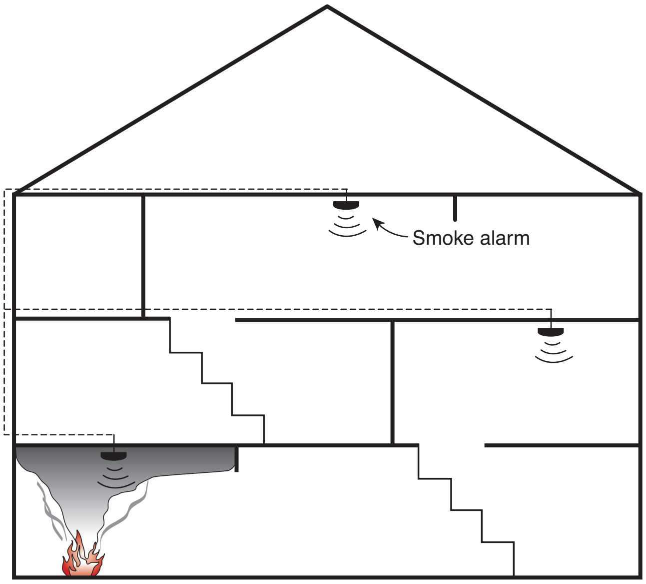
29.5.2.1.1* Smoke and Heat Alarms. Unless exempted by applicable laws, codes, or standards, smoke or heat alarms used to provide a fire-warning function, and when two or more alarms are installed within a dwelling unit, suite of rooms, or similar area, shall be arranged so that the operation of any smoke or heat alarm causes all alarms within these locations to sound.

Exception: The arrangement for all alarms to sound shall not be required for mechanically powered single-station heat alarms.

A.29.5.2.1.1 Fire-warning performance is improved when all alarms are interconnected so that alarm notification is achieved throughout the occupiable areas. In some cases for existing construction, interconnection of alarms is specifically exempted by jurisdictional requirements. This allowance takes into consideration the cost of hard-wired interconnection.

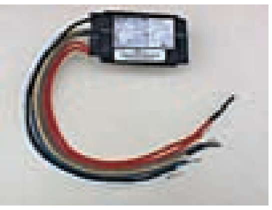
The use of the hard-wired interconnect feature with multiple-station alarms satisfies the requirements of 29.5.2.1.1. See Exhibit 29.7 for a typical arrangement of interconnected multiple-station smoke alarms. Additional notification appliances connected to and powered through the dry contacts of a single- or multiple-station smoke alarm relay can be used to provide an audible signal to meet the requirements in 29.3.6. Smoke alarms and notification appliances should not be interconnected between separate dwelling units, such as duplex arrangements or apartments. Exhibit 29.8 and Exhibit 29.9 show equipment that could be used for remote notification.

EXHIBIT 29.7



Hard-Wired Multiple-Station (Interconnected) Smoke Alarms. (Source: Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

EXHIBIT 29.8



Multiple-Station Smoke Alarm Auxiliary Relay Module for Remote Notification Appliance. (Source: Kidde, Mebane, NC)

EXHIBIT 29.9

Notification Appliances. Left: Bell; Right: Mini-Horn. (Source: Edwards Detection and Alarm, Bradenton, FL)

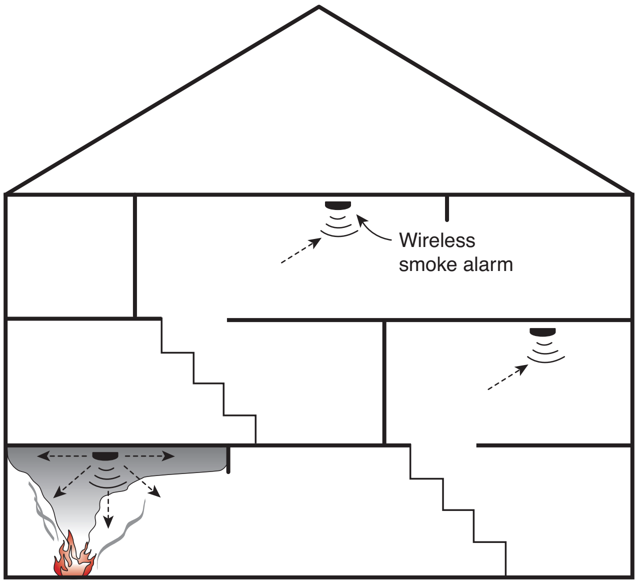
FAQ What important changes have been made in the Code regarding requirements for interconnection of smoke alarms?

The 2007 Code included a number of changes to promote the use of additional interconnected smoke alarms throughout dwellings and to address new technology issues. In editions prior to 2007, requirements for the installation of smoke alarms in bedrooms and for the interconnection of smoke alarms (so that when one sounds, they all sound) were restricted to new construction. The Code was changed to require a uniform set of installation requirements regardless of occupancy age. The recommendation for all construction has always been that

EXHIBIT 29.10

Wireless Interconnectable Multiple-Station Smoke Alarm. (Source: Kidde, Mebane, NC)

EXHIBIT 29.11



Wirelessly Interconnected Multiple-Station Smoke Alarms. (Source: Hughes Associates, Inc., Baltimore, MD)

smoke alarms be located in bedrooms as well as outside each separate sleeping area and on each level of a dwelling unit. The interconnection of all smoke alarms in the dwelling also ensures that an alarm signal meeting the Code will be provided in the bedrooms regardless of the location of the first sounding smoke alarm, which may be two floors away from the sleeping area. Recent studies have further reinforced the benefit that smoke alarms sounding in bedrooms provide the most effective waking potential, particularly for children and older adults, and thus maximize escape time. These Code changes are partly enabled by several new wireless technologies that permit battery-operated smoke alarms to be interconnected (see Exhibits 29.10 and 29.11); therefore, costly alternating current (ac) wiring renovation is not required to provide interconnection in existing construction. The anticipation is that model building and life safety codes as well as local ordinances will eventually mandate that existing construction structures meet the new requirements when a property is sold or when significant renovations are made.

The 2010 Code included new requirements for wireless interconnected alarms to meet specific performance requirements to ensure adequate transmission and reception capability within a structure. Refer to 29.7.8.2 for these provisions.

29.5.2.1.2 Household Fire Alarm System. Where a household fire alarm system is used to provide a fire-warning function, notification appliances shall be installed to meet the performance requirements of 29.3.6.

Note that in the 2010 edition, 29.5.2.1.2 inadvertently referred to all of 18.4.5, which included a new requirement (18.4.5.3) that all notification appliances provided for sleeping areas produce a low frequency alarm signal. The intended requirements for the use of low frequency alarm signals are provided in 29.3.8.1, which only requires low frequency for specific levels of hearing loss.

29.5.2.2* Unless otherwise permitted by the authority having jurisdiction, audible fire alarm signals shall sound only in an individual dwelling unit, suite of rooms, or similar area and shall not be arranged to operate fire-warning equipment or fire alarm systems outside these locations. Remote annunciation shall be permitted.

A.29.5.2.2 One of the common problems associated with smoke alarms and detectors is the nuisance alarms that are usually triggered by products of combustion from cooking, smoking, or other household particulates. While an alarm for such a condition is anticipated and tolerated by the occupant of a dwelling unit through routine living experience, the alarm is not permitted where it also sounds alarms in other dwelling units or in common use spaces. Nuisance alarms caused by cooking are a very common occurrence, and inspection authorities should be aware of the possible ramifications where the coverage is extended beyond the limits of the dwelling unit.

29.6 Power Supplies

29.6.1 Smoke and Heat Alarms. Smoke and heat alarms shall be powered by one of the following means:

(1) A commercial light and power source along with a secondary power source that is capable of operating the device for at least 7 days in the normal condition, followed by 4 minutes of alarm

The requirement in 29.6.1(1) for an ac-powered alarm with backup power supply (see Exhibit 29.12) addresses the need to have a functioning smoke alarm during a power outage. The 2007 Code changed the term *secondary battery source* to *secondary power source* to be more generic and to allow for future technological innovation in power supplies. Batteries, however, are the principal backup source in current smoke and heat alarms. Periodic testing of smoke alarms as well as annual replacement of batteries or replacement after a prolonged power outage are vital to ensure that this secondary power supply to the smoke alarm will function. During a power outage, occupants often greatly increase the risk of fire by using candles, lanterns, space heaters, and other equipment not usually in operation in the home environment. For that reason, the smoke alarm plays an even more important role in warning residents of a fire during a power outage. A national advertising campaign recommends changing the batteries every fall when daylight savings time ends.

In the 2013 edition, the operating requirement for smoke and heat alarm secondary power sources was changed from 24 hours to 7 days. The product testing standards, ANSI/UL 217, *Standard for Single and Multiple Station Smoke Alarms,* and ANSI/UL 539, *Standard for Single and Multiple Station Heat Alarms,* have required secondary power sources for 7 days in the standby condition and then for 4 minutes of alarm. The change in Chapter 29 was made to harmonize the requirements of *NFPA 72*, UL 217, and UL 539.

EXHIBIT 29.12

AC-Powered Ionization Smoke Alarm with Battery Backup. (Source: Kidde, Mebane, NC)

(2) If a commercial light and power source is not normally available, a noncommercial ac power source along with a secondary power source that is capable of operating the device for at least 7 days in the normal condition, followed by 4 minutes of alarm

The power source options listed in 29.6.1(1) and 29.6.1(2) both require an ac power source in combination with a secondary power source. Note that some model building and life safety codes allow the exclusion of the secondary power source in specific occupancies, and for some occupancies they require that smoke alarms be supplied by a commercial power source. Where the exclusion of secondary power is permitted, consideration must be given to the requirement in 29.6.3(5) regarding smoke alarms powered by arc-fault circuit-interrupter

(AFCI)– or ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI)–protected circuits and the requirement for secondary power.

(3) A nonrechargeable, nonreplaceable primary battery that is capable of operating the device for at least 10 years in the normal condition, followed by 4 minutes of alarm, followed by 7 days of trouble

FAQ Do the interconnection requirements of 29.5.2.1.1 still apply to smoke alarms that use a primary 10-year battery?

Smoke alarms powered by a primary 10-year battery identified in 29.6.1(3) must also be of the multiple-station type so that they can meet the interconnection requirements of 29.5.2.1.1 unless otherwise exempted. The 4 minutes of alarm requirement applies to battery-powered smoke alarms as well as to smoke alarms powered by 120 VAC or by a control unit power supply. Four minutes is considered sufficient time to warn occupants that a fire condition exists. Note that some building and life safety codes require primary power to be from a commercial power source.

(4) If a battery primary power supply is specifically permitted, a battery meeting the requirements of 29.6.6 (nonrechargeable primary battery) or the requirements of 29.6.7 (rechargeable primary battery)

Some model building and life safety codes specifically permit the use of smoke alarms with batteries as the primary power source in specific occupancies. For example, NFPA *101* permits the use of battery-only smoke alarms in existing one- and two-family dwelling units. The use of existing battery-only smoke alarms in occupancies such as existing day-care homes or an existing residential board and care large facility is conditional on the authority having jurisdiction ensuring that proper testing, maintenance, and battery replacement programs are in place. Though battery primary power is allowed in some cases, smoke and heat alarms are recommended to be powered by ac with battery backup, where practical.

In many instances, battery-operated smoke and heat alarms are rendered inoperable because the batteries have been removed or dead batteries have not been replaced. The use of rechargeable batteries that meet the requirements of 29.6.7 is intended to result in fewer instances of nonpowered smoke alarms. New battery technologies allow for a 10-year life, which is longer than the 1-year minimum required in 29.6.7(1).

(5) A suitable spring-wound mechanism for the nonelectrical portion of a listed single-station alarm with a visible indication to show that sufficient operating power is not available

29.6.2 Household Fire Alarm Systems. Power for household fire alarm systems shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Household fire alarm systems shall have two independent power sources consisting of a primary source that uses commercial light and power and a secondary source that consists of a rechargeable battery.

The authority having jurisdiction should require the submission of battery calculations for household fire alarm systems. These calculations are used to determine the capacity required for standby and alarm time requirements for the household fire alarm system when the standby power is supplied by rechargeable batteries. See Exhibit 29.13 for a schematic of a typical household fire alarm system.

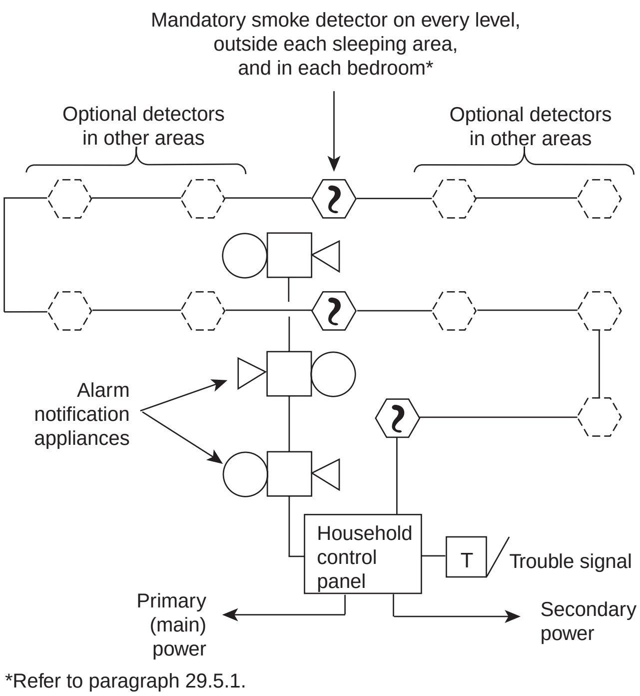


EXHIBIT 29.13
Household Fire Alarm System.

(2) The secondary source shall be capable of operating the system for at least 24 hours in the normal condition, followed by 4 minutes of alarm.
(3) The secondary power source shall be supervised and shall cause a distinctive audible and visible trouble signal upon removal or disconnection of a battery or a low-battery condition.
(4) A rechargeable battery used as a secondary power source shall meet the following criteria:
  (a) Be automatically recharged by an ac circuit of the commercial light and power source
  (b) Be recharged within 48 hours
  (c) Provide a distinctive audible trouble signal before the battery is incapable of operating the device(s) for alarm purposes
(5) Low-power wireless systems shall comply with the performance criteria of Section 23.16.

29.6.3 AC Primary Power Source. The ac power source shall comply with the following conditions:

(1) A visible “power on” indicator shall be provided.

The "power on" indicator in 29.6.3(1) is required on single- and multiple-station smoke alarms as well as smoke detectors that are part of a fire alarm system with a control unit.

(2) All electrical systems designed to be installed by other than a qualified electrician shall be powered from a source not in excess of 30 volts that meets the requirements for power-limited fire alarm circuits as defined in *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Article 760.

The voltage limit regulation in 29.6.3(2) is included in the Code to reduce the shock and fire hazards associated with the 120 VAC wiring. Most jurisdictions require licensed electricians to install all 120 VAC outlets and connections. Some jurisdictions permit a licensed fire alarm technician to install any 120 VAC connection that is associated with the fire alarm system. Consultation with the authority having jurisdiction as to the installation requirements of the fire alarm system being installed is imperative.

(3) A restraining means shall be used at the plug-in of any cord-connected installation.

Cord-connected smoke and heat alarms are effective only when the power supply is not interrupted. In most residential situations, accidental bumping of the plug or inadvertent removal is a real possibility. The requirement in 29.6.3(3) is intended to reduce the risk of unplugging the equipment and applies to the plug-in of any cord-connected smoke or heat alarm or notification appliance as well as control unit–powered household systems with plug-in-type connections to ac power (e.g., a plug-in-type transformer).

(4) AC primary (main) power shall be supplied either from a dedicated branch circuit or the unswitched portion of a branch circuit also used for power and lighting.

When single- or multiple-station smoke alarms are installed, a good practice is to connect the power to a branch circuit serving lighting outlets in a habitable area, such as a hallway, living room, or family room. This practice ensures that if for any reason the circuit breaker is tripped or in the "off" position, the condition will be noticed more quickly because lights and other loads used frequently in the dwelling unit will not operate. The power connection to a household fire alarm control unit can be connected in the same way. When connecting to a branch circuit that serves lighting and other loads, the installer must ensure that the circuit is not overloaded, which would cause the circuit breaker to trip frequently. Some state and local codes require this power connection to be made to a dedicated branch circuit. Consult with the authority having jurisdiction to determine if local codes or regulations differ from the Code requirements in this section.

For standard (compared to those addressed in 29.6.7) single- and multiple-station alarms, the power must not be connected to the switched portion of a branch circuit. Connection to a switched portion of a circuit will likely lead to the smoke alarms being disabled without the occupants' knowledge.

(5) Operation of a switch (other than a circuit breaker) shall not cause loss of primary (main) power. Operation of a ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) receptacle shall not cause loss of primary (main) power. Smoke alarms powered by branch circuits protected by arc-fault circuit-interrupters (AFCI) or GFCI circuit breakers shall have a secondary power source.

Recent editions of *NFPA 70®*, *National Electrical Code®* (*NEC®*), have required that all 120 volt outlets in bedrooms, which includes 120 volt–powered smoke alarms, be protected by an AFCI.

FAQ What is required when a smoke alarm is powered by an AFCI circuit?

This requirement initially generated concern as to whether smoke alarms would be functional if the AFCI activated and prevented the smoke alarm from being powered. In response to that concern, a new requirement was added to the 2007 Code as specified in 29.6.3(5) to mandate that any smoke alarm powered by an AFCI circuit must have a secondary power source. The *NEC* was also modified with a note to refer readers to *NFPA 72* relative to secondary power source requirements. In the 2013 edition of the Code, the requirement to have a secondary power source was extended to circuits supplied through a ground-fault circuit-interrupter (GFCI) circuit breaker. This was done because of the advent of combination circuit breakers that include both types of protection.

(6) Neither loss nor restoration of primary (main) power shall cause an alarm signal.

Exception: An alarm signal shall be permitted but shall not exceed 2 seconds.

Generally, a loss or restoration of power is not permitted to cause any alarm signal. However, the exception to 29.6.3(6) permits a 120 VAC single- and multiple-station smoke alarm and system-based notification appliances to sound briefly (2 seconds or less) to alert the occupant that the power has been interrupted.

(7) Where a secondary (standby) battery is provided, the primary (main) power supply shall be of sufficient capacity to operate the system under all conditions of loading with any secondary (standby) battery disconnected or fully discharged.

29.6.4 Secondary (Standby) Power Source. Where alarms include a battery that is used as a secondary power source, the following conditions shall be met:

In the 2007 Code, changes were made to what is now 29.6.4 in the preamble and 29.6.4(3)(a). In the preamble, the wording was changed for clarity to specifically tie the requirements in 29.6.4(1) through 29.6.4(3) to batteries used as the secondary power source. In 29.6.4(3)(a), the wording was changed to more generically specify that recharging must be automatic from the primary power source; the 2002 Code identified the primary power source as an ac circuit of the commercial light and power source.

(1) The secondary power source shall be supervised and shall cause a distinctive audible or visible trouble signal upon removal or disconnection of a battery or a low-battery condition.

Paragraph 29.6.4(1) requires that an obvious indicator be provided to indicate that the battery is not properly connected or charged. Besides audible trouble signals, some smoke or heat alarms have physical indicators to show that a battery is missing or installed incorrectly. Such indicators include battery covers that do not close unless the battery is installed and mechanisms that prevent the alarm from being mounted to its base.

(2) Acceptable replacement batteries shall be clearly identified by the manufacturer's name and model number on the unit near the battery compartment.
(3) A rechargeable battery used as a secondary power source shall meet the following criteria:
    (a) Be automatically recharged by the primary power source
    (b) Be recharged within 4 hours where power is provided from a circuit that can be switched on or off by means other than a circuit breaker, or within 48 hours where power is provided from a circuit that cannot be switched on or off by means other than a circuit breaker
    (c) Provide a distinctive audible trouble signal before the battery is incapable of operating the device(s) for alarm purposes
    (d) At the battery condition at which a trouble signal is obtained, be capable of producing an alarm signal for at least 4 minutes, followed by not less than 7 days of trouble signal operation
    (e) Produce an audible trouble signal at least once every minute for 7 consecutive days

29.6.5 Notification Appliance (with Smoke or Heat Alarm). If a visible notification appliance is used in conjunction with a smoke or heat alarm application for compliance with 29.3.7, the notification appliance shall not be required to be supplied with a secondary power source.

29.6.6 Primary Power Source (Nonrechargeable Battery). If smoke alarms are powered by a primary battery, the battery shall be monitored to ensure the following conditions are met:

(1) All power requirements are met for at least 1 year of battery life, including weekly testing.
(2) A distinctive audible trouble signal before the battery is incapable of operating (from causes such as aging or terminal corrosion) the device(s) for alarm purposes.
(3) For a unit employing a lock-in alarm feature, automatic transfer is provided from alarm to a trouble condition.
(4) At the battery voltage at which a trouble signal is obtained, the unit is capable of producing an alarm signal for at least 4 minutes, followed by not less than 7 days of trouble signal operation.
(5) The audible trouble signal is produced at least once every minute for 7 consecutive days.
(6) Acceptable replacement batteries are clearly identified by the manufacturer's name and model number on the unit near the battery compartment.
(7) A noticeable, visible indication is displayed when a primary battery is removed from the unit.

Battery-powered smoke alarms, once installed, often are not maintained by household occupants. NFPA studies [Ahrens, 2007] indicate that in nearly 20 percent of households that had at least one smoke alarm, none were working. This was primarily because of dead or missing batteries. The requirements of 29.6.6 address features designed to ensure a minimum level of safe operation and features that promote proper use and maintenance of the smoke alarm. The trouble signal requirement allows occupants to be alerted to an imminent battery failure. However, many homeowners or tenants do not recognize the trouble signal and may think it is a nuisance alarm. Establishing a routine battery replacement program is important to keep smoke alarms functioning. A popular program sponsored by the International Association of Fire Chiefs in conjunction with a battery manufacturer is the "Change Your Clocks, Change Your Batteries" campaign. This program reminds people living where the time changes to and from daylight savings time to also change the batteries in their smoke alarms. In those few areas where time changes are not observed, some other means of public awareness should be devised.

The requirement for a minimum of 7 days of trouble signals and weekly testing of battery-powered smoke alarms is based on the need to warn occupants of low-power conditions after reasonable vacancies of the dwelling unit. Dwellings are commonly empty for periods of up to 7 days while occupants are on vacation. Occupants should test an alarm upon returning from an extended absence to ensure the unit is still properly powered. Many smoke alarms actually provide trouble signals beyond the 7-day minimum requirement.

29.6.7 Primary Power Source (Rechargeable Battery). If smoke alarms are powered by a rechargeable battery, the following conditions shall be met:

(1) The battery shall, with proper charging, be able to power the alarm for a life of 1 year.
(2) The battery shall be automatically recharged by an circuit of the commercial light and power source.
(3) The battery shall be recharged within 4 hours where power is provided from a circuit that can be switched on or off by means other than a circuit breaker, or within 48 hours

where power is provided from a circuit that cannot be switched on or off by means other than a circuit breaker.

(4) A distinctive audible trouble signal shall sound before the battery is incapable of operating the device(s) for alarm purposes.

(5) For a unit employing a lock-in alarm feature, automatic transfer shall be provided from alarm to a trouble condition.

(6) At the battery condition at which a trouble signal is obtained, the unit shall be capable of producing an alarm signal for at least 4 minutes, followed by not less than 7 days of trouble signal operation.

(7) The audible trouble signal shall be produced at least once every minute for 7 consecutive days.

FAQ Smoke alarms powered by primary rechargeable batteries are permitted to be connected to what types of circuits?

The requirements for rechargeable battery-powered smoke alarms allow devices that are automatically charged by an ac circuit (switched or unswitched). Rechargeable battery–powered smoke alarms connected to a switched ac light source have been designed to offer various test and use features, such as switch-controlled silence and functional test capabilities that are not available with standard battery-powered smoke alarms. The use of automatically rechargeable batteries meeting the requirements of 29.6.7 should reduce the number of occurrences of nonfunctioning smoke alarms caused by people forgetting to replace batteries. Current technologies are designed to provide batteries with functional lives of 10 years, which is longer than the minimum required in 29.6.7(1). As noted in the commentary following 29.6.1(4), battery-powered smoke alarms (primary power) are permitted only in certain existing occupancies. They are not allowed in new construction by model building codes, which typically require unswitched ac primary power with battery back-up.

29.6.8 Secondary (Standby) Non-Battery Power Source. Where alarms include a secondary power source (non-battery), the following conditions shall be met:

(1) The secondary power source shall be supervised and shall cause a distinctive audible or visible trouble signal upon depletion or failure.

(2) A distinctive audible trouble signal shall be provided before the power source is incapable of operating the device(s) for alarm purposes.

(3) At a power source condition at which a trouble signal is obtained, the power source shall be capable of producing an alarm signal for at least 4 minutes, followed by not less than 7 days of trouble signal operation.

(4) The audible trouble signal shall be produced at least once every minute for 7 consecutive days.

(5) A rechargeable secondary power source shall meet the following criteria:
   (a) Be automatically recharged.
   (b) Be recharged within 4 hours where power is provided from a circuit that can be switched on or off by means other than a circuit breaker, or within 48 hours where power is provided from a circuit that cannot be switched on or off by means other than a circuit breaker.

29.7 Equipment Performance

29.7.1 Self-Diagnostic. Any failure of any nonreliable or short-life component that renders the detector inoperable shall result in a trouble signal or otherwise be apparent to the occupant of the living unit without the need for test.

Subsection 29.7.1 requires the supervision of the sensor electronics and all circuitry in the alarm and some form of audible or visible indication of detector component failure, such as indicator lights or a distinctive audible trouble signal.

29.7.2* Smoke Alarms, System Smoke Detectors, and Other Non-Heat Fire Detectors. Each device shall detect abnormal quantities of smoke or applicable fire signature, shall operate in the normal environmental conditions, and shall be in compliance with applicable standards such as ANSI/UL 268, *Standard for Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems*, or ANSI/UL 217, *Standard for Single and Multiple Station Smoke Alarms*.

A.29.7.2 The UL listing for smoke alarms addresses two categories of these devices: one for applications where sensitivity testing is not required (UTGT), and one for applications where sensitivity testing is required (UTHA). Refer to the testing requirements for these devices in Chapter 14.

ANSI/UL 268, *Standard for Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems,* is the standard for "system" smoke detectors. These detectors are connected to and powered by a control unit and may also have integral notification appliances, depending on the model and manufacturer. All ac-powered, battery-powered, or combination ac- and battery-powered single- and multiple-station smoke alarms must comply with ANSI/UL 217 in order to be listed. Both the ionization-type and the photoelectric-type smoke detectors/smoke alarms are available under ANSI/UL 268 or ANSI/UL 217.

The wording in 29.7.2 was changed in the 2010 edition to clarify the intent to be applicable to any device or system that responds to smoke or other fire signatures (except for heat-only detectors). In all cases, the equipment must be in compliance with applicable standards. The technical committee recognizes that research and advancements in technology are demonstrating that multi-sensor detection can provide improved detection performance. The applicable standards for these newer technologies will have to demonstrate equivalent or better performance to current detectors and smoke alarms tested per ANSI/UL 268 or ANSI/UL 217.

29.7.3 Resistance to Nuisance Source. Effective January 1, 2019, smoke alarms and smoke detectors used in household fire alarm systems shall be listed for resistance to common nuisance sources.

Subsection 29.7.3 is a new requirement in the 2013 edition. Although recent changes in Chapter 29 [see 29.8.3.4(4)] have established specific siting requirements to avoid nuisance alarms from cooking, it is recognized that the rules in *NFPA 72* for smoke alarms are not adopted by all jurisdictions or not always effectively enforced. The technical committee believed that the issue of nuisance alarms can be addressed across the board by implementing more rigorous product testing standards.

29.7.4* Heat Detectors and Heat Alarms.

A.29.7.4 The linear space rating is the maximum allowable distance between heat detectors. The linear space rating is also a measure of detector response time to a standard test fire when tested at the same distance. A higher rating corresponds to a faster response time. This Code recognizes only those heat detectors with ratings of 50 ft (15.2 m) or more.

29.7.4.1 Each heat detector and heat alarm, including a heat detector or heat alarm integrally mounted on a smoke detector or smoke alarm, shall detect abnormally high temperature or rate-of-temperature rise, and all such detectors shall be listed for not less than 50 ft (15 m) spacing.

29.7.4.2* Fixed-temperature detectors or alarms shall have a temperature rating at least 25°F (14°C) above the normal ambient temperature and shall not be rated 50°F (28°C) higher than the maximum anticipated ambient temperature in the room or space where installed.

A.29.7.4.2 A heat detector with a temperature rating somewhat in excess of the highest normally expected ambient temperature is specified in order to avoid the possibility of premature response of the heat detector to non-fire conditions.

Some areas or rooms of the dwelling unit can experience ambient temperatures considerably higher than those in the normally occupied living spaces. Examples are unfinished attics, the space near hot air registers, and some furnace rooms. This fact should be considered in the selection of the appropriate temperature rating for fixed-temperature heat detectors to be installed in these areas or rooms.

The heat detector types that are allowed by the requirements in 29.7.4 are either fixed-temperature (see Exhibit 29.14) or rate-of-rise (see Exhibit 29.15) detectors.

Rate-of-rise heat detectors respond to rapid temperature increases. The designer should consider the environment in which rate-of-rise heat detectors are to be installed. Areas near dishwashers, hot air vents, and ovens are examples of areas to be avoided.

EXHIBIT 29.14

Fixed-Temperature Combination Smoke Alarm and Heat Alarm. (Source: Gentex Corporation, Zeeland, MI)

29.7.5 Operability. Single- and multiple-station alarms, including heat alarms, shall be provided with a convenient means for testing its operability by the occupant, system owner, or other responsible parties.

Smoke and heat alarms are required to be tested in accordance with the provisions in the manufacturer's published instructions. Refer to 14.4.5 and Table 14.4.3.2, item 17(g), for smoke alarms and Table 14.4.3.2, item 17(d)(6), for heat alarms. In most cases the built-in test feature can be used for testing these devices. Listed test aerosol can be used for smoke alarms provided that the smoke alarm manufacturer does not prohibit its use.

Open flames should never be used to test smoke or heat alarms because of the obvious fire hazard. Homeowners who are unable to perform these tests should consider a service contract.

EXHIBIT 29.15

Low-Profile Rate-of-Rise Heat Detector. (Source: Edwards Detection and Alarm, Bradenton, FL)

29.7.6 System Control Equipment.

29.7.6.1 The system control equipment shall be automatically restoring upon restoration of electrical power.

29.7.6.2 The system control equipment shall be of a type that "locks in" on an alarm condition. Smoke detection circuits shall not be required to lock in.

The control unit must have the "lock in" feature, as required by 29.7.6.2. System-connected smoke detectors utilizing a control unit are required by ANSI/UL 268 to provide a lamp or equivalent on a spot-type detector head or base to identify it as the unit from which the alarm was initiated. ANSI/UL 268 requires that the means incorporated to identify the initiation of an alarm remain activated after the smoke has dissipated from within the detector. The lock in feature is, therefore, required on all spot-type smoke detectors connected to a control unit.

29.7.6.3 If a reset switch is provided, it shall be of a self-restoring (momentary operation) type.

29.7.6.4 A means for silencing the trouble notification appliance(s) shall be permitted only if the following conditions are satisfied:

(1) The means is key-operated or located within a locked enclosure, or arranged to provide equivalent protection against unauthorized use.
(2) The means transfers the trouble indication to an identified lamp or other acceptable visible indicator, and the visible indication persists until the trouble condition has been corrected.

EXHIBIT 29.16

Keypad Display Arrangement. (Source: NAPCO Security Systems, Inc.–Gemini, Amityville, NY)

The requirements in 29.7.6.4 can be satisfied with a password-protected interface, such as a fire alarm/security system keypad, that visibly displays the trouble condition. See Exhibit 29.16 for a keypad display arrangement that might satisfy this requirement.

29.7.6.5 A means for turning off activated alarm notification appliances shall be permitted only if the following conditions are satisfied:

(1) The means is key-operated or located within a locked cabinet, or arranged to provide equivalent protection against unauthorized use.
(2) The means includes the provision of a visible alarm silence indication.

29.7.6.6 Household fire alarm system smoke detectors, initiating devices, and notification appliances shall be monitored for integrity so that the occurrence of a single open or single ground fault in the interconnection, which prevents normal operation of the interconnected devices, is indicated by a distinctive trouble signal.

29.7.6.7 System control equipment shall be in compliance with applicable standards such as ANSI/UL 985, *Standard for Household Fire Warning System Units*; ANSI/UL 1730, *Standard for Smoke Detector Monitors and Accessories for Individual Living Units of Multifamily Residences and Hotel/Motel Rooms*; or ANSI/UL 864, *Standard for Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems*.

The requirement in 29.7.6.7 establishes appropriate standards for system control equipment and indicates that either household fire alarm systems or commercial systems can be used as equivalent in residential applications.

29.7.7 Combination System.

29.7.7.1 If designed and installed to perform additional functions, fire-warning equipment shall operate reliably and without compromise to its primary functions.

29.7.7.2 Fire signals shall take precedence over any other signal or functions, even if a non-fire signal is activated first.

The emergency evacuation signal, as required in 29.3.5, must override all other notification signals if a fire alarm occurs.

29.7.7.3 Signals shall be distinctive so that a fire signal can be distinguished from signals that require different actions by the occupants.

29.7.7.4 Faults in other systems or components shall not affect the operation of the fire alarm system.

29.7.7.5 Where common wiring is employed for a combination system, the equipment for other than the fire alarm system shall be connected to the common wiring of the system so that short circuits, open circuits, grounds, or any fault in this equipment or interconnection between this equipment and the fire alarm system wiring does not interfere with the supervision of the fire alarm system or prevent alarm or trouble signal operation.

Fire-warning systems in dwellings are permitted to be combination systems. Refer to the defined term *combination system* in 3.3.105.1. Equipment not required for the operation of the fire alarm system that is modified, removed, or malfunctioning in any way must not impair the operation of the fire alarm system.

See Exhibit 29.17 for a typical listed combination fire/burglar alarm control unit.

EXHIBIT 29.17

Combination Household Fire/Burglar Alarm System. (Source: Bosch Security Systems, Fairport, NY)

29.7.7.6 In a fire/burglar system, the operation shall be as follows:

(1) A fire alarm signal shall take precedence or be clearly recognizable over any other signal, even when the non-fire alarm signal is initiated first.
(2) Distinctive alarm signals shall be used so that fire alarms can be distinguished from other functions, such as burglar alarms. The use of a common-sounding appliance for fire and burglar alarms shall be permitted where distinctive signals are used.

Unless the fire alarm signals are unique, they could be confused with security, carbon monoxide alarms, or other signals in the home. Where the intended response is to evacuate, 29.3.5 requires systems to produce the audible emergency evacuation signal described in ANSI S3.41. The requirement for a unique signal does not mean that two separate notification appliances must be used. A single notification appliance may be used provided that it can supply different, distinctive signals. For example, a fully integrated system might sound the National Standard Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal for a fire alarm, sound a different signal for a security alarm, and sound a third signal to indicate detection of excessive levels of carbon monoxide.

29.7.7.7* Installations that include the connection of single- or multiple-station alarms with other input or output devices shall be permitted. An open, ground fault or short circuit of the wiring connecting input or output devices to the single- or multiple-station alarms shall not prevent operation of each individual alarm.

A.29.7.7.7 Such input and output devices include, but are not limited to, relay modules, notification appliances, phone dialers, system control units, heat detectors, and manual fire alarm boxes.

Paragraph 29.7.7.7 was modified for the 2010 edition to clarify that the intent is to permit the interconnection of smoke alarms with other input or output devices. The examples of input and output devices were moved to Annex A. Furthermore, the revised paragraph requires that a failure of the multiple-station interconnecting means not prevent single-station operation of the multiple-station alarms. This coincides with ANSI/UL 217, which requires a fault to allow alarms to operate as single-station alarms.

29.7.7.7.1 Single- or multiple-station smoke alarms shall be permitted to be connected to system control equipment located within the dwelling unit.

29.7.7.7.2 When connected, the actuation of a single- or multiple-station smoke alarm shall initiate an alarm signal at the system control equipment located within the dwelling unit.

Paragraphs 29.7.7.7.1 and 29.7.7.7.2 were added in the 2013 edition to clarify the permitted connection of smoke alarms to system control equipment and the requirement that these alarms initiate an alarm signal within the dwelling unit. Alarms within a dwelling unit should not initiate an alarm throughout a building, such as an apartment complex or hotel. However, alarms in individual dwelling units may be monitored at a central location within the facility, such as an on-site security office or main desk.

29.7.7.7.3 A sprinkler waterflow alarm initiating device shall be permitted to be connected to the multiple-station alarms or household fire alarm system to activate an alarm signal.

Paragraph 29.7.7.7.3 was added in the 2013 edition to clarify the permitted connection of a sprinkler waterflow alarm initiating device to smoke alarms or a household fire alarm system to activate an alarm signal. The intent of the waterflow alarm is to indicate that the sprinkler system has activated. If the waterflow alarm is in response to a fire (as designed), the intended action for occupants is to evacuate. Therefore, an alarm signal from the smoke alarms or household fire alarm system is the appropriate action.

29.7.8 Wireless Devices.

Paragraph 29.7.8.1 is specific to wireless household fire alarm systems and requires these systems to meet the same requirements as commercial wireless fire alarm systems. Note that household systems are not exempt from the requirement in Section 23.16 regarding the need to cause a supervisory signal when the radio transmitter is removed from its installed location. Wireless fire alarm systems should not be confused with wireless interconnected smoke alarms, which are addressed separately in 29.7.8.2.

29.7.8.1 Wireless Systems. Household fire alarm systems utilizing low-power wireless transmission of signals within the protected dwelling unit shall comply with the requirements of Section 23.16.

29.7.8.2 Nonsupervised Wireless Interconnected Alarms.

Multiple-station smoke alarms that are capable of being "interconnected" through wireless radio signals rather than hard-wired connections have been on the market since mid-2005. Paragraph 29.7.8.2 was added in the 2010 edition to provide clear performance requirements for the wireless interconnection of these alarms. Interconnection of smoke alarms can provide earlier warning, ensure proper sound levels, and increase the available escape time in home fire scenarios. Because of these capabilities, *NFPA 72* now requires all homes to have interconnected alarms (see 29.5.2.1.1 and related commentary). Prior to the 2010 edition, neither *NFPA 72* nor ANSI/UL 217 had specifications for the distance that wireless alarms must communicate. Therefore, detailed methods and requirements were developed to ensure that devices will properly respond when spaced up to 100 ft (30.5 m) apart within a dwelling. Additional background for the development of these requirements is provided in A.29.7.8.2.1.

29.7.8.2.1* To ensure adequate transmission and reception capability, nonsupervised, low-power wireless alarms shall be capable of reliably communicating at a distance of 100 ft (30.5 m) indoors as tested to an equivalent open area test distance, *DEOAT* between two devices in accordance with the following equations:

$$D_{EOAT} = 30.5 \times \left(10^{\frac{L_b}{40}}\right)$$

where L_b is the building attenuation factor, a value dependent on the frequency of the wireless transmission. The building attenuation factor, L_b, represents the maximum attenuation value of typical floors and walls within a majority of structures the factor. L_b shall assume four walls and two floors and be calculated as follows:

$$L_b = 4 \times L_w + 2 \times L_f$$

where:

L_w = attenuation value of a wall

$= 2 \times L_1 + L_2$

L_f = attenuation value of a floor

$= L_1 + L_2 + L_3 + L_4$

L_1 = frequency-dependent attenuation value for ½ in. (13 mm) drywall

L_2 = frequency-dependent attenuation value for 1½ in. (38 mm) structural lumber

L_3 = frequency-dependent attenuation value for ¾ in. (19 mm) plywood

L_4 = frequency-dependent attenuation value for ½ in. (13 mm) glass/tile floor

A.29.7.8.2.1 For RF waves traveling along the earth surface, the signal power loss (in dB), L_p, can be calculated using the following plane-earth propagation loss model:

$$L_p = 10\log\left[\frac{D_p^4}{h_{TX}^2 h_{RX}^2}\right] \qquad \textbf{(A.29.7.8.2.1a)}$$

where D_p represents the distance between the transmitter and receiver and h_{TX} and h_{RX} are the heights of the transmitter and receiver, respectively, above the earth.

The plane earth propagation model is a practical simplification and requires that h_{TX}, $h_{RX} \ll D_p$. It reflects the average expected attenuation due to distance of the RF carrier for a stationary set of radios with an essentially clear line of sight. It predicts maximum communications range only in the UHF band (300 MHz to 3 GHz) and is not dependent on frequency.

Inside a building, the model can be expanded to determine the total path loss, L_T, which includes the plane earth loss, L_p (equation A.29.7.8.2.1a), and the loss due to the building materials in the propagation path, L_b, as follows:

$$L_T = 10\log\left[\frac{D_p^4}{\left(h_{TX}h_{RX}\right)^2}\right] + L_b \qquad \textbf{(A.29.7.8.2.1b)}$$

If an equivalent open area test distance D_{EOAT} is defined as follows:

$$L_T = 10\log\left[\frac{D_{EOAT}^4}{\left(h_{TX}h_{RX}\right)^2}\right] \qquad \textbf{(A.29.7.8.2.1c)}$$

then D_{EOAT} can be shown to be:

$$D_{EOAT} = 10^{\frac{-L_T}{40}}\sqrt{h_{TX}}\sqrt{h_{RX}} = D_p \cdot 10^{\frac{L_b}{40}} \qquad \textbf{(A.29.7.8.2.1d)}$$

The D_{EOAT} function is used to calculate a test distance required to verify the functional range of wireless alarm products. As noted above in the right side of equation A.29.7.8.2.1d, the function represents two factors — one that describes the attenuation of a radio frequency signal due to plane earth propagation path loss (D_p), and one that describes the dwelling material losses (L_b) in the signal's propagation path. It is the combination of dwelling loss and propagation path loss that is used in the calculation of the test distance D_{EOAT}. The losses are expressed in dB, and the unit for distances is meter.

In reviewing average home sizes, a reliable (indoor) communication of 100 ft (30.5 m) is adequate for a majority of dwellings, based on an average house size of 2200 ft^2 (204 m^2) [National Association of Home Builders]. Construction materials of a home (walls and floors) can attenuate an RF signal, with the RF signal being attenuated more at higher frequencies [Stone, 1997]. Communication specifications for devices of this type are typically specified as open field (no obstructions) test distances, and not in terms of attenuation. Therefore, the standard specifies a minimum open area test distance, D_{EOAT}, that the RF products must communicate. This distance is equal to 100 ft (30.5 m) (the longest straight line distance within a majority of homes) plus an additional distance that is equivalent to the attenuation of four walls and two floors (the most straight line obstructions in a majority of homes). The additional distance varies depending on the operating frequency of the product. Formulas for calculating D_{EOAT} are included below, along with examples for a number of different frequencies. These criteria are expected to yield reliable indoor communications at 100 ft (30.5 m) when used inside a majority of dwellings.

The building attenuation factor, L_b, represents the maximum attenuation value of typical floors and walls within a majority of structures. L_b is calculated using attenuation values of different materials. The following method is used to calculate L_b. The building materials attenuation coefficients specified in this application are taken from Stone, 1977. Other sources of appropriate building material attenuation coefficients may be used; however, testing organizations should apply values consistently for all products tested.

L_1 = Frequency dependent attenuation value for ½ in. (13 mm) drywall
L_2 = Frequency dependent attenuation value for 1½ in. (38 mm) structural lumber
L_3 = Frequency dependent attenuation value for ¾ in. (19 mm) plywood
L_4 = Frequency dependent attenuation value for ½ in. (13 mm) glass/tile floor
L_w = Attenuation value of a wall = $2 \times L_1 + L_2$
L_f = Attenuation value of a floor = $L_1 + L_2 + L_3 + L_4$
Assuming four walls and two floors,

$$L_b = 4 \times L_w + 2 \times L_f$$

The source for the equation in 29.7.8.2.1 is Stone, W. "Electromagnetic Attenuation in Construction Materials," National Institute of Standards and Technology, NISTIR 6055, 1997.

29.7.8.2.2 Fire alarm signals shall have priority over all other signals.

29.7.8.2.3 The maximum allowable response delay from activation of an initiating device to receipt and alarm/display by the receiver/control unit shall be 20 seconds.

29.7.8.2.4* Wireless interconnected smoke alarms (in receive mode) shall remain in alarm as long as the originating unit (transmitter) remains in alarm.

The requirement in 29.7.8.2.4 ensures that remote smoke alarms will continue to be in alarm at least as long as the initiating smoke alarm is in alarm. The requirement does not prohibit remote smoke alarms from continuing to be in alarm after the initiating smoke alarm stops under conditions in which the initiating device has been damaged by a growing fire. However, this function would need to be balanced with the need to silence all alarms when activated by a nuisance source.

A.29.7.8.2.4 Receiving units that stay in alarm for 30 seconds or 1 minute longer than the transmitting alarm would provide additional protection if the first alarm is damaged due to a very fast growing fire. The persisting alarm signal would provide additional notification to occupants. This option needs to be considered in light of the potential for the longer alarm signals on receiving smoke alarms being a potential nuisance to occupants during test and other nuisance alarm events.

29.7.8.2.5 The occurrence of any single fault that disables a transceiver shall not prevent other transceivers in the system from operating.

The requirement in 29.7.8.2.5 ensures that the interconnection of wireless alarms throughout the occupancy will not be compromised by the failure of one unit to perform correctly.

29.7.9 Supervising Stations.

29.7.9.1 Means to transmit alarm signals to a constantly attended, remote monitoring location shall be processed by a household fire alarm system and shall perform as described in Chapter 26, except as modified by 29.7.9.1.1 through 29.7.9.1.6.

29.7.9.1.1 Where a digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT) is used, the DACT serving the protected premises shall only require a single telephone line and shall only require a call to a single digital alarm communicator receiver (DACR) number.

29.7.9.1.2 Where a DACT is used, the DACT test signals shall be transmitted at least monthly.

29.7.9.1.3 Where a communication or transmission means other than DACT is used, only a single communication technology and path is required to serve the protected premises.

29.7.9.1.4 Failure of the communication path referenced in 29.7.9.1.3 shall be annunciated at the constantly attended remote monitoring location and at the protected premises within not more than 7 days of the failure.

29.7.9.1.5 Supervising station systems shall not be required to comply with requirements for indication of central station service in 26.3.4.

FAQ Where a digital alarm communicator transmitter (DACT) is used as the means of transmitting an alarm signal, how many telephone lines are required?

Paragraph 29.7.9.1 addresses the transmission of fire alarm system signals to a supervising station. The means to transmit must comply with the requirements of Chapter 26 except as noted in 29.7.9.1.1 through 29.7.9.1.6. Paragraph 29.7.9.1 was changed in the 2013 edition to clarify that transmission of alarm signals to a constantly attended remote monitoring location must be processed at the protected premises by a household fire alarm system. This requirement is consistent with the requirement of 29.7.9.3 that the household fire alarm system be programmed by the manufacturer to generate at least a monthly test of the communication or transmission means. Where the means involves the use of a DACT, as defined in 3.3.69 of the Code, a single telephone line may be used. Also, the frequency of the daily test signal required by 26.6.3.2.1.5(6) for a DACT may be extended to monthly. However, these allowances do not prevent a homeowner from installing and using a system that meets the full requirements of Chapter 26.

Consistent with the requirement for the use of a DACT in 29.7.9.1.1, 29.7.9.1.3 was added in the 2013 edition to clarify that only a single communications technology and path is required for all technologies.

Paragraph 29.7.9.1.4 was added in the 2013 edition to specify that a failure of the communications path or transmission means (other than DACT) must be annunciated at the remote monitoring location and protected premises within 7 days.

29.7.9.1.6 A dedicated cellular telephone connection shall be permitted to be used as a single means to transmit alarms to a constantly attended remote monitoring location.

29.7.9.2* Remote monitoring stations shall be permitted to verify alarm signals prior to reporting them to the fire service, provided that the verification process does not delay the reporting by more than 90 seconds.

A.29.7.9.2 Where 29.7.9.2, which provides for screening alarm signals to minimize response to false alarms, is to be implemented, the following should be considered:

(1) Was the verification call answered at the protected premises?
(2) Did the respondent provide proper identification?
(3) Is it necessary for the respondent to identify the cause of the alarm signal?
(4) Should the public service fire communications center be notified and advised that an alarm signal was received, including the response to the verification call, when an authorized respondent states that fire service response is not desired?
(5) Should the public service fire communications center be notified and advised that an alarm signal was received, including the response to the verification call, for all other situations, including both a hostile fire and no answer to the verification call?
(6) What other actions should be required by a standard operating procedure?

Paragraph 29.7.9.2 permits supervising station personnel to place a verification call before retransmitting the alarm signal. The homeowner should use a preassigned personal identification code or password to verify that the source of an alarm signal does not require emergency response by the fire department. Although a verification call is permitted, it is highly preferable to have the alarm reported immediately unless the call is required by the owner.

29.7.9.3 Household fire alarm systems shall be programed by the manufacturer to generate at least a monthly test of the communication or transmission means.

Paragraph 29.7.9.3 improves reliability by requiring that a mandatory, automatic test for at least a monthly communications check be built into the system.

29.7.9.4 The activation of a keypad fire alarm signal shall require a manual operation of two simultaneous or sequential operations.

The requirement in 29.7.9.4 for two simultaneous or sequential operations to activate a keypad fire alarm signal was added in the 2013 edition as a means to avoid false alarms.

29.8 Installation

29.8.1 General.

29.8.1.1 All equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and applicable electrical standards.

Equipment must be installed in a workmanlike manner that is neat, safe, and easily maintained and that complies with all appropriate codes and standards.

29.8.1.2 All devices shall be so located and mounted that accidental operation is not caused by jarring or vibration.

29.8.1.3 All fire-warning equipment shall be mounted so as to be supported independently of its attachment to wires.

29.8.1.4 The supplier or installing contractor shall provide the system owner or other responsible parties with the following:

(1) An instruction booklet illustrating typical installation layouts
(2) Instruction charts describing the operation, method, and frequency of testing and maintenance of fire-warning equipment

(3) Printed information for establishing an emergency evacuation plan
(4) Printed information to inform system owners where they can obtain repair or replacement service, and where and how parts requiring regular replacement, such as batteries or bulbs, can be obtained within 2 weeks
(5) Information noting both of the following:
    (a) Unless otherwise recommended by the manufacturer's published instructions, smoke alarms shall be replaced when they fail to respond to tests.
    (b) Smoke alarms installed in one- and two-family dwellings shall not remain in service longer than 10 years from the date of manufacture.

29.8.2 Interconnection of Detectors or Multiple-Station Alarms.

29.8.2.1 Smoke detectors shall be connected to central controls for power, signal processing, and activation of notification appliances.

29.8.2.2* The interconnection of smoke or heat alarms shall comply with the following:

(1) Smoke or heat alarms shall not be interconnected in numbers that exceed the manufacturer's published instructions.
(2) In no case shall more than 18 initiating devices be interconnected (of which 12 can be smoke alarms) where the interconnecting means is not supervised.
(3) In no case shall more than 64 initiating devices be interconnected (of which 42 can be smoke alarms) where the interconnecting means is supervised.
(4) Smoke or heat alarms shall not be interconnected with alarms from other manufacturers unless listed as being compatible with the specific model.
(5) When alarms of different types are interconnected, all interconnected alarms shall produce the appropriate audible response for the phenomena being detected or remain silent.

A.29.8.2.2 Once these limits have been exceeded, a fire alarm system should be installed.

It is important to remember that the configuration allowed in 29.8.2.2(2) incorporates heat alarms that may be connected to multiple-station smoke alarms. The number of multiple-station smoke alarms used to protect a residence is limited to 12 because the wiring that interconnects hard-wired smoke alarms is not monitored for integrity.

FAQ What course of action is needed when the number of smoke alarms exceeds 12?

For applications that require more than 12 smoke alarms, a fire alarm system with a control unit must be used.

For large residences that require many smoke alarms and the interconnection of different types of smoke alarms or sensors (such as carbon monoxide or waterflow switches on a sprinkler system), the use of a household fire alarm system should be considered instead of smoke alarms. If multiple-station smoke alarms are to be interconnected with other types of alarms, the equipment must be listed as compatible. The manufacturers' published instructions provide guidance on the compatibility of equipment.

Paragraph 29.8.2.2(4) specifically requires that smoke alarms of different manufacturers are not to be interconnected unless they have been tested to be compatible. Interconnection of equipment from different manufacturers can lead to devices not operating as intended.

Paragraph 29.8.2.2(5) was added in the 2010 edition based on the requirements in ANSI/UL 2034, *Standard for Single and Multiple Station Carbon Monoxide Alarms*, for carbon monoxide (CO) alarms and ANSI/UL 217 for smoke alarms to provide consistent notification from all interconnected alarms. For example, additional notification throughout a dwelling via smoke alarms interconnected with CO alarms can be beneficial when a CO alarm sounds. However, to avoid confusion, the alarm signal should be appropriate for the initiating device and should be the same from all sounding devices.

29.8.2.3 A single fault on the interconnecting means between multiple-station alarms shall not prevent single-station operation of any of the interconnected alarms.

29.8.2.4 Remote notification appliance circuits of multiple-station alarms shall be capable of being tested for integrity by activation of the test feature on any interconnected alarm. Activation of the test feature shall result in the operation of all interconnected notification appliances.

The activation of remote notification appliances, which are part of a group of interconnected multiple-station smoke alarms, should sound at all locations as well as at all multiple-station smoke alarms. Testing at any smoke alarm should sound all smoke alarms and appliances. Proper distribution of the alarm signal throughout the dwelling unit (or other required area) can be checked during routine testing of the smoke alarms.

29.8.3* Smoke Alarms and Smoke Detectors. Smoke alarms, smoke detectors, devices, combination of devices, and equipment shall be installed in accordance with the manufacturer's listing and published instructions, and, unless specifically listed for the application, shall comply with requirements in 29.8.3.1 through 29.8.3.4.

Compliance with the requirements in 29.8.3 is essential to provide an effective installation. In some cases, manufacturers have designed equipment that can be effective in applications that exceed the Code-specified limits, such as those for temperature or humidity. In such cases, the equipment must be listed for the special conditions and be installed within the listed limits. Also refer to the commentary following 29.8.3.4.

The requirement to maintain at least a 4 in. (100 mm) spacing between a ceiling-mounted detector or alarm and the adjoining wall was deleted from the 2010 edition of the Code. Similarly, the 4 in. (100 mm) spacing requirement (between device and the ceiling) for wall mounting also was deleted. As noted in A.29.8.3, current research and testing have shown that no reduction in performance occurs if detectors are positioned closer than 4 in. (100 mm) from the adjoining wall or ceiling surface.

Note that this change is applicable only to smoke alarms. Heat alarms are still required to comply with the 4 in. (100 mm) area of exclusion. Refer to 29.8.4.3.

A.29.8.3 One of the most critical factors of any fire alarm system is the location of the fire detecting devices. This annex is not a technical study. It is an attempt to provide some fundamentals on fire-warning equipment location. For simplicity, only those types of alarms or detectors recognized by Chapter 29 (e.g., smoke and heat alarms or smoke and heat detectors) are discussed. Specific mounting locations of fire-warning equipment in unoccupied or architecturally unique areas (e.g., as in attics or in rooms with high ceilings) should be evaluated by a qualified professional.

The conclusions of the Kemano Study and FPRF Smoke Detector Spacing Requirements Report (2008) have determined revisions to smoke alarm and smoke detector mounting within 4 in. (100 mm) of a flat ceiling/wall corner are now acceptable. The studies have shown that acceptable detection performance does not depend on the 4 in. (100 mm) separation. Figure A.29.8.3 illustrates acceptable smoke alarm and smoke detector mounting locations.

29.8.3.1* Peaked Ceilings. Smoke alarms or smoke detectors mounted on a peaked ceiling shall be located within 36 in. (910 mm) horizontally of the peak, but not closer than 4 in. (100 mm) vertically to the peak.

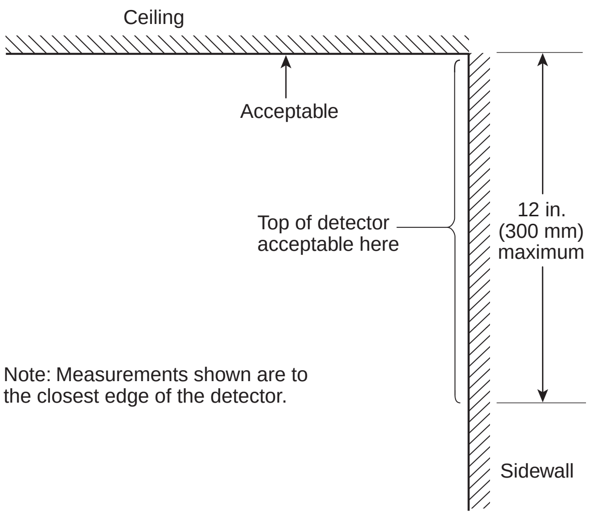


FIGURE A.29.8.3 *Example of Proper Mounting for Smoke Alarms and Smoke Detectors.*

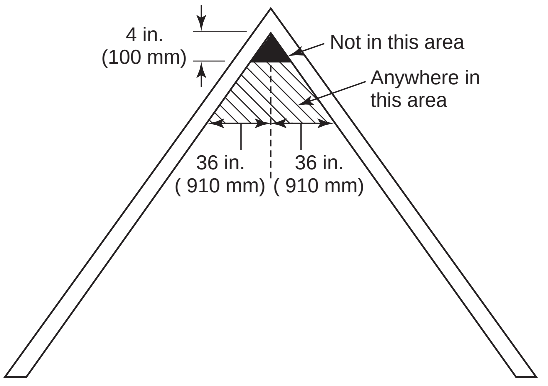


FIGURE A.29.8.3.1 *Example of Proper Mounting for Alarms and Detectors with Peaked Ceilings.*

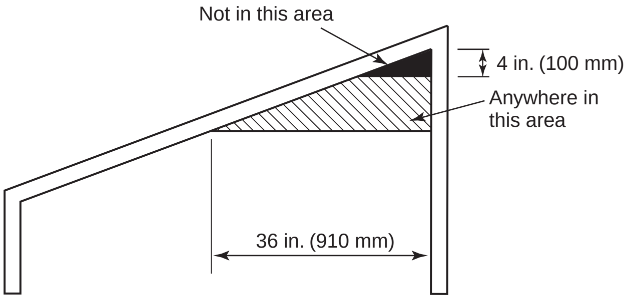


FIGURE A.29.8.3.2 *Example of Proper Mounting for Alarms and Detectors with Sloped Ceilings.*

A.29.8.3.1 Figure A.29.8.3.1 illustrates acceptable smoke alarm or smoke detector mounting locations for a peaked ceiling.

29.8.3.2* Sloped Ceilings. Smoke alarms or smoke detectors mounted on a sloped ceiling having a rise greater than 1 ft in 8 ft (1 m in 8 m) horizontally shall be located within 36 in. (910 mm) of the high side of the ceiling, but not closer than 4 in. (100 mm) from the adjoining wall surface.

A.29.8.3.2 Figure A.29.8.3.2 illustrates acceptable smoke alarm or smoke detector mounting locations for a sloped ceiling.

29.8.3.3* Wall Mounting. Smoke alarms or smoke detectors mounted on walls shall be located not farther than 12 in. (300 mm) from the adjoining ceiling surface.

A.29.8.3.3 Figure A.29.8.3 illustrates acceptable smoke alarm or smoke detector mounting locations.

In those dwelling units employing radiant heating in the ceiling, the wall location is the recommended location. Radiant heating in the ceiling can create a hot air boundary layer along the ceiling surface, which can seriously restrict the movement of smoke and heat to a ceiling-mounted detector.

29.8.3.4 Specific Location Requirements. The installation of smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall comply with the following requirements:

(1) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be located where ambient conditions, including humidity and temperature, are outside the limits specified by the manufacturer's published instructions.

Garages and attic spaces often experience ambient conditions that exceed the operating limits of smoke alarms. Smoke alarms listed to ANSI/UL 217 are tested to operate at temperatures from 32°F to 120°F (0°C to 49°C). However, some manufacturers' design and list devices beyond the standard temperature range. The use of heat alarms may be more appropriate in locations such as garages if conditions are not suitable for smoke alarms.

(2) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be located within unfinished attics or garages or in other spaces where temperatures can fall below 40°F (4°C) or exceed 100°F (38°C).
(3)* Where the mounting surface could become considerably warmer or cooler than the room, such as a poorly insulated ceiling below an unfinished attic or an exterior wall, smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall be mounted on an inside wall.
(4)* Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed within an area of exclusion determined by a 10 ft (3.0 m) radial distance along a horizontal flow path from a stationary or fixed cooking appliance, unless listed for installation in close proximity to cooking appliances. Smoke alarms and smoke detectors installed between 10 ft (3.0 m) and 20 ft (6.1 m) along a horizontal flow path from a stationary or fixed cooking appliance shall be equipped with an alarm-silencing means or use photoelectric detection.

Exception: Smoke alarms or smoke detectors that use photoelectric detection shall be permitted for installation at a radial distance greater than 6 ft (1.8 m) from any stationary or fixed cooking appliance when the following conditions are met:

(a) The kitchen or cooking area and adjacent spaces have no clear interior partitions or headers and
(b) The 10 ft (3.0 m) area of exclusion would prohibit the placement of a smoke alarm or smoke detector required by other sections of this code.

The minimization of nuisance alarms is essential to help reduce the number of disabled smoke alarms. The technical committee reviewed the available information on the occurrence of nuisance alarms and concluded that the primary source of nuisance alarms was cooking activities. Steam from bathroom activities was also a source but to a much more limited extent. Nuisance alarms caused by cooking activities occur far more frequently with ionization smoke alarms than with photoelectric smoke alarms. However, nuisance alarms from either type of smoke alarm are likely if the smoke alarm is placed too close to a cooking appliance. For that reason, 29.8.3.4(4) was revised to exclude the installation of any smoke alarm within 10 ft (3.0 m) of a stationary or fixed cooking appliance. The exclusion area can be reduced to 6 ft (1.8 m) under the circumstance specified in the exception. A further exclusion area between 10 ft (3.0 m) and 20 ft (6.1 m) is specified similar to that in previous

EXHIBIT 29.18

Photoelectric Smoke Detector Located Between 10 ft (3.0 m) and 20 ft (6.1 m) from Cooking Appliance. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA)

editions of the Code. No exclusion is specified beyond 20 ft (6.1 m). Exhibit 29.18 shows an example of a photoelectric smoke detector located between 10 ft (3.0 m) and 20 ft (6.1 m) from a cooking appliance.

Nuisance alarms caused by steam from bathroom activities occurred in both types of smoke alarms. Refer to A.29.8.3.4(6) for additional guidance on location of smoke alarms near bathrooms.

(5) Effective January 1, 2016, smoke alarms and smoke detectors used in household fire alarm systems installed between 6 ft (1.8 m) and 20 ft (6.1 m) along a horizontal flow path from a stationary or fixed cooking appliance shall be listed for resistance to common nuisance sources from cooking.

Subparagraph 29.8.3.4(5) is new in the 2013 edition. An effective date of January 1, 2016, is established for a new requirement that smoke alarms and smoke detectors used between 6 ft (1.8 m) and 20 ft (6.1 m) of a cooking appliance be listed for common cooking nuisance source resistance. This requirement is intended to provide a higher level of performance in nuisance source immunity and addresses the leading cause of nuisance sources — cooking events. In addition, 29.7.3 requires all smoke alarms and smoke detectors to be listed for resistance to common nuisance sources (as distinguished from common nuisance sources from cooking) by January 1, 2019.

(6)* Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed within a 36 in. (910 mm) horizontal path from a door to a bathroom containing a shower or tub unless listed for installation in close proximity to such locations.

Subparagraph 29.8.3.4(6) was modified in 2013 to clarify that devices listed for installation in close proximity of bathroom doors are permitted within the 36 in. (910 mm) exclusion distance. This language is consistent with the general provisions for equivalency in Section 1.5, allowing for the application of technologies that can meet the intended performance goals without being overly restrictive and inadvertently barring the use of capable equipment.

(7) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed within a 36 in. (910 mm) horizontal path from the supply registers of a forced air heating or cooling system and shall be installed outside of the direct airflow from those registers.

(8) Smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall not be installed within a 36 in. (910 mm) horizontal path from the tip of the blade of a ceiling-suspended (paddle) fan.
(9) Where stairs lead to other occupiable levels, a smoke alarm or smoke detector shall be located so that smoke rising in the stairway cannot be prevented from reaching the smoke alarm or smoke detector by an intervening door or obstruction.
(10) For stairways leading up from a basement, smoke alarms or smoke detectors shall be located on the basement ceiling near the entry to the stairs.

Doors at the tops of stairwells prevent smoke flow in the upward direction. The stairwell acts as a dead air space and traps smoke below, which can prevent smoke from reaching a smoke alarm located in the stairwell. Therefore, smoke alarms should be mounted on the basement ceiling near the stairwell, as required by 29.8.3.4(10). Common practice is to mount smoke alarms on the bottom of floor joists in basements with unfinished construction.

(11)* For tray-shaped ceilings (coffered ceilings), smoke alarms and smoke detectors shall be installed on the highest portion of the ceiling or on the sloped portion of the ceiling within 12 in. (300 mm) vertically down from the highest point.
(12) Smoke alarms and detectors installed in rooms with joists or beams shall comply with the requirements of 17.7.3.2.4.

Per 17.7.3.2.4.2(5), if a room with a level ceiling is smaller than 900 ft^2 (84 m^2), only one smoke alarm or detector is required for the room, regardless of whether there are beams. Since most spaces that utilize smoke warning equipment per Chapter 29 are less than 900 ft^2 (84 m^2), no special attention is needed. However, if the space is larger or the ceiling is sloped, additional spacing requirements apply. These requirements are dependent on the height of the beams relative to the ceiling height and the orientation of beams relative to the ceiling slope.

(13) Heat alarms and detectors installed in rooms with joists or beams shall comply with the requirements of 17.6.3.

The siting of heat detectors on ceilings with beams or joists follows the requirements of Chapter 17, which take into account beam depths and construction.

A.29.8.3.4(3) Smoke detectors and smoke alarms should be installed in those locations recommended by the manufacturer's published instructions, except in those cases where the space above the ceiling is open to the outside and little or no insulation is present over the ceiling. Such cases result in the ceiling being excessively cold in the winter or excessively hot in the summer. Where the ceiling is significantly different in temperature from the air space below, smoke and heat have difficulty reaching the ceiling and a detector that is located on that ceiling.

A.29.8.3.4(4) As per annex material located in A.29.5.1, it is not normally recommended that smoke alarms or smoke detectors be placed in kitchen spaces. This section of the code provides guidelines for safe installation if a need exists to install a smoke alarm or smoke detector in a residential kitchen space or cooking area.

Within this Code section, a fixed cooking appliance is any appliance that is intended to be permanently connected electrically to the wiring system or the fuel source. A stationary cooking appliance is any appliance that is intended to be fastened in place or located in a dedicated space, and is connected to the supply circuit or fuel source.

Smoke alarms and smoke detectors that are currently available to consumers are susceptible to particles released into the air during normal cooking procedures. If smoke alarms and smoke detectors are placed too close to the area where the cooking source originates, a high level of nuisance alarms can occur. Frequent nuisance alarms can result in an occupant disabling the smoke alarm or smoke detector.

Nuisance alarm studies show that commercially available residential smoke alarms and smoke detectors are susceptible to nuisance alarms when installed too close to cooking appliances. As the horizontal distance between the smoke alarm or smoke detectors and the cooking appliance increases, the frequency of nuisance alarms decreases. Smoke alarms or smoke detectors that use ionization smoke detection have been shown to be more susceptible to cooking nuisance alarms than those that use photoelectric smoke detection when the alarms or detectors are installed within 10 ft (3.0 m) along a horizontal smoke travel path from a cooking appliance. Smoke alarms or smoke detectors that use photoelectric smoke detection produce nuisance alarms when installed less than 10 ft (3.0 m) from a cooking appliance, though to a lesser degree.

The occurrence of the higher frequency of nuisance alarms observed in smoke alarms or smoke detectors that use ionization detection have been documented in the fire research data. Due to the differences in technology between ionization detection and photoelectric detection, the sensitivity typically used for ionization detection is much higher than that used for photoelectric detection. This sensitivity difference is a result of each type of the detection being required to satisfy UL 217 performance tests. Removing detection technology from consideration, the frequency of nuisance alarms is solely due to the sensitivity of the detection method used. Thus, both ionization and photoelectric detector technologies will produce nuisance alarms due to cooking, but currently available smoke alarms and smoke detectors that use ionization detection typically produce more cooking-related nuisance alarms.

The higher sensitivities of currently available smoke alarms and smoke detectors that use ionization detection do provide a benefit at the expense of a potentially higher rate of cooking-related nuisance alarms. Research has demonstrated that ionization detection will typically respond faster than photoelectric detection to flaming fires, providing earlier warning to occupants that might allow for quicker intervention or faster egress. In general, the installation of smoke alarms or smoke detectors that use ionization detection will result in increased fire safety at the risk of a higher frequency of nuisance alarms. The installation of smoke alarms or smoke detectors that use photoelectric detection will result in reduced fire safety for flaming fires and a reduced risk of nuisance alarms. Based on the trade-off between faster response to fires and the frequency of nuisance alarms, detectors that utilize both technologies (i.e., ionization, photoelectric, and a combination) are allowed to be installed between 10 ft (3.0 m) and 20 ft (6.1 m) along a horizontal flow path from a standard or fixed cooking appliance if the specific detector is equipped with an alarm silencing means or is of the photoelectric-type.

Nuisance alarm studies provide data on cooking nuisances that emanate from both fixed cooking appliances and stationary cooking appliances (e.g., stove, oven) as well as portable cooking appliances (e.g., toaster). Based on these studies, which demonstrate the potential of all cooking appliances to generate nuisance sources, a zone of exclusion has been specified surrounding each stationary or fixed cooking appliance. The purpose of this zone is to limit the installation of smoke alarms and detectors in areas where stationary, fixed, or portable cooking appliances will be located within the residential kitchen space such that potential nuisance alarms are minimized. The size of the zone of exclusion is specified to attempt to take into account the unknown and transitory locations of portable cooking appliances. This zone of exclusion is determined by measuring a 10 ft (3.0 m) radial distance from the closest edge of a stationary or fixed cooking appliance. The zone of exclusion is not intended to pass through walls or doorways. Figure A.29.8.3.4(4)(a) provides an example of the zone of exclusion in a generalized residential kitchen.

If other areas of this code require that a smoke alarm or smoke detector be placed within a horizontal flow path distance between 10 ft (3.0 m) and 20 ft (6.1 m) from a stationary or fixed cooking appliance, the following method should be used to determine the distance, and only photoelectric detection or smoke alarms/detectors with alarm silencing means can be installed in this area.

To install a smoke alarm or detector between 10 ft (3.0 m) and 20 ft (6.1 m) from the cooking appliance, an installer must first determine the 10 ft (3.0 m) area of exclusion. Once

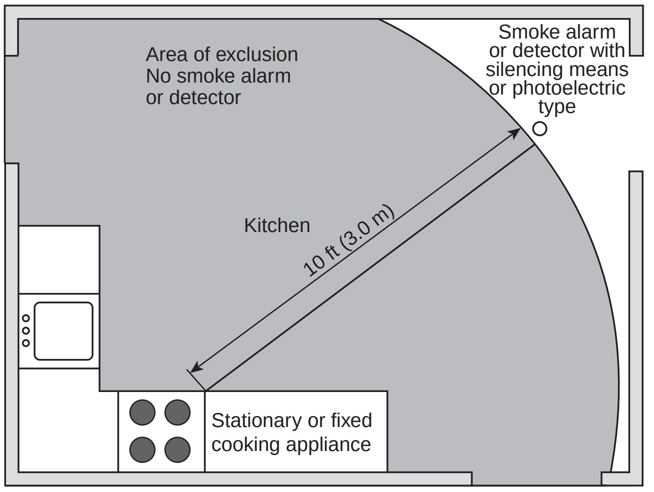


FIGURE A.29.8.3.4(4)(a) Example of Zone of Exclusion (gray area) Within Typical Residential Kitchen.

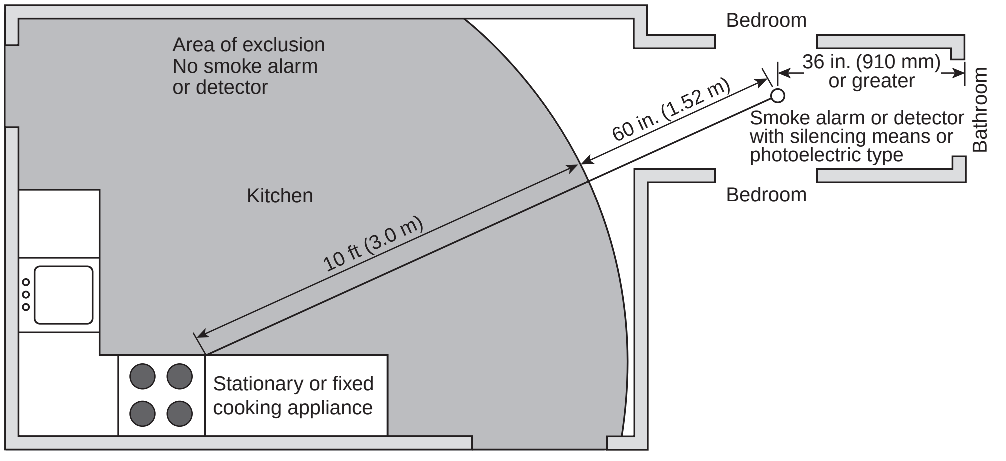


FIGURE A.29.8.3.4(4)(b) Example of Smoke Alarm or Smoke Detector Placement Between 10 ft (3.0 m) and 20 ft (6.1 m) Away in Hallway from Center of Stationary or Fixed Cooking Appliance.

the area of exclusion is determined, an installer must then determine the horizontal flow distance. This is the horizontal distance along the ceiling from the closest edge of the cooking appliance to the smoke alarm or detector. The horizontal distance can consist of line segments due to impediments, such as interior partitions. Once an impediment is met, the measurement of the distance will then continue along the new horizontal path segment until the distance requirement is met or another impediment is encountered. Figure A.29.8.3.4(4)(b) provides an example for placement outside a kitchen in a nearby hallway. Figure A.29.8.3.4(4)(c) provides another example of appropriate placement outside of a kitchen in an adjacent room.

At a horizontal flow path distance of greater than 20 ft (6.1 m), any type of smoke alarm or smoke detector can be installed.

In rare cases, a residential dwelling can be of such size and configuration that an area of exclusion of 10 ft (3.0 m) from a stationary or fixed cooking appliance excludes the placement of a smoke alarm or smoke detector required by other areas of this Code. In these cases, a

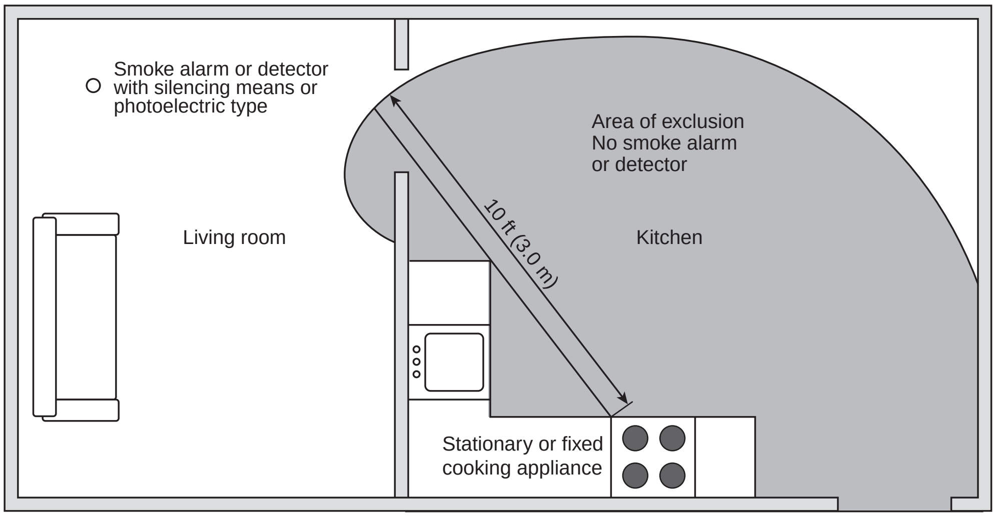


FIGURE A.29.8.3.4(4)(c) Example of Smoke Alarm or Smoke Detector Placement Between 10 ft (3.0 m) and 20 ft (6.1 m) Away in Hallway from Center of Stationary or Fixed Cooking Appliance.

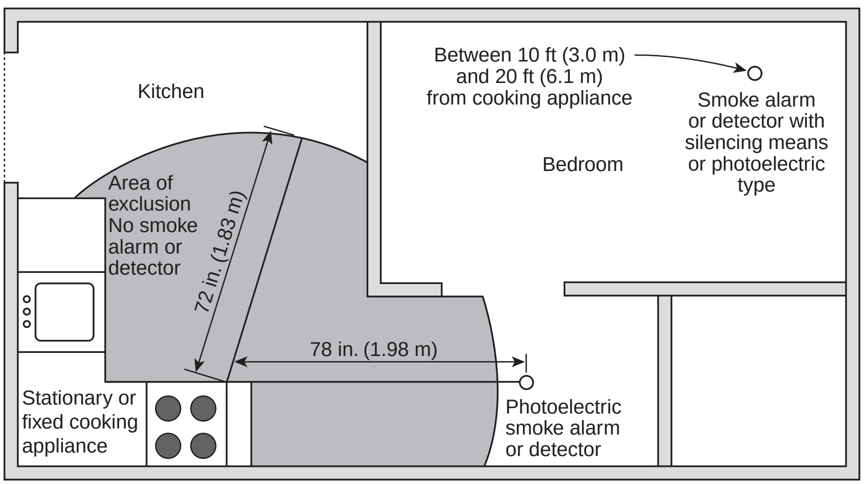


FIGURE A.29.8.3.4(4)(d) Example of Exception Placement of Photoelectric Smoke Alarm or Smoke Detector at 72 in. (1.83 m) from Stationary or Fixed Cooking Appliance.

smoke alarm or smoke detector using photoelectric detection can be installed at least 72 in. (1.83 m) from the fixed or stationary cooking appliance. Figure A.29.8.3.4(4)(d) provides an example of this situation in practice where a smoke alarm or smoke detector is required outside of the sleeping area, but the space is in close proximity to the kitchen space.

A.29.8.3.4(6) Studies indicate that smoke alarms and smoke detectors that use ionization detection, photoelectric detection, or a combination of ionization and photoelectric detection, are susceptible to nuisance alarms caused by steam. Little research has been done on the comparative response of these types of detection to steam. Steam particles, in general, are visible, reflect light easily, and are typically produced in a size range that would be more likely

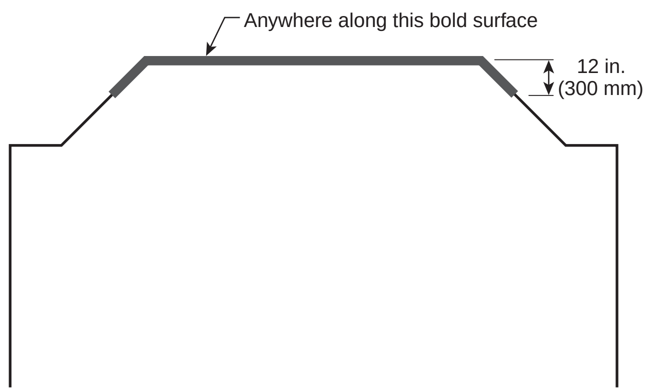


FIGURE A.29.8.3.4(11) *Locations Permitted for Smoke Alarms and Smoke Detectors on Tray-Shaped Ceilings.*

to activate a photoelectric sensor. Thus, it is required that smoke alarms and smoke detectors be installed greater than 36 in. (910 mm) from the bathroom door where possible. Increasing the distance between the smoke alarm or smoke detector and the bathroom door can reduce the frequency of nuisance alarms from bathroom steam. Frequent nuisance alarms can result in the occupant disabling the smoke alarm. Each incremental increase in separation, up to 10 ft (3.0 m), between the bathroom door and the smoke alarm or smoke detector is expected to reduce the frequency of nuisance alarms.

A.29.8.3.4(11) Figure A.29.8.3.4(11) illustrates acceptable smoke alarm or smoke detector mounting locations for tray-shaped ceilings.

For tray-shaped ceilings that are level at the top, smoke and heat alarms must be mounted on the high ceiling or on the sloped rise between levels within 12 in. (300 mm) vertically from the adjoining high ceiling, as required in 29.8.3.4(11). The other location requirements in 29.8.3.4 also apply. Exhibit 29.19 shows an example of a smoke detector located on the sloped portion of a tray-shaped ceiling and at least 3 ft (910 mm) from the tip of the blade of the ceiling fan.

EXHIBIT 29.19

Smoke Detector Located on Tray-Shaped Ceiling. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA)

29.8.4* Heat Detectors and Heat Alarms.

A.29.8.4 While Chapter 29 does not require heat alarms or heat detectors as part of the basic protection scheme, it is recommended that the householder consider the use and placement of additional heat detectors for the same reasons presented under A.29.8.3. For example, additional heat alarms or heat detectors could be considered, but not limited to, the following areas: kitchen, dining room, attic (finished or unfinished), furnace room, utility room, basement, and integral or attached garage.

The placement of the heat alarm or heat detector is critical where maximum speed of fire detection is desired. Thus, a logical location for a heat alarm or heat detector is the center of the ceiling. At this location, the heat alarm or heat detector is closest to all areas of the room.

29.8.4.1* On smooth ceilings, heat detectors and heat alarms shall be installed within the strict limitations of their listed spacing.

A.29.8.4.1 *Heat Alarm or Heat Detector Mounting — Dead Air Space.* Heat from a fire rises to the ceiling, spreads out across the ceiling surface, and begins to bank down from the ceiling. The corner where the ceiling and the wall meet is an air space into which heat has difficulty penetrating. In most fires, this dead air space measures about 4 in. (100 mm) along the ceiling from the corner and about 4 in. (100 mm) down the wall as shown in Figure A.17.6.3.1.3.1. Heat alarm or heat detectors should not be placed in this dead air space.

29.8.4.2* For sloped ceilings having a rise greater than 1 ft in 8 ft (1 m in 8 m) horizontally, the detector or alarm shall be located within 36 in. (910 mm) of the peak. The spacing of additional detectors or alarms, if any, shall be based on a horizontal distance measurement, not on a measurement along the slope of the ceiling.

A.29.8.4.2 Figure A.29.8.3.2 illustrates acceptable heat alarm or heat detector mounting locations for sloped ceilings.

29.8.4.3* Heat detectors or alarms shall be mounted on the ceiling at least 4 in. (100 mm) from a wall or on a wall with the top of the detector or alarm not less than 4 in. (100 mm), nor more than 12 in. (300 mm), below the ceiling.

Exception: Where the mounting surface could become considerably warmer or cooler than the room, such as a poorly insulated ceiling below an unfinished attic or an exterior wall, the detectors or alarms shall be mounted on an inside wall.

A.29.8.4.3 *Spacing of Detectors.* Where a room is too large for protection by a single heat alarm or heat detector, multiple alarms or detectors should be used. It is important that they be properly located so all parts of the room are covered. *(For further information on the spacing of detectors, see Chapter 17.)*

Where the Distance Between Detectors Should Be Further Reduced. The distance between detectors is based on data obtained from the spread of heat across a smooth ceiling. Where the ceiling is not smooth, the placement of the heat alarm or heat detector should be tailored to the situation.

Figure A.17.6.3.1.3.1 illustrates acceptable heat alarms or heat detector mounting locations for smooth ceilings and sidewalls.

29.8.4.4 In rooms with open joists or beams, all ceiling-mounted detectors or alarms shall be located on the bottom of such joists or beams.

29.8.4.5* Detectors or alarms installed on an open-joisted ceiling shall have their smooth ceiling spacing reduced where this spacing is measured at right angles to solid joists; in the case of heat detectors or heat alarms, this spacing shall not exceed one-half of the listed spacing.

A.29.8.4.5 Refer to Figure A.29.8.4.5, where the distance between heat alarms or heat detectors should be further reduced.

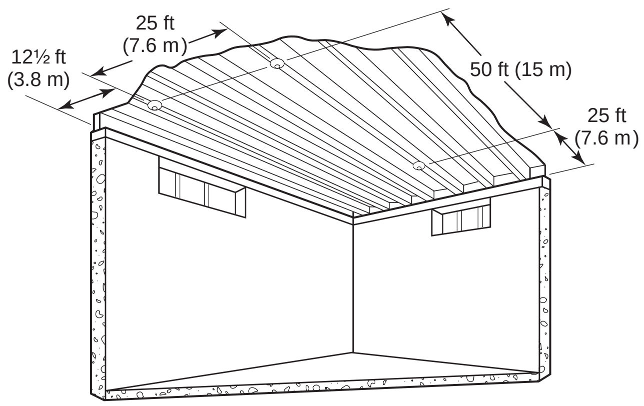


FIGURE A.29.8.4.5 *Open Joists, Attics, and Extra-High Ceilings are Some Areas that Require Special Knowledge for Installation.*

For instance, with open wood joists, heat travels freely down the joist channels so that the maximum distance between the heat alarm or heat detectors [(50 ft) 15.2 m] can be used. However, heat has trouble spreading across the joists, so the distance in this direction should be one-half the distance allowed between detectors, as shown in Figure A.29.8.4.5, and the distance to the wall is reduced to 12.5 ft (3.8 m). Since one-half of 50 ft (15.2 m) is 25 ft (7.6 m), the distance between heat alarms or detectors across open wood joists should not exceed 25 ft (7.6 m), as shown in Figure A.29.8.4.5, and the distance to the wall is reduced [one-half of 25 ft (7.6 m)] to 12.5 ft (3.8 m). Paragraph 29.8.4.4 requires that a heat alarm or heat detectors be mounted on the bottom of the joists and not up in joist channels.

Walls, partitions, doorways, ceiling beams, and open joists interrupt the normal flow of heat, thus creating new areas to be protected.

In addition to the special requirements for heat detectors installed on ceilings with exposed joists, reduced spacing also might be required due to other structural characteristics of the protected area, possible drafts, or other conditions that could affect heat alarm or detector operation.

29.8.5 Wiring and Equipment. The installation of wiring and equipment shall be in accordance with the requirements of *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*, Article 760.

The installation of all fire alarm system wiring should take into account the fire alarm system manufacturer's published installation instructions and the limitations of the applicable product listings or approvals.

29.9 Optional Functions

The following optional functions of fire-warning equipment shall be permitted:

(1) Notification of the fire department, either directly or through an alarm monitoring service
(2) Monitoring of other safety systems, such as fire sprinklers for alarm or proper operating conditions
(3) Notification of occupants or others of potentially dangerous conditions, such as the presence of fuel gases or toxic gases such as carbon monoxide

Carbon monoxide (CO) warning systems are covered by NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment*. NFPA 720 has recently undergone a major revision and includes several significant changes with regard to household applications. It includes requirements for the location and quantity of CO alarms and the means of interconnection with fire-warning equipment.

Editions of NFPA 720 prior to the 2009 edition required signals from CO detectors to be either a supervisory signal or other non–fire alarm signal. Subsequent editions of NFPA 720 make it clear that CO alarm signals must be treated as unique "carbon monoxide alarm signals," not as supervisory signals. Alarm signals are important to be identified properly so that appropriate action is taken in a timely manner. CO alarm signals must never be connected to produce a fire alarm signal.

(4) Notification of occupants or others of the activation of intrusion (burglar alarm) sensors

Burglar alarm systems should be installed in accordance with NFPA 731, *Standard for the Installation of Electronic Premises Security Systems*. See 29.7.7.2, 29.7.7.6, and the associated commentary for more information on signal priorities.

(5) Any other function, safety related or not, that could share components or wiring

Section 29.10 final content is the result of a tentative interim amendment (TIA).

29.10 Maintenance and Tests

Fire-warning equipment shall be maintained and tested in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions and per the requirements of Chapter 14.

As of the 2002 Code, the testing and maintenance requirements for single- and multiple-station smoke and heat alarms and household fire alarm systems are located in the inspection, testing, and maintenance chapter, currently Chapter 14. Table 14.4.3.2, Testing, and 14.4.5 through 14.4.7, address this equipment. Note that Chapter 14 requires all fire alarm equipment to be tested to the manufacturer's published instructions to verify correct operation.

In accordance with 14.4.5, single- and multiple-station smoke alarms must be inspected and tested at least monthly and in accordance with the manufacturer's published instructions. While many manufacturers require monthly functional testing, some manufacturers require weekly testing, which would then be the required frequency.

Subsection 14.4.6 requires that household fire alarm systems be tested at least annually by a qualified service technician in accordance with Table 14.4.3.2. This subsection also requires that testing documentation be provided to the customer upon system installation and that annual notice of the need of testing be provided by any supervising station contractor if the system is monitored offsite.

In accordance with Table 14.4.3.2, item 17(g)(1), and 14.4.6, system smoke detectors in other than one- and two-family dwellings must be functionally tested at least annually to ensure smoke entry into the sensing chamber and an alarm response. In addition to the required annual smoke entry testing, system smoke detectors in other than one- and two-family dwellings must also be tested for sensitivity per the requirements of Table 14.4.3.2, item 17(h).

In one- and two-family dwellings, household fire alarm systems must be maintained and functionally tested per manufacturer's published instructions [Table 14.4.3.2, item 17(g)(3), and 14.4.6]. For smoke alarms in one- and two-family dwellings, *NFPA 72* does not specify requirements for sensitivity or smoke entry testing other than what may be specified in the manufacturer's instructions.

FAQ Does the 10-year replacement requirement apply to all smoke alarms?

In accordance with 14.4.7.1, smoke alarms in one- and two-family dwellings must be replaced when they fail to respond to operability tests or after 10 years from the date of manufacture. Although the 10-year replacement requirement is not specifically stated to apply to smoke alarms used in other occupancies, the published manufacturer's instructions for most smoke alarms state that they are to be replaced when they fail to respond to operability tests or after 10 years. In accordance with 14.4.7.2, combination smoke/carbon monoxide alarms must be replaced when the end-of-life signal activates or 10 years after the date of manufacture, whichever occurs first.

29.11 Markings and Instructions

29.11.1 Alarms. All alarms shall be plainly marked with the following information on the unit:

(1) Manufacturer's or listee's name, address, and model number
(2) A mark or certification that the unit has been approved or listed by a testing laboratory
(3) Electrical rating (where applicable)
(4) Manufacturer's published operating and maintenance instructions
(5) Test instructions
(6) Replacement and service instructions
(7) Identification of lights, switches, meters, and similar devices regarding their function, unless their function is obvious
(8) Distinction between alarm and trouble signals on units employing both
(9) The sensitivity setting for an alarm having a fixed setting (For an alarm that is intended to be adjusted in the field, the range of sensitivity shall be indicated. The marked sensitivity shall be indicated as a percent per foot obscuration level. The marking shall include a nominal value plus tolerance.)
(10) Reference to an installation diagram and system owner's manual
(11) Date of manufacture in the format YEAR (in four digits), MONTH (in letters), and DAY (in two digits) located on the outside of the alarm

Exception: Where space limitations prohibit inclusion of 29.11.1(4) and (6), it is not prohibited for this information to be in the installation instructions instead.

29.11.2 Fire Alarm Control Unit. All household fire-warning equipment or systems shall be plainly marked with the following information on the unit:

(1) Manufacturer's or listee's name, address, and model number
(2) A mark or certification that the unit has been approved or listed by a testing laboratory
(3) Electrical rating (where applicable)
(4) Identification of all user interface components and their functions (such as, but not limited to, lights, switches, and meters) located adjacent to the component
(5) Manufacturer's published operating and maintenance instructions
(6) Test instructions
(7) Replacement and service instructions
(8) Reference to an installation wiring diagram and homeowner's manual, if not attached to control unit, by drawing number and issue number and/or date

Exception: Where space limitations prohibit inclusion of 29.11.2(5) and (7), it is not prohibited for this information to be in the installation instructions instead.

References Cited in Commentary

Ahrens, M., "U.S. Experience with Smoke Alarms and Other Fire Alarms," National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 2007.

ANSI S3.41, *American National Standard Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal,* 1990, reaffirmed 2008, American National Standards Institute, Inc., New York, NY.

ANSI/UL 217, *Standard for Single and Multiple Station Smoke Alarms,* 2006, revised 2008, American National Standards Institute, Inc., New York, NY.

ANSI/UL 268, *Standard for Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems*, 2009 edition, American National Standards Institute, Inc., New York, NY.

ANSI/UL 539, *Standard for Single and Multiple Station Heat Alarms*, 2009 edition, American National Standards Institute, Inc., New York, NY.

ANSI/UL 2034, *Standard for Single and Multiple Station Carbon Monoxide Alarms*, 2008 edition, American National Standards Institute, Inc., New York, NY.

Ashley, E. M. and Du Bois, J., "Waking Effectiveness of Audible, Visual, and Vibratory Emergency Alarms Across All Hearing Levels," 9th Fire Suppression and Detection Research Application Symposium, Fire Protection Research Foundation, Orlando, FL, January 21–23, 2004.

Bruck, D., "Non-Awakening in Children in Response to a Smoke Detector Alarm," *Fire Safety Journal*, 32, 1999, pp. 369–376.

Bruck, D., "The Who, What, Where and Why of Waking to Fire Alarms: A Review," *Fire Safety Journal*, 36, 2001, pp. 623–639.

Bruck, D., "Sleep and Fire: Who Is at Risk and Can the Risk Be Reduced?" *Fire Safety Science – Proceedings of the Eighth International Symposium*, D. T. Gottuk and B. Y. Lattimer, eds., International Association for Fire Safety Science, Worcester, MA, September 18–23, 2005, pp. 37–51.

Bruck, D., and Bliss, R. A., "Sleeping Children and Smoke Alarms," *Proceedings of the Fourth Asia-Oceania Symposium on Fire Science and Technology,* T. Yamada, ed., co-organized by Asia-Oceania Association for Fire Science and Technology (AOAFST) and Japan Association for Fire Science and Engineering (JAFSE), May 24–26, 2000, pp. 603–611.

Bruck, D. and Thomas, I., "Towards a Better Smoke Alarm Signal – An Evidence Based Approach," *Fire Safety Science – Proceedings of the Ninth International Symposium*, International Association of Fire Safety Science, Worcester, MA, 2008.

Duncan, C., "The Effectiveness of the Domestic Smoke Alarm Signal," Fire Engineering Research Report 99/5, University of Canterbury, Christchurch, New Zealand, March 1999.

Lee, A., "The Audibility of Smoke Alarms in Residential Homes," CPSC-ES-0503, U.S. Consumer Product Safety Commission, Washington, DC, 2005. Available online at http://www.cpsc.gov/library/foia/foia05/os/audibility.pdf.

NFPA 70®, National Electrical Code®, 2011 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA *101®*, *Life Safety Code®*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment*, 2012 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA 731, *Standard for the Installation of Electronic Premises Security Systems*, 2011 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

Thomas, I. and Bruck, D, "Strobe Lights, Pillow Shakers and Bed Shakers as Smoke Alarm Signals," *Fire Safety Science – Proceedings of the Ninth International Symposium*, International Association of Fire Safety Science, Worcester, MA, 2008.

ANNEX A

Explanatory Material

Annex A is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only. This annex contains explanatory material, numbered to correspond with the applicable text paragraphs.

The material contained in Annex A of *NFPA 72*® is included within the text of this handbook and, therefore, is not repeated here.

Engineering Guide for Automatic Fire Detector Spacing

ANNEX B

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

Users of Annex B should refer back to the text of NFPA 72 to familiarize themselves with the limitations of the design methods summarized herein.

Section B.2, and particularly B.2.2 and B.2.3, are largely based on the work of Custer and Meacham as found in "Performance-Based Fire Safety Engineering: An Introduction of Basic Concepts" (Meacham and Custer 1995) and Introduction to Performance-Based Fire Safety *(Custer and Meacham 1997). [25]*

The National Fire Protection Association and the Technical Committee on Initiating Devices for Fire Alarm Systems gratefully acknowledge the technical contributions of the Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Richard Custer, and Brian Meacham to performance-based design and this annex.

B.1 Introduction

B.1.1 Scope. Annex B provides information intended to supplement Chapter 17. It includes a procedure for determining detector spacing based on the objectives set for the system, size, and rate of growth of fire to be detected, various ceiling heights, ambient temperatures, and response characteristics of the detectors. In addition to providing an engineering method for the design of detection systems using plume-dependent detectors, heat detectors, and smoke detectors, this annex also provides guidance on the use of radiant energy–sensing detectors.

Most jurisdictions deem the design of fire alarm systems to be "engineering work" and require licensed engineers to perform such work. Some jurisdictions, however, permit technologists to lay out fire alarm systems as long as they follow the prescriptive requirements found in the Code. Designers using a performance-based approach must review the relevant engineering licensure laws in the jurisdictions in which they practice. Performance-based designs of fire alarm systems very likely will be deemed engineering of the type that requires licensure as a professional engineer.

B.1.2 General.

B.1.2.1 In the 1999 edition Annex B was revised in its entirety from previous editions. The correlations originally used to develop the tables and graphs for heat and smoke detector spacings in the earlier editions have been updated to be consistent with current research. These revisions correct the errors in the original correlations. In earlier editions, the tables and graphs were based on an assumed heat of combustion of 20,900 kJ/kg (8986 Btu/lb). The effective heat of combustion for common cellulosic materials is usually taken to be approximately 12,500 kJ/kg (5374 Btu/lb). The equations in this annex were produced using test data and data correlations for cellulosic (wood) fuels that have a total heat of combustion of about 12,500 kJ/kg (5374 Btu/lb).

For the technical basis for the changes described in B.1.2.1, see Reference 11 in B.6.5.

B.1.2.2 In addition to the revisions undertaken in 1999, the concept of performance-based design was further expanded on. This included, to a large extent, additional material taken from the work of Custer and Meacham. Since this time, the industry continues to develop additional codes, standards, and guides to further assist in undertaking a performance-based assessment. This includes the work of SFPE [40, 49], NFPA [50, 51, 52], and ICC [53].

Subsection B.1.2.2 provides additional information and a broader background on performance-based approaches and references documents that have been produced in the past few years to assist the designer in undertaking a performance-based assessment.

B.1.2.3 For the purposes of this annex, the heat produced by a fire is manifested either as convective heat or radiant heat. It is assumed that conductive heat transfer is of little consequence during the early stages of the development of a fire, where this annex is relevant. A convective heat release rate fraction equal to 75 percent of the total heat release rate has been used in this annex. Users should refer to references 12 and 13 in G.1.2.13 for fuels or burning conditions that are substantially different from these conditions.

B.1.2.4 The design methods for plume-dependent fire detectors provided in this annex are based on full-scale fire tests funded by the Fire Detection Institute in which all fires were geometrically growing flaming fires. *(See Environments of Fire Detectors — Phase 1: Effect of Fire Size, Ceiling Height and Material; Measurements Vol. I and Analysis Vol. II [10].)*

B.1.2.5 The guidance applicable to smoke detectors is limited to a theoretical analysis based on the flaming fire test data and is not intended to address the detection of smoldering fires.

The design methods in Annex B rely on the presence of a buoyant plume. The heat released from a flaming fire produces a rising plume of hot gases. A smoldering fire has a very low rate of heat release and essentially little or no buoyant plume. For a smoldering scenario, the ambient air currents and diffusion processes provide the mechanisms for smoke movement. The smoldering condition can be significantly affected by the ambient air flows, and reliable methods for engineering analysis do not currently exist. Consequently, a designer cannot use the design methods in Annex B to evaluate detection for smoldering scenarios. However, the designer can use the design methods outlined in Annex B for those situations where a flaming fire produces a buoyant plume.

B.1.2.6 The design methods for plume-dependent fire detectors do not address the detection of steady-state fires.

B.1.2.7 The design methods for plume-dependent fire detectors used in this annex are only applicable when employed in the context of applications where the ceiling is smooth and level. They cannot be used for ceilings where there are beams, joists, or bays formed by beams and purlins. The research upon which the following methods have been based did not consider the effect of beams, joists, and bays in sufficient detail to justify the use of this annex to those applications.

B.1.3 Purpose.

B.1.3.1 The purpose of Annex B is to provide a performance basis for the location and spacing of fire detection–initiating devices. The sections for heat and smoke detectors provide an alternative design method to the prescriptive approach presented in Chapter 17 (i.e., based on their listed spacings). The section on radiant energy–sensing detectors elaborates on the performance-based criteria already existing in Chapter 17. A performance-based approach allows one to consider potential fire growth rates and fire signatures, the individual compartment characteristics, and damageability characteristics of the targets (e.g., occupants, equipment, contents, structures, and so on) in order to determine the location of a specific type of detector to meet the objectives established for the system.

B.1.3.2 Under the prescriptive approach, heat detectors are installed according to their listed spacing. The listed spacing is determined in a full-scale fire test room. The fire test room used for the determination of listed spacing for heat detectors has a ceiling height of 4.8 m (15 ft 9 in.). A steady-state, flammable liquid fire with a heat release rate of approximately 1137 kW (1200 Btu/sec), located 0.9 m (3 ft) above the floor, is used as the test fire. Special 71°C (160°F) test sprinklers are installed on a 3 m × 3 m (10 ft × 10 ft) spacing array such that the fire is in the center of the sprinkler array. The heat detectors being tested are installed in a square array with increasing spacing centered about the fire location. The elevation of the test fire is adjusted during the test to produce the temperature versus time curve at the test sprinkler heads to yield actuation of the heads in 2.0 minutes ±10 seconds. The largest heat detector spacing that achieves alarm before the actuation of the sprinkler heads in the test becomes the listed spacing for the heat detector. See Figure A.17.6.3.1.1(c). If the room dimensions, ambient conditions, and fire and response characteristics of the detector are different from above, the response of the heat detector must be expected to be different as well. Therefore, the use of an installed detector spacing that is different from the listed spacing might be warranted through the use of a performance-based approach if the conditions are as follows:

(1) The design objectives are different from designing a system that operates at the same time as a sprinkler in the approval test.
(2) Faster response of the device is desired.
(3) A response of the device to a smaller fire than used in the approved test is required.
(4) Accommodation to room geometry that is different from that used in the listing process.
(5) Other special considerations, such as ambient temperature, air movement, ceiling height, or other obstruction, are different from or are not considered in the approval tests.
(6) A fire other than a steady state 1137 kW (1200 Btu/sec) fire is contemplated.

B.1.3.3 The designer of fire alarm systems needs to be knowledgeable in the applicable areas associated with undertaking a performance-based design, including fire dynamics, performance-based design, detector response, and so forth, and apply these principles judiciously. In addition, the majority of jurisdictions consider the design of fire alarm systems as "engineering work." They therefore require licensed engineers to perform such work. Other jurisdictions allow technologists to lay out fire alarm systems as long as they follow the appropriate prescriptive requirements. Designers who are using a performance-based design approach need to review the relevant engineering licensure laws in the jurisdictions in which they are practicing, as performance-based designs might very likely be deemed engineering and of the type that requires licensure of a professional engineer.

B.2 Performance-Based Approach to Designing and Analyzing Fire Detection Systems

Section B.2, particularly B.2.2 and B.2.3, are largely based on the work of Richard Custer and Brian Meacham as found in "Performance-Based Fire Safety Engineering: An Introduction of Basic Concepts" [Meacham and Custer, 1995] and *Introduction to Performance-Based Fire Safety* [Custer and Meacham, 1997]. The National Fire Protection Association and the Technical Committee on Initiating Devices for Fire Alarm Systems gratefully acknowledge the technical contributions of the Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Richard Custer, and Brian Meacham to performance-based design and to this annex.

This annex is intended to be used in the context of the performance-based design process. The process provides an environment in which the designer can develop solutions that differ from the prescriptive approaches in the body of the Code. The process provides checks and balances and a document trail so the genesis of any given decision can be traced back to its source. If the computational methods outlined in this annex are used outside the environment of the performance-based design process, the designer loses those checks, balances, and decision trails and can go astray. Designers are guided to consider and review the references before undertaking a design project using this annex.

B.2.1 Overview. Subsection B.2.1 provides an overview of a systematic approach to conducting a performance-based design or analysis of a fire detection system. The approach has been outlined by Custer and Meacham and the SFPE *Engineering Guide to Performance Based Fire Protection Analysis and Design* [40] and is summarized below in the context of design and analysis of fire detection systems. *(Refer to Figure B.2.1.)* This approach has been divided into two phases: defining goals and objectives and system design and evaluation.

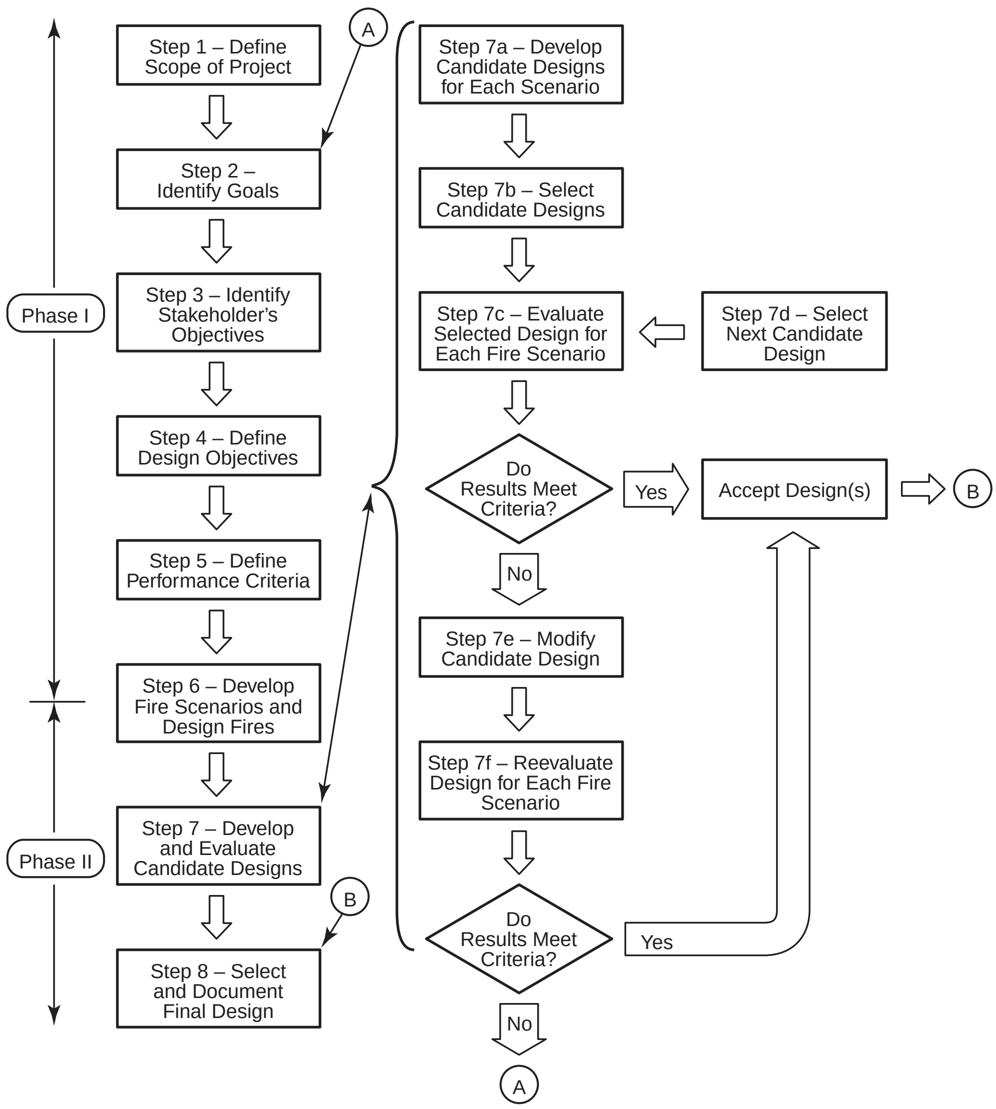


FIGURE B.2.1 Overview of the Performance-Based Design Process. [25]

B.2.2 Phase 1 — Defining Goals and Objectives.

B.2.2.1 Define Scope of Project.

B.2.2.1.1 The initial step of this approach is to identify information relative to the overall scope of work on the project, including characteristics of the building, design intent, design and construction team organization, constraints on design and project schedule, proposed building construction and features, relevant hazards, how the building functions, occupant characteristics, and so forth. Additional information that one might want to consider could also include characteristics of the fire departments, historic preservation, building management, and applicable regulations.

B.2.2.1.2 While defining the project's scope, the designer will identify which of the three situations in Table B.2.2.1.2 best describes the project at hand (i.e., a performance-based analysis of an existing detection system in an existing building).

TABLE B.2.2.1.2 *Design/Analysis Situation*

Building Type	*System Type*	*Design/Analysis*
New	New	Design
Existing	New	Design
Existing	Existing	Analysis

B.2.2.2 Identify Goals.

B.2.2.2.1 Fire protection assets are acquired in order to attain one or more of the following four goals:

(1) To provide life safety (occupants, employees, fire fighters, and so forth)
(2) To protect property and heritage (structure, contents, and so forth)
(3) To provide for continuity of operations (protect stakeholder's mission, operating capability, and so forth)
(4) To limit the environmental impact of fire (toxic products, fire-fighting water run-off, and so forth)

B.2.2.2.2 Fire protection goals are like other goals in that they are generally easy to agree on, are qualitative, and are noncontroversial in nature. They express the desired overall outcome to be achieved, that is, to provide life safety to the building occupants.

The design team might also identify other goals that do not relate directly to fire safety. Often, design goals reflect the use of the space and are characterized as mission continuity, property protection, environmental protection, and so on. These goals might include specific design objectives such as having a large open space that has no compartmentation, minimizing damage to the building's historic fabric, and reducing costs. The design team should consider these and other appropriate design parameters at the start of a project.

B.2.2.2.3 When starting the performance-based process, the various parties — including the stakeholders (i.e., the architect, building owner, insurance carrier, building or fire officials, and so forth), the authority having jurisdiction, and the design engineer — work together to prioritize the basic fire protection goals. Prioritizing is based on the stakeholder's objective and the building and occupancy involved. For example, life safety is a high priority in a hospital or stadium, while property protection might have an equally high priority in a large warehouse or historic building.

The performance-based design process creates a design environment in which all parties that have an interest in the finished system have a say in the decision-making process. Such individuals or entities are called *stakeholders.* The list of stakeholders varies from project to project. Sometimes the stakeholders are few, and other times they are many. Potential stakeholders include the following:

1. Building managers
2. Design team members
3. Authorities having jurisdiction
4. Tenants
5. Neighbors
6. Accreditation agencies
7. Construction team members
8. Fire service

B.2.2.3 Identify Stakeholder's Objectives.

B.2.2.3.1 Each stakeholder must explicitly state her or his objectives in terms of acceptable loss for the various goals previously stated.

B.2.2.3.2 Stakeholder objectives specify how much safety the stakeholder wants, needs, or can afford. "No loss of life within the room of origin" is a sample stakeholder objective or statement of the stakeholder's maximum acceptable loss.

Designers should note that most buildings contain ignition sources and some type of fuel. The chance that a fire could occur always exists. Similarly, some probability always exists that a fire in an occupied building may result in injury or death, some degree of property damage, or interruption to business (or all three). Therefore, the designer should ensure that the stakeholders understand that creating an entirely hazard-free or risk-free environment is impossible [Custer and Meacham, 1997]. Prescriptive building codes and construction standards do *not* produce a risk-free built environment. Usually, the performance-based design process is used to achieve a level of fire safety equivalent to that achieved by the prescriptive codes or to achieve some elected design objective such as those derived from mission continuity, property protection, and so forth.

B.2.2.3.3 The stakeholder's objectives are generally not stated in fire protection engineering terms.

See Table B.2.2.4.1(a) through Table B.2.2.4.1(c) for additional examples of stakeholders' objectives.

B.2.2.3.4 Note that in a performance-based code environment, the Code will most likely define a performance objective or stakeholder objective.

Stakeholders should define their objectives as clearly as possible. The objectives derived from the prescriptive criteria in a building code are generally considered to be the objectives of the populace — the code writers are acting as fiduciaries for the public. From the beginning of the design process, the designer should work with the stakeholders to develop a consensus on the objectives for the system. Some stakeholders could have stringent, difficult-to-achieve objectives. As consensus is developed, each party or stakeholder must agree to the consensus objectives for the system. The sooner consensus is attained, the better. Without the stakeholders reaching early consensus on the objectives, the designer will have a far more difficult task developing quantitative engineering criteria with which to evaluate trial designs.

Furthermore, cost is always a factor. Some objectives are laudable but might result in excessively expensive design solutions. The stakeholders must be willing to address the cost issue(s) as they are developing objectives. Ideally, the process is one of give and take among the stakeholders as they reach consensus.

B.2.2.4 Define Design Objectives.

B.2.2.4.1 The stakeholder's objective must then be explicitly stated and quantified in fire protection engineering terms that describe how the objective will be achieved. This demands that the design objectives be expressed quantitatively. See Table B.2.2.4.1(a) through Table B.2.2.4.1(c).

***TABLE B.2.2.4.1(a)** Defining Goals and Objectives — Life Safety*

Fire protection goal	Provide life safety
Stakeholder's objective	No loss of life within compartment of origin
Design objective	Maintain tenable conditions within the compartment of origin
Performance criteria	Maintain: Temperatures below *xx*°C (°F) Visibility above *yy* m (ft) CO concentration below *zz* ppm for *tt* minutes

***TABLE B.2.2.4.1(b)** Defining Goals and Objectives — Property Protection*

Fire protection goal	Provide protection of property
Stakeholder's objective	No fire damage outside compartment of origin
Design objective	Limit the spread of flame to the compartment of origin
Performance criteria	Maintain upper layer temperature below *xx*°C (°F) and radiation level to the floor below *yy* kW/m^2 ($Btu/sec \cdot ft^2$) to prevent flashover

***TABLE B.2.2.4.1(c)** Defining Goals and Objectives — Continuity of Operations*

Fire protection goal	Provide continuity of operations
Stakeholder's objective	Prevent any interruption to business operations in excess of 2 hours
Design objective	Limit the temperature and the concentration of HCl to within acceptable levels for continued operation of the equipment
Performance criteria	Provide detection such that operation of a gaseous suppression system will maintain temperatures below *xx*°C (°F) and HCl levels below *yy* ppm

The designer uses the design objectives as a benchmark against which the predicted performance of a trial design is measured. The designer uses performance criteria expressed in engineering terms. See also Custer and Meacham [1997].

B.2.2.4.2 The design objective provides a description of how the stakeholder's objective will be achieved in general fire protection engineering terms prior to this description being quantified. The general objective is then reduced to explicit and quantitative fire protection engineering terms. The explicit fire protection engineering objectives provide a performance benchmark against which the predicted performance of a candidate design is evaluated.

The designer quantifies the design objectives in either deterministic or probabilistic terms. Deterministic methods consider any and all possible incident scenarios equally, regardless of how likely or unlikely a scenario might be. For example, the designer can translate the stakeholder objective of "no fire damage outside the compartment of origin" to "limiting the spread of flame to the compartment of origin." This translation of the stakeholder objective is a deterministic statement of the design objective. Probabilistic methods assign probabilities to incident scenarios, weighing the more likely ones higher than the less likely ones. The designer restates the stakeholder objective of "no fire damage outside the compartment of origin" as "limiting the probability of flame spreading to an adjacent compartment to a value that does not exceed a threshold value" [Custer and Meacham, 1997].

B.2.2.5 Define Performance Criteria.

A performance criterion is a measurement that will be used as a go/no-go decision value. For example, if the objective is to achieve occupant evacuation before the loss of tenability, the designer must come up with a quantitative measure of what constitutes *tenability*. Some practitioners have used the elevation of the upper smoke layer as a determinant of tenability and deemed a space untenable when the smoke layer descends to a level equal to or less than 1.5 m (5 ft). That measurement can be used to assess performance. A fire model can be developed for the space and the time at which the upper layer reaches a 1.5 m (5 ft) elevation. An egress model can be used to determine how long it takes to evacuate all the occupants. The evacuation time is then compared to the smoke layer descent time to determine if all the occupants have been able to leave before the smoke layer produced the *untenable* condition. The identification and selection of performance criteria are, therefore, a critical part of the design process.

B.2.2.5.1 Once the design objective has been established, specific, quantitatively expressed criteria that indicate attainment of the performance objective are developed.

B.2.2.5.2 Performance criteria provide a yardstick or threshold values that can measure a potential design's success in meeting stakeholder objectives and their associated design objectives. [25]

When defining performance criteria, a designer cannot achieve an environment totally free of risk or hazard. Also, the cost associated with an incremental reduction in risk typically increases as the intended risk or hazard level decreases.

B.2.2.5.3 Quantification of the design objectives into performance criteria involves determination of the various fire-induced stresses that are a reflection of the stated loss objectives. Performance criteria can be expressed in various terms, including temperature, radiant flux, a rate of heat release, or concentration of a toxic or corrosive species that must not be exceeded.

Other performance criteria relating to occupants include visibility, clear layer height, smoke concentration, ignition levels of adjacent fuel packages, and smoke product and toxic product damage. However, objectives are often derived from mission continuity, property preservation, cultural preservation, or environmental protection that will yield different performance criteria. For example, a hotel might have a maximum area contaminated with smoke as a mission continuity performance criterion. Rooms cannot be rented if they smell of smoke. The performance criterion would then relate to the number of rooms that cannot be rented because of smoke contamination. See also Meacham and Custer [1995].

B.2.2.5.4 Once the design performance criteria are established, appropriate safety factors are applied to obtain the working design criteria. The working design criteria reflect the performance that must be achieved by the detection system. This performance level must allow appropriate actions to be undertaken (e.g., activate suppression systems, occupants' egress, notify fire department, and so forth) to meet the objectives. An acceptable fire detection system design provides the detection of the fire sufficiently early in its development to permit the other fire protection systems to meet or exceed the relevant performance criteria established for those systems.

B.2.2.5.5 Throughout the process identified as Phase I and II, communication should be maintained with the authorities having jurisdiction (AHJs) to review and develop consensus on the approach being taken. It is recommended that this communication commence as early in the design process as possible. The AHJ should also be involved in the development of performance criteria. Often the acceptance of a performance-based design in lieu of a design based on a prescriptive approach relies on demonstrating equivalence. This is called the comparative method, where the designer demonstrates that the performance-based design responds at least as well as, if not better than, a system designed using a prescriptive approach.

Table B.2.2.4.1(a) through Table B.2.2.4.1(c) present sample goals, objectives, and performance criteria. See also Custer and Meacham [1997].

B.2.3 Phase II — System Design and Evaluation.

B.2.3.1 Develop Fire Scenarios.

B.2.3.1.1 General.

B.2.3.1.1.1 A fire scenario defines the development of a fire and the spread of combustion products throughout a compartment or building. A fire scenario represents a set of fire conditions that are deemed a threat to a building and its occupants and/or contents, and, therefore, should be addressed in the design of the fire protection features of the structure. [25]

Fire scenarios are used to evaluate the performance of proposed designs. Consequently, agreement of all the stakeholders, up front, on how a proposed design will be evaluated is critical. This decision prevents the performance evaluation from changing as the design process moves forward. The fire scenario will be used to produce a model of the effects of fire in the building or compartment to be protected. The time at which the fire alarm system is predicted to respond to those fire effects is compared to the time needed to execute the planned response. Thus, the performance of the fire alarm system is evaluated in the context of a set of scenarios, which should be chosen and agreed upon by the stakeholders as representing reasonable worst-case situations.

B.2.3.1.1.2 The process of developing a fire scenario is a combination of hazard analysis and risk analysis. The hazard analysis identifies potential ignition sources, fuels, and fire development. Risk is the probability of occurrence multiplied by the consequences of that occurrence. The risk analysis looks at the impact of the fire to the surroundings or target items.

B.2.3.1.1.3 The fire scenario should include a description of various conditions, including building characteristics, occupant characteristics, and fire characteristics. [25, 40]

B.2.3.1.2 Building Characteristics. Building characteristics include the following:

(1) Configuration (area; ceiling height; ceiling configuration, such as flat, sloped beams; windows and doors, and thermodynamic properties)
(2) Environment (ambient temperature, humidity, background noise, and so forth)
(3) Equipment (heat-producing equipment, HVAC, manufacturing equipment, and so forth)
(4) Functioning characteristics (occupied, during times, days, and so forth)
(5) Target locations
(6) Potential ignition sources
(7) Aesthetic or historic preservation considerations

(Note target items — that is, areas associated with stakeholder objectives — along the expected route of spread for flame, heat, or other combustion products.)

Annex B uses the term *building characteristics*, in B.2.3.1.2, to encompass the physical layout, ambient environment, structural features, fire hazards, and target locations within a compartment. Each of these characteristics affects fire initiation and growth, the spread of the products of combustion, and occupant evacuation. The designer must address these building characteristics when developing a design fire scenario.

The designer should also consider additional building characteristics:

1. Potential ignition sources
2. Architectural details to be designed around (i.e., ornate ceilings)
3. Concealed, enclosed spaces or voids

B.2.3.1.3 Occupant Characteristics. Occupant characteristics include the following:

(1) Alertness (sleeping, awake, and so forth)
(2) Age
(3) Mobility
(4) Quantity and location within the building
(5) Sex
(6) Responsiveness
(7) Familiarity with the building
(8) Mental challenges

Human behavior plays a key role in life safety, as well as with the other fire safety goals. *(See SFPE Engineering Guide to Human Behavior in Fire.)* The possible actions that could be taken upon detecting a fire as well as how one reacts once they hear an alarm need to be considered. These actions can include alerting and rescuing other family members, gathering belongings, interpreting or verifying the message, shutting down processes. They should also include a look at how individuals respond on their own as well as in group situations.

Once these occupant characteristics and their behavior have been analyzed, one might also want to determine evacuation times. Numerous factors again need to be considered, including number of occupants, distribution throughout the building, pre-movement times, motivation, state of wakefulness, familiarity, capacity, and layout of the means of egress.

Due to the nature of human behavior, it is difficult to accurately quantify the movements and evacuation times of occupants from a building. Thus, particular attention should be given to assumptions and uncertainties assigned to these occupant characteristics.

B.2.3.1.4 Fire Characteristics.

B.2.3.1.4.1 Fire characteristics include the following:

(1) Ignition sources — temperature, energy, time, and area of contact with potential fuels
(2) Initial fuels
   (a) *State*. Fuels can come in various states (i.e., solid, liquid, or gas). Each state can have very different combustion characteristics (i.e., a solid block of wood versus wood shavings versus wood dust)
   (b) *Type and quantity of fuel*. A fire's development and duration depends also on what is burning. Cellulosic-based materials burn quite differently compared to plastics, or flammable liquids, in terms of producing different fire growth rates, heat release rates, and products of combustion.
   (c) *Fuel configuration*. The geometrical arrangement of the fuel can also influence the fire growth rate and heat release rate. A wood block will burn very differently from a wood crib, as there is more surface area and ventilation, and radiation feedback between the combustible materials is increased.
   (d) *Fuel location*. The location of the fuel (i.e., against wall, in corner, in open, against the ceiling) will influence the development of the fire. Fires in the corner of a room or against a wall will typically grow faster than a fire located in the center of a room.

(e) *Heat release rate*. The rate at which heat is released depends on the fuel's heat of combustion, the mass loss rate, the combustion efficiency, and the amount of incident heat flux. The mass loss rate also directly relates to the production rate of smoke, toxic gases, and other products of combustion.
(f) *Fire growth rate*. Fires grow at various rates that are dependent on type of fuel, configuration, and amount of ventilation. Some fires such as confined flammable liquid fires might not be growing fires as their burning area is fixed. These are referred to as steady state fires. The faster a fire develops, the faster the temperature rises, and the faster the products of combustion are produced.
(g) *Production rate of combustion products (smoke, CO, CO_2, etc.)*. As the characteristics of various fuels vary, so will the type of quantity of materials generated during combustion. Species production rates can be estimated with species yields, which are representative of the mass of species produced per mass of fuel loss.

(3) Secondary fuels — proximity to initial fuels; amount; distribution, ease of ignitibility *(see initial fuels)*; and extension potential (beyond compartment, structure, area, if outside)

Conduction, convection, radiation, or a combination of these can ignite secondary fuels. The designer must consider the issues itemized in B.2.3.1.4.1(2) when considering the participation of secondary fuels in a fire scenario. See also Custer and Meacham [1997].

B.2.3.1.4.2 An example of a fire scenario in a computer room might be as follows.

The computer room is 9.1 m × 6 m (30 ft × 20 ft) and 2.8 m (8 ft) high. It is occupied 12 hours a day, 5 days a week. The occupants are mobile and familiar with the building. There are no fixed fire suppression systems protecting this location. The fire department is capable of responding to the scene in 6 minutes, and an additional 15 minutes for fire ground evolution is needed.

Overheating of a resistor leads to the ignition of a printed circuit board and interconnecting cabling. This leads to a fire that quickly extends up into the above ceiling space containing power and communications cabling. The burning of this cabling produces large quantities of dense, acrid smoke and corrosive products of combustion that spread throughout the computer suite. This causes the loss of essential computer and telecommunications services for 2 months.

B.2.3.2 Develop Design Fires.

B.2.3.2.1 General.

B.2.3.2.1.1 The design fire is the fire the system is intended to detect. When specifying a design fire, the specifics regarding the ignition, growth, steady-state output (if appropriate), and decay of the fire are expressed quantitatively.

There are numerous analysis techniques available to identify fire scenarios. These can typically fall into one of two categories: probabilistic or deterministic.

Probabilistic approaches typically relate to the statistical likelihood that ignition will occur, and the resultant outcome if a fire does occur. Probabilistic approaches could use the following as sources of data:

(1) Fire statistics (ignition, first items ignited, and so on)
(2) Past history
(3) Hazard/failure analysis
(4) Failure modes and effects analysis (FMEA)
(5) Event trees
(6) Fault trees
(7) HAZOP studies
(8) Cause-consequence analysis

Deterministic approaches use analysis or engineering judgment that is based on chemistry, physics, or correlations based on experimental data.

The selection of the design fire scenario and the supporting analysis techniques should be appropriate to the premise or processes. Inappropriate scenario selection or analysis can result in conservative designs that are not economical or designs with unacceptably high risks.

B.2.3.2.1.2 Fire development varies depending on the combustion characteristics of the fuel or fuels involved, the physical configuration of the fuels, the availability of combustion air, and the influences due to the compartment. Once a stable flame is attained, most fires grow in an accelerating pattern *(see Figure B.2.3.2.3.5)*, reach a steady state characterized by a maximum heat release rate, and then enter into a decay period as the availability of either fuel or combustion air becomes limited. Fire growth and development are limited by factors such as quantity of fuel, arrangement of fuel, quantity of oxygen, and the effect of manual and automatic suppression systems.

For design fires with a smoldering period, very little data are available. The design engineer should, therefore, be careful in specifying the duration of this period. The fire growth rate of flaming fires is determined by a variety of factors, including the following:

(1) Type of fuel and ease of ignition
(2) Fuel configuration and orientation
(3) Location of secondary fuel packages
(4) Proximity of fire to walls and corners
(5) Ceiling height
(6) Ventilation

It is important to note when using heat release data that the fuel burning as well as the compartment in which it is burning need to be considered together. A couch can produce sufficient heat to cause flashover in a small compartment, whereas this same couch placed in a large compartment with high ceilings can cause a limited fire and never reach flashover.

Several sources for developing design fires should be reviewed, including *SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering* [41]; NFPA *101*, *Life Safety Code*; *NFPA 5000*, *Building Construction and Safety Code*; and *SFPE Engineering Guide to Performance Based Fire Protection Analysis and Design of Buildings* [40].

B.2.3.2.1.3 Designers might also need to consider fires that might be related to extreme events. These can either be fires used to trigger extreme events, or post-extreme-event-induced fires. If these are deemed credible, then designers should take these into consideration as design fires and also with respect to the overall reliability, redundancy, and robustness of the detection system to function during these types of events. [54]

B.2.3.2.2 Heat Release Rates.

B.2.3.2.2.1 Fires can be characterized by their rate of heat release, measured in terms of the number of kW (Btu/sec) of heat liberated. Typical maximum heat release rates (Q_m) for a number of different fuels and fuel configurations are provided in Table B.2.3.2.6.2(a) and Table B.2.3.2.6.2(c). The heat release rate of a fire can be described as a product of a heat release density and fire area using the following equation:

$$Q_m = qA \tag{B.1}$$

where:

Q_m = maximum or peak heat release rate [kW (Btu/sec)]
q = heat release rate density per unit floor area [kW/m^2 ($Btu/sec \cdot ft^2$)]
A = floor area of the fuel [m^2 (ft^2)]

B.2.3.2.2.2 The following example is provided: A particular hazard analysis is to be based on a fire scenario involving a 3.05 m × 3.05 m (10 ft × 10 ft) stack of wood pallets stored 1.5 m (5 ft) high. Approximately what peak heat release rate can be expected?

From Table B.2.3.2.6.2(a), the heat release rate density (q) for 1.5 m (5 ft) high wood pallets is approximately 3745 kW/m^2 (330 Btu/sec·ft^2).

The area is 3.05 m × 3.05 m (10 ft × 10 ft), or 9.29 m^2 (100 ft^2). Using equation B.1 to determine the heat release rate yields the following:

$$3745 \times 9.29 = 34{,}791 \text{ kW } (330 \times 100 = 33{,}000 \text{ Btu/sec})$$

As indicated in the Table B.2.3.2.6.2(a), this fire generally produces a medium to fast fire growth rate, reaching 1055 kW (1000 Btu/sec) in approximately 90 to 190 seconds.

B.2.3.2.3 Fire Growth Rate.

B.2.3.2.3.1 Fires can also be defined by their growth rate or the time (t_g) it takes for the fire to reach a given heat release rate. Previous research [16] has shown that most fires grow exponentially and can be expressed by what is termed the "power law fire growth model":

$$Q \cong t^p \qquad \textbf{(B.2)}$$

where:

Q = heat release rate (kW or Btu/sec)

t = time (seconds)

p = 2

This relation is known as the "t-square" fire. As the length of time that the fire burns doubles, the heat release rate quadruples.

Since Q is a heat release rate, it is by definition dH/dt. Thus, the relation can be written as

$$\frac{dH}{dt} = kt^2$$

where:

k = a constant

p = 2

This relation can be integrated from t_1 to t_2.

$$\int_{t_1}^{t_2} \frac{dH}{dt} = \frac{1}{3} = kt^3 \int_{t_1}^{t_2}$$

This allows calculation of the total quantity of heat released and then, using the net heat of combustion, the total quantity of fuel consumed.

B.2.3.2.3.2 In fire protection, fuel packages are often described as having a growth time (t_g). This is the time necessary after the ignition with a stable flame for the fuel package to attain a heat release rate of 1055 kW (1000 Btu/sec). The following equations describe the growth of design fires:

$$Q = \frac{1055}{t_g^2} t^2 \quad (\text{for SI units}) \qquad \textbf{(B.3a)}$$

or

$$Q = \frac{1000}{t_g^2} t^2 \quad (\text{for inch-pound units}) \qquad \textbf{(B.3b)}$$

and thus

$$Q = \alpha t^2 \qquad \textbf{(B.4)}$$

where:

Q = heat release rate [kW or (Btu/sec)]

α = fire growth rate [$1055/t_g^2$ (kW/sec^2) or $1000/t_g^2$ (Btu/sec^3)]

t_g = fire growth time to reach 1055 kW (1000 Btu/sec) after established burning

t = time after established burning occurs (seconds)

Here, the variable α has been substituted for the more general parameter k above.

B.2.3.2.3.3 Table B.2.3.2.6.2(a) and Table B.2.3.2.6.2(e) provide values for t_g, the time necessary to reach a heat release rate of 1055 kW (1000 Btu/sec), for a variety of materials in various configurations.

B.2.3.2.3.4 Test data from 40 furniture calorimeter tests, as indicated in Table B.2.3.2.6.2(e), have been used to independently verify the power law fire growth model, $Q = \alpha t^2$. [14] For reference, the table contains the test numbers used in the original NIST reports.

The virtual time of origin (t_v) is the time at which a stable flame had appeared and the fires began to obey the power law fire growth model. Prior to t_v, the fuels might have smoldered but did not burn vigorously with an open flame. The model curves are then predicted by the following equations:

$$Q = \alpha\left(t - t_v\right)^2 \tag{B.5}$$

and

$$Q = \left(\frac{1055}{t_g^2}\right)\left(t - t_v\right)^2 \quad \text{(for SI units)} \tag{B.6a}$$

or

$$Q = \left(\frac{1000}{t_g^2}\right)\left(t - t_v\right)^2 \quad \text{(for inch-pound units)} \tag{B.6b}$$

where:

Q = heat release rate [kW or (Btu/sec)]

α = fire growth rate [$1055/t_g^2$ (kW/sec^2) or $1000/t_g^2$ (Btu/sec^3)]

t_g = fire growth time to reach 1055 kW (1000 Btu/sec)

t = time after established burning occurs (seconds)

t_v = virtual time of origin (seconds)

B.2.3.2.3.5 Figure B.2.3.2.3.5 is an example of actual test data with a power law curve superimposed.

B.2.3.2.3.6 For purposes of this annex, fires are classified as being either slow-, medium-, or fast-developing from the time that established burning occurs until the fire reaches a heat release rate of 1055 kW (1000 Btu/sec). Table B.2.3.2.3.6 results from using the relationships discussed earlier. *[See also Table B.2.3.2.6.2(a).]*

TABLE B.2.3.2.3.6 *Power Law Heat Release Rates*

Fire Growth Rate	*Growth Time (t_g)*	*α (kW/sec^2)*	*α (Btu/sec^3)*
Slow	$t_g \geq 400$ sec	$\alpha \leq 0.0066$	$\alpha \leq 0.0063$
Medium	$150 \leq t_g < 400$ sec	$0.0066 < \alpha \leq 0.0469$	$0.0063 < \alpha \leq 0.0445$
Fast	$t_g < 150$ sec	$\alpha > 0.0469$	$\alpha > 0.0445$

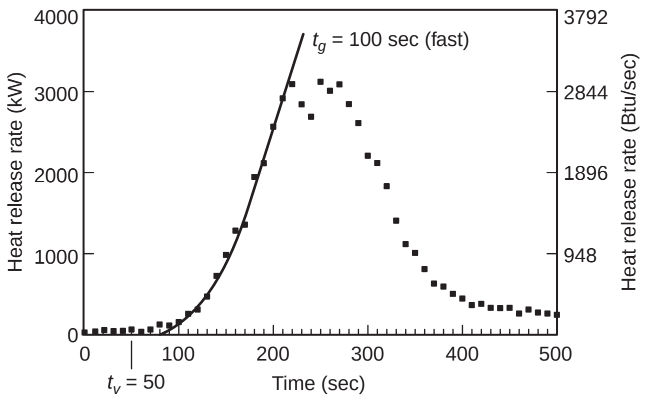


FIGURE B.2.3.2.3.5 Test 38, Foam Sofa. (Courtesy of R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc.)

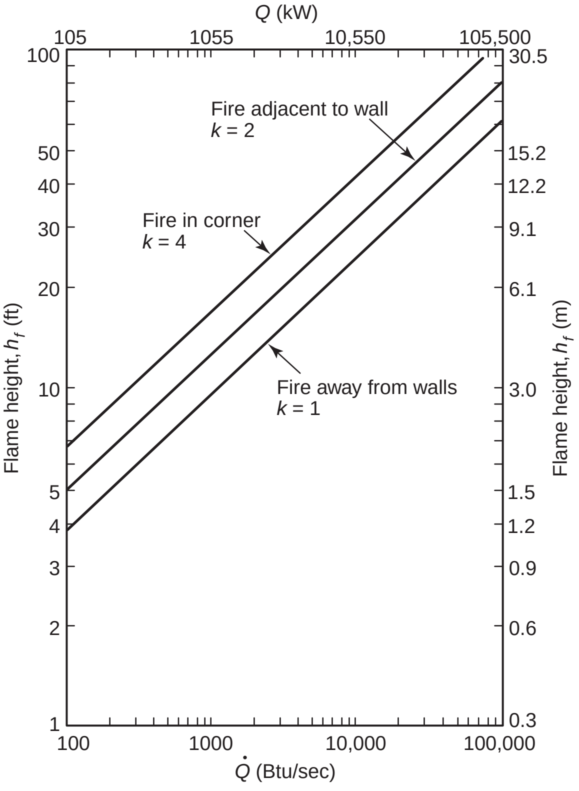


FIGURE B.2.3.2.4.1 Heat Release Rate vs. Flame Height.

B.2.3.2.4 Flame Height.

B.2.3.2.4.1 There are a number of flame height to heat release rate correlations available that can be used to determine an appropriate design fire. The differences in the various correlations arise from the different data sets and curve-fitting methods used by the researchers. One such correlation is shown in Figure B.2.3.2.4.1. It indicates that flame height and fire heat release rate are directly related. [2] The lines in Figure B.2.3.2.4.1 were derived from the following equation:

$$h_f = 0.182(kQ)^{2/5} \quad \text{(for SI units)} \tag{B.7a}$$

or

$$h_f = 0.584(kQ)^{2/5} \quad \text{(for inch-pound units)} \tag{B.7b}$$

where:

h_f = flame height (m or ft)

k = wall effect factor

Q = heat release rate (kW or Btu/sec)

Where there are no nearby walls, use $k = 1$.

Where the fuel package is near a wall, use $k = 2$.

Where the fuel package is in a corner, use $k = 4$.

Other flame height correlations are published in the literature. Each correlation will give the user slightly different results. However, the calculated flame height is an average height for diffusion flames. Typically, diffusion flames exhibit a great deal of variability in flame height due to flow turbulence.

The flame height correlation in B.2.3.2.4.1 is used extensively later in this annex for the design of flame detection systems.

B.2.3.2.4.2 The following example is provided: What is the average flame height of a fire with a heat release rate of 1055 kW (1000 Btu/sec) located in the middle of a compartment?

From Figure B.2.3.2.4.1, find the heat release rate on the abscissa and read estimated flame height from the ordinate, or use equation B.7a or B.7b:

$$h_f = 0.182(kQ)^{2/5} \quad \text{(for SI units) or}$$

$$h_f = 0.584(kQ)^{2/5} \quad \text{(for inch-pound units)}$$

$$h_f = 0.182(1 \times 1055\ \text{kW})^{2/5} \text{ or}$$

$$h_f = 0.584(1 \times 1000\ \text{Btu/sec})^{2/5}$$

$$h_f = 2.8\ \text{m}\ (9.25\ \text{ft})$$

Another correlation has been derived by Drysdale [42]:

$$I = 0.235\, Q_c^{\,2/5} - 1.02D$$

where:

I = the flame height (m)

Q_c = the convective heat release rate (kW)

D = the diameter of the fuel bed

These correlations will not produce the same prediction when used for exactly the same input data. There is inherent uncertainty in the calculated flame height due to the fact that the flaming combustion in the diffusion regime is a dynamic phenomenon. The designer should run multiple predictions with bounding values to address the inherent uncertainty of the correlations.

B.2.3.2.5 Selection of Critical Fire Size. Because all fire control means require a finite operation time, there is a critical difference between the time at which the fire must be detected and the time at which it achieves the magnitude of the design fire. Even though a fire has been detected, this does not mean that it stops growing. Fires typically grow exponentially until they become ventilation controlled, and limited by the availability of fuel, or until some type of fire suppression or extinguishment is commenced. Figure B.2.3.2.5 shows that there can be a significant increase in the heat release rate with only a small change in time due to the exponential growth rate of fire.

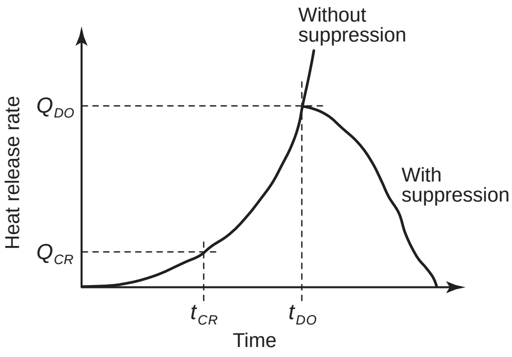


FIGURE B.2.3.2.5 Critical and Design Objective Heat Release Rates vs. Time.

B.2.3.2.5.1 Once the design objectives and the design fire have been established, the designer will need to establish two points on the design fire curve: Q_{DO} and Q_{CR}.

B.2.3.2.5.2 Q_{DO} represents the heat release rate, or product release rate, which produces conditions representative of the design objective. This is the "design fire." However, Q_{DO} does not represent the point in time at which detection is needed. Detection must occur sufficiently early in the development of the fire to allow for any intrinsic reaction time of the detection as well as the operation time for fire suppression or extinguishing systems. There will be delays in both detection of the fire as well as the response of equipment, or persons, to the alarm.

B.2.3.2.5.3 A critical fire size (Q_{CR}) is identified on the curve that accounts for the delays in detection and response. This point represents the maximum permissible fire size at which detection must occur that allows appropriate actions to be taken to keep the fire from exceeding the design objective (Q_{DO}).

B.2.3.2.5.4 Delays are inherent in both the detection system as well as in the response of the equipment or people that need to react once a fire is detected. Delays associated with the detection system include a lag in the transport of combustion products from the fire to the detector and response time lag of the detector, alarm verification time, processing time of the detector, and processing time of the control unit. Delays are also possible with an automatic fire extinguishing system(s) or suppression system(s). Delay can be introduced by alarm verification or crossed zone detection systems, filling and discharge times of preaction systems, delays in agent release required for occupant evacuation (e.g., CO_2 systems), and the time required to achieve extinguishment.

B.2.3.2.5.5 Occupants do not always respond immediately to a fire alarm. The following must be accounted for when evaluating occupant safety issues:

(1) Time expected for occupants to hear the alarm (due to sleeping or manufacturing equipment noise)
(2) Time to decipher the message (e.g., voice alarm system)
(3) Time to decide whether to leave (get dressed, gather belongings, call security)
(4) Time to travel to an exit

B.2.3.2.5.6 Response of the fire department or fire brigade to a fire incident involves several different actions that need to occur sequentially before containment and extinguishment efforts of the fire can even begin. These actions should also be taken into account to properly design detection systems that meet the design objectives. These actions typically include the following:

(1) Detection (detector delays, control unit delays, and so forth)
(2) Notification to the monitoring station (remote, central station, proprietary, and so forth)
(3) Notification of the fire department
(4) Alarm handling time at the fire department
(5) Turnout time at the station
(6) Travel time to the incident
(7) Access to the site
(8) Set-up time on site
(9) Access to building
(10) Access to fire floor
(11) Access to area of involvement
(12) Application of extinguishant on the fire

B.2.3.2.5.7 Unless conditions that limit the availability of combustion air or fuel exist, neither the growth of the fire nor the resultant damage stop until fire suppression begins. The time needed to execute each step of the fire response sequence of actions must be quantified and documented. When designing a detection system, the sum of the time needed for each step in the response sequence (t_{delay}) must be subtracted from the time at which the fire attains the design objective (t_{DO}) in order to determine the latest time and fire size (Q_{CR}) in the fire development at which detection can occur and still achieve the system design objective.

B.2.3.2.5.8 The fire scenarios and design fires selected should include analysis of best and worst-case conditions and their likelihood of occurring. It is important to look at different conditions and situations and their effects on response.

B.2.3.2.6 Data Sources.

B.2.3.2.6.1 To produce a design fire curve, information is needed regarding the burning characteristics of the object(s) involved. Data can be obtained from either technical literature or by conducting small or large scale calorimeter tests.

B.2.3.2.6.2 Some information is contained in Figure B.2.3.2.6.2 and Table B.2.3.2.6.2(a) through Table B.2.3.2.6.2(e).

TABLE B.2.3.2.6.2(a) *Maximum Heat Release Rates — Warehouse Materials*

Warehouse Materials	*Growth Time (t_g) (sec)*	*Heat Release Density (q)*		*Classification*
		kW/m²	*Btu/sec·ft²*	
1. Wood pallets, stack, 0.46 m (1½ ft) high (6%–12% moisture)	150–310	1,248	110	fast–medium
2. Wood pallets, stack, 1.52 m (5 ft) high (6%–12% moisture)	90–190	3,745	330	fast
3. Wood pallets, stack, 3.05 m (10 ft) high (6%–12% moisture)	80–110	6,810	600	fast
4. Wood pallets, stack, 4.88 m (16 ft) high (6%–12% moisture)	75–105	10,214	900	fast
5. Mail bags, filled, stored 1.52 m (5 ft) high	190	397	35	medium
6. Cartons, compartmented, stacked 4.57 m (15 ft) high	60	2,270	200	fast
7. Paper, vertical rolls, stacked 6.10 m (20 ft) high	15–28	—	—	*
8. Cotton (also PE, PE/cot, acrylic/nylon/PE), garments in 3.66 m (12 ft) high racks	20–42	—	—	*
9. Cartons on pallets, rack storage, 4.57 m–9.14 m (15 ft–30 ft) high	40–280	—	—	fast–medium
10. Paper products, densely packed in cartons, rack storage, 6.10 m (20 ft) high	470	—	—	slow
11. PE letter trays, filled, stacked 1.52 m (5 ft) high on cart	190	8,512	750	medium
12. PE trash barrels in cartons, stacked 4.57 m (15 ft) high	55	2,837	250	fast
13. FRP shower stalls in cartons, stacked 4.57 m (15 ft) high	85	1,248	110	fast
14. PE bottles, packed in item 6	85	6,242	550	fast
15. PE bottles in cartons, stacked 4.57 m (15 ft) high	75	1,929	170	fast
16. PE pallets, stacked 0.91 m (3 ft) high	130	—	—	fast
17. PE pallets, stacked 1.83 m–2.44 m (6 ft–8 ft) high	30–55	—	—	fast
18. PU mattress, single, horizontal	110	—	—	fast
19. PE insulation board, rigid foam, stacked 4.57 m (15 ft) high	8	1,929	170	*
20. PS jars, packed in item 6	55	13,619	1,200	fast
21. PS tubs nested in cartons, stacked 4.27 m (14 ft) high	105	5,107	450	fast
22. PS toy parts in cartons, stacked 4.57 m (15 ft) high	110	2,042	180	fast
23. PS insulation board, rigid, stacked 4.27 m (14 ft) high	7	3,291	290	*
24. PVC bottles, packed in item 6	9	3,405	300	*
25. PP tubs, packed in item 6	10	4,426	390	*
26. PP and PE film in rolls, stacked 4.27 m (14 ft) high	40	3,972	350	*
27. Distilled spirits in barrels, stacked 6.10 m (20 ft) high	23–40	—	—	*
28. Methyl alcohol	—	738	65	—
29. Gasoline	—	2,270	200	—

TABLE B.2.3.2.6.2(a) *Continued*

Warehouse Materials	Growth Time (t_g) (sec)	Heat Release Density (q) kW/m²	Heat Release Density (q) Btu/sec·ft²	Classification
30. Kerosene	—	2,270	200	—
31. Diesel oil	—	2,043	180	—

PE: Polyethylene. PS: Polystyrene. PVC: Polyvinyl chloride. PP: Polypropylene. PU: Polyurethane. FRP: Fiberglass-reinforced polyester.

Note: The heat release rates per unit floor area are for fully involved combustibles, assuming 100 percent combustion efficiency. The growth times shown are those required to exceed 1000 Btu/sec heat release rate for developing fires, assuming 100 percent combustion efficiency.

*Fire growth rate exceeds design data.

TABLE B.2.3.2.6.2(b) *Maximum Heat Release Rates from Fire Detection Institute Analysis*

Materials	Approximate Values kW	Approximate Values Btu/sec
Medium wastebasket with milk cartons	105	100
Large barrel with milk cartons	148	140
Upholstered chair with polyurethane foam	369	350
Latex foam mattress (heat at room door)	1265	1200
Furnished living room (heat at open door)	4217–8435	4000–8000

TABLE B.2.3.2.6.2(c) *Unit Heat Release Rates for Fuels Burning in the Open*

Commodity	Heat Release Rate kW	Heat Release Rate Btu/sec
Flammable liquid pool	3291/m²	290/ft² of surface
Flammable liquid spray	557/Lpm	2000/gpm of flow
Pallet stack	3459/m	1000/ft of height
Wood or PMMA* (vertical)		
0.6 m (2 ft) height	104/m	30/ft of width
1.8 m (6 ft) height	242/m	70/ft of width
2.4 m (8 ft) height	623/m	180/ft of width
3.7 m (12 ft) height	1038/m	300/ft of width
Wood or PMMA*		
Top of horizontal surface	715/m²	63/ft² of surface
Solid polystyrene (vertical)		
0.6 m (2 ft) height	218/m	63/ft of width
1.8 m (6 ft) height	450/m	130/ft of width
2.4 m (8 ft) height	1384/m	400/ft of width
3.7 m (12 ft) height	2352/m	680/ft of width
Solid polystyrene (horizontal)	1362/m²	120/ft² of surface
Solid polypropylene (vertical)		
0.6 m (2 ft) height	218/m	63/ft of width
1.8 m (6 ft) height	346/m	100/ft of width
2.4 m (8 ft) height	969/m	280/ft of width
3.7 m (12 ft) height	1626/m	470/ft of width
Solid polypropylene (horizontal)	795/m²	70/ft² of surface

*Polymethyl methacrylate (Plexiglas™, Lucite™, Acrylic).

[**92B:** Table B.1, 1995.]

TABLE B.2.3.2.6.2(d) *Characteristics of Ignition Sources*

	Typical Heat Output		*Burn Time[a] (sec)*	*Maximum Flame Height*		*Flame Width*		*Maximum Heat Flux*	
	W	*Btu/sec*		*mm*	*in.*	*mm*	*in.*	*kW/m²*	*Btu/sec · ft²*
Cigarette 1.1 g (not puffed, laid on solid surface)									
Bone dry	5	0.0047	1200	—	—	—	—	42	3.7
Conditioned to 50% relative humidity	5	0.0047	1200	—	—	—	—	35	3.1
Methenamine pill, 0.15 g (0.0053 oz)	45	0.043	90	—	—	—	—	4	0.35
Match, wooden, laid on solid surface	80	0.076	20–30	30	1.18	14	0.092	18–20	1.59–1.76
Wood cribs, BS 5852 Part 2									
No. 4 crib, 8.5 g (0.3 oz)	1,000	0.95	190	—	—	—	—	15[d]	1.32
No. 5 crib, 17 g (0.6 oz)	1,900	1.80	200	—	—	—	—	17[d]	1.50
No. 6 crib, 60 g (2.1 oz)	2,600	2.46	190	—	—	—	—	20[d]	1.76
No. 7 crib, 126 g (4.4 oz)	6,400	6.07	350	—	—	—	—	25[d]	2.20
Crumpled brown lunch bag, 6 g (0.21 oz)	1,200	1.14	80	—	—	—	—	—	—
Crumpled wax paper, 4.5 g (0.16 oz) (tight)	1,800	1.71	25	—	—	—	—	—	—
Crumpled wax paper, 4.5 g (0.16 oz) (loose)	5,300	5.03	20	—	—	—	—	—	—
Folded double-sheet newspaper, 22 g (0.78 oz) (bottom ignition)	4,000	3.79	100	—	—	—	—	—	—
Crumpled double-sheet newspaper, 22 g (0.78 oz) (top ignition)	7,400	7.02	40	—	—	—	—	—	—
Crumpled double-sheet newspaper, 22 g (0.78 oz) (bottom ignition)	17,000	16.12	20	—	—	—	—	—	—
Polyethylene wastebasket, 285 g (10.0 oz), filled with 12 milk cartons [390 g (13.8 oz)]	50,000	47.42	200[b]	550	21.7	200	7.9	35[c]	3.08
Plastic trash bags, filled with cellulosic trash [1.2–14 kg (42.3–493 oz)][e]	120,000–350,000	113.81–331.96	200[b]	—	—	—	—	—	—

Note: Based on Table B.5.3(b) of NFPA 92, 2012 edition.

[a]Time duration of significant flaming.

[b]Total burn time in excess of 1800 seconds.

[c]As measured on simulation burner.

[d]Measured from 25 mm away.

[e]Results vary greatly with packing density.

TABLE B.2.3.2.6.2(e) *Furniture Heat Release Rates [3, 14, 16]*

Test No.	*Item/Description/Mass*	*Growth Time (t_g) (sec)*	*Classification*	*Fuel Fire Intensity Coefficient (α)*		*Virtual Time (t_v) (sec)*	*Maximum Heat Release Rates*	
				kW/sec²	*Btu/sec³*		*kW*	*Btu/sec*
15	Metal wardrobe, 41.4 kg (91.3 lb) (total)	50	fast	0.4220	0.4002	10	750	711
18	Chair F33 (trial love seat), 29.2 kg (64.4 lb)	400	slow	0.0066	0.0063	140	950	901
19	Chair F21, 28.15 kg (62.01 lb) (initial)	175	medium	0.0344	0.0326	110	350	332

TABLE B.2.3.2.6.2(e) *Furniture Heat Release Rates [3, 14, 16]*

Test No.	Item/Description/Mass	Growth Time (t_g) (sec)	Classification	Fuel Fire Intensity Coefficient (α)		Virtual Time (t_v) (sec)	Maximum Heat Release Rates	
				kW/sec²	Btu/sec³		kW	Btu/sec
19	Chair F21, 28.15 kg (62.01 lb) (later)	50	fast	0.4220	0.4002	190	2000	1897
21	Metal wardrobe, 40.8 kg (90.0 lb) (total) (initial)	250	medium	0.0169	0.0160	10	250	237
21	Metal wardrobe, 40.8 kg (90.0 lb) (total) (average)	120	fast	0.0733	0.0695	60	250	237
21	Metal wardrobe, 40.8 kg (90.0 lb) (total) (later)	100	fast	0.1055	0.1001	30	140	133
22	Chair F24, 28.3 kg (62.4 lb)	350	medium	0.0086	0.0082	400	700	664
23	Chair F23, 31.2 kg (68.8 lb)	400	slow	0.0066	0.0063	100	700	664
24	Chair F22, 31.2 kg (68.8 lb)	2000	slow	0.0003	0.0003	150	300	285
25	Chair F26, 19.2 kg (42.3 lb)	200	medium	0.0264	0.0250	90	800	759
26	Chair F27, 29.0 kg (63.9 lb)	200	medium	0.0264	0.0250	360	900	854
27	Chair F29, 14.0 kg (30.9 lb)	100	fast	0.1055	0.1001	70	1850	1755
28	Chair F28, 29.2 kg (64.4 lb)	425	slow	0.0058	0.0055	90	700	664
29	Chair F25, 27.8 kg (61.3 lb) (later)	60	fast	0.2931	0.2780	175	700	664
29	Chair F25, 27.8 kg (61.3 lb) (initial)	100	fast	0.1055	0.1001	100	2000	1897
30	Chair F30, 25.2 kg (55.6 lb)	60	fast	0.2931	0.2780	70	950	901
31	Chair F31 (love seat), 39.6 kg (87.3 lb)	60	fast	0.2931	0.2780	145	2600	2466
37	Chair F31 (love seat), 40.4 kg (89.1 lb)	80	fast	0.1648	0.1563	100	2750	2608
38	Chair F32 (sofa), 51.5 kg (113.5 lb)	100	fast	0.1055	0.1001	50	3000	2845
39	½ in. plywood wardrobe with fabrics, 68.5 kg (151.0 lb)	35	*	0.8612	0.8168	20	3250	3083
40	½ in. plywood wardrobe with fabrics, 68.32 kg (150.6 lb)	35	*	0.8612	0.8168	40	3500	3320
41	⅛ in. plywood wardrobe with fabrics, 36.0 kg (79.4 lb)	40	*	0.6594	0.6254	40	6000	5691
42	⅛ in. plywood wardrobe with fire-retardant interior finish (initial growth)	70	fast	0.2153	0.2042	50	2000	1897
42	⅛ in. plywood wardrobe with fire-retardant interior finish (later growth)	30	*	1.1722	1.1118	100	5000	4742
43	Repeat of ½ in. plywood wardrobe, 67.62 kg (149.08 lb)	30	*	1.1722	1.1118	50	3000	2845
44	⅛ in. plywood wardrobe with fire-retardant latex paint, 37.26 kg (82.14 lb)	90	fast	0.1302	0.1235	30	2900	2751
45	Chair F21, 28.34 kg (62.48 lb)	100	*	0.1055	0.1001	120	2100	1992
46	Chair F21, 28.34 kg (62.48 lb)	45	*	0.5210	0.4941	130	2600	2466
47	Chair, adj. back metal frame, foam cushions, 20.82 kg (45.90 lb)	170	medium	0.0365	0.0346	30	250	237
48	Easy chair CO7, 11.52 kg (25.40 lb)	175	medium	0.0344	0.0326	90	950	901
49	Easy chair F34, 15.68 kg (34.57 lb)	200	medium	0.0264	0.0250	50	200	190
50	Chair, metal frame, minimum cushion, 16.52 kg (36.42 lb)	200	medium	0.0264	0.0250	120	3000	2845
51	Chair, molded fiberglass, no cushion, 5.28 kg (11.64 lb)	120	fast	0.0733	0.0695	20	35	33
52	Molded plastic patient chair, 11.26 kg (24.82 lb)	275	medium	0.0140	0.0133	2090	700	664
53	Chair, metal frame, padded seat and back, 15.54 kg (34.26 lb)	350	medium	0.0086	0.0082	50	280	266

(*continues*)

TABLE B.2.3.2.6.2(e) *Furniture Heat Release Rates [3, 14, 16]*

Test No.	Item/Description/Mass	Growth Time (t_g) (sec)	Classification	Fuel Fire Intensity Coefficient (α) kW/sec²	Fuel Fire Intensity Coefficient (α) Btu/sec³	Virtual Time (t_v) (sec)	Maximum Heat Release Rates kW	Maximum Heat Release Rates Btu/sec
54	Love seat, metal frame, foam cushions, 27.26 kg (60.10 lb)	500	slow	0.0042	0.0040	210	300	285
56	Chair, wood frame, latex foam cushions, 11.2 kg (24.69 lb)	500	slow	0.0042	0.0040	50	85	81
57	Love seat, wood frame, foam cushions, 54.6 kg (120.37 lb)	350	medium	0.0086	0.0082	500	1000	949
61	Wardrobe, ¾ in. particleboard, 120.33 kg (265.28 lb)	150	medium	0.0469	0.0445	0	1200	1138
62	Bookcase, plywood with aluminum frame, 30.39 kg (67.00 lb)	65	fast	0.2497	0.2368	40	25	24
64	Easy chair, molded flexible urethane frame, 15.98 kg (35.23 lb)	1000	slow	0.0011	0.0010	750	450	427
66	Easy chair, 23.02 kg (50.75 lb)	76	fast	0.1827	0.1733	3700	600	569
67	Mattress and box spring, 62.36 kg (137.48 lb) (later)	350	medium	0.0086	0.0082	400	500	474
67	Mattress and box spring, 62.36 kg (137.48 lb) (initial)	1100	slow	0.0009	0.0009	90	400	379

Note: For tests 19, 21, 29, 42, and 67, different power law curves were used to model the initial and the latter realms of burning. In examples such as these, engineers should choose the fire growth parameter that best describes the realm of burning to which the detection system is being designed to respond.

*Fire growth exceeds design data.

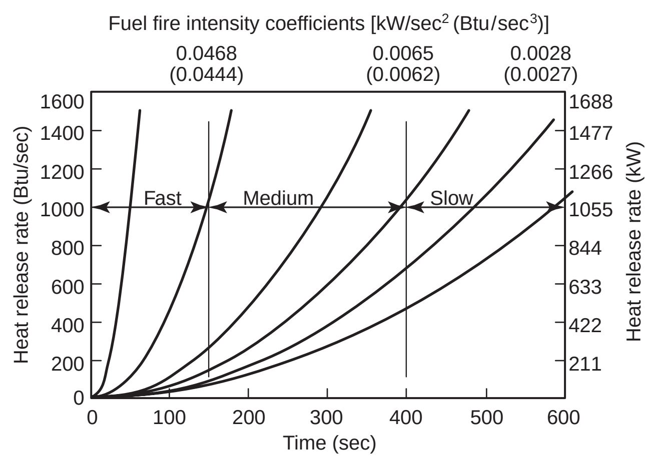


FIGURE B.2.3.2.6.2 *Power Law Heat Release Rates.*

B.2.3.2.6.3 Graphs of heat release data from the 40 furniture calorimeter tests can be found in *Investigation of a New Sprinkler Sensitivity Approval Test: The Plunge Test* [8]. Best fit power law fire growth curves have been superimposed on the graphs. Data from these curves can be used with this guide to design or analyze fire detection systems that are intended to respond to similar items burning under a flat ceiling. Table B.2.3.2.6.2(e) is a summary of the data.

Additional sources of information for developing design fire curves include the following:

1. Heat release rate data determined from experimental work (i.e., using a furniture calorimeter)
2. Full-scale tests of actual contents
3. Generic curves
4. Fire growth model that automatically generates heat release rate data

B.2.3.2.6.4 In addition to heat release rate data, the original NIST reports [8] contain data on particulate conversion and radiation from the test specimens. These data can be used to determine the threshold fire size (heat release rate) at which tenability becomes endangered or the point at which additional fuel packages might become involved in the fire.

B.2.3.2.6.5 The *NFPA Fire Protection Handbook* [22], SFPE *Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering*, and *Upholstered Furniture Heat Release Rates Measured with a Furniture Calorimeter* [3] contain further information on heat release rates and fire growth rates.

B.2.3.2.6.6 Technical literature searches can be performed using a number of resources including FIREDOC, a document base of fire literature that is maintained by NIST.

B.2.3.2.6.7 A series of design fire curves are included as part of the "Fastlite" computer program available from NIST.

B.2.3.2.6.8 In addition, there are various organizations conducting tests and posting results of various test data on their websites, including the UK's British Research Establishment (BRE), Worcester Polytechnic Institute, and NIST's FASTData Fire Test Database.

B.2.3.3 Develop and Evaluate Candidate Fire Detection Systems.

B.2.3.3.1 Once the design objectives, the potential fire scenarios, and the room characteristics are well understood, the designer can select an appropriate detection strategy to detect the fire before its critical fire size (Q_{CR}) is reached. Important factors to consider include the type of detector, its sensitivity to expected fire signatures, its alarm threshold level and required duration at that threshold, expected installed location (e.g., distance from fire, or below ceiling), and freedom from nuisance response to expected ambient conditions. *(See Chapter 17 and Annex A.)*

Candidate designs usually differ from the design outlined in the prescriptive code or standard. Usually a designer compares the response of the detection system designed using a performance-based approach to the response of a system designed following prescriptive requirements. A designer also evaluates candidate designs against acceptance criteria previously established by a consensus of the relevant stakeholders.

In addition to the operational and response characteristics, stakeholders often set limits on the amount of disruption, visibility, or other ways the fire alarm system will affect the intended use of the protected space. For example, in historic structures, the intended use must preserve the history and heritage by preserving the appearance of the structure. In such cases, the visibility of the fire protection system must be limited; the less visible the fire alarm system, the better.

B.2.3.3.2 Reliability of the detection system and individual components should be computed and included in the selection and evaluation of the candidate fire detection system. A performance-based alternative design cannot be deemed performance-equivalent unless the alternative design provides comparable reliability to the prescriptive design it is intended to replace.

Reliability studies can be part of RAMS studies (i.e., reliability, availability, maintainability, and safety). RAMS is a tool that is used to manage dependability in "mission critical" systems.

These are all factors that should be considered to ensure the system will continue to operate as designed, as well as ensure ease of and safety during maintenance.

The basis of RAMS is a systematic process, based on the system life cycle and tasks within it, that does the following:

(1) Assists the client to specify system requirements, in terms of dependability, from a general mission statement to availability targets for systems and subsystems, components (including software)
(2) Assesses proposed designs, using formal RAMS techniques, to see how targets are met and where objectives are not achieved
(3) Provides a means to make recommendations to designers and a system of hazard logging, to record and eventually "check off" identified necessary actions

The technical concepts of availability and reliability are based on a knowledge of and means to assess the following:

(1) All possible system failure modes in the specified application environment
(2) The probability (or rate) of occurrence of a system failure mode
(3) The cause and effect of each failure mode on the functionality of the system
(4) Efficient failure detection and location
(5) The efficient restorability of the failed system
(6) Economic maintenance over the required life cycle of the system
(7) Human factors issues regarding safety during inspection, testing, and maintenance

Fire alarm systems typically have high levels of supervision and fault-tolerance. Consequently, designers usually use mission effectiveness to evaluate fire alarm systems rather than strict reliability. The equipment, the system design, the installation, and the maintenance all contribute to the inherent mission effectiveness of a fire alarm system.

B.2.3.3.3 Various methods are available to evaluate whether a candidate design will achieve the previously established performance criteria. Some methods are presented in Section B.3.

Section B.6 discusses additional modeling methods beyond those detailed within Annex B.

B.2.3.3.4 Candidate designs developed in the context of comparison evaluation might require comparing the response of the detection system designed using a performance-based approach to that of a prescriptive-based design. It could also be evaluated against acceptance criteria previously established with applicable stakeholders.

In addition to the preceding operational and response characteristics that need to be considered, there might be limitations set on the amount of disruption, visibility, or the impact the system will have on the space in which it is to be installed. This is particularly important in heritage-type buildings where one would want these to be as unobtrusive as possible, yet not require ripping down ornate ceilings to install.

B.2.3.4 Select and Document Final Design.

B.2.3.4.1 The last step in the process is the preparation of design documentation and equipment and installation specifications.

The designer must be sure to properly document each design decision. Proper documentation establishes the reasoning behind the design decisions, minimizing the opportunity for error. Proper documentation also ensures that all involved parties understand the steps needed to implement the design. Such steps include the selection of equipment, the methods of installation, and the maintenance program.

B.2.3.4.2 These documents should encompass the following information [25]:

(1) Participants in the process — persons involved, their qualifications, function, responsibility, interest, and contributions.
(2) Scope of work — purpose of conducting the analysis or design, part of the building evaluated, assumptions, and so forth.
(3) Design approach — approach taken, where and why assumptions were made, and engineering tools and methodologies applied.
(4) Project information — hazards, risks, construction type, materials, building use, layout, existing systems, occupant characteristics, and so forth.
(5) Goals and objectives — agreed upon goals and objectives, how they were developed, who agreed to them and when.
(6) Performance criteria — clearly identify performance criteria and related objective(s), including any safety, reliability, or uncertainty factors applied, and support for these factors where necessary.
(7) Fire scenarios and design fires — description of fire scenarios used, bases for selecting and rejecting fire scenarios, assumptions, and restrictions.
(8) Design alternative(s) — describe design alternative(s) chosen, basis for selecting and rejecting design alternative(s), heat release rate, assumptions, and limitations. [This step should include the specific design objective (Q_{DO}) and the critical heat release rate (Q_{CR}) used, comparison of results with the performance criteria and design objectives, and a discussion of the sensitivity of the selected design alternative to changes in the building use, contents, fire characteristics, occupants, and so forth.]
(9) Engineering tools and methods used — description of engineering tools and methods used in the analysis or design, including appropriate references (literature, date, software version, and so forth), assumptions, limitations, engineering judgments, input data, validation data or procedures, and sensitivity analyses.
(10) Drawings and specifications — detailed design and installation drawings and specification.
(11) Test, inspection, and maintenance requirements *(see Chapter 14)*.
(12) Fire safety management concerns — allowed contents and materials in the space in order for the design to function properly, training, education, and so forth.
(13) References — software documentation, technical literature, reports, technical data sheets, fire test results, and so forth.
(14) Critical design assumptions — should include all assumptions that need to be maintained throughout the life cycle of the building so that the design functions as intended. Critical design features — should include the design features and parameters that need to be maintained throughout the life of the building so that the design functions as intended.
(15) Operations and maintenance manual — an operation and maintenance manual should be developed that clearly states the requirements for ensuring that the components of the performance-based design are correctly in place and functioning as designed. All subsystems should be identified, as well as their operation and interaction with the fire detection system. It should also include maintenance and testing frequencies, methods, and forms. The importance of testing interconnected systems should be detailed (i.e., elevator recall, suppression systems, HVAC shutdown, and so on).
(16) Inspection, testing, maintenance, and commissioning — requirements for commissioning of systems and any special procedures or test methods — should be documented as well as inspection, testing, and maintenance procedures to address the design as well as any pertinent features or systems that need to be assessed.

B.2.3.5 Management. It is important to ensure that the systems are designed, installed, commissioned, maintained, and tested on regular intervals as indicated in Chapter 14. In addition, the person conducting the testing and inspections should be aware of the background of the design and the need to evaluate not only the detector and whether it operates but also be aware of changing conditions including the following:

(1) Changes in hazard being protected
(2) Location of the hazard changes
(3) Other hazards introduced into the area
(4) Ambient environment
(5) Invalidity of any of the design assumptions

B.3 Evaluation of Heat Detection System Performance

With the issuance of the 2002 edition of the Code, the performance-based design process for fire alarm systems was formally recognized as an alternative to designs developed using the prescriptive rules of the Code. Calculations, such as those outlined in Section B.3, represent an integral part of performance-based design. However, performance-based design is a process, and the computational tools outlined here are intended to support the evaluation of candidate fire detection system designs.

Users should review Section 17.3 carefully before undertaking a design based upon these computational methods. When undertaking a performance-based design, designers assume responsibility for the design assumptions offered to the other stakeholders as well as an assessment of the implications of adopting such assumptions or criteria. This approach puts a greater burden of responsibility on the designers than when they are implementing the requirements of a prescriptive code.

B.3.1 General. Section B.3 provides a method for determining the application spacing for both fixed-temperature heat detectors (including sprinklers) and rate-of-rise heat detectors. This method is valid only for use when detectors are to be placed on a large, flat ceiling. It predicts detector response to a geometrically growing flaming fire at a specific fire size. This method takes into account the effects of ceiling height, radial distance between the detector and the fire, threshold fire size [critical heat release rate (Q_{CR})], rate of fire development, and detector response time index. For fixed-temperature detectors, the ambient temperature and the temperature rating of the detector are also considered. This method also allows for the adjustment of the application spacing for fixed-temperature heat detectors to account for variations in ambient temperature (T_a) from standard test conditions.

B.3.1.1 This method can also be used to estimate the fire size at which detection will occur, given an existing array of listed heat detectors installed at a known spacing, ceiling height, and ambient conditions.

To analyze the response of an existing fire detection system, the designer must also quantify the fire growth rate and detector temperature rating.

B.3.1.2 The effect of rate of fire growth and fire size of a flaming fire, as well as the effect of ceiling height on the spacing and response of smoke detectors, can also be determined using this method.

A designer can predict the response of a smoke detector by modeling the smoke detector as a very sensitive heat detector. Engineers have used this model approach for many years. The model relies on the premise that the ceiling jet, formed by the buoyant plume as it collides with the ceiling, provides the force to move smoke horizontally beneath the ceiling from the fire to the detector. Consequently, the smoke and the heat are conveyed together. This model supports the notion that a correlation exists between temperature rise and smoke density as the fire plume or ceiling jet impinge on a smoke detector. More work has been done in recent years in a series of U.S. Navy tests to evaluate temperature rise as an indicator of smoke detector response. For flaming fires, Geiman [2003] graphically presents the percentage of spot-type smoke detectors that alarmed at a temperature rise less than or equal to two thresholds, 4°C (7°F) and 13°C (23°F). Geiman's review of the Navy tests considered two test spaces — one 6.05 m × 3.61 m (19.8 ft × 11.8 ft) in area and the other 5.94 m × 8.08 m (19.5 ft × 26.5 ft) in area, and both 3.05 m (10 ft) in height. The flaming fire source used four different wood cribs, with heat release rates of approximately 12, 25, 50, and 125 kW. The results distinguish between ionization and photoelectric detectors as shown in Exhibit B.1. Geiman explains the data in the graph as follows:

> As with the evaluation of the optical density alarm threshold, the typical response of smoke detectors in Figure 7 [Exhibit B.1] is assumed to be at 50 percent (i.e., half of alarms occur at greater temperature rises and half occur at lesser temperature rises). A temperature rise threshold of 4°C therefore provides a more conservative estimate of the ionization detector response to flaming fires than the typical detector with 88 percent of the alarms occurring at or below threshold. However, this same threshold does not capture the typical detector response for flaming fires being detected by photoelectric detectors (only 36 percent of detectors alarmed below the threshold). At an alarm threshold of 13°C, the results are slightly different. As expected based on the performance of the 4°C threshold, an alarm threshold of 13°C provides a significantly conservative estimate of the detector response (i.e., 98 percent of alarms occurred at or below this threshold) as compared to the typical response. The 13°C threshold does capture the typical response of photoelectric detectors to flaming fires in contrast to the 4°C threshold.

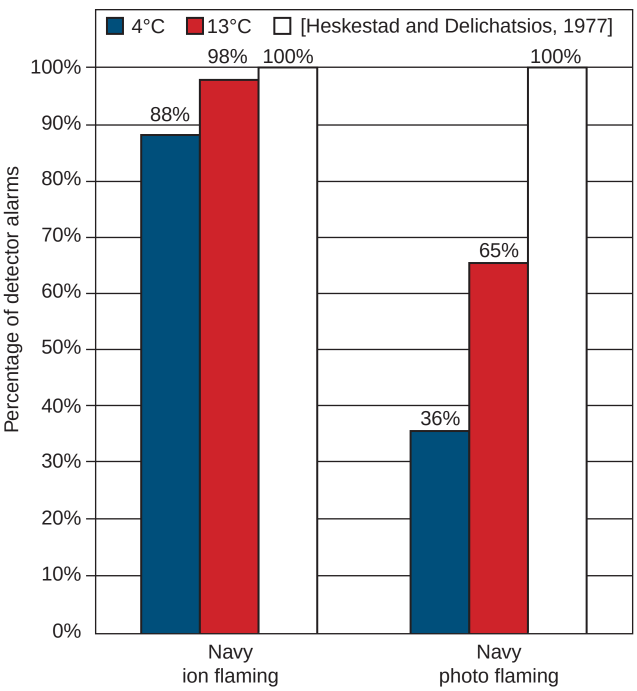


EXHIBIT B.1

Percentage of Detector Alarms, Temperature Rise Data for Ionization, and Photoelectric Detectors as Detailed by Geiman [2003]. (Source: "Evaluation of Smoke Detector Response Estimation Methods," Master of Science thesis, University of Maryland, College Park, MD, December 2003. Available from http://hdl.handle.net/1903/113 [Accessed 12 June 2012])

B.3.1.3 The methodology contained herein uses theories of fire development, fire plume dynamics, and detector performance. These are considered the major factors influencing detector response. This methodology does not address several lesser phenomena that, in general, are considered unlikely to have a significant influence. A discussion of ceiling drag, heat loss to the ceiling, radiation to the detector from a fire, re-radiation of heat from a detector to its surroundings, and the heat of fusion of eutectic materials in fusible elements of heat detectors and their possible limitations on the design method are provided in References 4, 11, 16, and 18 in G.1.2.13.

B.3.1.4 The methodology in Section B.3 does not address the effects of ceiling projections, such as beams and joists, on detector response. While it has been shown that these components of a ceiling have a significant effect on the response of heat detectors, research has not yet resulted in a simplified method for quantifying this effect. The prescriptive adjustments to detector spacing in Chapter 17 should be applied to application spacings derived from this methodology. Computational fluid dynamics (CFD) programs are available and can assist in analyzing the fire and development and spread of heat and smoke, as well as the potential effects of varying ceiling configurations and characteristics including sloped and beamed ceilings.

Ceiling slope and surface obstructions affect the flow of a ceiling jet and hence cause changes in the computed detector response. One method for adjusting spacings to deal with sloped or obstructed ceilings is to apply the spacing adjustments outlined in Chapter 17.

Plume and ceiling jet dynamics can be used to qualitatively estimate the effect of sloped and obstructed ceilings on the response of heat detectors. However, no algebraic computational method has become sufficiently well accepted in the fire protection engineering community to warrant inclusion in Annex B. The use of the Fire Dynamics Simulator Computational Fluid Dynamics (CFD) program developed and supported by the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) has the capability to model buoyant plume and ceiling jet flows across sloped ceilings and can be used for estimated detector response.

B.3.2 Considerations Regarding Input Data.

B.3.2.1 Required Data. The following data are necessary in order to use the methods in this annex for either design or analysis.

The computational method shown in Annex B can be implemented with either SI or U.S. customary units of measure. Most engineers use SI units for the calculations. All parameters must be expressed in the same measurement environment, SI or U.S. customary.

The following are the units for the variables listed in B.3.2.1:

T = °C or °F

H = m or ft

RTI = $m^{1/2}sec^{1/2}$ or $ft^{1/2}sec^{1/2}$

α = kW/sec^2 or Btu/sec^3

t_g = sec

S = m or ft

Q = kW or Btu/sec

B.3.2.1.1 Design. Data required to determine design include the following:

(1) Ceiling height or clearance above fuel (H)
(2) Threshold fire size at which response must occur (Q_d) or the time to detector response (t_d)
(3) Response time index (RTI) for the detector (heat detectors only) or its listed spacing
(4) Ambient temperature (T_a)

(5) Detector operating temperature (T_s) (heat detectors only)
(6) Rate of temperature change set point for rate-of-rise heat detectors (T_s/min)
(7) Fuel fire intensity coefficient (α) or the fire growth time (t_g)

B.3.2.1.2 Analysis. Data required to determine analysis include the following:

(1) Ceiling height or clearance above fuel (H)
(2) Response time index (RTI) for the detector (heat detectors only) or its listed spacing
(3) Actual installed spacing (S) of the existing detectors
(4) Ambient temperature (T_a)
(5) Detector operating temperature (T_s) (heat detectors only)
(6) Rate of temperature change set point for rate-of-rise heat detectors (T_s/min)
(7) Fuel fire intensity coefficient (α) or the fire growth time (t_g)

B.3.2.2 Ambient Temperature Considerations.

B.3.2.2.1 The maximum ambient temperature expected to occur at the ceiling will directly affect the choice of temperature rating for a fixed-temperature heat detector application. However, the minimum ambient temperature likely to be present at the ceiling is also very important. When ambient temperature at the ceiling decreases, more heat from a fire is needed to bring the air surrounding the detector's sensing element up to its rated (operating) temperature. This results in slower response when the ambient temperature is lower. In the case of a fire that is growing over time, lower ambient temperatures result in a larger fire size at the time of detection.

B.3.2.2.2 Therefore, selection of the minimum ambient temperature has a significant effect on the calculations. The designer should decide what temperature to use for these calculations and document why that temperature was chosen. Because the response time of a given detector to a given fire is dependent only on the detector's time constant and the temperature difference between ambient and the detector rating, the use of the lowest anticipated ambient temperature for the space results in the most conservative design. For unheated spaces, a review of historical weather data would be appropriate. However, such data might show extremely low temperatures that occur relatively infrequently, such as every 100 years. Depending on actual design considerations, it might be more appropriate to use an average minimum ambient temperature. In any case, a sensitivity analysis should be performed to determine the effect of changing the ambient temperature on the design results.

In reference to B.3.2.2.2, the National Oceanic and Atmospheric Administration (NOAA) is a frequently used source for weather data in the United States (*www.noaa.gov*).

B.3.2.2.3 In a room or work area that has central heating, the minimum ambient temperature would usually be about 20°C (68°F). On the other hand, certain warehouse occupancies might be heated only enough to prevent water pipes from freezing and, in this case, the minimum ambient temperature can be considered to be 2°C (35°F), even though, during many months of the year, the actual ambient temperature can be much higher.

B.3.2.3 Ceiling Height Considerations.

B.3.2.3.1 A detector ordinarily operates sooner if it is nearer to the fire. Where ceiling heights exceed 4.9 m (16 ft), ceiling height is the dominant factor in the detection system response.

When the calculations show that the fire size at the time of response exceeds the design objective (design fire), the designer can try reducing the spacing of detectors. This action has the effect of moving detectors closer to the fire plume centerline. In some circumstances, particularly with high ceilings and small design fires, the designer must understand that further reductions in the detector spacing cannot improve the system response. When the detector spacing is reduced to less than 0.4 the ceiling height, a detector is in the plume regardless of the fire location. Because the temperature and velocity gradients across the plume are not large, further spacing reductions likely will not enhance system performance. The design goals for the hazard area can conceivably require a faster response than that attainable from heat detectors. Under this set of circumstances, the designer will have little alternative but to consider other types of detection.

B.3.2.3.2 As flaming combustion commences, a buoyant plume forms. The plume is comprised of the heated gases and smoke rising from the fire. The plume assumes the general shape of an inverted cone. The smoke concentration and temperature within the cone varies inversely as a variable exponential function of the distance from the source. This effect is very significant in the early stages of a fire, because the angle of the cone is wide. As a fire intensifies, the angle of the cone narrows and the significance of the effect of height is lessened.

B.3.2.3.3 As the ceiling height increases, a larger-size fire is necessary to actuate the same detector in the same length of time. In view of this, it is very important that the designer consider the size of the fire and rate of heat release that might develop before detection is ultimately obtained.

B.3.2.3.4 The procedures presented in this section are based on analysis of data for ceiling heights up to 9.1 m (30 ft). No data were analyzed for ceiling heights greater than 9.1 m (30 ft). In spaces where the ceiling heights exceed this limit, this section offers no guidance. [40]

B.3.2.3.5 The relationships presented here are based on the difference between the ceiling height and the height of the fuel item involved in the fire. It is recommended that the designer assume the fire is at floor level and use the actual distance from floor to ceiling for the calculations. This will yield a design that is conservative, and actual detector response can be expected to exceed the needed speed of response in those cases where the fire begins above floor level.

When analyzing an existing detection system, if the designer assigns a value for *H* that represents the distance from the floor to the ceiling, this ceiling height assignment will lead to a maximum predicted detection time. In such a case, the predicted detection time will exceed the actual detection time during a fire. Often, systems exceed the calculated detection time because the ignited fuel is located a significant distance above the floor. Some structures are constructed and used in a manner that precludes a credible fuel load at the floor level. In such cases, the designer can produce a more accurate analysis by selecting a value for *H* that represents a reasonable worst case. The fuel load location assumed for the purposes of design or analysis must be thoroughly documented.

B.3.2.3.6 Where the designer desires to consider the height of the potential fuel in the room, the distance between the base of the fuel and the ceiling should be used in place of the ceiling height. This design option is appropriate only if the minimum height of the potential fuel is always constant and the concept is approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

B.3.2.4 Operating Temperature.

B.3.2.4.1 The operating temperature, or rate of temperature change, of the detector required for response is obtained from the manufacturer's data and is determined during the listing process.

B.3.2.4.2 The difference between the rated temperature of a fixed-temperature detector (T_s) and the maximum ambient-temperature (T_a) at the ceiling should be as small as possible. However, to reduce unwanted alarms, the difference between operating temperature and the maximum ambient temperature should be not less than 11°C (20°F). *(See Chapter 17.)*

The designer should thoroughly analyze the location of each heat detector to make certain that no nonfire heat sources, including but not limited to machinery and equipment, vehicles, space heaters, steam lines, reactor vessels, or compressors, are in the vicinity of a heat detector. These types of heat sources can cause local or intermittent hot spots and lead to unwanted alarms.

B.3.2.4.3 If using combination detectors incorporating both fixed temperature and rate-of-rise heat detection principles to detect a geometrically growing fire, the data contained herein for rate-of-rise detectors should be used in selecting an installed spacing, because the rate-of-rise principle controls the response. The fixed-temperature set point is determined from the maximum anticipated ambient temperature.

A designer may choose to calculate the response of the detector for both rate-of-rise and fixed-temperature operation. Generally, detectors will operate first based on the rate-of-rise principle and secondarily on the fixed-temperature principle.

B.3.2.5 Time Constant and Response Time Index (RTI). The flow of heat from the ceiling jet into a heat detector sensing element is not instantaneous. It occurs over a period of time. A measure of the speed with which heat transfer occurs, the thermal response coefficient is needed to accurately predict heat detector response. This is currently called the detector time constant (τ_0). The time constant is a measure of the detector's sensitivity. The sensitivity of a heat detector, τ_0 or RTI, should be determined by validated test. Research by FM Global [43,44,45] has shown that such a correlation exists and has resulted in a test method to determine RTI. This test method is documented in FM Approval Standard 3210, *Heat Detectors for Automatic Fire Alarm Signaling*. Heat detectors should be listed with their RTI so that heat detector spacing can be appropriately determined for various objectives and applications. For older or existing detectors, given the detector's listed spacing and the detector's rated temperature (T_s), Table B.3.2.5, developed in part by Heskestad and Delichatsios [10], can be used to find the detector time constant.

Additional research material relevant to this section will assist designers in their work and in understanding the response time index (RTI).

TABLE B.3.2.5 *Time Constants (τ_0) for Any Listed Heat Detector [at a reference velocity of 1.5 m/sec (5 ft/sec)]*

Listed Spacing		*Underwriters Laboratories Inc.*						*Factory Mutual Research Corporation (All Temperatures)*
m	*ft*	*53.3°C (128°F)*	*57.2°C (135°F)*	*62.8°C (145°F)*	*71.1°C (160°F)*	*76.7°C (170°F)*	*91.1°C (196°F)*	
3.05	10	400	330	262	195	160	97	196
4.57	15	250	190	156	110	89	45	110
6.10	20	165	135	105	70	52	17	70
7.62	25	124	100	78	48	32	—	48
9.14	30	95	80	61	36	22	—	36
12.19	40	71	57	41	18	—	—	—
15.24	50	59	44	30	—	—	—	—
21.34	70	36	24	9	—	—	—	—

Notes:

(1) These time constants are based on an analysis [10] of the Underwriters Laboratories Inc. and Factory Mutual listing test procedures.

(2) These time constants can be converted to response time index (RTI) values by using the equation RTI $= \tau_0\ (5.0\ \text{ft/sec})^{1/2}$. *(See also B.3.3.)*

The RTI is a measure of the speed with which heat can flow into the detector and raise the temperature of the heat-sensing component. The RTI can be thought of as a measure of the sensitivity of the heat-sensing element responding to rising temperature. Commercially available heat detectors generally exhibit RTIs with values less than 100, with 10 indicating a more rapid response than 100. The response time of a heat detector to a given fire in a given compartment can be predicted if and only if both the operating temperature and the RTI are known. The computational method for predicting heat detector response is outlined in B.3.3. RTI has units of $m^{1/2}sec^{1/2}$, and the computational method that uses RTI requires that only metric units be employed. The only method for determining RTI is the "plunge test" as outlined in FM Approval Standard 3210, *Heat Detectors for Automatic Fire Alarm Signaling*.

Note that small differences in the numerical value of RTI will suggest only small differences in response time. The conclusion that a heat detector with an RTI of 15 is significantly faster than one with a published RTI of 16 has no basis. However, a heat detector with an RTI of 5 will respond substantially faster than one with an RTI of 50, if all other factors affecting response are held constant.

While other testing laboratories are free to perform the test to quantify the RTI for a heat detector, they must correlate the test procedure and instrumentation to produce a numerical value consistent with that obtained by FM Global using FM Approval Standard 3210. At this time, the only recognized test method that has been validated is the method outlined in and performed in accordance with FM Approval Standard 3210.

The designer should obtain the value of RTI, as determined through testing in accordance with FM Standard 3210, for the heat detector to be used from the detector manufacturer. The 2007 edition of *NFPA 72*® incorporated a requirement that the RTI be marked on the detector or provided in the manufacturer's installation instructions. This requirement has been retained in the 2013 edition. See 17.6.2.2.2.3.

In 2012, Pomeroy [2010] provided an analysis of temperature and velocity effects on RTI for heat detectors. Although FM Standard 3210 is the current accepted standard for determination of RTI vales, Pomeroy's work shows that RTI may not always be a constant value for all temperature and velocity conditions. Exhibit B.2 shows how RTI values for various types of heat detector technologies may differ. Based on the test data, it was determined that RTI is not independent of temperature or velocity. While RTI remains roughly constant at 75°C (167°F) for all velocities, RTI appears to have a positive correlation with velocity at the 200°C (392°F) test conditions as used in the FM Standard 3210 plunge test. If an engineering analysis of heat detector response is performed, these RTI variations may warrant further sensitivity analysis using a range of RTI values depending on the type of heat detector chosen. Exhibit B.2 illustrates data compiled by Pomeroy showing the average RTI for six heat detector models under various plunge test velocities and temperature exposures.

For existing systems using heat detectors for which no value of RTI has been determined, the only available means to obtain a measure of heat detector thermal response is to calculate an approximate value for RTI.

To calculate RTI, obtain the value for τ_0 from Table B.3.2.5 and use it in the following relations:

$$RTI = \tau_0\,(1.5\ \text{m/sec})^{1/2}$$

$$RTI = \tau_0\,(5.0\ \text{ft/sec})^{1/2}$$

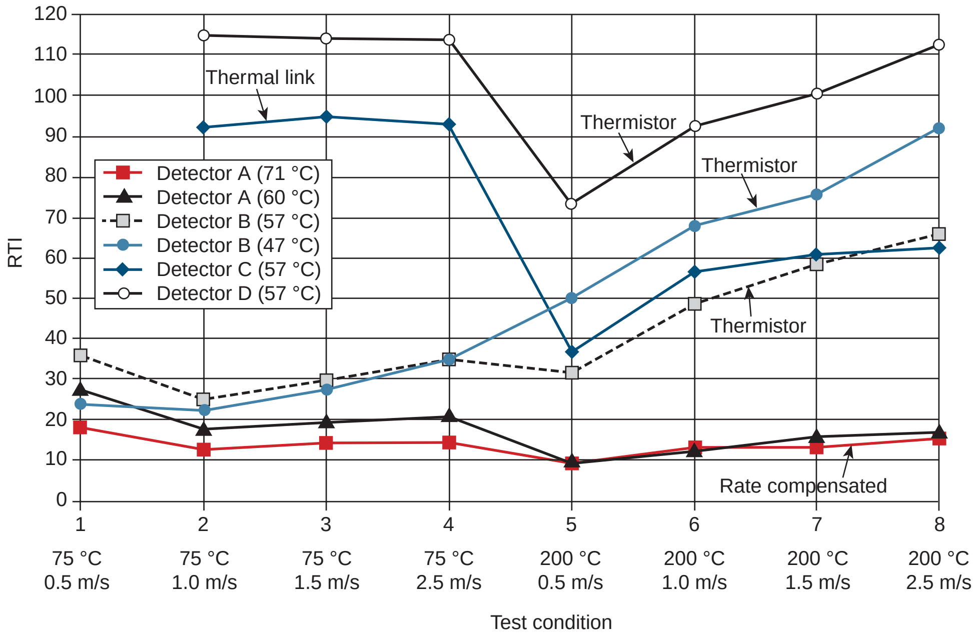
See B.3.3.3 for additional information regarding time constants.

If a value for RTI has been calculated, designers should consider performing a sensitivity analysis to verify that their design will remain valid over a range of values of RTI.

B.3.2.6 Fire Growth Rate.

B.3.2.6.1 Fire growth varies depending on the combustion characteristics and the physical configuration of the fuels involved. After ignition, most fires grow in an accelerating pattern.

EXHIBIT B.2



Average RTI for Six Heat Detector Models. (Source: Dan Gottuk, Hughes Associates, Baltimore, MD)

Information regarding the fire growth rate for various fuels has been provided previously in this annex.

Information on fire growth rates can be found in B.2.3.2.3.

B.3.2.6.2 If the heat release history for a particular fire is known, the α or t_g can be calculated using curve fitting techniques for implementation into the method detailed herein. [16]

B.3.2.6.3 In most cases, the exact fuel(s) and growth rates will not be known. Engineering judgment should therefore be used to select α or t_g that is expected to approximate the fire. Sensitivity analysis should also be performed to determine the effect on response from changes in the expected fire growth rate. In some analyses the effect on response will be negligible. Other cases might show that a more thorough analysis of potential fuels and fire scenarios is necessary.

B.3.2.7 Threshold Fire Size. The user should refer to previous sections regarding discussions on determining threshold fire sizes (Q_{DO} and Q_{CR}) to meet the design objectives.

Designers should select threshold fire sizes carefully and should perform a sensitivity analysis to quantify the effect that variations in threshold fire size have on the system response.

B.3.3 Heat Detector Spacing.

B.3.3.1 Fixed-Temperature Heat Detector Spacing. The following method can be used to determine the response of fixed-temperature heat detectors for designing or analyzing heat detection systems.

B.3.3.1.1 The objective of designing a detection system is to determine the spacing of detectors required to respond to a given set of conditions and goals. To achieve the objectives, detector response must occur when the fire reaches a critical heat release rate, or in a specified time.

B.3.3.1.2 When analyzing an existing detection system, the designer is looking to determine the size of the fire at the time that the detector responds.

B.3.3.2 Theoretical Background. [26, 28] The design and analysis methods contained in Annex B are the joint result of extensive experimental work and of mathematical modeling of the heat and mass transfer processes involved. The original method was developed by Heskestad and Delichatsios [9, 10], Beyler [4], and Schifiliti [16]. It was recently updated by Marrion [28] to reflect changes in the original correlations as discussed in work by Heskestad and Delichatsios [11] and Marrion [27]. Additional research has been conducted by FM Global [43, 44, 45]. Paragraph B.3.3.2 outlines methods and data correlations used to model the heat transfer to a heat detector, as well as velocity and temperature correlations for growing fires at the location of the detector. Only the general principles are described here. More detailed information is available in References 4, 9, 10, 16, and 28 in G.1.2.13.

B.3.3.3 Heat Detector Correlations. The heat transfer to a detector can be described by the following equation:

$$Q_{\text{total}} = Q_{\text{cond}} + Q_{\text{conv}} + Q_{\text{rad}} \tag{B.8}$$

where:

Q_{total} = total heat transfer to a detector (kW or Btu/sec)
Q_{cond} = conductive heat transfer
Q_{conv} = convective heat transfer
Q_{rad} = radiative heat transfer

B.3.3.3.1 Because detection typically occurs during the initial stages of a fire, the radiant heat transfer component (Q_{rad}) can be considered negligible. In addition, because the heat-sensing elements of most of the heat detectors are thermally isolated from the rest of the detection unit, as well as from the ceiling, it can be assumed that the conductive portion of the heat release rate (Q_{cond}) is also negligible, especially when compared to the convective heat transfer rate. Because the majority of the heat transfer to the detection element is via convection, the following equation can be used to calculate the total heat transfer:

$$Q = Q_{\text{conv}} = H_c A\left(T_g - T_d\right) \tag{B.9}$$

where:

Q_{conv} = convective heat transfer (kW or Btu/sec)
H_c = convective heat transfer coefficient for the detector (kW/m^2·°C or Btu/ft^2·sec·°F)
A = surface area of the detector's element (m^2 or ft^2)
T_g = temperature of fire gases at the detector (°C or °F)
T_d = temperature rating, or set point, of the detector (°C or °F)

B.3.3.3.2 Assuming the detection element can be treated as a lumped mass (m) (kg or lbm), its temperature change can be defined as follows:

$$\frac{dT_d}{dt} = \frac{Q}{mc} \tag{B.10}$$

where:

dT_d/dt = change in temperature of detection element (deg/sec)
Q = heat release rate (kW or Btu/sec)
m = detector element's mass (kg or lbm)
c = detector element's specific heat (kJ/kg·°C or Btu/lbm·°F)

B.3.3.3.3 Substituting this into the previous equation, the change in temperature of the detection element over time can be expressed as follows:

$$\frac{dT_d}{dt} = \frac{H_c A\left(T_g - T_d\right)}{mc} \tag{B.11}$$

Note that the variables are identified in Section B.7.

B.3.3.3.4 The use of a time constant (τ) was proposed by Heskestad and Smith [8] in order to define the convective heat transfer to a specific detector's heat-sensing element. This time constant is a function of the mass, specific heat, convective heat transfer coefficient, and area of the element and can be expressed as follows:

$$\tau = \frac{mc}{H_c A} \tag{B.12}$$

where:

m = detector element's mass (kg or lbm)

c = detector element's specific heat (kJ/kg · °C or Btu/lbm · °F)

H_c = convective heat transfer coefficient for the detector (kW/m² · °C or Btu/ft² · sec · °F)

A = surface area of the detector's element (m² or ft²)

τ = detector time constant (seconds)

B.3.3.3.5 As seen in the equation B.12, τ is a measure of the detector's sensitivity. By increasing the mass of the detection element, the time constant, and thus the response time, increases.

B.3.3.3.6 Substituting into equation B.11 produces the following:

$$\frac{dT_d}{dt} = \frac{T_g - T_d}{\tau} \tag{B.13}$$

Note that the variables are identified in Section B.7.

B.3.3.3.7 Research has shown [24] that the convective heat transfer coefficient for sprinklers and heat detection elements is similar to that of spheres, cylinders, and so forth, and is thus approximately proportional to the square root of the velocity of the gases passing the detector. As the mass, thermal capacity, and area of the detection element remain constant, the following relationship can be expressed as the response time index (RTI) for an individual detector:

$$\tau u^{1/2} : \tau_0 u_0^{1/2} = \mathrm{RTI} \tag{B.14}$$

where:

τ = detector time constant (seconds)

u = velocity of fire gases (m/sec or ft/sec)

u_0 = instantaneous velocity of fire gases (m/sec or ft/sec)

RTI = response time index

B.3.3.3.8 If τ_0 is measured at a given reference velocity (u_0),τ can be determined for any other gas velocity (u) for that detector. A plunge test is the easiest way to measure τ_0. It has also been related to the listed spacing of a detector through a calculation. Table B.3.2.5 presents results from these calculations [10]. The RTI value can then be obtained by multiplying τ_0 values by $u_0^{1/2}$.

B.3.3.3.9 It has become customary to refer to the time constant using a reference velocity of u_0 = 1.5 m/sec (5 ft/sec). For example, where u_0 = 1.5 m/sec (5 ft/sec), a τ_0 of 30 seconds corresponds to an RTI of 36 $sec^{1/2}/m^{1/2}$ (or 67 $sec^{1/2}/ft^{1/2}$). On the other hand, a detector that has an RTI of 36 $sec^{1/2}/m^{1/2}$ (or 67 $sec^{1/2}/ft^{1/2}$) would have a τ_0 of 23.7 seconds, if measured in an air velocity of 2.4 m/sec (8 ft/sec).

Research performed by FM Global on the response of heat detectors shows that the use of the reference velocity of 1.5 m/sec (5 ft/sec) is suitable for electronic heat detectors used in fire alarm systems. Comparison experiments were run in which response predictions were computed based upon RTI values derived in accordance with FM Approval Standard 3210. Then full-scale fire tests were conducted to see how close the computed predictions came to predicting actual heat detector response. In almost all cases, the predicted detection times and actual detection times were within a few seconds. All tests were sufficiently close to validate the test method.

B.3.3.3.10 The following equation can therefore be used to calculate the heat transfer to the detection element and thus determine its temperature from its local fire-induced environment:

$$\frac{dT_d}{dt} = \frac{u^{1/2}\left(T_g - T_d\right)}{\text{RTI}} \qquad \textbf{(B.15)}$$

Note that the variables are identified in Section B.7.

B.3.3.4 Temperature and Velocity Correlations. [26, 28] In order to predict the operation of any detector, it is necessary to characterize the local environment created by the fire at the location of the detector. For a heat detector, the important variables are the temperature and velocity of the gases at the detector. Through a program of full-scale tests and the use of mathematical modeling techniques, general expressions for temperature and velocity at a detector location have been developed by Heskestad and Delichatsios *(refer to references 4, 9, 10, and 16 in G.1.2.13)*. These expressions are valid for fires that grow according to the following power law relationship:

$$Q = \alpha t^p \qquad \textbf{(B.16)}$$

where:

Q = theoretical convective fire heat release rate (kW or Btu/sec)

α = fire growth rate (kW/sec^2 or Btu/sec^3)

t = time (seconds)

p = positive exponent

Several other ceiling jet correlations [41] have been developed over the years that the designer should also review as to their applicability to the particular design case. Sensitivity analyses should also be conducted with the analysis.

The *t*-squared fire growth curve is a specific case of equation B.16 where $p = 2$. Few situations exist where p will take on a value other than 2. Nitrated and perchlorated propellants might be better described as *t*-cubed fires. It is conceivable that fuels might be stored in a manner in which the rate of fire extension is offset by the rate of fuel consumption to give a total fire growth rate that could be described as having an exponent of 1.5, but such cases are rare.

Other fire growth correlations exist. For more information, see the references in B.6.5. Some correlations have been published in the *SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering*. NIST has also published correlations that can be used for prediction of detector response.

B.3.3.4.1 Relationships have been developed by Heskestad and Delichatsios [9] for temperature and velocity of fire gases in a ceiling jet. These have been expressed as follows [26]:

$$U_p^* = \frac{u}{A^{1/(3+p)}\alpha^{1/(3+p)}H^{(p-1)/(3+p)}} = f\left(t_p^*, \frac{r}{H}\right) \qquad \textbf{(B.17)}$$

$$\Delta T_p^* = g\left(t_p^*, \frac{r}{H}\right) = \frac{\Delta T}{A^{2/(3+p)}\left(\frac{T_a}{g}\right)\alpha^{2/(3+p)}H^{-(5-p)/(3+p)}} \quad \textbf{(B.18)}$$

where:

$$t_p^* = \frac{t}{A^{-1/(3+p)}\alpha^{-1/(3+p)}H^{4/(3+p)}} \quad \textbf{(B.19)}$$

and

$$A = \frac{g}{C_p T_a \rho_0} \quad \textbf{(B.20)}$$

Note that the variables are identified in Section B.7.

B.3.3.4.2 Using the preceding correlations, Heskestad and Delichatsios [9], and with later updates from another paper by Heskestad [11], the following correlations were presented for fires that had heat release rates that grew according to the power law equation, with $p = 2$. As previously discussed [10, 18], the $p = 2$ power law fire growth model can be used to model the heat release rate of a wide range of fuels. These fires are therefore referred to as *t-squared* fires.

$$t_{2f}^* = 0.861\left(1 + \frac{r}{H}\right) \quad \textbf{(B.21)}$$

$$\Delta T_2^* = 0 \qquad \text{for } t_2^* < t_{2f}^* \quad \textbf{(B.22)}$$

$$\Delta T_2^* = \left(\frac{t_2^* - t_{2f}^*}{0.146 + 0.242r/H}\right)^{4/3} \quad \text{for } t_2^* \ge t_{2f}^* \quad \textbf{(B.23)}$$

$$\frac{u_2^*}{\left(\Delta T_2^*\right)^{1/2}} = 0.59\left(\frac{r}{H}\right)^{-0.63} \quad \textbf{(B.24)}$$

Note that the variables are identified in Section B.7.

B.3.3.4.3 Work by Beyler [4] determined that the preceding temperature and velocity correlations could be substituted into the heat transfer equation for the detector and integrated. His analytical solution is as follows:

$$T_d(t) - T_d(0) = \left(\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T_2^*}\right)\Delta T_2^*\left[\frac{1-\left(1-e^{-Y}\right)}{Y}\right] \quad \textbf{(B.25)}$$

$$\frac{dT_d(t)}{dt} = \frac{\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)\left(\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T_2^*}\right)\left(\Delta T_2^*\right)^{1/4}\left(1-e^{-Y}\right)}{\left(\frac{t}{t_2^*}\right)D} \quad \textbf{(B.26)}$$

where:

$$Y = \left(\frac{3}{4}\right)\left(\frac{u}{u_2^*}\right)^{1/2}\left(\frac{u_2^*}{\Delta T_2^{*1/2}}\right)^{1/2}\left(\frac{\Delta T_2^*}{\text{RTI}}\right)\left(\frac{t}{t_2^*}\right)D \quad \textbf{(B.27)}$$

and

$$D = 0.146 + 0.242r/H \quad \textbf{(B.28)}$$

Note that the variables are identified in Section B.7.

B.3.3.4.4 The steps involved in solving these equations for either a design or analysis situation are presented in Figure B.3.3.4.4 [28].

Designers and engineers who expect to do performance estimates on a regular basis are advised to set up an application using a popular spreadsheet program to run the calculations outlined on the worksheet.

B.3.3.5 Limitations. [26]

It is extremely important that users of this computational method keep in mind the limitations in B.3.3.5.

B.3.3.5.1 [26] If velocity and temperature of the fire gases flowing past a detector cannot be accurately determined, errors will be introduced when calculating the response of a detector. The graphs presented by Heskestad and Delichatsios indicate the errors in the calculated fire–gas temperatures and velocities [10]. A detailed analysis of these errors is beyond the scope of this annex; however, some discussion is warranted. In using the method as previously described, the user should be aware of the limitations of these correlations, as outlined in Reference 26. The designer should also refer back to the original reports.

Graphs of actual and calculated data show that errors in T_2^* can be as high as 50 percent, although generally there appears to be much better agreement. The maximum errors occur at *r/H* values of about 0.37. All other plots of actual and calculated data, for various *r/H*, show much smaller errors. In terms of the actual change in temperature over ambient, the maximum errors are on the order of 5°C to 10°C (9°F to 18°F). The larger errors occur with faster fires and lower ceilings.

At $r/H = 0.37$, the errors are conservative when the equations are used in a design problem. That is, the equations predicted lower temperatures. Plots of data for other values of *r/H* indicate that the equations predict slightly higher temperatures.

Errors in fire–gas velocities are related to errors in temperatures. The equations show that the velocity of the fire gases is proportional to the square root of the change in temperatures of the fire gases. In terms of heat transfer to a detector, the detector's change in temperature is proportional to the change in gas temperature and the square root of the fire–gas velocity. Hence, the expected errors bear the same relationships.

Based on the preceding discussion, errors in predicted temperatures and velocities of fire gases will be greatest for fast fires and low ceilings. Sample calculations simulating these conditions show errors in calculated detector spacings on the order of plus or minus one meter, or less.

B.3.3.5.2 The procedures presented in this annex are based on an analysis of test data for ceiling heights up to 9.1 m (30 ft). No data were analyzed for ceilings greater than 9.1 m (30 ft). The reader should refer to Reference 40 for additional insight.

B.3.3.6 Design Examples.

B.3.3.6.1 Define Project Scope. A fire detection system is to be designed for installation in an unsprinklered warehouse building. The building has a large, flat ceiling that is approximately 4 m (13.1 ft) high. The ambient temperature inside is normally 10°C (50°F). The municipal fire service has indicated that it can begin putting water on the fire within 5.25 minutes of receiving the alarm.

B.3.3.6.2 Identify Goals. Provide protection of property.

B.3.3.6.3 Define Stakeholder's Objective. No fire spread from initial fuel package.

B.3.3.6.4 Define Design Objective. Prevent radiant ignition of adjacent fuel package.

Fire Detection Design and Analysis Worksheet [28]
Design Example

1.	Determine ambient temperature (T_a) ceiling height or height above fuel (H).	T_a = ______ °C + 273 = ______ K H = ______ m
2.	Determine the fire growth characteristic (α or t_g) for the expected design fire.	α = ______ kW/sec^2 t_g = ______ sec
3a.	Define the characteristics of the detectors.	T_s = ______ °C + 273 = ______ K RTI = ______ m$^{1/2}$sec$^{1/2}$ $\frac{dT_d}{dt}$ = ______ °C/min τ_0 = ______ sec
3b. or	*Design* — Establish system goals (t_{CR} or Q_{CR}) and make a first estimate of the distance (r) from the fire to the detector.	t_{CR} = ______ sec r = ______ m Q_{CR} = ______ kW
3b.	*Analysis* — Determine spacing of existing detectors and make a first estimate of the response time or the fire size at detector response ($Q = \alpha t^2$).	r = ______ *1.41 = ______ = S (m) Q = ______ kW t_d = ______ sec
4.	Using equation B.21, calculate the nondimensional time$\left(t^*_{2f}\right)$ at which the initial heat front reaches the detector.	$t^*_{2f} = 0.861\left(1+\frac{r}{H}\right)$ t^*_{2f} =
5.	Calculate the factor A defined by the relationship for A in equation B.20.	$A = \frac{g}{C_p T_a \rho_0}$ A =
6.	Use the required response time (t_{CR}) along with the relationship for t^*_p in equation B.19 and $p = 2$ to calculate the corresponding value of t^*_2.	$t^*_2 = \frac{t_{CR}}{A^{-1/(3+p)}\alpha^{-1/(3+p)}H^{4/(3+p)}}$ t^*_2 =
7.	If $t^*_2 > t^*_{2f}$, continue to step 8. If not, try a new detector position (r) and return to step 4.	
8.	Calculate the ratio $\frac{u}{u^*_2}$ using the relationship for U^*_p in equation B.17.	$\frac{u}{u^*_2} = A^{1/(3+p)}\alpha^{1/(3+p)}H^{(p-1)/(3+p)}$ $\frac{u}{u^*_2}$ =
9.	Calculate the ratio $\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T^*_2}$ using the relationship for ΔT^*_p in equation B.18.	$\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T^*_2} = A^{2/(3+p)}(T_a/g)\,\alpha^{2/(3+p)}H^{-(5-p)/(3+p)}$ $\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T^*_2}$ =
10.	Use the relationship for ΔT^*_2 in equation B.23 to calculate ΔT^*_2.	$\Delta T^*_2 = \left[\frac{t^*_2 - t^*_{2f}}{(0.146 + 0.242r/H)}\right]^{4/3}$ ΔT^*_2 =
11.	Use the relationship for $\frac{u^*_2}{(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/2}}$ in equation B.24 to calculate the ratio $\frac{u^*_2}{(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/2}}$.	$\frac{u^*_2}{(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/2}} = 0.59\left(\frac{r}{H}\right)^{-0.63}$ $\frac{u^*_2}{(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/2}}$ =
12.	Use the relationships for Y and D in equations B.27 and B.28 to calculate Y.	$Y = \left(\frac{3}{4}\right)\left(\frac{u}{u^*_2}\right)^{1/2}\left[\frac{u^*_2}{(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/2}}\right]^{1/2}\left(\frac{\Delta T^*_2}{\mathrm{RTI}}\right)\left(\frac{t}{t^*_2}\right)D$ Y =
13.	*Fixed Temperature HD* — Use the relationship for $T_d(t) - T_d(0)$ in equation B.25 to calculate the resulting temperature of the detector $T_d(t)$.	$T_d(t) = \left(\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T^*_2}\right)\Delta T^*_2\left[1-\frac{(1-e^{-Y})}{Y}\right] + T_d(0)$ $T_d(t)$ =
14.	*Rate of Rise HD* — Use the relationship for $\frac{dT_d(t)}{dt}$ in equation B.26.	$dT_d = \left[\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)\left(\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T^*_2}\right)(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/4}\frac{(1-e^{-Y})}{[(t/t^*_2)D]}\right]dt$ dT_d =
15.	If: 1. $T_d > T_s$ 2. $T_d < T_s$ 3. $T_d = T$	Repeat Procedure Using Design: 1. a larger r; 2. a smaller r; 3. $s = 1.41 \times r$ = ______ m Analysis: 1. a larger t_r; 2. a smaller t_r; 3. t_r = ______ sec

FIGURE B.3.3.4.4 *Fire Detection Design and Analysis Worksheet. [28]*

B.3.3.6.5 Develop Performance Criteria. After discussions with the plant fire brigade with regard to their capability and analyzing the radiant energy levels necessary to ignite adjacent fuel packages, it was determined that the fire should be detected and suppression activities started prior to its reaching 10,000 kW (9478 Btu/sec).

B.3.3.6.6 Develop Fire Scenarios and the Design Fire. Evaluation of the potential contents to be warehoused identified the areas where wood pallets are stored to be one of the highest fire hazards.

The designer cannot come to the conclusion in B.3.3.6.6 without reviewing all the combustibles, their heat release rates, and their orientation. With this analysis, the designer can then determine if the stack of wood pallets indeed presents the worst case. The designer must analyze other scenarios using fire loads in other areas to verify that this represents the worst-case scenario. Furthermore, if stakeholders desire future flexibility in the use of the space, the designer must use additional factors of safety.

B.3.3.6.6.1 The fire scenario involving the ignition of a stack of wood pallets will therefore be evaluated. The pallets are stored 0.5 m (1.5 ft) high. Fire test data *[see Table B.2.3.2.6.2(a)]* indicate that this type of fire follows the t^2 power law equation with a t_g equal to approximately 150 to 310 seconds. To be conservative, the faster fire growth rate will be used. Thus, using equation B.16,

$$Q = \alpha t^p$$
$$1055 \text{ kW} = \left(\alpha \text{ kW/sec}^2\right)\left(150 \text{ sec}\right)^2$$
$$\alpha = 0.047 \text{ kW/sec}^2$$

or

$$Q = \alpha t^p$$
$$1000 \text{ Btu/sec} = \left(\alpha \text{ Btu/sec}^3\right)\left(150 \text{ sec}\right)^2$$
$$\alpha = 0.044 \text{ Btu/sec}^3$$

Note that the variables are identified in Section B.7.

B.3.3.6.6.2 Using the power law growth equation with $p = 2$, the time after open flaming until the fire grows to 10,000 kW (9478 Btu/sec) can be calculated as follows:

$$Q = \left(\frac{1055}{t_c^2}\right) t_{DO}^2 = \alpha t^2 \quad \left(\text{for SI units}\right) \tag{B.29a}$$

or

$$Q = \left(\frac{1000}{t_c^2}\right) t_{DO}^2 = \alpha t^2 \quad \left(\text{for inch-pound units}\right) \tag{B.29b}$$

$$t_{DO} = 461 \text{ seconds}$$

Note that the variables are identified in Section B.7.

As part of this analysis, the designer should verify that sufficient fuel exists in the initial fuel package to allow the fire to sustain the continued growth rate over this length of time. Insufficient fuel or a change in fire growth rate will affect the detector response.

B.3.3.6.6.3 The critical heat release rate and time to detection can therefore be calculated as follows, assuming t_{respond} equals the 5.25 minutes necessary for the fire brigade to respond to the alarm and begin discharging water:

$$t_{CR} = t_{DO} - t_{\text{respond}}$$
$$t_{CR} = 461 - 315 = 146 \text{ seconds} \tag{B.30}$$

and thus

$$Q_{CR} = \alpha t_{CR}^2$$
$$Q_{CR} = 1000 \text{ kW } (948 \text{ Btu/sec}) \tag{B.31}$$

Note that the variables are identified in Section B.7.

B.3.3.7 Develop Candidate Designs.

B.3.3.7.1 Fixed-temperature heat detectors have been selected for installation in the warehouse with a 57°C (135°F) operating temperature and a UL-listed spacing of 9.1 m (30 ft). From Table B.3.2.5, the time constant is determined to be 80 seconds when referenced to a gas velocity of 1.5 m/sec (5 ft/sec). When used with equation B.14, the detector's RTI can be calculated as follows:

$$\text{RTI} = \tau_0 u_0^{1/2}$$
$$\text{RTI} = 98 \text{ m}^{1/2} \text{ sec}^{1/2} \tag{B.32}$$

or

$$\text{RTI} = 179 \text{ ft}^{1/2} \text{ sec}^{1/2}$$

B.3.3.7.2 To begin calculations, it will be necessary to make a first guess at the required detector spacing. For this example, a first estimate of 4.7 m (15.3 ft) is used. This correlates to a radial distance of 3.3 m (10.8 ft).

B.3.3.8 Evaluate Candidate Designs. These values can then be entered into the design and analysis worksheet shown in Figure B.3.3.8 in order to evaluate the candidate design.

B.3.3.8.1 After 146 seconds, when the fire has grown to 1000 kW (948 Btu/sec) and at a radial distance of 3.3 m (10.8 ft) from the center of the fire, the detector temperature is calculated to be 57°C (135°F). This is the detector actuation temperature. If the calculated temperature of the detector were higher than the actuation temperature, the radial distance could be increased. The calculation would then be repeated until the calculated detector temperature is approximately equal to the actuation temperature.

If for some reason the detector spacing cannot be changed, the designer can select another type of heat detector with a different listed spacing and, hence, a different RTI. The designer can then repeat the design calculation to determine if a system using the second type of detector meets the performance criteria.

B.3.3.8.2 The last step is to use the final calculated value of r with the equation relating spacing to radial distance. This will determine the maximum installed detector spacing that will result in detector response within the established goals.

$$S = 2^{1/2} r$$
$$S = 4.7 \text{ m } (15.3 \text{ ft}) \tag{B.33}$$

where:

S = spacing of detectors

r = radial distance from fire plume axis (m or ft)

B.3.3.8.3 The following example of analysis is provided.

Fire Detection Design and Analysis Worksheet [28]
Design Example

1.	Determine ambient temperature (T_a) ceiling height or height above fuel (H).	T_a = 10 °C + 273 = 283 K H = 4 m
2.	Determine the fire growth characteristic (α or t_g) for the expected design fire.	α = 0.047 kW/sec^2 t_g = 150 sec
3a.	Define the characteristics of the detectors.	T_s = 57 °C + 273 = 330 K RTI = 98 m$^{1/2}$sec$^{1/2}$ $\frac{dT_d}{dt}$ = ______ °C/min τ_0 = ______ sec
3b. or	*Design* — Establish system goals (t_{CR} or Q_{CR}) and make a first estimate of the distance (r) from the fire to the detector.	t_{CR} = 146 sec r = 3.3 m Q_{CR} = 1000 kW
3b.	*Analysis* — Determine spacing of existing detectors and make a first estimate of the response time or the fire size at detector response ($Q = \alpha t^2$).	r = ______ *1.41 = ______ = S (m) Q = ______ kW t_d = ______ sec
4.	Using equation B.21, calculate the nondimensional time $\left(t^*_{2f}\right)$ at which the initial heat front reaches the detector.	$t^*_{2f} = 0.861\left(1+\frac{r}{H}\right)$ t^*_{2f} = 1.57
5.	Calculate the factor A defined by the relationship for A in equation B.20.	$A = \frac{g}{C_p T_a \rho_0}$ A = 0.030
6.	Use the required response time (t_{CR}) along with the relationship for t^*_p in equation B.19 and $p = 2$ to calculate the corresponding value of t^*_2.	$t^*_2 = \frac{t_{CR}}{A^{-1/(3+p)}\alpha^{-1/(3+p)}H^{4/(3+p)}}$ t^*_2 = 12.98
7.	If $t^*_2 > t^*_{2f}$, continue to step 8. If not, try a new detector position (r) and return to step 4.	
8.	Calculate the ratio $\frac{u}{u^*_2}$ using the relationship for U^*_p in equation B.17.	$\frac{u}{u^*_2} = A^{1/(3+p)}\alpha^{1/(3+p)}H^{(p-1)/(3+p)}$ $\frac{u}{u^*_2}$ = 0.356
9.	Calculate the ratio $\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T^*_2}$ using the relationship for ΔT^*_p in equation B.18.	$\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T^*_2} = A^{2/(3+p)}(T_a/g)\,\alpha^{2/(3+p)}H^{-(5-p)/(3+p)}$ $\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T^*_2}$ = 0.913
10.	Use the relationship for ΔT^*_2 in equation B.23 to calculate ΔT^*_2.	$\Delta T^*_2 = \left[\frac{t^*_2 - t^*_{2f}}{(0.146+0.242r/H)}\right]^{4/3}$ ΔT^*_2 = 105.89
11.	Use the relationship for $\frac{u^*_2}{(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/2}}$ in equation B.24 to calculate the ratio $\frac{u^*_2}{(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/2}}$.	$\frac{u^*_2}{(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/2}} = 0.59\left(\frac{r}{H}\right)^{-0.63}$ $\frac{u^*_2}{(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/2}}$ = 0.66
12.	Use the relationships for Y and D in equations B.27 and B.28 to calculate Y.	$Y = \left(\frac{3}{4}\right)\left(\frac{u}{u^*_2}\right)^{1/2}\left[\frac{u^*_2}{(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/2}}\right]^{1/2}\left(\frac{\Delta T^*_2}{\text{RTI}}\right)\left(\frac{t}{t^*_2}\right)D$ Y = 1.533
13.	*Fixed Temperature HD* — Use the relationship for $T_d(t) - T_d(0)$ in equation B.25 to calculate the resulting temperature of the detector $T_d(t)$.	$T_d(t) = \left(\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T^*_2}\right)\Delta T^*_2\left[1-\frac{(1-e^{-Y})}{Y}\right] + T_d(0)$ $T_d(t)$ = 57.25
14.	*Rate of Rise HD* — Use the relationship for $\frac{dT_d(t)}{dt}$ in equation B.26.	$dT_d = \left[\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)\left(\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T^*_2}\right)(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/4}\frac{(1-e^{-Y})}{[(t/t^*_2)D]}\right]dt$ dT_d =
15.	If: 1. $T_d > T_s$ 2. $T_d < T_s$ 3. $T_d = T$	Repeat Procedure Using Design: 1. a larger r 2. a smaller r 3. $s = 1.41 \times r$ = 4.7 m Analysis: 1. a larger t_r 2. a smaller t_r 3. t_r = ______ sec

FIGURE B.3.3.8 Fire Detection Design and Analysis Worksheet [28] — Design Example.

B.3.3.8.3.1 The following example shows how an existing heat detection system or a proposed design can be analyzed to determine the response time or fire size at response. The scenario that was analyzed in the previous example will be used again, with the exception that the warehouse building has existing heat detectors. The fire, building, and detectors have the same characteristics as the previous example with the exception of spacing. The detectors are spaced evenly on the ceiling at 9.1 m (30 ft) intervals.

B.3.3.8.3.2 The following equation is used to determine the maximum radial distance from the fire axis to a detector:

$$S = 1.414r \tag{B.34}$$

or

$$r = \frac{S}{1.414}$$
$$r = 6.5 \text{ m } (21.2 \text{ ft})$$

where:

S = spacing of detectors

r = radial distance from fire plume axis (m or ft)

> At this point, the designer should perform a sensitivity analysis for each of the variables to determine if the design inordinately relies on an assumed value for one or more parameters.

B.3.3.8.3.3 Next, the response time of the detector or the fire size at response is estimated. In the preceding design, the fire grew to 1000 kW (948 Btu/sec) in 146 seconds when the detector located at a distance of 3.3 m (10.8 ft) responded. As the radial distance in this example is larger, a slower response time and thus a larger fire size at response is expected. A first approximation at the response time is made at 3 minutes. The corresponding fire size is found using the power law fire growth equation B.16 with $p = 2$ and α from B.3.3.6.6.1:

$$Q = \alpha t^p$$
$$Q = \left(0.047 \text{ kW / sec}^2\right)\left(180 \text{ sec}\right)^2$$
$$Q = 1523 \text{ kW}$$

or

$$Q = \left(0.044 \text{ Btu/sec}^3\right)\left(180 \text{ sec}\right)^2$$
$$Q = 1426 \text{ Btu/sec}$$

B.3.3.8.3.4 These data can be incorporated into the fire detection design and analysis worksheet shown in Figure B.3.3.8.3.4 in order to carry out the remainder of the calculations.

B.3.3.8.3.5 Using a radial distance of 6.5 m (21 ft) from the axis of this fire, the temperature of the detector is calculated to be 41°C (106°F) after 3 minutes of exposure. The detector actuation temperature is 57°C (135°F). Thus, the detector response time is more than the estimated 3 minutes. If the calculated temperature were more than the actuation temperature, then a smaller t would be used. As in the previous example, calculations should be repeated varying the time to response until the calculated detector temperature is approximately equal to the actuation temperature. For this example, the response time is estimated to be 213 seconds. This corresponds to a fire size at response of 2132 kW (2022 Btu/sec).

B.3.3.8.4 The preceding examples assume that the fire continues to follow the t-squared fire growth relationship up to detector activation. These calculations do not check whether this will happen, nor do they show how the detector temperature varies once the fire stops

Fire Detection Design and Analysis Worksheet [28]
Design Analysis 2

1.	Determine ambient temperature (T_a) ceiling height or height above fuel (H).	T_a = 10 °C + 273 = 283 K H = 4 m
2.	Determine the fire growth characteristic (α or t_g) for the expected design fire.	α = 0.047 kW/sec^2 t_g = 150 sec
3a.	Define the characteristics of the detectors.	T_s = 57 °C + 273 = 330 K RTI = 98 m$^{1/2}$sec$^{1/2}$ $\frac{dT_d}{dt}$ = ______ °C/min τ_0 = ______ sec
3b. or	*Design* — Establish system goals (t_{CR} or Q_{CR}) and make a first estimate of the distance (r) from the fire to the detector.	t_{CR} = ______ sec r = ______ m Q_{CR} = ______ kW
3b.	*Analysis* — Determine spacing of existing detectors and make a first estimate of the response time or the fire size at detector response ($Q = \alpha t^2$).	r = 6.5 *1.41 = 9.2 = S (m) Q = 1,523 kW t_d = 180 sec
4.	Using equation B.21, calculate the nondimensional time $\left(t^*_{2f}\right)$ at which the initial heat front reaches the detector.	$t^*_{2f} = 0.861\left(1+\frac{r}{H}\right)$ t^*_{2f} = 2.26
5.	Calculate the factor A defined by the relationship for A in equation B.20.	$A = \frac{g}{C_p T_a \rho_0}$ A = 0.030
6.	Use the required response time (t_{CR}) along with the relationship for t^*_p in equation B.19 and p = 2 to calculate the corresponding value of t^*_2.	$t^*_2 = \frac{t_{CR}}{A^{-1/(3+p)}\alpha^{-1/(3+p)}H^{4/(3+p)}}$ t^*_2 = 16
7.	If $t^*_2 > t^*_{2f}$, continue to step 8. If not, try a new detector position (r) and return to step 4.	
8.	Calculate the ratio $\frac{u}{u^*_2}$ using the relationship for U^*_p in equation B.18.	$\frac{u}{u^*_2} = A^{1/(3+p)}\alpha^{1/(3+p)}H^{(p-1)/(3+p)}$ $\frac{u}{u^*_2}$ = 0.356
9.	Calculate the ratio $\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T^*_2}$ using the relationship for ΔT^*_p in equation B.18.	$\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T^*_2} = A^{2/(3+p)}(T_a/g)\,\alpha^{2/(3+p)}H^{-(5-p)/(3+p)}$ $\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T^*_2}$ = 0.913
10.	Use the relationship for ΔT^*_2 in equation B.23 to calculate ΔT^*_2.	$\Delta T^*_2 = \left[\frac{t^*_2 - t^*_{2f}}{(0.146 + 0.242r/H)}\right]^{4/3}$ ΔT^*_2 = 75.01
11.	Use the relationship for $\frac{u^*_2}{(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/2}}$ in equation B.24 to calculate the ratio $\frac{u^*_2}{(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/2}}$.	$\frac{u^*_2}{(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/2}} = 0.59\left(\frac{r}{H}\right)^{-0.63}$ $\frac{u^*_2}{(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/2}}$ = 0.435
12.	Use the relationships for Y and D in equations B.27 and B.28 to calculate Y.	$Y = \left(\frac{3}{4}\right)\left(\frac{u}{u^*_2}\right)^{1/2}\left[\frac{u^*_2}{(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/2}}\right]^{1/2}\left(\frac{\Delta T^*_2}{\mathrm{RTI}}\right)\left(\frac{t}{t^*_2}\right)D$ Y = 1.37
13.	*Fixed Temperature HD* — Use the relationship for $T_d(t) - T_d(0)$ in equation B.25 to calculate the resulting temperature of the detector $T_d(t)$.	$T_d(t) = \left(\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T^*_2}\right)\Delta T^*_2\left[1 - \frac{(1-e^{-Y})}{Y}\right] + T_d(0)$ $T_d(t)$ = 41
14.	*Rate of Rise HD* — Use the relationship for $\frac{dT_d(t)}{dt}$ in equation B.26.	$dT_d = \left[\left(\frac{4}{3}\right)\left(\frac{\Delta T}{\Delta T^*_2}\right)(\Delta T^*_2)^{1/4}\frac{(1-e^{-Y})}{[(t/t^*_2)D]}\right]dt$ dT_d =
15.	If: 1. $T_d > T_s$ 2. $T_d < T_s$ 3. $T_d = T$	Repeat Procedure Using Design: 1. a larger r 2. a smaller r 3. $s = 1.41 \times r$ = ______ m Analysis: 1. a larger t_r 2. a smaller t_r 3. t_r = ______ sec

FIGURE B.3.3.8.3.4 Fire Detection Design and Analysis Worksheet [28] — Analysis Example 2.

following the power law relationship. The user should therefore determine that there will be sufficient fuel, since the preceding correlations do not perform this analysis. If there is not a sufficient amount of fuel, then there is the possibility that the heat release rate curve will flatten out or decline before the heat release rate needed for actuation is reached.

The use of the *t*-squared model presumes sufficient fuel to permit the fire to grow according to the *t*-squared model. The designer should verify that the hazard provides sufficient fuel. Because $Q = mH_c$, the designer can determine the required fuel load by integrating this relation over the time period in question and then dividing by H_c.

B.3.3.8.5 Table B.3.3.8.5(a) through Table B.3.3.8.5(k) provide a comparison of heat release rates, response times, and spacings when variables characteristic of the fires, detectors, and room are changed from the analysis example.

TABLE B.3.3.8.5(a) *Operating Temperature Versus Heat Transfer Rate [S = 9.1 m (30 ft)]*

Operating Temperature		*Heat Release Rate/Response Time*	
°C	*°F*	*kW/sec*	*Btu/sec/sec*
57	135	2132/213	2022/213
74	165	2798/244	2654/244
93	200	3554/275	3371/275

TABLE B.3.3.8.5(b) *Operating Temperature Versus Spacing [Q_d = 1000 kW (948 Btu/sec)]*

Operating Temperature		*Spacing*	
°C	*°F*	*m*	*ft*
57	135	4.7	15.4
74	165	3.5	11.5
93	200	2.5	8.2

TABLE B.3.3.8.5(c) *RTI Versus Heat Release Rate [S = 9.1 m (30 ft)]*

RTI		*Heat Release Rate/Response Time*	
$m^{1/2}\ sec^{1/2}$	$ft^{1/2}\ sec^{1/2}$	*kW/sec*	*Btu/sec/sec*
50	93	1609/185	1526/185
150	280	2640/237	2504/237
300	560	3898/288	3697/288

TABLE B.3.3.8.5(d) *RTI Versus Spacing [Q_d = 1000 kW (948 Btu/sec)]*

RTI		*Spacing*	
$m^{1/2}\ sec^{1/2}$	$ft^{1/2}\ sec^{1/2}$	*m*	*ft*
50	93	6.1	20.0
150	280	3.7	12.1
300	560	2.3	7.6

TABLE B.3.3.8.5(e) *Ambient Temperature Versus Heat Release Rate [S = 9.1 m (30 ft)]*

Ambient Temperature		*Heat Release Rate/Response Time*	
°C	*°F*	*kW/sec*	*Btu/sec/sec*
0	32	2552/233	2420/233
20	68	1751/193	1661/193
38	100	1058/150	1004/150

TABLE B.3.3.8.5(f) *Ambient Temperature Versus Spacing [Q_d = 1000 kW (948 Btu/sec)]*

Ambient Temperature		*Spacing*	
°C	*°F*	*m*	*ft*
0	32	3.8	12.5
20	68	5.7	18.7
38	100	8.8	28.9

TABLE B.3.3.8.5(g) *Ceiling Height Versus Heat Release Rate [S = 9.1 m (30 ft)]*

Ceiling Height		Heat Release Rate/Response Time	
m	ft	kW/sec	Btu/sec/sec
2.4	8	1787/195	1695/195
4.9	16	2358/224	2237/224
7.3	24	3056/255	2899/255

TABLE B.3.3.8.5(h) *Ceiling Height Versus Spacing [Q_d = 1000 kW (948 Btu/sec)]*

Ceiling Height		Spacing	
m	ft	m	ft
2.4	8	5.8	19.0
4.9	16	4.0	13.1
7.3	24	2.1	6.9

TABLE B.3.3.8.5(i) *Detector Spacing Versus Heat Release Rate [S = 9.1 m (30 ft)]*

Detector Spacing		Heat Release Rate/Response Time	
m	ft	kW/sec	Btu/sec/sec
4.6	15	1000/146	949/146
9.1	30	2132/213	2022/213
15.2	50	4146/297	3932/297

TABLE B.3.3.8.5(j) *Fire Growth Rate Versus Heat Release Rate [S = 9.1 m (30 ft)]*

	Heat Release Rate/Response Time	
Fire Growth Rate	kW/sec	Btu/sec/sec
Slow t_g = 400 sec	1250/435	1186/435
Medium t_g = 250 sec	1582/306	1499/306
Fast t_g = 100 sec	2769/162	2626/162

TABLE B.3.3.8.5(k) *Fire Growth Rate Versus Spacing [Q_d = 1000 kW (948 Btu/sec)]*

	Spacing	
Fire Growth Rate	m	ft
Slow, t_g = 400 sec	8.2	26.9
Medium, t_g = 250 sec	6.5	21.3
Fast, t_g = 100 sec	3.7	12.1

B.3.3.9 Rate-of-Rise Heat Detector Spacing.

B.3.3.9.1 The preceding procedure can be used to estimate the response of rate-of-rise heat detectors for either design or analysis purposes. In this case, it is necessary to assume that the heat detector response can be modeled using a lumped mass heat transfer model.

B.3.3.9.2 In step 3 of Figure B.3.3.4.4, Figure B.3.3.8, and Figure B.3.3.8.3.4, the user must determine the rate of temperature rise (dT_d/dt) at which the detector will respond from the manufacturer's data. [Note that listed rate-of-rise heat detectors are designed to activate at a nominal rate of temperature rise of 8°C (15°F) per minute.] The user must use the relationship for $dT_d(t)/dt$ in equation B.26 instead of the relationship for $T_d(t) - T_d(0)$ in equation B.25 in order to calculate the rate of change of the detector temperature. This value is then compared to the rate of change at which the chosen detector is designed to respond.

NOTE: The assumption that heat transfer to a detector can be modeled as a lumped mass might not hold for rate-of-rise heat detectors. This is due to the operating principle of this type of detector, in that most rate-of-rise detectors operate when the expansion of air in a chamber expands at a rate faster than it can vent through an opening. To accurately model the response of a rate-of-rise detector would require modeling the heat transfer from the detector body to the air in the chamber, as well as the air venting through the hole.

B.3.3.10 Rate Compensation–Type Heat Detectors. Rate-compensated detectors are not specifically covered by Annex B. However, a conservative approach to predicting their performance is to use the fixed-temperature heat detector guidance contained herein.

B.4 Smoke Detector Spacing for Flaming Fires

With the issuance of the 2002 edition of the Code, performance-based designs were formally recognized as an alternative to designs developed using the prescriptive rules of the Code. Calculations, such as those outlined in Section B.4, represent an integral part of the performance-based design. However, performance-based design is a process, and the computational tools outlined in this section are intended to be used in the context of that process. The user should review Section 17.3 carefully before undertaking a design based on these computational methods.

When undertaking a performance-based design, designers assume responsibility for the design assumptions being offered to the other stakeholders as well as the assessment of the implications of adopting such assumptions or criteria. This approach puts a greater burden of responsibility on the designers than when they are implementing the requirements of a prescriptive code.

B.4.1 Introduction.

B.4.1.1 The listing investigation for smoke detectors does not yield a "listed spacing" as it does for heat detectors. Instead, the manufacturers recommend a spacing. Because the largest spacing that can be evaluated in the full-scale fire test room is 7.6 m (25 ft), it has become common practice to recommend 9.1 m (30 ft) spacing for smoke detectors when they are installed on flat, smooth ceilings. Reductions in smoke detector spacing are made empirically to address factors that can affect response, including ceiling height, beamed or joisted ceilings, and areas that have high rates of air movement.

Chapter 17 addresses the effects of exposed joists and beams and provides prescriptive design rules that are valid over the limitations stipulated in the text. The chapter also provides design rules to address the effect of ceiling slope on a qualitative basis. Thus far, the requisite research to develop quantitative design calculations for smoke detector spacings exceeding 9.1 m (30 ft) have not yet been performed.

B.4.1.2 The placement of smoke detectors, however, should be based on an understanding of fire plume and ceiling jet flows, smoke production rates, particulate changes due to aging, and the operating characteristics of the particular detector being used. The heat detector spacing information presented in Section B.3 is based on knowledge of plume and jet flows. An understanding of smoke production and aging lags considerably behind an understanding of heat production. In addition, the operating characteristics of smoke detectors in specific fire environments are not often measured or made generally available for other than a very few number of combustible materials. Therefore, the existing knowledge base precludes the development of complete engineering design information for smoke detector location and spacing.

Designers should proceed with caution when designing or analyzing the response of smoke detection systems. Currently available analytical methods do not account for variations in the composition of smoke, the effects of smoke aging, or the detection mechanism appropriate to different detection technologies.

B.4.1.3 In design applications where predicting the response of smoke detectors is not critical, the spacing criteria presented in Chapter 17 should provide sufficient information to design a very basic smoke detection system. However, if the goals and objectives established for the detection system require detector response within a certain amount of time, optical density, heat release rate, or temperature rise, then additional analysis might be needed. For these situations, information regarding the expected fire characteristics (fuel and its fire growth rate), transport characteristics, detector characteristics, and compartment characteristics is required. The following information regarding smoke detector response and various performance-based approaches to evaluating smoke detector response is therefore provided.

B.4.2 Response Characteristics of Smoke Detectors. To determine whether a smoke detector will respond to a given Q_{CR}, a number of factors need to be evaluated. These factors include smoke characteristics, smoke transport, and detector characteristics.

B.4.3 Smoke Characteristics.

B.4.3.1 Smoke characteristics are a function of the fuel composition, the mode of combustion (smoldering or flaming), and the amount of mixing with the ambient air (dilution). These factors are important for determining the characteristics of the products of combustion, such as particle size, distribution, composition, concentration, refractive index, and so on. The significance of these features with regard to smoke detector response is well documented. [29, 30]

B.4.3.2 Whether smoke detectors detect by sensing scattered light, loss of light transmission (light extinction), or reduction of ion current, they are particle detectors. Thus, particle concentration, size, color, size distribution, and so forth, affect each sensing technology differently. It is generally accepted that a flaming, well-ventilated, energetic fire produces smoke having a larger proportion of the sub-micron diameter particulates as opposed to a smoldering fire that produces smoke with a predominance of large, super-micron particulates. It is also known that as the smoke cools, the smaller particles agglomerate, forming larger ones as they age, and are carried away from the fire source. More research is necessary to provide sufficient data to allow the prediction of smoke characteristics at the source, as well as during transport. Furthermore, response models must be developed that can predict the response of a particular detector to different kinds of smoke as well as smoke that has aged during the flow from the fire to the detector location.

B.4.4 Transport Considerations.

B.4.4.1 All smoke detection relies on the plume and ceiling jet flows to transport the smoke from the locus of the fire to the detector. Various considerations must be addressed during this transport time, including changes to the characteristics of the smoke that occur with time and distance from the source, and transport time of smoke from the source to the detector.

B.4.4.2 The smoke characteristic changes that occur during transport relate mainly to the particle size distribution. Particle size changes during transport occur mainly as a result of sedimentation and agglomeration.

B.4.4.3 Transport time is a function of the characteristics of the travel path from the source to the detector. Important characteristics that should be considered include ceiling height and configuration (e.g., sloped, beamed), intervening barriers such as doors and beams, as well as dilution and buoyancy effects such as stratification that might delay or prevent smoke in being transported to the detector.

B.4.4.4 In smoldering fires, thermal energy provides a force for transporting smoke particles to the smoke sensor. However, usually in the context of smoke detection, the rate of energy (heat) release is small and the rate of growth of the fire is slow. Consequently, other factors such as ambient airflow from HVAC systems, differential solar heating of the structure, and wind cooling of the structure can have a dominant influence on the transport of smoke particles to the smoke sensor when low-output fires are considered.

B.4.4.5 In the early stages of development of a growing fire, the same interior environmental effects, including ambient airflow from HVAC systems, differential solar heating of the structure, and wind cooling of the structure, can have a dominant influence on the transport of smoke. This is particularly important in spaces having high ceilings. Greater thermal energy release from the fire is necessary to overcome these interior environmental effects. Because the fire must attain a sufficiently high level of heat release before it can overcome the interior environmental airflows and drive the smoke to the ceiling-mounted detectors, the use of closer spacing of smoke detectors on the ceiling might not significantly improve the response of the detectors to the fire. Therefore, when considering ceiling height alone, smoke detector spacing closer than 9.1 m (30 ft) might not be warranted, except in instances where an engineering analysis indicates additional benefit will result. Other construction characteristics also should be considered. *(Refer to the appropriate sections of Chapter 17 dealing with smoke detectors and their use for the control of smoke spread.)*

B.4.5 Smoke Dilution. Smoke dilution causes a reduction in the quantity of smoke per unit of air volume of smoke reaching the detector. Dilution typically occurs either by entrainment of air in the plume or the ceiling jet or by effects of HVAC systems. Forced ventilation systems with high air change rates typically cause the most concern, particularly in the early stages of fire development, when smoke production rate and plume velocity are both low. Airflows from supply as well as return vents can create defined air movement patterns within a compartment, which can either keep smoke away from detectors that are located outside of these paths or can inhibit smoke from entering a detector that is located directly in the airflow path. [26]

There currently are no quantitative methods for estimating either smoke dilution or airflow effects on locating smoke detectors. These factors should therefore be considered qualitatively. The designer should understand that the effects of airflow become larger as the fire size at detection (Q_{CR}) gets smaller. Depending on the application, the designer might find it useful to obtain airflow and velocity profiles within the room or to even conduct small-scale smoke tests under various conditions to assist in the design of the system.

NIST first investigated the issues addressed in B.4.5 using the Harwell Flow 3D CFD model as part of the International Fire Detection Research Project. NIST conducted this research under the auspices of the Fire Protection Research Foundation with technical advice and support from the Fire Detection Institute.

B.4.6 Stratification.

B.4.6.1 The potential for the stratification of smoke is another concern in designing and analyzing the response of detectors. This is of particular concern with the detection of low-energy fires and fires in compartments with high ceilings.

B.4.6.2 The upward movement of smoke in the plume depends on the smoke being buoyant relative to the surrounding air. Stratification occurs when the smoke or hot gases flowing from the fire fail to ascend to the smoke detectors mounted at a particular level (usually on the ceiling) above the fire due to the loss of buoyancy. This phenomenon occurs due to the continuous entrainment of cooler air into the fire plume as it rises, resulting in cooling of the smoke and fire plume gases. The cooling of the plume results in a reduction in buoyancy. Eventually the plume cools to a point where its temperature equals that of the surrounding air and its buoyancy diminishes to zero. Once this point of equilibrium is reached, the smoke will cease its upward flow and form a layer, maintaining its height above the fire, regardless of the ceiling height, unless and until sufficient additional thermal energy is provided from the fire to raise the layer due to its increased buoyancy. The maximum height to which plume fluid (smoke) will ascend, especially early in the development of a fire, depends on the convective heat release rate of the fire and the ambient temperature in the compartment.

B.4.6.3 Because warm air rises, there will usually be a temperature gradient in the compartment. Of particular interest are those cases where the temperature of the air in the upper portion of the compartment is greater than at the lower level before the ignition. This can occur as a result of solar load where ceilings contain glazing materials. Computational methods are available to assess the potential for intermediate stratification for the following two cases, depicted in Figure B.4.6.3(a).

Case 1. The temperature of the ambient is relatively constant up to a height above which there is a layer of warm air at uniform temperature. This situation can occur if the upper portion of a mall, atrium, or other large space is unoccupied and the air is left unconditioned.

Case 2. The ambient interior air of the compartment has a constant and uniform temperature gradient (temperature change per unit height) from floor to ceiling. This case is generally encountered in industrial and storage facilities that are normally unoccupied.

The analysis of intermediate stratification is presented in Figure B.4.6.3(b). Plume centerline temperatures from two fires, 1000 kW (948 Btu/sec) and 2000 kW (1896 Btu/sec), are graphed based on estimates from correlations presented in this section. In Case 1, a step function is assumed to indicate a 30°C/m (16.5°F/ft) change in temperature 15 m (49.2 ft) above the floor due to the upper portion of the atrium being unconditioned. For Case 2, a temperature gradient of 1.5°C/m (0.82°F/ft) is arbitrarily assumed in an atrium that has a ceiling height of 20 m (65.6 ft).

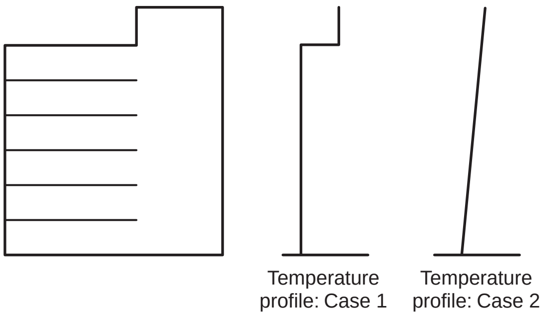


FIGURE B.4.6.3(a) *Pre-Fire Temperature Profiles.*

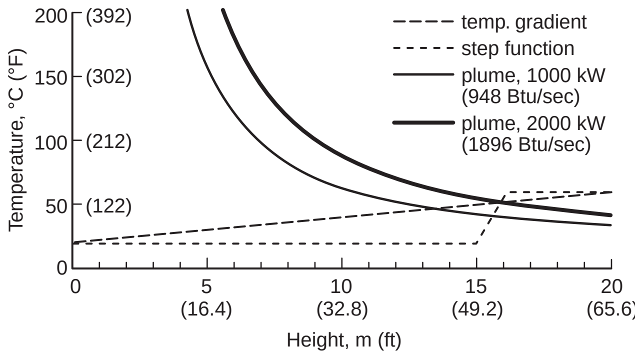


FIGURE B.4.6.3(b) *Indoor Air and Plume Temperature Profiles with Potential for Intermediate Stratification.*

B.4.6.3.1 Step Function Temperature Gradient Spaces. If the interior air temperature exhibits a discrete change at some elevation above the floor, the potential for stratification can be assessed by applying the plume centerline temperature correlation. If the plume centerline temperature is equal to the ambient temperature, the plume is no longer buoyant, loses its upward momentum, and stratifies at that height. The plume centerline temperature can be calculated by using the following equation:

$$T_c = 25\,Q_c^{2/3} z^{-5/3} + 20 \quad (\text{for SI units}) \tag{B.35a}$$

$$T_c = 316\,Q_c^{2/3} z^{-5/3} + 70 \quad (\text{for inch-pound units}) \tag{B.35b}$$

where:

T_c = plume centerline temperature (°C or °F)

Q_c = convective portion of fire heat release rate (kW or Btu/sec)

z = height above the top of the fuel package involved (m or ft)

B.4.6.3.2 Linear Temperature Gradient Spaces. To determine whether or not the rising smoke or heat from an axisymmetric fire plume will stratify below detectors, the following equation can be applied where the ambient temperature increases linearly with increasing elevation:

$$Z_m = 5.54\,Q_c^{1/4} \left(\frac{\Delta T_0}{dZ}\right)^{-3/8} \quad (\text{for SI units}) \tag{B.36a}$$

or

$$Z_m = 14.7\, Q_c^{1/4} \left(\frac{\Delta T_0}{dZ} \right)^{-3/8} \quad \text{(for inch-pound units)} \tag{B.36b}$$

where:

Z_m = maximum height of smoke rise above the fire surface (m or ft)

ΔT_0 = difference between the ambient temperature at the location of detectors and the ambient temperature at the level of the fire surface (°C or °F)

Q_c = convective portion of the heat release rate (kW or Btu/sec)

B.4.6.3.2.1 The convective portion of the heat release rate (Q_c) can be estimated as 70 percent of the heat release rate.

B.4.6.3.2.2 As an alternative to using the noted expression to directly calculate the maximum height to which the smoke or heat will rise, Figure B.4.6.3.2.2 can be used to determine Z_m for given fires. Where Z_m, as calculated or determined graphically, is greater than the installed height of detectors, smoke or heat from a rising fire plume is predicted to reach the detectors. Where the compared values of Z_m and the installed height of detectors are comparable heights, the prediction that smoke or heat will reach the detectors might not be a reliable expectation.

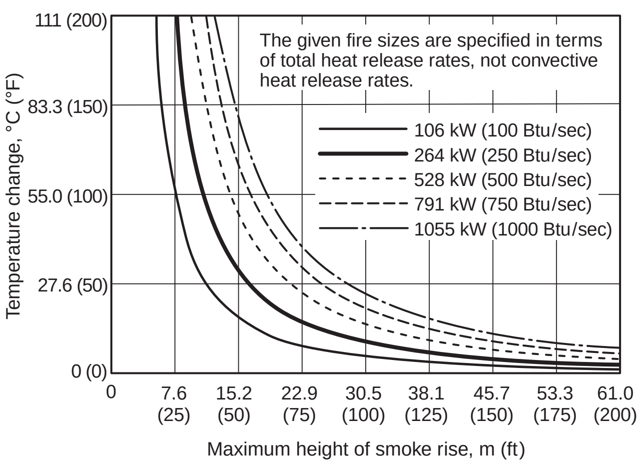


FIGURE B.4.6.3.2.2 *Temperature Change and Maximum Height of Smoke Rise for Given Fire Sizes.*

B.4.6.3.2.3 Assuming the ambient temperature varies linearly with the height, the minimum Q_c required to overcome the ambient temperature difference and drive the smoke to the ceiling ($Z_m = H$) can be determined from the following equation:

$$Q_c = 0.0018 H^{5/2} \Delta T_0^{3/2} \quad \text{(for SI units)} \tag{B.37a}$$

or

$$Q_c = 2.39 \times 10^{-5} H^{5/2} \Delta T_0^{3/2} \quad \text{(for inch-pound units)} \tag{B.37b}$$

Note that the variables are identified in Section B.7.

B.4.6.3.2.4 The theoretical basis for the stratification calculation is based on the works of Morton, Taylor, and Turner [15] and Heskestad [9]. For further information regarding the derivation of the expression defining Z_m, the user is referred to the work of Klote and Milke [13] and NFPA 92, *Standard for Smoke Control Systems*.

B.4.7 Detector Characteristics.

The following discussion applies primarily to spot-type smoke detectors. Although some of the comments might also apply to projected beam–type or air sampling–type smoke detectors, B.4.7 does not include a detailed discussion of those types of detectors. The original Fire Detection Institute research project conducted by Factory Mutual Research Corporation from 1976 to 1978 did not include projected beam–type and air sampling–type smoke detectors.

B.4.7.1 General. Once smoke is transported to the detector, additional factors become important in determining whether response will occur. These include the aerodynamic characteristics of the detector and the type of sensor within the detector. The aerodynamics of the detector relate to how easily smoke can pass through the detector housing and enter the sensor portion of the unit. Additionally, the location of the entry portion to the sensor with respect to the velocity profile of the ceiling jet is also an important factor. Finally, different sensing methods (e.g., ionization or photoelectric) will respond differently, depending on the smoke characteristics (smoke color, particle size, optical density, and so forth). Within the family of photoelectric devices, there will be variations depending on the wavelengths of light and the scattering angles employed. The following paragraphs discuss some of these issues and various calculation methods.

B.4.7.2 Resistance to Smoke Entry.

B.4.7.2.1 All spot-type smoke detectors require smoke to enter the detection chamber in order to be sensed. This requires additional factors to be taken into consideration when attempting to estimate smoke detector response, as smoke entry into the detection chamber can be affected in several ways, for example, insect screens, sensing chamber configuration, and location of the detector with respect to the ceiling.

Refer to 17.7.3.6.1 relating spot-type detectors and sampling ports. The International Fire Detection Research Project considered an issue directly related to air sampling–type detectors when it evaluated the flow velocity field in the immediate vicinity of the sampling port. This research showed that the sampling port does *not* produce the effect of drawing the smoke up to the sampling port from lower in the compartment. Consequently, air sampling–type detectors rely either on ambient air currents or on the fire plume and ceiling jet as much as spot-type smoke detectors do.

B.4.7.2.2 In trying to quantify this, Heskestad [32] developed the idea of smoke detector lag to explain the difference in optical density outside (D_{ur}) versus inside (D_{uo}) of a detector when the detector activates. It was demonstrated that this difference could be explained by the use of a correction factor D_{uc} using the following relationship:

$$D_{uc} = \frac{L\dfrac{d\left(D_u\right)}{dt}}{V} \qquad \textbf{(B.38)}$$

where:

L = characteristic length for a given detector design, represents the ease of smoke entry into the sensing chamber

$d(D_u)/dt$ = rate of increase of optical density outside the detector

V = velocity of the smoke at the detector

B.4.7.2.3 Various studies regarding this correlation have provided additional insight regarding smoke entry and associated lags [33, 34, 34a, 34b, 34c, 34d, 34e]; however, the difficulty in quantifying L for different detectors and relating it to spacing requirements can have limited usefulness, and the concept of critical velocity (u_c) could be more applicable. [21]

B.4.7.3 Critical Velocity. A smoke detector's critical velocity refers to the minimum velocity of the smoke necessary to enter the sensing chamber to cause an alarm without significant delays due to smoke entry lag. Alarms can occur at velocities less than the critical velocity value, but their response can be delayed or require greater smoke concentrations than would normally be necessary. Flow across a detector causes a pressure differential between the upstream and downstream sides of the detector. This pressure differential is the principal driving force for the smoke entering the unit.

Experimental work has indicated that the critical velocity is approximately 0.15 m/sec (0.49 ft/sec) for the ionization detectors tested in one particular study. [21] Once velocities were reduced below this level, the smoke concentration level outside the detector before an alarm condition increased dramatically when compared to smoke concentration levels when the velocity was above the critical value. Another study found that measured velocities at the time of alarm for ionization and photoelectric detectors in full-scale flaming fire tests generally supported this velocity value, with a mean value of 0.13 m/sec (0.43 ft/sec) and a standard deviation of 0.07 m/sec (0.23 ft/sec) [46]. Estimating the critical velocity can therefore be useful for design and analysis.

It is interesting to note that this critical velocity value (0.15 m/sec or 0.49 ft/sec) is close to that at which a smoke detector must respond in the UL smoke detector sensitivity chamber in order to become listed. [35] The location in the ceiling jet where this velocity occurs for a given fire and ceiling height might therefore be considered as a first approximation for locating detectors. This again assumes a horizontal, smooth ceiling. Care should also be taken when using this correlation, such that consideration is given to potential effects of coagulation and agglomeration, and settling of the smoke within the ceiling jet as it moves away from the fire source and loses its buoyancy. The velocity for smoke entry might be present, but the concentration of smoke might not be sufficient to activate the detector.

The need for a sufficient flow of smoke past a spot-type smoke detector to overcome the resistance to entry to the detection chamber has been recognized as an important factor for smoke detector activation. The phenomenon characterized as smoke entry lag was studied by Brozovski [1991], who established a critical velocity of approximately 0.15 m/sec (0.49 ft/sec) below which it was postulated that smoke detector response can be delayed. Currently, Annex B suggests using the critical velocity approach as a means of estimating the response of smoke detectors. Geiman [2003] reviewed a series of full-scale U.S. Navy tests from which only 50 smoke detector alarms were available with velocity data and performed a velocity threshold analysis against a database of full-scale tests. Commentary Table B.1 provides a statistical analysis of the available velocity magnitude data at the time of alarm with flaming fires.

Geiman's review of data is summarized in the following excerpt from his 2003 work:

For flaming fires, the velocity at alarm values (in units of m/s) are 0.07, 0.12, and 0.21 for the 20th, 50th, and 80th percentiles of the population respectively, with the arithmetic

COMMENTARY TABLE B.1 *Statistical Analysis of Velocity Magnitude (m/sec) at Time of Alarm with Flaming Fires*

Fire Type	*Detector Type*	*Nominal Sensitivity Optical Density*	*Nominal Sensitivity % Obscuration*	*Velocity 20% of Detectors Alarmed*	*Velocity 50% of Detectors Alarmed*	*Velocity 80% of Detectors Alarmed*	*Mean*	*Std Dev*	*Count*
Flaming	Ion	0.019 m^{-1}	1.3 ft^{-1}	0.07	0.10	0.20	0.13	0.07	9
Flaming	Ion	0.023 m^{-1}	1.6 ft^{-1}	0.05	0.11	0.20	0.12	0.08	8
Flaming	Photo	0.036 m^{-1}	2.5 ft^{-1}	0.09	0.12	0.23	0.15	0.09	7
Flaming	Photo	0.051 m^{-1}	3.5 ft^{-1}	0.08	0.12	0.14	0.12	0.07	6

Source: Based on Geiman [2003].

> mean value equal to 0.13 with a standard deviation of 0.07 [. . .] 67 percent of alarms during flaming fire tests occurred at or below 0.15 m/s. This result highlights the fact that although it has been termed a "critical velocity," alarms, in this case a majority of them, occur at velocities less than this value [...]

Based on Geiman's [2003] work, the use of velocity threshold does have merit for analysis of flaming fires, although not with the same degree of certainty as expected with temperature rise and optical density criteria.

B.4.7.4 Response to Smoke Color. Smoke detectors that use an optical means to detect smoke respond differently to smokes of different colors.

B.4.7.4.1 Manufacturers currently provide limited information regarding the response of smoke detectors in their specifications as well as in the information contained on the labels on the backs of the detectors. This response information indicates only their nominal response values with respect to gray smoke, not to black, and is often provided with a response range instead of an exact response value. This range is in accordance with ANSI/UL 268, *Standard for Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems*.

The sensitivity marked on the smoke detector label is part of the manufacturing quality monitoring protocols. The marking is not intended to be nor can it be used as a basis of design. The tests conducted in the course of a listing investigation include a sensitivity measurement in a "smoke box." The manufacturer marks the detector with its sensitivity, based upon the response obtained in the "smoke box" test as outlined in the listing investigation standard that was used. However, the sensitivity measurements obtained from this test are relevant only in the context of the smoke box and smoke used. The measurements are not intended to predict performance in any other context. Consequently, a marking of a nominal smoke obscuration of 0.6 percent to 4.0 percent obscuration per foot does not necessarily mean that an installed detector will respond to a real fire at that level of optical obscuration. Therefore, a designer must not base a design on this marked sensitivity.

Full-scale room fire tests are also conducted by the listing agencies during the listing evaluation of a smoke detector. The detectors are required to render an alarm when subjected to fires that ultimately produce smoke obscurations of 37 percent per foot for a paper fire, 17 percent per foot for a wood fire, 21 percent per foot for a heptane/toluene fire, and 10 percent per foot for a smoldering wood fire. These pass/fail tests do not provide a meaningful basis for predicting smoke detector performance.

B.4.7.4.2 The response ranges allowable by UL for gray smoke are shown in Table B.4.7.4.2. Older editions of ANSI/UL 268 contained response ranges for black smoke and are also shown for comparison.

Review of the most recent edition of ANSI/UL 268, *Standard for Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems,* reveals that UL is no longer conducting the black smoke test during the listing investigation. The values for black smoke shown in Table B.4.7.4.2 reflect the criteria in older editions. Consequently, designers using current products do not know how much the detector's sensitivity is affected by the differences in smoke color. The technical committee has been unable to find any basis to assume that black smoke performance has improved over what is presented in Table B.4.7.4.2.

B.4.7.4.3 Detectors respond at different optical density levels to different fuels and different types of smoke. Examples of this are shown in Table B.4.7.4.3, which contains values of optical density at response recommended by Heskestad and Delichatsios [10] based on their test.

Note the large variations in response not only to materials producing relatively the same color of smoke but also to smoke of different color, which is much more pronounced. Also

TABLE B.4.7.4.2 *ANSI/UL 268 Smoke Detector Test Acceptance Criteria for Different Colored Smoke [35]*

	Acceptable Response Range	
Color of Smoke	***%/m***	***%/ft***
Gray	1.6–12.5	0.5–4.0
Black	5.0–29.2	1.5–10.0

TABLE B.4.7.4.3 *Values of Optical Density at Response for Flaming Fires [18]*

	Optical Density at Response				
	$D_{ur}(m^{-1})$		$D_{ur}(ft^{-1})$		
Material	***Ionization***	***Photoelectric***	***Ionization***	***Photoelectric***	***Relative Smoke Color***
Wood crib	0.016	0.049	0.005	0.015	Light
Cotton fabric	0.002	0.026	0.0005	0.008	Light
Polyurethane foam	0.164	0.164	0.05	0.05	Dark
PVC	0.328	0.328	0.1	0.1	Dark
Variation			200:1	12.5:1	

note that there was variation in the optical density at response values for a given material in the test conducted by Heskestad and Delichatsios, which is not shown in Table B.4.7.4.3. The values cited in Table B.4.7.4.3 are provided as an example of the variation in optical density at response, but these values are not necessarily appropriate for all analyses. For example, the results presented for polyurethane and PVC involved relatively large, rapidly developing fires, and fires with smaller growth rates could result in smaller values of optical density at response [10]. More information on the variation of optical density at response is available from Geiman and Gottuk [48] and Geiman [46].

B.4.7.5 Optical Density and Temperature. During a flaming fire, smoke detector response is affected by ceiling height and the size and rate of fire growth in much the same way as heat detector response. The thermal energy of the flaming fire transports smoke particles to the sensing chamber just as it does heat to a heat sensor. While the relationship between the amount of smoke and the amount of heat produced by a fire is highly dependent on the fuel and the way it is burning, research has shown that the relationship between temperature and the optical density of smoke remains somewhat constant within the fire plume and on the ceiling in the proximity of the plume.

B.4.7.5.1 These results were based on the work by Heskestad and Delichatsios [10] and are indicated in Table B.4.7.5.1. Note that for a given fuel, the optical density to temperature rise ratio between the maximum and minimum levels is 10 or less.

B.4.7.5.2 In situations where the optical density at detector response is known and is independent of particle size distribution, the detector response can be approximated as a function of the heat release rate of the burning fuel, the fire growth rate, and the ceiling height, assuming that the preceding correlation exists.

B.4.7.5.3 When Appendix C of NFPA 72E (no longer in print) was first published in 1984, a 13°C (20°F) temperature rise was used to indicate detector response. Schifiliti and Pucci [18] have combined some of the data from Heskestad and Delichatsios [10] to produce Table B.4.7.5.3 showing the temperature rise at detector response. Note that the temperature rise associated with detector response varies significantly depending on the detector type and fuel.

***TABLE B.4.7.5.1** Ratio of Optical Density to Temperature Rise*

	$D_u/\Delta T$ [(m°C)$^{-1}$]		$D_u/\Delta T$ [(ft°F)$^{-1}$]		
Material	***Representative Value***	***Value Range***	***Representative Value***	***Value Range***	***Maximum: Minimum***
Wood (sugar pine, 5% moist)	1.20E-03	8.9E-4–3.2E-3	2.00E-04	1.5E–5.5E-4	3.7:1
Cotton (unbleached muslin fabric)	5.9E-4/1.2E-3	3.0E-4–1.8E-3	1.0E-04/2.0–4	5.0E-5–3.0E-4	6:1
Paper (in trash can)	1.80E-03	Data not available	3.00E-04	Data not available	—
Polyurethane foam	2.40E-03	1.2E-2–3.2E-2	4.00E-04	2.0E-3–5.5E-3	2.8:1
Polyester fiber (bed pillow)	1.80E-02	Data not available	5.0E-3/1.0E-2	Data not available	—
PVC (wire insulation)	3.0E-2/5.9E-2	5.9E-3–5.9E-2	3.00E-03	1.0E-3–1.0E-2	10:1
Foam rubber PU (sofa cushion)	7.70E-02	Data not available	1.30E-02	Data not available	—
Average	2.10E-02	3.0E-4–7.7E-2	3.60E-03	5.0E-05–1.3E-2	260:1

***TABLE B.4.7.5.3** Temperature Rise for Detector Response [18]*

	Ionization Temperature Rise		***Scattering Temperature Rise***	
Material	***°C***	***°F***	***°C***	***°F***
Wood	13.9	25	41.7	75
Cotton	1.7	3	27.8	50
Polyurethane	7.2	13	7.2	13
PVC	7.2	13	7.2	13
Average	7.8	14	21.1	38

Also note that the values in Table B.4.7.5.3 are not based on temperature measurements taken at the detector response times, but were calculated by Heskestad and Delichatsios [10] from their recommended values of optical density at response (Table B.4.7.4.3) and their recommended ratios of optical density to temperature rise (Table B.4.7.5.1).

Several experimental studies have cited temperature rises at detection as low as 1°C to 3°C (1.8°F to 5.4°F). Of particular note, Geiman [46] found that for flaming fires, 80 percent of the ionization detectors examined in full-scale smoke detection tests alarmed at measured temperature rises less than or equal to 3°C (5.4°F).

A careful review of the original report by Heskestad and Delichatsios [1977] shows that they never really advanced the idea of a fixed correlation between temperature increase and optical density. Other researchers, referencing the 1978 FM research by Heskestad and Delichatsios, have concluded that one must exist, and 13°C (20°F) became the default value for a number of fire modeling programs [Evans and Stroup 1986; Schifiliti and Pucci, 1996]. Much more realistic predictions are obtained by using values closer to 2°C to 5°C (3.6°F to 9°F). However, these are response estimates and are subject to wide margins of error based upon temperature conditions within the compartment, fuel, fuel moisture content, ventilation, and a host of detector-related variables.

B.4.8 Methods for Estimating Smoke Detector Response.

B.4.8.1 General. There are various methods to estimate smoke detector response. Research is still needed in this area to reflect smoke production, transport to the detector, response of the detector, and performance metrics of the smoke detector. Designers should be aware of the advantages and disadvantages, as well as limitations, of these methods and undertake sensitivity analyses and use of multiple methods where applicable.

B.4.8.1.1 Method 1 — Optical Density Versus Temperature.

B.4.8.1.2 It is intended to determine whether an existing fire detection system can detect a fire in part of a warehouse used to store wardrobes in sufficient time to prevent radiant ignition of adjacent wardrobes. The area under review has a large, flat ceiling, 5 m (16.5 ft) high. The ambient temperature within the compartment is 20°C (68°F). The compartment is not sprinklered. The wardrobes are constructed mainly of particleboard. The detectors are ionization-type smoke detectors spaced 6.1 m (20 ft) on center. The design objective is to keep the maximum heat release rate (Q_{DO}) below 2 MW (1897 Btu/sec) in order to ensure that radiant ignition of the wardrobes in the adjacent aisle will not occur. There is an on-site fire brigade that can respond to and begin discharging water on the fire within 90 seconds of receiving the alarm. It can be assumed that there are no other delays between the time the detector reaches its operating threshold and the time to notification of the fire brigade. Given this information, would the existing system be sufficient?

B.4.8.1.3 The following assumptions are made for this example:

$$\alpha = 0.047 \text{ kW/sec}^2 \ \left(0.044 \text{ Btu/sec}^3\right)$$
$$\text{RTI} = 25 \text{ m}^{1/2}\text{sec}^{1/2} \ \left(45 \text{ ft}^{1/2} \text{ sec}^{1/2}\right)$$

Temperature rise for response = 14°C (25°F)

Refer to Table B.4.7.5.3 for temperature rise to response of an ionization smoke detector for a wood fire.

B.4.8.1.4 Using the power law equation, the design objective response time is calculated as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} Q_{DO} &= \alpha t_{DO}^2 \\ 2000 \text{ kW} &= 0.047 \text{ kW/sec}^2 \ (t_{DO}^2) \\ t_{DO} &= 210 \text{ sec} \end{aligned} \qquad \textbf{(B.39)}$$

or

$$\begin{aligned} 1897 \text{ Btu/sec} &= 0.044 \text{ Btu/sec}^3 \ (t_{DO}^2) \\ t_{DO} &= 210 \text{ sec} \end{aligned}$$

B.4.8.1.5 Next, subtract the time for the fire brigade to respond to determine what time after ignition that detection should occur. Note that a 30-second safety factor has been added to the fire brigade's response time.

$$t_{CR} = 210 \text{ sec} - 120 \text{ sec} = 90 \text{ sec} \qquad \textbf{(B.40)}$$

B.4.8.1.6 Then calculate the critical heat release rate at which detection should occur as follows:

$$\begin{aligned} Q_{CR} &= \alpha t_{CR}^2 \\ Q_{CR} &= 0.047 \text{ kW/sec}^2 \left(90 \text{ sec}\right)^2 = 380 \text{ kW} \end{aligned} \qquad \textbf{(B.41)}$$

or

$$Q_{CR} = 0.044 \text{ Btu/sec}^3 \left(90 \text{ sec}\right)^2 = 360 \text{ Btu/sec}$$

Although the assumptions in B.4.8.1.3 use a 14°C (25°F) temperature rise correlation, this is not intended to suggest that 14°C (25°F) should be used. Many designers use values between 2°C and 5°C (3.6°F and 9°F) for smoke detector response estimates. Once again, the designer should perform a sensitivity analysis on pertinent variables used in this analysis to determine if the results inordinately rely on specific parameter values. For example, considerable variation exists in the response range of the detectors. The value range column in Table B.4.7.5.1 illustrates this variation.

B.4.8.1.7 Using the numbers in the fire detection design and analysis worksheet at 90 seconds into the fire when the heat release rate is 380 kW (360 Btu/sec), the temperature rise at the detector is calculated to be approximately 17°C (30.6°F). This, therefore, might be a reasonable approximation to show that the detector might respond.

B.4.8.2 Method 2 — Mass Optical Density.

B.4.8.2.1 Data regarding smoke characteristics for given fuels can be used as another method to evaluate detector response.

B.4.8.2.2 The following example is provided.

The design objective established for this scenario is to detect the smoke from a flaming 400 g (1.0 lb) polyurethane chair cushion in less than 2 minutes. The chair is placed in a compartment that is 40 m² (431 ft²). The ceiling height is 3.0 m (10 ft). It has been determined that the burning rate of the cushion is a steady rate of 50 g/min (0.09 lb/min). Determine whether the design objective will be met.

B.4.8.2.3 The total mass loss of the cushion due to combustion at 2 minutes is 100 g (0.22 lb). Therefore, the optical density in the room produced by the burning cushion can be calculated from the following equation: [5]

$$D = \frac{D_m M}{V_c} \tag{B.42}$$

where:

D_m = mass optical density (m^2/g) [26]

M = mass (g)

V_c = volume of the compartment

D = $[(0.22\ m^2/g)(100\ g)]/(40\ m^2)(3\ m) = 0.183\ m^{-1}$

or

where:

D_m = mass optical density (ft^2/lb) [26]

M = mass (lb)

V_c = volume of the compartment

D = $[(1075\ ft^2/lb)(0.22\ lb)]/(431\ ft^2)(9.8\ ft) = 0.056\ ft^{-1}$

B.4.8.2.4 If it is assumed that the detector responds at an optical density of 0.15 m^{-1} (0.046 ft^{-1}), the maximum black smoke optical density allowed in a previous edition of the ANSI/UL 268 sensitivity test [35], it can be assumed that the detector will respond within 2 minutes.

The conversion from percent obscuration (*O*), measured in percent per foot, to obscuration, measured in m^{-1}, is not a simple one. The obscuration of 0.15 m^{-1} is the UL upper limit for black smoke, 10 percent per foot. Note that percent obscuration measured in percent per meter is not a common practice.

Percent obscuration, O, is obtained from

$$O = 100\ (1 - I/I_0)$$

where:
I = light intensity received by the photocell in the presence of smoke
I_0 = intensity received by the photocell in clear air

Percent obscuration per unit of distance, O_u, is obtained from:

$$O_u = 100\ [1 - (I/I_0)^{1/L}]$$

where L = distance over which the obscuration was measured.

Optical density, D, is a different measurement and is obtained from

$$D = \log_{10}(I_0/I) = -\log_{10}(I/I_0)$$

Optical density per unit of distance, D_u, also called *obscuration,* is obtained from

$$D_u = D/L = (1/L) \cdot \log_{10}(I_0/I) = -(1/L) \cdot \log_{10}(I/I_0)$$

Thus, D_u has units of m^{-1}.

B.4.8.2.5 It should be noted that this method presents a very simplified approach, and that various assumptions would need to be made including that the smoke is confined to the room, is well mixed, can reach the ceiling, and can enter the detector.

B.4.8.2.6 The preceding estimation assumes that the smoke is evenly distributed throughout the entire compartment volume. This is rarely the case but establishes a very conservative limit. For design purposes, one can model the smoke layer as a cylindrical volume centered about the fire plume having a depth equivalent to the ceiling jet thickness or some multiple of it. Refer to Figure B.4.8.2.6.

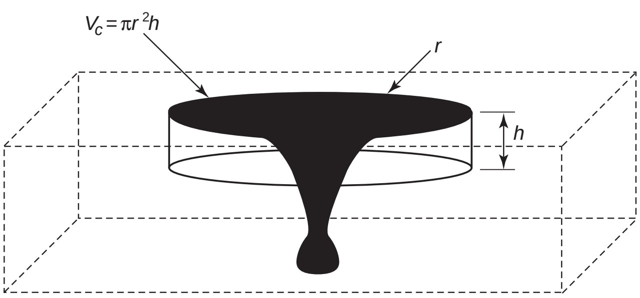


FIGURE B.4.8.2.6 *Smoke Layer Volume Model.*

The volume of the cylinder can now be used as the solution volume:

$$D = \frac{D_m M}{V_c} \quad \textbf{(B.43)}$$

is used with the substitution of

$$V_c = \pi r^2 h \quad \textbf{(B.44)}$$

To obtain the maximum radius from the fire plume center-line at which detector response is expected, the nominal 0.14 m^{-1} optical density criterion is substituted into the relation and an explicit relation for r is obtained,

$$r = \left(\frac{D_m M}{0.14\pi h}\right)^{1/2} \quad \textbf{(B.45)}$$

Note that the results of this calculation are highly dependent upon the assumed layer thickness, h. The designer must carefully document the value used for the ceiling jet thickness for this reason. This method does not assume any minimum velocity across the detector, nor does it provide for any delay due to smoke entry. Finally, it assumes uniform smoke concentration throughout the solution volume. Failure to use prudently selected values for ceiling jet thickness and use of this relation outside the limitations imposed by the assumptions can lead to invalid designs.

The use of a cylindrical volume solution, noted in B.4.8.2.6, is valid only for cases where response is expected before the ceiling jet impinges upon a compartment wall. Once the ceiling jet impinges upon a wall, the ceiling jet begins to deepen. Under these circumstances, the user should modify the equation to use a rectilinear volume rather than a cylindrical volume for the solution volume, V_c.

Also, although it is customary to deem that the ceiling jet occupies a depth of approximately 10 percent of the floor-to-ceiling thickness, use of that thickness in this response estimation leads to very optimistic results. More realistic results are obtained when a ceiling jet thickness of 20 to 25 percent of the floor-to-ceiling height is assumed.

B.4.8.2.7 The mass optical density method also enables the designer to analyze existing systems. When we accept the assumption that smoke detectors listed by UL will respond at an optical density of 0.14 m^{-1}, we can write the relation:

$$D_A = 0.14 = \frac{D_m M}{V_c} \quad \textbf{(B.46)}$$

and thus

$$M = D_A \pi r^2 h / D_m \quad \textbf{(B.47)}$$

for a cylindrical solution volume.

Since $H(t) = M\Delta H_c$ and $H(t) = (\alpha t^3)/3$, we can write the relation

$$M = \frac{(\alpha t^3)}{3\Delta H_c} \quad \textbf{(B.48)}$$

Substituting, this leads to the relation

$$\frac{(\alpha t^3)}{3\Delta H_c} = \frac{D_A \pi r^2 h}{D_m} \quad \textbf{(B.49)}$$

This relation is reorganized to be explicit in t,

$$t = \left(\frac{3D_A \pi r^2 h \Delta H_c}{\alpha D_m}\right)^{1/3} \quad \textbf{(B.50)}$$

This time estimate must be corrected for the lag time produced by the resistance to smoke entry of the detector. Currently, this time delay, which is a function of detector design and ceiling jet velocity, is not quantified in the listing process. Consequently, the designer must make an estimate of the time delay due to smoke entry, t_e. Thus, the response time estimate becomes:

$$t = \left(\frac{3D_A \pi r^2 h \Delta H_c}{\alpha D_m} \right)^{1/3} + t_e \quad \textbf{(B.51)}$$

This relation predicts the time at which the mass optical density attains the detector alarm threshold in the solution volume derived from the detector spacing and an assumed ceiling jet thickness. Again, the results of this calculation are highly dependent upon the assumed ceiling jet layer thickness. However, once time, t, is known, if the fire can be characterized as a t-square fire, the fire size can be calculated from the relation

$$Q = \alpha t^2 \quad \textbf{(B.52)}$$

Consequently, substitution of this relation into the preceding relation yields the final analytical relation for the heat release rate at alarm, Q_a:

$$Q_a = \alpha \left[\left(\frac{3D_A \pi r^2 h \Delta H_c}{\alpha D_m} \right)^{1/3} + t_e \right]^2 \quad \textbf{(B.53)}$$

This relation provides an estimate of detector response subject to the assumptions and values selected or the relevant parameters. The estimate can be no better than the data used to generate it.

When using this method for system analysis, as when using the method noted in B.4.8.2.6 for design, the use of a cylindrical volume solution is valid only for cases where response is expected before the ceiling jet impinges upon a compartment wall. Once the ceiling jet impinges upon a wall, the ceiling jet begins to deepen. Under these circumstances the user should modify the equation to use a rectilinear volume rather than a cylindrical volume for the solution volume, V_c.

Also, although it is customary to deem that the ceiling jet occupies a depth of approximately 10 percent of the floor-to-ceiling thickness, use of that thickness in this response estimation leads to very optimistic results. More realistic results are obtained when a ceiling jet thickness of 20 to 25 percent of the floor-to-ceiling height is assumed.

B.4.8.3 Critical Velocity Method. Research shows that a minimum critical velocity is necessary before smoke can enter the sensing chamber of the smoke detector. *(See B.4.7.3.)* This method assumes that, if this critical velocity has been attained, sufficient smoke concentration is in the ceiling jet gas flow to produce an alarm signal. Ceiling jet velocity correlations exist for steady-state fires, not t-square fires. However, a t-square fire can be modeled as a succession of steady-state fires for slow and medium growth rate fires. In the UL smoke box test, the minimum flow velocity at the detector is 0.152 m/sec (30 ft/minute). The correlation

$$\frac{0.195\left(Q^{1/3} H^{1/2}\right)}{r^{5/6}} \quad \text{for } r/h \geq 0.15 \quad \textbf{(B.54)}$$

is used. U_r is set to equal 0.152 m/sec. With this substitution the relation becomes:

$$r \leq \left(1.28 Q_c^{\ 1/3} H^{1/2}\right)^{6/5} \quad \textbf{(B.55)}$$

This relation is solved to obtain the maximum distance between the fire plume centerline and the detector at which the critical jet velocity is expected to be obtained for the given convective heat release rate and ceiling height.

The critical velocity method noted in B.4.8.3 is derived from correlations that were developed for steady-state fires. Consequently, response estimates based on this critical velocity relation tend to overestimate response when used for t-squared fires. The error becomes very large as the fire growth rate increases. Furthermore, this method does not take into account the changes in smoke concentration and content as the smoke ages during flow from the plume toward the detector. The smoke is cooling due to expansion and cool air entrainment. This cooling causes the condensation of gas constituents into liquid droplets and the coagulation of solid particles into aggregates. These changes in the constitution of the smoke can reduce the effective concentration and affect the ability of the detector to detect the smoke particulate that eventually arrives at the detector. The critical velocity method is therefore the least credible of the three response estimations available for smoke detectors.

B.4.9 Projected Beam Smoke Detection.

B.4.9.1 Projected beam smoke detection is often used in large open spaces with high ceilings where the use of spot-type detectors is impractical due to the problems of smoke stratification. In these spaces, there is questionable basis for the use of the prescriptive spacings presented in Section 17.7. However, beams can be installed such that, regardless of the fire origin, the plume will intersect at least one beam. To employ this strategy, the plume divergence is calculated as a function of the altitude at which the projected beam detectors are installed. The region of relatively uniform temperature and smoke density in a buoyant plume diverges at an angle of approximately 22 degrees, as shown in Figure B.4.9.1.

Another method involves assessing the smoke obstruction through the plume to determine the reduction in light from the receiver to the transmitter of the beam-type smoke detector to determine whether the detector might respond. [47]

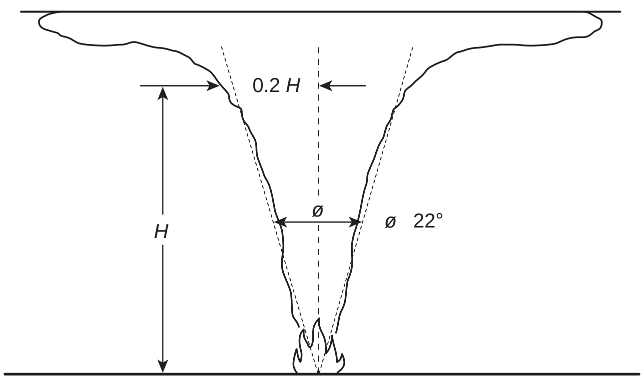


***FIGURE B.4.9.1** The Plume Divergence of an Unconstrained Fire.*

B.4.10 Effects of HVAC Systems. The requirement to address the effects of HVAC systems on the performance of smoke detectors was historically reduced to a "3-foot rule." However, research conducted under the auspices of the Fire Protection Research Foundation showed that such a simple rule was not adequate in many cases.

Theoretically, the effect of HVAC flows on the performance of smoke detectors can be implemented by calculating the flow velocity and smoke concentration at the detector as a function of fire growth and HVAC operating parameters. With complex ceilings this often requires the use of computational fluid dynamics models running in computers. One such model is FDS, developed and supported by NIST.

However, for simple, planar ceilings at heights customarily encountered in conventional construction, the effects of HVAC system can be estimated using a simplified calculation derived from well-known correlations to identify where a problem is likely. These simple calculations are not a substitute for a fully modeled scenario, but they provide the advantage of being easily executed in a short time frame.

Ceiling-mounted HVAC system supply and return registers are designed to produce specific airflow patterns. The exact shape of the velocity and flow volume profiles is determined by the physical design of the register. A commercially available register might exhibit a flow profile as shown in Figure B.4.10.

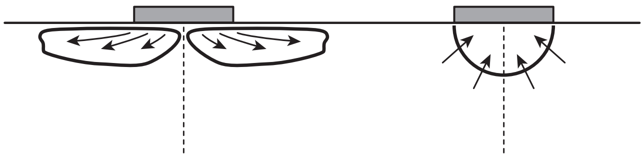


FIGURE B.4.10 *Typical HVAC Flow Patterns in Mercantile and Business Occupancies.*

This section considers two cases. The first is where the ceiling jet is being acted upon by an HVAC system supply. The second is where the ceiling jet is being acted upon by an HVAC system return. Each case is considered in its bounding value condition to provide a worst-case estimate of the resulting velocity at the detector.

In the first case, the flow of air from the ceiling supply can divert, impede, and dilute the ceiling jet flow, retarding detector response. This effect can be estimated using a one-dimensional vector analysis of the velocity produced by the HVAC system versus that produced by the fire. The velocity profile produced by the HVAC supply register is determined by the design of the register and the flow volume supplied to it. The velocity at the detector produced by the fire is an artifact of the ceiling jet. The sum of these two velocities versus the minimum velocity for response can be used to determine if sufficient ceiling jet velocity exists at the detector to initiate an alarm.

In the second case, the HVAC return pulls air up from lower elevations in the compartment, diluting the smoke density in the ceiling jet in the vicinity of the HVAC return. This case is much more difficult to evaluate because it implies a flow volume analysis to determine when the flow to ceiling-mounted HVAC returns will distort the concentration profile of the ceiling jet to the point that it adversely affects detector response. Unfortunately, the listings of smoke detectors do not include an explicit measurable value for detector sensitivity in terms that can relate to the design fire.

B.4.10.1 Effects of HVAC Ceiling Supply Registers. This method makes use of the finding that there is a critical minimum velocity necessary for reliable smoke detector response. The use of the 30 ft/min (0.15 m/sec) flow velocity in the UL 268 and 217 smoke detector sensitivity test for spot-type smoke detectors has led to the evolution of spot-type smoke detectors that are optimized for that flow velocity. In listing investigations, it has been learned that when the ceiling jet velocity is less than the nominal 30 ft/min (0.15 m/sec) commercially available, listed spot-type smoke detector, performance begins to suffer. *(See B.4.7.3.)*

For the prediction of spot-type smoke detector response we assume that the ceiling jet velocity at the detector must exceed this critical velocity, 0.15 m/sec (30 ft/min), at the detector. The flow from an HVAC system supply register also produces a flow velocity. When a fire occurs in a room equipped with ceiling-mounted HVAC system supply, the velocity at the detector is the vector sum of the velocity due to the HVAC system supply and the fire ceiling jet.

To estimate the resultant flow velocity at a smoke detector, the flow velocity from the ceiling supply is determined as a function of register design, flow volume, and distance from the supply register. The velocity produced by the ceiling jet is calculated as a function of distance from the fire plume. The worst-case limit condition is where the detector location is where the ceiling jet flow is directly opposite in direction to the flow from the HVAC supply register. Consequently, it is assumed that the ceiling jet is flowing in the opposite direction of the flow from the ceiling register.

The flow of air into a compartment via the HVAC system can be estimated by the flow volume and a flow factor that is related to the flow characteristics of the supply register. See Figure B.4.10.1(a) for an example of such characteristics.

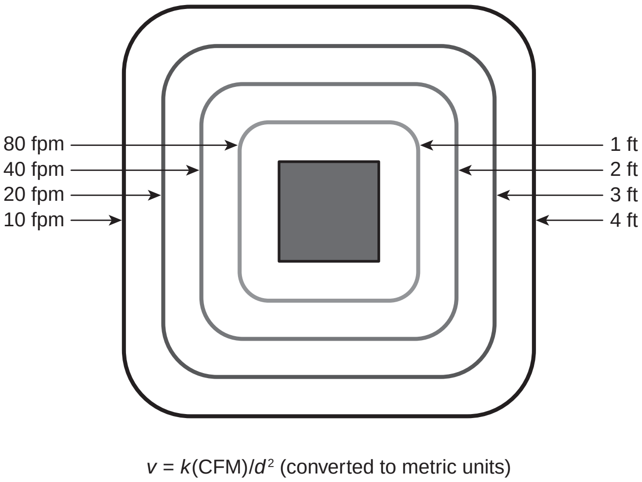


FIGURE B.4.10.1(a) *Typical HVAC Velocity Versus Flow Volume Diagram that Might be Used to Describe Operation of Supply Register.*

The manufacturer of the ceiling supply register provides a velocity diagram that depicts flow velocity as a function of flow volume for each register it produces. In the U.S., these diagrams generally use conventional feet per minute (FPM) and cubic feet per minute (CFM) units. Since fire protection engineering correlations are generally expressed in metric units, it is necessary to convert the flow volume and flow velocity from the HVAC system to metric units. Replacing CFM with flow volume per unit time this relation becomes:

$$v_r = k(V)/d^2 \text{ m/sec} \qquad \textbf{(B.56)}$$

Where v_r is the velocity due to the register.

The ceiling jet velocity can be modeled with the relation for critical velocity developed by Alpert.

$$v_d = 0.195(Q_c^{1/3}H^{1/2})r^{5/6} \text{ m/sec} \qquad \textbf{(B.57)}$$

The flow at the detector is the sum of the velocity from the ceiling jet and the ceiling supply register. Since the worst-case scenario is where the fire is located such that the flow of the ceiling jet is directly opposed to the flow from the HVAC supply register, this scenario forms the basis for the analysis as shown in Figure B.4.10.1(b).

The velocity from the ceiling jet is derived from Alpert's correlations.

$$v_d = 0.195(Q_c^{1/3}H^{1/2})r^{5/6} \qquad \textbf{(B.58)}$$

where:

v_d = ceiling jet velocity at the detector
Q_c = convective heat release, 0.65 Q
H = ceiling height
r = radius, distance between plume centerline and the detector

All in metric units.

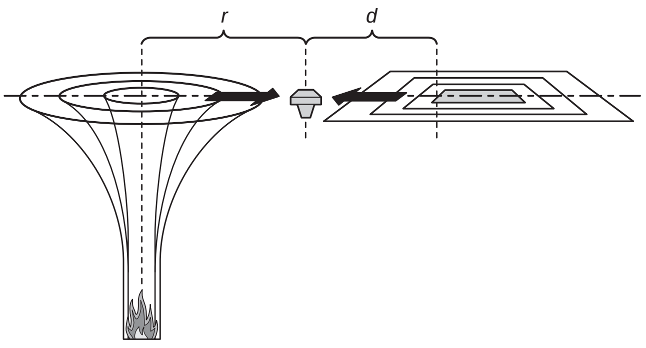


FIGURE B.4.10.1(b) Ceiling Jet Flow in Opposition to Flow from HVAC System.

In the case of opposing flows, the resultant velocity at the detector is the ceiling jet velocity minus the velocity due to the flow from the HVAC supply. The relation becomes:

$$v_d = 0.195(Q_c^{1/3}H^{1/2})/r^{5/6} - k(V)/d^2 \quad \textbf{(B.59)}$$

Smoke detector response can be expected to be consistent with its listing when the value of v_d is greater than or equal to 0.15 m/sec. Thus the relation becomes:

$$0.15\,\text{m/sec} \leq 0.195(Q_c^{1/3}H^{1/2})/r^{5/6} - k(CFM)/d^2 \quad \textbf{(B.60)}$$

If the right-hand side of the equation B.60 exceeds the left, the airflow from the HVAC register should not be sufficient to reduce the ceiling jet flow from the fire plume to the point where response by a smoke detector would not be expected. On the other hand, if the calculated resultant velocity is less than the 0.15 m/sec threshold, adjustments should be made to the design to locate the smoke detector where there will be sufficient ceiling jet velocity to predict alarm response.

B.4.10.2 Effects of HVAC Returns. When detectors are in close proximity to ceiling-mounted HVAC return grilles, the flow of air upward toward the return grille tends to dilute and cool the ceiling jet. This tends to retard the response of detectors. Unfortunately the geometry is more complex in this case. The ceiling jet is moving horizontally across the ceiling while the flow toward a ceiling-mounted return grille is essentially moving vertically.

Most ceiling return grilles usually exhibit a flow velocity profile that is roughly hemispherical in shape, centered on the duct centerline. Figure B.4.10.2 illustrates this flow velocity profile.

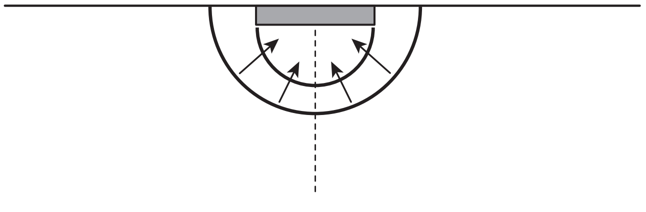


FIGURE B.4.10.2 Velocity Profile for Ceiling-Mounted Return Grille.

As the radial distance from the HVAC return increases, the velocity drops off quite rapidly, proportional to 4π times the square of the increase in distance. The relative velocity contributions could be again used to calculate the relative effect, but in this case an explicit sensitivity parameter that relates to the design fire is not available. Percent per foot obscuration cannot be reliably used.

However, the bounding value, worst-case scenario is where the upward velocity is modeled as if it is flowing directly opposite to that of the ceiling jet. This reduces to the same analysis as for the ceiling supply.

These calculations do NOT replace CFD modeling. They are limited only for level ceilings of heights normally encountered in commercial construction. In that limited context they can be used to predict smoke detector performance.

B.5 Radiant Energy Detection

The Technical Committee on Initiating Devices for Fire Alarm and Signaling Systems introduced performance-based design criteria in the section on radiant energy–sensing fire detectors in the 1990 edition of NFPA 72E, *Automatic Fire Detectors*. Because a performance-based design method is the only permissible means to design a detection system using radiant energy–sensing fire detectors, the authors have added this commentary in Section B.5 to provide the designer with more specific guidance on how to design consistently with the performance criteria in the Code. Section B.5 does *not* provide an alternative method to that required by the body of the Code. Instead, Section B.5 outlines how to meet the current requirements of the Code.

B.5.1 General.

B.5.1.1 Electromagnetic Radiation. Electromagnetic radiation is emitted over a broad range of the spectrum during the combustion process. The portion of the spectrum in which radiant energy–sensing detectors operate has been divided into three bands: ultraviolet (UV), visible, or infrared (IR). These wavelengths are defined with the following wavelength ranges: [3]

(1) Ultraviolet 0.1–0.35 microns
(2) Visible 0.35–0.75 microns
(3) Infrared 0.75–220 microns

B.5.1.2 Wavelength. These wavelength ranges correspond to the quantum-mechanical interaction between matter and energy. Photonic interactions with matter can be characterized by wavelength as shown in Table B.5.1.2.

TABLE B.5.1.2 *Wavelength Ranges*

Wavelength	*Photonic Interaction*
$\lambda < 50$ micron	Gross molecular translations
$50\ \mu m < \lambda < 1.0\ \mu m$	Molecular vibrations and rotations
$1.0\ \mu m < \lambda < 0.05\ \mu m$	Valence electron bond vibrations
$0.3\ \mu m < \lambda < 0.05\ \mu m$	Electron stripping and recombinations

B.5.1.3 Photon Transfer. When a fuel molecule is oxidized in the combustion process, the combustion intermediate molecule must lose energy to become a stable molecular species. This energy is emitted as a photon with a unique wavelength determined by the following equation:

$$e = \frac{hc}{\lambda} \tag{B.61}$$

where:

e = energy (joules)

h = Planck's constant (6.63E-23 joule-sec)

c = speed of light (m/sec)

λ = wavelength (microns)

[1.0 joule = 5.0345E+18(λ), where λ is measured in microns.]

B.5.1.4 Type of Detector. The choice of the type of radiant energy–sensing detector to use is determined by the type of emissions that are expected from the fire radiator.

B.5.1.4.1 Fuels that produce a flame, a stream of combustible or flammable gases involved in the combustion reaction with a gaseous oxidizer, radiate quantum emissions. These fuels include flammable gases, flammable liquids, combustible liquids, and solids that are burning with a flame.

B.5.1.4.2 Fuels that are oxidized in the solid phase or radiators that are emitting due to their internal temperature (sparks and embers) radiate Planckian emissions. These fuels include carbonaceous fuels such as coal, charcoal, wood, and cellulosic fibers that are burning without an established flame, as well as metals that have been heated due to mechanical impacts and friction.

B.5.1.4.3 Almost all combustion events produce Planckian emissions, emissions that are the result of the thermal energy in the fuel mass. Therefore, spark/ember detectors that are designed to detect these emissions are not fuel specific. Flame detectors detect quantum emissions that are the result of changes in molecular structure and energy state in the gas phase. These emissions are uniquely associated with particular molecular structures. This can result in a flame detector that is very fuel specific.

If a photon could be held in the hand, it could not be determined whether it was a Planckian photon or a quantum photon. The distinction between the two merely alludes to the theory of physics that explains the mechanism of their formation. Designers should note this distinction because it helps in the detector selection process. Designers must understand what emits photons and why — only then can they select the appropriate type of detection device.

B.5.1.5 Effects of Ambient. The choice of radiant energy–sensing detector is also limited by the effect of ambient conditions. The design must take into account the radiant energy absorption of the atmosphere, presence of non-fire-related radiation sources that might cause nuisance alarms, the electromagnetic energy of the spark, ember, or fire to be detected, the distance from the fire source to the sensor, and characteristics of the sensor.

The assumption that the fire can be modeled as a point-source radiator is rarely unjustified. When conditions are such that the fire to be detected is too close to the detector for the point-source radiator assumption to be valid, there is also no doubt that the fire will be detected.

The response model is derived from first principles of physics. Since conventional flame detectors merely measure radiant intensity as a function of time to infer the presence of a flame, this simple response model is sufficient. Video image flame detectors use not only intensity but also image recognition. At this juncture, the technical committee does not have sufficient information about the performance limitations on the video image flame detectors to develop an analogous model for that technology.

B.5.1.5.1 Ambient Non-Fire Radiators. Most ambients contain non-fire radiators that can emit at wavelengths used by radiant energy–sensing detectors for fire detection. The designer should make a thorough evaluation of the ambient to identify radiators that have the potential for producing unwarranted alarm response from radiant energy–sensing detectors. Since radiant energy–sensing detectors use electronic components that can act as antennas, the evaluation should include radio band, microwave, infrared, visible, and ultraviolet sources.

B.5.1.5.2 Ambient Radiant Absorbance. The medium through which radiant energy passes from fire source to detector has a finite transmittance. Transmittance is usually quantified by its reciprocal, absorbance. Absorbance by atmospheric species varies with wavelength. Gaseous species absorb at the same wavelengths that they emit. Particulate species can transmit, reflect, or absorb radiant emission, and the proportion that is absorbed is expressed as the reciprocal of its emissivity, ε.

B.5.1.5.3 Contamination of Optical Surfaces. Radiant energy can be absorbed or reflected by materials contaminating the optical surfaces of radiant energy–sensing detectors. The designer should evaluate the potential for surface contamination and implement provisions for keeping these surfaces clean. Extreme caution must be employed when considering the use of surrogate windows. Common glass, acrylic, and other glazing materials are opaque at the wavelengths used by most flame detectors and some spark/ember detectors. Placing a window between the detector and the hazard area that has not been listed by a nationally recognized testing laboratory (NRTL) for use with the detector in question is a violation of the detector listing and will usually result in a system that is incapable of detecting a fire in the hazard area.

B.5.1.5.4 Design Factors. These factors are important for several reasons. First, a radiation sensor is primarily a line-of-sight device, and must "see" the fire source. If there are other radiation sources in the area, or if atmospheric conditions are such that a large fraction of the radiation could be absorbed in the atmosphere, the type, location, and spacing of the sensors could be affected. In addition, the sensors react to specific wavelengths, and the fuel must emit radiation in the sensor's bandwidth. For example, an infrared detection device with a single sensor tuned to 4.3 microns (the CO_2 emission peak) cannot be expected to detect a non-carbon-based fire. Furthermore, the sensor needs to be able to respond reliably within the required time, especially when activating an explosion suppression system or similar fast-response extinguishing or control system.

B.5.1.6 Detector Response Model. The response of radiant energy–sensing detectors is modeled with a modified inverse square relationship as shown in the following equation [5]:

$$S = \frac{kPe^{-\zeta d}}{d^2} \tag{B.62}$$

where:

S = radiant power reaching the detector (W or Btu/sec) sufficient to produce alarm response

k = proportionality constant for the detector

P = radiant power emitted by the fire (W or Btu/sec)

ζ = extinction coefficient of air at detector operating wavelengths

d = distance between the fire and the detector (m or ft)

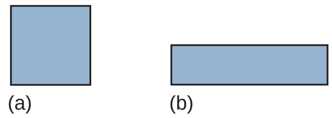
This relationship models the fire as a point source radiator, of uniform radiant output per steradian, some distance (d) from the detector. This relationship also models the effect of absorbance by the air between the fire and the detector as being a uniform extinction function. The designer must verify that these modeling assumptions are valid for the application in question.

B.5.2 Design of Flame Detection Systems.

B.5.2.1 Detector Sensitivity. Flame detector sensitivity is traditionally quantified as the distance at which the unit can detect a fire of given size. The fire most commonly used by the NRTLs in North America is a 0.9 m^2 (1.0 ft^2) fire fueled with regular grade, unleaded gasoline. Some special-purpose detectors are evaluated using 150 mm (6 in.) diameter fires fueled with isopropanol.

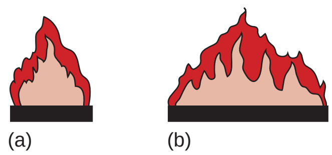
B.5.2.1.1 This means of sensitivity determination does not take into account that flames can best be modeled as an optically dense radiator in which radiant emissions radiated from the far side of the flame toward the detector are re-absorbed by the flame. Consequently, the radiated power from a flame is not proportional to the area of the fire but to the flame silhouette, and hence to the height and width of the fire.

EXHIBIT B.3



Combustible Liquid Fire Pool Surfaces.

EXHIBIT B.4



Pool Appearance.

The radiant power emitted by a flaming fire is a function of the radiant power per unit of flame area multiplied by the flame area (the height times the width of the flame silhouette). This method of computing flame radiant power is predicated upon the assumption that a flame is an optically dense radiator. This assumption, which has been shown to be valid, means that the flame itself absorbs radiation emitted by the back side of the flame and then re-emits it. The optically dense flame model greatly simplifies response prediction calculations. The optically dense flame assumption means that in the calculation of flame detector response, the emitted radiant power is not directly proportional to the surface area of a pool fire or the surface area of the flame volume. In a comparison of two combustible liquid fires with the identical pool surface areas shown in Exhibit B.3, the fire from pool (b) will appear twice as large to the flame detector as the fire from pool (a), as shown in Exhibit B.4.

For calculation of radiated power toward the detector, the radiating profile is used; that is, the flame modeled as a triangular flat radiator having a height equal to the flame height and a width equal to the pool width.

B.5.2.1.2 Because flame detectors detect the radiant emissions produced during the formation of flame intermediates and products, the radiant intensity produced by a flame at a given wavelength is proportional to the relative concentration of the specific intermediate or product in the flame and that portion of the total heat release rate of the fire resulting from the formation of that specific intermediate or product. This means that the response of a detector can vary widely as different fuels are used to produce a fire of the same surface area and flame width.

Designers must verify that the fuels present in the hazard area match those used in the listing evaluation of the flame detector. Relatively small variations in chemical composition can have profound effects on the response of the detector. For instance, a detector might detect a gasoline fire at 24 m (80 ft) but detect the same size fire fueled with #2 fuel oil at 12 m (40 ft). This variation represents a fourfold difference in sensitivity. Unfortunately, the range of fuels used by the listing agencies is limited. Designers must be extremely careful in verifying detector sensitivity whenever oxygenated, aromatic, or silicone-containing fuels are present.

B.5.2.1.3 Many flame detectors are designed to detect specific products such as water (2.5 microns) and CO_2 (4.35 microns). These detectors cannot be used for fires that do not produce these products as a result of the combustion process.

The designer could expect a flame detector that uses 2.5 micron (water emission) photocells to promptly detect a methane fire. Detection occurs because the hydrogen of the methane molecule combines with oxygen to produce two water molecules. However, the designer could not expect such a detector to detect burning sulfur or metals. Likewise, the designer cannot expect a detector using the 4.35 micron (CO_2 emission) photocell to respond to sulfur, combustible metal, or hydrogen fires, because none of those fuels contains a carbon atom that can be oxidized to form carbon dioxide and emit the 4.35 micron emission the detector depends upon for recognition of a flame.

B.5.2.1.4 Many flame detectors use time variance of the radiant emissions of a flame to distinguish between non-fire radiators and a flame. Where a deflagration hazard exists, the designer must determine the sample time period for such flame detectors and how such detectors will operate in the event of a deflagration of fuel vapor or fuel gases.

The organization and design of the electronics in a flame detector can have unanticipated effects on its performance as a fire detection device. Many flame detectors require a time-variant, repetitive radiant signal before the radiation is interpreted as a flame emission. This type of circuit is ideal for detecting a growing hydrocarbon pool fire. However, this type of circuitry might not detect a deflagration of a fuel vapor–air mixture. The deflagration produces a single immense flash of radiant energy that can "saturate" photocells, rendering them incapable of detection for short periods of time. With an accidental fuel spill, immediate ignition is not guaranteed. A significant passage of time might elapse during which fuel vapors are released into the air, creating a condition that will produce a deflagration rather than an expanding spill fire. The designer should verify that the listing agency has tested the detector for the fire scenarios appropriate to the hazard area, including partial volume deflagration.

B.5.2.2 Design Fire. Using the process outlined in Section B.2, determine the fire size (kW or Btu/sec) at which detection must be achieved.

Paragraphs B.5.2.2 through B.5.2.6 provide a step-wise method for designing and analyzing a flame detection system.

B.5.2.2.1 Compute the surface area the design fire is expected to occupy from the correlations in Table B.2.3.2.6.2(a) or other sources. Use the flame height correlation to determine the height of the flame plume:

$$h_f = 0.182\left(kQ\right)^{2/5} \quad \text{(for SI units)} \qquad \textbf{(B.63a)}$$

or

$$h_f = 0.584\left(kQ\right)^{2/5} \quad \left(\text{for inch-pound units}\right) \qquad \textbf{(B.63b)}$$

where:

h_f = flame height (m or ft)

Q = heat release rate (kW or Btu/sec)

k = wall effect factor

Where there are no nearby walls, use $k = 1$.

Where the fuel package is near a wall, use $k = 2$.

Where the fuel package is in a corner, use $k = 4$.

Determine the minimum anticipated flame area width (w_f). Where flammable or combustible liquids are the fuel load and are unconfined, model the fuel as a circular pool. Compute the radiating area (A_r) using the following equation:

$$A_r = \frac{1}{2h_f w_f} \qquad \textbf{(B.64)}$$

where:

A_r = radiating area (m^2 or ft^2)

h_f = flame height (m or ft)

w_f = flame width (m or ft)

This design fire computation models the fire as an optically dense radiator of uniform radiant intensity per unit area having a silhouette of an isosceles triangle. The altitude of the triangle is derived from the flame height correlations. Once the height is determined, the designer selects the base width and calculates the radiation area.

Note that this method does not employ the commonly used ratio of 35 percent radiant heat release and 65 percent convective heat release. This method cannot use those ratios because the test methods employed by the listing agencies do not quantify the test fires in terms of radiant heat release rate. The fires are quantified by pool surface area only. The method in Annex B uses a consistent approach to estimate the radiating area of the design fire and the test fire. The method then compares the design fire to the test fire on the basis of radiating area and power per unit area.

B.5.2.2.2 The radiant power output of the fire to the detector can be approximated as being proportional to the radiating area (A_r) of the flame:

$$P = cA_r \qquad \textbf{(B.65)}$$

where:

A_r = radiating area (m^2 or ft^2)

c = power per unit area proportionality constant

P = radiated power (W or Btu/sec)

Users will see that the actual sensitivity of the detector is never explicitly calculated when this method is used. The detector performance relation (equation B.57) is used to compare performance in the listing agency's fire tests (equation B.61) to the performance of the design fire (equation B.62). The parameters *c* and *P* drop out of the final equation (equation B.64).

B.5.2.3 Calculate Detector Sensitivity. Using equation B.58a or B.58b compute the radiating area of the test fire used by the NRTL in the listing process (A_t). The radiant power output of the test fire to the detector in the listing process is proportional to the radiating area (A_t) of the listing test flame.

The same relations and process that were used to calculate the design fire radiating area are used to calculate the listing agency's test fire radiating area.

B.5.2.4 Calculate Detector Response to Design Fire. Because the sensitivity of a flame detector is fixed during the manufacturing process, the following is the relationship that determines the radiant power reaching the detector sufficient to produce an alarm response:

$$S = \frac{kcA_t e^{-\zeta d}}{d^2} \qquad \textbf{(B.66)}$$

where:

S = radiant power reaching the detector (W or Btu/sec) sufficient to produce alarm response

k = proportionality constant for the detector

A_t = radiant area of the listing test fire (m^2 or ft^2)

ζ = extinction coefficient of air at detector operating wavelengths

d = distance between the fire and the detector during the listing fire test (m or ft)

c = emitted power per unit flame radiating area correlation

Because the sensitivity of the detector is constant over the range of ambients for which it is listed:

$$S = \frac{kcA_r e^{-\zeta d'}}{d'^2} \qquad \textbf{(B.67)}$$

where:

S = radiant power reaching the detector (W or Btu/sec) sufficient to produce alarm response

k = proportionality constant for the detector

c = emitted power per unit flame radiating area correlation

A_r = radiant area of the design fire (m² or ft²)

ζ = extinction coefficient of air at detector operating wavelengths

d' = distance between the design fire and the detector (m or ft)

Therefore, use the following equation to determine the following:

$$\frac{kcA_t e^{-\zeta d}}{d^2} = \frac{kcA_r e^{-\zeta d'}}{d'^2} \tag{B.68}$$

To solve for d' use the following equation:

$$\left(\frac{d^2 A_r e^{-\zeta d'}}{A_t e^{-\zeta d}}\right)^{1/2} = d' \tag{B.69}$$

This relation is solved iteratively for d', the distance at which the detector can detect the design fire.

The method in B.5.2.4 relies on several important assumptions. First, the design fire is assumed to have the same fuel as the fire in the listing evaluation. This assumed scenario allows the emitted power per unit of flame silhouette area correlation parameter (c) to cancel out in the final equation. Second, this method assumes that the fire can be modeled as a point source radiator. This assumption becomes invalid when the flame area occupies a substantial fraction of the total field of view of the detector. Finally, this method demands that the data generated in the listing evaluation must include a numerical value for the atmospheric extinction coefficient (ζ).

A value for ζ can be calculated by testing the flame detector to two different sizes of test fires at two different distances, determining the maximum distance at which the detector can detect the two different fires. With those data in hand, the design equation is simply reorganized to be explicit in ζ and the fire radiating areas and distances from the two different tests are inserted. The value of ζ is a constant for the make and model of detector.

B.5.2.5 Correction for Angular Displacement.

B.5.2.5.1 Most flame detectors exhibit a loss of sensitivity as the fire is displaced from the optical axis of the detector. This correction to the detector sensitivity is shown as a polar graph in Figure A.17.8.3.2.3.

B.5.2.5.2 When the correction for angular displacement is expressed as a reduction of normalized detection distance, the correction is made to detection distance (d').

B.5.2.5.3 When the correction for angular displacement is expressed as a normalized sensitivity (fire size increment), the correction must be made to A_r, prior to calculating response distance (d').

B.5.2.6 Corrections for Fuel. Most flame detectors exhibit some level of fuel specificity. Some manufacturers provide "fuel factors" that relate detector response performance to a fire of one fuel to the response performance of a benchmark fuel. Other manufacturers provide performance criteria for a list of specific fuels. Unless the manufacturer's published instructions, bearing the listing mark, contain explicit instructions for the application of the detector for fuels other than those used in the listing process, the unit cannot be deemed listed for use in hazard areas containing fuels different from those employed in the listing process.

B.5.2.6.1 When the fuel factor correction is expressed as a detection distance reduction, the correction should be applied after the detection distance has been computed.

B.5.2.6.2 When the fuel factor correction is expressed as a function of normalized fire size, the correction must be made prior to calculating detection distance.

B.5.2.7 Atmospheric Extinction Factors.

B.5.2.7.1 Because the atmosphere is not infinitely transmittent at any wavelength, all flame detectors are affected by atmospheric absorption to some degree. The effect of atmospheric extinction on the performance of flame detectors is determined to some degree by the wavelengths used for sensing and the detector electronic architecture. Values for the atmospheric extinction coefficient (ζ) should be obtained from the detector manufacturer's published instructions.

B.5.2.7.2 The numerical value of ζ can be determined experimentally for any flame detector. The detector must be tested with two different sized test fires to determine the distance at which each of the fires can be detected by the detector in question. The larger the difference between the sizes of the flaming fires, the more precise the determination of ζ. Ideally, one test fire would be approximately 4 times the heat release rate (surface area) of the other. The data are then used in the relation:

$$\zeta = \frac{\ln\left[\left(d_1^2 A_2\right)/\left(d_2^2 A_1\right)\right]}{d_2 - d_1} \quad \textbf{(B.70)}$$

where:

"1" = subscripts referring to the first test fire

"2" = subscripts referring to the second test fire

d = maximum distance between the flame detector and the fire at which the fire is detected

A = the radiating area of the test fire as determined per B.5.2.2.1

This relation allows the designer to determine the value of ζ for detectors that are already installed or for those that were evaluated for listing before the inclusion of the requirement for the publishing of ζ appeared in ANSI/FM-3260.

The relation for calculating ξ is derived from the response relation, equation B.61. The relation is particularly useful in the analysis of existing systems where the manufacturer's published documentation does not include the design value.

B.5.3 Design of Spark/Ember Detection Systems.

The similarity between the methods for the design of flame detection systems in B.5.2 and for spark/ember detection systems in B.5.3 is not accidental. Each method employs the same physics but different chemistry. Because spark/ember detectors are designed to detect the Planckian emissions emanating from an ember due to its temperature, designers do not have to deal with fuel specificity as they do when designing with flame detectors. An important note is that all flames emit radiation over the range of wavelengths normally used for spark/ember detectors. However, normal ambient light as well as light from artificial light sources is also rich in near infrared radiation. This fact prevents the use of most spark/ember detectors in normally lit ambient environments.

B.5.3.1 Design Fire. Using the process outlined in Section B.2, determine the fire size (kW or Btu/sec) at which detection must be achieved.

B.5.3.1.1 The quantification of the fire is generally derived from the energy investment per unit time sufficient to propagate combustion of the combustible particulate solids in the fuel stream. Because energy per unit time is power, expressed in watts, the fire size criterion is generally expressed in watts or milliwatts.

B.5.3.1.2 The radiant emissions, integrated over all wavelengths, from a non-ideal Planckian radiator is expressed with the following form of the Stefan–Boltzmann equation:

$$P = \varepsilon A \sigma T^4 \tag{B.71}$$

where:

P = radiant power (W or Btu/sec)

ε = emissivity, a material property expressed as a fraction between 0 and 1.0

A = area of radiator (m^2 or ft^2)

σ = Stefan–Boltzmann constant 5.67E-8 W/m^2K^4

T = temperature (K or R)

B.5.3.1.3 This models the spark or ember as a point source radiator.

B.5.3.2 Fire Environment. Spark/ember detectors are usually used on pneumatic conveyance system ducts to monitor combustible particulate solids as they flow past the detector(s). This environment puts large concentrations of combustible particulate solids between the fire and the detector. A value for ζ must be computed for the monitored environment. The simplifying assumption that absorbance at visible levels is equal to or greater than that at infrared wavelengths yields conservative designs and is used.

B.5.3.3 Calculate Detector Response to Design Fire. Because the sensitivity of a spark/ember detector is fixed during the manufacturing process,

$$S = \frac{kPe^{-\zeta d}}{d^2} \tag{B.72}$$

where:

S = radiant power reaching the detector (W or Btu/sec) sufficient to produce alarm response

k = proportionality constant for the detector

P = radiant power emitted by test spark (W or Btu/sec)

ζ = extinction coefficient of air at detector operating wavelengths

d = distance between the fire and the detector during the listing fire test (m^2 or ft^2)

Because the sensitivity of the detector is constant over the range of ambients for which it is listed,

$$S = \frac{kP'e^{-\zeta d'}}{d'^2} \tag{B.73}$$

where:

S = radiant power reaching the detector (W or Btu/sec) sufficient to produce alarm response

k = proportionality constant for the detector

P' = radiant power from the design fire (W or Btu/sec)

ζ = the extinction coefficient of air at detector operating wavelengths

d' = the distance between the design fire and the detector (m^2 or ft^2)

Therefore, use the following equation to solve for

$$\frac{kPe^{-\zeta d}}{d^2} = \frac{kP'e^{-\zeta d'}}{d'^2} \tag{B.74}$$

To solve for d',

$$d' = \left(\frac{d^2 P' e^{-\zeta d'}}{P e^{-\zeta d}} \right)^{1/2} \tag{B.75}$$

This relation is solved iteratively for d', the distance at which the detector can detect the design fire.

As the spark is essentially a point source radiator of measurable radiant power, the designer does not need to perform a flame area calculation for spark/ember detectors. However, the designer should keep in mind that spark/ember detectors generally respond only to a step-function increase in radiant power. Consequently, these detectors cannot be used to detect slowly developing smoldering conditions or for looking down the length of a conveyance duct.

The numerical value used for ξ is the optical obscuration of the air within the duct. This value is derived from the mass per unit of air volume for the particulate transported through the duct.

B.5.3.4 Correction for Angular Displacement.

B.5.3.4.1 Most spark/ember detectors exhibit a loss of sensitivity as the fire is displaced from the optical axis of the detector. This correction to the detector sensitivity is shown as a polar graph in Figure A.17.8.3.2.3.

B.5.3.4.2 When the correction for angular displacement is expressed as a reduction of normalized detection distance, the correction is made to detection distance (d').

B.5.3.4.3 When the correction for angular displacement is expressed as a normalized sensitivity (fire size increment), the correction must be made to P' prior to calculating response distance (d').

B.5.3.5 Corrections for Fuel. Because spark/ember detectors respond to Planckian emission in the near infrared portion of the spectrum, corrections for fuels are rarely necessary.

B.6 Computer Fire Models

Several special application computer models are available to assist in the design and analysis of both heat detectors (e.g., fixed-temperature, rate-of-rise, sprinklers, fusible links) and smoke detectors. These computer models typically run on personal computers and are available from NIST website http://fire.nist.gov.

B.6.1 DETACT — T². DETACT — T² (DETector ACTuation — time squared) calculates the actuation time of heat detectors (fixed-temperature and rate-of-rise) and sprinklers to user-specified fires that grow with the square of time. DETACT — T² assumes the detector is located in a large compartment with an unconfined ceiling, where there is no accumulation of hot gases at the ceiling. Thus, heating of the detector is only from the flow of hot gases along the ceiling. Input data include H, τ_0, RTI, T_s, S, and α. The program calculates the heat release rate at detector activation, as well as the time to activation.

B.6.2 DETACT — QS. DETACT — QS (DETector ACTuation — quasi-steady) calculates the actuation time of heat detectors and sprinklers in response to fires that grow according to a user-defined fire. DETACT — QS assumes the detector is located in a large compartment with unconfined ceilings, where there is no accumulation of hot gases at the ceiling. Thus, heating of the detector is only from the flow of hot gases along the ceiling. Input data include H, τ_0, RTI, T_s, the distance of the detector from the fire's axis, and heat release rates at user-specified times. The program calculates the heat release rate at detector activation, the time to activation, and the ceiling jet temperature.

DETACT — QS can also be found in HAZARD I, FIREFORM, FPETOOL. A comprehensive evaluation of DETACT QS can be found in the *SFPE Engineering Guide: Evaluation of the Computer Fire Model DETACT QS*. This guide provides information on the theoretical basis, mathematical robustness, sensitivity of output to input, and an evaluation of the predictive ability of the model.

B.6.3 LAVENT. LAVENT (Link Actuated VENT) calculates the actuation time of sprinklers and fusible link-actuated ceiling vents in compartment fires with draft curtains. Inputs include the ambient temperature, compartment size, thermophysical properties of the ceiling, fire location, size and growth rate, ceiling vent area and location, RTI, and temperature rating of the fusible links. Outputs of the model include the temperatures and release times of the links, the areas of the vents that have opened, the radial temperature distribution at the ceiling, and the temperature and height of the upper layer.

B.6.4 JET is a single-compartment, two-zone computer model. It has been designed to calculate the centerline temperature of the plume, the ceiling jet temperature, and the ceiling jet velocity. JET can model ceiling-mounted fusible links, as well as link-actuated ceiling vents. JET evolved from the model platform used for LAVENT and contains many of the same features. Some of the major differences between them include the ceiling jet temperature and velocity algorithms, the fusible link algorithm, and the use of a variable radiative fraction. [57]

JET is the computer model that is likely to be used.

B.6.5 References.

(1) Alpert, R. "Ceiling Jets," *Fire Technology*, Aug. 1972.

(2) "Evaluating Unsprinklered Fire Hazards," *SFPE Technology Report* 83-2.

(3) Babrauskas, V., Lawson, J. R., Walton, W. D., and Twilley, W. H. "Upholstered Furniture Heat Release Rates Measured with a Furniture Calorimeter," (NBSIR 82-2604) (Dec. 1982). National Institute of Standards and Technology (formerly National Bureau of Standards), Center for Fire Research, Gaithersburg, MD 20889.

(4) Beyler, C. "A Design Method for Flaming Fire Detection," *Fire Technology*, Vol. 20, No. 4, Nov. 1984.

(5) DiNenno, P., ed. Chapter 31, *SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering*, by R. Schifiliti, Sept. 1988.

(6) Evans, D. D. and Stroup, D. W. "Methods to Calculate Response Time of Heat and Smoke Detectors Installed Below Large Unobstructed Ceilings," (NBSIR 85-3167) (Feb. 1985, issued Jul. 1986). National Institute of Standards and Technology (formerly National Bureau of Standards), Center for Fire Research, Gaithersburg, MD 20889.

(7) Heskestad, G. "Characterization of Smoke Entry and Response for Products-of-Combustion Detectors" Proceedings, 7th International Conference on Problems of Automatic Fire Detection, Rheinish-Westfalischen Technischen Hochschule Aachen (Mar. 1975).

(8) Heskestad, G. "Investigation of a New Sprinkler Sensitivity Approval Test: The Plunge Test," FMRC Tech. Report 22485, Factory Mutual Research Corporation, 1151 Providence Turnpike, Norwood, MA 02062.

(9) Heskestad, G. and Delichatsios, M. A. "The Initial Convective Flow in Fire: Seventeenth Symposium on Combustion," The Combustion Institute, Pittsburgh, PA (1979).

(10) Heskestad, G. and Delichatsios, M. A. "Environments of Fire Detectors — Phase 1: Effect of Fire Size, Ceiling Height and Material," Measurements Vol. I (NBS-GCR-77-86), Analysis Vol. II (NBS-GCR-77-95). National Technical Information Service (NTIS), Springfield, VA 22151.

(11) Heskestad, G. and Delichatsios, M. A. "Update: The Initial Convective Flow in Fire," *Fire Safety Journal*, Vol. 15, No. 5, 1989.
(12) International Organization for Standardization, *Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal*, ISO 8201, 1987.
(13) Klote, J. and Milke, J. "Principles of Smoke Management," American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA, 2002.
(14) Lawson, J. R., Walton, W. D., and Twilley, W. H. "Fire Performance of Furnishings as Measured in the NBS Furniture Calorimeter, Part 1," (NBSIR 83-2787) (Aug. 1983). National Institute of Standards and Technology (formerly National Bureau of Standards), Center for Fire Research, Gaithersburg, MD 20889.
(15) Morton, B. R., Taylor, Sir Geoffrey, and Turner, J. S. "Turbulent Gravitational Convection from Maintained and Instantaneous Sources," Proc. Royal Society A, 234, 1–23, 1956.
(16) Schifiliti, R. "Use of Fire Plume Theory in the Design and Analysis of Fire Detector and Sprinkler Response," Master's Thesis, Worcester Polytechnic Institute, Center for Firesafety Studies, Worcester, MA, 1986.
(17) Title 47, Code of Federal Regulations, Communications Act of 1934 Amended.
(18) Schifiliti, R. and Pucci, W. "Fire Detection Modelling, State of the Art," 6 May, 1996 sponsored by the Fire Detection Institute, Bloomfield, CT.
(19) Forney, G., Bukowski, R., Davis, W. "Field Modelling: Effects of Flat Beamed Ceilings on Detector and Sprinkler Response," Technical Report, Year 1. International Fire Detection Research Project, Fire Protection Research Foundation, Quincy, MA. October, 1993.
(20) Davis, W., Forney, G., Bukowski, R. "Field Modelling: Simulating the Effect of Sloped Beamed Ceilings on Detector and Sprinkler Response," Year 1. International Fire Detection Research Project Technical Report, Fire Protection Research Foundation, Quincy, MA. October, 1994.
(21) Brozovski, E. "A Preliminary Approach to Siting Smoke Detectors Based on Design Fire Size and Detector Aerosol Entry Lag Time," Master's Thesis, Worcester Polytechnic, Worcester, MA, 1989.
(22) Cote, A. *NFPA Fire Protection Handbook*, 20th edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 2008.
(23) Tewarson, A., "Generation of Heat and Chemical Compounds in Fires," *SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering*, Second Edition, NFPA and SFPE, 1995.
(24) Hollman, J. P. *Heat Transfer*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1976.
(25) Custer, R. L. P., and Meacham, B. "Introduction to Performance Based Fire Safety," SFPE, 1997.
(26) Schifiliti, R. P., Meacham B., Custer, R. L. P. "Design of Detection Systems," *SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering*.
(27) Marrion, C. "Correction Factors for the Heat of Combustion in NFPA 72," Appendix B, Fire Protection Engineering, SFPE, 1998.
(28) Marrion, C. "Designing and Analyzing the Response of Detection Systems: An Update to Previous Correlations," 1988.
(29) Custer, R. and Bright, R. "Fire Detection: The State-of-the-Art," NBS Tech. Note 839, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, 1974.
(30) Meacham, Brian J. "Characterization of Smoke from Burning Materials for the Evaluation of Light Scattering-Type Smoke Detector Response," MS Thesis, WPI Center for Firesafety Studies, Worcester, MA, 1991.
(31) Delichatsios, M. A. "Categorization of Cable Flammability, Detection of Smoldering, and Flaming Cable Fires," Interim Report, Factory Mutual Research Corporation, Norwood, MA, NP-1630, Nov. 1980.
(32) Heskestad, G. FMRC Serial Number 21017, Factory Mutual Research Corp., Norwood, MA, 1974.

(33) Marrion, C. E. "Lag Time Modeling and Effects of Ceiling Jet Velocity on the Placement of Optical Smoke Detectors," MS Thesis, WPI Center for Firesafety Studies, Worcester, MA, 1989.

(34) Kokkala, M. et al. "Measurements of the Characteristic Lengths of Smoke Detectors," *Fire Technology*, Vol. 28, No. 2, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 1992.

(34a) Yamauchi et al. "A Calculation Method for Predicting Heat and Smoke Detector's Response."

(34b) Cleary et al. "Particulate Entry Lag in Spot Type Smoke Detectors," IAFSS Proceedings, Boston, MA 2000.

(34c) Keski-Rahkonen, "Revisiting Modeling of Fluid Penetration into Smoke Detectors," AUBE 2001.

(34d) Bjoerkman et al. "Determination of Dynamic Model Parameters of Smoke Detectors," *Fire Safety Journal*, No 37, pp. 395–407, 2002.

(34e) Keski-Rahkonen, "A New Model for Time Lag of Smoke Detectors," International Collaborative Project to Evaluate Fire Models for Nuclear Power Plant Application, Gaithersburg, MD May 2002.

(35) UL 268, *Standard for Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Signaling Systems*, Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., Northbrook, IL, 2009.

(36) Deal, Scott. "Technical Reference Guide for FPEtool Version 3.2," NISTIR 5486, National Institute for Standards and Technology, U.S. Department of Commerce, Gaithersburg, MD, Aug. 1994.

(37) Mowrer, F. W. "Lag Times Associated with Detection and Suppression," *Fire Technology*, Vol. 26, No. 3, pp. 244–265, 1990.

(38) Newman, J. S. "Principles for Fire Detection," *Fire Technology*, Vol. 24, No. 2, pp. 116–127, 1988.

(39) Custer, R., Meacham, B., Wood, C. "Performance Based Design Techniques for Detection and Special Suppression Applications," Proceedings of the SFPE Engineering Seminars on Advances in Detection and Suppression Technology, 1994.

(40) SFPE *Engineering Guide to Performance Based Fire Protection Analysis and Design*, 2007, SFPE, Bethesda, MD.

(41) SFPE *Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering*, Fourth Edition, SFPE, Bethesda, MD, 2008.

(42) Drysdale, Dougal, *An Introduction to Fire Dynamics*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, NY, 1998, ISBN 0 471 90613 1, Second Edition.

(43) Nam S., Donovan L.P. and Kim S.G., Establishing Heat Detectors Thermal Sensitivity Through Bench Scale Tests; *Fire Safety Journal*, Volume 39, Number 3, 191–215; April 2004.

(44) Nam S., Thermal Response Coefficient TRC of Heat Detectors and Its Field Applications, Fire Detection and Research Applications Symposium, NFPA Research Foundation, January 2003.

(45) Nam S., Performance-Based Heat Detector Spacing, Interflam 2004, pp. 883–892.

(46) Geiman, J. A., "Evaluation of Smoke Detector Response Estimation Methods," Master of Science Thesis, University of Maryland, College Park, MD, December 2003.

(47) Projected Beam Smoke Detectors — More Than Just a Substitute for Spot Detectors, Fire Protection Engineering, Summer 2004, SFPE.

(48) Geiman, J. A., and Gottuck, D.T., "Alarm Thresholds for Smoke Detector Modeling," *Fire Safety Science — Proceeding of the Seventh International Symposium*, 2003, pp. 197–208.

(49) *The SFPE Code Official's Guide to Performance-based Design Review and Analysis of Buildings*, Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Bethesda, MD, 2004.

(50) NFPA *101*, *Life Safety Code*, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 2009.

(51) NFPA 909, *Code for the Protection of Cultural Resource Properties — Museums, Libraries, and Places of Worship*, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 2010.

(52) NFPA 914, *Code for Fire Protection of Historic Structures*, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 2010.
(53) Performance-based Building Design Concepts, International Code Council, Washington DC, 2004.
(54) *Extreme Event Mitigation In Buildings — Analysis and Design*, Meacham, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy MA, 2006.
(55) Geiman, Gottuk, and Milke, "Evaluation of Smoke Detector Response Estimation Methods: Optical Density, Temperature Rise and Velocity at Alarm," *Journal of Fire Protection Engineering*, 2006.
(56) Su et al., "Kemano Fire Studies — Part 1: Response of Residential Smoke Alarms," Research Report 108, NRCC, April 2003.
(57) Davis, W., The Zone Model Jet, "A Model for the Prediction of Detector Activation and Gas Temperature in the Presence of a Smoke Layer," NISTIR 6324, NIST, May 1999.

B.7 Nomenclature

The nomenclature used in Annex B is defined in Table B.7.

TABLE B.7 *Nomenclature*

α	= fire intensity coefficient (kW/sec^2 or Btu/sec^3)
A	= area (m^2 or ft^2)
A_0	= $g/(C_p T_a \rho)$ [m^4/(sec^{2}kJ) or ft^4/(sec^{2}Btu)]
A_r	= radiating area (m^2 or ft^2)
A_t	= radiating area of test fire
C	= specific heat of detector element (kJ/kg · °C or Btu/lbm · °F)
c	= speed of light (m/sec or ft/sec)
C_p	= specific heat of air [kJ/(kg K) or Btu/lbm R (1.040 kJ/kg K)]
D_m	= mass optical density (m^2/g or ft^2/lb)
d	= distance between fire and radiant energy–sensing detector
d'	= distance between fire and detector
$d(Du)/dt$	= rate of increase of optical density outside the detector
D	= $0.146 + 0.242r/H$
Δt	= change in time (seconds)
ΔT	= increase above ambient in temperature of gas surrounding a detector (°C or °F)
Δt_d	= increase above ambient in temperature of a detector (°C or °F)
Δt^*_p	= change in reduced gas temperature
e	= energy (joules or Btu)
f	= functional relationship
g	= gravitational constant (9.81 m/sec^2 or 32 ft/sec^2)
h	= Planck's constant (6.63E-23 joule-sec)
H	= ceiling height or height above fire (m or ft)
H_c	= convective heat transfer coefficient (kW/m^2 · °C or Btu/ft^2 · sec · °F)
ΔH_c	= heat of combustion (kJ/mol)
h_f	= flame height (m or ft)
H_f	= heat of formation (kJ/mol)
L	= characteristic length for a given detector design
k	= detector constant, dimensionless
m	= mass (kg or lbm)
p	= positive exponent

(*continues*)

TABLE B.7 Continued

P	=	radiant power (watts or Btu/sec)
q	=	heat release rate density per unit floor area (watts/m^2 or Btu/sec · ft^2)
Q	=	heat release rate (kW or Btu/sec)
Q_c	=	convection portion of fire heat release rate (kW or Btu/sec)
Q_{cond}	=	heat transferred by conduction (kW or Btu/sec)
Q_{conv}	=	heat transferred by convection (kW or Btu/sec)
Q_d	=	threshold fire size at which response must occur
Q_{rad}	=	heat transferred by radiation (kW or Btu/sec)
Q_{total}	=	total heat transfer (kW or Btu/sec)
Q_{CR}	=	critical heat release rate (kW or Btu/sec)
Q_{DO}	=	design heat release rate (kW or Btu/sec)
Q_m	=	maximum heat release rate (kW or Btu/sec)
Q_p	=	predicted heat release rate (kW or Btu/sec)
Q_T	=	threshold heat release rate at response (kW or Btu/sec)
r	=	radial distance from fire plume axis (m or ft)
ρ_0	=	density of ambient air [kg/m^3 or lb/ft^3 (1.1 kg/m^3)]
RTI	=	response time index (m$^{1/2}$sec$^{1/2}$ or ft$^{1/2}$ sec$^{1/2}$)
S	=	spacing of detectors or sprinkler heads (m or ft)
S	=	radiant energy
t_{DO}	=	time at which the design objective heat release rate (Q_{DO}) is reached (seconds)
t_{CR}	=	time at which the critical heat release rate (Q_{CR}) is reached (seconds)
t	=	time (seconds)
t_c	=	critical time — time at which fire would reach a heat release rate of 1055 kW (1000 Btu/sec) (seconds)
t_d	=	time to detector response
t_g	=	fire growth time to reach 1055 kW (1000 Btu/sec) (seconds)
t_r	=	response time (seconds)
t_{respond}	=	time available, or needed, for response to an alarm condition (seconds)
t_v	=	virtual time of origin (seconds)
t_{2f}	=	arrival time of heat front (for $p = 2$ power law fire) at a point r/H (seconds)
t^*_{2f}	=	reduced arrival time of heat front (for $p = 2$ power law fire) at a point r/H (seconds)
t^*_p	=	reduced time
T	=	temperature (°C or °F)
T_a	=	ambient temperature (°C or °F)
T_c	=	plume centerline temperature (°C or °F)
T_d	=	detector temperature (°C or °F)
T_g	=	temperature of fire gases (°C or °F)
T_s	=	rated operating temperature of a detector or sprinkler (°C or °F)
u_0	=	instantaneous velocity of fire gases (m/sec or ft/sec)
u	=	velocity (m/sec or ft/sec)
u_c	=	critical velocity
u^*_p	=	reduced gas velocity
V	=	velocity of smoke at detector
w_f	=	flame width (m or ft)
Y	=	defined in equation B.27
z	=	height above top of fuel package involved (m or ft)
λ	=	wavelength (microns)
Z_m	=	maximum height of smoke rise above fire surface (m or ft)
τ	=	detector time constant mc/H_cA (seconds)
τ_0	=	detector time constant measured at reference velocity u_0 (seconds)
ε	=	emissivity, a material property expressed as a fraction between 0 and 1.0

References Cited in Commentary

ANSI/UL 268, *Standard for Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems*, 2009, American National Standards Institute, Inc., New York, NY.

Brozovski, E., "A Preliminary Approach to Siting Smoke Detectors Based on Design Fire Size and Detector Aerosol Entry Lag Time," Master of Science Thesis, Worcester Polytechnic Institute, Worcester, MA, 1991.

Custer, R. L. P., and Meacham, B. J., *Introduction to Performance-Based Fire Safety,* National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 1997.

Evans, D. D., and Stroup, D. W. "Methods to Calculate Response Time of Heat and Smoke Detectors Installed Below Large Unobstructed Ceilings," (NBSIR 85-3167) (Feb. 1985, issued Jul. 1986). National Institute of Standards and Technology (formerly National Bureau of Standards), Center for Fire Research, Gaithersburg, MD 20889.

FM Approval Standard 3210, *Heat Detectors for Automatic Fire Alarm Signaling*, FM Global, Norwood, MA, 2007.

Geiman, J. A., "Evaluation of Smoke Detector Response Estimation Methods," Master of Science Thesis, University of Maryland, College Park, MD, 2003.

Heskestad, G., and Delichatsios, M. A., "Environments of Fire Detectors — Phase 1: Effect of Fire Size, Ceiling Height and Material," Measurements Vol. I (NBS-GCR-77-86), Analysis Vol. II (NBS-GCR-77-95). National Technical Information Service (NTIS), Springfield, VA 22151.

Meacham, B. J., and Custer, R. L. P., "Performance-Based Fire Safety Engineering: An Introduction of Basic Concepts," *Journal of Fire Protection Engineering,* 1995; 7(2).

NFPA 72E, *Automatic Fire Detectors*, 1990 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

Pomeroy, A. T., "Analysis of the Effects of Temperature and Velocity on the Response Time Index of Heat DetectorsVelocity" Master of Science Thesis, University of Maryland, College Park, MD, 2010.

Schifiliti, R., and Pucci, W. "Fire Detection Modelling, State of the Art," 6 May, 1996 sponsored by the Fire Detection Institute, Bloomfield, CT.

SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering, 4th edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, and Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Bethesda, MD, 2008.

ANNEX

System Performance and Design Guide

C

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

This annex was new to the 2010 edition of the Code. Chapter 23, Protected Premises Fire Alarm Systems, provides the minimum requirements for a protected premises fire alarm system. While compliance with minimum code requirements is important, seldom do those minimum requirements address the site-specific needs and conditions that exist at a particular facility. The requirements of the Code are intended to provide the minimum level of protection for all facilities regardless of their occupancy, operations, mission importance, or a myriad of other factors. For a particular application, in addition to the minimum requirements of the Code, the system designer should also consider the site-specific fire protection objectives of the building owner. Those objectives are generally expressed as some level of life safety, property protection, and mission continuity that are generally above and beyond the minimum requirements of the Code.

This annex is intended as a guide for system designers to determine the characteristics, features, and functions that may be needed for a fire alarm system in a particular application. The annex material provides a framework within which a system designer can develop a fire alarm system design that is integrated with the other fire protection features of the facility, such as the capabilities of the emergency responders, desired features of the fire alarm system, the size and use of the buildings, and other factors that should be considered in the design decision process.

C.1 Scope

The requirements of the protected premises Chapter 23 provide for minimum levels of protection for fire alarm systems to protect life and property, regardless of the building characteristics, contents, or use. This System Performance and Design Guide provides additional considerations for users of the NFAC when planning, designing, and installing protected premises fire alarm systems for buildings that might be unusual in scale, mission, use, symbolism, or other critical or high-profile characteristics.

This guidance suggests potential system characteristics to enhanced system performance for protection of life, mission, and property in high-profile and other critical buildings, including signaling path integrity, redundancies, survivability, backup fire control stations, nonerasable logs, multiple information stations, and the benefits of networked and peer-to-peer configurations.

C.2 Building Scale

The size of a building to be protected influences fire alarm system operating characteristics, control functions, circuit integrity, annunciation, and other factors for protection of life, property, or the mission of the building.

C.2.1 Fire Service Response Location(s).

C.2.1.1 Location(s). Determine the fire service response location(s) by inquiry to the responding fire department (and building operating personnel, if appropriate).

C.2.1.2 Quantity. The fire service might desire more than one response location. Building operators might desire redundancies for security or operations under emergency conditions.

C.2.1.3 Functions. The primary response location is the normally expected location of the fire command center (FCC). In general, the fire command center provides information and control functions for the entire building. One or more redundant or abbreviated fire command centers might be desired for security or operations under emergency conditions.

C.2.1.3.1 Information. Nonprimary response locations might be intended to provide annunciation equipment to provide information for the entire building, or for a portion of the building associated with the response location.

C.2.1.3.2 Control. Nonprimary response locations might be intended to provide a partial or complete fire command center to provide control functions for the entire building, or for a portion of the building associated with the response location.

C.2.2 System Operational Characteristics.

C.2.2.1 On-Premises Response. Determine an alarm response plan considering the requirements of NFAC, local codes and regulations, the availability and responsibility of building operating personnel, and the mobility of occupants.

C.2.2.1.1 Investigation. Building security or operating personnel should investigate every alarm signal, and the alarm response plan might include investigation of initial alarm signals prior to activating a general alarm or the evacuation or relocation of occupants.

C.2.2.1.2 Communication. Determine appropriate methods to provide alarm information, and instructions when required, to building security and operating personnel, supervisory and management personnel, and building occupants. Consider the need for predetermined messages, single- or multiple-channel communications systems, and coordination of communications system coverage and zoning with building subdivisions, including smoke compartments and automatic suppression system coverage and zoning. Consider the need for multiple languages in emergency communications.

C.2.2.1.3 Evacuation/Relocation. Determine the extent to which the emergency egress plan is based on total evacuation, relocation and partial evacuation, areas of rescue assistance and/or defending in place.

C.2.2.1.4 Survivability. Consider means to harden the fire notification circuits/paths to attack by fire for a period of time necessary to notify building operating personnel and occupants of a fire emergency and/or provide instructions if appropriate.

C.2.2.1.5 Control. Fire alarm system control units can be arranged to activate other building systems and to condition passive fire barriers to enhance fire safety in the building.

C.2.2.1.6 Building Systems. Consider activation or release of building systems and elements including, but not limited to, closing fire/smoke doors and dampers, recall of elevators, unlocking stairway doors, activating smoke control systems and or shut-down fans to prevent recirculation of smoke.

C.2.2.1.7 Fire Scene Operations. Compartmentation, water supply, fire fighter access, and communication links are important for manual fire-fighting operations. Fire alarm system monitoring, reporting, display, and control functions that enhance the maintenance and operation of these elements that enhance fire scene operations should be considered in the design, installation, and maintenance of protected premises fire alarm systems. An example would be a flashing light over the fire department connection.

C.2.2.2 External Response.

C.2.2.2.1 Resources Available. Determine the availability and responsibility of fire service resources. An example of the use of this information might be determining how to stage evacuation.

C.2.2.2.2 Time Required. Consider the time required for fire service response to the building. Consider travel time at various times of day and seasons of year.

C.2.2.2.3 Notification. Determine one or more acceptable means of automatic and manual notification of the fire service to initiate response to the building. Consider the extent of information that might be transmitted to the responding fire service to enhance response to the building and to provide incident information prior to its arrival.

C.2.2.2.4 Evacuation/Relocation. Consider system operational characteristics that might enhance coordination of control and direction to building operating personnel and occupants. Consider means of control and shift in control of evacuation or relocation direction from building operating personnel to fire service command.

C.2.2.2.5 Knowledge of Premises. Harmonize system operating characteristics to pre-incident planning with fire service and building operating and security personnel.

C.2.2.2.6 Communications and Control. Provide for fire-fighter communications through dedicated two-way fire-fighter communication systems, or consider a means to provide enhanced operation of fire service radio communications in the protected premises.

C.3 Premises Mission/Use/Property Protection

The loss of use or mission of a facility to the effects of accidental fire can have a very significant impact on the community or organization served by the facility. In such a case, it is appropriate to enhance functional characteristics of the protected premises system. Considerations include the following:

(1) Criticality/Mission Continuity
  (a) Community — Loss of operations of the facility might affect the community beyond the facility. Consider the sensitivity of fire detection and the effectiveness of alarm processing, emergency response, and fire suppression to minimize effects on the community served due to facility impairment by fire.
  (b) Operations
    (i) On-premises — Fire might result in business interruption or reduced effectiveness.
    (ii) Elsewhere — Services provided by the facility to remote locations might cease or be reduced.
(2) Life Safety
  (a) Evacuation/Relocation — Size, distribution, and mobility of the occupant population should be considered with knowledge of facility emergency planning and availability of emergency response resources to determine the extent to which people movement might be managed during a fire incident.
  (b) Defend In Place — A protected premises system might be used to activate facility fire safety elements necessary to defend occupants in place or to enhance rescue assistance.
(3) Property
  (a) Value — Cost, availability, and time required to reestablish facility contents should be considered when determining the sensitivity of fire detection and the effectiveness of alarm processing, emergency response, and fire suppression.

(b) Replacement — Availability and time required to replace damaged facility contents should be considered when determining the sensitivity of fire detection and the effectiveness of alarm processing emergency response and fire suppression.
(c) Redundancy — Duplication of facility contents in separate locations might reduce the need for sensitivity of fire detection or other property protection system capabilities.

C.4 Protected Premises Signaling System Features

C.4.1 Event Logs. Computer processor–based systems are capable of assembling logs of system events by date and time, including alarm history. Such logs are an important resource in assessing system performance or malfunctions and in understanding or reconstructing a fire event after the fact. It is imperative that such logs are preserved and protected against deletion until it is affirmed that no further need for a log exists. Caution is recommended to secure system history logs when system software changes are made.

C.4.2 Network Configuration. Systems that use digital means to transfer signal information might provide benefits in economy of installation and distribution of information to multiple locations to enable rigorous alarm processing and response. Transmission of digital alarm information to remote locations might assist responding personnel by providing incident information prior to arrival at the location of the fire.

C.4.3 Peer to Peer Data Communication. Systems that duplicate the operating and history data bases in multiple network control units provide redundant monitoring and control points on a system that can enhance the reliability of the system and the operation of the system during emergency or degraded conditions.

ANNEX D

Speech Intelligibility

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

Annex D was added to the Code in the 2010 edition and is substantially unchanged in the 2013 edition.

In 1996, the Technical Committee on Notification Appliances began to explore and incorporate speech intelligibility concepts into *NFPA 72®, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code.* Intelligibility is a measurable aspect of electronic voice transmission systems that indicates the degree that human listeners will be able to understand voice messages transmitted through them.

System design for speech intelligibility and the testing or verification of speech intelligibility varies greatly from conventional audible tone signaling. Since the concept of speech intelligibility was first considered by *NFPA 72* technical committees in the mid-1990s, the need for simple, reproducible test methods has continued to be the focus of discussions in industry and committee meetings. Audio instrumentation manufacturers heard the call and developed portable test meters that use well-established speech intelligibility modeling and measurement methods. Still, detailed practical test requirements and protocols were lacking in *NFPA 72.* To address this void, the Fire Protection Research Foundation (FPRF) conducted a fast-track research project designed to provide the applicable *NFPA 72* technical committees with detailed material concerning speech intelligibility. This project was completed in October 2008.

A task group consisting of members mostly from the notification appliances technical committee and the testing and maintenance of Fire Alarm Systems Technical committee used the FPRF report as the basis for Annex D. The full report is available for download on the foundation's website at www.nfpa.org/foundation.

Additional material concerning speech intelligibility can be found in Supplement 2 and in the handbook commentary for Chapter 18.

Users of Annex D should refer back to the text of NFPA 72 to familiarize themselves with the specific requirements for the planning, design, installation, and testing of voice communication systems.

D.1 Introduction

D.1.1 This annex is intended to provide guidance on the planning, design, installation, and testing of voice communication systems. The majority of this annex contains recommendations for testing of the intelligibility of voice systems.

D.1.2 As with most systems, proper system performance is related to good planning, design, installation, and maintenance. Similarly, test results are a valuable feedback mechanism for persons planning, designing, and installing systems.

D.1.3 This annex describes when, where, and how to test for speech intelligibility. It is also not the intent of this test protocol to describe how to interpret results or how to correct systems or environments that contribute to poor speech intelligibility.

D.1.4 For occupancies that do not yet exist, the designer should have an understanding of the acoustic characteristics of the architectural design, as well as the acoustic performance properties of available loudspeakers. Architecturally, this includes the physical size and shape of the space, as well as the acoustic properties of the walls, floors, ceilings, and interior furnishings. A proper design analysis can sometimes reveal that an intelligible system is not achievable unless some features of the architectural design are changed. The designer should be prepared to defend such conclusions and, if necessary, refuse to certify the installation of such a system. While "hand calculations" and experience work well for simpler installations, more complex designs are frequently better and more cost-effectively analyzed using one of a number of readily available computer-based design programs.

D.1.5 The designer and the authority having jurisdiction should both be aware that the acoustic performance parameters of the chosen loudspeakers, as well as their placement in the structure, play a major role in determining how many appliances are necessary for adequate intelligibility. The numerical count of appliances for a given design and protected space cannot, by itself, be used to determine the adequacy of the design. Sometimes, the acoustic problems of certain placement constraints can be satisfactorily overcome through the careful selection of loudspeakers with the requisite performance characteristics, rather than by increasing their number.

D.2 Fundamentals of Test Protocol

D.2.1 Measurement Method.

D.2.1.1 STI/STIPA.

D.2.1.1.1 Where the method for measuring speech intelligibility is the Speech Transmission Index (STI), this test protocol should be followed.

D.2.1.1.2 There are several methods that measure the STI. One method common to the emergency communications system industry uses a test signal referred to as STIPA — STI-Public Address.

D.2.1.2 Other Methods. Where the method for measuring speech intelligibility is the Phonetically Balanced Word test (PB), Modified Rhyme Test (MRT), or Speech Intelligibility Index (SII) method, the same methods for determining measurement locations should be used.

D.2.2 References.

D.2.2.1 IEC 60268-16, *Sound system equipment — Part 16: Objective rating of speech intelligibility by speech transmission index*, International Electrotechnical Commission, Geneva, Switz., 22 May 2003.

D.2.2.2 ISO 7240-19, *Fire Detection and Alarm Systems — Part 19: Design, Installation, Commissioning and Service of Sound Systems for Emergency Purposes*, International Organization for Standardization, Geneva, Switz., 1st edition, 15 Aug 2007.

D.2.2.3 NEMA Standards Publication SB 50-2008, *Emergency Communications Audio Intelligibility Applications Guide*, National Electrical Manufacturers Association, Rosslyn VA, 2008.

D.2.3 Terminology.

D.2.3.1 Acoustically Distinguishable Space (ADS).

D.2.3.1.1 An acoustically distinguishable space (ADS) can be an emergency communication system notification zone, or subdivision thereof, that can be an enclosed or otherwise physically defined space, or that can be distinguished from other spaces because of different acoustical, environmental, or use characteristics such as reverberation time and ambient sound pressure level. The ADS might have acoustical design features that are conducive for voice intelligibility, or it might be a space where voice intelligibility could be difficult or impossible to achieve.

D.2.3.1.2 All parts of a building or area intended to have occupant notification are subdivided into ADSs as defined. Some ADSs might be designated to have voice communication capability and require that those communications be intelligible. Other spaces might not require voice intelligibility or might not be capable of reliable voice intelligibility. Each is still referred to as an ADS.

D.2.3.1.3 In smaller areas, such as those under 400 ft^2 (40 m^2), walls alone will define the ADS. In larger areas, other factors might have to be considered. In spaces that might be subdivided by temporary or movable partitions, such as ballrooms and meeting rooms, each individual configuration should be considered a separate ADS. Physical characteristics such as a change in ceiling height of more than 20 percent or change in acoustical finish, such as carpet in one area and tile in another, would require those areas to be treated as separate ADSs. In larger areas there might be noise sources that require a section to be treated as a separate ADS. Any significant change in ambient sound pressure level or frequency might necessitate an area be considered a separate ADS.

D.2.3.1.4 In areas of 85 dBA or greater ambient sound pressure level, meeting the pass/fail criteria for intelligibility might not be possible and other means of communication might be necessary. So, for example, the space immediately surrounding a printing press or other high noise machine might be designated as a separate ADS and the design might call for some form of effective notification but not necessarily require the ability to have intelligible voice communication. The aisles or operator's control stations might be separate ADSs where intelligible voice communication might be desired.

D.2.3.1.5 Significant differences in furnishings, for example, an area with tables, desks, or low dividers adjacent to an area with high shelving, would require separate consideration. The entire desk area could be a single acoustic zone whereas each area between shelving could be a unique zone. Essentially, any noteworthy change in the acoustical environment within an area will mandate consideration of that portion of the area to be treated as an acoustic zone. Hallways and stairwells will typically be considered as individual acoustic zones.

D.2.3.1.6 Spaces confined by walls with carpeting and acoustical ceilings can be deemed to be one ADS. An ADS should be an area of consistent size and material. A change of materials from carpet to hard tile, the existence of sound sources such as decorative waterfalls, large expanses of glass, and changes in ceiling height are all factors that might separate one ADS from another.

D.2.3.1.7 Each ADS might require different components and design features to achieve intelligible voice communication. For example, two ADSs with similar acoustical treatments and noise levels might have different ceiling heights. The ADS with the lower ceiling height might require more ceiling-mounted speakers to ensure that all listeners are in a direct sound field. See Figure D.2.3.1.7. Other ADSs might benefit from the use of alternate speaker technologies such as line arrays to achieve intelligibility.

D.2.3.1.8 An ADS that differs from another because of the frequency and level of ambient sound pressure level might require the use of speakers and system components that have a wider frequency bandwidth than conventional emergency communications equipment. However, designers should not use higher bandwidth speakers in all locations unless needed to overcome certain acoustic and ambient conditions. This is because the higher bandwidth appliance will require more energy to perform properly. This increases amplifier and wire size and power supply requirements.

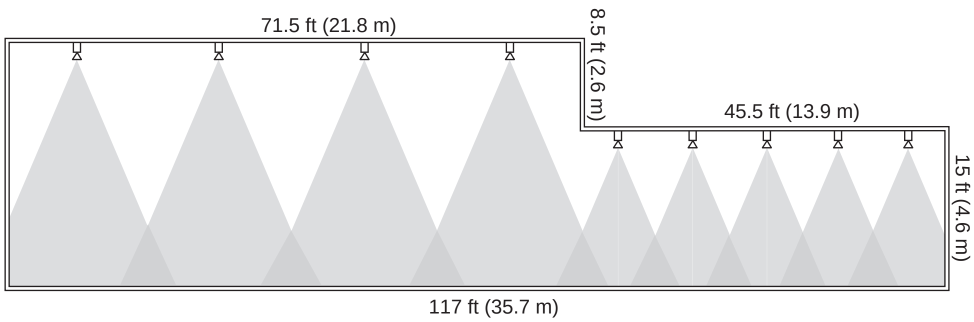


FIGURE D.2.3.1.7 *Illustration Demonstrating Effect of Ceiling Height. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc.)*

D.2.3.1.9 In some spaces it might be impractical to achieve intelligibility, and in such a case alternatives to voice evacuation might be required within such areas.

D.2.3.1.10 There might be some areas of a facility where there are several spaces of the same approximate size and with the same acoustic properties. For example, there might be an office space with multiple individual offices, each with one speaker. If one or two are satisfactorily tested, there is no need to test all of them for speech intelligibility.

D.2.3.2 Audibility Test. Measurement of the sound pressure level of a tone signal in accordance with the requirements of *NFPA 72*.

D.2.3.3 Intelligibility Test. A test method used to predict how well speech is understood by a listener.

D.2.3.4 Occupied Ambient Sound Pressure Level. The period of time when the building involved in the test is occupied and is reasonably close to having maximum background noise. For example, this might involve the operation of HVAC equipment, an industrial process, or a maximum number of occupants such as might occur in a place of public assembly.

D.2.3.5 STI or STIPA Test Signal.

D.2.3.5.1 A special audio signal that is played over the emergency communications system being tested.

D.2.3.5.2 Instruments that measure STI using a STIPA signal use a special signal that consists of signals in seven octave bands. The sound in each octave band is modulated using two (separate) modulation frequencies. The STI and STIPA have been standardized in IEC 60268. However, at the present time, the implementation of the measurement software and correlations with the test signal can differ between instrument manufacturers. Therefore, until there is further standardization, only the test signal recommended by the instrument manufacturer should be used with their instrument. Although the STIPA test signals can sound similar, there might be speed or other differences that affect results if one manufacturer's test signal is used with another manufacturer's instrument.

D.2.3.6 Talkbox. An instrument usually consisting of a high quality audio speaker and a CD player or other method used to play an STI or STIPA test signal.

D.2.3.7 Unoccupied Ambient Sound Pressure Level. The period of time when the primary occupants of the facility are not present, or when ambient sound pressure level is not at its highest level.

D.2.4 Acceptability Criteria.

D.2.4.1 The intelligibility of an emergency communication system is considered acceptable if at least 90 percent of the measurement locations within each ADS have a measured STI of not less than 0.45 (0.65 CIS) and an average STI of not less than 0.50 STI (0.70 CIS).

D.2.4.2 Speech intelligibility is not a physical quantity like meters, feet, amperes, volts, or even decibels. It is a benchmark of the degree to which we understand spoken language, and as such is a complex phenomenon affected by many variables (Ref: Jacob, K. & Tyson, T., "Computer-Based Prediction of Speech Intelligibility for Mass Notification Systems", SUPDET 2008, Fire Protection Research Foundation, Mar 2008). There are two basic categories of intelligibility testing: (1) subject (human) based testing and (2) instrument based test methods. Test methods that use human subjects are only statistical predictions of how well speech might be understood at any other time for any other group of listeners. Several subject based test methods have been extensively researched, tested for reliability, and standardized. Examples include the Phonetically Balanced (PB) word scores (256 words or 1000 words) and Modified Rhyme Test (MRT). (Ref: ANSI S3.2-1989 revised 2009, "Method for Measuring the Intelligibility of Speech over Communication Systems." Ref: ISO/TR 4870, "Acoustics — The Construction and Calibration of Speech Intelligibility Tests").

D.2.4.3 Subject based test methods can gauge how much of the spoken information is correctly understood by a person or group of persons for that particular test. When properly done, that resulting value is a prediction of how much of the spoken word will be correctly understood by others at some other time. Therefore, the results of speech intelligibility testing are usually described as predictions, not measurements. However, most users of the instruments refer to the results as measurements, not as predictions. Since the use of portable instruments is the more common method in the alarm and emergency communications industries, in this document the results will be referred to as measurements to avoid confusion. However, in scientific and general acoustic literature, readers can see the measured values correctly referred to as predictions.

D.2.4.4 Several instrument based methods for predicting speech intelligibility have been extensively researched and tested for accuracy and repeatability, and the methods have been standardized, most notably the Speech Intelligibility Index (SII) (formerly the Articulation Index, AI), Speech Transmission Index (STI), and Speech Transmission Index for Public Address (STIPA) (Ref: IEC 60268-16, "Sound system equipment — Part 16: Objective rating of speech intelligibility by speech transmission index", 2003. Ref: ANSI/ASA S3.5, "American National Standard Methods for Calculation of the Speech Intelligibility Index", 1997). Accuracy is how close the meter corresponds to actual human test results. Thus, even though an instrument is used, the results are subjective in that they correlate with how humans perceive the quality of speech.

D.2.4.5 Each of the established methods for measuring speech intelligibility has its own scale. The Common Intelligibility Scale (CIS) was developed in 1995 to show the relationship between the different methods and to permit codes and standards to require a certain level of performance while permitting any of the accepted measurement methods to be employed (Ref: Barnett, P.W. and Knight, A.D., "The Common Intelligibility Scale," Proceedings of the Institute of Acoustics, Vol. 17, Part 7, 1995). The Speech Transmission Index (STI) is widely used and has been implemented in portable equipment using a modified method called STIPA (STI Public Address). For this reason, the performance metrics cited in this document use units of STI with units of CIS in parentheses. The relationship between the two is: $CIS = 1+\log(STI)$. Relationships between other methods can be found in the literature (Ref: IEC 60849, Annex B, Sound Systems for Emergency Purposes, Feb 1998).

D.2.4.6 If an ADS is small enough to only require one measurement location (see the requirements for measurement point spacing), the result should be 0.50 STI (0.70 CIS) or more for the ADS to pass the requirement for speech intelligibility. This is based on the requirement for an average of 0.50 STI (0.70 CIS) or more in that ADS. Therefore, a single measurement of 0.45 STI (0.65 CIS) would not be considered acceptable, because that one measurement would be below the minimum required average of 0.50 STI (0.70 CIS) in that ADS.

D.2.4.7 If the value at that one measurement location were less than 0.50 STI (0.70 CIS), additional measurements could be taken at that same single measurement location. As with simple sound pressure level measurements, intelligibility measurements at any point will vary. If the average of all the measurements at that location were 0.50 STI (0.70 CIS) or more, the ADS would pass the requirement for speech intelligibility.

D.2.4.8 Some ADSs might require multiple measurement points due to their larger size. (See the requirements for measurement point spacing.) However, even in a small ADS where one measurement point would be permitted, a designer might intend that multiple measurements be made because of conditions that might result in specific points having intelligibility scores below the minimum. Where an ADS has multiple measurement locations, the requirement is that at least 90 percent of the measurement locations have values not less than 0.45 STI, (0.65 CIS) and that all measurement points average to 0.50 STI (0.70 CIS) or greater.

D.2.4.9 The use of an average intelligibility score as a part of the requirement permits a wider range of measured values within an ADS than would a simple minimum requirement. A range of permitted values is not appropriate since there is no need for an upper limit for intelligibility — prefect intelligibility is certainly acceptable.

D.2.4.10 The requirement that only 90 percent of the measured points in the ADS meet the minimum and that the average for the entire ADS be 0.50 STI (0.70 CIS) or greater recognizes that in any space, with any system and any set of acoustic conditions, there can be points where the intelligibility score might be below the minimum. See also the discussion on the definition of an ADS and how some ADSs might be designated to not require speech intelligibility at all. For example, in a room that is otherwise similar from an acoustics standpoint, the space around a loud machine might be one ADS while the rest of the room is a separate ADS. The ADS surrounding the machine might be designed to have some form of occupant notification, but not to have intelligible voice communications. This type of ADS designation permits the remainder of the room to be scored without being penalized by the fact that intelligible communication near some loud sound sources might not be possible.

D.2.4.11 The intelligibility performance requirement cited herein intentionally uses two decimal points. Portable instruments that use the STIPA method for measuring the Speech Transmission Index (STI) generally have a precision on the order of 0.02 to 0.03 (Ref: Sander J. van Wijngaarden and Jan A. Verhave, Past Present and Future of the Speech Transmission Index, Chapter 9, Measurement and Prediction of Speech Intelligibility in Traffic Tunnels Using the STI, p113, TNO Human Factors, The Netherlands, 2002). Other methods that measure STI can have a greater measurement precision. Other measurement methods, such as Modified Rhyme Test (MRT), Phonetically Balanced Word (PB) lists, and Speech Intelligibility Index (SII), also have levels of precision in the hundredths when properly conducted and scored. However, there might be slight variations in measured values between any two meters or between any two persons taking measurements with the same instrument, or between any two listener panels when using subject based test methods. This is true for any measurement method or instrument, including simple scales for measuring length or mass.

D.2.4.12 Measurements should be made and recorded using two decimal places. Averages can be calculated to three decimal points and rounded. The calculated average value should be rounded to the nearest five-hundredths (0.05) to reflect possible measurement errors and the intent of the requirement (Ref: Mapp, P., "Systematic & Common Errors in Sound System STI and Intelligibility Measurements," Convention Paper 6271, Audio Engineering Society, 117th Convention, San Fran, CA, 28–31 Oct 2004. Ref: Peter Mapp, Past Present and Future of the Speech Transmission Index, Chapter 8, Practical Application of STI to Assessing Public Address and Emergency Sound Systems, TNO Human Factors, The Netherlands, 2002). For example, averages of 0.47–0.525 STI would all be rounded to report an average of 0.50 STI (0.70 CIS). The minimum value permitted for all but 10 percent of the measurement locations in an ADS should be 0.45 STI (0.65 CIS) or greater. For example, values of 0.44 STI are below the minimum; they are not rounded up to 0.45 STI.

D.2.5 Limitations of Test Method.

D.2.5.1 Equipment designed in accordance with UL 864 and fire alarm speakers designed in accordance with UL 1480 are only tested for and only required to produce frequencies of 400 to 4000 Hz. Speech, however, includes a wider range of frequencies. Speech intelligibility measurements using STI and STIPA include octave band measurements that range from 125 Hz to 8000 Hz. STI results are most dependent on the 2000, 1000, 500, and 4000 Hz octave bands (in order of weighting) and to a lesser extent the 8000 and 250 Hz octave bands and to an even lesser extent, the 125 Hz band (again, in order of weighting).

D.2.5.2 While the lower and higher octave bands in STI calculations are weighted much less than the others, under certain acoustic conditions, systems that do not produce the highs and the lows can produce speech intelligibility that is less than desired. This does not imply that all systems should use equipment capable of greater bandwidth sound reproduction. While the larger frequency response will probably sound better and be more intelligible to a listener, it might not be necessary for the minimum desired performance. The use of equipment with higher bandwidth will require an increase in power supplies, amplifiers, and wire sizes to drive the speaker appliances.

D.2.5.3 Areas of high ambient sound pressure levels (“noise”) might be incapable of meeting the acceptability criteria in D.2.4.

D.2.5.4 In areas where the ambient sound pressure level exceeds 90 dBA, speech satisfactory speech intelligibility is difficult to achieve with conventional communications equipment and design practice. A better system design might include alternate communications methods, such as signs and displays, or might involve providing occupant notification but not communication at that location.

D.2.5.5 Impulse sounds made during measurements can impact measurement accuracy or cause instrument error.

D.2.5.6 Impulse sounds such as accidentally tapping the meter microphone, or a nearby door slamming can cause a measurement error. Some meters will display an error message. If an impulse sound occurs during the measurement, consider taking another measurement to check the results. This process is analogous to ignoring temporary sound sources, as permitted by *NFPA 72* when taking sound pressure level measurements.

D.2.5.7 Natural variation in ambient sound pressure level levels can affect the results.

D.2.6 General Requirements.

D.2.6.1 The qualified staff should be identified on the system design documents. Acceptable evidence of qualifications or certification should be provided when requested by the authority having jurisdiction. Qualified personnel should include, but not be limited to, one or more of the following:

(1) Personnel who are factory trained and certified for fire alarm system design of the specific type and brand of system addressed by this test protocol
(2) Personnel who are certified by a nationally recognized certification organization acceptable to the authority having jurisdiction
(3) Personnel who are registered, licensed, or certified by a state or local authority

D.2.6.2 All necessary precautions should be taken with the facility owner to work with appropriately qualified staff when handling or performing any function with the emergency communications system control unit.

D.2.6.3 Testing impairment and record keeping requirements of *NFPA 72*, Chapter 14 should apply.

D.2.6.4 Test measurements and other documentation should be maintained as required by the authority having jurisdiction.

D.2.6.5 Impairment management procedures of *NFPA 72*, Section 10.21 should be followed.

D.2.6.6 Test Participants. The test participants should include representatives of and/or coordination with the following: building owners; the organizations responsible for the fire alarm or emergency communications system design and installation; system equipment supplier and/or manufacturer; and the authority having jurisdiction.

D.3 Pre-Planning

D.3.1 Facility Occupancy and Use.

D.3.1.1 Occupancy/Use Types. Prior to testing, the pre-planning effort should identify the occupancy or use type to better minimize disruption to the facility occupants during the test.

D.3.1.2 Normal Operational Time Periods. Prior to testing, pre-planning efforts should identify the operational time periods when the occupied ambient sound pressure level and the unoccupied ambient sound pressure level are most likely to occur.

D.3.1.3 Testing Before Building Furnishing Completion. It might be necessary to perform testing to permit partial use before the building is in its final acoustic configuration. The results of intelligibility testing at this stage can differ from the final performance of the system. It might be necessary to work with the authority having jurisdiction to develop a testing plan. For example, until acoustical treatments such as carpeting, ceiling tiles, and other furnishings are in place, the system can be partially tested to meet audibility requirements but not necessarily intelligibility requirements. Other test plans or mitigating procedures might be permitted.

D.3.1.4 Facility Construction and Condition. Construction in the facility to be tested should be completed for areas that will be subject to intelligibility testing. This specifically requires that the command center and all locations of system microphones to be tested should be completed. Any location of remote system microphones not tested during this time should be noted, and said locations should be fully tested with positive results within 90 days of area occupancy or as required by the authority having jurisdiction. Also, all building systems such as environmental conditioning systems should be completed and operational, as they both produce noise and provide acoustic noise travel paths. In addition, all floor treatments and any acoustical wall or ceiling treatments should be in place.

D.3.1.5 System Under Test Status. The system under test should be completed for all areas where intelligibility testing will be done.

D.3.1.6 System Under Test Power. System under test should be on permanent primary power source as defined in *NFPA 72*.

D.3.1.7 System Under Test Secondary Power. Secondary power, where required and/or provided for the system under test, should be fully functional. If batteries are used for this purpose, batteries should be fully charged for a minimum of 48 hours prior to the commencement of any testing.

D.3.2 Emergency Communication Equipment.

D.3.2.1 As discussed in D.2.3.1, not all ADSs will require or be capable of intelligible voice communications. It is the designer's job to define areas that will have voice communication versus those that might have tone-only signaling, as well as which spaces will have strobes, textual signage, or other forms of notification and/or communication. This document intends that "notification" mean any form of notification, not just voice communication, whether audible, visual, or using some other human sense.

D.3.2.2 There might be applications where not all spaces will require intelligible voice signaling (Ref: NFPA 72, *National Fire Alarm Code*, 2007, Section A.7.4.1.4). For example, in a residential occupancy such as an apartment, the authority having jurisdiction and the designer might agree to a system that achieves the required audibility throughout but does not result in intelligible voice signaling in the bedrooms. The system would be sufficient to awaken and alert. However, intelligibility might not be achieved in the bedrooms with the doors closed and the sounder in the adjacent hallway or room. In some cases this can require that messages repeat a sufficient number of times to ensure that occupants can reach a location where the system is sufficiently intelligible to be understood. Systems that use tone signaling in some areas and voice signaling in other areas would not require voice intelligibility in those areas only covered by the tone.

D.3.2.3 Emergency Communications System Control Panel. The system under test for the emergency communications system should be located and identified prior to testing, and its operation features necessary for the testing clarified. Personnel who are authorized to access and service the control panel are necessary for the testing and should be included within the team performing the tests. If necessary, notification to locations beyond the facility that is being tested (e.g., fire department or a supervising station) should be notified of the tests, and if appropriate, their automatic notification feature disabled. Upon completion of the tests the emergency communications system should be returned to its normal operating condition.

D.3.2.4 Test Set-up. The function and operation of the emergency communication system control unit should be reviewed with personnel authorized to access and operate this equipment. Information should be acquired on the functioning of the voice notification portion of the system, and whether it has zone capabilities that will allow minimal disruption to building occupants by testing each zone individually. The test plan should also specify whether other functions of the system, such as elevator recall and air handler control, will be disabled during the testing of the emergency communications system.

D.3.2.5 System Under Test Calibration. The complete system under test audio path should be fully calibrated in accordance with manufacturer's instructions. On systems with adjustable technology, if manufacturer's instructions are not provided, the alternate calibration procedure offered below can be employed to calibrate the system under test.

D.3.2.5.1 Alternate Calibration Procedure.

D.3.2.5.1.1 This calibration is to be performed with the system under test on normal AC power, then checked with the system on secondary power (if so equipped).

D.3.2.5.1.2 The system under test amplifier output or the circuit being calibrated should have a minimum of a 1-watt load during the calibration process.

D.3.2.5.1.3 Perform pre-test occupant and remote monitoring station notification requirements specified in NFPA 72-2013, Chapter 14.

D.3.2.5.1.4 Introduce a 1 kHz sine-wave tone (± 100 Hz) at 90 dBA-fast 4" (4 in.) to the system microphone on-axis, perpendicular to the face of the microphone.

D.3.2.5.1.5 Place the system under test into manual paging mode (microphone "live" and connected to amplifier circuitry with notification appliance circuits active).

D.3.2.5.1.6 Using a 4-digit accuracy RMS meter, set on AC scale, set the output of the System Under Test audio notification appliance circuits to between 24 and 26 Vrms for 25.2 volt systems or between 69 and 71 Vrms for 70.7 volt systems.

D.3.2.5.1.7 Once system under test manual paging mode has been calibrated, pre-recorded tone (if so equipped) should then be tested by playing it through the system under test to ensure that there is no more than a 3 dBA difference between manual paging using the system microphone and the pre-recorded message. The dBA measurement should be made using an integrating/averaging meter and averaged over approximately 10 seconds of voice announcement to compensate for voice amplitude modulation.

D.3.2.5.1.8 On a system under test with more than one emergency paging microphone and/or pre-recorded message units, the primary units should be calibrated, then secondary units tested to ensure that they produce signals throughout the system under test at the same amplitude as the primary units.

D.3.3 Plans and Specifications.

D.3.3.1 The approved plans and specifications for the system should be used to plan and document the tests.

D.3.3.2 Testing is best accomplished using large scale plans showing all notification appliances.

D.3.3.3 The plans should show the different system notification zones.

D.3.3.4 The type and location of the notification appliances used in the emergency communication system should be identified prior to testing.

D.3.3.5 Notification appliance symbols should differentiate the type of appliance where more than one type is used.

D.3.3.6 Notification appliance symbols should include the design wattage for each speaker appliance.

D.3.3.7 The plans should show the ambient sound pressure levels used as a basis for the system design.

D.3.4 Calculating Percentage of Articulation Loss of Consonants (%AL_{CONS}). There are occasions in which a space may not be available to take test measurements in prior to the design being completed. One method of calculation for the Speech Intelligibly Index is by calculating percentage of articulation loss of consonants (%AL_{CONS}). The formula is:

$$\%AL_{CONS} = 656 D_2^2 RT_{60}^2 (N)/VQM$$

where:

D_2 = distance from the loudspeaker to the farthest listener
RT_{60} = reverberation time (seconds)
N = power ratio of L_W causing L_D to the L_W of all devices except those causing L_D
V = volume of the room (ft^3)
Q = directivity index (ratio)
M = D_C modifier (usually 1)

As point of reference, D_C is the critical distance.

N is further defined as:

L_W = sound power level (dB)

L_D = total direct energy
$L_W = 10\log(W_a/10^{-12}W)$
W_a = acoustic watts
10^{-12} = specified reference
$L_D = L_W + 10\log(Q/4\pi r^2) + 10.5$

The conversion factor from $\%AL_{CONS}$ to STI: $STI = [-0.1845 \times \ln(\%AL_{CONS})] + 0.9482$

D.3.5 Assignment of Acoustically Distinguishable Spaces.

D.3.5.1 ADSs should be assigned prior to the test, and be subject to review by all test participants.

D.3.5.2 ADS assignments should be a part of the original design process. See the discussion in D.2.3.1.

D.3.5.3 The design drawings should be used to plan and show the limits of each ADS where there is more than one.

D.3.5.4 All areas that are intended to have audible occupant notification, whether by tone only or by voice are to be designated as one or more ADSs. See D.2.3.1.

D.3.5.5 The drawings or a table listing all ADSs should be used to indicate which ADSs will require intelligible voice communications and which will not. The same drawings or table could be used to list audibility requirements where tones are used and to list any forms of visual or other notification or communications methods being employed in the ADS.

D.3.5.6 ADS layouts that differ from the original, approved design documents should be approved by the authority having jurisdiction.

D.3.6 Spaces Not Requiring Testing.

D.3.6.1 Buildings and areas of buildings that are not acoustically challenging such as traditional office environments, hotel guest rooms, dwelling units, and spaces with carpeting and furnishings generally meet intelligibility levels if the audibility levels are consistent with the requirements of *NFPA 72*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*. Performing intelligibility testing might not be necessary in these areas. Areas of a typical building that can be acoustically challenging could include vehicle parking levels and large lobby areas with hard floors and wall surfaces, stairs, and other spaces with high reverberation. Intelligibility meeting the requirements in this document can be difficult to achieve throughout these spaces. Specialized sound system design procedures, principles, and equipment might be necessary to achieve speech intelligibility in high noise areas or areas with challenging acoustics. Alternatively, intelligibility could be provided near exits and within specific areas (elevator lobby of a parking level) where occupants can obtain clear instructions after being alerted. This is done, in part, by the proper planning and designation of ADSs.

D.3.6.2 Factors that influence the decision to measure speech intelligibility include:

D.3.6.2.1 Possible reasons not to test speech intelligibility include the following:

(1) Distance listener to speaker less than 30 ft (9.1 m) in the room (assuming proper audibility and low reverberation)
(2) Ambient sound level is less than 50 dBA and the average SPL of the voice message is 10–15 dBA fast greater
(3) No appreciable hard surfaces (e.g., glass, marble, tile, metal, etc.)
(4) No appreciable high ceilings (i.e., ceiling height equals speaker spacing at a ratio of 1:1 optimal or 1:2 max)

D.3.6.2.2 Possible reasons not to test intelligibility, except possibly for spot sample testing include the following:

(1) Space has been acoustically designed by individuals having skills sufficient to properly design a voice/alarm system for the occupancy to be protected (e.g., space has been designed using commercially available computer modeling software acceptable to authority having jurisdiction)

D.3.6.2.3 Possible reasons to test include the following:

(1) Appreciable hard surfaces (e.g., glass, marble, tile, metal, etc.)
(2) Appreciable high ceilings (e.g., atriums, multiple ceiling heights)

D.3.6.3 In situations where there are several ADSs that have the exact same physical and system configuration, it might be possible to test only a representative sample and then just check the others to confirm system and appliance operation — for example, hotel rooms with similar layouts or offices of similar size and furnishings where each has a speaker appliance. In these cases there would be no expected difference in system intelligibility. The only possible problem would be one where an appliance was not operational or tapped at the incorrect wattage. These problems would be apparent by a basic "listening" test.

D.3.6.4 Not all ADSs will require speech intelligibility testing. Some areas might be designed for notification, but not for voice communication. Notification can be accomplished by tone-only signaling or by a pre-alert tone preceding a voice message. See D.3.5.5.

D.3.6.5 By definition, an ADS is relatively uniform in acoustic characteristics. However, speech intelligibility will vary at different points within an ADS depending primarily on distance to noise sources and distance to speaker appliances. Generally, in smaller spaces up to about 40 ft × 40 ft (12.2 m × 12.2 m), one measurement location will be sufficient. The location should not be directly in front of a wall mounted speaker or directly under a ceiling mounted speaker. Neither should it be in the far corner right next to walls or windows. Generally, try to stay about 5 to 10 ft (1.5 to 3.0 m) away from vertical surfaces that reflect sound. In larger spaces, a grid of about 40 ft × 40 ft (12.2 m × 12.2 m) can be used as a starting guide, then adjusted for the locations of machines and other obstructions and for speaker appliance locations. See D.2.4 for additional discussion on measuring points and the averaging of results in an ADS.

D.3.6.6 Of the ADSs that do require intelligible voice communications, some will require speech intelligibility testing and others might only require audibility testing.

D.3.6.7 Testing of intelligibility might not be required in buildings and areas of buildings that are not acoustically challenging and that meet the audibility requirements of NFPA 72. Spaces that are not considered to be acoustically challenging include traditional office environments, hotel guest rooms, spaces with carpeting and furnishings that reduce reverberation, and other, smaller spaces where a speaker appliance is installed in the space.

D.3.7 Measurement Points Within ADS.

D.3.7.1 Measurements should be taken at an elevation of 5 ft (1.5 m) or at any other elevation deemed appropriate based on occupancy (e.g., elevated walkways, child-height, sitting height, work area height, etc.) or test instrument instructions.

D.3.7.2 The number and location of measurement points in each ADS should be planned and based on the area and volume of the space and the speaker appliance location within the space. The location of noise sources, egress paths, and the locations of personnel in the space should also be considered.

D.3.7.3 Testing when the area is occupied and when the ambient sound level is at or near its expected maximum is preferred because it is easier. However, it does involve playing of a test signal through the emergency communications system for the duration of the test. When testing using the STIPA signal, the signal is a continuous noise signal. Other methods that measure STI use a swept tone that should be repeated for each measurement location. The alternate procedure is to test and save the STI measurement data during unoccupied times, measure and save the unoccupied sound level, and then take and save sound level measurements during occupied times. The three data sets are combined by software to calculate the corrected STI for the area. Testing using this method requires three measurements at each measurement location, but does not subject occupants to constant test signals. The choice of testing occupied versus unoccupied for intelligibility is the same as for audibility testing of tone signaling systems and is based on convenience versus disruption of normal use of the space. However, unlike audibility testing, intelligibility testing is less likely to contribute to the Cry Wolf Syndrome because the test signal is not the same as the evacuation tone, which would be sounded throughout testing of a tone signaling system. [Ref: Schifiliti, Robert P., "Fire Alarm Testing Strategies Can Improve Occupant Response and Reduce the "Cry Wolf" Syndrome," NEMA Supplement in Fire Protection Engineering, Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Bethesda, MD 20814, Fall 2003.] and [Ref: Breznitz, S., "Cry Wolf: The Psychology of False Alarms," Lawrence Erlbaum Associates, Hillsdale, NJ, February 1984.]

D.3.7.4 If multiple measurement points are required within an ADS, they should be separated by about 40 ft (12.2 m).

D.3.7.5 No more than one third of the measurement points within an ADS should be on the axis of a speaker.

D.3.7.6 See D.2.4 for the requirements for averaging the results at different measurement points within an ADS.

D.3.7.7 Measurement points should be shown on plans or otherwise described in a way that permits future testing at the same locations.

D.3.8 Test Method — Occupied versus Unoccupied.

D.3.8.1 It is possible to conduct STI measurements when the area is occupied or when it is not occupied. In this document "occupied" versus "unoccupied" is intended to be consistent with the definitions in D.2.3 for occupied ambient sound pressure level and for unoccupied ambient sound pressure level.

D.3.8.2 The preferred procedure is to conduct the STI/STIPA test in the presence of the occupied ambient sound pressure level. See D.6.4.

D.3.8.3 Where the test method is measuring the STI using the STIPA test signal, the STIPA test signal can be played through the system and the STI can be measured and the data saved by the test instrument when the area is either not occupied or when the background ambient conditions are not the occupied ambient sound pressure level. It is also necessary to measure and save the unoccupied ambient sound level at each measurement location. Then, during occupied times, take and save ambient sound level measurements. The three data sets are combined by software to calculate the corrected STI for the area. See D.6.5.6.

D.4 Test Equipment Calibration for Testing Using STIPA Test Signal

D.4.1 General.

D.4.1.1 The calibration of the STI test instrument is done in accordance with this section using a talkbox or in accordance with manufacturer's instructions.

D.4.1.2 The Intelligibility Test System consists of a talkbox and STIPA test meter (analyzer) all from one manufacturer. Units from other manufacturers should not be interchanged unless said units have been tested by a recognized testing laboratory for compatibility *(see D.2.3.5.2)*.

D.4.1.3 Prior to performing any intelligibility testing or intelligibility system calibration, verify that the test meter's microphone, talkbox, and analyzer are within calibration date as listed on the unit's calibration tag.

D.4.1.4 All audio test equipment, including ANSI Type 2 sound pressure level meters required by *NFPA 72* for audibility testing, require regular calibration to known, traceable standards. The portable meters used to measure STI using the STIPA test signal should meet or exceed ANSI Type 2 meter requirements. In addition, the STIPA test signal and the meter algorithm for measuring the received signal and calculating the modulation transfer function to arrive at the STI should be tested by a certifying laboratory for accuracy to the IEC standard for STI.

D.4.2 Calibration Procedure.

D.4.2.1 The following procedures should be performed at the commencement and conclusion of intelligibility testing. If the following procedure differs from that recommended by the manufacturer of the test equipment, follow their calibration test procedure.

D.4.2.2 Perform these calibration procedures in a quiet room (45 dBA or less) without any extraneous sounds or any talking, music, etc.

D.4.2.3 Start STIPA test tone as instructed by the manufacturer.

D.4.2.4 Apply power to the talkbox and then activate the STIPA test signal.

D.4.2.5 Turn on the analyzer and set it to SPL A fast measurement mode.

D.4.2.6 Place the analyzer's microphone approximately 1 in., on axis, from the talkbox. Do not place the analyzer microphone against any hard surface — this can lead to induced noise and affect the calibration.

D.4.2.7 Adjust the talkbox volume so that the STI analyzer's reading is approximately 92 dBA.

D.4.2.8 Keeping the analyzer in approximately the same position, measure the STI. Note that some meters display STI measurements using the CIS scale while some can display results in either STI or CIS units. See D.2.4 for an explanation of the CIS scale.

D.4.2.9 The equipment is working properly if the reading is greater than 0.91 STI or 0.96 CIS. Up to three tests can be performed. If the system does not pass after three tests, it should be returned to the manufacturer for repair or recalibration.

D.5 Talkbox Set-up

D.5.1 Input Test Signal.

D.5.1.1 The input test signal should be configured to produce the proper level by utilizing either the microphone input method or the direct input injection method.

D.5.1.2 Most emergency communications systems have microphones for manual voice communication and should be tested using the microphone test method. Systems that do not have microphones and that only play pre-recorded voice announcements can be tested using the direct input injection method.

D.5.1.3 By putting the STI or STIPA test signal into the system via the system microphone, the ECS system is being tested from end to end. If an ECS system has the test signal prerecorded in its hardware, playback of that test signal would not be testing the microphone and the part that feeds the microphone signal into the system.

D.5.1.4 Direct Input Injection Method for Test Signals.

D.5.1.4.1 With this method the STI or STIPA test signals are pre-recorded in the emergency communications system hardware in the same way as the pre-recorded voice messages and at the same input levels. Alternately, the test signal can input to the system via input jacks or terminals.

D.5.1.4.2 The input level of the test signal should be tested by the ECS listing agency as being the same as the pre-recorded voice levels or should be calibrated using the ECS equipment manufacturer's instructions.

D.5.1.4.3 For ECS systems that permit voice messages to be custom recorded, the equivalent sound level *(see A.18.4.3.1)* L_{eq} of the recorded voice over a period of 10 seconds or the length of the voice message should be measured and should be within 3 dB of the prerecorded STI or STIPA test signal to ensure that it is at the correct level.

D.5.1.4.4 Field measurements of the STI are made using the procedure in Section D.5.

D.5.1.5 Microphone Input Method for Test Signals.

D.5.1.5.1 With this method a recording of the STI or STIPA test signals are played into the system microphone using a talkbox.

D.5.1.5.2 The talkbox is set up and calibrated per D.5.2, and field measurements of the STI are made using the procedure in Section D.6.

D.5.2 Calibrating the Input Test Signal for Microphone Input Method.

D.5.2.1 Of the two methods for setting the test signal input to the system microphone, the method that sets the level to match that of a person speaking into the microphone is the one required by IEC 60268-16, *Sound system equipment — Part 16: Objective rating of speech intelligibility by speech transmission index,* the standard that defines STI and STIPA.

D.5.2.2 In theory, the two methods for setting up the talkbox should result in the talkbox being set at approximately the same sound level. The ECS should be designed and configured so that input to the microphone results in the same output level that any pre-recorded announcements would produce.

D.5.2.3 General.

D.5.2.3.1 There are two methods for setting the level of the STI or STIPA test signal at the input microphone.

D.5.2.3.2 Method 1 sets the volume of the input test signal so that the dBA output in the area under test is the same as that for a pre-recorded message.

D.5.2.3.3 Method 2 sets the volume of the input test signal to match that of speech level under normal conditions.

D.5.2.3.4 The room where the talkbox and system under test microphone are located should be quiet.

D.5.2.3.5 An emergency command center or fire command center will not be free of noise during an actual emergency. However, for testing purposes, the room should be relatively free of extraneous noises that could affect the results. The purpose of the tests is to establish the baseline capability of the system and acoustic environment to support intelligible communications. Good design practice for an emergency command center is to isolate the space so that only emergency command personnel have access. In addition, the location of the microphone for manual input should be such that background discussions and noise are minimized.

D.5.2.3.6 Set up the talkbox in accordance with the manufacturer's instructions.

D.5.2.4 Method 1 — Matching Recorded Message Level.

D.5.2.4.1 The intent of this method is to set the talkbox or audio source input level into the emergency communications system microphone so that the output at a location in the area under test is the same as the level of prerecorded messages played by the system.

D.5.2.4.2 The sound pressure level produced by the talkbox while playing the STI or STIPA test signal should be matched with the sound pressure level of the pre-recorded voice message.

D.5.2.4.3 Two people will be needed to perform the calibration procedure. One person needs to be present at the talkbox while the other person needs to operate the analyzer at a typical location in the facility.

D.5.2.4.4 At a typical location in the facility, position the analyzer it so its microphone is approximately 5 ft (1.5 m) above the finished floor.

D.5.2.4.5 Set the analyzer (meter) to measure sound pressure level, A-weighted, fast.

D.5.2.4.6 Activate the pre-recorded voice message from the ECS.

D.5.2.4.7 The decibel reading at the analyzer will be somewhat erratic due to the nature of speech signals.

D.5.2.4.8 Record the highest dB reading the system produces.

D.5.2.4.9 Do not move the analyzer from the test location.

D.5.2.4.10 Turn off the pre-recorded voice message.

D.5.2.4.11 Place the microphone of the emergency communications system at a distance from the talkbox as recommended by the microphone or ECS manufacturer.

D.5.2.4.12 Start the talkbox STI or STIPA test signal.

D.5.2.4.13 Adjust the talkbox sound level until the field measurement of the test signal is ±3 dB of the level generated when the pre-recorded voice message was played and measured. This setting should not change for the remainder of the testing.

D.5.2.4.14 Begin field testing in accordance with Section D.6.

D.5.2.5 Method 2 — Matching Speech Level.

D.5.2.5.1 The intent of this method is to set the talkbox or audio source input level to the emergency communications system microphone to match that of an average person speaking into the microphone.

D.5.2.5.2 Set the analyzer (meter) to measure sound pressure level, A-weighted, fast.

D.5.2.5.3 Start the STI or STIPA test signal and hold the meter at a distance of 39.4 in. (1.0 m) on-axis from the talkbox or audio source.

D.5.2.5.4 Set the talkbox volume (level) so that the meter registers 65 dBA at a distance of 39.4 in. (1.0 m). This setting should not change for the remainder of the testing.

D.5.2.5.5 The distance from the microphone to the talkbox should be documented so that future tests can be set up consistently. Most microphone manufacturers or ECS equipment manufacturers will state a recommended distance for a person to hold the microphone when talking. Some microphone use chin guards or some physical means to help users know when they are holding the microphone at the correct distance. If the manufacturer has not recommended a talking distance, 4 in. (100 mm) is recommended as a guide.

D.5.2.5.6 Place the microphone of the emergency communications system at a distance from the talkbox as recommended by the microphone or ECS manufacturer.

D.5.2.5.7 A level of 60 dBA at one meter is required by IEC 60268-16, *Sound system equipment — Part 16: Objective rating of speech intelligibility by speech transmission index*, the standard that defines STI and STIPA and is considered a normal speech level. While 60 dBA at 1 m is documented as "normal" speech, in areas where there is background noise, the Lombard effect causes a person to talk at an elevated volume. For this document, the committee chose to use 65 dBA as more representative of speech levels during emergency situations. It is recommended that at least one field STI measurement be made at both 60 dBA and 70 dBA at one meter talking level to test the effects of elevated voice level.

D.5.2.5.8 Sound pressure level increases 6 dB whenever the distance is halved. So, the test could be set up so that the talkbox level achieves 65 + 6 = 71 dBA at a distance of 19.7 in. (0.50 m). Table D.5.2.5.8 shows different dB levels at distances that would be equivalent to 65 dBA at 39.4 in. (1.0 m).

TABLE D.5.2.5.8 *Audibility Equivalent to 65 dBA at 1-m Distance*

r (in.)	*r* (m)	L_p (dB)	*r* (in.)	*r* (m)	L_p (dB)	*r* (in.)	*r* (m)	L_p (dB)
0.1	0	117	4	0.10	85	11	0.28	76
0.2	0.01	111	5	0.13	83	12	0.30	75
0.5	0.01	103	6	0.15	81	20	0.50	71
1.0	0.03	97	7	0.18	80	24	0.61	69
1.5	0.04	93	8	0.20	79	39.37	1.00	65
2.0	0.05	91	9	0.23	78	78.8	2.00	59
3.0	0.08	87	10	0.25	77			

D.5.2.5.9 Begin field testing in accordance with Section D.6.

D.6 STI/STIPA Test Procedure

D.6.1 General. This test procedure permits testing during either occupied conditions or during unoccupied conditions. See D.3.8.

D.6.2 Power. The system under test should be tested on secondary power for a minimum of 15 minutes and then on primary power for the remainder of the testing.

D.6.3 System Operation. Where two ADSs are adjacent to each other and not separated by physically barriers that significantly prevent noise penetration from one ADS to another, the notification appliances in both ADSs should be operating during the testing. It is acceptable for intelligibility testing to silence or disable other notification zones that would not potentially interfere with each other. However, regular testing per *NFPA 72* would require that all circuits be operated simultaneously at one point to ensure proper operation and to verify power requirements.

D.6.4 Occupied Testing.

D.6.4.1 Testing should be done during a period of time when the area is occupied and is reasonably close to having maximum background noise.

D.6.4.2 Set up the talkbox in accordance with Section D.4 and start the STI or STIPA test signal.

D.6.4.3 At each measurement point in each ADS measure the STI.

D.6.4.4 Document the results on plans or forms in a way that accurately describes the measurement point and that permits future testing at the same locations.

D.6.5 Unoccupied Testing.

D.6.5.1 General. Testing of speech intelligibility in the presence of the occupied ambient sound pressure level is the preferred method. However, for various reasons, including disruption of normal work, it might be desirable to only do "silent" testing during occupied periods and to do testing with the STI or STIPA test signal during unoccupied or less occupied conditions.

D.6.5.2 Number of Tests. This test method requires three different measurements at each measurement point, typically made during two site visits. The data for each measurement is saved in a format in accordance with the instrument manufacturer's requirements. The three data files are then post-processed to arrive at the final corrected STI.

D.6.5.3 Occupied Ambient Sound Pressure Level Measurement.

D.6.5.3.1 At each measurement point in each ADS measure the occupied ambient sound pressure level.

D.6.5.3.2 Save the measurement data in accordance with the instrument manufacturer's requirements to permit post-processing of the data.

D.6.5.3.3 Document the results in writing on plans or forms in a way that accurately describes the measurement point and that permits future testing at the same locations.

D.6.5.4 Unoccupied Ambient Sound Pressure Level Measurement.

D.6.5.4.1 At each measurement point in each ADS measure the unoccupied ambient sound pressure level.

D.6.5.4.2 Save the measurement data in accordance with the instrument manufacturer's requirements to permit post-processing of the data.

D.6.5.4.3 Document the results in writing on plans or forms in a way that accurately describes the measurement point and that permits future testing at the same locations.

D.6.5.5 Unoccupied STI Measurement.

D.6.5.5.1 Set up the talkbox in accordance with Section D.4 and start the STI or STIPA test signal.

D.6.5.5.2 At each measurement point in each ADS measure the uncorrected STI.

D.6.5.5.3 Save the measurement data in accordance with the instrument manufacturer's requirements to permit post-processing of the data.

D.6.5.5.4 Document the results in writing on plans or forms in a way that accurately describes the measurement point and that permits future testing at the same locations.

D.6.5.6 Post Processing.

D.6.5.6.1 The corrected STI is arrived at by post-processing of the occupied ambient sound pressure level measurement, the unoccupied ambient sound pressure level measurement, and the unoccupied STI measurement. In effect, the measured STI (uncorrected) is being corrected by adding in the effects the actual expected (occupied) ambient sound pressure level.

D.6.5.6.2 The post processing procedure or software provided by the instrument manufacturer should be used to calculate the final corrected STI for each measurement point.

D.6.5.6.3 Document the results in writing on plans or forms in a way that accurately describes the measurement point and that permits future testing at the same locations.

D.6.5.6.4 Documentation of the final results for each point should include the results of all three measurements and the final corrected STI value. The manufacturer's software revision should also be included in the results documentation.

D.7 Post Test Procedures

D.7.1 Test Closure. Upon completion of all testing, the emergency communications system should be returned to its normal operating condition.

D.7.2 Results.

D.7.2.1 It is also not the intent of this test protocol to describe how to interpret results or how to correct systems or environments that contribute to poor speech intelligibility. However, depending on the instrument used, it might be possible to have data retained by the instrument to determine possible causes and their effects on STI results. Consult with the instrument manufacturer to determine if the instrument has the capability to display or save the intermediate STI modulation indices and octave band measurement results and for instructions on how to interpret those data.

D.7.2.2 For each ADS, summarize the results in accordance with the performance requirements of D.2.4.

D.7.2.3 For an ADS that had multiple measurement points or that had multiple measurements at only one measurement point, calculate the average per D.2.4 and list the average and the minimum measurement per D.2.4 in the results summary.

D.7.3 Documentation.

D.7.3.1 The test results should be fully documented and provided to the building owner, the emergency communications system contractor, the system designer, the authority having jurisdiction, and any other individual or organization deemed appropriate.

D.7.3.2 In addition to the requirements for test documentation contained in *NFPA 72*, Chapter 10, the test results should include:

(1) Building location and related descriptive facility information
(2) Names, titles, and contact information for individuals involved in test
(3) Dates and times of tests
(4) A list of testing instruments, including manufacturer's name, model, serial number, and date of most recent calibration
(5) Technical description of emergency communications system
(6) Identification of ADSs
(7) Locations of specific measurement points (in a list or on a set of drawings)
(8) Site definition of ambient sound pressure levels
(9) STI/STIPA measurements at each measurement point
(10) Final corrected STI/STIPA values where the post-processing procedure is used
(11) Indication of whether or not the test met the pass/fail criteria
(12) Record of system restoration
(13) Any additional information to assist with future evaluation of system performance

D.7.3.3 If appropriate, the plans and specifications addressed in D.3.3 should be updated based on the results of the test.

ANNEX E

Sample Ordinance Adopting *NFPA 72*

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

E.1

The following sample ordinance is provided to assist a jurisdiction in the adoption of this Code and is not part of this Code.

ORDINANCE NO. __________

An ordinance of the *[jurisdiction]* adopting the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, and documents listed in Chapter 2 of that Code; prescribing regulations governing conditions hazardous to life and property from fire or explosion; providing for the issuance of permits and collection of fees; repealing Ordinance No. __________ of the *[jurisdiction]* and all other ordinances and parts of ordinances in conflict therewith; providing a penalty; providing a severability clause; and providing for publication; and providing an effective date.

BE IT ORDAINED BY THE *[governing body]* OF THE *[jurisdiction]*:

SECTION 1 That the *NFPA 72*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, and documents adopted by Chapter 2, three (3) copies of which are on file and are open to inspection by the public in the office of the *[jurisdiction's keeper of records]* of the *[jurisdiction]*, are hereby adopted and incorporated into this ordinance as fully as if set out at length herein, and from the date on which this ordinance shall take effect, the provisions thereof shall be controlling within the limits of the *[jurisdiction]*. The same are hereby adopted as the Code of the *[jurisdiction]* for the purpose of prescribing regulations governing conditions hazardous to life and property from fire or explosion and providing for issuance of permits and collection of fees.

SECTION 2 Any person who shall violate any provision of this code or standard hereby adopted or fail to comply therewith; or who shall violate or fail to comply with any order made thereunder; or who shall build in violation of any detailed statement of specifications or plans submitted and approved thereunder; or fail to operate in accordance with any certificate or permit issued thereunder; and from which no appeal has been taken; or who shall fail to comply with such an order as affirmed or modified by a court of competent jurisdiction, within the time fixed herein, shall severally for each and every such violation and noncompliance, respectively, be guilty of a misdemeanor, punishable by a fine of not less than $ __________ nor more than $ __________ or by imprisonment for not less than __________ days nor more than __________ days or by both such fine and imprisonment. The imposition of one penalty for any violation shall not excuse the violation or permit it to continue; and all such persons shall be required to correct or remedy such violations or defects within a reasonable time; and when not otherwise specified the application of the above penalty shall not be held to prevent the enforced removal of prohibited conditions. Each day that prohibited conditions are maintained shall constitute a separate offense.

SECTION 3 Additions, insertions, and changes — that the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code* is amended and changed in the following respects:

List Amendments

SECTION 4 That ordinance No. __________ of *[jurisdiction]* entitled *[fill in the title of the ordinance or ordinances in effect at the present time]* and all other ordinances or parts of ordinances in conflict herewith are hereby repealed.

SECTION 5 That if any section, subsection, sentence, clause, or phrase of this ordinance is, for any reason, held to be invalid or unconstitutional, such decision shall not affect the validity or constitutionality of the remaining portions of this ordinance. The *[governing body]* hereby declares that it would have passed this ordinance, and each section, subsection, clause, or phrase hereof, irrespective of the fact that any one or more sections, subsections, sentences, clauses, and phrases be declared unconstitutional.

SECTION 6 That the *[jurisdiction's keeper of records]* is hereby ordered and directed to cause this ordinance to be published.

[NOTE: An additional provision may be required to direct the number of times the ordinance is to be published and to specify that it is to be in a newspaper in general circulation. Posting may also be required.]

SECTION 7 That this ordinance and the rules, regulations, provisions, requirements, orders, and matters established and adopted hereby shall take effect and be in full force and effect *[time period]* from and after the date of its final passage and adoption.

ANNEX F

Wiring Diagrams and Guide for Testing Fire Alarm Circuits

This annex is not a part of the requirements of this NFPA document but is included for informational purposes only.

Annex F provides guidance for testing of the various classes of circuits identified in Chapter 12 of this edition of NFPA 72. Earlier editions of NFPA 72 have used different designations for these circuits. Designations found in previous editions (located in Annex C of NFPA 72, 2007 edition or earlier) can be compared with these corresponding diagrams.

This annex was originally based on the performance requirements for circuit styles and classes specified in Tables 6.5, 6.6.1, and 6.7 of the 2002 and earlier editions of the Code. These tables were substantially revised for the 2007 edition of the Code and are now shown as Tables A.12.3(a), A.12.3(b), and A.12.3(c), respectively. The tables from the 2002 edition are shown as Commentary Tables F.1, F.2, and F.3 to provide the user a more direct reference in applying the guidance of this annex.

F.1

Circuit class designations in this edition of the Code are Class A, B, C, D, E, R, S, and X. Definitions can be found in Chapter 12. Additionally, special circuits unique to supervising stations are designated as Types 4, 5, 6, and 7 and definitions can be found in Chapter 26.

The wiring diagrams depicted in Figure F.2.1.1 through Figure F.3.14(k) are representative of typical circuits encountered in the field and are not intended to be all-inclusive.

COMMENTARY TABLE F.1 *Performance of Initiating Device Circuits (IDC) [Table 6.5 from NFPA 72, 2002 edition]*

Class	B			B			B			A			A		
Style	A			B			C			D			E		
	Alm	Trbl	ARC	Alm	Trbl	ARC	Alm	Trbl	ARC	Alm	Trbl	ARC	Alm	Trbl	ARC
Abnormal Condition	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15
Single open	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	—	—	X	R	—	X	R
Single ground	—	X	—	—	X	R	—	X	R	—	X	R	—	X	R
Wire-to-wire short	X	—	—	X	—	—	—	X	—	X	—	—	—	X	—
Loss of carrier (if used)/ channel interface	—	—	—	—	—	—	—	X	—	—	—	—	—	X	—

Alm = Alarm.
Trbl = Trouble.
ARC = Alarm receipt capability during abnormal condition.
R = Required capacity.
X = Indication required at protected premises and as required by Chapter 26.
α = Style exceeds minimum requirements of Class A.

COMMENTARY TABLE F.2 *Performance of Signaling Line Circuits (SLC) [Table 6.6.1 from NFPA 72, 2002 edition]*

Class	**B**			**B**			**A**			**B**			**B**		
Style	**0.5**			**1**			**2**			**3**			**3.5**		
	Alm	**Trbl**	**ARC**	**Alm**	**Trbl**	**ARC**	**Alm**	**Trbl**	**ARC**	**Alm**	**Trbl**	**ARC**	**Alm**	**Trbl**	**ARC**
Abnormal Condition	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**	**9**	**10**	**11**	**12**	**13**	**14**	**15**
Single open	–	X	–	–	X	–	–	X	R	–	X	–	–	X	–
Single ground	–	X	–	–	X	R	–	X	R	–	X	R	–	X	–
Wire-to-wire short	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	M	–	X	–	–	X	–
Wire-to-wire short & open	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	M	–	X	–	–	X	–
Wire-to-wire short & ground	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	X	M	–	X	–	–	X	–
Open and ground	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	X	R	–	X	–	–	X	–
Loss of carrier (if used)/ channel interface	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	–	X	–

Class	**B**			**B**			**A**			**A**			**A**		
Style	**4**			**4.5**			**5**			**6**			**7**		
	Alm	**Trbl**	**ARC**	**Alm**	**Trbl**	**ARC**	**Alm**	**Trbl**	**ARC**	**Alm**	**Trbl**	**ARC**	**Alm**	**Trbl**	**ARC**
Abnormal Condition	**16**	**17**	**18**	**19**	**20**	**21**	**22**	**23**	**24**	**25**	**26**	**27**	**28**	**29**	**30**
Single open	–	X	–	–	X	R	–	X	R	–	X	R	–	X	R
Single ground	–	X	R	–	X	–	–	X	R	–	X	R	–	X	R
Wire-to-wire short	–	X	–	–	X	–	–	X	–	–	X	–	–	X	R
Wire-to-wire short & open	–	X	–	–	X	–	–	X	–	–	X	–	–	X	–
Wire-to-wire short & ground	–	X	–	–	X	–	–	X	–	–	X	–	–	X	–
Open and ground	–	X	–	–	X	–	–	X	–	–	X	R	–	X	R
Loss of carrier (if used)/ channel interface	–	X	–	–	X	–	–	X	–	–	X	–	–	X	–

Alm = Alarm.
Trbl = Trouble.
ARC = Alarm receipt capability during abnormal condition.
M = May be capable of alarm with wire-to-wire short.
R = Required capability.
X = Indication required at protected premises and as required by Chapter 8.
α = Style exceeds minimum requirements of Class A.

The noted symbols are as indicated in NFPA 170, *Standard for Fire Safety and Emergency Symbols*.

An individual point-identifying (addressable) fire alarm initiating device operates on a signaling line circuit and is designated as a Class A, Class B, or Class X initiating device circuit. All fire alarm circuits must test free of grounds because metallic conductors will cause failure of the circuit when a second ground condition occurs on the same power source.

Nonmetallic circuit paths, such as wireless and fiber-optic may still be designated as Class A, B, or X if they meet the other performance requirements of those pathways.

COMMENTARY TABLE F.3 *Notification Appliance Circuits (NAC) [Table 6.7 from NFPA 72, 2002 edition]*

Class	B		B		B		A	
Style	**W**		**X**		**Y**		**Z**	
	Trouble indication at protected premises	**Alarm capability during abnormal conditions**	**Trouble indication at protected premises**	**Alarm capability during abnormal conditions**	**Trouble indication at protected premises**	**Alarm capability during abnormal conditions**	**Trouble indication at protected premises**	**Alarm capability during abnormal conditions**
Abnormal Condition	**1**	**2**	**3**	**4**	**5**	**6**	**7**	**8**
Single open	X	–	X	R	X	–	X	R
Single ground	X	–	X	–	X	R	X	R
Wire-to-wire short	X	–	X	–	X	–	X	–

X = Indication required at protected premises.
R = Required capability.

Ground-fault detection is not required for all circuits that might be interconnected with the fire alarm system. Therefore, tests for ground-fault detection should be limited to those circuits equipped with ground-fault detection. The Class R designation is for a redundant circuit that can use metallic conductors, but is not concerned with ground fault detection. Class S is a single path supervised circuit that can use metallic conductors, but is not concerned with ground fault detection.

The following initiating device circuits are illustrative of either alarm or supervisory signaling. Alarm-initiating devices and supervisory initiating devices are not permitted to have identical annunciation at the fire alarm control unit.

Directly connected system smoke detectors, commonly referred to as two-wire detectors, should be listed as being electrically and functionally compatible with the fire alarm control unit and the specific subunit or module to which they are connected. If the detectors and the units or modules are not compatible, it is possible that, during an alarm condition, the detector's visible indicator will illuminate, but no change of state to the alarm condition will occur at the fire alarm control unit. Incompatibility can also prevent proper system operation at extremes of operating voltage, temperature, and other environmental conditions.

Where two or more two-wire detectors with integral relays are connected to a single initiating device circuit, and their relay contacts are used to control essential building functions (e.g., fan shutdown, elevator recall), it should be clearly noted that the circuit might be capable of supplying only enough energy to support one detector/relay combination in an alarm mode. If control of more than one building function is required, each detector/relay combination used to control separate functions should be connected to separate initiating device circuits, or they should be connected to an initiating device circuit that provides adequate power to allow all the detectors connected to the circuit to be in the alarm mode simultaneously. During acceptance and reacceptance testing, this feature should always be tested and verified.

A speaker is an alarm notification appliance, and, if used as shown in the diagrams in Section F.2, the principle of operation and supervision is the same as for other audible alarm notification appliances (e.g., bells and horns).

The testing of supervised remote relays is to be conducted in the same manner as for notification appliances.

F.2 Wiring Diagrams and Testing

When testing circuits, the correct wiring size, insulation type, and conductor fill should be verified in accordance with the requirements of *NFPA 70*, *National Electrical Code*.

F.2.1 Testing Nonpowered, Hard-Wired Class A, B, or C Initiating Device Circuits. Disconnect conductor at device or control unit, then reconnect. Temporarily connect a ground to either leg of conductors, then remove ground. Both operations should indicate audible and visual trouble with subsequent restoration at control unit.

F.2.1.1 Hard-Wired Alarm Initiating or Supervisory Initiating Devices. Hard-wired alarm initiating devices (e.g., manual station or valve supervisory switch), by their intended function, initiate alarm upon a conductor-to-conductor short. See Figure F.2.1.1.

F.2.2 Nonpowered Class A Circuits. Disconnect a conductor at a device at midpoint in the circuit. Operate a device on either side of the device with the disconnected conductor. Reset fire alarm control unit and reconnect conductor. Repeat test with a ground applied to either conductor in place of the disconnected conductor. Both operations should indicate audible and visual trouble, then alarm or supervisory indication with subsequent restoration.

F.2.3 Circuit-Powered (Two-Wire) Smoke Detectors for Class A or B Initiating Device Circuits. Remove smoke detector where installed with plug-in base or disconnect conductor from fire alarm control unit beyond first device. Activate smoke detector per manufacturer's published instructions between fire alarm control unit and circuit break. Restore detector or circuit, or both. Fire alarm control unit should indicate trouble when fault occurs and alarm when detectors are activated between the break and the fire alarm control unit. See Figure F.2.3.

F.2.4 Circuit-Powered (Two-Wire) Smoke Detectors for Class A Initiating Device Circuits. Disconnect conductor at a smoke detector or remove where installed with a plug-in base at midpoint in the circuit. Operate a device on either side of the device with the fault. Reset control unit and reconnect conductor or detector. Repeat test with a ground applied to either conductor in place of the disconnected conductor or removed device. Both operations should indicate audible and visual trouble, then alarm indication with subsequent restoration. See Figure F.2.4.

F.2.5 Combination Alarm Initiating Device and Notification Appliance Circuits. Disconnect a conductor either at indicating or initiating device. Activate initiating device between the fault and the fire alarm control unit. Activate additional smoke detectors between the device first activated and the fire alarm control unit. Restore circuit, initiating

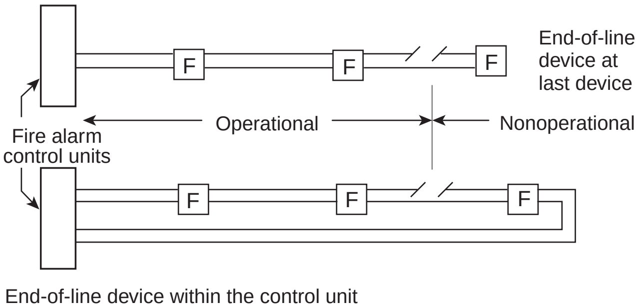


FIGURE F.2.1.1 Nonpowered Alarm Initiating or Supervisory Initiating Devices Connected to Hard-Wired and Class B Initiating Device Circuits.

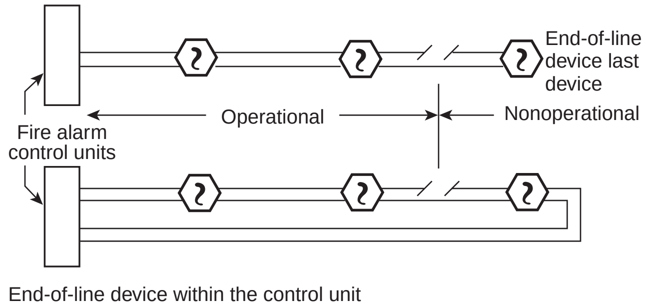


FIGURE F.2.3 Circuit-Powered (Two-Wire) Smoke Detectors for Class A or B Initiating Device Circuits.

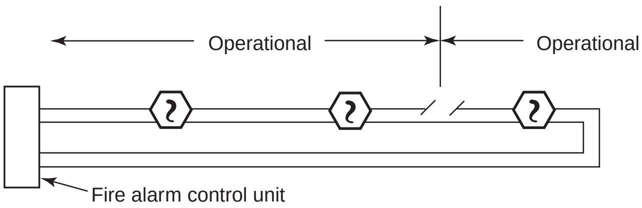


FIGURE F.2.4 Circuit-Powered (Two-Wire) Smoke Detectors for Class A Initiating Device Circuits.

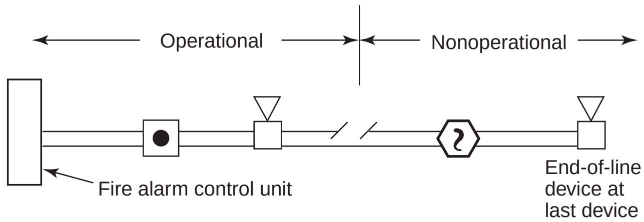


FIGURE F.2.5 Combination Alarm Initiating Device and Notification Appliance Circuits.

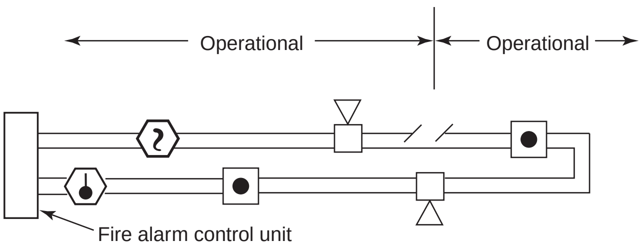


FIGURE F.2.6 Combination Alarm Initiating Device and Notification Appliance Circuits Arranged for Operation with Single Open or Ground Fault.

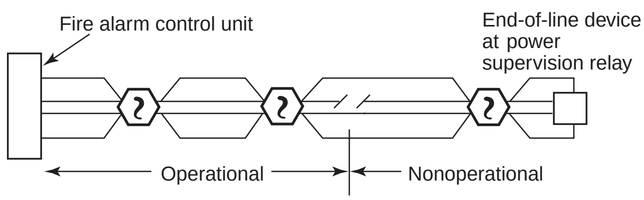


FIGURE F.2.7 Class B Circuits with Four-Wire Smoke Detectors and End-of-Line Power Supervision Relay.

devices, and fire alarm control unit. Confirm that all notification appliances on the circuit operate from the fire alarm control unit up to the fault and that all smoke detectors tested and their associated ancillary functions, if any, operate. See Figure F.2.5.

F.2.6 Combination Alarm Initiating Device and Notification Appliance Circuits Arranged for Operation with Single Open or Ground Fault. Testing of the circuit is similar to that described in F.2.5. Confirm that all notification appliances operate on either side of fault. See Figure F.2.6.

F.2.7 Class A or B Circuits with Four-Wire Smoke Detectors and End-of-Line Power Supervision Relay. Testing of the circuit is similar to that described in F.2.3 and F.2.4. Disconnect a leg of the power supply circuit beyond the first device on the circuit. Activate initiating device between the fault and the fire alarm control unit. Restore circuits, initiating devices, and fire alarm control unit. Audible and visual trouble should indicate at the fire alarm control unit where either the initiating or power circuit is faulted. All initiating devices between the circuit fault and the fire alarm control unit should activate. In addition, removal of a smoke detector from a plug-in-type base can also break the power supply circuit. Where circuits contain various powered and nonpowered devices on the same initiating circuit, verify that the nonpowered devices beyond the power circuit fault can still initiate an alarm. A return loop should be brought back to the last powered device and the power supervisory relay to incorporate into the end-of-line device. See Figure F.2.7.

F.2.8 Class B Initiating Device Circuits with Four-Wire Smoke Detectors That Include Integral Individual Supervision Relays. Testing of the circuit is similar to that described in F.2.3 with the addition of a power circuit. See Figure F.2.8.

F.2.9 Alarm Notification Appliances Connected Class B (Two-Wire) Circuits. Testing of the notification appliances connected as Class B is similar to that described in F.2.3. See Figure F.2.9.

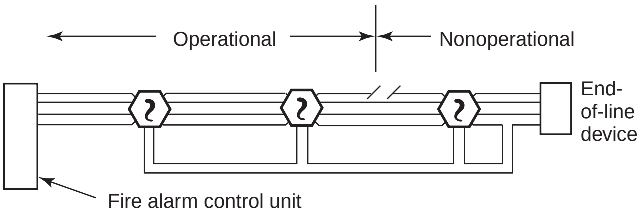


FIGURE F.2.8 Class B Initiating Device Circuits with Four-Wire Smoke Detectors That Include Integral Individual Supervision Relays.

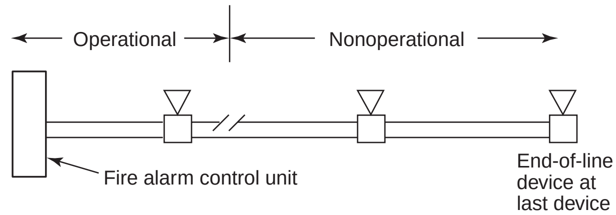


FIGURE F.2.9 Alarm Notification Appliances Connected to Class B (Two-Wire) Circuits.

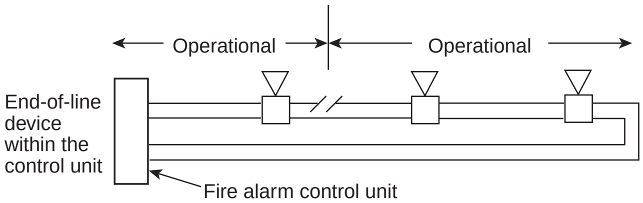


FIGURE F.2.10 Alarm Notification Appliances Connected to Class A (Four-Wire) Circuits.

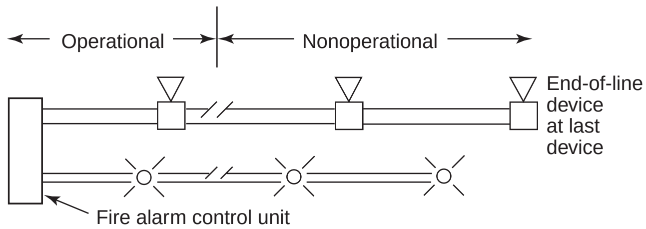


FIGURE F.2.11 Supervised Audible Notification Appliance Circuit and Unsupervised Visible Notification Appliance Circuit.

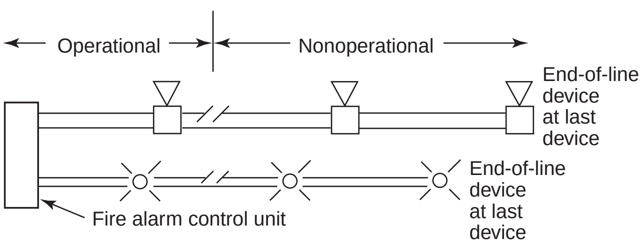


FIGURE F.2.12 Supervised Audible and Visible Notification Appliance Circuits.

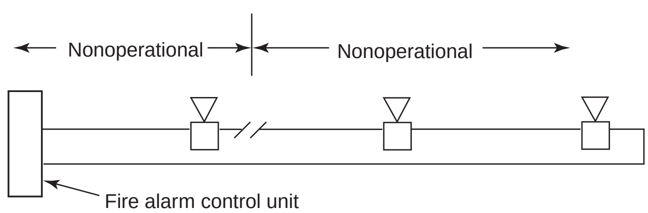


FIGURE F.2.13 Series Notification Appliance Circuit.

F.2.10 Alarm Notification Appliances Connected to Class A (Four-Wire) Circuits. Testing of the notification appliances connected as Class A is similar to that described in F.2.4. See Figure F.2.10.

F.2.11 System with Supervised Audible Notification Appliance Circuit and Unsupervised Visible Notification Appliance Circuit. Testing of the notification appliances connected to Class B is similar to that described in F.2.4. See Figure F.2.11.

F.2.12 System with Supervised Audible and Visible Notification Appliance Circuits. Testing of the notification appliances connected to Class B is similar to that described in F.2.4. See Figure F.2.12.

F.2.13 Series Notification Appliance Circuit That No Longer Meets Requirements of *NFPA 72*. An open fault in the circuit wiring should cause a trouble condition. See Figure F.2.13.

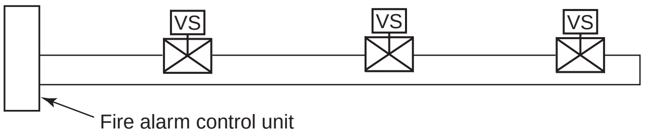


FIGURE F.2.14 Supervised Series Supervisory Initiating Circuit with Sprinkler Supervisory Valve Switches Connected.

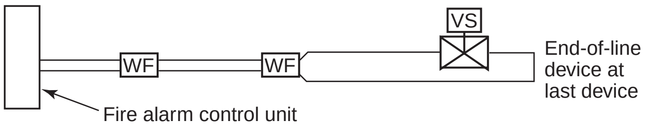


FIGURE F.2.15 Initiating Device Circuit with Parallel Waterflow Alarm Switches and Series Supervisory Valve Switch.

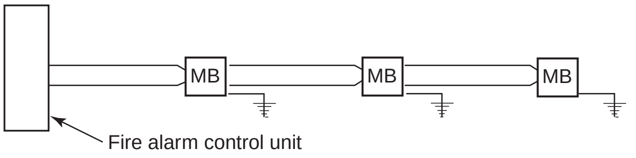


FIGURE F.2.16 System Connected to Municipal Fire Alarm Master Box Circuit.

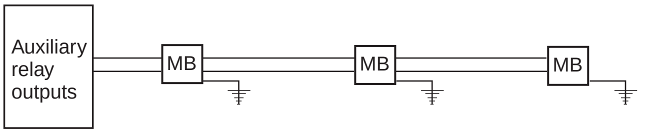


FIGURE F.2.17 Auxiliary Circuit Connected to Municipal Fire Alarm Master Box.

F.2.14 Supervised Series Supervisory Initiating Circuit with Sprinkler Supervisory Valve Switches Connected That No Longer Meets Requirements of *NFPA 72*. An open fault in the circuit wiring or operation of the valve switch (or any supervisory signal device) should cause a trouble condition. The classification of this circuit is now designated as Class D because the intended operation is performed. When the circuit fails, the indication at the fire control unit is the same as if the supervisory switch were to open. Fire alarm initiating devices, including supervisory inputs, are no longer allowed to annunciate as trouble conditions. See Figure F.2.14.

F.2.15 Initiating Device Circuit with Parallel Waterflow Alarm Switches and Series Supervisory Valve Switch That No Longer Meets Requirements of *NFPA 72*. An open fault in the circuit wiring or operation of the valve switch should cause a trouble signal. See Figure F.2.15.

F.2.16 System Connected to Municipal Fire Alarm Master Box Circuit. Disconnect a leg of municipal circuit at master box. Verify alarm sent to public communications center. Disconnect leg of auxiliary circuit. Verify trouble condition on control unit. Restore circuits. Activate control unit and send alarm signal to communications center. Verify control unit in trouble condition until master box reset. See Figure F.2.16.

F.2.17 Auxiliary Circuit Connected to Municipal Fire Alarm Master Box. For operation with a master box, an open or ground fault (where ground detection is provided) on the circuit should result in a trouble condition at the fire alarm control unit. A trouble signal at the fire alarm control unit should persist until the master box is reset. For operation with a shunt trip master box, an open fault in the auxiliary circuit should cause an alarm on the municipal system. See Figure F.2.17.

F.3 Circuit Classes

Some testing laboratories and authorities having jurisdiction permitted systems to be classified as Class X by the application of two circuits operating in tandem. An example of this is to take two series circuits, Class B, and operate them in tandem. The logic was that if a condition occurs on one of the circuits, the other series circuit remained operative.

To understand the principles of the circuit, alarm receipt capability should be performed on a single circuit, and the Class type, based on the performance, should be indicated on the record of completion.

F.3.1 Style 0.5. This signaling circuit operates as a series circuit in performance. This is identical to the historical series audible signaling circuits. Any type of break or ground in one of the conductors, or the internal of the multiple interface device, and the total circuit is rendered inoperative.

To test and verify this type of circuit, either a conductor should be lifted or an earth ground should be placed on a conductor or a terminal point where the signaling circuit attaches to the multiplex interface device.

F.3.2 Style 0.5(a) (Class B) Series That No Longer Meets Requirements of *NFPA 72*. Style 0.5(a) functions so that, when a box is operated, the supervisory contacts open, making the succeeding devices nonoperative while the operating box sends a coded signal. Any alarms occurring in any successive devices will not be received at the receiving station during this period. See Figure F.3.2.

F.3.3 Style 0.5(b) Shunt That No Longer Meets Requirements of *NFPA 72*. The contact closures when the device is operated (and remains closed) to shunt out the remainder of the system until the code is complete. See Figure F.3.3.

F.3.4 Style 0.5(c) Positive Supervised Successive That No Longer Meets Requirements of *NFPA 72*. An open or ground fault on the circuit should cause a trouble condition at the control unit. See Figure F.3.4.

F.3.5 Style 1.0 That No Longer Meets Requirements of *NFPA 72*. This is a series circuit identical to the diagram for Style 0.5, except that the fire alarm system hardware has enhanced performance. *[See Figure F.3.5(a) and Figure F.3.5(b).]* A single earth ground can be placed on a conductor or multiplex interface device, and the circuit and hardware will still have alarm operability.

If a conductor break or an internal fault occurs in the pathway of the circuit conductors, the entire circuit becomes inoperative.

To verify alarm receipt capability and the resulting trouble signal, place an earth ground on one of the conductors or at the point where the signaling circuit attaches to the multiplex

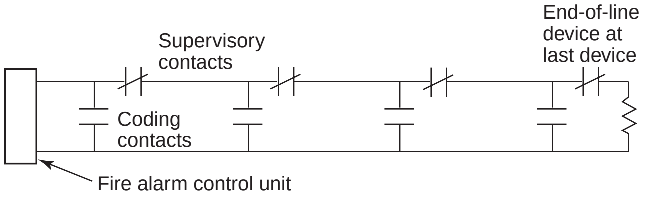


FIGURE F.3.2 *Style 0.5(a) Series.*

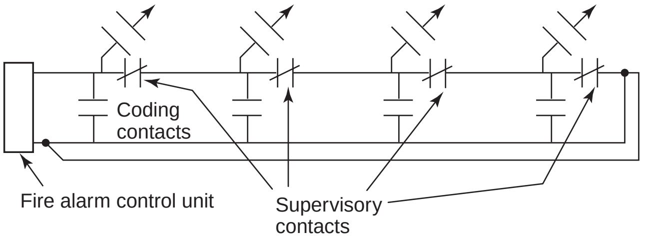


FIGURE F.3.3 *Style 0.5(b) Shunt.*

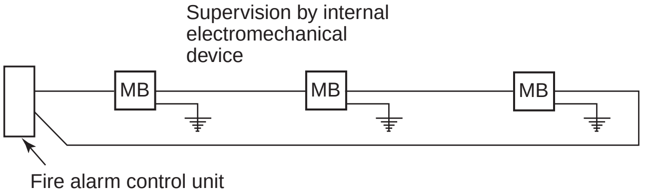


FIGURE F.3.4 *Style 0.5(c) Positive Supervised Successive.*

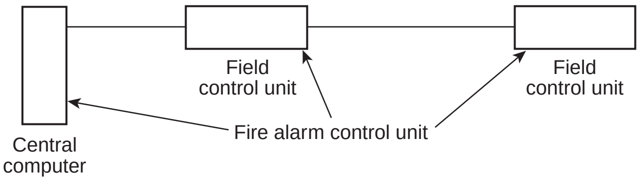


FIGURE F.3.5(a) Style 1.0 (Class B).

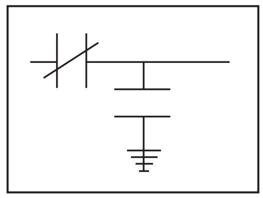


FIGURE F.3.5(b) Typical Transmitter Layout.

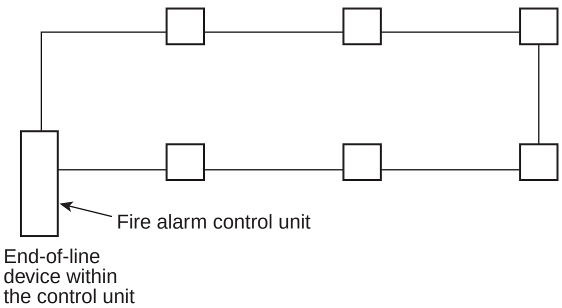


FIGURE F.3.6 Typical McCulloh Loop.

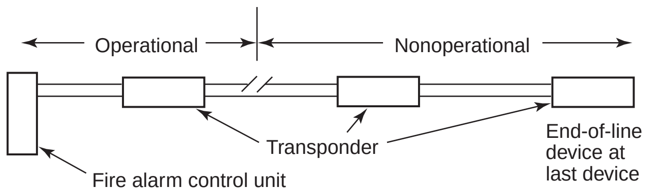


FIGURE F.3.7 Class B (Formerly Style 3.0).

interface device. One of the transmitters or an initiating device should then be placed into alarm.

F.3.6 Typical McCulloh Loop. This is the central station McCulloh redundant-type circuit and has alarm receipt capability on either side of a single break. See Figure F.3.6.

F.3.6.1 To test, lift one of the conductors and operate a transmitter or initiating device on each side of the break. This activity should be repeated for each conductor.

F.3.6.2 Place an earth ground on a conductor and operate a single transmitter or initiating device to verify alarm receipt capability and trouble condition for each conductor.

F.3.6.3 Repeat the instructions of F.3.6.1 and F.3.6.2 at the same time, verify alarm receipt capability, and verify that a trouble condition results.

F.3.7 Class B (Formerly Style 3.0). This is a parallel circuit in which multiplex interface devices transmit signal and operating power over the same conductors. *(See Figure F.3.7.)* The multiplex interface devices might be operable up to the point of a single break. Verify by lifting a conductor and causing an alarm condition on one of the units between the central alarm unit and the break. Either lift a conductor to verify the trouble condition or place an earth ground on the conductors. Test for all the valuations shown on the signaling table.

On ground-fault testing, verify alarm receipt capability by actuating a multiplex interface initiating device or a transmitter.

F.3.8 Style 3.5 That No Longer Meets Requirements of *NFPA 72*. Follow the instructions for Class B (formerly Style 3.0) and verify the trouble conditions by either lifting a conductor or placing a ground on the conductor. See Figure F.3.8.

F.3.9 Class B (Formerly Style 4.0). Follow the instructions for Class B (formerly Style 3.0) and include a loss of carrier where the signal is being used. See Figure F.3.9.

F.3.10 Style 4.5 That No Longer Meets Requirements of *NFPA 72*. Follow the instructions for Style 3.5. Verify alarm receipt capability while lifting a conductor by actuating a multiple interface device or transmitter on each side of the break. See Figure F.3.10.

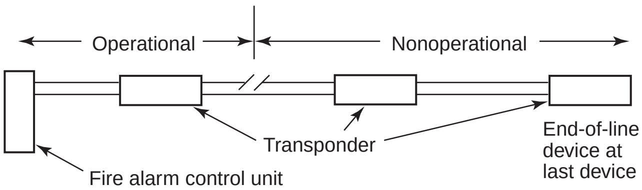


FIGURE F.3.8 *Style 3.5.*

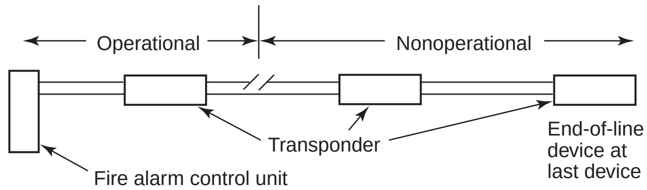


FIGURE F.3.9 *Class B (Formerly Style 4.0).*

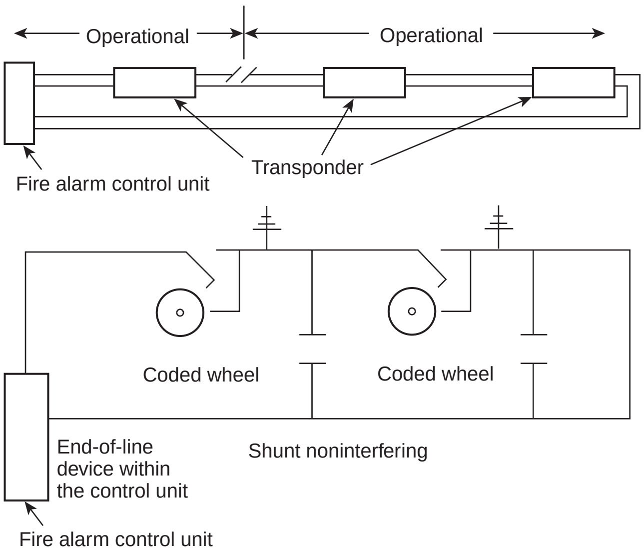


FIGURE F.3.10 *Style 4.5 (Class B).*

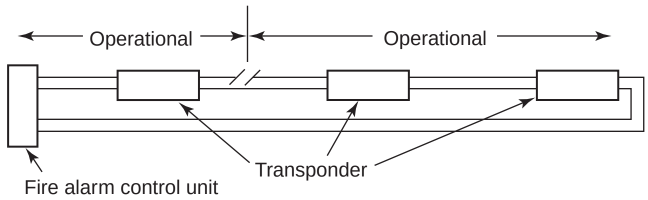


FIGURE F.3.11 *Class A (Formerly Style 5.0).*

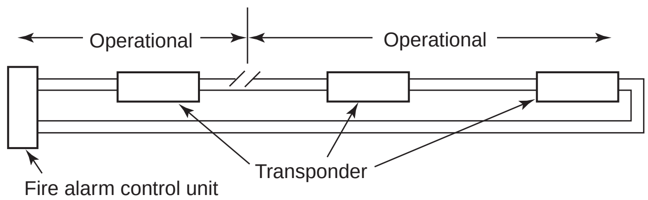


FIGURE F.3.12 *Style 6.0 (Class A).*

F.3.11 Class A (Formerly Style 5.0). Verify the alarm receipt capability and trouble annunciation by lifting a conductor and actuating a multiplex interfacing device or a transmitter on each side of the break.

F.3.11.1 Ground Test on Class A (Formerly Style 5.0) Circuit. For the earth ground verification, place an earth ground and certify alarm receipt capability and trouble annunciation by actuating a single multiplex interfacing device or a transmitter. See Figure F.3.11.

F.3.12 Class A (Formerly Style 6.0). Follow the instructions from F.3.11. Verify the trouble annunciation for the various combinations. See Figure F.3.12.

F.3.13 Class A with Circuit Isolators. For the portions of the circuits electrically located between the monitoring points of circuit isolators, follow the instructions for a Class X circuit. It should be clearly noted that the alarm receipt capability for remaining portions of the circuit protection isolators is not the capability of the entire circuit but is permitted with enhanced system capabilities. See Figure F.3.13.

F.3.14 Class X (Formerly Style 7.0). Follow the instructions for testing of Class A (formerly Style 6.0) for alarm receipt capability and trouble annunciation. See Figure F.3.14(a) through Figure F.3.14(k).

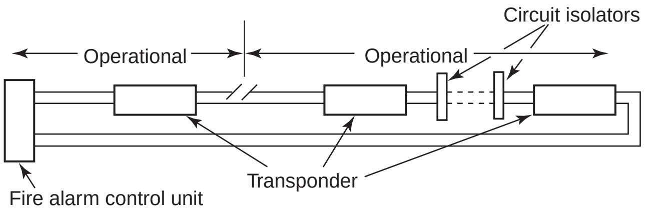


FIGURE F.3.13 *Class A with Circuit Isolators.*

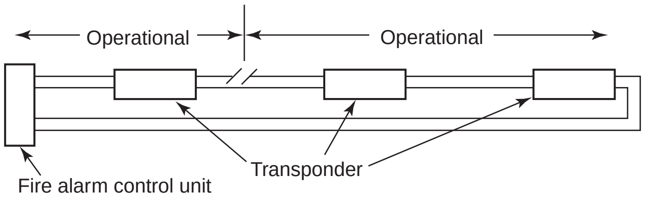


FIGURE F.3.14(a) *Class X (Formerly Style 7.0).*

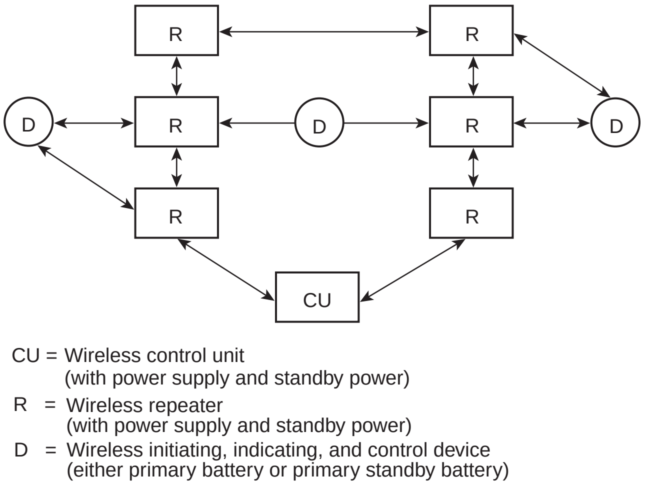


FIGURE F.3.14(b) *Low-Power Radio (Wireless) Fire Alarm System.*

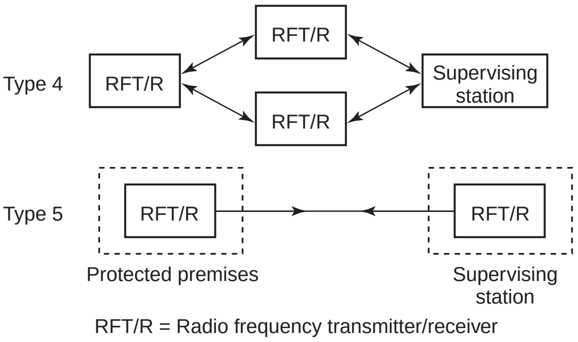


FIGURE F.3.14(c) *Two-Way RF Multiplex Systems.*

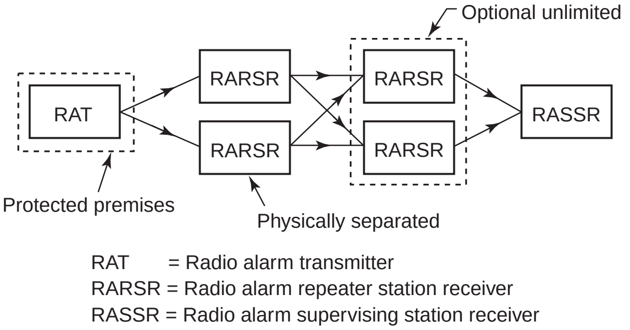


FIGURE F.3.14(d) *One-Way Radio Alarm System.*

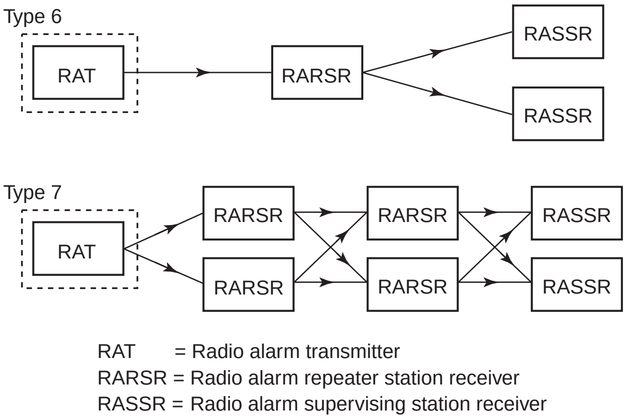


FIGURE F.3.14(e) *One-Way Radio Alarm System (Type 6 and Type 7).*

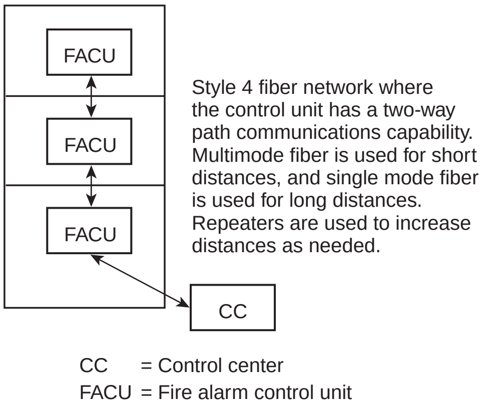


FIGURE F.3.14(f) *Style 4 Fiber Network.*

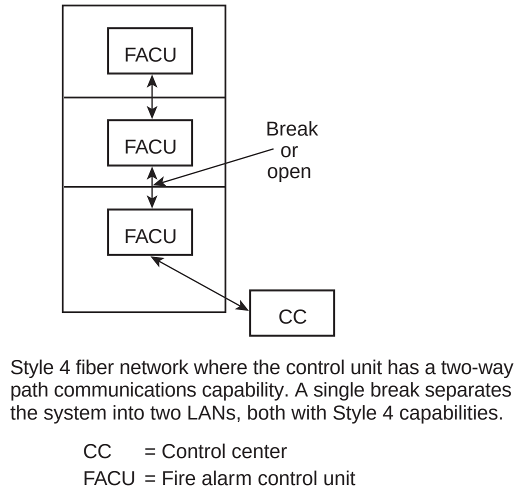


FIGURE F.3.14(g) *Style 4 Fiber Network (Single Break).*

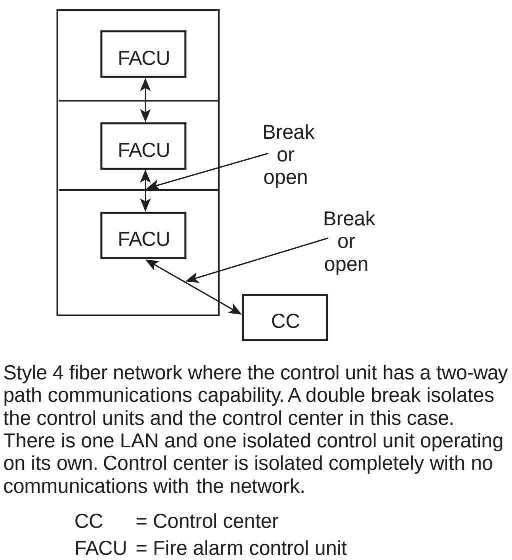


FIGURE F.3.14(h) *Style 4 Fiber Network (Double Break).*

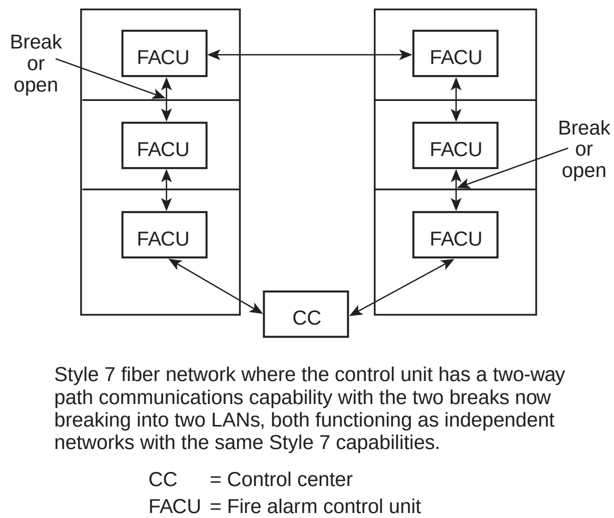


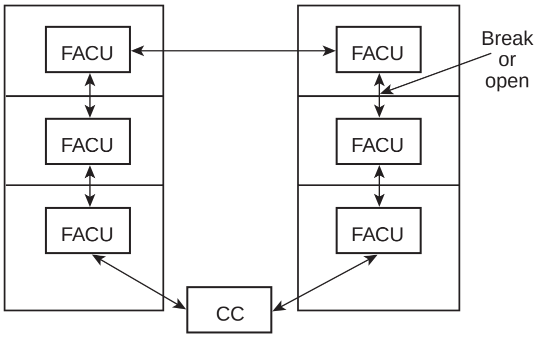
FIGURE F.3.14(i) *Style 7 Fiber Network (Two LANs).*

NOTE: Some manufacturers of this type of equipment have isolators as part of the base assembly. Therefore, in the field, this component might not be readily observable without the assistance of the manufacturer's representative.

F.4 Batteries

To maximize battery life, nickel-cadmium batteries should be charged as in Table F.4(a).

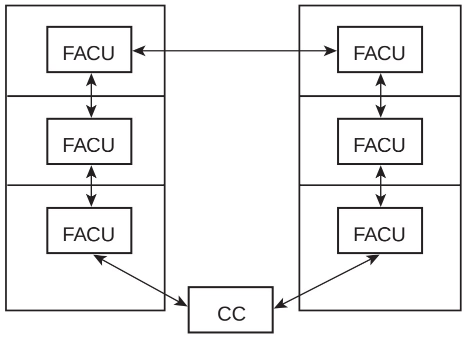
To maximize battery life, the battery voltage for lead-acid cells should be maintained within the limits shown in Table F.4(b).



Style 7 fiber network where the control unit has a two-way path communications capability, with one break. System remains as one LAN and meets Style 7.

CC = Control center
FACU = Fire alarm control unit

FIGURE F.3.14(j) *Style 7 Fiber Network (One LAN).*



Style 7 fiber network where the control unit has a two-way path communications capability.

CC = Control center
FACU = Fire alarm control unit

FIGURE F.3.14(k) *Style 7 Fiber Network.*

TABLE F.4(a) *Voltage for Nickel-Cadmium Batteries*

Float voltage	1.42 volts/cell +0.01 volt
High-rate voltage	1.58 volts/cell +0.07 volt −0.00 volt

Note: High- and low-gravity voltages are (+) 0.07 volt and (−) 0.03 volt, respectively.

TABLE F.4(b) *Voltage for Lead-Acid Batteries*

Float Voltage	***High-Gravity Battery (Lead Calcium)***	***Low-Gravity Battery (Lead Antimony)***
Maximum	2.25 volts/cell	2.17 volts/cell
Minimum	2.20 volts/cell	2.13 volts/cell
High-rate voltage	—	2.33 volts/cell

The following procedure is recommended for checking the state of charge for nickel-cadmium batteries:

(1) The battery charger should be switched from float to high-rate mode.
(2) The current, as indicated on the charger ammeter, will immediately rise to the maximum output of the charger, and the battery voltage, as shown on the charger voltmeter, will start to rise at the same time.
(3) The actual value of the voltage rise is unimportant, because it depends on many variables. The length of time it takes for the voltage to rise is the important factor.
(4) If, for example, the voltage rises rapidly in a few minutes, then holds steady at the new value, the battery is fully charged. At the same time, the current will drop to slightly above its original value.
(5) In contrast, if the voltage rises slowly and the output current remains high, the high-rate charge should be continued until the voltage remains constant. Such a condition is an indication that the battery is not fully charged, and the float voltage should be increased slightly.

ANNEX G

Informational References

G.1 Referenced Publications

The documents or portions thereof listed in this annex are referenced within the informational sections of this Code and are not part of the requirements of this document unless also listed in Chapter 2 for other reasons.

G.1.1 NFPA Publications. National Fire Protection Association, 1 Batterymarch Park, Quincy, MA 02169-7471.

NFPA 3, *Recommended Practice for Commissioning and Integrated Testing of Fire Protection and Life Safety Systems*, 2012 edition.

NFPA 10, *Standard for Portable Fire Extinguishers*, 2010 edition.

NFPA 11, *Standard for Low-, Medium-, and High-Expansion Foam*, 2010 edition.

NFPA 12, *Standard on Carbon Dioxide Extinguishing Systems*, 2011 edition.

NFPA 12A, *Standard on Halon 1301 Fire Extinguishing Systems*, 2009 edition.

NFPA 13, *Standard for the Installation of Sprinkler Systems*, 2013 edition.

NFPA 14, *Standard for the Installation of Standpipe and Hose Systems*, 2010 edition.

NFPA 15, *Standard for Water Spray Fixed Systems for Fire Protection*, 2012 edition.

NFPA 17, *Standard for Dry Chemical Extinguishing Systems*, 2009 edition.

NFPA 17A, *Standard for Wet Chemical Extinguishing Systems*, 2009 edition.

NFPA 25, *Standard for the Inspection, Testing, and Maintenance of Water-Based Fire Protection Systems*, 2011 edition.

NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code®*, 2011 edition.

NFPA 80, *Standard for Fire Doors and Other Opening Protectives*, 2013 edition.

NFPA 90A, *Standard for the Installation of Air-Conditioning and Ventilating Systems*, 2012 edition.

NFPA 90B, *Standard for the Installation of Warm Air Heating and Air-Conditioning Systems*, 2012 edition.

NFPA 92, *Standard for Smoke Control Systems*, 2012 edition.

NFPA *101®*, *Life Safety Code®*, 2012 edition.

NFPA 105, *Standard for Smoke Door Assemblies and Other Opening Protectives*, 2013 edition.

NFPA 170, *Standard for Fire Safety and Emergency Symbols*, 2012 edition.

NFPA 551, *Guide for the Evaluation of Fire Risk Assessments*, 2010 edition.

NFPA 720, *Standard for the Installation of Carbon Monoxide (CO) Detection and Warning Equipment*, 2012 edition.

NFPA 730, *Guide for Premises Security*, 2011 edition.

NFPA 750, *Standard on Water Mist Fire Protection Systems*, 2010 edition.

NFPA 909, *Code for the Protection of Cultural Resource Properties — Museums, Libraries, and Places of Worship*, 2010 edition.

NFPA 914, *Code for Fire Protection of Historic Structures*, 2010 edition.

NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems*, 2013 edition.

NFPA 1600®, *Standard on Disaster/Emergency Management and Business Continuity Programs*, 2010 edition.

NFPA 5000®, *Building Construction and Safety Code®*, 2012 edition.

Fire Protection Research Foundation, *Optimizing Fire Alarm Notification for High Risk Groups*, 2007.

G.1.2 Other Publications.

G.1.2.1 ANSI Publications. American National Standards Institute, Inc., 25 West 43rd Street, 4th floor, New York, NY 10036.

ANSI/ASME A17.1/CSA B44, *Safety Code for Elevators and Escalators*, 2010.

ANSI/FM 3260, *American National Standard for Energy-Sensing Fire Detectors for Automatic Fire Alarm Signaling,* 2004.

ANSI S3.2, *Method for Measuring the Intelligibility of Speech Over Communications Systems*, 1989, revised 2009.

ANSI S3.41, *American National Standard Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal*, 1990, reaffirmed 2008.

ANSI/UL 268, *Standard for Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems*, 2009.

ANSI/UL 864, *Standard for Control Units and Accessories for Fire Alarm Systems*, 2003, revised 2011.

ANSI/UL 1638, *Standard for Visual Signaling Appliances — Private Mode Emergency and General Utility Signaling,* 2001, revised 2008.

ANSI/UL 1971, *Standard for Signaling Devices for the Hearing Impaired*, 2002, revised 2008.

G.1.2.2 ASME Publication. American Society of Mechanical Engineers, Three Park Avenue, New York, NY 10016-5990.

ASME A.17.2, *Guide for Inspection of Elevators, Escalators and Moving Walks*, 2010.

G.1.2.3 FEMA Publications. FEMA Headquarters, 500 C Street, SW, Washington DC, 20472.

FEMA Publication CPG-17, *Outdoor Warning Systems Guide*, March, 1980.

G.1.2.4 FM Publications. FM Global, 1301 Atwood Avenue, P.O. Box 7500, Johnston, RI 02919.

FM 3210, *Heat Detectors for Automatic Fire Alarm Signaling*, 2007.

G.1.2.5 IEC Publications. International Electrotechnical Commission, 3 rue de Varembé, P.O. Box 131, CH-1211 Geneva 20, Switzerland. IEC documents are available through ANSI.

IEC 60268, *Sound system equipment — Part 16: Objective rating of speech intelligibility by speech transmission index,* second edition, 1998.

G.1.2.6 IES Publication. Illuminating Engineering Society of North America, 120 Wall Street, 17th floor, New York, NY 10005.

Lighting Handbook Reference and Application, 2008.

G.1.2.7 ISO Publications. Standards Secretariat, Acoustical Society of America, 335 East 45th Street, New York, NY 10017-3483.

ISO/TR 4870, *Acoustics — The Construction and Calibration of Speech Intelligibility Tests*, 1991.

ISO 7240-19, *Fire Detection and Alarm Systems — Part 19: Design, Installation, Commissioning, and Service of Sound Systems for Emergency Purposes*, 2007.

ISO 8201, *Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal*, 1990, revised 2008.

G.1.2.8 NEMA Publication. 1300 North 17th Street, Suite 1752, Rosslyn, VA 22209.

NEMA SB-30, *Fire Service Annunciator and Interface*, 2005.

NEMA SB-40, *Communications Systems for Life Safety in Schools*, 2008.
NEMA SB-50, *Emergency Communications Audio Intelligibility Applications Guide*, 2008.

G.1.2.9 OASIS Publication. Organization for the Advancement of Structured Information Standards (OASIS), 25 Corporate Drive, Suite 103, Burlington, MA 01803.

OASIS Standard CAP-V1.2, *OASIS Common Alerting Protocol*, Version 1.2.

G.1.2.10 SFPE Publications. Society of Fire Protection Engineers, 7315 Wisconsin Avenue, #620E, Bethesda, MD 20814.

Guide to Performance Based Design.
SFPE Engineering Guide: Evaluation of the Computer Fire Model DETACT QS, 2002.
SFPE Engineering Guide to Human Behavior in Fire, 2003.
SFPE Engineering Guide to Performance Based Fire Protection Analysis and Design of Buildings, 2000.
SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering, 3rd Edition, 2002.
Keating, John P. and Loftus, Elizabeth F., "People Care in Fire Emergencies — Psychological Aspects, 1975," SFPE, 1975.

G.1.2.11 U.S. Government Publications. U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC 20402.

ADA-ABA-AG, *Americans with Disabilities Act and Architectural Barriers Act Accessibility Guidelines,* 2004.
Title 29, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 1910.5.
Title 47, Code of Federal Regulations, Part 15.
NIST Technical Note 1455–1, *Performance of Home Smoke Alarms, Analysis of the Response of Several Available Technologies in Residential Fire Settings,* February 2008.

G.1.2.12 References Associated with Annex A.

G.1.2.12.1 Reference to A.18.4.7.2. http://www.aip.org/pt/nov99/locsound.html.

G.1.2.12.2 References to A.24.3.11.

(1) *CARVER — Target Analysis and Vulnerability Assessment Methodology*, Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Defense (see Field Manual 34-36, Special Operation Forces Intelligence and Electronics Warfare Operation, Sept. 30, 1991), www.defense.gov
(2) *General Security Risk Assessment Guidelines*. Alexandria, VA: American Society for Industrial Security International, www.asisonline.org
(3) *NFPA 1600*, *Standard on Disaster/Emergency Management and Business Continuity Programs*, Quincy, MA: National Fire Protection Association, www.nfpa.org
(4) NFPA 730, *Guide for Premises Security*, Quincy, MA: National Fire Protection Association, www.nfpa.org
(5) *Responsible Care Code*, Washington, DC: American Chemistry Council, www.americanchemistry.com
(6) *Risk and Resilience Management of Water & Wastewater Systems*, Denver, CO: American Water Works Association, www.awwa.org
(7) *VAMCAP® Vulnerability Assessment Methodology for Critical Asset Protection*, Wilmington, DE: SafePlace Corporation, www.safeplace.com
(8) *Vulnerability Assessment Methodologies*, Albuquerque, NM: Sandia National Laboratories, www.sandia.gov

G.1.2.12.3 References to A.24.4.1.2.

(1) Cherry, E.C., Some Experiments on the Recognition of Speech, With One and With Two Ears. *Journal of Acoustical Society of America,* 1953, 25, 975–979.
(2) Cherry, E.C. and Taylor, W.K., Some Further Experiments on the Recognition of Speech With One and Two Ears. *Journal of Acoustical Society of America,* 1954, 26, 554–559.

(3) Michelle Ball and Dorothy Bruck, "The Salience of Fire Alarm Signals for Sleeping Individuals: A Novel Approach to Signal Design," 3rd International Symposium on Human Behaviour in Fire 2004. Belfast: Interscience Communications and Ulster University, 2004, pp. 303–314.
(4) Dorothy Bruck and Ian Thomas, Comparison of the Effectiveness of Different Fire Notification Signals in Sleeping Older Adults, *Fire Technology,* Volume 44, Number 1, 15–38.
(5) M. Ball and D. Bruck, "The Effect of Alcohol Upon Response to Fire Alarm Signals in Sleeping Young Adults,", in Proceedings of the Third International Symposium on Human Behaviour in Fire (Belfast), J. Shields (ed.), Interscience Communications, London, UK, 2004, pp. 291–302.
(6) Lars Benthorn and Hakan Frantzich, Fire Alarm in a Public Building: How do People Evaluate Information and Choose an Evacuation Exit? *Fire and Materials* 23, 311–315 (1999)
(7) Proulx, G., Occupant Behaviour and Evacuation Proceedings of the 9th International Fire Protection Symposium, Munich, May 25–26, 2001, pp. 219-232.
(8) Zhang, L., Sun, X., Zhang, K., A Research of Speech Signal on Fire Information Display Interface. *China Safety Science Journal* 16(4), 13–18 (2006).
(9) Alla Keselman, Laura Slaughter and Vimla L. Patel, Toward a framework for understanding lay public's comprehension of disaster and bioterrorism information, *Journal of Biomedical Informatics* Volume 38, Issue 4, August 2005, pp. 331–344.
(10) Sabrina Koreimann, Sabine Strauß, Oliver Vitouch, Inattentional Deafness Under Dynamic Musical Conditions, Proceedings of the 7th Triennial Conference of European Society for the Cognitive Sciences of Music (ESCOM 2009) Jyväskylä, Finland, pp. 246–249.
(11) Maha Nasrallah, David Carmel, Nilli Lavie, Murder, She Wrote: Enhanced Sensitivity to Negative Word Valence, *Emotion*, 2009, Vol. 9, No. 5, 609–618.
(12) J.T. Siegel, J.K. Burgoon, Expectancy theory approaches to prevention: Violating adolescent expectations to increase the effectiveness of public service announcements in William D. Crano, Michael Burgoon Mass media and drug prevention: classic and contemporary theories and research.
(13) Timothy R. Levine, Lori N. Anders, John Banas, Karie Leigh Baum, Keriane Endo, Allison D. S. Hu, Norman C. H. Wong, Norms, expectations, and deception: A norm violation model of veracity judgments, *Communication Monographs*, Volume 67, Issue 2 June 2000, pp 123–137.
(14) Mirjam Broersma and Kees de Bot, Triggered codeswitching: A corpus-based evaluation of the original triggering hypothesis and a new alternative, *Bilingualism: Language and Cognition* 9 (1), 2006, 1–13.
(15) Mirjam Broersma, Triggered codeswitching between cognate languages, *Bilingualism: Language and Cognition* 12 (4), 2009, 447–462.
(16) J.E. Driskell, R.P. Willis, C. Copper, Effect of overlearning on retention, *Journal of Applied Psychology* 1992, Vol. 77, No. 5, 615–622.

G.1.2.12.4 References to A.24.4.2.8.

(1) Schifiliti, R.P., "To Leave or Not to Leave — That is the Question!", National Fire Protection Association, World Fire Safety Congress & Exposition, May 16, 2000, Denver, CO.
(2) Ramachandran, G., "Informative Fire Warning Systems," *Fire Technology,* Volume 47, Number 1, February 1991, National Fire Protection Association, 66–81.
(3) J. Bryan, "Psychological Variables That May Affect Fire Alarm Design," *Fire Protection Engineering,* Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Issue No. 11, Fall 2001.
(4) Proulx, G., "Cool Under Fire," *Fire Protection Engineering,* Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Issue No. 16, Fall 2002.

(5) General Services Administration, Proceedings of the Reconvened International Conference on Fire Safety in High Rise Buildings, Washington, D.C., October 1971.
(6) Proulx, G., "Strategies for Ensuring Appropriate Occupant Response to Fire Alarm Signals," National Research Council of Canada, Ottawa, Ontario, *Construction Technology Update,* No. 43, 1–6, December 2000.

G.1.2.12.5 References to A.29.2.

(1) "A Few Fire Facts at the Household Level," NFPA Fire Analysis Division, *Fire Journal*, May 1986.
(2) "Fire Loss in the United States during 2007," Michael J. Karter, NFPA Fire Analysis and Research Division.
(3) "Home Structure Fires," Marty Ahrens, NFPA Fire Analysis and Research Division, February 2007.

G.1.2.12.6 References to A.29.3.7.

CSE NIH report, 2005; Bruck and Thomas, 2009; Bruck, Thomas, and Ball, NFPA RF report, 2007.

G.1.2.12.7 References to A.29.5.1.

(1) NBS GCR 75-51, *Detector Sensitivity and Siting Requirements for Dwellings*, 1975.
(2) NBS GCR 77-82, *Detector Sensitivity and Siting Requirements for Dwellings Phase 2*, 1977.
(3) NIST Technical Note 1455-1, *Performance of Home Smoke Detectors Analysis of the Response of Several Available Technologies in a Residential Setting,* 2007.

G.1.2.13 References Associated with Annex B.

(1) Alpert, R. "Ceiling Jets," *Fire Technology*, Aug. 1972.
(2) "Evaluating Unsprinklered Fire Hazards," *SFPE Technology Report* 83-2.
(3) Babrauskas, V., Lawson, J. R., Walton, W. D., and Twilley, W. H. "Upholstered Furniture Heat Release Rates Measured with a Furniture Calorimeter," (NBSIR 82-2604) (Dec. 1982). National Institute of Standards and Technology (formerly National Bureau of Standards), Center for Fire Research, Gaithersburg, MD 20889.
(4) Beyler, C. "A Design Method for Flaming Fire Detection," *Fire Technology*, Vol. 20, No. 4, Nov. 1984.
(5) DiNenno, P., ed. Chapter 31, *SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering*, by R. Schifiliti, Sept. 1988.
(6) Evans, D. D. and Stroup, D. W. "Methods to Calculate Response Time of Heat and Smoke Detectors Installed Below Large Unobstructed Ceilings," (NBSIR 85-3167) (Feb. 1985, issued Jul. 1986). National Institute of Standards and Technology (formerly National Bureau of Standards), Center for Fire Research, Gaithersburg, MD 20889.
(7) Heskestad, G. "Characterization of Smoke Entry and Response for Products-of-Combustion Detectors" Proceedings, 7th International Conference on Problems of Automatic Fire Detection, Rheinish-Westfalischen Technischen Hochschule Aachen (Mar. 1975).
(8) Heskestad, G. "Investigation of a New Sprinkler Sensitivity Approval Test: The Plunge Test," FMRC Tech. Report 22485, Factory Mutual Research Corporation, 1151 Providence Turnpike, Norwood, MA 02062.
(9) Heskestad, G. and Delichatsios, M. A. "The Initial Convective Flow in Fire: Seventeenth Symposium on Combustion," The Combustion Institute, Pittsburgh, PA (1979).
(10) Heskestad, G. and Delichatsios, M. A. "Environments of Fire Detectors — Phase 1: Effect of Fire Size, Ceiling Height and Material," Measurements Vol. I (NBS-GCR-77-86), Analysis Vol. II (NBS-GCR-77-95). National Technical Information Service (NTIS), Springfield, VA 22151.

(11) Heskestad, G. and Delichatsios, M. A. "Update: The Initial Convective Flow in Fire," *Fire Safety Journal*, Vol. 15, No. 5, 1989.
(12) International Organization for Standardization, *Audible Emergency Evacuation Signal*, ISO 8201, 1987.
(13) Klote, J. and Milke, J. "Principles of Smoke Management," American Society of Heating, Refrigerating and Air Conditioning Engineers, Atlanta, GA, 2002.
(14) Lawson, J. R., Walton, W. D., and Twilley, W. H. "Fire Performance of Furnishings as Measured in the NBS Furniture Calorimeter, Part 1," (NBSIR 83-2787) (Aug. 1983). National Institute of Standards and Technology (formerly National Bureau of Standards), Center for Fire Research, Gaithersburg, MD 20889.
(15) Morton, B. R., Taylor, Sir Geoffrey, and Turner, J. S. "Turbulent Gravitational Convection from Maintained and Instantaneous Sources," Proc. Royal Society A, 234, 1–23, 1956.
(16) Schifiliti, R. "Use of Fire Plume Theory in the Design and Analysis of Fire Detector and Sprinkler Response," Master's Thesis, Worcester Polytechnic Institute, Center for Firesafety Studies, Worcester, MA, 1986.
(17) Title 47, Code of Federal Regulations, Communications Act of 1934 Amended.
(18) Schifiliti, R. and Pucci, W. "Fire Detection Modelling, State of the Art," 6 May, 1996 sponsored by the Fire Detection Institute, Bloomfield, CT.
(19) Forney, G., Bukowski, R., Davis, W. "Field Modelling: Effects of Flat Beamed Ceilings on Detector and Sprinkler Response," Technical Report, Year 1. International Fire Detection Research Project, National Fire Protection Research Foundation, Quincy, MA. October, 1993.
(20) Davis, W., Forney, G., Bukowski, R. "Field Modelling: Simulating the Effect of Sloped Beamed Ceilings on Detector and Sprinkler Response," Year 1. International Fire Detection Research Project Technical Report, National Fire Protection Research Foundation, Quincy, MA. October, 1994.
(21) Brozovski, E. "A Preliminary Approach to Siting Smoke Detectors Based on Design Fire Size and Detector Aerosol Entry Lag Time," Master's Thesis, Worcester Polytechnic, Worcester, MA, 1989.
(22) Cote, A. *NFPA Fire Protection Handbook*, 20th edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 2008.
(23) Tewarson, A., "Generation of Heat and Chemical Compounds in Fires," *SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering*, Second Edition, NFPA and SFPE, 1995.
(24) Hollman, J. P. *Heat Transfer*, McGraw-Hill, New York, 1976.
(25) Custer, R. L. P., and Meacham, B. "Introduction to Performance Based Fire Safety," SFPE, 1997.
(26) Schifiliti, R. P., Meacham B., Custer, R. L. P. "Design of Detection Systems," *SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering*.
(27) Marrion, C. "Correction Factors for the Heat of Combustion in NFPA 72," Appendix B, Fire Protection Engineering, SFPE, 1998.
(28) Marrion, C. "Designing and Analyzing the Response of Detection Systems: An Update to Previous Correlations," 1988.
(29) Custer, R. and Bright, R. "Fire Detection: The State-of-the-Art," NBS Tech. Note 839, National Bureau of Standards, Washington, 1974.
(30) Meacham, Brian J. "Characterization of Smoke from Burning Materials for the Evaluation of Light Scattering-Type Smoke Detector Response," MS Thesis, WPI Center for Firesafety Studies, Worcester, MA, 1991.
(31) Delichatsios, M. A. "Categorization of Cable Flammability, Detection of Smoldering, and Flaming Cable Fires," Interim Report, Factory Mutual Research Corporation, Norwood, MA, NP-1630, Nov. 1980.
(32) Heskestad, G. FMRC Serial Number 21017, Factory Mutual Research Corp., Norwood, MA, 1974.

(33) Marrion, C. E. "Lag Time Modeling and Effects of Ceiling Jet Velocity on the Placement of Optical Smoke Detectors," MS Thesis, WPI Center for Firesafety Studies, Worcester, MA, 1989.
(34) Kokkala, M. et al. "Measurements of the Characteristic Lengths of Smoke Detectors," *Fire Technology*, Vol. 28, No. 2, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 1992.
(34a) Yamauchi et al. "A Calculation Method for Predicting Heat and Smoke Detector's Response."
(34b) Cleary et al. "Particulate Entry Lag in Spot Type Smoke Detectors," IAFSS Proceedings, Boston, MA 2000.
(34c) Keski-Rahkonen, "Revisiting Modeling of Fluid Penetration into Smoke Detectors," AUBE 2001.
(34d) Bjoerkman et al. "Determination of Dynamic Model Parameters of Smoke Detectors," *Fire Safety Journal*, No 37, pp. 395–407, 2002.
(34e) Keski-Rahkonen, "A New Model for Time Lag of Smoke Detectors," International Collaborative Project to Evaluate Fire Models for Nuclear Power Plant Application, Gaithersburg, MD May 2002.
(35) UL 268, *Standard for Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems*, Underwriters Laboratories, Inc., Northbrook, IL, 2009.
(36) Deal, Scott. "Technical Reference Guide for FPEtool Version 3.2," NISTIR 5486, National Institute for Standards and Technology, U.S. Department of Commerce, Gaithersburg, MD, Aug. 1994.
(37) Mowrer, F. W. "Lag Times Associated with Detection and Suppression," *Fire Technology*, Vol. 26, No. 3, pp. 244–265, 1990.
(38) Newman, J. S. "Principles for Fire Detection," *Fire Technology*, Vol. 24, No. 2, pp. 116–127, 1988.
(39) Custer, R., Meacham, B., Wood, C. "Performance Based Design Techniques for Detection and Special Suppression Applications," Proceedings of the SFPE Engineering Seminars on Advances in Detection and Suppression Technology, 1994.
(40) SFPE *Engineering Guide to Performance Based Fire Protection Analysis and Design of Buildings*, 2007, SFPE, Bethesda, MD.
(41) SFPE *Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering*, Fourth Edition, SFPE, Bethesda, MD, 2008.
(42) Drysdale, Dougal, *An Introduction to Fire Dynamics*, John Wiley & Sons, New York, NY, 1998, ISBN 0 471 90613 1, Second Edition.
(43) Nam S., Donovan L.P. and Kim S.G., Establishing Heat Detectors Thermal Sensitivity Through Bench Scale Tests, *Fire Safety Journal*, Volume 39, Number 3, 191–215, April 2004.
(44) Nam S., Thermal Response Coefficient TRC of Heat Detectors and Its Field Applications, Fire Detection and Research Applications Symposium, NFP Research Foundation, January 2003.
(45) Nam S., Performance-Based Heat Detector Spacing, Interflam 2004, pp 883–892.
(46) Geiman, J. A., "Evaluation of Smoke Detector Response Estimation Methods," Master of Science Thesis, University of Maryland, College Park, MD, December 2003.
(47) Projected Beam Smoke Detectors — More Than Just a Substitute for Spot Detectors; Fire Protection Engineering, Summer 2004, SFPE.
(48) Geiman, J.A., and Gottuck, D.T., "Alarm Thresholds for Smoke Detector Modeling," *Fire Safety Science — Proceeding of the Seventh International Symposium*, 2003, pp. 197–208.
(49) *The SFPE Code Official's Guide to Performance-based Design Review and Analysis of Buildings*, Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Bethesda, MD, 2004.
(50) NFPA *101*, *Life Safety Code*, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 2009.

(51) NFPA 909, *Code for the Protection of Cultural Resource Properties — Museums, Libraries, and Places of Worship*, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 2010.
(52) NFPA 914, *Code for Fire Protection of Historic Structures*, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 2010.
(53) Performance-based Building Design Concepts, International Code Council, Washington DC, 2004.
(54) *Extreme Event Mitigation In Buildings — Analysis and Design*, Meacham, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 2006.
(55) Geiman, Gottuk, and Milke, "Evaluation of Smoke Detector Response Estimation Methods: Optical Density, Temperature Rise and Velocity at Alarm," *Journal of Fire Protection Engineering*, 2006.
(56) Su et al., "Kemano Fire Studies — Part 1: Response of Residential Smoke Alarms," Research Report 108, NRCC, April 2003.
(57) Davis, W., The Zone Model Jet, "A Model for the Prediction of Detector Activation and Gas Temperature in the Presence of a Smoke Layer," NISTIR 6324, NIST, May 1999.
(58) *SFPE Engineering Guide to Human Behavior in Fire*.

G.1.2.14 References Associated with Annex D.

(1) Jacob, K. & Tyson, T., "Computer-Based Prediction of Speech Intelligibility for Mass Notification Systems", SUPDET 2008, Fire Protection Research Foundation, Mar 2008.
(2) IEC 60268-16, "Sound system equipment — Part 16: Objective rating of speech intelligibility by speech transmission index", 2003. Ref: ANSI/ASA S3.5, "American National Standard Methods for Calculation of the Speech Intelligibility Index", 1997.
(3) Barnett, P.W. and Knight, A.D., "The Common Intelligibility Scale," Proceedings of the Institute of Acoustics, Vol. 17, Part 7, 1995.
(4) IEC 60849, Annex B, Sound Systems for Emergency Purposes, Feb 1998.
(5) Sander J. van Wijngaarden and Jan A. Verhave, Past Present and Future of the Speech Transmission Index, Chapter 9, Measurement and Prediction of Speech Intelligibility in Traffic Tunnels Using the STI, p113, TNO Human Factors, The Netherlands, 2002.
(6) Mapp, P., "Systematic & Common Errors in Sound System STI and Intelligibility Measurements," Convention Paper 6271, Audio Engineering Society, 117th Convention, San Fran, CA, 28–31 Oct 2004. Ref: Peter Mapp, Past Present and Future of the Speech Transmission Index, Chapter 8, Practical Application of STI to Assessing Public Address and Emergency Sound Systems, TNO Human Factors, The Netherlands, 2002.

G.2 Informational References

The following documents or portions thereof are listed here as informational resources only. They are not a part of the requirements of this document.

G.2.1 UL Publications. Underwriters Laboratories Inc., 333 Pfingsten Road, Northbrook, IL 60062-2096.

ANSI/UL 2074, *Gas and Vapor Detectors and Sensors*, 2004.

G.3 References for Extracts in Informational Sections

NFPA 3, *Recommended Practice for Commissioning and Integrated Testing of Fire Protection and Life Safety Systems*, 2012 edition.

NFPA 70®, *National Electrical Code*®, 2011 edition.
NFPA 92, *Standard for Smoke Control Systems*, 2012 edition.
NFPA 92B, *Smoke Management Systems in Malls, Atria, and Large Spaces*, 1995 edition.
NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®, 2012 edition.
NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems*, 2013 edition.

PART TWO

Supplements

In addition to the code text and commentary presented in Part One, the *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code Handbook* includes supplements. They are not part of the Code but are included as additional information for handbook users. In the following three supplements, Part Two explores the background of three selected topics related to *NFPA 72* in more detail than the commentary. For additional supplemental material, visit *www.nfpa.org/72handbook*.

SUPPLEMENT 1

Performance-Based Design and Fire Alarm Systems

John M. Cholin, P.E., FSFPE
J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc.

Editor's Note: *Chapter 17 of the 2013 edition of the National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code includes a performance-based option in the design of the fire detection portion of fire alarm systems. Long-time users of the Code will also see the expansion and refinement of the performance-based design methods outlined in Annex B. This supplement provides an overview of the underlying concepts of performance-based design as they can be applied to fire alarm systems.*

INTRODUCTION

Over the past decade, fire protection engineers have introduced the term *performance-based design* into the language of the fire protection community. To many, performance-based design seems like a new concept. However, since the birth of engineering as a profession most engineering has been executed in an essentially performance-based design environment. The application of this design philosophy to the design of fire protection systems is a recent development, although arguably long overdue.

Performance-based design can be thought of as a design process where calculations and computer modeling are used to predict the capability of a contemplated design and to show that the design will meet specific performance criteria, indicating that a specific design objective or set of objectives has been met. This environment is very different from the prescriptive design environment with which most fire protection practitioners are familiar. The National Fire Protection Association (NFPA) has assumed a leadership role in formulating the concepts that make the development of performance-based codes and standards possible. As part of that larger effort, this supplement to the *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code Handbook* provides a review of the performance-based design concepts for the fire alarm system designer and technician.

Prescriptive Design

In the current environment of prescriptive building and fire codes, the process of design is largely a process of complying with a set of prescribed design features implemented according to a design standard. That design standard stipulates exactly how the building feature is to be designed.

Generally, a jurisdiction such as a state passes a law adopting one of the model building codes, often with local amendments as the enforceable building code. The legal basis for the law is usually the protection of the citizens of that particular state. Rarely does a state or other governmental entity have a legal authority to force building owners to protect their own property. But building owners can be required to ensure that citizens, including emergency responders, are protected *from* the building in the event of a fire or other type of calamity. This is an important, but often overlooked, aspect of the law. The building is essentially expendable, as long as no citizens are injured as a consequence of the loss of the building. Thus the general goal of the building code is the protection of the building's occupants, emergency responders who might enter the building, and adjacent property owners. The property interests of the building owner are not intentionally addressed by the building code.

Usually, the building code explicitly prescribes the design features a building must possess, based on its size and contemplated use. These prescribed building features have usually been derived from the analysis of past fire experience and building failures. The locally adopted construction codes reflect a consensus among the building community on how to prevent specific adverse impacts upon the citizenry resulting from a set of recognized fire scenarios. The building community has a collective understanding of the outcome it wishes to prevent and adopts a prescribed means to prevent that outcome.

Before the owner is permitted to occupy a building, the owner must demonstrate to the local building code enforcement authorities that the building is safe. The prescriptive requirements in the building code effectively define what features the building must possess in order for it to be deemed acceptably "safe" for occupation by the residents of the municipality or other governmental subdivision. If the building does not include all of the construction provisions required by the relevant building code, it is presumed to be "unsafe." In this case the building code authorizes the building official to withhold the Certificate of Occupancy, denying the owner the use of the building.

The design process in the current prescriptive environment generally begins by defining the use group or occupancy type of the contemplated structure. When an architect categorizes a building or space as a particular use group, he or she is accepting a set of assumptions regarding the anticipated type and quantity of combustibles, the probable sources of ignition, the number of occupants, and the capabilities of the occupants for that building or space. None of these assumptions are explicitly stated, nor are the expectations regarding the performance of the structure under fire conditions. Instead, the assumptions are implicit in the prescriptive requirements.

When using prescriptive codes, the design process is reduced to identifying the type of intended use (occupancy classification) for the structure and then applying the prescribed design features. The designer does not determine whether those features are necessary or sufficient to attain the intended level of fire safety for the particular structure. It is assumed that compliance with the prescriptive criteria will yield a "safe" building. There is over one hundred years of experience to substantiate the assumption.

Codes and standards that are written in prescriptive terms are often referred to as "cookbook codes." As the user follows the design rules outlined in the code, she or he has little opportunity or incentive to consider the design basis for the fire alarm system.

The designer who designs a facility in accordance to a prescriptive code and standard must remain mindful that the objectives of the code writers are not necessarily the same as those of the building owner or operator. Indeed, they usually are not. The sole objective of the writers of the building code is to prevent the building from injuring citizens or from a failure of the subject building adversely impacting the property value of its neighbors. The building owner has an interest in preserving the value of the building. The building occupant has an interest in maintaining the utilization of the building. Insurers for both the owner and occupant (if different) have an interest in minimizing insured losses including property, business continuity, and possibly environmental impacts. These different objectives often result in the addition of capabilities and features to a fire protection system that exceed the minimums established by the relevant building code. This is often seen in the context of fire alarm system design.

Furthermore, most assume that if the fire alarm system complies with the building code or NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®, and if the installation complies with *NFPA 72*®, it will provide sufficiently early warning of a fire regardless of the nature of the fire, where it originates, and the objectives for the system. The purpose in 1.2.3 of *NFPA 72* states: "This Code establishes minimum required levels of performance, extent of redundancy, and quality of installation but does not establish the only methods by which these requirements are to be achieved." As indicated, the required levels are minimums. There are many design issues that are not addressed in the regional building codes or the *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code* because they are relevant only for a subset of facilities and are not appropriate for inclusion into a minimum compliance consensus standard. Designing to a minimum prescriptive code does not guarantee early warning of a fire. If the fire is remote from the detection devices, notification will be delayed until the fire grows sufficiently large to produce effects that finally cause a detector to transition to the alarm state. Owners who accept the minimums prescribed by these codes do not have the benefit of the increased performance that can be attained from a fire alarm system designed to meet their goals and objectives.

Thus, while the construction code requirements do reflect a set of objectives, those objectives are not explicitly stated. Furthermore, the prescribed building features do not necessarily represent the only means by which the implicit objective can be achieved. For any given objective there are quite possibly a number of means by which it can be achieved. Consequently, occasions do arise where prescriptive codes and standards preclude a solution that makes perfectly good sense for a given application.

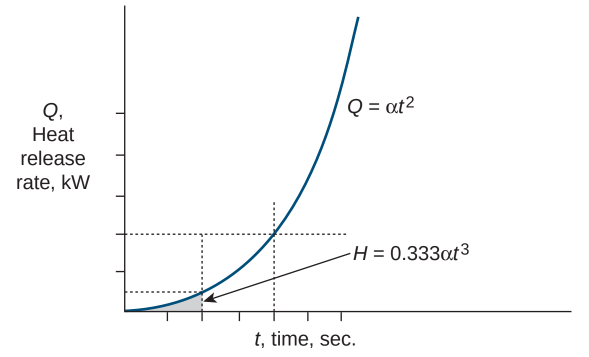
PERFORMANCE-BASED DESIGN

The performance-based design method is radically different from the prescriptive design method. Performance-based design is a design process in which the ability of the design to achieve a certain objective is demonstrated by means of calculations and/or computational modeling rather than compliance with an empirically developed recipe of prescribed features that has evolved from years of experience. As a design method, performance-based design relies on principles of mathematics, physics, and engineering, whether it is used to produce a building, fire protection system, or bridge. Rather than relying upon a set of prescribed design rules that have been derived from past experience, the designer develops and evaluates the design in terms of its ability to achieve the performance objective through engineering calculations.

As a design method, this method is not a new approach. In other engineering disciplines, this method is the norm rather than an exception. For example, an engineer designs a bridge to support a design load under the range of conditions expected at the contemplated location. There is no code that spells out the size of the beams, footings, or suspension cables. The engineer performs calculations to determine whether each element in the structure is capable of supporting the load anticipated under the conditions of use. Engineers use a similar design process for automobiles, computers, and aircraft. In the case of an aircraft, the design process begins when someone defines the payload, range, and cost of the contemplated airplane. The objectives for the finished product then lead to specific design and performance criteria. These criteria relate to the engine thrust, wing dimensions, cruising altitude, required runway, and so forth. The designer benchmarks each of these criteria against the overall objectives of the contemplated aircraft. Where unavoidable, the designer makes concessions. Eventually a design emerges. If the designer has done his or her job properly, the prototype airplane flies as well as fulfills the various operational objectives of the purchaser.

In a performance-based design environment, the design of a fire alarm system begins with an objective — perhaps to provide alarm sufficiently early to permit the occupants to leave before the loss of tenability. Specific, quantitative criteria are then developed regarding what smoke concentrations and temperatures establish the limits of tenability. Various fire scenarios are considered. Generally, a *t*-square fire is assumed. See Exhibit S1.1 for a *t*-square fire growth curve. Fire models are used to determine how long after the emergence of a stable flame tenability persists in the occupied compartments and the routes to means of egress. Usually the same fire model can be used to predict how long it will take for the fire alarm system to detect that fire. The time point of detection starts the notification time – the period of time needed for the occupants to conclude that there is a fire and that they must leave the building. Egress models are used to determine how long it will take for the occupants to completely vacate the building. The loss of

EXHIBIT S1.1



The t-Square Fire. (J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)

tenability time is compared to the sum of the notification and egress times to determine if all of the occupants are able to vacate the building before tenability has been lost. This process is repeated for an array of "worst-case" fire scenarios to develop a level of confidence that the system will achieve the objective over the entire range of fire and occupancy scenarios possible for the building.

In most facilities the fire alarm system is only one part of the larger fire protection strategy for the building, facility, or process. Yet it often plays a crucial role in initiating a tactical response to the occurrence of a fire. When a fire alarm system is designed and installed in compliance with a prescriptive building code requirement, that role has been defined, tacitly if not explicitly, by virtue of the existence of the requirement. The fire alarm technologist and technician should be made aware of how the fire alarm system fits into the overall fire protection strategy for a given building. In a performance-based design environment there is a fire protection strategy that establishes a defined role for the fire alarm system. When performance-based design methods are used, an understanding of the interdependency of all the fire protection features is critical.

In most states, the design of fire alarm systems is required to be performed by state licensed professional engineers. Performance-based designs must always be performed by an engineer knowledgeable in the principles of fire protection engineering. When undertaking the design of a fire alarm system in either the prescriptive or performance-based design environments, he or she must apply these principles judiciously.

The fire protection engineer uses the building design, type of construction, water supplies, fixed suppression systems, fire alarm systems, fixed extinguishing systems, off-site reporting, and fire service capabilities as essential elements in the fire safety strategy for the building. Each of these elements interacts with, and often relies upon, one or more other elements to achieve the final objective of a fire-safe building. When a change is made to one of those elements, changes must often be made to one or more of the other elements in order to maintain an equivalent level of fire safety. The interrelation and interdependency between the various elements of the facility fire safety features become far more apparent when an engineer considers performance-based design. When a system is designed using performance-based methods, the design remains valid only as long as all of the building features and other fire protection systems remain. If other building features and systems are modified, the design of those systems where performance-based design was used must be re-evaluated to verify that the modifications did not make a material impact on the design. Even changes as simple as the replacement of furniture can invalidate a performance-based design. Changing the furniture can change the fuel load and fire growth parameter of the probable fires, changing the requisite response time of the fire detection and fire suppression or extinguishment to control the fire to the assumed maximum heat release rate. Consequently, when an owner opts to rely on a performance-based design approach there will be a going-forward need to reevaluate any use changes as they affect design decisions, often on a regular basis, to ensure that the objectives are still achieved in spite of changes that have occurred or are expected to occur.

THE PERFORMANCE-BASED DESIGN PROCESS

Performance-based design is a *process,* and there are two very important things to remember about that process. The first is that the design methods normally associated with performance-based design can lead to erroneous conclusions and fundamentally flawed designs when the design method is used outside the context of the performance-based design *process*. The computational methods for predicting the response of a fire detection device only provide a number. That number is *not* a design. The number is one of many that are then used to support a design. For example, a response calculation predicts the response of a smoke detector to a 100 kilowatt growing fire in 60 seconds. Is that soon enough to meet the design objectives? We can't say until we know a lot more about the scenario. But we can see that this single calculation does not produce a design. The design is derived from the results of numerous calculations.

Second, performance-based design is not generally used for a whole building. The designer doesn't look at an architectural site plan and decide to use performance-based design on the project. Instead, performance-based design is most often used where the prescriptive design cannot be rationally used. For example, a fire alarm system is to be designed for a large, multi-story office building with a central, multi-story atrium space used as a cafeteria and general assembly area. The designer will probably use a prescriptive design method for determining the type of initiating devices and their spacings in the offices and the corridors serving those offices. However, a performance-based design method would be used for the atrium because the prescriptive spacing design rules for smoke detectors were never intended to be applied to a multi-story atrium space.

The *SFPE Engineering Guide to Performance-Based Fire Protection* (2007) defines *performance-based design* as a process that includes: "an engineering approach to fire protection design based on (1) agreed upon fire safety goals and objectives, (2) deterministic and/or probabilistic analysis of fire scenarios, and (3) quantitative assessment of design alternatives against the fire safety goals and objectives using accepted engineering tools, methodologies, and performance criteria." We will discuss the methods of performance-based design later, but we must keep in mind that *performance-based design* is a process and that the methods should only be used in the context of the whole process.

The process of developing a performance-based design begins with the identification of all the *stakeholders* in the finished building. The *Guide* also defines *stakeholder* as "one who has a share or an interest, as in an enterprise." In the context of the fire alarm system, the stakeholder is an individual (or a representative of a group of people) having an interest in the successful completion of the project or the operation of the facility in which it is to be installed. The reason for having an interest in the successful completion of a project may be related to legal, operational, financial, or safety concerns. When designing in accordance with the performance-based design process, it is critical to identify all of the stakeholders at the beginning of the project. The stakeholders each contribute to the identification of the goals and, subsequently, objectives for the project. They each also approve the methods that are used to achieve these goals and objectives.

The *Guide* identifies the following individuals as possible stakeholders:

- Building owner
- Building manager
- Authorities having jurisdiction (AHJs)
  - Fire
  - Building
  - Insurance
  - Accreditation agencies
- Construction team
  - Construction manager
  - General contractor
  - Subcontractors

- Tenants
- Building operations and maintenance staff
- Emergency responders
- Peer reviewer

Each of these individuals brings to the project her/his own viewpoint and performance goals. On occasion some of the stakeholders will find that their goals are the same. In other cases they will have widely divergent goals. Each has a role to play and something to contribute during the design process. The final design must be acceptable to all of the stakeholders. Consequently, the design must adequately address the goals of each stakeholder. Again, to quote the *Guide*, "It is imperative for the engineer to identify the stakeholders in order to obtain acceptance of the performance-based strategies used in the [design] process." The most demanding goals must be allowed to prevail over those that are less demanding. A stakeholder cannot reduce or rescind a goal of some other stakeholder, but it is always permissible to exceed a stakeholder's goal.

Once the stakeholders have articulated their goals, the fire protection engineer helps them translate those goals into specific design objectives. While a goal is expressed in general terms, objectives are specific and can ultimately be measured quantitatively. For example, perhaps the owner's goal is to get all of the employees out of the building unharmed in the event of a fire. In this case the objective can be stated as "completing all occupant egress before the loss of tenability." We can measure whether all of the occupants have left at any particular moment in time. We can quantify tenability in terms of carbon monoxide concentration, smoke obscuration, temperature, radiant flux, and so on, at various points in time during a hypothetical fire using compartment fire models run on a computer. So the process of translating goals into carefully worded objectives leads the stakeholders towards explicit performance criteria. This process is foreign to many people who have traditionally been involved in the design of fire protection systems, and so it is not an easy transition. But it is a critical part of the design process.

Once the stakeholders agree on the design objectives, the fire protection engineer must then reduce those objectives to specific performance criteria. Performance criteria are quantitative and can be measured to an appropriate level of precision. As mentioned above, tenability criteria are expressed as a concentration in parts per million of carbon monoxide, radiant flux in watts per square centimeter, air temperature in degrees Kelvin, visibility in optical density, and so on. Occupant egress rates can be quantified, leading to predictions of the number of people still within the facility at any point in time during a hypothetical fire. These performance criteria become the benchmarks against which candidate designs are measured. If a design does not achieve a level of performance equal to or better than the benchmark performance criteria, it cannot achieve the performance established by the stakeholders' goals and objectives.

For example, one objective of the fire alarm system in a particular facility might be to warn the occupants of a fire in sufficient time to allow them to extinguish the fire with hand-portable fire extinguishers before the fire suppression sprinkler system operates. This objective can be evaluated quantitatively for a given set of hypothetical circumstances. Let's assume that the fire suppression sprinkler system will respond to a 1.0 megawatt (MW) fire. This assumption can be checked for validity with a number of computational methods. If an employee will need 1.0 minute to react to a fire alarm signal, find a fire extinguisher, take the extinguisher to the fire, and deploy the extinguishing agent, then the fire alarm systems must be capable of detecting the fire at least 1.0 minute sooner than the fire suppression sprinkler system. (We are using 1.0 minute as an example and the use of this example should not be construed to suggest that this is a realistic time interval for any particular situation.) Using a *t*-square fire growth model, we can calculate how large the fire will be 1.0 minute before it attains a heat release rate of 1.0 MW. A suitable numerical value for a is obtained from fire protection engineering references and plugged into the equation in Exhibit S1.1 to obtain a heat release rate. This calculated fire size then becomes the response criterion for the fire alarm system. The fire detection system must respond to a fire of 1.0 MW – X, where X is the magnitude of the fire growth during the 1.0 minute response time of the personnel to the fire alarm signal. In this manner, performance criteria that have been derived from the stakeholder goals and objectives become the minimum compliance criteria in the performance-based design environment, rather than the specific design features in the prescriptive code.

When using the performance-based design process, the designer then develops candidate designs. The designer then can use the fire size criterion and fire detector response models to establish the appropriate spacing for detectors. The performance of each candidate design is modeled using any of a number of computational methods, tools, or modeling programs. These models produce a prediction of the performance of the system to a set of fire scenarios. Once the fire protection engineer has developed a design that achieves the performance criteria derived from the stakeholder objectives, the fire protection engineer presents the design to the stakeholders for review and acceptance. It is only after all of the stakeholders have accepted the design that the fire protection engineer can begin writing specifications and the production of drawings.

The performance-based design process derives the design features directly from the explicitly stated goals and objectives the stakeholders have for the facility. Goals are established. Those goals lead to concrete objectives. Those objectives lead to explicit, measurable performance criteria. Computational methods are then used to demonstrate that the system achieves the objectives by meeting the performance criteria that were derived from those objectives. The goals and objectives established by the stakeholders become the minimum compliance requirements for the design rather than a set of prescribed design features, as is found in our current codes. The designer proves the system design meets the performance criteria obtained from the design objectives through calculations and computational modeling. The methods used for each step in the process should only be used in the context of the performance-based design process and be well documented.

REASONS FOR A PERFORMANCE-BASED DESIGN METHOD

The current system of prescriptive codes and standards provides a level of fire safety in the new built environment that is acceptable to the public at large. Most newly constructed buildings provide greater fire safety than those built even a decade ago. Despite this positive trend, the ever-increasing need to use resources more wisely dictates change.

In an increasingly competitive world environment, the need to use resources wisely has become the fundamental driving force behind the transition toward a performance-based design environment. The inherent flexibility in the performance-based design method permits the selection of fire protection features based on actual need rather than legislated conformity. Where the design of fire protection systems through the use of performance-based design is allowed by locally adopted codes and the jurisdictional enforcement authorities, the design flexibility allowed by performance-based design results in a greater efficiency in the use of fire protection resources. In some instances, the routine application of the requirements of our current prescriptive codes results in a design that commits fire protection resources to systems that are not likely to make significant contributions to the fire safety of the structure. For example, general purpose sprinkler heads are often installed in an atrium space at ordinary hazard spacing, 70 ft or 80 ft (21 m or 24 m) above the floor. In the past engineers have specified spot-type smoke detectors in that same location because these are usually classified as assembly spaces and a code requires smoke detectors in all places of assembly.

A quick calculation shows that a fire would probably have to reach a heat release rate of approximately 14,200 Btu/sec (15 MW) (approximately equivalent to an 80 ft^2 [7.5 m^2] pool of gasoline in free burn) before the first sprinkler head would actuate. Yet, under these conditions the water discharging from those sprinkler heads would probably fail to penetrate the fire plume to the flame surface where it could contribute to controlling the fire. Relying on experience rather than calculation, it would be expected that a smoke detector installed at such a height would need a similar size fire before an alarm response would be attained. The smoke detectors at those heights would certainly not meet the implied goal of early warning. Finally, it is possible that the available fuel load in the space could not produce the needed 14,200 Btu/sec (15 MW) fire. The relevant construction codes severely limit the quantity of combustible materials in assembly spaces. So, neither the sprinkler system nor the smoke detection system can be expected to achieve the implied design objectives in the event of a fire in this example. The fire safety objectives for such a space remain the same as they are for the remainder of the building, but the prescribed means by which those objectives are presumably met are ineffective. This is a classic case of designing a building space by including the design features prescribed by the relevant building code and fire code, rather than designing fire protective features that provide for a given level of fire safety. A design is needed that is appropriate to the space.

Numerous historical fire incidents have shown that sprinklers prove extremely effective in controlling fire, by holding the fire to the compartment of origin, protecting the compartmentation, and maintaining structural integrity until the fire is extinguished. Accordingly, the model building codes have adopted a requirement for most occupancies to equip all such compartments with sprinkler systems. Undeniably, smoke detectors provide early warning in most fires, so the model building codes have adopted requirements for smoke detection for many occupancies. Numerous other historical fire incidents have shown that limiting the quantity and type of combustibles available in compartments enhances the survival prospects of the occupants and the protection of the structure. Therefore, requirements relating to the flame spread rating of wall coverings and interior furnishings for public places have become incorporated into the model building codes. Lastly, the model building codes also might require 2-hour rated compartment construction under some circumstances. Required construction provides a passive compartmentation of the fire, limiting the probability of fire spread to adjacent areas.

Separately, each of these building code requirements offers valid strategies for limiting the hazard of a fire in the particular compartment. To a significant degree in the preceding example, the requirements for sprinklers, smoke detectors, and fuel load limitations address the same general goal: to limit the size of a fire. Considering the fire resistance rating required of the compartment in the atrium example, at least four required fire protection strategies address the same fundamental objective: to contain the fire to the compartment of ignition. Is it necessary to provide all of these required features for the same compartment? The current prescriptive building and fire codes do not explicitly address this question, nor do they provide a means to quantify the contribution each feature makes to the overall fire safety of the facility. The result is required redundancies.

There is nothing wrong with redundancies as long as they are intentional and based on a rational analysis. The logic usually used to justify redundancy is: if strategy A doesn't work, then strategy B is there to fall back on. It is essentially a "belt and suspenders" argument. A fire protection strategy that uses redundant features is more reliable than a strategy that relies on a single feature, assuming that all of the fire protection features have equivalent reliability. If the fire compromises one feature, then the other still maintains the safety of the structure.

If the redundancies were intentional, wouldn't it indicate that there was a tacit concern for the fundamental reliability of the "required" building features? How can the reliability of these required fire safety features be quantified? How many redundancies are enough? By the sixth or seventh set of "suspenders," isn't it fair to ask how much incremental benefit is accrued from the last set?

If this same atrium space were addressed in a performance-based design environment, the fire safety objective would remain the same: to limit the spread of a fire to the compartment of fire origin. In the performance-based design environment, where allowed by locally adopted codes or jurisdictional authorities, the engineer is not limited to the choice of means adopted by a building code. He or she is free to develop any means that can be shown to accomplish the fundamental performance objective. Appropriate construction of the walls and doors can contain a fire involving the worst-case fire load. The fire load can be limited. The fire can be suppressed. The fire can be detected early in its development and manually extinguished before it breaches the compartment. Any of these approaches can achieve the basic objective of confining the fire to the compartment of origin. In the performance-based environment, the engineer responsible for designing the fire protective features is free to select one or more means as part of an integrated fire protection strategy that best fulfills the objective at an acceptable level of reliability.

The use of a performance-based design method does not necessarily mean that the engineer will not employ intentional redundancies to ensure that he or she meets the objective in the event of a failure of one of the fire protection features. However, the engineer will base the selection of fire protection features on a rational analysis of the possible fire scenarios for a particular compartment and the computed mission effectiveness of the fire protection features. Then, he or she will select the most efficient means to accomplish the objectives in the event of that fire. Thus, performance-based design provides the engineer with the flexibility to address unique structures and sets of performance objectives that might not have been contemplated during the drafting of a model building or fire code. Performance-based design also provides a means of achieving society's fire safety objectives in unusual and unique environments. For example, an eighteenth century house that has been restored to its original eighteenth century condition is now used as a site for education and lectures on the local history. Conflicting goals immediately surface. The social value of the structure relies on its being preserved exactly as it existed in the eighteenth century. This preservation connects us to our history. Yet one of the means to preserve this heritage will change the structure by adding to it modern fire detection and suppression. These additions will limit the damage to the building if a fire occurs. Furthermore, because the public assembles in this structure, there is a social value in providing for a level of occupant life safety consistent with the expectations of the community in general. This life safety objective also might necessitate changes to the structure. For example, it might be necessary to widen or add doors to provide sufficient egress capacity.

Certainly, the historical value will erode the least when the changes to the building are minimized. With a purely prescriptive code, the designer of the fire protection systems has only a few alternatives. The authority having jurisdiction may or may not allow noncompliance with the prescriptive requirements of the code because he/she does not want to assume the inherent responsibility. With a performance-based environment, the solution becomes a "reasonable engineering approach" to finding acceptable methods to meet the fire safety goals. The inherent flexibility of the performance-based design environment also enables the designer to satisfy conflicting social values through the use of creative design. The inherent flexibility of performance-based design permits the selection of fire protection features based on the design goals and objectives, allowing the engineer to tailor the fire protection features to the specific structure and circumstances.

Obviously, only qualified designers working with the building design team should undertake the design of engineered fire protection systems in the performance-based context. Because many of the fire protection features of the structure are interdependent, a thorough understanding of each of those features and their interdependencies is critical. In the case of fire alarm systems, the designer should possess substantial design experience not only with fire alarm systems, but also with the other interdependent fire protection systems including the passive fire resistance and compartmentation, structures, HVAC systems, sprinkler fire suppression systems, fire service response capabilities, special extinguishing systems, and the principles of fire protection engineering, before undertaking a performance-based design project.

The designer should be included in the building design team as early as possible, ideally beginning with the feasibility stage. The designer of the fire alarm system addresses a wide range of fire protection issues that impact the fire alarm system design. As the owner and the authority having jurisdiction establish their fire safety goals and objectives, the fire alarm system designer must be able to advise them of the feasibility and prerequisite conditions for attaining those goals. Clearly, this design environment places far greater demands upon the designer. This increased demand is the price paid for the design freedom, improved cost efficiency, and design flexibility that performance-based design provides.

The locally adopted construction codes generally do not explicitly state what level of functional performance the prescribed design attains. Lacking clear performance objectives, how can a designer develop a performance-equivalent alternative design? Fortunately the fire scenario evaluation methods employed in the process of performance-based design can be applied to the prescribed features in a prescriptive code to deduce the apparent performance objective underlying a prescriptive feature. How can the designer determine the types and extents of necessary and sufficient changes to the structure in order to achieve the objectives of society? Answers to these questions emerge through the use of performance-based codes.

THE PERFORMANCE-BASED DESIGN PROCESS: EXPLICIT STATEMENT OF FIRE PROTECTION GOALS

The performance-based design process begins with explicitly stated fire safety goals. The stakeholders must answer the question: "What level of fire safety does society expect from the building?" The goals generally reflect a consensus of social values. The basic goals relating to life safety, protection of adjacent properties, environmental impact, and fire fighter safety will eventually be part of a locally adopted performance-based code. Until such codes are in place, the fire protection engineer must lead the stakeholders in developing their own goals.

Other fire safety goals relating to mission continuity might be established by the owner and insurance authorities. For example, a building should maintain its structural integrity during certain situations such as a fire. This goal could include maintaining the structural integrity even after all of the combustible material within it has burned. The goal may also require that a structure maintain its integrity during, and in spite of, fire-fighting activities. Another fire safety goal might be to warn the occupants of a fire in sufficient time to allow them to escape from imminent danger without harm. Some will complain that these goals seem so general that they add nothing to the design process. However, they are important to ensure that all of the relevant social values are reflected in the design of the building and its fire protection systems.

Fire protection goals generally address a range of issues relating to occupant life safety, fire fighter life safety, citizen life safety, citizen property rights, property loss limitation, the continuity of the facility mission, the preservation of heritage, and the environmental impact from the fire. Society puts these issues in a hierarchy, reflecting consensus social values. Avoiding a long-term environmental impact might be considered more important than limiting property damage. Therefore, the use of a very effective extinguishing agent for the protection of property that also produces a long-term environmental degradation would not be permitted. However, society will permit an airline to use the same extinguishing agent to extinguish engine fires on their commercial aircraft. In this case, society values the obvious life safety goal for the occupants of an airplane at a higher level than the environmental goal.

Further examples of fire safety goals are listed in the *SFPE Engineering Guide to Performance-Based Fire Protection*, including efforts to

- Minimize fire-related injuries and prevent undue loss of life
- Minimize fire-related damage to the building, its contents, and its historical features and attributes
- Minimize undue loss of operations and business-related revenue due to fire-related damage
- Limit the environmental impact of the fire and fire protection measures

THE PERFORMANCE-BASED DESIGN PROCESS: EXPLICIT STATEMENT OF FIRE PROTECTION OBJECTIVES

Once the stakeholders have agreed upon the fire safety goals, they must derive specific objectives that reflect how and to what degree the system must fulfill those goals. (See NFPA *Primer #1: Performance-Based Goals, Objectives and Criteria* [1997].) Although the objectives are derived from the goals, they are more specific and quantifiable. If the goal is to ensure that there is no loss of life due to fire in the building, then one objective derived from this goal is that the building should provide sufficient warning to all occupants in sufficient time to permit them to escape or relocate without loss of life or injury. As the fire protection engineer leads the stakeholders through the process of refining goals into objectives, the fire protection engineer is beginning the process of developing potential strategies. The use of occupant warning as the means to attain the goal implies the use of a fire alarm system as part of the occupant protection strategy. This objective also presumes that the design of the building provides a means of egress to the building exterior or to an area of refuge. Both of these fire protective features must be in place in order to attain the life safety objective. Because performance-based design permits flexibility, the designer can freely consider alternatives to the customary approach as long as the alternatives provide equivalent or superior performance.

THE PERFORMANCE-BASED DESIGN PROCESS: QUANTITATIVELY EXPRESSED PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

Once the stakeholders have established explicit objectives, the fire protection engineer develops *quantitative* performance criteria that provide the yardstick for measuring performance and attainment of the design objective. In the earlier example we used the objective of "providing warning in sufficient time to permit the occupants to escape without injury." A fire protection engineer will measure this objective using performance criteria that relate specifically to the process of notifying occupants and their response to the signal. These include the following:

- Sound pressure level needed to warn the occupants
- Number of occupants
- Condition of the occupants
- Egress speed of the occupants along the egress path
- Length of the egress path
- Size of the fire at the moment of detection
- Rate of fire growth
- Rate of deterioration of the tenability in each of the compartments, as well as along the egress route

The designer must quantify each of these criteria before the process of outlining possible designs can begin.

For example, a quantitative criterion for the warning of the occupants must exist. Research has shown that audible notification with sound pressure levels of 15 dB above average ambient or 5 dB above momentary ambient peaks lasting more than 60 seconds effectively warns occupants with normal hearing. For conscious, hearing-impaired occupants, visible notification intensities of 0.0375 lm/ft^2 (0.4037 lm/m^2) have been shown to be sufficient to warn such occupants. Consequently, the designer could formulate the performance criteria for occupant notification to read as follows:

Occupant notification shall be deemed to have been provided when the following conditions occur:

1. Attainment in all occupiable portions of the compartment, the Temporal Code-3 audible notification having a sound pressure of at least 15 dB above average ambient or 5 dB above momentary maximum (greater than 60 seconds duration) ambient and
2. Attainment in all occupiable portions of the compartment, visible notification producing an effective luminance of 0.0375 lm/ft^2 (0.4037 lm/m^2) with an integrated flash rate no greater than 2 Hz and no less than 1 Hz.

One way of achieving these performance criteria is to install audible and visible notification appliances according to the prescriptive criteria in the current edition of *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code.*

However, in very large spaces the 0.0375 lm/ft^2 (0.4037 lm/m^2) effective luminance might be impossible to attain with currently available notification appliances. The effective luminance criterion was established assuming indirect viewing — the occupant is *not* looking in the direction of the notification appliance but is instead responding to the reflected light off walls, ceiling, and floors. In the case of large atria, auditoria, and other similar spaces, the designer might rely, instead, on direct view and use calculations to show that the radiant intensity of the notification appliances in direct view mode is sufficient to achieve notification. (Additional insight on these types of applications can be found in A.18.5.4 of *NFPA 72*.)

The Technical Committee on Notification Appliances for Fire Alarm Systems has included performance criteria in the body of the Code along with the prescriptive criteria for visible notification. However, the prescriptive requirements of other chapters in the *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code* are not as easily restated as performance-based criteria. In this case, a validated performance demonstration method must be used to determine the implied performance criteria of a design using the prescriptive criteria. Then the designer must use that same method to demonstrate that an alternative design meets or exceeds the performance implied by the prescriptive design.

Once again, the *SFPE Engineering Guide to Performance-Based Fire Protection* designates areas in which performance criteria may be needed:

- *Life safety criteria.* These criteria address the survivability of persons exposed to fire and fire products
- *Thermal effects.* These effects include both the effects on the occupants and on materials and equipment

- *Toxicity effects.* These effects, primarily on humans, consist of reduced decision-making capability and impaired motor activity leading to incapacity or death
- *Visibility.* This criterion affects the ability of occupants to safely exit from a fire
- *Non-life safety criteria.* These criteria address issues relating to acceptable damage levels to property
- *Ignition of objects.* These effects include the source of energy and what can be expected to ignite
- *Flame spread.* These effects assess the propagation of flame once ignition has occurred
- *Smoke damage.* This criterion includes smoke aerosols and particulates as well as corrosive combustion products
- *Fire barrier damage and structural integrity.* This criterion addresses the loss of fire barriers resulting in fire extension, increased damage, and structural collapse
- *Damage to exposed properties.* The engineer may need to develop this criterion in order to measure the potential for fire spread or damage to exposed properties

The *SFPE Guide* provides references to assist the designer in determining how to account for the list of performance criteria given.

THE PERFORMANCE-BASED DESIGN PROCESS: DEVELOPING THE VERIFICATION METHODS FOR DEMONSTRATING PERFORMANCE

Once the stakeholders have agreed upon the fire protection goals, objectives, and performance criteria, the fire protection engineer must develop a method for demonstrating performance. The method usually employs a means of modeling how a fire of given characteristics will impact the facility. There is a wide range of conceivable fire scenarios for any contemplated structure, but usually there are but a few that represent the credible worst case. These scenarios might include a rapidly developing fire of maximum credible fuel load and a slowly developing fire that produces extensive non-thermal smoke damage. These fire scenarios are then modeled using computer modeling programs.

Computer modeling programs exist that iteratively solve the equations that describe fire plume dynamics, fluid flow, heat transfer, and other physical phenomena involved in a fire and their impact on the building compartment. These programs require detailed input data about the particular compartment, fire, and ambient conditions. The programs account for all of the heat and mass evolved from the fire in order to predict the impact the fire has on the compartment and fire protection equipment.

Even though computer fire modeling is often a fundamental part of the process of demonstrating performance, engineers often address many issues in a performance-based design with algebraic formulas. Annex B, Engineering Guide for Automatic Fire Detector Spacing, of *NFPA 72* provides numerous algebraic formulas for solving specific aspects of the performance prediction of a fire alarm system. *The SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering* (2008) provides additional formulas.

It is critical that the method used to demonstrate the performance of the fire alarm system be validated to the greatest extent possible using documented research. First principles of physics or the reduction of experimental data to engineering correlations generally form the basis for performance prediction methods used by the designer. The performance-based design documentation must identify the source of the correlations or physical relation used to demonstrate performance for review by the authority having jurisdiction.

The sources, methodologies, and data used in performance-based designs must be based on technical references that are widely accepted and used by the fire protection community. As advised by the *SFPE Guide*, "The engineer and other stakeholders should determine the acceptability of the sources and methodologies for the particular applications in which they are used." The *Guide* provides guidance as to what constitutes a valid technical reference.

THE PERFORMANCE-BASED DESIGN PROCESS: COMPARISON OF PREDICTED PERFORMANCE WITH PERFORMANCE CRITERIA

Once the stakeholders have agreed on the goals, objectives, performance criteria, and the tools to be used to demonstrate performance, the designer can research potential design approaches. Usually, the process of deriving performance objectives from stakeholder goals and reducing those objectives to quantitative criteria will lead the designer to design approaches. This is where the designer often draws on the experience the designer has accrued over the years dealing with similar structures.

Usually, the designer outlines each candidate design in a narrative form, and the critical performance criteria for the design are identified. The candidate designs are essentially hypotheses that must now be tested using the verification methods the stakeholders have agreed are a valid measure of performance.

The performance demonstration starts with describing the fire scenarios. The choice of fire scenarios establishes the severity of the fire challenge the facility is expected to handle. Therefore, the choice implies value judgments on relative probabilities of occurrence and acceptable losses.

Usually, an analysis of the range of types of combustibles, the extremes of combustible quantity, extremes of ambient conditions, extremes of asset vulnerability, and other circumstances lead to a limited number of worst-case scenarios. The engineer presumes that if the proposed system can achieve the design objectives under worst-case conditions, it will achieve the objectives under less arduous conditions. Profound errors can occur during this phase when the engineer defines "reasonable" worst-case conditions, so caution must be used. Furthermore, the designer should obtain input from the stakeholders as each has a contribution to make in this part of the process.

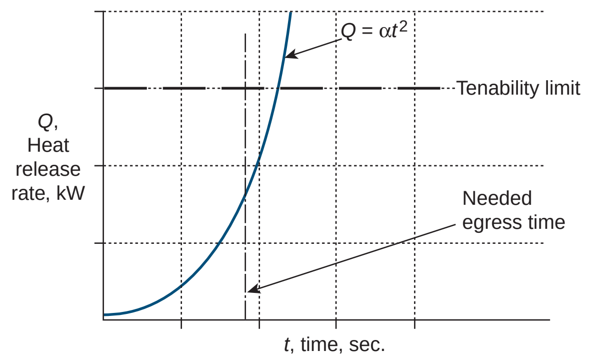
Once the engineer defines the scenarios, she or he usually uses a fire model to predict the impact of the fire on the compartment. The rate of heat release and rate of fire growth are used in a computer fire model to predict the development of the ceiling jet, its velocity, and its temperature. The model uses the ceiling jet dynamics to predict the rate of formation of a ceiling layer and, hence, the rate of interface descent. The computer fire model provides estimates of smoke and heat detector response time as well as a determination of the response time for the first sprinkler head. The engineer uses the predicted time for the upper layer to descend to a level that impedes egress to infer the time available for escape.

The response of the occupants is also modeled. Occupant reaction time and egress velocity are used as input parameters in egress models to determine how rapidly the occupants can vacate the facility under the fire scenario conditions. Other issues such as the rate of heat transfer through a fire barrier are addressed with other models or algebraic relations.

Eventually, the designer has a body of data that she or he can use to compare the performance of the proposed design to the performance criteria derived from the objectives established for the building. This comparison determines whether the proposed design passes or fails. See Exhibit S1.2. If the design passes the evaluation of the first scenario, the designer moves to the next scenario and repeats the process. If the design fails to meet these conditions, the engineer must develop a modified design and put that design to the same test. The designer repeats this evaluation process until a design emerges that achieves the design objectives for all contemplated fire scenarios.

Once a design has been shown to achieve all of the performance objectives for all of the fire scenarios, the designer is then ready to complete the design documentation and commence developing specifications and drawings for the systems to be used. Clearly, the performance-based design process is more involved than the prescriptive design process. Consequently, performance-based design is usually reserved for those situations where the prescriptive approach is clearly inadequate or not applicable.

EXHIBIT S1.2



Comparison of Predicted Egress – Time versus Tenability Limit. (J. M. Cholin Consultants, Inc., Oakland, NJ)

CAUTIONS AND CAVEATS FOR THE DESIGNER

The analysis of fire alarm systems and the development of a system design predicated upon performance objectives and criteria are one step in the process of developing a fire protection strategy for the building as a whole. Although there are some very compelling advantages of performance-based design, there are also some very important disadvantages.

Performance-based design does provide a method that enables the designer to tackle difficult and unique hazards either where consensus standards do not outline an accepted protection method or where no consensus standard exists. However, performance-based design relies entirely on the designer's understanding of the hazard area, as well as an understanding of the process and progress of the potential fires in that hazard area. Failure to consider material aspects of the hazard area and how a fire will develop in that area can lead to fire protection systems that are doomed to failure. Consequently, the performance-based design of fire alarm systems requires a licensed professional engineer to perform the design. The designer should be knowledgeable in the principles of fire protection engineering and apply these principles judiciously.

The process of performance-based design often relies on the use of computer fire models. Some of these models are no longer actively supported and have been released to the public domain by the developer. In some cases, the validation of the computational routines nested within the software is tenuous or entirely lacking. In other cases, the software has minimal documentation. Consequently, the designer must take care that he or she only uses the model within the range of parametric variation over which the developer has validated the model.

The level of precision of the available performance measurements for fire alarm initiating devices is not equivalent to the level of precision generally implied by the results of the computer modeling techniques. Clearly, the most critical issue in evaluating the performance of a fire alarm system in a performance-based environment is the prediction of the time at which the system responds to the design fire. How big, or small, a fire will be detected by the detection portion of the fire alarm system? Sound validated performance metrics for heat detectors are now available. Engineers can predict the response of sprinkler heads when the temperature rating, response time index (RTI) for the particular model of sprinkler head, ceiling height, ambient temperature, and fire heat release rate are known.

Similar information is now available for heat detectors. In the past, Annex B has relied upon a rough correlation between listed spacing and the calculated RTI to predict the response time of heat detectors in a given environment and to a given fire. That correlation is still included in Annex B. However, with the adoption of the 2007 edition of the Code, manufacturers of heat detectors have been required to mark heat detectors with their RTI values or publish the RTI values in the detector bulletin. Since it takes time for the testing laboratories to test and determine the RTI of all of the models of heat detectors available, the effective date of the requirement was established for July 1, 2008.

Unfortunately, no credible predictive tool for smoke detector performance has yet been developed for use in the performance-based environment. Until sound validated performance metrics are available, the design engineer has little alternative to making estimates for smoke detector response. Small errors in these estimates often produce large differences in the predicted performance of the system.

The prescriptive spacing for smoke detectors cannot be used for performance-based design. There is little technical basis for it; it has been derived historically. Nor can the sensitivity marked on the detector be used as a performance metric for smoke detectors. This sensitivity value is only valid in the UL 268 laboratory smoke box. The detector sensitivity measured in the UL 268 laboratory smoke box is intended to serve only for manufacturer quality control and is not applicable outside the context of that test. There is no basis for a designer to presume that a detector will respond at that obscuration level in actual installation and fire conditions. Consequently, the only performance metrics available for smoke detectors are the smoke levels attained during the full-scale room fire tests conducted during the listing evaluation. These tests produce maximum optical obscurations that range between 10 percent per foot and 37 percent per foot at the detector locations, depending on the fuel and the individual test run. These are pass/fail tests, and commercially available detectors respond long before these levels are achieved. Unfortunately, the smoke level at the time of detector response is not recorded. (Refer to Sections 39 and 40 in UL 268, *Standard for Safety for Smoke Detectors for Fire Protective Signaling Systems*, 5th edition, 2009.)

Because a credible performance metric for smoke detectors is lacking, one way of predicting the response of a smoke detector is to adopt the simplifying assumption that in a flaming fire the plume's buoyancy serves as the driving force that conveys the smoke to the detector. This assumption allows a designer to model the smoke detector as a very sensitive heat detector, using the iterative method outlined in Annex B of *NFPA 72*. A second method incorporated into Annex B is a mass density approximation method. Both of these methods are reliant upon performance criteria selected by the user. Consequently, these methods can be used to produce wildly unrealistic response predictions if used by the uninformed. The inaccuracy and lack of precision in these methods can lead to *predictions* of failure to achieve design objectives when, in reality, the system will meet the performance objectives. The converse is also true. Consequently, these methods must be subjected to rigorous sensitivity analyses to ensure that a design based upon these methods will achieve the design objectives.

Very little credible data exist regarding the relative reliability of various fire protection strategies. Clearly, unless the engineer can compare the mission effectiveness of a proposed fire protection strategy with the alternatives, he or she cannot make a legitimate decision between them.

Fire alarm systems equipment, being assembled from electronic components with documented failure rates, can be assessed for equipment reliability using the methods outlined in the *Military Handbook for Reliability Prediction of Electronic Equipment*, MIL HDBK 217X ("X" stands for the revision letter). However, contributions to the mission effectiveness of the fire alarm system are also made by the design, installation, and maintenance elements of the system. These elements are more difficult to assess.

When comparing a design reliant upon a fire alarm system to some other strategy, the designer must compute the mission effectiveness of that other strategy using the same method he or she uses for the fire alarm system. In general, little information exists regarding the failure rates of system components. Consequently, estimates of the reliability of these systems must be used. In addition, the quality of the fire alarm system installation, testing, and maintenance has a great impact on the mission effectiveness of all active fire protection systems. The performance-based design environment both permits and demands that the designer evaluate these factors and incorporate them into the overall design of the building protection scheme.

Lastly, the performance-based design is far more reliant on a complete documentary trail of the entire decision-making process. There are no prescriptive requirements that can be used as a reference years after the project has been completed. Because any change in the facility can trigger the need for a reassessment of the design, the design must be thoroughly documented and the documentation must be maintained for the life of the structure. The documentation of the entire basis for developing the performance-based alternatives must include the following items in order to be considered complete:

1. *Project scope.* The project scope establishes the extent of the fire alarm system design and issues such as occupant characteristics, building characteristics, location of the property, fire service capabilities, utilities, environmental considerations, heritage preservation, building management, security, economic and social value of the building, the project delivery process, and the applicable regulations.
2. *Goals and objectives.* Goals and objectives include the general goals and specific objectives developed and accepted by all of the stakeholders.
3. *Performance criteria.* The performance criteria are quantitative measures that indicate attainment of the objectives. They must include how the engineer developed the criteria and what safety factors are used.
4. *Evaluation methods*. Evaluation methods discuss how trial designs will be evaluated.
5. *Fire scenarios and design fires.* Fire scenarios and design fires establish the range of variation of conditions under which the design will be valid, including the following:
   - Form of ignition source
   - Different items first ignited
   - Ignition in different rooms of a building
   - Effects of compartment geometry
   - Whether doors and windows are open or closed, and at what time in the fire scenario they are open or closed
   - Ventilation, whether natural (doors and windows) or mechanical (HVAC, etc.)
   - Form of intervention (occupants, automatic sprinklers, fire department, etc.)
6. *Final design.* The final design discusses how the design meets the performance criteria.
7. *Evaluation.* The evaluation discusses how to evaluate the design. What are the uncertainty factors? What are the safety factors?
8. *Critical design assumptions.* Critical design assumptions establish the limits of conditions and maintenance within which the system will achieve the design objectives and performance criteria.
9. *Critical design features.* Critical design features discuss what must stay in place from a building design scenario to ensure the fire alarm system will continue to operate.
10. *References.* References are the sources of information used to develop the design.

It is important to keep in mind that where there is a prescriptive code or design standard, the prescriptive approach to code compliance continues to serve as one of the acceptable methods to meet the performance objectives. When use of the prescriptive approach is chosen, the resulting system can be expected to achieve the minimum performance criteria established by the prescriptive code or design standard.

CONCLUSION

As the fire protection community moves toward a performance-based code, an engineer could encounter performance requirements something like the following: "Fire detection systems shall be designed to activate before a fire reaches a size that represents an unreasonable hazard to the building occupants or to the building itself." How an engineer approaches that requirement will depend on his or her understanding of basic fire protection engineering principles and the accepted procedure for developing a performance-based design.

The recommended steps in the process of developing performance-based approaches to a design problem can be summarized as follows:

1. Define the project scope.
2. Identify goals.
3. Define objectives.
4. Develop performance criteria.
5. Develop an evaluation method.
6. Develop trial designs.
7. Evaluate trial designs with fire scenarios.
8. Select the final design.
9. Develop a design brief.
10. Document the design.

This supplement to the *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code Handbook* has discussed the concept of performance-based design and what it is, and it has described the design process. Even after performance-based design has become adopted into code, most fire protection features for most facilities will be designed using the prescriptive criteria that exist in the current codes and standards. However, as the need for greater design flexibility and efficiency increases, the trend toward the greater use of performance-based design methods will continue.

REFERENCES

References Cited

DiNenno, P.J. et al., eds., *The SFPE Handbook of Fire Protection Engineering*, 4th edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, and Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Bethesda, MD, 2008.

Hurley, M., ed., *SFPE Engineering Guide to Performance-Based Fire Protection*, 2nd edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, and Society of Fire Protection Engineers, Bethesda, MD, 2007.

National Fire Protection Association, *Primer #1: Performance-Based Goals, Objectives and Criteria,* Revision 1.1, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 1997.

NFPA 72®, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, 2013 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

NFPA *101*®, *Life Safety Code*®, 2009 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

UL 268, *Standard for Smoke Detectors for Fire Alarm Systems,* 5th edition, Underwriters Laboratories Inc., Northbrook, IL, 2009.

U.S. Dept. of Defense, *Military Handbook for Reliability Prediction of Electronic Equipment,* MIL HDBK 217, U.S. Government Printing Office, Washington, DC.

Bibliography

Custer, R.L.P. and Meacham, B. J., *Introduction to Performance-Based Fire Safety*, National Fire Protection Association Quincy, MA, 1997.

National Fire Protection Association, *NFPA's Future in Performance-Based Codes and Standards,* Report of the NFPA In-House Task Group, July 1995, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.

National Fire Protection Association, *Primer #3: Performance-Based Fire Scenarios,* Revision 1.1, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 1998.

National Fire Protection Association, *Primer #4: Performance-Based Verification Methods,* Draft 9, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA, 1999.

SUPPLEMENT 2

Voice Intelligibility for Emergency Voice/Alarm Communications Systems

Robert P. Schifiliti, P.E., FSFPE
R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc.

Editor's Note: *Chapter 24 of the 2013 edition includes requirements in 24.3.1 that emergency communications systems be capable of the reproduction of prerecorded, synthesized, or live messages with voice intelligibility. Chapter 18 also addresses speech intelligibility in 18.4.1.5 and 18.4.10. This supplement explores the broad concept of voice intelligibility and provides insights into the methods of assessing and designing intelligible voice systems. Annex D, Speech Intelligibility, has a great deal of information about testing for speech intelligibility and some information that addresses planning and design.*

BACKGROUND

The requirement for a voice alarm system to be "intelligible" was first introduced to the *National Fire Alarm Code* in 1999. In the 2013 edition of the Code, this requirement can be found in 24.3.1.[1] Annex D, added in the 2010 edition, offers guidelines on how the intelligibility of systems and their environments might be predicted and assessed. This supplement provides more discussion of the subject and includes an extensive bibliography.

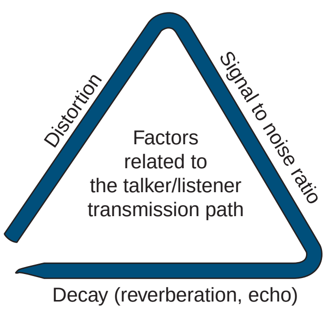
Much of the research on speech intelligibility metrics was born out of the widespread acceptance of the telephone and the use of telephones and radios for military communications in the early part of the 20th century. It is not surprising that an industry other than the fire alarm industry studied and solved the question of how to best measure or model speech intelligibility — it was necessary for the survival of those fledgling industries. With the telephone, the needs of the consumer drove the level of quality necessary for product success. The industry found that it became necessary to develop objective methods to evaluate products and services to ensure some baseline quality while also allowing transmission bandwidth to be limited to control costs and capacity. In other words, the industry wanted the voice transmission to be just satisfactory for the purpose without adding additional costs that improved the signals beyond what was really needed. Military communications via radio and telephone also drove the development of ways to measure or predict speech intelligibility. Testing for these applications places more emphasis on having reliable quality for accurate voice transmission than on costs. The needs of emergency communications applications are a combination of these goals. Emergency communications systems need to reliably reproduce voice signals, but do not require that fidelity or character of the voice be maintained.

INTRODUCTION

Most fire alarm systems use a combination of audible and visible appliances to make noise and flash lights, signaling the need to evacuate a building or an area. However, in situations where egress is complex or difficult, such as in high-rise buildings or large factories, or for emergency communications systems (ECSs) used for a variety of threats other than fire, human voice is needed to provide *information* and *instructions*. If an audible signal is not loud enough to alert occupants, it has failed its mission. If a voice signal is not understood, it too will have failed. Listening to an unintelligible voice announcement is like trying to read in the dark — depending on a number of conditions, it might or might not be possible to get useful and accurate information.

Failure to understand a voice message can be the result of several factors. A message that is not *intelligent* may not be understood in the way the talker intended. For example, the sentence, "Go to stair B if there is no smoke," can be interpreted at least two ways ("no smoke where I am" or "no smoke in the stair") and therefore may not be understood by some listeners. Similarly, if told to "follow the building emergency evacuation plan," you need to know what that plan is to fully understand the command. Those messages were not crafted intelligently. If a message is spoken in Spanish, and the listener only understands Cantonese, the message is not understood. Also, a person talking too fast or someone with a speech impediment can cause a message to not be understood. Finally, even a well-spoken, intelligent message in the listener's native language can be misunderstood if it is not audible to the listener or if its delivery to the listener is distorted by either the delivery system or the acoustic environment. See Exhibit S2.1. It is these factors that form the basis for the performance, specification, modeling, and measurement of speech intelligibility. Intelligible voice communications reduce the chances of "Stair B" being misinterpreted as "Stair D," "Stair C," or "Stair E."

EXHIBIT S2.1



Causes of Unintelligible Communications. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA)

THE PROBLEM

Is there a problem with the intelligibility of installed and operational in-building fire emergency voice/alarm communication systems (EVACs) and other voice systems? Like audibility of tone systems, there are installations that perform well and others that fail. Fires such as the Kings Cross fire in London in 1987 and an apartment fire in York, Ontario, have been cited as situations where intelligibility of voice communication to occupants was a contributing factor in the losses.[2,3] However, more numerous are the many systems that have not (yet) been called to action during an emergency that have been judged subjectively to be of low but marginally acceptable intelligibility for one reason or another. Systems that are "tested" during non-emergency situations and qualitatively judged acceptable might not be adequate during an emergency when people under stress talk faster and louder. Also, under stress a person's cognitive ability tends to reduce about four grade levels, making it more difficult to understand complex words and messages, particularly if the listener must strain to understand a low quality voice message.

Intelligibility is often an issue between designers, contractors, owners, and authorities having jurisdiction who disagree as to whether a system is adequate or not. In this respect, intelligibility is similar to audibility. For many years, codes required systems to be "audible throughout the protected area" without any definition of what *audible* meant. Nor was there any description of what *throughout the protected area* meant. The result was many systems with corridor-based sounders and ineffective audibility in apartments, classrooms, and offices. Sometimes the opposite occurs, with some authorities requiring audibility in small closets and other spaces that would not be considered "occupiable." Disagreements regarding audibility led the industry to adopt well-established audio definitions and measurement systems that had already been researched, tested, and developed by audio professionals. This moved the fire alarm industry from using *subjective* evaluations of audibility to *objective* methods.

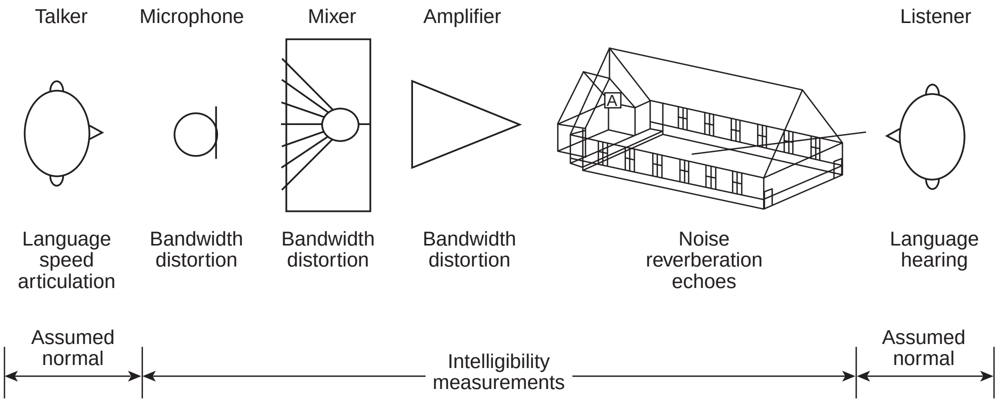
In 1996, the Technical Committee on Notification Appliances for Fire Alarm Systems began working with the audio industry to learn more about speech intelligibility and how to establish objective performance requirements for voice systems.

SPEECH INTELLIGIBILITY DEFINED

Exhibit S2.2 shows the path of a voice signal from a talker to a listener and is useful in understanding and categorizing the places where the signal can be affected in its delivery.

The exhibit shows each part of the communications chain and the types of error that can be introduced into the message. Each segment of the message path shown in Exhibit S2.2 affects whether the listener understands the information content. Failure of any one of the six stages

EXHIBIT S2.2



Voice Signal Path. (Courtesy of K. Jacob, Bose® Professional Systems)[4]

shown in the figure results in a failure to understand the information. Problems or faults in each of the stages are cumulative. For example, a person might speak with an accent but still be understood by a listener who is face-to-face with the talker. The communications system might add some distortion that results in the message not being understood. Or, perhaps even with an accent and some distortion by the system electronics, it is understood when there is little or no background noise, but not understood when there is background noise. Or, perhaps the system is too loud — a large signal-to-noise ratio — resulting in excessive reverberation that causes degradation of the speech intelligibility.

Others have begun to address and attempt to understand the two ends of the communications chain shown in Exhibit S2.2 — the talker and the listener.[5,6] Typically, the listener is assumed to be normal, which does not necessarily mean average. The normal population of listeners has many people with some degree of hearing loss. In fact, normal hearing can mean up to a 20 dB hearing loss from average. Listeners might also have some cognitive challenges. In fact, during a stressful event, a degradation of about four grade levels in a listener's cognitive abilities is expected.

Under most scenarios, there is some control over the talker. Through planning and training, a talker that has a speech impediment or an accent foreign to the intended audience would likely not be a candidate. Training will also help ensure that the talker holds the microphone at the correct distance and angle and talks slowly and clearly and uses simple language. This training overcomes some of the cognitive challenges of the listener and some of the effects caused by reverberation. New research on messaging strategies and message content for emergency communications will also help to ensure that simple, easy to understand, meaningful messages are used that can reduce the impact of distortion, decay, and noise on intelligibility.[7]

In the mid to late 1990s, the Technical Committee on Notification Appliances for Fire Alarm Systems researched and began to address the performance requirements for the communications system and listening environment. For the purposes of this supplement, speed of talking, language, and talker articulation are not directly addressed. They are indirectly addressed because a system that can reliably deliver a message, with a large signal-to-noise ratio and a limited amount of distortion, reverberation, and echo, has a higher likelihood of being understood even when a talker introduces problems or when a listener has degraded hearing. The cellular telephone industry has no control over the talker and the listener. Nevertheless, the industry uses intelligibility measurement and prediction methods to understand and improve the parts of the communications chain (Exhibit S2.2) that it can control and to increase the likelihood of successful communication between the talker and the listener.

Speech intelligibility is a measure of the effectiveness of speech. The measurement can be expressed as a percentage of a message that is understood correctly.[8] Speech intelligibility does not imply speech *quality*. A synthesized voice message may be completely understood by the listener, but may be judged to be harsh, unnatural, and of low quality. A message that lacks quality or fidelity may still be intelligible.

FACTORS AFFECTING SPEECH INTELLIGIBILITY

Satisfactory speech intelligibility requires adequate *audibility* and adequate *clarity* of the voice message. Audibility is relative to the background noise — the signal-to-noise ratio. The audibility of a voice message cannot be directly compared to the audibility of a tone signal because of the modulation of voice signals. A tone and a voice message that are both perceived as equally loud may have considerably different readings on a dB or dBA meter using fast or even slow time constants. That is one reason that audibility measurements are not required by the *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code* for voice signals. However, the integrated average sound pressure level, L_{eq}, of a voice message taken over some time period can be measured and used to compare to background noise. While a positive signal-to-noise ratio of about 10 dB is usually a design goal for voice, a 0 dB ratio or even a negative ratio can still result in some or all of a voice message being understood. This is due, in part, to differences between the noise and speech patterns and to the complexity of the human brain. This phenomenon is often referred to as the "cocktail party effect" and has been extensively researched. So, while background noise or the signal-to-noise ratio is important, there are other factors, as shown in Exhibit S2.1.

Clarity is the property of sound that allows its information-bearing components to be distinguished by a listener.[9] Phonemes are the smallest phonetic unit capable of conveying a distinction in meaning in a particular language and are instrumental in accurate word recognition.[10] Examples are the *m* of *mat* and the *b* of *bat* in English. Clarity is the freedom of these sound units from distortion introduced by any part of the sound system or environment shown in Exhibit S2.2.

The reduction of clarity by distortion can be caused by: (1) amplitude distortion caused by the electronics/hardware; (2) frequency distortion caused by either the electronics/hardware or the acoustic environment; and (3) time domain distortion due to reflection and reverberation in the acoustic environment. Research done by Richard Heyser[11] of the Jet Propulsion Laboratories of the California Institute of Technology regarding these three effects led to the development of time delay spectrometry (TDS), one of the most significant scientific advancements in the measurement and evaluation of audio system and acoustic environments.

In most cases, the designer of an emergency communications system has little or no control of the elements shown in Exhibit S2.2. The designer might be able to choose a system that has less distortion than another. Unlike high fidelity audio systems, there is no requirement for testing and reporting such quality information. Similarly, the acoustic environment is usually determined by others. However, if testing, modeling, or intuition indicates that some changes could improve system performance, recommendations can be made.

One area that can affect voice intelligibility that can be controlled to some extent is the quality of the recording of any prerecorded messages. The quality is determined by the sampling rate and by the bit depth used when recording the message. Many older systems used very low quality in order to reduce the file size to work with older chips of limited capacity.

Accurate construction of a signal is possible as long as the sampling frequency is at least two times the highest desired signal frequency. CDs are recorded with a sampling frequency of 44,100 Hz, which allows reproduction of frequencies up to 22,050 Hz. It is not necessary for emergency voice systems to reproduce these high frequencies. What should the target be? Voice intelligibility is very much dependent on the reproduction of consonants. In general, the range of 1000 to 4000 Hz is most important for these sounds, with the 2000 Hz band being the most important. In some high challenge scenarios, good reproduction up to 8000 Hz can improve performance a bit more. So, if good reproduction of sounds into the 4000 Hz range is desired, then the sampling rate should be at least 8000 Hz. For better quality delivery systems, and to get better reproduction of important consonants, a file sampled at 16,000 Hz is usually sufficient — but only if the delivery channel can reproduce up to 8000 Hz faithfully. The sampling rate should also consider the capability of the sound system itself. If a system is tested to the current listing standards range of 400–4000 Hz, there is no benefit to trying to reproduce sounds above 4000 Hz. In fact, including sounds outside of the performance range of the equipment can lead to more distortion of the signal.

The bit depth of an audio sample determines the resolution of the signal. This affects noise, dynamic range, and the signal-to-noise ratio of the recorded message. Increasing the bit depth decreases noise, increases the dynamic range, and increases the signal-to-noise ratio. CDs are recorded with a bit depth of 16, while DVD audio uses a depth of 24 bits. As with the sampling rate, the bit depth for voice messaging can vary depending on the system goals. A bit depth of 16 bits provides natural-sounding voice messages. A bit depth of 8 bits tends to sound a little muddy, flat, and noisy — but might be adequate.

The memory used by a recording is determined as follows:

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Bit rate} &= (\text{sampling rate}) \times (\text{bit depth}) \times \\ &\quad (\text{number of channels} - \text{one for mono})\\ \text{File size in bytes} &= (\text{bit rate}) \times (\text{time})/(8\ \text{bits/byte})\end{aligned}$$

Thus, a 16 second mono recording at a sampling rate of 8000 Hz and a bit depth of 16 bits would require

$$\begin{aligned}\text{Bit rate} &= 8000\ \text{Hz} \times 16\ \text{bit} \times 1 = 128{,}000\ \text{bits/sec}\\ &= 128\ \text{kb/sec}\\ \text{File size in bytes} &= 128\ \text{kb/sec} \times 16\ \text{sec}/(8\ \text{bits/byte})\\ &= 256\ \text{kb}\end{aligned}$$

SPEECH INTELLIGIBILITY MEASUREMENT/ PREDICTION (SUBJECTIVE OR OBJECTIVE?)

Is the measurement of speech intelligibility subjective or objective? It can be argued that intelligibility and audibility are both subjective and objective evaluations. The definitions and the measurements that we use for audibility are based on many years of testing with real people. The decibel (dB) is actually a ratio of the actual fluctuating sound pressure to the threshold pressure variation of human hearing. Certainly, the threshold of human hearing is subjective. The threshold of hearing is peculiar to a particular individual, and is modified or affected by personal views, experience, or background.[12]

However, when a large data set is analyzed and used to scientifically and statistically establish a threshold, and when used as a baseline or standard for relative comparison, it becomes an objective quantity. It is objective because the chosen standard is used as a reference to remove statistical variation and distortion by personal feelings, prejudices, or interpretations for subsequent measurements, reducing subjective factors to a minimum.[12] So, although the threshold of hearing varies from individual to individual, a representative standard quantification (0 dB) has been established for comparison of other sound level measurements.

Similarly, the human ear hears some frequencies better than others. Of course, no two human hearing systems (ears and brain) are the same. Nevertheless, after considerable research the scientific community has accepted the Fletcher-Munson curves as "typical" of human hearing. Going further, the audio and psychoacoustics communities have adopted a smoothed inverse of one of the Fletcher-Munson curves to define the A-weighting curve. The A-weighting curve is used to adjust dB measurements for the way a human ear will perceive the sound. Thus, dBA measurements are objective evaluations of sound even though they are based on numerous subjective tests.

Speech intelligibility evaluations can also be either subjective or objective. Reading an article from a newspaper and asking a listener to write down what they understand the message to be is a subjective evaluation. One reader/talker might better enunciate certain words or slur other word parts. The news article used for a test one day may differ from one used another day and may be composed of short simple words, or the word and phoneme order may be less susceptible to distortion caused by reverberation and echo. At the other end of the communication chain, the listener used in the evaluation might have hearing deficiencies or learning disabilities, including auditory dyslexia. The content and context of the article may cause the listener to guess at words and content that are actually not intelligibly received. For subject-based testing to be *objective*, it must use a scientific and statistically valid methodology.

An Internet discussion among persons interested in fire alarm systems started with the idea that a simple test of intelligibility could be performed using the "newspaper test." Comments went back and forth, and it was suggested that professionally developed word lists designed to test all components of human speech should be used. It was then suggested that a protocol be established to document the conditions and variables. The ad hoc protocol evolved to suggesting multiple listeners and statistical analysis of the results. Interestingly, the discussion began to resemble established international standards that had been developed by researchers in the audio field over 50 years ago and that have been used by acoustic professionals and audiologists for decades to objectively evaluate personal hearing ability, sound systems, and acoustic environments.[13]

One should not confuse subjective with subject-based testing. It is possible for tests using talkers and listeners (subject-based tests) to be objective. The key is to use established protocols that reduce the impact of personal conditions and produce results that are repeatable. Similarly, an instrument-based test that is repeatable for a given set of conditions may not be objective if it does not have an established basis in reality. Both subject-based testing and instrument-based testing require peer-reviewed research, testing, and established standards to become accepted objective measurement methods.

Any measure of speech intelligibility is actually a prediction of how well the system will perform at other times. All intelligibility prediction methods are predicated on subject-based tests. A talker says a word — usually in a sentence — and a listener writes down what the listener thinks he or she heard. For example, "It is now time to write the word *boat* on your test sheet." The talker is careful to not emphasis the word or to change the pace of talking. The score for that test is either right or wrong — 100 percent or 0 percent. That single test does nothing to predict the score for future tests of the communications system and listening environment. If many words are tested, eventually a statistic is obtained that predicts what percentage of the time that particular listener will understand words delivered by the communications system.

However, a test with a single listener does not tell whether the general population will have a similar listening comprehension. So, it is necessary to use a group of listeners and to score the whole group. The group should represent the general population so that a good cross section of ears and brains is utilized. This measurement method results in a statistic that is a prediction of how the general public will understand messages delivered by the system. These subject-based test methods have been tested and standardized. Objective, instrument-based tests have been developed and correlated with the subject-based test methods.

MEASURING/PREDICTING SPEECH INTELLIGIBILITY

The performance of a voice system depends on the system hardware and the acoustic environment. They cannot be separated when evaluating speech intelligibility. A fire alarm horn can be specified for a space and required to produce 80 dBA at 10 ft (3 m). However, the power supply and wiring will affect the output of the horn. The mounting location will affect the distribution of the sound. The acoustic environment will affect the energy dissipation in the space and the loudness. Finally, the background noise will affect whether the horn is heard reliably. The fire alarm industry has recognized that there are situations where the installed field performance of an audible signaling system must be measured in order to evaluate its performance with respect to the system's design objectives. Similarly, speech intelligibility is affected by all of these systems, environmental factors, and more. (See section on Factors Affecting Speech Intelligibility.) Thus, the performance metric for speech intelligibility must also assess all of the requisite parameters.

Other international standards organizations — namely, the IEC (International Electrotechnical Commission) and ISO (International Standards Organization) — have already reviewed and evaluated objective methods for evaluating speech intelligibility. Some of the methods recognized and

TABLE S2.1 Speech Intelligibility Test Methods

Method	***Standard References***	***Comments***
STI (Speech Transmission Index)	IEC 60268-16, *The Objective Rating of Speech Intelligibility by Speech Transmission Index*, 2003.[14]	This is an objective, instrument-based method. Requires hardware and software for measurement and solution. Available in a computer based solution, as a feature of some multi-function audio analysis equipment, and as a handheld meter.
STIPA (Speech Transmission Index – Public Address)	IEC 60268-16, *The Objective Rating of Speech Intelligibility by Speech Transmission Index*, 2003.[14]	This is an objective, instrument-based method. Measures STI using a test signal and a handheld meter. Test protocol described in *NFPA 72*, Annex D.
RASTI (Rapid or Room Acoustics Speech Transmission Index)	IEC 60268-16, *The Objective Rating of Speech Intelligibility by Speech Transmission Index*, 2003.[14]	This is an objective, instrument-based method. Reduced STI method. Available in a handheld format. Many limitations. Effectively replaced by STIPA.
PB (Phonetically Balanced Word Scores)	ISO/TR 4870, *Acoustics – The Construction and Calibration of Speech Intelligibility Tests*, 1991.[13]	This is an objective, subject-based method. ANSI S3.2, *Method for Measuring the Intelligibility of Speech Over Communication Systems*, 1989,[18] is a better reference for evaluations using the English language.
MRT (Modified Rhyme Test)	No reference given.	This is an objective, subject-based method. No standard listed. ANSI S3.5[16] notes that the method has the same limits as given in ISO/TR 4870.[13] Good reference is ANSI S3.2, *Method for Measuring the Intelligibility of Speech Over Communication Systems*, 1989.[18]
AI (Articulation Index)	ANSI S3.5, *Methods for the Calculation of the Articulation Index*, 1969.[15] ANSI S3.5, *Methods for the Calculation of the Speech Intelligibility Index (SII)*, 1997.[16]	This is an objective, instrument-based method. The 1969 version of ANSI S3.5 is referenced. This has been updated to the 1997 edition. Requires hardware and software for measurement and solution.
$\%AL_{cons}$ (Articulation Loss of Consonants)	Peutz, V.M.A., 1971. "Articulation Loss of Consonants as a Criterion for Speech Transmission in a Room," *J. Aud. Eng. Soc.* 19(11).[17]	This is an objective, instrument-based method *or* an objective, subject-based method. Available in a computer based solution.

accepted in international standards and by the acoustics and professional sound industries are subject-based and others use instrumentation. For each of the recognized methods, there already exists an internationally accepted standard for the test method/protocol. Four of the recognized methods use test instruments. Three subject-based methods are also recognized. One method has both a subject-based solution and an instrument-based solution. These methods are summarized in Table S2.1.

By comparing evaluations between different test methods, a common intelligibility scale (CIS) was developed.[19] The CIS permits comparison of test results using the different methods. It also permits a designer, code, or authority having jurisdiction to specify a requirement that can be evaluated using any one of the test methods listed in the table. Consult the references for more detail on each of the test methods.

Annex D recommends specific acceptability criteria in the form of a minimum and an average speech transmission index (STI) — with the equivalent CIS score also listed. See Section D.2.4, which also has extensive discussion on the variability of measurements, precision, and rounding of results.

PLANNING, DESIGNING, INSTALLING, TESTING, AND USING INTELLIGIBLE SYSTEMS

How does measuring speech intelligibility solve the problem of unintelligible systems? Measuring the audibility of a system does not make it louder or softer. Similarly, measuring speech intelligibility will not directly result in better system performance.

A system that reliably communicates a message to a listener must be properly planned, designed, and installed. Testing not only uncovers faults and allows corrections to be made, but also shows successful techniques for future reference. Finally, even the perfect system design can be improperly adjusted, unbalanced, or not properly installed and result in degradation of the signal to a point where it is not understood by the user.

The scope of *NFPA 72* is not to plan or design systems, but to provide minimum prescriptive and performance requirements for systems and components. The *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code* does not tell you when you must have smoke detectors nor when you must have voice systems. Those concerns are the jurisdiction of other codes, laws, standards, and authorities. One issue that designers and authorities must face when planning a system is the question of where intelligible voice communication is needed. For this reason, in part, Chapter 18 requires system designers to plan and designate acoustically distinguishable spaces (ADSs). See 18.4.10, A.18.4.10, and D.2.3.1 for the requirements and for additional commentary and examples.

In a large space used for public meetings, conventions, and trade shows, an ECS needs to be reliably intelligible because it is intended to give information to the general public that is not familiar with the space. However, in a high-rise apartment building, is voice intelligibility required in all spaces? The ECS is used to give information to occupants when the fire is not in their apartment. If the fire is in their particular apartment, their own local smoke alarms are used to provide an audible signal. If the fire is not in their apartment, the fire alarm system is used to give them information about whether to evacuate, relocate, or remain in place. It may not be necessary that the EVAC or MNS be intelligible in all parts of the apartment. It certainly must be audible in all parts of the apartment, as is currently required by the codes. However, it may be sufficient to provide a speaker in a common space and to provide an adequate audible tone signal in other spaces to awaken and alert the occupants.

The voice message produced by a living room speaker appliance may not be intelligible behind closed bedroom and bathroom doors. However, the occupants, having been alerted, and not being endangered in their own apartments, can move to a location where a repeating message can be intelligibly heard. The same signaling plan may work for office complexes: a person may have to open his or her office door to reliably understand the message. In large public spaces, a person should not have to move any great distance to find a place where he or she can understand the message. Similarly, in a corridor it might be acceptable to have intelligible voice near loudspeakers and to have a lower quality between loudspeakers. Occupants in such a space will naturally move to a place where they can better understand the message. Thus, for these spaces, intelligibility is important and the statistical performance recommended by Annex D becomes useful. The performance requirement recommended in Annex D allows up to 10 percent of the measurement locations in an ADS to fail. See D.2.4.1, D.2.4.8, and D.2.4.10. The remaining measurements must have a certain minimum (0.45 STI or 0.65 CIS) and a certain average (0.50 STI or 0.70 CIS). If an ADS is small enough to only require one measurement location (see the requirements for measurement point spacing in Annex D), the result should be 0.50 STI (0.70 CIS) or more for the ADS to pass the recommendation for speech intelligibility.

Once a designer plans to have some type of system, and determines that the system must be intelligible in certain spaces or areas, the Code recommendations become the basis for *design objectives* or goals. For complex issues, such as visible signaling, the Code often starts with empirically based prescriptive requirements. These are menus of solutions that designers choose from. Unlike visible notification, voice signaling does not lend itself well to prescriptive design.

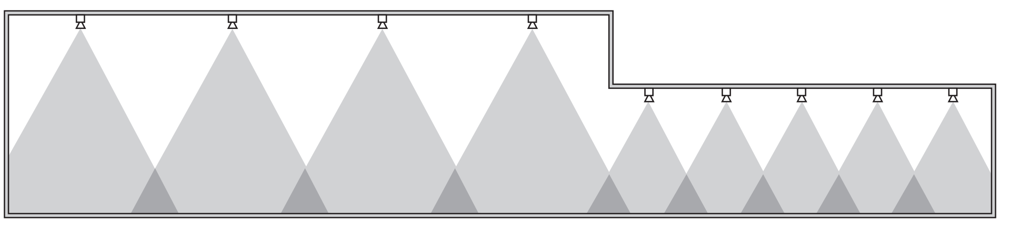
There are prescriptive rules that sound system designers often start with, such as one watt per 750 to 1000 ft^2 (70 to 93 m^2). However, these guidelines must be adjusted to the acoustic environment, and they assume certain equipment performance characteristics. Don't the environment and equipment also affect the performance of visible signaling systems? Yes, but to a lesser, more controllable degree. The prescriptive requirements for visible notification appliances are based on possible equipment degradation (power supply voltage and current) and on conservative assumptions about ambient lighting conditions and surface colors. The effects of varying acoustic environments on speech intelligibility have a much wider range and impact. Prescriptive solutions for voice systems would result in severe overdesign and would not necessarily guarantee intelligibility of the message. For example, evaluation of an installation in an open plan office showed that the signal-to-noise ratio was the main problem with failure to meet the intelligibility performance requirement. However, simply specifying a louder system would result in degradation of the intelligibility in parts of the open office that did not have as many cubicles or where tile was used in lieu of carpet.

As another example, consider a large space with two ceiling heights (low and high) and a sound system. One of the basic concepts in the design of intelligible sound systems is to have all listeners in the direct field of a single speaker. If a person is in the direct field of two speakers, the sound from the farther one arrives some time after the sound from the closer speaker. The degree of impact on intelligibility depends on the time difference. Distributing the speakers to reduce or eliminate the overlap of the direct field sound is the best design practice. Though at first counterintuitive to many fire alarm system designers, the smaller space (lower ceiling height) requires a smaller spacing between the speakers. See Exhibit S2.3.

Sound does not come out of a speaker in a perfect cone, as shown in Exhibit S2.3. A good design for speech intelligibility is to have a fairly uniform distribution of energy. Exhibit S2.4 shows the relative sound level that a person might experience as he or she walks through a space with two loudspeakers driven at fairly high levels. Directly under a speaker, the sound level is very high. Between two speakers, it is lowest. Exhibit S2.5 shows the same space with more speakers, closer together, but driven at a lower level.

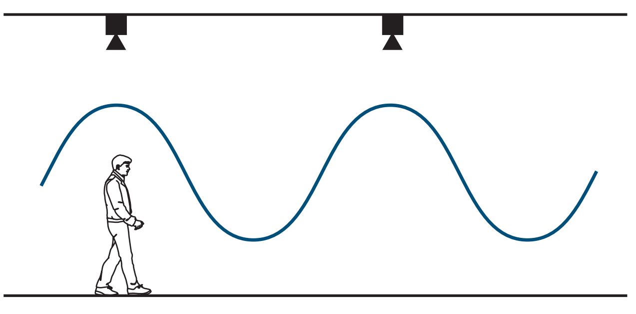
A system designed for intelligible voice communication typically aims for a difference of no more than about 6 to 10 dB between the high and the low sound pressure level presented to the listener. That sound level is predominantly

EXHIBIT S2.3



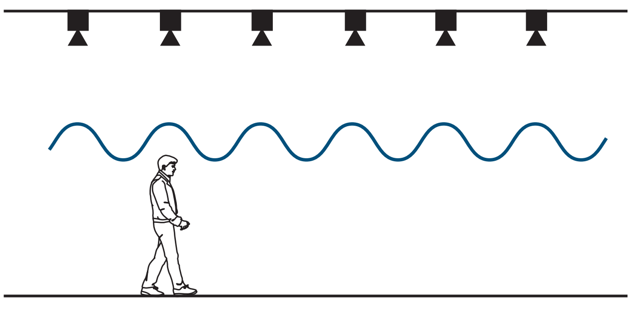
Distribution of Speakers Showing the Need for Reduced Spacing in Smaller Spaces. (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA)

EXHIBIT S2.4



Relative Sound Level Distribution (1). (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA)

EXHIBIT S2.5



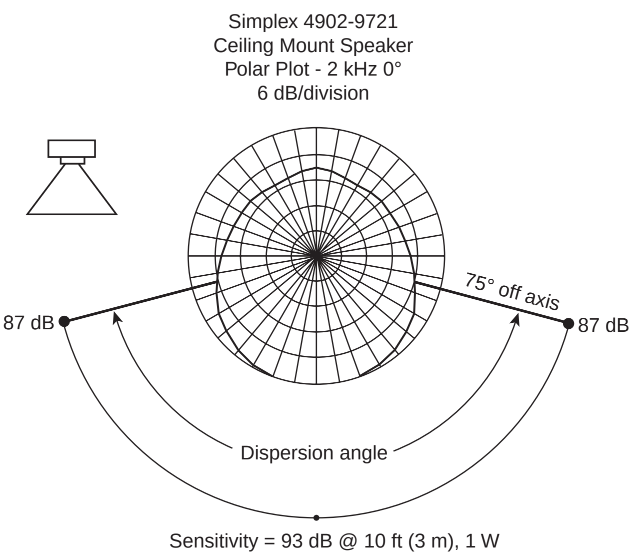
Relative Sound Level Distribution (2). (Source: R. P. Schifiliti Associates, Inc., Reading, MA) a function of the output of the speakers and the distance to the listener. The number of speakers being heard also can affect the sound level. If a person is directly between two sound sources of equal volume, the net sound level will be +3 dB compared to that from either speaker by itself. Reverberation and echoes can also contribute, though a good design attempts to minimize these factors.

The output of a speaker can be represented by a polar plot of sound level in dB as a function of angle from the main axis, as shown in Exhibit S2.6. The plot shows a particular ceiling mounted speaker with an output that is reduced about −6 dB at an angle of 75° off-axis — a 150° cone. However, the designer cannot just aim to have 150° cones meet at or slightly above ear level. That scheme accounts for the fact that at the 75° off-axis point, the speaker is putting out 6 dB less, but it does not account for the fact that the sound must also travel a greater distance from the speaker than if the person were directly under the speaker. It can be mathematically shown that as a person walks from under a speaker to a point 75° off-axis, he or she will actually experience a loss of 11.7 dB just due to the increased distance from the speaker. This phenomenon is independent of the particular model speaker. In this example, the distance loss is given by:

$$\Delta dB = 20\log_{10}(\cos\theta)$$

where θ is the angle off-axis.

EXHIBIT S2.6



Polar Plot for a Ceiling Mounted Speaker. (Source: NEMA Standards Publication SB 50-2008, National Electrical Manufacturers Association, Rosslyn, VA)[20]

For the speaker in this example, an additional 6 dB is lost at 75° off-axis due to the polar distribution of the sound for a net loss of 11.7 + 6 = 17.7 dB. At what angle does the combination of polar output data and distance attenuation result in a net difference of only 6 dB or less (our design goal)? Exhibit S2.7 shows more precise polar loss data, the distance loss calculations, and the net loss for several angles.

For that particular speaker, a design must use cones having a 104° angle (52° off-axis) to ensure no more than a 6 dB difference between the loudest and lowest sound levels. However, for a design where the cones of two speakers meet at the −6 dB point, each speaker is contributing the same sound level to the listener. Therefore, the net sound level would be +3 dB. For this speaker the contribution from one speaker at an angle of 60° would be −9 dB relative to the on-axis value. Therefore, with two speakers the relative loss would be −6 dB. Thus, the speakers could be spaced so that 120° cones meet at or slightly above ear level. The cones depicted in Exhibit S2.3 overlap at a plane chosen by the designer, such as 6 ft (1.8 m) above the floor. Knowing the ceiling height and the calculated cone angle for a maximum 6 dB loss, the spacing of the speakers can be calculated.

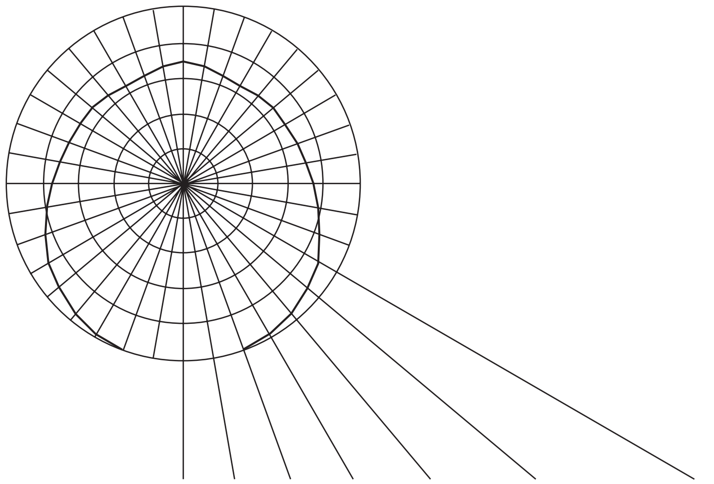
Note that the entire discussion and the calculations discussed above have not yet addressed what dB level is needed. The calculations for speaker spacing have all been made to ensure no more than a 6 dB variation in sound level in the space using the on-axis level as the starting point. The design levels depend on the noise level in the space. The speaker is selected so that the on-axis value and the off-axis value meet the system goals for signal-to-noise ratio. A common goal for voice systems is a 10 dB signal-to-noise ratio. However, Exhibit S2.1 shows that intelligibility is a balance of different factors.

In some spaces, a system that produces 10 dB over the ambient might produce sufficient reverberation to actually reduce intelligibility. It is possible to reduce the signal-to-noise ratio and actually increase intelligibility in some situations because of a net reduction in reverberation. An example would be in a space with very low ambient noise and with surfaces that reflect most of the acoustic energy — stone floors, a marble wall on one side, and a glass exterior wall on the other side might be one example.

In a high noise situation a signal-to-noise ratio of +10 dB might require the speakers to be driven at very high levels. Are the electronics of the system and the frequency response of the speaker sufficient to operate at these levels without adding distortion and reducing intelligibility — the third leg of the triangle in Exhibit S2.1?

The design process can require several iterations, because speakers can be tapped at different wattages and

EXHIBIT S2.7



Angle off-axis (θ)	0°	10°	20°	30°	40°	50°	60°
Polar Loss (1)	0.0 dB	0.0 dB	−0.1 dB	−0.5 dB	−1.3 dB	−1.8 dB	−3.0 dB
+ Distance Loss (2)	0.0 dB	−0.1 dB	−0.5 dB	−1.2 dB	−2.3 dB	−3.8 dB	−6.0 dB
= Total Loss	0.0 dB	−0.1 dB	−0.6 dB	−1.7 dB	−3.6 dB	−5.6 dB	−9.0 dB

−6 dB Point 52°
Critical Polar Angle 104°

Notes:
(1) Polar Loss interpreted from polar plot
(2) Distance Loss calculated as 20*log(cos(θ))

Coverage Angle Calculation for a Ceiling Mounted Speaker. (Source: NEMA Standards Publication SB 50-2008, National Electrical Manufacturers Association, Rosslyn, VA)[20]

because each model of speaker will have a different polar plot and frequency response at different levels. There are generic acoustic software programs that can be used to model spaces and systems. Some manufacturers also have their own tools that designers can use. Just as fires can be modeled, acoustic and audio engineers can model speech intelligibility before a building is built and before a system is installed. Fortunately, acoustic and electronic properties are better documented and more accurately modeled than fire properties, resulting in reliable evaluations of proposed designs.

The Code permits designers to use any and all reasonable means to achieve the objectives. Designers and installers who are new to the subject or who want to learn more about proper system design and installation need to consult other resources. In addition to the references cited at the end of this supplement, a bibliography has also been provided. As with fire alarms, there is a National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET) program for Audio Systems[21] and a trade organization, National Systems Contractors Association, that provides training and support.[22]

Testing speech intelligibility can be simple or complex, low cost or high cost. The least expensive dB meters meeting the requirements of Chapter 14 of the *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code* (ANSI Type 2 meters are required) cost several hundred dollars. When amortized over several years of use on many jobs, the cost, including periodic calibration, is low. However, these meters do not diagnose why a system is not audible, nor prescribe how to fix it. For diagnostics, more expensive meters and systems are required although most problems can be identified through careful analysis of the system. Fortunately, most audibility problems have solutions that are intuitive to most designers and installers.

Similarly, instrument-based intelligibility measuring systems vary in price range, as does the cost of subject-based testing. More complex measurement systems require considerable expertise, training, and set-up, but provide diagnostics at the same time. Handheld meters, on the order of a couple thousand dollars, require only a little more training and care than a dB meter. In fact, the only difference in using an intelligibility meter compared to a simple sound level meter is that you must push a button to start a measurement and wait about 15 seconds for the results. See Annex D for a complete description of a recommended speech intelligibility test protocol. Relative to the cost of voice systems, handheld solutions for measuring speech intelligibility amortize to unit life-cycle costs similar to the costs of dB meters.

Exhibits S2.8 and S2.9 show handheld meters that can be used for both audibility measurements and for intelligibility measurements of the speech transmission index (STI). See Table S2.1, Speech Intelligibility Test Methods. Handheld meters such as those shown in the two exhibits measure the STI using the STIPA method. The STIPA method requires that a special test signal be sent through the communications system. The STIPA test signal contains a sample of modulated voice frequencies (see D.2.3.5). The meter measures how that test signal is changed as it goes through the communications path shown in Exhibit S2.2. Annex D describes how to conduct a STI test using the STIPA method. The test signal can be programmed into the system and played back. However, that method would not measure the impact of any distortion caused by the system microphone, if one is used. A more complete system test is made by using an artificial talker or "talkbox" to play the STIPA test signal into the system microphone. These "talking heads" are commonly used in audio research. Exhibit S2.10 is an example of a talkbox for STIPA testing (see D.2.3.6 and D.5).

Annex D discusses the fact that even where intelligible speech is desired, measurement of speech intelligibility might not be necessary. However, where measurements are desired or recommended, how many tests should be made in a particular space? There is no guidance in *NFPA 72* for audibility measurements regarding the number and locations of test points. For intelligibility measurements Annex D, Section D.2.4, discusses the number and location of measurements and how the data should be compiled and

EXHIBIT S2.8

Combination Sound Pressure Level Meter/Analyzer and Speech Intelligibility Meter. (Source: Gold Line, West Redding, CT)

EXHIBIT S2.9

XL2 Audio and Acoustic Analyzer Displaying Basic STI-PA Result. (Source: NTI Americas, Tigard, OR)

EXHIBIT S2.10

STIPA NTI Talkbox Calibrated Acoustical Source. (Source: NTI Americas, Tigard, OR) averaged. The Fire Protection Research Foundation (FPRF) report that led to the development of Annex D has more discussion and sample forms as well.[23]

With audibility, the designer has an intuitive sense of where a system might fail and tends to concentrate the testing plan in those areas. How many designers, technicians, and authorities have such intuition regarding intelligibility? This is not an argument to not test for intelligibility. Rather, it means that testing needs to be performed and that a designer is likely to test a larger number of points initially as he or she gathers experience. For example, during the FPRF research that led to the development of Annex D, a series of tests was conducted in a mall. In one of the main mall areas, with lots of hard glass and tile surfaces and with a fountain contributing to background noise, the STIPA test signal was about 75 dBA — about 6–10 dB above ambient. Measurement results indicated poor intelligibility. In one of the individual stores, two of the participants subjectively evaluated the system and expected a lower test score. However, the measurement indicated that the system was adequate with an STI score of 0.50 to 0.60 in different areas. The participants expected a lower score because the test signal sounded considerably lower in loudness. However, it was the fact that the store had carpet and lots of clothing to absorb reverberation that made it sound less loud and that also inproved the intelligibility of the system.

As with audibility, there are methods to test when a space is not occupied and then "add in" the expected or measured noise level at a later time during analysis. This permits less invasive testing. For audibility, the background noise is measured while the space is occupied and in use. Then, at another time, the alarm signal is measured to determine the signal-to-noise ratio. For speech intelligibility, the instrument is used to measure and save the noise profile while the space is occupied and in use. Then, at another time, when not occupied, the speech test signal is measured and saved. Software provided by the meter manufacturer is used to combine the two data sets and get the resulting prediction of speech intelligibility. The protocol listed in Annex D addresses this type of testing. While this test sequence accounts for the effects of ambient noise, it does not account for the effect that a large number of people might have on the reverberation in the space. For example, in some concert halls there can be 30 percent reduction in reverberation time when the hall is full versus when there are no people present.[24] Although the people add noise, their effect on reverberation can actually improve overall intelligibility of a voice system.

After acceptance testing, should systems be periodically tested? Yes, but measurements might not be required. Table 14.4.3.2, item 22(b), for textual audible alarm notification appliances (speakers), requires an annual periodic test of the operation of the notification appliances. If there are changes to the building or the system — all factors that can affect intelligibility — additional testing might be warranted. However, if the system is classified as a mass notification system, Table 14.4.3.2, item 30(f), requires annual qualitative testing of the message clarity and annual measurement with a meter of the alert or evacuation tone sound pressure level.

Although Annex D has a recommended protocol for testing speech intelligibility, the body of the Code only requires a "listen" test. Designers, owners, and authorities having jurisdiction will have to decide when and where testing is desirable, if at all.

Although the sound pressure level of voice signals cannot be measured for comparison to tone signaling requirements, the sound pressure level of voice signals can be measured and recorded as a baseline to determine if a system or the building environment has changed significantly from initial testing. Changes in the sound pressure level of the voice message could point to possible changes in speech intelligibility. If baseline sound level measurements of voice messages are made, they should be made with an integrating, averaging meter — a capability that many sound level meters have and a capability that is required to measure average ambient sound pressure levels. The equivalent sound level over some time period, L_{eq}, should be measured using the same text passage each time in order to make a valid comparison. Combined with already required inspections of a space for changing conditions, measuring and documenting the L_{eq} may be adequate for periodic review of voice systems in some spaces.

In some situations, the best test plan is to use a combination system that is used for routine purposes on a daily basis, such as the sound system in an airport. Those systems are constantly being "tested" through their regular use. See Annex D, Reference 4, and the Bibliography for more information on testing guidelines.

CONCLUSION

The *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code* — and common sense and fairness — requires voice signals to be intelligible in many spaces. Modeling and measurement methods and standards for speech intelligibility are well researched and documented. Some in the fire alarm community, being new to the concepts involved, have a steep learning curve to improve their planning, design, installation, and testing of intelligible voice communication systems. The requirements in Chapter 18 for the designation of ADSs will help the planning and education process.

Researchers are investigating *what* should be said and *how* it should be said, when giving information using a voice system. See Chapter 24, Emergency Communications Systems (ECS), for more information. The Code is not intended to be a design guide, textbook, and handbook. Those who plan, design, install, test, and approve voice systems for emergency communications systems must seek information from established disciplines, groups, and literature — and by testing systems — to learn what works and what does not work.

REFERENCES

References Cited

1. *NFPA 72®, National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, 2013 edition, National Fire Protection Association, Quincy, MA.
2. Proulx, G., "Is it Wise to Evacuate During a High Rise Fire?" National Fire Protection Association World Safety Congress, Denver, CO, May, 2000.
3. Proulx, G., "Highrise Evacuation: A Questionable Concept," 2nd International Symposium on Human Behavior in Fire – Conference Proceedings, London: Interscience Communications, 2001.
4. Jacob, K., "Understanding Speech Intelligibility and the Fire Alarm Code," Framingham, MA: Bose® Professional Systems. Presented at the National Fire Protection Association World Safety Congress, Anaheim, May 14, 2001. Available at *www.rpsa-fire.com*.
5. Proulx, G., and J. D. Sime, "To Prevent 'Panic' in an Underground Emergency: Why Not Tell People the Truth?" *Proceedings of the Third International Symposium on Fire Safety Science*, London: Elsevier, 1991.
6. Pauls, J. L., and B. K. Jones, "Building Evacuation: Research Methods and Case Studies," *Fires and Human Behaviour*, New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1980.
7. Kuligowski, E. D., S. M. V. Gwynne, K. M. Butler, B. L. Hoskins, and C. R. Sandler, "Developing Emergency Communication Strategies for Buildings," Technical Note 1733, National Institute of Standards and Technology, March, 2012.
8. ISO 9921-1, *Ergonomics-Assessment of Speech Communication*, International Standards Organization, Geneva, Switzerland, 2003.
9. IEC 60849, *Sound Systems for Emergency Purposes*, International Electrotechnical Commission, Geneva, Switzerland, 1998.
10. Mannell, R. H., "Natural and Synthetic Speech Intelligibility and Quality Testing," Speech, Hearing and Language Research Centre (SHLRC), Macquarie University, Sydney, Australia, 1984.
11. Heyser, R. C., "Acoustical Measurements by Time Delay Spectrometry," *Journal of the Audio Engineering Society*, 1967.
12. Merriam-Webster, Inc., *Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*, Springfield, MA, 2003, http://www.merriam-webster.com. [definitions for *subjective* and *objective*]
13. ISO/TR 4870, *Acoustics – The Construction and Calibration of Speech Intelligibility Tests*, International Standards Organization, Geneva, Switzerland, 1991.
14. IEC 60268-16, *The Objective Rating of Speech Intelligibility by Speech Transmission Index*, 2003.
15. ANSI S 3.5, *Methods for the Calculation of the Articulation Index*, American National Standards Institute, New York, NY, 1969.
16. ANSI S 3.5, *Methods for the Calculation of the Speech Intelligibility Index (SII)*. American National Standards Institute, New York, NY, 1997.
17. Peutz, V. M. A., "Articulation Loss of Consonants as a Criterion for Speech Transmission in a Room," *Journal of the Audio Engineering Society*, 1971; 19(11):915–919.
18. ANSI S 3.2, *Method for Measuring the Intelligibility of Speech Over Communication Systems*, American National Standards Institute, New York, NY, 1989.
19. Barnett, P. W., and A. D. Knight, "The Common Intelligibility Scale," *Proceedings of the Institute of Acoustics*, AMS Acoustics, 43 Chase Side, Southgate, London, N14 SBP, 1995; 17(7).
20. NEMA Standards Publication SB 50-2008, *Emergency Communications Audio Intelligibility Applications Guide*, National Electrical Manufacturers Association, Rosslyn, VA 22209.
21. National Institute for Certification in Engineering Technologies (NICET), 1420 King Street, Alexandria, VA 22314-2794.
22. National Systems Contractors Association, 625 First Street SE, Suite 420, Cedar Rapids, IA 52401.
23. Grant, C., *Intelligibility of Fire Alarm & Emergency Communication Systems*, the Fire Protection Research Foundation, Quincy, MA, 2008.
24. Skaloumbakas, C., Reverberation time RT(60) — definitions, theory, example cases etc., www.cpskal.gr/paper43.htm, accessed March 2012.

Selected Technical Bibliography

(A more complete bibliography can be found at *www.rpsa-fire.com*.)

Ballou, G., ed., *Handbook for Sound Engineers*, The New Audio Cyclopedia, 2nd ed., Howard W. Sams, Indianapolis, IN: pp. 1277–1298.

Bell, T., "A New Measure of Word Recognition," *Sound & Video Contractor (S&VC)*, 1996; 14(11):28–33.

Chéenne, D. J., "Getting Testy about Intelligibility," *Sound & Video Contractor (S&VC)*, 1996; 14(11):22–26.

Davis, C., and D. Davis, “Speech Intelligibility Workshop,” *Syn-Aud-Con Tech Topic*, 1986, 1987; 14(1):14(8).

Davis, C. P., “Measurement of %ALcons,” *Journal of the Audio Engineering Society*, 1986; 34(11):905–909.

Davis, D., and C. Davis, “Sound System Engineering,” 2nd ed., Cannel, IN: SAMS, a Division of Macmillan Computer Publishing, 1986.

Davis, D., and C. Davis, “Application of Speech Intelligibility to Sound Reinforcement,” *Journal of the Audio Engineering Society*, 1989; 37(12).

Houtgast, T., and H. J. M. Steeneken, “A Multi-Lingual Evaluation of the RASTI-Method for Estimating Speech Intelligibility in Auditoria,” *Acustica*, 1984; 54:185–199.

Houtgast, T., and H. J. M. Steeneken, “The Modulation Transfer Function in Room Acoustics as a Predictor of Speech Intelligibility,” *Acustica*, 1973; 28:66–73.

Houtgast, T., H. J. M. Steeneken, and R. Plomp, “Predicting Speech Intelligibility in Rooms from the Modulation Transfer Function,” *Acustica*, 1980; 46.

Howes, D., “On the Relation Between the Intelligibility and Frequency of Occurrence of English Words,” *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*, 1957; 29:296–305.

Hudgins, C. V., T. E. Hawkins, J. E. Karlin, and S. S. Stevens, “The Development of Recorded Auditory Tests for Measuring Hearing Loss for Speech,” *Laryngoscope*, 1947; 57:57–89.

Klein, W., “Articulation Loss of Consonants as a Basis for Design and Judgment of Sound Reinforcement Systems,” *Journal of the Audio Engineering Society*, 1971; 19(11):920–922.

Latham, H. G., “The Signal-to-Noise Ratio for Speech Intelligibility — an Auditorium Design Index,” *Applied Acoustics*, 1979; 12.

Licklider, J. C. R., D. Bindra, and I. Pollack, “The Intelligibility of Rectangular Speech Waves,” *American Journal of Psychology*, 1948; 61:1–20.

Lochner, J. P. A., and J. F. Burger, “The Intelligibility of Reinforced Speech,” *Acustica*, 1959; 9.

Mapp, P., and P. Doany, “Speech Intelligibility Analysis and Measurement for a Distributed Sound System in a Reverberant Environment,” Audio Engineering Society 87th Convention, NY, 1989.

Mapp, P., “An Issue of Safety,” *Sound & Video Contractor (S&VC)*, 1996; 14(11):34–48.

Mapp, P., “Installation Profile — The National Ice Centre,” *Sound & Video Contractor (S&VC)*, 1999; 18(14):77–84.

Mapp, P., *Reaching the Audience*, “Proven Techniques for Evaluating, Maintaining and Optimizing Systems Design for Speech Intelligibility,” *Sound & Video Contractor (S&VC)*, 1999; 17(11):17–32.

Mapp, P., “Speaking of Speaking,” *Sound & Video Contractor (S&VC)*, 2001; 19(10):36–48.

Marshall, A. H., “Acoustical Determinants for the Architectural Design of Concert Halls,” *Architectural Science Review*, 1968; 11:81–87.

Peutz, V. M. A., and B. M. Kok, “Speech Intelligibility,” Audio Engineering Society 75th Convention, Paris, France 1984.

Peutz, V. M. A., “Articulation Loss of Consonants as a Criterion for Speech Transmission in a Room,” *Journal of the Audio Engineering Society*, 1971; 19(11):915–919.

Peutz, V. M. A., “Speech Information and Speech Intelligibility,” Audio Engineering Society 85th Convention, Los Angeles, CA 1988.

Pratt, P., “Intelligibility and International Standards,” *Sound & Video Contractor (S&VC)*, 1996; 14(11):49–54.

Rosenzweig, M. R., and L. Postman, “Intelligibility as a Function of Frequency of Usage,” *Journal of Experimental Psychology*, 1957; 54:412–422.

Spieth, W., J. F. Curtis, and J. C. Lebster, “Responding to One of Two Simultaneous Messages,” *Journal of the Acoustical Society of America*, 1954; 26:391–396.

Steeneken, H. J. M., “The Measurement of Speech Intelligibility,” 2002.

Steeneken, H. J. M., and T. Houtgast, 1980. “A Physical Method for Measuring Speech Transmission Quality.” *J. Acoustical Society of America*, 1980; 67(31):318–326.

Steeneken, H. J. M., and T. Houtgast, “On the Mutual Dependence of Octave Band Contributions to Speech Intelligibility.” Proc. Eurospeech 91, Genoa, 1991; 1133–1136.

Steeneken, H. J. M., and T. Houtgast, “Some Applications of the Speech Transmission Index (STI) in Auditoria,” *Acustica*, 1982; 51:229–234.

Steeneken, H. J. M., and J. Houtgast, “RASTI. A Tool for Evaluating Auditorium,” *B&K Technical Review*, 1989; 3.

Stiernberg, J., “The Science of Perception and Reception,” *Sound & Video Contractor (S&VC)*, 1996; 14(11): 14–20, 92.

Treisman, A. M., “Verbal Cues, Language, and Meaning in Relative Attention,” *American Journal of Psychology*, 1964; 77:206–219.

SUPPLEMENT 3

Addressing Unwanted Alarms

Editor's Note: *This supplement provides an overview of the some of the key provisions of NFPA 72 that can be considered by authorities to help them in their enforcement activities to help reduce the occurrence of unwanted alarms. Fire alarm systems are generally effective and reliable. One of the best ways to minimize the occurrence of unwanted alarms is to make sure that they are properly installed and maintained. Compliance with the requirements of NFPA 72 will ensure the initial and ongoing performance and reliability of these systems.*

BACKGROUND

During the revision process for the 2013 edition of *NFPA 72®*, *National Fire Alarm and Signaling Code*, the subject of unwanted alarms was a major topic of discussion. Unwanted alarms are those that are not the result of a potentially hazardous condition. They can include malicious alarms, nuisance alarms, unintentional alarms, and unknown alarms. Numerous proposals and comments were submitted by the fire service community and others concerning changes for *NFPA 72* intended to help reduce or better manage the number of unwanted alarms being handled by emergency responders. Among the proposed changes were requiring signals to include the point identification (address) of activated initiating devices, requiring smoke detectors used in HVAC systems to produce supervisory rather than alarm signals, requiring replacement of systems with chronic problems, and permitting verification of alarm signals prior to notifying the fire departments.

While many of the proposed changes were not accepted, several changes were adopted in response to these proposals. Most notable among these was a change that will allow local fire departments to require an alarm signal verification process to be implemented. This process includes several conditions that must be followed to ensure that alarm signal dispositions are handled in a timely and responsible manner. Changes have also been made to require the reporting of certain system impairments to the authority having jurisdiction, such as when systems are out of service longer than 8 hours or when a supervising station service contract had been terminated.

The activities associated with the revision process for *NFPA 72* also prompted separate but related activities on the subject of understanding and managing unwanted alarms. Several industry organizations, including the National Fire Protection Association (NFPA), the International Association of Fire Chiefs (IAFC), the Automatic Fire Alarm Association (AFAA), the Central Station Alarm Association (CSAA), and the Federal Emergency Management Agency (FEMA), as well as representatives from several manufacturers, joined in meetings and discussions to better understand the sources of unwanted alarms and consider strategies to help local jurisdictions effectively manage resources and responses to fire alarms. As one offshoot of these discussions, NFPA developed the *Fire Service Guide to Reducing Unwanted Fire Alarms,* which is available online at www.nfpa.org/redgd. Another offshoot is the development of a Risk-Based Decision Support Tool to Assist Fire Departments in Managing Unwanted Alarms. This project has been undertaken by the Fire Protection Research Foundation and is targeted for completion in late 2012.

During the various activities related to the issue of unwanted alarms, general discussions of the causes have included some of the following considerations:

- Improper equipment/system installation
- Inadequate acceptance inspection and testing
- Insufficient periodic inspection, testing, and maintenance
- Unqualified design, installation, and service personnel
- Equipment performance as related to nuisance alarms
- Improper reporting (categorization) of unwanted alarms

- Constraints on inspection and enforcement department training and staffing
- Lack of appreciation by building owners for the value of a fire alarm system

It is important to realize that the quality and reliability of fire alarm system equipment currently being produced are far superior to those of the equipment produced years ago. Fire alarm system equipment continues to evolve, and the use of detectors with sensors to detect multiple stimuli is becoming more commonplace. These include multi-sensor and multi-criteria detectors, some of which are better able to discriminate signals representing actual fire conditions from those that may be from a nuisance source. These are expected to play a more significant future role in helping to minimize nuisance alarms from common nuisance sources.

While proposed revisions to *NFPA 72* can always be submitted for consideration by the technical committees, the existing requirements of the Code provide for effective and reliable installations of fire alarm systems, if followed. Some of these may be of particular interest to enforcing authorities, such as plan reviewers and inspection personnel in the fire service community. These requirements are summarized in the following sections.

UNDERSTANDING THE BASICS

NFPA 72 does not establish the need to have a fire alarm system or the attributes that it must have. These are typically established within the requirements of building, occupancy, or fire codes adopted by the enforcing authority. *NFPA 72* is usually referenced within these codes for the detailed performance, installation, testing, and maintenance requirements applicable to these systems. When these higher level codes establish the need for a fire alarm system to be installed in a particular occupancy, these systems are referred to in *NFPA 72* as "required systems." In some cases fire alarm systems are not required by other codes but are installed solely at the option of the building owner. These are referred to in *NFPA 72* as "nonrequired" systems. For these cases the system designer must establish the required attributes needed for the system in terms of criteria needed to meet the goals and objectives intended for the system by the building owner. The requirements of *NFPA 72* apply regardless of whether the system is a "required" or "nonrequired" system. The reader is referred to Section 23.3, System Features, in *NFPA 72* for related provisions.

The basic attributes for the system, established by enabling codes for required systems or by the system designer for nonrequired systems, can include the following:

- System initiation (e.g., manual initiation, waterflow detection, automatic detection)
- Occupant notification (e.g., public mode, private mode, audible, visible, voice, textual)
- Offsite force notification (e.g., monitoring by a supervising station, or public emergency reporting system)
- Control locations and annunciation (e.g., fire command centers, alarm annunciators)
- Actuation of emergency control functions (e.g., elevator recall, elevator shutdown, smoke/fire damper closure, door release, HVAC control/shutdown)
- System supervision (sprinkler systems, other suppression systems)

Not all fire alarm systems are the same. *NFPA 72* defines the different types of fire alarm systems in 3.3.105. These include three types of protected premises (local) fire alarm systems: *building fire alarm system*, *dedicated function fire alarm system*, and *releasing fire alarm system*. A building fire alarm system is one that serves the needs of a building or buildings and provides occupant notification or fire department notification, or both. A dedicated function fire alarm system is installed to perform emergency control functions when a building fire alarm system is not required. A releasing fire alarm system is used for the control of suppression systems. Protected premises (local) fire alarm systems are addressed by the requirements of Chapter 23.

When a protected premises (local) fire alarm system provides notification to the fire department, it does so in one of two ways: transmission of signals indirectly by means of a supervising station, or transmission of signals directly by connection to a public emergency alarm reporting system (municipal fire alarm system).

Supervising stations include *central supervising stations (central stations), proprietary supervising stations*, and *remote supervising stations*. These are defined in 3.3.283 and are addressed by the requirements of Chapter 26. The term *central station* is often used incorrectly to mean any supervising station. In fact, the term *central station* only applies when all the provisions in Section 26.3 are met. Proprietary supervising stations are those under the same ownership as the premises that they monitor. The majority of fire alarm systems are monitored by remote supervising stations. The provisions of Section 26.5 apply to these systems. When a supervising station receives a fire alarm signal, *NFPA 72* requires supervising station personnel to immediately contact the communications center responsible for providing emergency communications services to local public safety agencies (dispatch to the fire department). The Code refers to this as "alarm retransmission," and the means of contact is usually a telephone call. Communications centers are addressed by the requirements of NFPA 1221, *Standard for the Installation, Maintenance, and Use of Emergency Services Communications Systems*.

The 2013 edition of *NFPA 72* includes a new allowance for alarm verification that will be discussed in more detail later.

Public emergency alarm reporting systems are typically found only in certain regions of the country. These are municipally owned systems that provide publically accessible alarm boxes located throughout a community that can be used by members of the public to manually initiate an alarm signal in case of a fire. These boxes, prominently located and typically red in color, are connected to the local communications center, where alarm signals are dispatched to the appropriate fire department. Connection from a protected premises (local) fire alarm system, when permitted by the local authority, is made through an auxiliary alarm system. Public emergency alarm reporting systems are defined in 3.3.215 and are addressed by the provisions of Chapter 27.

From the perspective of the local fire department, the issue of unwanted alarms is primarily associated with fire alarm systems that automatically transmit alarm signals to a supervising station or public emergency alarm reporting system. Of course, occupants or passersby can always call the fire department directly in response to a local alarm signal.

PLANS REVIEW AND APPROVAL

Enforcing authorities should always encourage system designers to seek their involvement in the planning stages. This will avoid unnecessary complication and expense later in the project. Enforcing authorities should expect system designers to be qualified and experienced in the proper design, application, installation, and testing of fire alarm systems. The Code includes requirements for personnel qualification in Section 10.5 not only for system designers, but also for system installers; inspection, testing and service personnel; and supervising station operators. In accordance with 10.5.1.4, system designers must provide evidence of their qualification or certification when required by the authority having jurisdiction. The same requirement also applies to other personnel as addressed in 10.5.2.3, 10.5.3.5, and 10.5.4.3.

Paragraph 10.20.2 of *NFPA 72* requires the enforcing authority to be notified prior to the installation or alteration of equipment or wiring. As a part of the local jurisdiction's requirements, the enforcing authority may require submittal of design documentation for review and approval. The 2013 edition of *NFPA 72* includes a new documentation chapter that contains or identifies all the various documentation provisions in *NFPA 72*. The provisions in 7.2.1 include a list of 14 items that constitute the minimum documentation required by the Code. Additional documentation that may be needed is identified in other sections of Chapter 7 depending on the type of system being installed.

ACCEPTANCE AND COMMISSIONING

Before final approval is requested, in accordance with 7.5.2, the enforcing authority can request that the installing contractor furnish a written statement confirming that the system has been installed in accordance with approved plans and tested in accordance with manufacturers' published instructions and the appropriate requirements of the Code. The System Record of Completion and the System Record of Inspection and Testing forms are also essential documents that need to be considered as a part of the acceptance and commissioning process.

The System Record of Completion provides a record of the basic information about the system, including the following:

- Property
- Installation, testing, and service personnel
- Offsite monitoring organization
- Documentation location
- System components and features
- Power sources
- Types of circuits
- Number and types of initiation devices
- Number and types of notification appliances
- Interconnected systems
- Certification and approvals

Requirements addressing the completion of the System Record of Completion are contained in 7.5.6, and the forms themselves are contained in 7.8.2.

The Certification and Approval portion of the System Record of Completion includes a place for sign-off by the system installation contractor and system operational testing contractor. In addition, for acceptance testing, there are four places for sign-off: the installation contractor, the testing contractor, the owner, and the enforcing authority.

Paragraph 14.4.1.2 of *NFPA 72* requires the enforcing authority to be notified prior to initial acceptance tests. In order for acceptance testing to go smoothly it should be confirmed that the installation and system operational tests have been fully completed and that there are no outstanding issues or deficiencies.

The System Record of Inspection and Testing provides a record of the inspections and testing done for the system. Inspection and testing requirements are addressed in Chapter 14, including requirements to document acceptance testing. Requirements are also provided to address reacceptance testing (where subsequent system modifications are made) and periodic inspection and testing for the life of the system. These requirements are summarized in Section 7.6, and the forms are contained in 7.8.2. The System Record of Inspection and Testing includes a section for certification by the organization performing the inspection and testing, and a section for acceptance by the system owner.

The enforcing authority should review the completed System Record of Completion and the completed System Record of Inspection and Testing along with any applicable supplementary forms as well as the other required minimum documentation listed in 7.2.1 to confirm everything is complete.

The requirements of *NFPA 72* also include a section on "Verification of Compliant Installation." This section allows the enforcing authority to require that the completed installation be certified for compliance with the Code by a qualified and impartial third-party organization. These provisions are contained in 7.5.8.

LIFE AFTER COMMISSIONING

In addition to everyday operation and use, life after commissioning primarily involves adherence to requirements for periodic inspection and testing, performing maintenance as needed, and making sure any modifications made to the system are handled in accordance with the Code. These activities are the key to making sure that the system is maintained in a ready and reliable state.

The responsibility for adhering to requirements for periodic inspection and testing rests squarely with the building or system owner. These responsibilities are clearly outlined in 14.2.3 of *NFPA 72*. Periodic inspection will help minimize exposure to unwanted alarms by making sure building renovations or occupancy changes have not adversely impacted the intended performance of equipment. Periodic testing will verify equipment is operating properly within the parameters set by the designer, equipment manufacturer, and the Code. The requirements for maintenance, inspection, and testing records are contained in Section 7.6, Section 7.7, and 14.6.2. As with initial acceptance inspection and testing, a System Record of Inspection and Testing is required to document periodic inspection and testing.

In accordance with 14.2.2.2, impairments in equipment identified during periodic inspection and testing must be corrected. If impairments are not corrected at the conclusion of system inspection, testing, or maintenance, the Code requires the system owner or designated representative to be notified in writing within 24 hours. The provisions of Section 10.21 also address impairments and require that service providers report to the enforcing authority systems that have been out of service longer than 8 hours. In some cases, depending on the circumstances of the impairment, mitigating measures may need to be taken during the period of the impairment.

NFPA 72 addresses requirements for maintenance in Section 14.5. Routine maintenance, aside from periodic inspection and testing, may be specified in the equipment manufacturer's published instructions. This may depend on the type of equipment and the local ambient conditions. Of course whenever a repair, modification, or replacement is made, reacceptance testing is required in accordance with 14.4.2.

System modifications can include changes to components or software, additions of components or subsystems, and major replacements of equipment that involve different models or configurations. Even though the original system may have been installed some time ago, system modifications need to be completed in accordance with the *NFPA 72* edition currently being enforced. The requirements and provisions associated with the plans review and approval, as well as the reacceptance and recommissioning of the modification, are the same or similar to those for the original system. The extent of required reacceptance testing will depend on the extent of the modification and must comply with 14.4.2. Documentation, especially the System Record of System Completion and System Record of Inspection and Testing, must be updated and submitted in the same manner as for the original system.

In accordance with 14.1.4, the requirements for inspection, testing, and maintenance in *NFPA 72* apply to both new and existing systems — in other words, they are retroactive. Even though the original system may have been installed some time ago, ongoing periodic inspection and testing must be completed in accordance with the *NFPA 72* edition currently being enforced.

SUPERVISING STATIONS

While unwanted alarms can certainly be an issue for local (unmonitored) protected premises fire alarms systems, alarms that are automatically transmitted to offsite monitoring facilities include the additional equipment and operations of the monitoring facility. In most cases the monitoring facility will be a supervising station. *NFPA 72* incorporates requirements for the different types of supervising stations and the means for transmitting signals to them in Chapter 26.

In general, *NFPA 72* requires alarm signals received by a supervising station to be immediately retransmitted to the responsible fire department. A new provision in the 2013 edition of the Code allows the responsible fire department for a specific protected premises to require "alarm signal verification." This is different from the "presignal feature" addressed in 23.8.1.2. It is also different from the "alarm verification feature" and "positive alarm sequence" defined respectively in 3.3.16 and 3.3.198 and addressed respectively in 23.8.1.3 and 23.8.5.4 for protective premises systems. The new provisions for alarm signal verification for supervising station systems are addressed in 26.2.1 through 26.2.3. The procedure requires the supervising station to immediately notify the communications center that a fire alarm signal has been received and verification is in process. The alarm signal verification can only be received from authorized personnel at the protected premises, and the process of verification cannot take longer than 90 seconds. Verified alarm signals and alarm signals where verification is not conclusive (within 90 seconds) must immediately be retransmitted to the communications center. Readers are referred to the Code sections cited previously as well as the related annex sections for additional detail and insights.

Where supervising station service is transferred from one monitoring organization to another, the Code requires both the client and the enforcing authority to be notified within 30 days. Because such changes in service can impact the proper transmission of signals from the premises to the supervising station, the Code requires that the affected systems be tested in accordance with Chapter 14. In addition, the supervising station is required to notify the enforcing authority before any service is terminated. These provisions are contained in 26.2.7 of *NFPA 72*. With regard to the termination of service, a similar provision has been added in 10.21.3 under the requirements covering system impairments.

In order to be considered true central station service, one of the elements of the service scope includes the testing and maintenance of the protected premises system in accordance with Chapter 14. In addition, when true central station service is provided, the Code requires the prime contractor to post documentation indicating that the alarm system at the protected premises complies with the requirements of the Code for central station service. These provisions are addressed in 26.3.2 and 26.3.4. More often than not, offsite monitoring is accomplished using remote station service. Since the provisions in Section 26.5 do not directly address the testing and maintenance of the protected premises system, the Code contains provisions to help ensure that testing and maintenance are being provided in accordance with Chapter 14 for these systems. These provisions are contained in 26.5.2 and require the owner of the protected premises to provide annual documentation to the enforcing authority identifying the party responsible for testing and maintenance.

Index

-F-

-G-

-H-

-S-

-U-

-V-

IMPORTANT NOTICES AND DISCLAIMERS CONCERNING NFPA® DOCUMENTS

NOTICE AND DISCLAIMER OF LIABILITY CONCERNING THE USE OF NFPA DOCUMENTS

NFPA® codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides ("NFPA Documents"), of which the NFPA Document contained herein is one, are developed through a consensus standards development process approved by the American National Standards Institute. This process brings together volunteers representing varied viewpoints and interests to achieve consensus on fire and other safety issues. While the NFPA administers the process and establishes rules to promote fairness in the development of consensus, it does not independently test, evaluate, or verify the accuracy of any information or the soundness of any judgments contained in NFPA Documents.

The NFPA disclaims liability for any personal injury, property or other damages of any nature whatsoever, whether special, indirect, consequential or compensatory, directly or indirectly resulting from the publication, use of, or reliance on NFPA Documents. The NFPA also makes no guaranty or warranty as to the accuracy or completeness of any information published herein.

In issuing and making NFPA Documents available, the NFPA is not undertaking to render professional or other services for or on behalf of any person or entity. Nor is the NFPA undertaking to perform any duty owed by any person or entity to someone else. Anyone using this document should rely on his or her own independent judgment or, as appropriate, seek the advice of a competent professional in determining the exercise of reasonable care in any given circumstances.

The NFPA has no power, nor does it undertake, to police or enforce compliance with the contents of NFPA Documents. Nor does the NFPA list, certify, test, or inspect products, designs, or installations for compliance with this document. Any certification or other statement of compliance with the requirements of this document shall not be attributable to the NFPA and is solely the responsibility of the certifier or maker of the statement.

ADDITIONAL NOTICES AND DISCLAIMERS

Updating of NFPA Documents

Users of NFPA codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides ("NFPA Documents") should be aware that these documents may be superseded at any time by the issuance of new editions or may be amended from time to time through the issuance of Tentative Interim Amendments. An official NFPA Document at any point in time consists of the current edition of the document together with any Tentative Interim Amendments and any Errata then in effect. In order to determine whether a given document is the current edition and whether it has been amended through the issuance of Tentative Interim Amendments or corrected through the issuance of Errata, consult appropriate NFPA publications such as the National Fire Codes® Subscription Service, visit the NFPA website at www.nfpa.org, or contact the NFPA at the address listed below.

Interpretations of NFPA Documents

A statement, written or oral, that is not processed in accordance with Section 6 of the Regulations Governing Committee Projects shall not be considered the official position of NFPA or any of its Committees and shall not be considered to be, nor be relied upon as, a Formal Interpretation.

Patents

The NFPA does not take any position with respect to the validity of any patent rights referenced in, related to, or asserted in connection with an NFPA Document. The users of NFPA Documents bear the sole responsibility for determining the validity of any such patent rights, as well as the risk of infringement of such rights, and the NFPA disclaims liability for the infringement of any patent resulting from the use of or reliance on NFPA Documents.

NFPA adheres to the policy of the American National Standards Institute (ANSI) regarding the inclusion of patents in American National Standards ("the ANSI Patent Policy"), and hereby gives the following notice pursuant to that policy:

> **NOTICE:** The user's attention is called to the possibility that compliance with an NFPA Document may require use of an invention covered by patent rights. NFPA takes no position as to the validity of any such patent rights or as to whether such patent rights constitute or include essential patent claims under the ANSI Patent Policy. If, in connection with the ANSI Patent Policy, a patent holder has filed a statement of willingness to grant licenses under these rights on reasonable and nondiscriminatory terms and conditions to applicants desiring to obtain such a license, copies of such filed statements can be obtained, on request, from NFPA. For further information, contact the NFPA at the address listed below.

Law and Regulations

Users of NFPA Documents should consult applicable federal, state, and local laws and regulations. NFPA does not, by the publication of its codes, standards, recommended practices, and guides, intend to urge action that is not in compliance with applicable laws, and these documents may not be construed as doing so.

Copyrights

NFPA Documents are copyrighted by the NFPA. They are made available for a wide variety of both public and private uses. These include both use, by reference, in laws and regulations, and use in private self-regulation, standardization, and the promotion of safe practices and methods. By making these documents available for use and adoption by public authorities and private users, the NFPA does not waive any rights in copyright to these documents.

Use of NFPA Documents for regulatory purposes should be accomplished through adoption by reference. The term "adoption by reference" means the citing of title, edition, and publishing information only. Any deletions, additions, and changes desired by the adopting authority should be noted separately in the adopting instrument. In order to assist NFPA in following the uses made of its documents, adopting authorities are requested to notify the NFPA (Attention: Secretary, Standards Council) in writing of such use. For technical assistance and questions concerning adoption of NFPA Documents, contact NFPA at the address below.

For Further Information

All questions or other communications relating to NFPA Documents and all requests for information on NFPA procedures governing its codes and standards development process, including information on the procedures for requesting Formal Interpretations, for proposing Tentative Interim Amendments, and for proposing revisions to NFPA documents during regular revision cycles, should be sent to NFPA headquarters, addressed to the attention of the Secretary, Standards Council, NFPA, 1 Batterymarch Park, P.O. Box 9101, Quincy, MA 02269-9101; email: stds_admin

For more information about NFPA, visit the NFPA website at www.nfpa.org.